DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 041 265 48 AL 002 466

AUTHOR	Boyle, Elizabeth Latimore; Delbridge, Pauline Ng
TITLE	Cantonese Basic Course, Volumes One and Two.
INSTITUTION	Foreign Service Inst. (Dept. of State), Washington, D.C.
SPONS AGENCY	Institute of International Studies (DHEW/OE), Washington, D.C.
REPORT NO	NDEA-6
BUREAU NO	BR-5-1102
PUB DATE	70
CONTRACT	OEC-6-14-019
NOTE	825p.; Vol. 1--410p., Vol. 2--415p.
AVAILABLE FROM	Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Govt. Printing Office, Wash., D.C. 20402 ($3.50 each vol.); Tapes avail. from Sales Branch, National Audiovisual Center (GSA), Wash. D.C. 20409
EDRS PRICE	EDRS Price MF-$3.00 HC Not Available from EDRS.
DESCRIPTORS	Audiolingual Methods, *Cantonese, Cultural Context, *Instructional Materials, *Intensive Language Courses, *Language Instruction, Pattern Drills (Language), Phonetic Transcription, Tape Recordings
IDENTIFIERS	Hong Kong

ABSTRACT

This course in spoken Cantonese uses all the basic grammatical structures of the language and a vocabulary of about 950 words. The subject matter of the course is daily life in Hong Kong. The course was designed to be taught in an intensive language program of 25-30 class hours a week plus additional time for listening to tape recordings. There are 15 lessons in each volume and the rate of progress in an intensive class is expected to be approximately two lessons per week, including time for review and testing. Each lesson contains five sections: (1) a Basic Conversation to be memorized; (2) Notes on culture, pronunciation, and grammar; (3) Pattern Drills in which the teacher's cue is the stimulus for the students' response; (4) Conversations for Listening, a listening comprehension section; and (5) Say it in Cantonese, English to Cantonese practice, much of it in conversational question-answer form. The early lessons in addition contain explanation and drills on pronunciation points, and some classroom phrases for the students to learn. Appended to each volume are the texts of the Conversations for Listening, a grammatical index, and a cumulative vocabulary list. All Cantonese material is written in phonetic transcription except for the words in the vocabulary list which are in characters as well. (Author/JD)

OE/115 BR 5-1102
PA-48

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE

CANTONESE

BASIC COURSE
VOLUME ONE

ED041265

AL 002 466

ERIC
Title VI, NDEA
OE-6-14-019

1946

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION & WELFARE
OFFICE OF EDUCATION

THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRODUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM THE PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIGINATING IT. POINTS OF VIEW OR OPINIONS STATED DO NOT NECESSARILY REPRESENT OFFICIAL OFFICE OF EDUCATION POSITION OR POLICY.

DEPARTMENT OF STATE

ED 041265

CANTONESE

BASIC COURSE
VOLUME ONE

ELIZABETH LATIMORE BOYLE
with the assistance of
PAULINE NG DELBRIDGE and others

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
WASHINGTON, D.C.
1970

DEPARTMENT OF STATE

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
BASIC COURSE SERIES
Edited by
AUGUSTUS A. KOSKI

**For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office
Washington, D.C. 20402 - Price $3.50**

PREFACE

Cantonese is the principal language of Kwangtung province in Southeast China, parts of neighboring Kwangsi province, and Hong Kong and Macau on China's southeast periphery. In addition Cantonese is spoken by ethnic Chinese in Vietnam, Cambodia, Laos, Singapore and Malaysia, with the number of speakers in Southeast Asia being between 45 and 50 million altogether. Americans of Chinese descent in the U.S. are almost entirely of Cantonese origin.

Among the many dialects of Cantonese, the prestige variety spoken in Canton is standard, by definition, and is imitated over a wide area which includes Hong Kong. It is this dialect which is represented in the two-volume FSI **Cantonese Basic Course** *and the related tape recordings.*

The course, intended to provide a syllabus for an intensive course of about 400 classroom hours in spoken Cantonese, was prepared by Elizabeth Latimore Boyle with special assistance from Pauline Ng Delbridge. The direct costs were borne by the U.S. Office of Education. The Foreign Service Institute sponsored the project and underwrote the indirect costs.

The project profited considerably from the help of Cheong Kwong-yu of the National Taiwan University, who was one of the teachers in the earliest try-out of the course and who subsequently served as advisor on pronunciation and usage. Of additional help were the suggestions of Mr. Lung Sing, Cantonese instructor in the American Consulate General in Hong Kong, and the critiques of experienced instructors under Mr. Liu Ming in Hong Kong. Liu Ming, who is director of the Chinese Language Center at New Asia College, also assisted in assembling a staff to voice the text.

Professor John McCoy of Cornell read the manuscript in an early version and made helpful suggestions. Professor James E. Dew of the University of Michigan commented on the first five lessons and contributed two sections of pronunciation drills.

Miss Telia Thweatt had a unique sequence of service in the project, participating first as a student in the try-out of the course in Taipei, then as typist and general *assistant for the present version. Mrs. Lily Lu prepared most of the final typescript. Linda Birkner of the FSI secretarial staff assisted in readying the camera copy for publication.*

A Cantonese-English glossary appears at the end of each volume, three columns presenting respectively a romanization, the appropriate characters, and the gloss. A fourth column indicates where the item first occurs in the text. The characters for Volume I were written by Cheong Kwong-yu, and for Volume II by George Lin, Cantonese instructor at FSI.

The U.S. Information Agency cooperated by contributing recording studio time and technical personnel in Hong Kong and Taipei to make the tape recordings which accompany these volumes. N.C. Hon in Hong Kong and Y.T. Yu in Taipei were helpful both in their patience and in the care with which they made the recordings.

The Cantonese voices on the tapes are Pauline Delbridge, Chik Hon-man, Chow Wai-ming and Lung Yue-ching for the Basic Sentences and the Conversations for Listening. For the Drills, they are Cheong Kwong-yu and Ho Suk-ching. All grew up in Hong Kong with the exception of Miss Ho. Users of the tapes should be aware that Miss Ho, the female voice in all Drills in the FSI recording of this text, portrays a few deviations from the textbook standard. Particularly noticeable will be her use of [a] *before* [ŋ] *where* [ɔ] *is standard in Canton and Hong Kong.*

James R. Frith

James R. Frith, Dean
School of Language Studies
Foreign Service Institute

TABLE OF CONTENTS

page
INTRODUCTION vi
SYMBOLS USED IN THE TEXT xvi
LESSON 1 1
LESSON 2 31
LESSON 3 56
LESSON 4 82
LESSON 5 104
LESSON 6 127
LESSON 7 152
LESSON 8 188
LESSON 9 200
LESSON 10 222
LESSON 11 241
LESSON 12 265
LESSON 13 289
LESSON 14 309
LESSON 15 330
APPENDIX 1: CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING 350
APPENDIX 2: GRAMMATICAL INDEX 366
CUMULATIVE VOCABULARY 371

INTRODUCTION

Scope of the text:

This Cantonese Basic Course is a course in spoken Cantonese. It uses all the basic grammatical structures of the language and a vocabulary of approximately 950 words. The subject matter of the course deals with daily life in Hong Kong. The course was designed to be taught in an intensive language program of 25-30 class hours a week. Students are expected to spend additional time outside of class listening to tapes of the lessons. There are 30 lessons in the course (15 in each volume), and the rate of progress in an intensive class is expected to be approximately 2 lessons per week, including time for review and testing. Each lesson contains five sections: I) a Basic Conversation to be memorized, II) Notes, III) Pattern Drills, structural drills of the type in which the teacher's cue is the stimulus for the students' response, IV) Conversations for Listening, a listening comprehension section, and V) Say it in Cantonese, English to Cantonese practice, much of it in conversational question-answer form, in which students activate what they have learned in the lesson. The early lessons in addition contain explanation and practice drills on pronunciation points, and some classroom phrases for the students to learn to respond to when used by the teacher. appended

Method of Instruction:

Ideally, but perhaps not typically, instruction is by a team consisting of a native speaking Cantonese as instructor and a native speaking American as linguist, with the instructor teaching by voicing the Cantonese sentences of the text for the students to imitate and the linguist giving explanations in English when required. A good 80-90% of class time will then be spent with the native speaking instructor drilling the students in recitations, during which time the language in use is entirely Cantonese. Students will read the notes of each lesson outside of class, and questions they have on the text will be answered in English by the linguist during periods set aside for that purpose. Questions in English are not asked during drill sessions with the instructor. Psychologically this establishes the habit of using only Cantonese in classes with the instructor. Class time is concentrated on learning the language by imitation, repetition, and transformation, according to spoken cues. The instructor speaks at natural speed, and the students learn to comprehend and speak at the same natural speed. If there is no linguist to explain students' questions, special periods are set aside for students to ask questions of the instructor. It is recommended that the rhythm of the drills not be interrupted by questions in English.

Pace:

Although the course is projected as a 16 week course if studied on an intensive program, the time plan is to be viewed as a rough guide only. The number of students in the class, their language learning aptitude, their amount of previous experience with related languages, the amount of time available for outside study, the excellence of the teacher--all these are variable factors which could affect the pace of learning.

An earlier version of the course was tested out on a pilot class of five students during the summer of 1967, and the proposed pace of two lessons a week seemed about right. However the students in that course had been selected on the basis of a roughly the same language aptitude score on the Modern Language Aptitude Test, and they had all previously studied Mandarin Chinese, a closely related language. Also, the present version incorporates pronunciation practices which the earlier version did not have, and additional Conversations for Listening and Say It in Cantonese sections.

It is therefore suggested that the teacher rely on his own judgment in regard to the pace of the lessons, rather than follow a set pace rigidly. The text has been devised so that the crucial grammatical structures are covered in the first 26 lessons. By covering the first 26 lessons well students will gain a firm structural control of the spoken language. We firmly feel that confident mastery of the first 26 lessons is preferable to hesitant control of the entire text, if a choice must be made between the two. The rule of thumb should be that before going on to a new lesson students should be able to recite the old lesson's Basic Conversation fluently and with expression and should be able to do the Pattern Drills without looking at the book and without marked hesitation.

Objectives of the course:

The objectives of the course are to teach students to speak Standard Cantonese in the locales where Cantonese is spoken, to speak it fluently and grammatically, with acceptable pronunciation, within the scope of topics of daily life. The course was not designed to lay the groundwork for learning the written language. At the end of the course students will be able to buy things; talk on the telephone; ask and give directions; handle money; discuss events past, present, and future; make comparisons; talk about themselves and their families; tell time; order simple meals; talk with the landlord, doctor, servant, bellboy, cabdriver, waiter, sales-clerk; discuss what, when, where, why, who, how, how much. They will not be able to discuss politics or their jobs or other topics of a specialized nature.

Reliability of the material:

All the conversations and drills in this book were written by native Cantonese speakers working under the direction of an American linguist who specified which grammatical points to cover and what situations were required. The design of the text--what to cover, what sequence to use in introducing new material, what limits to set on vocabulary--, the write-ups of structure notes, types and layouts of pattern drills, and the contents of the English-to-Chinese translation sections, were done by the American linguist.

What we have done to handle the problem of limited structures and vocabulary is to plan the lessons so that certain topics and forms don't come up until rather late in the course. The words 'yesterday,' 'today,' and 'tomorrow,' for example, don't occur until Lesson 16. Meanwhile the student has built up the grammatical structure and vocabulary to talk fluently on some subjects which don't involve these expressions and the complexities of verb structures that are involved with time-related sentences. For this reason the present text is not appropriate for use of students whose needs are for just a few phrases of Cantonese--it takes too long from that point of view to get to some of the phrases which a tourist, for example, wants to use right away. But the student who can study hard on an intensive program for 4 months and cover at least 26 of the 30 lessons, will

then speak natural-sounding and grammatical Cantonese, and will be able to cope with most daily life situations in the language.

Procedure:

Basic Conversation. Each lesson begins with a Basic Conversation covering a daily life situation, organized around one or more grammatical points. The conversation is presented first in build-up form, then in recapitulation.

The buildup is partly a device to isolate new words and phrases for pronunciation and identification, partly a device to enable students to gain smooth delivery and natural sentence rhythm by starting with a small segment of a sentence then progressively adding to it to build a full sentence.

The recommended procedure for the buildup is as follows: Students open their books to the new lesson and look at the English equivalents as the teacher voices the Cantonese. The teacher voices the first item six times--three times for the students to listen only, three times for them to repeat after the teacher. (The teacher may voice the items more times, but it is recommended that he not do less.) The teacher then moves on to the next item and repeats the same procedure. When the entire buildup has been performed this way, the students close their books, and the teacher leads them through the buildup again giving each item one time, the students this time watching the teacher and imitating his behavior both vocal and kinetic--his lip movements, facial expressions, and body gestures. If the students have particular trouble with a portion of the buildup, the teacher may give it a few more repetitions than the rest, but if the difficulty persists, he drops it for the time being and marks it to return to later. Repetitions under pressure are quite tension-producing, and it works better to return to a difficult passage in a more relaxed mood.

In the recapitulation section the conversation is repeated in full sentence form. The teacher voices each sentence at least two times, with pauses after each sentence for students to repeat. The first goal is for the students to be able to say the conversation after the teacher at natural speed and with natural sentence rhythm.

Details of pronunciation are spotlighted in another section--the first goal for the conversation is sentence rhythm and natural speed.

The second goal is for the students to memorize the Basic Conversation, so they can say it independently without the teacher's model to follow, maintaining natural speed and rhythm. Students will find the tape recorder a valuable aid to memorizing. The tape recorder is tireless in furnishing a model for students to imitate, and enables them to procede at the pace best suited to their needs.

The purpose of memorizing the Basic Conversations is twofold. Memorizing situational material gives students tip-of-the-tongue command of useable Cantonese. Secondly, since the basic conversations are organized on grammatical principles, students by memorizing the conversations will be learning the grammatical framework of the language, on which they can construct other sentences.

The second day on the lesson, when students have memorized the conversation, it is recommended that the teacher have them act out the conversational roles. Later, after moving on to a new lesson, the teacher has them act out the Basic Conversation of an earlier lesson as a form of review.

Pronunciation Practice:

In general, the Pronunciation Practices concentrate on giving limited explanation and fuller practice drills on new sounds encountered in a lesson, plus comparison drills with sounds previously learned and sometimes comparisons with American close counterparts. Instead of giving many examples, using items unknown to the students the pronunciation drills stick to examples from material they have met in the Basic Conversation or Pattern Drills. The exception to this is Lesson One, which presents an overview of all the tones, consonant initials, and vocalic finals of the language, in addition to giving an introduction to intonation and stress. Students who absorb pronunciation best thouugh mimicking the model and who find the linguistic description of sounds confusing or boring or both, should concentrate on mimicking the model and skimp or skip the explanations.

Notes:

There are two kinds of Notes--Structure (grammar) Notes and Culture Notes. These are to be read outside of class.

The structure notes summarize the structures used in the Basic Conversations and practiced in the Pattern Drills, and are for those students who want a general explanation of how the language works. The students who absorb language structures better through learning model sentences and drilling variations of the model can concentrate on the Basic Conversations and Pattern Drills, and skimp on the Structure Notes.

The Culture Notes comment on some Cantonese life patterns which differ from our own.

Pattern Drills:

There are six kinds of Pattern Drills in Cantonese Basic Course. The purpose of the drills is to make the vocabulary and sentence structures sink in and become speech habits, so that the student understands spoken Cantonese without having to translate mentally and speaks fluently and grammatically at natural speed without awkward hesitation and groping for words.

The Pattern Drills give students practice in structures and words which have been introduced in the Basic Conversations. In addition, there are other vocabulary items which appear first in the drill sections. A plus sign marks each occurrence of a new word in this section, and the English equivalent is given.

Each drill begins with an example giving a model of the teacher's cue and the students' response. Then there follow 8 to 10 problems to be done on this pattern. The teacher gives the cue, and the student responds to the new cue following the pattern set in the example. The response is thus predictable, controlled by the pattern and the cue. In the book the cues are given in the left hand column and the responses on the right, with the example above.

Students will find that going over the drills in a session with the tape recorder before performing them in class with the teacher aids their grasp of the material and smooths their delivery. In class students look at their books to check the example for each drill, to learn what their task is. Then they perform the drill with books closed, relying on the pattern of the example sentence and the cues provided to know what to say. A drill is mastered when the student can respond to the cues promptly, smoothly, and without reference to the book.

The types of drills follow:

1. Substitution Drills.

The teacher voices a pattern sentence, then voices a word or phrase (called a cue) to be substituted in the original sentence. The student notes the substitution cue and substitutes it in the appropriate place to make a new sentence.

Example: T (for Teacher): Good morning, Mrs. Brown. /Jones/
S (for Student): Good morning, Mrs. Jones.

2. Expansion Drills.

There are two kinds of expansion drills. One could be called a listen-and-add drill, using vocabulary and structures familiar to the students. The teacher says a word or phrase and the students repeat it. Then the teacher voices another word or phrase and the students add that word to the original utterance, expanding it. The teacher adds another cue, and the students incorporate it, and so on, making each time a progressively longer utterance.

Example: T: Hat
S: Hat
T: Blue
S: Blue hat
T: Two
S: Two blue hats.
T: Buy
S: Buy two blue hats.

This type of expansion drill is handled a little differently if it includes new vocabulary. In that case it is performed as a listen-and-repeat drill, the students echoing the teacher.

Example: T: Hat
S: Hat
T: Blue hat

S: Blue hat

T: Two blue hats

S: Two blue hats

In the second type of expansion drill the example sentence gives the model to follow and the students expand the subsequent cue sentences according to the pattern set by the example.

Example: T: I'm not Mrs. Lee. /Chan/

S: I'm not Mrs. Lee--my name is Chan.

3. Response Drills.

The response drills involve 1) question stimulus and answer response, or 2) statement stimulus and statement response, or 3) statement stimulus and question response.

Ex. 1: T: Is your name Chan? /Lee/

S: No, it's Lee.

Ex. 2: T: He speaks Cantonese. /Mandarin/

S: He speaks Mandarin too.

Ex. 3: T: He speak Cantonese. /Mandarin/

S: Does he speak Mandarin too?

4. Transformation Drills.

In transformation drills the students transform the grammatical form of the cue sentences from positive to negative to question, according to the pattern set in the example. A positive to negative transformation would be:

Ex: T: Her name is Lee.

S: Her name isn't Lee.

5. Combining Drills.

In combining drills the students make one long sentence from two short cue sentences, according to the pattern set in the example.

Ex: T: It's nine o'clock.

We study Chinese.

S: We study Chinese at nine o'clock.

6. Conversation Drills.

In conversation drills students carry on a conversation following the pattern set by the example. The book or the teacher furnishes cues to vary the content while retaining the structure.

Ex: A: Good morning, Mrs. Lee.
B: Excuse me, I'm not Mrs. Lee. My name is Chan.
A: Oh, excuse me, Miss Chan.
B: That's all right.

A.........Miss Smith.	A. Good morning, Miss Smith.
B..............Brown.	B. Excuse me, I'm not Miss Smith, My name is Brown.
A..................	A: Oh, excuse me, Miss Brown.
B..................	B: That's all right.

__Conversations for Listening__.

The __Conversations for Listening__, recorded on tapes, give the students a chance to listen to further conversations using the vocabulary and sentence patterns of the lesson under study. These can be listened to outside of class and replayed in class, with the teacher then asking questions (in Cantonese of course) on the selections and the students answering. Usually several replays are needed before the students' comprehension of the conversation is complete. After they understand a conversation in its entirety, it is recommended that they play it through two or three more times, listening especially for the expressive elements of intonation and final particles, as these occur primarily in conversation and not as natural features of pattern sentences which the students practice in the drill sections.

After Lesson 10, there will be new vocabulary in the Conversations for Listening, to help the story along. These words and phrases are glossed in Cantonese and English at the foot of each conversation in the printed text, but students will not be held responsible for learning them.

__Say It in Cantonese__.

The __Say It in Cantonese__ section gives situations and sentences in English, and students are to give Cantonese equivalents. This section is to be performed in class for the linguist or the teacher, though the students may prepare it beforehand if they like. Students should recognize that there is often more than one acceptable way to 'say it in Cantonese.'

__Vocabulary Checklist__.

At the end of each lesson is a vocabulary checklist, giving the new vocabulary for that lesson, the part of speech for each entry (noun, verb, etc.), and the English translation.

Suggestions for Further Practice.

The Say it in Cantonese section is the final working section of each lesson. After doing that section the teacher is encouraged to allow time for the students to carry on conversation practice using the material in the lesson. The teacher should be referee for this part, and make sure all students get a chance to participate. Some students are by nature more talkative than others, and the teacher must see to it, by asking a few questions of the more retiring students, that participation in free conversation is fairly evenly distributed and that the naturally talkative students don't do all the talking.

Repeating the dialogue of the Basic Conversations of earlier lessons is a good way to keep those vocabularies and sentences fresh in the students' minds. Also, selections from earlier dialogues can often be used during free conversation practice of the lesson under study.

System of Romanization Used.

The system of romanization used in the text is a modification of the Huang-Kok Yale romanization. It is described in detail in Lesson 1. In comparing Cantonese and Mandarin sentence structures the system of romanization used for the Mandarin is Yale romanization.

SYMBOLS USED IN THIS TEXT

adj	adjective
adj.s.	adjective suffix
adv	adverb
Aux V	auxiliary verb
bf	boundform, boundword
Cj	conjunction
CoV	co-verb
ex	exclamation; example
lit.	literally
m, M	Measure
MA	moveable adverb
n,N	noun
NP	noun phrase
nu	number
P	predicate
PAdv	paired adverb
PCj	paired conjunction
Ph	phrase
PhF	phrase frame
PW	placeword
prep	preposition
pro	pronoun
QV	quod vide (Latin for 'which see')
QW	question word
S	subject
sp	specifier
SPr	sentence prefix
SP	subject-predicate sentence
SVO	subject-verb-object sentence
ss	sentence suffix
sen.suf.	sentence suffix
sur	surname
t	title
TA	term of address
TW	timeword
v,V	verb
VO	verb-object construction
VP	verb phrase
Vsuf	verb suffix
var	variant
(-)	= doesn't occur
[ ]	= 1. re pronunciation = phonetic transcription. 2. in cumulative vocabulary list, following noun entries = M for the N 3. within the text of English gloss = literal translation of the Cantonese term.

CLASSROOM PHRASES

The instructor will address you in Cantonese from the first day of class. The following are some instructions which you should learn to respond to. Look at your books while the instructor reads the phrases the first time. Then close your books, and the teacher will give the phrases several more times, using gestures to help you understand. Repeat the phrases after him, mimicking his movements as well as his voice, to help you absorb the rhythm and meaning.

1. Yìhgā néihdeih tèngjyuh ngóh góng.	Now you (plu.) listen while I speak. (i.e., listen, but don't repeat.)
2. Yìhgā ngóh góng, néihdeih gànjyuh ngóh góng.	Now I'll speak and you repeat after me.
3. Kámmàaih bún syù. or Kámmàaih dī syù.	Close the book. or Close the books.
4. Dáhòi bún syù. or Dáhòi dī syù.	Open the book. or Open the books.
5. Yìhgā yāt go yāt go góng.	Now recite one by one.
6. Yātchàih góng.	Recite all together. (i.e., in chorus)
7. Yìhgā yātchàih gànjyuh ngóh góng.	Now all together repeat after me.
8. Joi góng yāt chi.	Say it again.
9. M̀hhóu tái syù.	Don't look at your book(s).

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(At the beginning of class in the morning)

hohksāang	student

Hohksāang

Hòh	Ho, surname
Sàang	Mr.
Hòh Sàang	Mr. Ho
jóusàhn	"good morning"
Hòh Sàang, jóusàhn.	Good morning, Mr. Ho.
sīnsàang	teacher

Sīnsàang

Léih	Lee, surname
Táai	Mrs.
Léih Táai	Mrs. Lee
Léih Táai, jóusàhn.	Good morning, Mrs. Lee.

Hohksāang

deuim̀hjyuh	excuse me
ngóh	I
haih	am, is, are
m̀h-	not
m̀hhaih	am not, is not, are not
Ngóh m̀hhaih Léih Táai.	I'm not Mrs. Lee.
Deuim̀hjyuh, ngóh m̀hhaih Léih Táai.	Excuse me, I'm not Mrs. Lee.
sing	have the surname
Chàhn	Chan
Ngóh sing Chàhn.	My name is Chan.

Sīnsàang

síujé	Miss; unmarried woman
Chàhn Síujé	Miss Chan
A	Oh, Ah, a mild exclamation
A, deuim̀hjyuh, Chàhn Síujé.	Oh, excuse me, Miss Chan.

Hohksāang

M̀hgányiu.	That's all right. OR It doesn't matter.

(At the end of the day, the students are leaving class.)

Hohksāang	
Joigin.	**Goodbye.**
Sīnsàang	
Joigin.	**Goodbye.**

B. Recapitulation:

(At the beginning of class in the morning:)

Hohksāang	
Hòh Sàang, jóusàhn.	**Good morning, Mr. Ho.**
Sīnsàang	
Léih Táai, jóusàhn.	**Good morning, Mrs. Lee.**
Hohksāang	
Deuim̀hjyuh, ngóh m̀hhaih Léih Táai. Ngóh sing Chàhn.	**Excuse me, I'm not Mrs. Lee. My name is Chan.**
Sīnsàang	
A, deuim̀hjyuh Chàhn Síujé.	**Oh, excuse me, Miss Chan.**
Hohksāang	
M̀hgányiu.	**That's all right.**

(At the end of the day, the students are leaving class:)

Hohksāang	
Joigin.	**Goodbye.**
Sīnsàang	
Joigin.	**Goodbye.**

+ + + + + + + + + + + + + + + +

Introduction to Pronunciation:

A. Tones:

You have probably heard that Chinese languages are tone languages, and know this means that sounds which are the same except for rise and fall of the voice mean different things. This sometimes leads to confusion and/or merriment when a foreigner gets a tone wrong in a phrase, and says 'lazy' when he means 'broken,' 'sugar' when he means 'soup,' 'ghost' when he means 'cupboard,' and so on--and on and on.

In Cantonese there are seven tones, that is seven variations in voice pitch having the power to combine with an otherwise identical syllable to make seven different meanings. This is best illustrated by examples, which your teacher will read to you:

sì	思	think	(High falling tone)
sí	史	history	(High rising tone)
si	試	try	(Mid level tone)
sī	詩	poem	(High level tone)
sìh	時	time	(Low falling tone)
síh	市	a market	(Low rising tone)
sih	事	a matter; business	(Low level tone)

Below is a practice exercise on the seven tones. Close your books and concentrate on listening to the teacher or tape. Repeat loud and clear during the pause after each syllable or group of syllables.

(This practice section on the basic tones was prepared by Prof. James E. Dew.)

1. sì, sì____; sí sí____; si si____; sī sī____; sìh sìh____; síh síh____; sih sih____.
2. sì sí si____; sì sí si____; sì sí si sī____; sì sí si sī____; sìh síh sih____; sìh síh sih____.
3. sì sí____; sì sí____; sìh síh____; sìh síh____; si sih____; si sih____.
4. sì sìh____; sí síh____; sì sìh____; sí síh____; sī si sih____; sī si sih____.
5. fàn fán fan____; fàn fán fan____; fàn fán fan fān____; fàhn fáhn fahn____; fàhn fáhn fahn____.
6. fàn fán____; fàhn fáhn____; fan fān fahn____; fān fan fahn____; fàn fàhn____; fán fáhn____; fàn fán fan fān____; fàhn fáhn fahn____.
7. bà bá ba____; bà bá ba____; màh máh mah____; màh máh mah____; bà bá ba màh máh mah________.
8. bìn bín bin____; bìn bín bin____; bìn bín bin bīn____; mìhn míhn mihn____; mìhn míhn mihn____.
9. bīt bit miht____; bìn bín bin bit bīt____; mìhn míhn mihn miht____; bìn bín bin bit bīt____; mìhn míhn mihn miht____.

10. sì, fàn, bà, bìn___; sí fán bá bín___; si, fan, ba, bin___; sī, fān, bīn, bīt___; sìh, fàhn, màh, mìhn___; síh fáhn, máh, míhn___; sih, fahn, mah, mihn___; sí sí si sī, sih síh sih___; bín bín bin bit bīt, mihn míhn mihn miht___.

Discussion of Tones:

There are seven tones in Standard Cantonese. Their designations, together with examples of each tone, are:

1. high level sī 詩 fān 分
2. high falling sì 思 fàn 婚
3. high rising sí 史 fán 粉
4. mid level si 試 fan 訓
5. low falling sìh 時 fàhn 焚
6. low rising síh 市 fáhn 憤
7. low level sih 事 fahn 份

You will note that the tones have three contours--level, rising, and falling.

There are three level tones: high level, mid level, and low level.

ex: hl: sī 詩
ml: si 試
ll: sih 事

There are two rising tones: high rising and low rising.

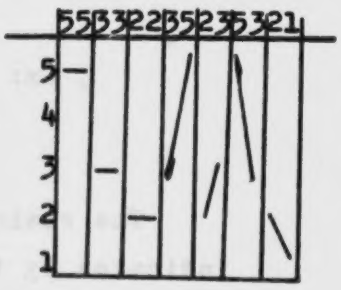
ex: hr: sí 史
lr: síh 市

There are two falling tones: high falling and low falling.

ex: hf: sì 思
lf: sìh 時

Following a chart devised by Y. R. Chao, we graph the tones of Cantonese on a scale of one to five, thus:

high level	:55	sī	詩
mid level	:33	si	試
low level	:22	sih	事
high rising	:35	sí	史
low rising	:23	síh	市
high falling	:53	sì	思
low falling	:21	sìh	時



In present day Standard Cantonese as spoken in Hong Kong the high falling tone seems to be dying out. Many people do not have a high falling tone in their speech, and use high level tone in place of high falling. These people then have just six tones in their speech. In this book we mark seven tones, but your teacher may only have six, and the tapes accompanying the text include the speech of some speakers with only six tones. Copy what you hear. High falling and high level tones are given in the examples below. If you do not hear a difference, your teacher doesn't differentiate.

Ex: high-falling, high-level contrasts:

Ex: 1.	sàam	three	三
	sāam	clothing	衫
2.	fàn	divide	分
	fān	minute	分
3.	Hòh Sàang	Mr. Ho	何生
	hohksāang	student	學生
4.	sì	think	思
	sī	poetry	詩

Tonal Spelling:

The system of tonal spelling we will use in this book is a modified form of the Huang-Kok Yale romanization. This system divides the tones into two groups, an upper register group and a lower register one. The lower register tones are marked by an h following the vowel of the syllable. This h is silent and simply indicates lower register. The upper register group doesn't have the h:

Ex: Upper register tones:	sī	詩
	sì	思
	sí	史
	si	試
Ex: Lower register:	sìh	時
	síh	市
	sih	事

The rising, falling, and level contours of the tones are indicated by the presence or absence of diacritics over the vowel of each syllable. The diacritics are: ˋ, ˊ, ¯, representing falling, rising, and level respectively.

Ex:	à	falling
	á	rising
	ā	level

The absence of a diacritic represents level tone.

Ex: a

Using three diacritics and the low register symbol h, we spell the seven tones thus:

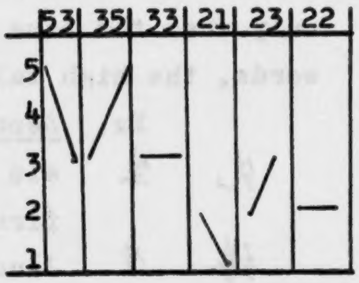
ā	high level
a	mid level
ah	low level
à	high falling
àh	low falling
á	high rising
áh	low rising

The low register symbol h follows the vowel of the syllable. If the syllable ends with a consonant, the h still follows the vowel, but comes before the final consonant.

Ex.	sahp	ten
	sèhng	whole, entire

Traditionally Chinese recite Cantonese tones in upper register-lower register sequence, in the order falling, rising, level, thus:

sì	思	53
sí	史	35
si	試	33
sìh	時	21
síh	市	23
sih	事	22



This is the way Cantonese themselves recite tones. You will note that the high level tone is not recited traditionally. There are historical reasons for this which we won't go into here.

In a few words the consonants m and ng occur as vowels, and in these cases the diacritics are placed above the n of ng and the m.

Ex: m̀h 'not'
ńgh 'five'

Tones in Sequence:

Tone Sandhi. Changes in the basic sound of tones when syllables are spoken in sequence is called tone sandhi. The high falling tone in Cantonese undergoes tone sandhi in certain position, as follows:

1. When high falling tones occur in succession without intervening pause, all but the final one are pronounced as high level.

Ex: hf + hf becomes hl + hf

燒 豬	1.	sìu	jỳu ------	sīujyù	燒豬
		roast	pig	roast pork	
傷 風	2.	sèung	fùng ----	sēung fùng	傷風
		hurt	wind	to catch cold	
傷 風 添	3.	sèung fùng	tìm! --	sēung fūng tìm!	傷風添
		hurt wind	!	caught cold!	

2. When a high falling tone occurs before a high level tone without intervening pause, it is pronounced as high level.

Ex: hf + hl becomes hl + hl

租 屋	1.	jòu	ūk -------	jōu ūk	租屋
		rent	house	to rent a house	
西 餐	2.	sài	chāan ---	sāichāan	西餐
		west	meal	western food	

In this book high falling tone has been written high level only when the tone sandhi is within word boundaries. For separate words, the high falling will be marked with its usual diacritic.

Ex.	Separate forms		Combined forms	
先 生	sin	sàang -------	sīnsàang	先生
	first	born	man, teacher, Mr.	
張 生	Jèung	Sàang -------	Jèung Sàang	張生
	Cheung	Mr.	Mr. Cheung	

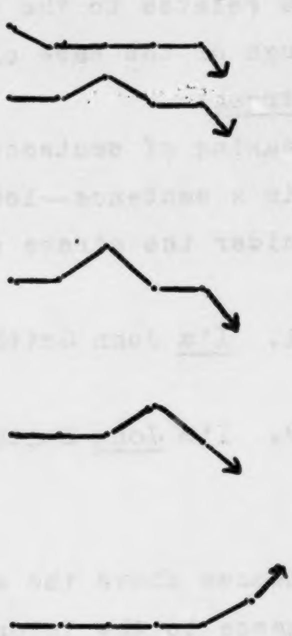
Tones not 'sung.'

That Cantonese is a tone language does not mean that sentences in it are sung as you would sing a musical phrase. Music has sustained notes and strict rhythmic scheme, the spoken language does not. At first you may feel that Cantonese sounds sing-song,

but practice will bring familiarity and soon it will sound natural to you.

B. Intonation:

A sentence may be said different ways, to stress different points in the sentence and also to express what the speaker feels about what he is saying. To give an English example, the sentence 'So glad you could come,' may be said:



Sentence:	Contour:	Indicates:
1. So glad you could come.		**normal polite**
2. So glad you could come.		**effusive polite**
3a. So glad you could come.		**(even if your wife couldn't make it)--cordial**
3b. So glad you could come.		**(even if your wife couldn't)--sarcastic**
4. So glad you could come.		**(after having thought you couldn't)--cordial**
5. They were glad you could come?		**question**

The graphs of the sentence contours above represent the rise and fall of the voice pitch throughout the length of the sentence. This rise and fall over sentence length we call an "intonation."

You will note that the question sentence (#5) rises in pitch at the end, and the statement sentences (#1 - 4) all end with falling pitch, although within their contours rise and fall occurs at different points. In English sentence-final fall is the norm, and sentence-final rise expresses doubt.

Intonation also has another job within a sentence--it can express how the speaker feels about what he is saying. By expressive rise and fall of his voice, by varying his "tone of voice," the speaker can indicate that he is angry or happy, doubtful or certain, being polite or rude, suggesting or demanding.

Cantonese sentences too exhibit intonation contours. Sentence-final contours in particular are much more varied in Cantonese than in English, and capable of expressing quite a range of emotional implications.

You may wonder how intonation affects the tone situation in Cantonese, each syllable having as it does its characteristic tone. How the tone contours operate in the framework of sentence contour has been compared to the action of ripples riding on top of waves. Each ripple relates to the one before it and behind it, whether in the trough of the wave or on the crest.

Sentence Stress:

In speaking of sentence stress we mean relative prominence of syllables in a sentence--loud or soft (heavy or light), rapid or slow. Consider the stress pattern of the following English sentences:

1.	I'm John Smith.	(In response to "Which one of you is John Smith?")
2.	I'm John Smith.	(In response to "I was supposed to give this letter to Tom Smith.")

In the sentences above the stressed syllables (those underlined) give prominence to the information requested in the stimulus sentences.

In certain sentences stress differences alone indicate difference in message content. The pair of sentences often quoted in illustration of this is:

1.	Ship sails today.	(The ship will sail today.)
2.	Ship sails today.	(Please ship the sails today.)

Another example, from a headline in a newspaper:

Boy Scratching Cat Is Caught, Destroyed

How do you stress that one?

Sentence Pause:

Another feature important in establishing natural sentence rhythm is pause--the small silences between groups of syllables. Note the following English sentences:

> In considering him for the job he took
> into account his education, previous
> experience, and appraised potential.

There is a pause between "job" and "he" in the sentence above, and if you read it instead pausing after "took," you find the sentence doesn't make sense--you have to go back and read it again putting a pause in the right place.

We will not discuss Cantonese stress and pause features in this Introduction, other than to say that Cantonese sentences, like English ones, do exhibit stress and pause phenomena, as well as intonational ones. What this effectively means for you as a student is that you must not concentrate solely on learning words as individual isolated units; but in imitating the teacher's spoken model, you should be alert to his delivery of phrase-length segments and whole sentences, and should mimic the stress, pause, and intonation of the phrases you repeat.

C. Consonants and Vowels

We regard the syllable in Cantonese as being composed of an initial and a final. The initials are consonants. The finals are vowels, or vowels plus consonants. Tones are also included as part of the final.

The practices that follow include all the initials and finals in Cantonese. They were prepared by James E. Dew.

Initials. Repeat after each syllable in the pause provided. Concentrate on the initial sound of each syllable.

1. bò bò , pò pò , mò mò , fò fò
2. dò dò , tò tò , nò nò , lò lò
3. jà jà , chà chà , sà sà , yà yà
4. gà gà , kà kà , ngà ngà , hà hà
5. gwà gwà , kwà kwà , wà wà

Finals. Listen carefully and repeat in the pauses provided. Concentrate on the finals--the vowels and vowel+consonant combinations. (Tones are not marked.)

a		e	eu	i	o	u	yu
ga 架		je 借	heu 靴	ji 至	go 個	wu 惡	jyu 註
gaai 界	gai 計	gei 記	geui 句		goi 蓋	fui 悔	
gaau 教	gau 夠			giu 叫	gou 告		
gaam 監	gam 禁			gim 劍			
gaan 澗	gan 艮		deun 敦	gin 見	gon 幹	gun 冠	gyun 絹
gaang	gang 更	geng 鏡	geun 羌	ging 敬	gong 鋼	gung 供	
gaap 甲	gap 鴿			gip 劫			
baat 八	bat 筆		cheut 出	git 結	got 割	fut 闊	kyut 決
baak 百	bak 北	kek 劇	geuk 脚	gik	gok 覺	guk 焗	

The Mechanics of Producing speech sounds:

In speaking we make use of 1) air, 2) the vibration ofthe vocal chords (i.e. the voice), and 3) the position of the tongue and other members of the mouth to produce speech sounds. The air originates in the lungs and is released through the mouth, the vocal chords vibrate to produce voiced sounds, and the position of the tongue and other members affect the shape of the vocal instrument and thus the sounds it produces.

Consonants:

1) Air:

Air flow, originating in the lungs and released through the mouth, is required for all speech sounds, but different manner of air release produces different sounds. The manner of release is particularly important for consonant sounds. For consonant sounds friction is created at some point in the oral passageway by resistance to the flow of air. The point of resistance to the air flow and the manner of release from this resistance are important contributing factors in how consonants are made. There are several routes through which the air may be released:

A. Nasal release: Air can be released through the nose, producing nasal sounds. Try prolonging the English sounds m and n. mmmmm, nnnnn. While you are prolonging these sounds, hold your nose and you notice you can't say m or n. That's because the air flow is released through the nose in saying m and n.

B. Lateral release: The air release can be over the surface of the side of the tongue. Prolong the English sound l. lllll. Then breathe in and out through your mouth without moving your tongue from its l position. Can you feel that the air passes laterally out one or both sides of your mouth? For me, the air release for l is from both sides. Do you release the air to the right, or to the left, or from both sides?

C. Stop and Release, with and without Aspiration: Another manner of air release is for the air flow to be blocked at some point in the mouth and then released, letting the air flow through. When you make the English sounds p-, t-, k-, you notice that the air flow is first blocked at different points, and then released.

The stop releases can be either aspirated or unaspirated. In reference to language sounds 'aspirated' means released with a puff of air. Compare the English sounds p-, t-, k-, and b-, d-, g-. If you put your hand close to your mouth as you say p-, t-, k-, you will notice that you feel your breath against your hand. Say b-, d-, g-, and you find you do not feel your breath against your hand, or at least not as much so. The p-, t-, k- sounds are aspirated, the b-, d-, g- ones unaspirated.

Try:

p-	b-
t-	d-
k-	g-

D. Spirant release: When air is released through a narrow passage under pressure, a hissing sound is produced, as in s- sssss, and h- hhhhh. We refer to this type of air release as spirant release.

2) **Voicing:**

Voiced and Voiceless Consonants: The vocal chords vibrate to produce some sounds--which we refer to as voiced sounds--and do not vibrate in the production of other sounds--which are refered to as voiceless. For example, in English the 'z' sound is a voiced sound and the 's' sound is a voiceless one.

Prolong the buzzing sound of 'z'--zzzzz. You can hear the voicing, and if you put your hand on your throat over the Adam's apple, you can feel the vibration of the vocal chords. Prolong the hissing sound of 's'--sssss. Notice that voicing ceases, the vocal chords do not vibrate. In Cantonese the only consonants that are voiced are the nasals--m, n, and ng.

3) Position of tongue and other members: Different position of the tongue and other members of the mouth forms the third element in producing speech sounds. Note for example how the difference in tongue position produces different sounds in the English words 'tea' and 'key.' For 't,' the tip of tongue touches the roof of the mouth at the gum ridge behind the upper teeth. Try it: t-, t-, t-, tea. For 'k,' the back of the tongue touches the roof of the mouth at the back: k-, k-, k-, key.

We will describe the consonants of Cantonese in terms of air release, voicing, and position of tongue and other members of the vocal aparatus. We will concentrate primarily on those sounds which are problems for Americans.

Vowels:

Production of vowels, like production of consonants, is a matter of air flow, voicing, and positioning.

1. Air Flow:

Whereas in making a consonant sound friction is created by resistance at some point in the passageway to the flow of air, in making vowels the passageway does not resist the flow of air, and the sound produced is therefore frictionless. The presence or absence of friction is a factor distinguishing consonants and vowels.

2. Vibrating of vocal chords (Voicing):

Vowels are voiced sounds. Under certain circumstances, such as whispering, vowels may be de-voiced, but voicing for vowels is taken as a given, and when exceptions occur, they are specifically noted.

A feature of voicing which is potentially significant for vowels is vowel length. In some languages different vowel length in an otherwise identical syllable can produce different words.

Example: In German, the following two words differ in pronunciation only in the length of their vowels:

staat	[šta˙t]	'state'
statt	[štaˇt]	'place'

3. **Positioning:**

In positioning for vowel sounds the important contributing factors are how the lips and tongue are placed.

The lips, in making vowel sounds, are described in terms of whether they are rounded or unrounded (spread). For example, in English, the 'i' of 'pit' is a vowel said with lips spread, and the 'u' of 'put' is said with lips rounded. There are vowels which are produced with lips neither markedly rounded or spread, such as 'a' in 'father.' This type is not described in terms of lip position. If a vowel is not described as being rounded or spread, you can assume that the lip position is midway between rounded and spread. We will use the terms 'unrounded' and 'spread' interchangeably.

Tongue position for vowels is described in vertical terms and in horizontal terms. On the vertical we speak of the tongue height of a vowel. For example, take the vowels of 'pit,' 'pet,' and 'pat' in English. You notice that the forward part of the tongue is relatively high towards the roof of the mouth in saying the 'i' of 'pit,' that it drops somewhat to say the 'e' of 'pet,' and drops still lower to say the 'a' of 'pat.' These positions might also be described in terms of how wide the lower jaw opens in making the sounds--narrow for the 'i,' medium for the 'e,' and wide for the 'a.' However, since description in terms of tongue height has become standard, we will adopt the standard description here, and speak of vowels in terms of high, mid, and low in reference to tongue height. Deviations from these cardinal positions are described in terms of higher-mid, lower-mid, etc.

Horizontally, tongue position is described in terms of front, central, and back. In English the vowels of 'pit,' 'pet,' and 'pat' are all front vowels, with the points of reference for 'front' being the blade of the tongue and the dental ridge. 'Pit,' 'pet,' and 'pat' are high front, mid front, and low front respectively. For the central vowels the points of reference in the oral passageway are the center surface of the tongue and the hard palate. In English the vowels of 'putt' and 'pot' are, central vowels. For the back vowels the points of reference in the passageway are the back surface of the tongue and the soft palate. In English the vowels of 'put,' 'pole,' and 'paw' are back vowels. Deviations are described in terms of being fronted or backed from the cardinal positions.

Pronunciation Practice:

1. ch, as in Chàhn

ch is an initial consonant in Cantonese. We describe the ch sound in terms of voicing, air flow, and position of tongue against the roof of the mouth. Like the American ch sound in "chance," the Cantonese ch is voiceless. In terms of air air flow the American and Cantonese ch's are alike--both are stops with aspirated release. The tongue pressing against the roof of the mouth stops the flow of air entirely, then lets go and allows the air to flow through again, accompanied by a puff of air. The tongue position for the American ch and Cantonese ch differs. For the Cantonese ch sound, the tongue rests flat against the dental ridge (the ridge just behind the upper teeth) and the blade part of the tongue, that part just back from the tip, blocks the air passage at the dental ridge. The blade of the tongue is pressed flat against the ridge: [tʃ] The American ch the contact point is the tip of the tongue, not the blade of the tongue; the tongue is grooved, not flat; and the contact point on the roof of the mouth is a little farther back on the dental ridge than for the Cantonese ch sound.

Compare--Listen and repeat: (Read across)

English:	chance	ch	ch	ch	chance	
Cantonese:	Chàhn	ch	ch	ch	Chàhn	陳
	chàn	ch	ch	ch	chàn	親

2. j, as in joigin, jóusàhn, Jèung, síujé

J is an initial consonant in Cantonese. We describe the j sound in terms of voicing, air flow, and position of the tongue against the roof of the mouth. Unlike the American j sound (in 'joy'), the Cantonese j sound is voiceless. In terms of air flow the American and Cantonese j's are alike--both are stops with unaspirated release. The tongue, pressing against the roof of the mouth, stops the flow of air entirely, then lets go and allows the air to flow through again, without aspiration (accompanying puff of air). The tongue position for the Cantonese j is the same as that for the Cantonese ch, different from that of the American counterpart. For the Cantonese j sound the blade of the tongue, resting flat against the dental ridge, blocks the air passage: [tɕ] For the American j the tip of the tongue, grooved, blocks the air passage at a point a little farther back on the dental ridge than for the Cantonese j. When air is released, it flows over a grooved tongue surface for the American sound, a flat tongue surface for the Cantonese sound.

Compare English and Cantonese similar syllables:

Listen and repeat: (Read across)

	English	Cantonese
1.	Joe (3 times)	jóu (3 times) 早
2.	joy (3 times)	joi (3 times) 再
3.	Jess (3 times)	jé (3 times) 姐

The Cantonese j sound is said with lips rounded before rounded vowels, and spread before unrounded vowels. (Rounded vowels are those pronounced with the lips rounded, unrounded vowels those that are not.)

Watch the teacher, listen and repeat: (read across)

Ex:		rounded	unrounded
	1.	Jóu 早 (3 times)	jé 姐 (3 times)
	2.	joi 再 (3 times)	jé 姐 (3 times)

Some speakers of Standard Cantonese use slightly different tongue positions for the j sound, depending on whether it comes before a rounded or unrounded vowel. Other speakers use the tongue position described for j above throughout. Those that use different positions before rounded and unrounded vowels use the position described above before unrounded vowels. Before rounded vowels they retract their tongue a bit and use the tip of the tongue instead of the part just behind the tip as contact point for making j. Listen and see if your teacher's j sounds the same or different before rounded and unrounded vowels.

Listen: (Watch the teacher:)

rounded	unrounded
jó 左	je 借
joi 再	ja 榨
jóu 早	

What has been said in regard to lip-rounding for the j applies also to ch sounds in Cantonese, but we will not practice this feature in relation to ch until it comes up in the Basic Conversations.

3. ng, as in ngóh

ng is a voiced nasal initial consonant in Cantonese. In position, the back surface of the tongue presses against the roof of the mouth at the soft palate, in the same position as for the English word "sing." We refer to this position as velar, making an adjective of the word velum, the technical term for soft palate. ng is a velar nasal consonant, which in Cantonese may occupy initial position in a syllable.

Listen and repeat:

ngóh 我 (6 times)

The only reason this sound may be hard for English speakers is that we don't have any words beginning with ng in English, though we have many ending with the same sound.

If you have trouble, try saying "sing on" in English, and then say the si part of "sing" silently, beginning to voice on the -ng part:

sing on
(si)ng on
----ng on

Now try initial ng again:

Listen and repeat:

ngóh 我 (5 times)

4. o, and in Hòh, ngóh

o is a final in Cantonese. It is a mid back rounded vowel--[ɔ]. The closest American sound is the vowel sound of general American "dog," but with more rounding of the lips than in English. In Cantonese a rounded vowel has a rounding effect on a consonant preceding it in a syllable. Watch your teacher and note that in syllables with an o vowel, he rounds his lips for the preceding consonant too.

Listen, watch the teacher, and repeat:

ngóh 我 (5 times)
Hòh 何 (5 times)

5. yu, as in deuim̀hjyuh

yu is a single vowel spelled with two letters. yu is a high front rounded vowel--[ü], occuring as a final in Cantonese. There is no counterpart vowel in American English with a similar sound, but you can produce the sound by protruding your lips while you sustain the "ee" [i] sound of the English letter "E." The "long e" [i] sound in English is a high front unrounded vowel. Rounding the lips produces a high front rounded vowel.

Listen, watch the teacher, and repeat:

1. deuim̀hjyuh jyuh jyuh
2. jyuh 住 (3 times)
3. yú 魚 (fish) (3 times)

6. eu

eu is a single vowel spelled with two letters. eu is a mid front rounded vowel--[ø], occuring as a final in Cantonese only in a very few words. There is no counterpart vowel in American English with a similar sound, but you can produce the sound by protruding your lips while you sustain the "e" [E] sound of the English word "less." This "short e" [E] sound in English is a mid front unrounded vowel. Rounding the lips makes it a rounded vowel. In Cantonese a rounded vowel has a rounding effect on a consonant preceding it in a syllable.

Watch your teacher, listen, and repeat:

lēu	'spit out'
hēu 靴	'boot'
dēu	'tiny bit'

7. eung, as in Jèung

eung is a two-part final composed of the mid front rounded vowel eu [ø] plus the velar nasal consonant ng. There is no close English counterpart. As a rounded final, eung has a rounding effect on a consonant preceding it in a syllable.

Watch the teacher, listen, and repeat:

Jèung 張 (5 times)

The eu portion of eung is not nasalized. In English, a vowel before a nasal final is nasalized--that is, part of the air release for the vowel goes through the nose. To illustrate the English situation, hold your nose and say the following English words:

sue
soon
see
seem
sit
sing

You notice that the vowels of the words with nasal finals (-n, -m, and -ng) are partially blocked when the nose is blocked, thus revealing that for such vowels some of the air is normally released through the nose. The vowels of the words which do not end in a nasal are unaffected by clocking the nasal passage. They are 'open' vowels, not 'nasalized' vowels.

In Cantonese, a vowel before a nasal final is not nasalized--All of the air is released through the mouth for the vowel portion. Test whether you can keep the vowel open before nasal final by stopping you nose as you say:

Jèung (5 times)

To practice the open vowel before a nasal final, try saying the following pairs of words in which -eu and -eung are contrasted. To make the -eung sound, pretend through the -eu part that you are going to say -eu, then add the -ng as an after-thought. You will then have an open eu followed by the nasal ng sound.

	-eu	-eung
1.	hēu 靴 boot	hèung 香 fragrant

2. lēu to spit out léuhng 両 two
3. geu 鋸 to saw gèung 羌 ginger
4. jeuk 着 to wear Jèung 張 surname Cheung

8. eui, as in deuim̀hjyuh

eui is a two-part final composed of the mid front rounded vowel eu plus the high front rounded vowel yu [ü]. (We spell the second part of this two-part final with i instead of yu--eui instead of euyu, the latter being extremely awkward-looking.) The major force of the voice falls on the eu part, with the yu (spelled i) part an offglide.

Listen and repeat:

1. deuim̀hjyuh 對唔住 (3 times)
2. deui 對 (3 times)

The tongue position for eu before i is slightly lower and more backed than it is for eu before ng. eui = [$\text{œ}^{\text{ü}}$]; eung = [øŋ].

Listen and watch for differences in eu sound: (Read across)

1. Jèung 張 Jèung Jèung Jèung
2. deui 對 deui deui deui
3. Jèung 張 deui 對 (4 times)
4. deui 對 Jèung 張 (4 times)

9. an, as in Chàhn, jóusàhn, m̀hgányiu

an is a two-part final composed of the backed mid central vowel a [ə˃] plus the dental nasal consonant n. Tongue height for the Cantonese a [ə˃] is lower than that for American vowel in "cup," higher than that for American vowel in "cop," and more backed than either of the American counterparts. Before the nasal final the Cantonese vowel is not nasalized, as an American vowel before a nasal final would be. The Cantonese vowel is shorter and tenser than the American counterparts.

Listen, watch the teacher, and repeat:

1. Chàhn (4 times) 陳
2. jóusàhn (4 times) 早晨
3. m̀hgányiu (4 times) 唔緊要

Compare English and Cantonese syllables:

Listen and repeat: (Read across)

English	Cantonese
1. John John	Chàhn Chàhn 陳

2. sun sun san sàn 中

10. m as in m̀h

The bilabial nasal consonant m occurs as a vowel, in that the consonant m is syllabic in the syllable m̀h.

Listen and repeat:

1. m̀hhaih (2 times)
2. haih m̀hhaih a? (2 times)

11. Tone practice with words in Lesson 1:

Listen and repeat:

1. Jèung, jóu, sing ; Hòh, Léih, haih .
2. Jèung, jóu, sing ; Hòh, Léih, haih .
3. Jèung, Jèung ; Hòh, Hòh .
4. jóu, jóu ; Léih, Léih .
5. jóu, Léih ; Léih, jóu .
6. sing, sing ; haih, haih .
7. sing, haih ; haih, sing .
8. Jèung, Hòh ; jóu, Léih ; sing, haih .
9. Hòh, Jèung ; Léih, jóu ; haih, sing .

II. Notes:

A. Culture Notes

1. Surname and titles.

a. Titles follow surnames: (Drills 1-6)

Léih Sàang	'Mr. Lee'
Léih Táai	'Mrs. Lee'
Léih Síujé	'Miss Lee'

b. Sàang/Sīnsàang and Táai/Taaitáai

Sàang and Sīnsàang, Táai and Taaitáai are alternate forms for 'Mr.' and 'Mrs.' respectively.

Léih Sīnsàang	'Mr. Lee'
Léih Taaitáai	'Mrs. Lee'

Native speakers differ in respect to their use of Sàang and Sīnsàang, and Táai and Taaitáai as titles to surnames. Some say that the full forms denote more respect and the short forms are used in informal situations only. Others say that as title to surnames the longer forms are used only in letters and that in speech, *Sàang* and *Táai* are used even for subordinates speaking to superiors. Everyone seems to agree that on the telephone both long forms and the short forms are common. In this book we have used the short forms almost exclusively, but you--when you get into a Cantonese speaking situation--keep your ears peeled and imitate what your Cantonese peers are saying. Incidentally, you will notice that what people say and what they say they say do not always coincide exactly. Also, different people may disagree vehemently about what is 'right.' This is confusing to the beginning student. Be advised, however, that the area of disagreement is on peripheral matters. If your teachers disagree about two forms, you may safely conclude that both forms are used. *taaitáai* basically = 'married woman;' *sīnsàang* = 'man.'

c. *Sīnsàang* as 'teacher'

Sīnsàang meaning 'teacher' may be used with or without a surname attached. A woman teacher named Wong may be addressed as *Sīnsàang* or as *Wòhng Sīnsàang*.

d. *Síujé*, 'unmarried woman,' used as title

In addressing a woman whose name you do not know, it is appropriate to address her as *Síujé*, no matter how old she is, and even if you know she is married. In addressing a woman by her maiden name, the appropriate title is *Síujé*. Ex: *Wòhng Síujé*. It is the custom for Chinese women to use their maiden names in business life, so it often turns out that someone addressed as *Síujé* is married.

e. It is inappropriate to refer to oneself by title in a social situation. Avoid saying "Ngóh haih *Smith* Sàang." Say instead "Ngóh sing *Smith*." (See Drill 5).

2. *sing*, V/N to have the surname of; surname

Sing is the surname one is born with. For married women, equivalent to the English *née*. The English and American custom is for a woman's surname to change at the time of marriage to that of her husband. The Cantonese *sing* does not change upon marriage. When you ask a woman her surname, ordinarily she gives her maiden name in response. If it is a social gathering, she might add something like "Ngóh sīnsàang sing..., My husband has the surname...."

B. Structure Notes

1. Relationship of Cantonese to other Chinese languages.

Cantonese is traditionally called a dialect of Chinese. The major dialect of Chinese being Mandarin, and other important dialects in addition to Cantonese, are Shanghai, Fukkienese (also called Hokkienese or Amoy), and Hakka. Mandarin is considered the major dialect because it is spoken by the greatest number of people and, more importantly, because it has been prompted as the national standard language by both the Communist Chinese government on Mainland China and the Nationalist Chinese government on Taiwan.

Although historically descended from a single mother tongue, the various Chinese dialects are today different languages. A person who speaks only Cantonese cannot understand a person who speaks only Mandarin, Shanghai, Fukkienese, or Hakka. However, if two speakers of two different Chinese languages can read, they can communicate, since Chinese has a uniform writing system which is not based on sound. (A Western comparison can be made in the number system, in which '2' is intelligible without reference to pronunciation.)

The languages of the Chinese family group are different--and similar--on three levels: vocabulary, grammatical sentence structure, and phonological sound system. The level of greatest similarity is in that of the grammatical sentence structure. Students who have studied another Chinese language will find that in great measure they already 'know' the sentence patterns of Cantonese. In preparing this book we at first planned to make a Cantonese-Mandarin grammatical appendix to list the grammatically different structures, the idea being that they were listable, being so few of them. To draw a parallel we wrote out the Basic Conversations of the first 15 lessons in Mandarin translation and found to our surprise quite a lot more differences than we had expected. The differences, however, were mostly in the nature of 'You could say it that way--that sentence pattern exists in Cantonese--but actually that's not the way we say it, we say it this way.' We therefore didn't make the appendix, but for the benefit of students who have previously studied Mandarin, we have used the Notes section to draw attention to basic grammatical differences where they come up in the text.

On the level of vocabulary there are greater differences than

on the level of grammatical structure, but still a great deal of similarity. A rough check of the first 10 lessons of this book reveals that more than 55% of the Cantonese expressions have identical Mandarin counterparts.

In pronunciation, differences are greater still, but there are systematic correspondences. For example, ai in Mandarin is oi in Cantonese. In total, though, the phonological correspondences are quite complex, as witnessed by a series of articles on the subject in a Japanese linguistic journal which runs 26 pages long.

2. Sentence Types--full sentences and minor sentences.

   a. Full sentences have two parts--subject and predicate, in that order. Examples from the Basic Conversation of Lesson One are:

      1. Ngóh m̀hhaih Léih Táai. I am not Mrs. Lee.
      2. Ngóh sing Chàhn. I am surnamed Chan.

      In these sentences Ngóh is the subject and the remainder of each sentence is the predicate.

   b. Minor sentences are not in subject-predicate form. Minor sentences are common as responses, commands, exclamations. In Lesson One there are several minor sentences in the Basic Conversation:

      1. Hòh Sàang, jóusàhn. Good morning, Mr. Ho.
      2. Joigin. Goodbye.
      3. M̀hgányiu. That's all right. [literally: Not important.]

3. Verbs.

   In Cantonese, words which can be preceded by the negative m̀h are regarded as verbs. There are a few cases in which this rule doesn't work, but basically, you can test whether a new word you hear is a verb by asking whether you can say m̀h (new word). Is ngóh a verb? Ask the teacher whether it's OK to say m̀h ngóh. Is haih a verb? Ask the teacher whether it's OK to say m̀h haih.

4. Adverbs.

   In Cantonese an adverb is a word or word group which forms a construction with a verb. In most cases in Cantonese adverbs precede the verb they belong with. An example from Lesson 1 is m̀h-, 'not,' which precedes a verb to form the negative.

5. Phrases.

   We give the name 'phrase' to a group of words which has a specialized meaning as a group. For example, in English, spill + water = spill the water, and spill + beans = spill the beans. Spill the water is a simple Verb + Object construction. Spill the beans may be, but it may also be a phrase whose meaning differs from the added together meaning of the individual words. This type of phrase is often called an idiom, or an idiomatic expression. In this lesson M̀hgányiu, 'It doesn't matter; That's all right; Never mind,' is such a phrase.

We also give the name 'phrase' to another kind of construction--a group of words whose total meaning may be the same as the added together meaning of the individual words, but which we don't feel is necessary for you to analyze and learn separately in the first stage of learning Cantonese. It may even be that the fact that the construction is grammatically a word group and not a single word may not be apparent, since the construction may be written as a single word. Examples are m̀hhóu 'don't' in the Classroom Phrases of Lesson 1 and sèsíu 'a little' in Lesson 3.

6. Lead Sentences and Follow Sentences.

   a. It's a pretty day today.
   b. How about you?
   c. Where?

a, b and c are all sentences, and all are intelligible, but in b and c as stated it is not clear what is happening. Without drawing too rigid lines, we are going to distinguish between lead sentences--sentences that are intelligible as self-contained units, and follow sentences, ones which depend upon information supplied by a preceding sentence or the context for full intelligibility.

III. DRILLS

1. Substitution Drill: Substitute joigin in the position of jóusàhn following the pattern of the example sentence.

Ex: T: Léih Táai, jóusàhn.	T: Good morning, Mrs. Lee.
S: Léih Táai, joigin.	S: Goodbye, Mrs. Lee.
1. Chàhn Táai, jóusàhn.	1. Chàhn Táai, joigin.

+ 2. Làuh Sàang, jóusàhn. (Good morning, Mr. Lau.)	2. Làuh Sàang, joigin.
+ 3. Jèung Síujé, jóusàhn (Good morning, Miss Cheung.)	3. Jèung Síujé, joigin.
+ 4. Máh Sàang, jóusàhn. (Good morning, Mr. Ma.)	4. Máh Sàang, joigin.
5. Léih Táai, jóusàhn.	5. Léih Táai, joigin.

---

2. Substitution Drill: Substitute the cue in the appropriate position following the pattern of the example sentence.

Ex: T: Léih Táai, jóusàhn. /Chàhn/	T: Good morning, Mrs. Lee. /Chan/
S: Chàhn Táai, jóusàhn.	S: Good morning, Mrs. Chan.

1. Chàhn Táai, jóusàhn. /Léih/	1. Léih Táai, jóusàhn.
+ 2. Léih Táai, jóusàhn. /Wòhng/ (Wong)	2. Wòhng Táai, jóusàhn.
3. Wòhng Táai, jóusàhn. /Hòh/	3. Hòh Táai, jóusàhn.
4. Hòh Táai, jóusàhn. /Jèung/	4. Jèung Táai, jóusàhn.
5. Làuh Táai, jóusàhn. /Chàhn/	5. Chàhn Táai, jóusàhn.

---

3. Substitution Drill: Substitute the cue in the appropriate position, following the pattern of the example sentence.

Ex: T: Wòhng Sàang, jóusàhn. /Táai/	T: Good morning, Mr. Wong. /Mrs./
S: Wòhng Táai, jóusàhn.	S: Good morning, Mrs. Wong.

1. Wòhng Táai, jóusàhn. /Síujé/	1. Wòhng Síujé, jóusàhn.
2. Wòhng Síujé, jóusàhn. /Làuh/	2. Làuh Síujé, jóusàhn.
3. Làuh Síujé, jóusàhn. /joigin/	3. Làuh Síujé, joigin.
4. Làuh Síujé, joigin. /Sàang/	4. Làuh Sàang, joigin.
5. Làuh Sàang, joigin. /Táai/	5. Làuh Táai, joigin.

---

4. Expansion Drill: Expand the cue sentence as indicated in the example.

Ex: T: Ngóh m̀hhaih Wòhng Sàang.	T: I'm not Mr. Wong.
S: Deuim̀hjyuh, ngóh m̀hhaih Wòhng Sàang.	S: I beg your pardon, I'm not Mr. Wong.
1. Ngóh m̀hhaih Léih Síujé.	1. Deuim̀hjyuh, ngóh m̀hhaih Léih Síujé.
2. Ngóh m̀hhaih Chàhn Sàang.	2. Deuim̀hjyuh, ngóh m̀hhaih Chàhn Sàang.
3. Ngóh m̀hhaih Jèung Táai.	3. Deuim̀hjyuh, ngóh m̀hhaih Jèung Táai.
4. Ngóh m̀hhaih Hòh Sàang.	4. Deuim̀hjyuh, ngóh m̀hhaih Hòh Sàang.
5. Ngóh m̀hhaih Wòhng Táai.	5. Deuim̀hjyuh, ngóh m̀hhaih Wòhng Táai.

---

5. Expansion Drill: Expand the cue sentences to conform with the pattern of the example.

Ex: T: Ngóh m̀hhaih Léih Táai. /Jèung/	T: I'm not Mrs. Lee. /Cheung/
S: Ngóh m̀hhaih Léih Táai, ngóh sing Jèung.	S: I'm not Mrs. Lee, my name is Cheung.
1. Ngóh m̀hhaih Hòh Táai. /Chàhn/	1. Ngóh m̀hhaih Hòh Táai, ngóh sing Chàhn.
2. Ngóh m̀hhaih Chàhn Síujé. /Máh/	2. Ngóh m̀hhaih Chàhn Síujé, ngóh sing Máh.
3. Ngóh m̀hhaih Máh Sàang. /Wòhng/	3. Ngóh m̀hhaih Máh Sàang, ngóh sing Wòhng.
4. Ngóh m̀hhaih Wòhng Táai. /Jèung/	4. Ngóh m̀hhaih Wòhng Táai, ngóh sing Jèung.
5. Ngóh m̀hhaih Léih Táai. /Hòh/	5. Ngóh m̀hhaih Léih Táai, ngóh sing Hòh.

---

6. Conversation Drill: Carry on the suggested conversation following the model of the example.

Ex: A: Chàhn Sàang, jóusàhn.	A: Good morning Mr. Chan.
B: Deuim̀jyuh, ngóh m̀haih Chàhn Sàang. Ngóh sing Jēung.	B: I beg your pardon, I'm not Mr. Chan. My name is Cheung.
A: À, deuim̀jyuh, Jēung Sàang.	A: A, excuse me, Mr. Cheung.
B: M̀hgányiu.	B: That's OK.

1. A: Chàhn Síujé..........	1. A: Chàhn Síujé, jóusàhn.
B: ....Wòhng.	B: Deuim̀jyuh, ngóh m̀haih Chàhn Síujé. Ngóh sing Wòhng.
A:	A: À, deuim̀jyuh, Wòhng Síujé.
B:	B: M̀hgányiu.
2. A: Jēung Síujé	2. A: Jēung Síujé, jóusàhn.
B: ....Léih.	B: Deuim̀jyuh, ngóh m̀haih Jēung Síujé. Ngóh sing Léih.
A:	A: À, deuim̀jyuh, Léih Síujé.
B:	B: M̀hgányiu.
3. A: Hòh Sàang	3. A: Hòh Sàang, jóusàhn.
B: ....Wòhng.	B: Deuim̀jyuh, ngóh m̀haih Hòh Sàang. Ngóh sing Wòhng.
A:	A: À, deuim̀jyuh, Wòhng Sàang.
B:	B: M̀hgányiu.
4. A: Jēung Sàang	4. A: Jēung Sàang, jóusàhn.
B: ....Léih.	B: Deuim̀jyuh, ngóh m̀haih Jēung Sàang. Ngóh sing Léih.
A:	A: À, deuim̀jyuh, Léih Sàang.
B:	B: M̀hgányiu.
5. A: Chàhn Síujé	5. A: Chàhn Síujé, jóusàhn.
B: ....Làhm.	B: Deuim̀jyuh, ngóh m̀haih Chàhn Síujé. Ngóh sing Làhm.

A: ....   A: A, deuiǹhjyuh, Làuh Síujé.

B: ....   B: Ǹhgányiu.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 1

1. A	ex:	Oh
2. Chàhn	sur:	Chan
3. deuiǹhjyuh	ph:	Excuse me; I beg your pardon; I'm sorry.
4. haih	v:	is, am, are, were, etc.
5. Hòh	sur:	Ho
6. hohksāang	n:	student
7. Jēung	sur:	Cheung
8. Joigin	Ph:	Goodbye
9. Jóusàhn	Ph:	Good morning
10. Làuh	sur:	Lau
11. Léih	sur:	Li
12. Máh	sur:	Ma
13. m̀h-	adv:	not
14. Ǹhgányiu	Ph:	That's all right; It doesn't matter; Never mind.
15. ngóh	pron:	I, me, my
16. Sàang	t:	Mr.
17. sīnsāang	n:	man (see notes); teacher
18. Sīnsāang	t:	Mr. (see notes)
19. sing	v:	have the surname
20. síujé	n:	unmarried woman; woman, lady (see notes)
21. Síujé	t:	Miss
22. Táai	t:	Mrs.
23. taaitáai	n:	married woman (see notes)
24. Taaitáai	t:	Mrs. (see notes)
25. Wòhng	sur:	Wong

CLASSROOM PHRASES

A. Learn to respond to the following classroom instructions:

1. Yìhgā ngóh mahn néih, néih daap ngóh.	1. Now I'll ask you, and you answer me.
2. Yìhgā néihdeih jihgéi mahn, jihgéi daap.	2. Now you yourselves ask and answer.
3. Gaijuhk.	3. Continue. (i.e., Do the next one, Keep going.)
4. Néih jouh __A__, néih jouh __B__.	4. You do A, you do B.

B. The following are some comments that the teacher may make on your recitations.

5. Ngāam laak. OR Āam laak.	5. That's it. (After student succeeds in saying something right.)
6. Haih gám laak.	6. That's it. Now you've got it.
7. Haih laak.	7. That's it. Now you've got it.
8. Hóu jéun.	8. Just right. Quite accurate.
9. Góngdāk hóu.	9. Good, spoken well.
10. Góngdāk m̀hóu.	10. No, that won't do. Not spoken right.
11. Chādōsō.	11. Approximately. (i.e., Good enough for now, but not perfect.)
12. Yiu suhk dī.	12. Get it smoother. (When a student's recitation is halting.)
13. Daaihsēng dī.	13. Louder.

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(At a party in Hong Kong)

sīnsàang	man
Sīnsàang	
gwaisìng	your surname (polite)
a	sentence suffix, to soften abruptness
síujé	woman
Síujé gwaisìng a?	What is your surname, Miss?
Síujé	
Ngóh sing Wòhng.	My name is Wong.
Sīnsàang (bowing slightly)	
Wòhng Síujé.	Miss Wong.
Síujé	
nē?	sentence suffix for questions
Sīnsàang nē?	And you? (polite)
Sīnsàang	
síusìng	my name (polite)
Síusìng Làuh.	My name is Lau.
Síujé (bowing slightly)	
Làuh Sàang	Mr. Lau.
Sīnsàang (Indicating a young lady standing beside Miss Wong)	
mātyéh or mēyéh or mīyéh	what?
sing mēyéh a?	have what surname?
pàhngyáuh	friend
néih	your
néih pàhngyáuh	your friend
Néih pàhngyáuh sing mēyéh a?	What is your friend's name?
Síujé	
sing Máh	has the name Ma

ge	noun-forming boundword. ge suffixed to a Verb Phrase makes it grammatically a Noun Phrase.
sing Máh ge	is a named-Ma one
kéuih	he, she, it
Kéuih sing Máh ge.	Her name is Ma.

Sīnsàang

Gwóngdūng	Kwangtung
yàhn	person
Gwóngdūngyàhn	Cantonese person, a person from Kwangtung province
haih m̀haih a?	is/not-is? a question formula
Kéuih haih m̀haih Gwóngdūngyàhn a?	*Is she Cantonese?*

Síujé

Seuhnghói	Shanghai
Seuhnghóiyàhn	Shanghai person
M̀haih a. Kéuih haih Seuhnghóiyàhn.	No, she's from Shanghai.

Sīnsàang

gám,...	'Well then, ...', 'Say', ... sentence prefix, resuming the thread of previous discussion.
Gám, néih nē?	And you?

Síujé

dōu	also
dōu haih Seuhnghóiyàhn	also am Shanghai person
Ngóh dōu haih Seuhnghóiyàhn.	I'm also from Shanghai.

B. Recapitulation:

(At a party in Hong Kong)

Sīnsàang

Síujé gwaising a?	What is your (sur)name, Miss?

Síujé	
Ngóh sing Wòhng.	My name is Wong.
Sīnsàang	
(bowing slightly)	
Wòhng Síujé.	Miss Wong.
Síujé	
Sīnsàang nē?	And you?
Sīnsàang	
Síusing Làuh.	My name is Lau.
Síujé	
(bowing slightly)	
Làuh Sāang.	Mr. Lau.
Sīnsàang	
(Indicating a young lady standing beside Miss Wong)	
Néih pàhngyáuh sing mēyéh a?	*What is your friend's name?*
Síujé	
Kéuih sing Máh ge.	*Her name is Ma.*
Sīnsàang	
Kéuih haih m̀hhaih Gwóngdūngyàhn a?	Is she Cantonese?
Síujé	
M̀hhaih a. Kéuih haih Seuhnghóiyàhn.	No, she's from Shanghai.
Sīnsàang	
Gám, néih nē?	And you?
Síujé	
Ngóh dōu haih Seuhnghóiyàhn.	I'm also from Shanghai.

+ + + + + + + + + + + + + +

Problem sounds in Lesson Two: Initials

1. b, d, g, and j (phonetically [p], [t], [k], and [tʃ]).

   b, d, g, and j sounds in Cantonese are voiceless, in contrast to the voiced English sounds spelled with the same letters. Positioning for Cantonese b and g sounds is the same as for English. For the d sound the tongue tip is more forward in Cantonese than in English--against the base of the upper teeth for Cantonese, on the dental ridge for English. Position for the j sound has been discussed in Lesson One. The sounds are unaspirated, as are their English counterparts, but the Cantonese and English sounds contrast with respect to tenseness--the Cantonese initial consonants being tense and the English lax in isolated words and in stressed position in a sentence.

Compare: (left to right, then right to left.)

	English	Cantonese		
b:	bean	bīn go	邊個	who
	beau	bou	布	cloth
	buoy	būi	杯	cup
	bun	bān	賓	guest
	buy	baai	拜	worship
d:	doe	dou	到	arrive
	die	daai	帶	bring
	ding	dīng	丁	surname Ting
	deem	dim	店	shop (Noun)
g:	gay	gei	記	record (Verb)
	gum	gam	喋	so
	guy	gaai	界	border
	guava	Gwóngdùng	廣東	Kwangtung
j:	joy	joi	再	again
	gee	ji	至	until, to
	Jew	jiu	照	reflect
	Joe	jou	灶	stove

2. p, t, k, and ch. As initials, phonetically [pʻ], [tʻ], [kʻ], and [tɕʻ].

Cantonese p, t, k, and ch sounds are similar to English counterpart p, t, k, ch sounds in that they are voiceless and aspirated. Positioning for p and k is the same as for English. For the t sound the tongue tip is more forward in Cantonese than in English--against the base of the upper teeth for Cantonese, on the dental ridge for English. The positioning for ch has been discussed in

Lesson One. The Cantonese consonants are tenser than the American counterparts.

Compare: (left to right, then right to left)

	English	Cantonese		
p:	pingpong	pàhngyáuh	朋友	friend
	pay	pèi	披	to throw over the shoulders
	pie	paai	派	send
	Poe	pou	鋪	shop (N)
	putt	pāt	匹	M for horses
t:	tie	tāai	呔	necktie
	team	tîm	添	additional
	top	taap	塔	pagoda
	tong	tong	燙	iron (Verb)
k:	cow	kaau	靠	lean on
	Kay	kei	冀	hope
	cut	kāt	咳	cough
	cup	kāp	級	step (Noun)
ch:	chuck	chāk	測	guess
	chew	chîu	超	exceed
	chow	chau	臭	bad smell
	chip	chip	妾	concubine

3. un, as in Yahtbún, Yahtbúnyàhn

Un is a two-part final composed of the high back rounded vowel u [u] followed by the velar nasal consonant n.

u is a high back rounded vowel, which before n has a slight offglide to high central position: u + n = [u:^{ɨ}n]. The vowel is open, not nasalized, before the nasal final. The Cantonese un is roughly comparable to the oon in general American "boon."

Compare Cantonese and English:

1. bún 本 boon (3 times)
2. boon bún 本 (3 times)

4. eui practice

Listen and repeat--remember to keep the lips rounded throughout, remember that the -i of eui represents the rounded high front vowel yu [ü].

kéuih (5 times) 佢
deuimhjyuh (5 times) 對唔住
deui (5 times) 對

5. iu

iu is a two-part final composed of the high front unrounded vowel i [i] plus the high back rounded vowel u [u]. In this sequence the i is pronounced as an onglide, with the main force of voicing on the u portion of the syllable--[^{i}u].

Listen and repeat:

1. síujé (3 times)
2. síu (3 times)

6. Tone practice

1. dōu dōu , sing sing , haih haih .
2. dōu sing haih , haih sing dōu .
3. dōu sing , sing haih , dōu haih , haih dōu .
4. dōu dōu , Jèung Jèung .
5. Jèung, dōu , dōu Jèung .
6. síu síu , néih néih .
7. síu néih , néih síu .
8. haih yàhn , yàhn haih .

II. Notes

A. Culture Notes:

1. A Gwóngdùngyàhn is a person from Kwangtung province. In English such a person is usually referred to as 'Cantonese,' the English name deriving from the city of Canton in Kwangtung province. People from Hong Kong are also included in the term Gwóngdùngyàhn.
2. Polite forms in social conversation:
   a) Sìnsàang and síujé are polite formal substitutes for néih--'you' as terms of direct address.

1. Sīnsàang gwaising a?	What is the gentleman's (i.e., your) name?
2. Síujé gwaising a?	What is the lady's (i.e., your) name?

(See Drill 11)

b) Síujé is the general polite substitute for néih when addressing a woman, even if she is a married woman.

Ex:

Mr. Lee (to Mrs. Chan):

Síujé haih m̀hhaih Gwóngdùngyàhn a?	Is the lady (i.e., Are you) from Kwangtung?

(See Drill 14)

c) Surname and title as polite formal substitute for néih as term of address.

Ex:

Mr. Lee (to Miss Chan):

Chàhn Síujé haih m̀hhaih Gwóngdùngyàhn a?	Is Miss Chan (i.e., Are you) from Kwangtung?

(See Drill 14)

d) gwai- and síu-

1. gwai- is a polite form meaning "your," referring to the person you are talking to.

   Ex: gwaising = your name. The literal meaning of gwai- "precious, valuable."

2. síu- is a polite form used in referring to oneself when talking with another person. It means "my." Ex: síusing = my name. The literal meaning of síu- is "small."

   (See Drill 11)

3. Ngóh sing seems more commonly used than síusing, but gwaising is more common than Néih sing mēyéh a? in social conversation. At a doctor's office, or in registering for school 'What is your name' would be more apt to be asked as 'Sing mēyéh?' than as 'Gwaising a?'

B. Structure Notes.

Some people in speaking about Cantonese and other Chinese languages, say "Cantonese has no grammar." In this they are referring to the fact that words in Cantonese (and other Chinese languages) do not undergo the changes of form which English words experience in relation to tense: see, saw, seen; to number: boy, boys; to case: I, me, my, mine; to word class: photograph, photographer, photography, photographic; to subject-verb concord: He sits, They sit.

1. Verb form: Absence of Subject-Verb concord.

There is no subject-verb concord in Cantonese. Whereas the English verb changes form in concord with the subject--I am, You are, He is--, the Cantonese verb remains in one form regardless of the subject.

Ex:

Subject	Verb		
Ngóh	haih	Chàhn Síujé.	I am Miss Chan.
Néih	haih	ngóh pàhngyáuh.	You are my friend.
Kéuih	haih	Gwóngdùngyàhn.	He is Cantonese.
Kéuihdeih	haih	Seuhnghóiyàhn.	They are Shanghai people.

(See Drill 3)

2. Noun form: Absence of Singular/Plural Distinction.

There is no distinction in Chinese nouns between singular and plural. One form is used for both single and plural objects, with other parts of the sentence, or sometimes simply the situational context, giving information regarding number.

Ex: yàhn = person, people

Yīnggwokyàhn = 'Englishman, Englishmen.'

Singular/Plural

(a) Kéuih haih Yīnggwokyàhn. He is an Englishman.

(b) Kéuihdeih haih Yīnggwokyàhn. They are Englishmen.

(See Drill 3)

3. Pronoun forms.

1. Cantonese has three personal pronouns:
    1. ngóh = I, me, my
    2. néih = you, your (singular)
    3. kéuih = he, she, it, him, her
2. Plurality is marked in personal pronouns by the plural suffix -deih:

1. ngóh = I
   ngóhdeih = we (both inclusive and exclusive)
2. néih = you (sing.)
   néihdeih = you (pl.)
3. kéuih = he, she, it
   kéuihdeih = they

(See Drill 5)

4. Modification structures: Noun modification:

In Cantonese a modifier precedes the noun it modifies:

Example: Modifier + Noun head

Ngóh pàhngyáuh haih Yīnggwokyàhn.

My friend is an Englishman.

We will refer to this modifier-modified noun structure as a Noun Phrase (NP), consisting of modifier and head.

(See Drills 5a, 12, 13)

5. Sentence suffixes.

What we call sentence suffixes are also called "final particles" and "sentence finals."

Sentence suffixes are used in conversation, and are a means by which the speaker signals the listener what he feels about what he's saying--that he is doubtful, definite, surprised, sympathetic, that he means to be polite, or sarcastic.

Some sentence suffixes have actual content meaning. For example, mā, which you will learn in Lesson 3, has interrogative meaning, and suffixed to a statement sentence makes it a question. But others operate primarily as described above--to add an emotion-carrying coloration to the sentences they attach to. As such they have been called also "intonation-carrying particles," intonation here used in the "tone of voice" sense.

Two sentence suffixes appear in the Basic Conversation of this lesson:

1. Sentence suffix a

The sentence suffix a has the effect of softening the sentence to which it is attached, making it less abrupt than it would otherwise be.

Examples from this lesson:

1. Kéuih haih m̀hhaih Gwóngdùngyàhn a?	Is she a Cantonese?
2. M̀hhaih a.	No.

In English a courteous tone of voice is perhaps the best counterpart to the a sentence suffix.
(See Basic Conversation (BC), and Drill 7)

2. Sentence suffix nē

nē in a follow sentence of structure Noun + nē? is an interrogative sentence suffix, meaning 'how about...?,' 'And...?' In such a sentence nē is interrogative on its own:

Example:

Ngóh haih Gwóngdùngyàhn; néih nē?	I am a Cantonese; how about you?

Sentence suffix a is not substitutable for nē in this type of sentence, a not having an interrogative sense of its own.
(See BC, and Drill 14)

We have used tone marks in writing the sentence suffixes, but perhaps it would have been better to use other symbols, maybe arrows pointing up for high, diagonally for rising, to the right for mid, down for falling. Since some finals can be said with different pitch contours with the effect of changing the coloration of what is said but not the content, they are not truly tonal words. For example, sentence suffix a, encountered in this lesson, we have described as having the effect of softening an otherwise rather abrupt sentence. This final can also be said at high pitch: ā, without changing the sentence-softening aspect, but adding liveliness to the response.

Ex: A: Néih haih m̀hhaih Gwóngdùngyàhn a?	Are you a Cantonese?

B: M̀hhaih ā. Ngóh haih Seuhnghóiyàhn.	No, siree, I'm a Shanghai man.

Beginning students, even advanced students, often have a lot of difficulty with sentence suffixes, because they don't fit into categories which we recognize in English. Partly this is because most of us haven't analyzed the English we use. How would you explain, for example, the English "sentences suffixes" in the following:

1. What do you mean by that, pray?
2. Hand me that pencil, will you?
3. Cut that out, hear?
4. He's not coming, I don't think.

Our advice to students in regard to sentence suffixes is absorb them as you can, don't get bogged down in trying to plumb their "real" meanings--in doing so, you spend more time on them than they warrant.

6. Choice-type Questions.

Questions which in English would be answered by yes or no, are formed in Cantonese by coupling the positive and negative forms of a verb together, and requiring an echo answer of the suitable one. This question form we call the Choice-type Question.

Example:

Question:	Kéuih haih m̀hhaih Méihgwokyàhn a?	Is he an American? [He is-not is American-person a?]
Responses:	Haih.	Yes. [Is.]
	M̀hhaih.	No. [Not-is]

(See BC and Drills 6, 9, 13, 14)

7. Question-word Questions.

Question-word Questions are question sentences using the Cantonese question-word equivalents of what, when, where, why, how, how much, how many, who. mēyéh? 'what?' (variant pronunciations mātyéh? and mīyéh?) is an example of a question-word.

In Cantonese question-word (QW) questions pattern like statement sentences--they have the same word order as statement sentences, with the question-word occupying the same position in the sentence which the reply word occupies in the statement.

Example:	Kéuih sing mēyéh a?	[He is surnamed what?] What is his name?
	Kéuih sing Wòhng.	[He is surnamed Wong.] His name is Wong.

(See BC and Drill 12, 13)

8. *-ge*, noun-forming boundword

ge attaches to the end of a word or phrase which is not a noun and makes it into a noun phrase. In such cases it usually works to translate *-ge* into English as 'one who' or 'such a one.' When we say *ge* is a boundword we mean it is never spoken as a one-word sentence, but always accompanies some other word.

Example:	1. Kéuih sing Wòhng ge.	She is one who has the surname Wong. *or* She's a person named Wong.

(See BC and Drills 9, 10, 12, 13)

ga is a fusion of *ge* + sentence suffix *a*

Example:	A: Kéuih haih m̀hhaih sing Wòhng ga?	Is he named Wong?
	B: M̀hhaih--kéuih m̀hhaih sing Wòhng ge. Kéuih sing Hòh.	No, he's not named Wong. His name is Ho.

(See Drill 9)

9. mātyéh, mēyéh, and mīyéh = variant pronunciations for 'what?' mātyéh is occasionally used in conversations as an emphatic form; normally the spoken pronunciation is mēyéh or mīyéh, some people favoring mēyéh, others mīyéh. We have written mēyéh uniformly in the text, but on the tapes you will hear all three forms.

III. DRILLS

1. Transformation Drill: Make negative sentences following the pattern of the example. Student should point to himself in ngóh sentences, to another student in kéuih and néih sentences.

Ex: T: Kéuih haih Seuhnghóiyàhn.	T: He (or she) is from Shanghai. (Shanghai person)
S: Kéuih m̀hhaih Seuhnghóiyàhn.	S: He (or she) is not from Shanghai.

1. Kéuih haih Seuhnghóiyàhn	1. Kéuih m̀hhaih Seuhnghóiyàhn.
+ 2. Kéuihdeih haih Gwóngdūngyàhn. (They are Cantonese.)	2. Kéuihdeih m̀hhaih Gwóngdūngyàhn.
+ 3. Ngóh haih Jūnggwokyàhn. (I am a Chinese.)	3. Ngóh m̀hhaih Jūnggwokyàhn.
+ 4. Ngóhdeih haih Jūnggwokyàhn. (We are Chinese.)	4. Ngóhdeih m̀hhaih Jūnggwokyàhn.
+ 5. Néih haih Yīnggwokyàhn. (You are an Englishman.)	5. Néih m̀hhaih Yīnggwokyàhn.
+ 6. Néih haih Méihgwokyàhn. (You are an American)	6. Néih m̀hhaih Méihgwokyàhn.
+ 7. Néihdeih haih Méihgwokyàhn. (You (plu.) are Americans.)	7. Néihdeih m̀hhaih Méihgwokyàhn.
+ 8. Ngóh haih Yahtbúnyàhn. (I am a Japanese.)	8. Ngóh m̀hhaih Yahtbúnyàhn.
+ 9. Ngóh haih Tòihsāanyàhn. (I am a Toishan man.)	9. Ngóh m̀hhaih Tòihsāanyàhn.

---

2. Substitution Drill: Substitute the cue word to make a new sentence, following the pattern of the example.

Ex: T: Kéuihdeih haih Gwóngdūngyàhn /Seuhnghóiyàhn/	T: They are Cantonese. /Shanghai people/

S: Kéuihdeih haih Seuhnghóiyàhn.	S: They are Shanghai people.
1. Kéuihdeih haih Seuhnghóiyàhn. /Méihgwokyàhn/	1. Kéuihdeih haih Méihgwokyàhn.
2. Kéuihdeih haih Méihgwokyàhn. /Yīnggwokyàhn/	2. Kéuihdeih haih Yīnggwokyàhn.
3. Kéuihdeih haih Yīnggwokyàhn. /Yahtbúnyàhn/	3. Kéuihdeih haih Yahtbúnyàhn.
4. Kéuihdeih haih Yahtbúnyàhn. /Jùnggwokyàhn/	4. Kéuihdeih haih Jùnggwokyàhn.
5. Kéuihdeih haih Jùnggwokyàhn. /Gwóngdùngyàhn/	5. Kéuihdeih haih Gwóngdùngyàhn.

3. Mixed Substitution Drill: Substitute the cue word in the appropriate position, following the pattern of the example.

Ex: T: Ngóh haih Seuhnghóiyàhn. /néihdeih/	I am from Shanghai. /you (plu.)/
S: Néihdeih haih Seuhnghóiyàhn.	You (plu.) are from Shanghai.
T: Néihdeih haih Seuhnghóiyàhn. /Jùnggwokyàhn/	You (plu.) are from Shanghai. /Chinese/
S: Néihdeih haih Jùnggwokyàhn.	You (plu.) are Chinese.
1. Kéuih haih Yīnggwokyàhn. /kéuihdeih/	1. Kéuihdeih haih Yīnggwokyàhn.
2. Kéuihdeih haih Yīnggwokyàhn. /néihdeih/	2. Néihdeih haih Yīnggwokyàhn.
3. Néihdeih haih Yīnggwokyàhn. /Méihgwokyàhn/	3. Néihdeih haih Méihgwokyàhn.
4. Néihdeih haih Méihgwokyàhn. /ngóh/	4. Ngóh haih Méihgwokyàhn.
5. Ngóh haih hohksàang. /sīnsàang/	5. Ngóh haih sīnsàang.

4. Expansion Drill: Expand the cue sentences as indicated in the example. Students should gesture to indicate pronouns.

Ex: T: Kéuih m̀hhaih Léih Táai.	She is not Mrs. Lee.

S: Kéuih m̀hhaih Léih Táai, ngóh haih.	She is not Mrs. Lee, I am.
1. Kéuih m̀hhaih Jèung Sàang.	1. Kéuih m̀hhaih Jèung Sàang; ngóh haih.
2. Kéuih m̀hhaih Chàhn Síujé.	2. Kéuih m̀hhaih Chàhn Síujé; ngóh haih.
3. Kéuih m̀hhaih Hòh Sàang.	3. Kéuih m̀hhaih Hòh Sàang; ngóh haih.
4. Kéuih m̀hhaih Léih Táai.	4. Kéuih m̀hhaih Léih Táai; ngóh haih.
5. Kéuih m̀hhaih Chàhn Sàang.	5. Kéuih m̀hhaih Chàhn Sàang; ngóh haih.

---

5. Transformation Drill: Respond according to the pattern of the example. Students gesture pronouns.

Ex: T: Ngóh haih Méihgwokyàhn.	T: I am an American.
S: Néih haih m̀hhaih Méihgwokyàhn a?	S: Are you an American?
1. Ngóh haih Gwóngdùngyàhn.	1. Néih haih m̀hhaih Gwóngdùngyàhn a?
2. Ngóh haih Wòhng Sàang.	2. Néih haih m̀hhaih Wòhng Sàang a?
3. Kéuih haih Léih Sàang.	3. Kéuih haih m̀hhaih Léih Sàang a?
4. Ngóh haih Méihgwokyàhn.	4. Néih haih m̀hhaih Méihgwokyàhn a?
5. Ngóhdeih haih Yahtbúnyàhn.	5. Néihdeih haih m̀hhaih Yahtbúnyàhn a?
6. Kéuih haih Jùnggwokyàhn.	6. Kéuih haih m̀hhaih Jùnggwokyàhn a?

a. Do the above sentences as an expansion drill, expanding with pàhngyáuh thus:

T: Ngóh haih Gwóngdùngyàhn.

S: Ngóh pàhngyáuh haih Gwóngdùngyàhn.

---

6. Response Drill: Respond according to the pattern of the example.

Ex: T: Jèung Síujé haih m̀hhaih Méihgwokyàhn a? /Yīnggwokyàhn/	T: Is Miss Cheung an American? /English-person/
S: M̀hhaih. Kéuih haih Yīnggwokyàhn.	S: No, she's English.

1. Néih haih m̀hhaih Yīnggwokyàhn a? /Méihgwokyàhn/	1. M̀hhaih. Ngóh haih Méihgwokyàhn.
2. Néih haih m̀hhaih Seuhnghóiyàhn a? /Gwóngdùngyàhn/	2. M̀hhaih. Ngóh haih Gwóngdùngyàhn.
3. Jèung Sàang haih m̀hhaih Gwóngdùngyàhn a? /Seuhnghóiyàhn/	3. M̀hhaih. Kéuih haih Seuhnghóiyàhn.
4. Máh Táai haih m̀hhaih Yīnggwokyàhn a? /Méihgwokyàhn/	4. M̀hhaih. Kéuih haih Méihgwokyàhn.
5. Kéuih haih m̀hhaih Seuhnghóiyàhn a? /Tòihsāanyàhn/	5. M̀hhaih. Kéuih haih Tòihsāanyàhn.

---

7. Conversation Exercise: Carry on the suggested Conversations following the pattern of the example.

Ex: A: Néih haih m̀hhaih Jèung Síujé a?	A: Are you Miss Cheung?
B: M̀hhaih. Ngóh sing Chàhn.	B: No, my name is Chan.

1. A: .... Chàhn Sàang a?	1. A: Néih haih m̀hhaih Chàhn Sàang a?
B: .... Hòh.	B: M̀hhaih a. Ngóh sing Hòh.
2. A: .... Léih Síujé a?	2. A: Néih haih m̀hhaih Léih Síujé a?
B: .... Jèung.	B: M̀hhaih a. Ngóh sing Jèung.
3. A: .... Chàhn Táai a?	3. A: Néih haih m̀hhaih Chàhn Táai a?
B: .... Hòh.	B: M̀hhaih a. Ngóh sing Hòh.
4. A: .... Léih Sàang a?	4. A: Néih haih m̀hhaih Léih Sàang a?
B: .... Jèung.	B: M̀hhaih a. Ngóh sing Jèung.
5. A: .... Hòh Síujé a?	5. A: Néih haih m̀hhaih Hòh Síujé a?

B: .... Chàhn.	B: M̀hhaih a. Ngóh sing Chàhn.

7a. Continue, with student A using a name at random and student B using his own name in response.

---

8. Response Drill: Respond according to the pattern of the example:

Ex: T: Kéuih sing Wòhng. /Jèung/	T: Her name is Wong. /Cheung/
S: Kéuih m̀hhaih sing Wòhng, sing Jèung.	S: Her name is not Wong, it's Cheung.
1. Kéuih sing Jèung. /Hòh/	1. Kéuih m̀hhaih sing Jèung, sing Hòh.
2. Kéuih sing Hòh. /Chàhn/	2. Kéuih m̀hhaih sing Hòh, sing Chàhn.
3. Kéuih sing Chàhn. /Léih/	3. Kéuih m̀hhaih sing Chàhn, sing Léih.
4. Kéuih sing Léih. /Làuh/	4. Kéuih m̀hhaih sing Léih, sing Làuh.
5. Kéuih sing Máh. /Wòhng/	5. Kéuih m̀hhaih sing Máh, sing Wòhng.

---

9. Response Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih haih m̀hhaih sing Chàhn ga? /Hòh/ +	Is her name Chan? /Ho/
S: M̀hhaih. Kéuih sing Hòh ge.	No, her name is Ho.
1. Kéuih haih m̀hhaih sing Léih ga? /Chàhn/	1. M̀hhaih. Kéuih sing Chàhn ge.
2. Kéuih haih m̀hhaih sing Máh ga? /Hòh/	2. M̀hhaih. Kéuih sing Hòh ge.
3. Kéuih haih m̀hhaih sing Jèung ga? /Léih/	3. M̀hhaih. Kéuih sing Léih ge.
4. Kéuih haih m̀hhaih sing Chàhn ga? /Máh/	4. M̀hhaih. Kéuih sing Máh ge.
5. Kéuih haih m̀hhaih sing Hòh ga? /Jèung/	5. M̀hhaih. Kéuih sing Jèung ge.

Comment:

a. Sentence suffix ga is a fusion of ge + a = ga.

b. In the choice-type question form, sing is preceded by haih m̀hhaih to make the question.

---

10. Expansion Drill:

Ex: T: Néihdeih haih Méihgwokyàhn. /ngóhdeih/	You are Americans. /we/
S: Néihdeih haih Méihgwokyàhn; ngóhdeih dōu haih Méihgwokyàhn.	You are Americans; we are also Americans.
1. Kéuihdeih haih Yīnggwokyàhn. /ngóhdeih/	1. Kéuihdeih haih Yīnggwokyàhn; ngóhdeih dōu haih Yīnggwokyàhn.
2. Ngóhdeih haih Seuhnghóiyàhn. /kéuihdeih/	2. Ngóhdeih haih Seuhnghóiyàhn; kéuihdeih dōu haih Seuhnghóiyàhn.
3. Wòhng Táai haih ngóh pàhngyáuh. /kéuih/	3. Wòhng Táai haih ngóh pàhngyáuh; kéuih dōu haih ngóh pàhngyáuh.
4. Kéuihdeih haih Gwóngdùngyàhn. /néihdeih/	4. Kéuihdeih haih Gwóngdùngyàhn; néihdeih dōu haih Gwóngdùngyàhn.
5. Ngóhdeih haih sing Chàhn ge. /kéuihdeih/	5. Ngóhdeih haih sing Chàhn ge; kéuihdeih dōu haih sing Chàhn ge.

---

11. Conversation Exercise

Example:

1. A: Síujé gwaising a?	(To a woman) What is your name?
B: Síusing Hòh.	My name is Ho.
A: Hòh Síujé.	Miss Ho.
2. A: Sīnsàang gwaising a?	(To a man) What is your name?
B: Síusing Làuh.	My name is Lau.
A: Làuh Sàang.	Mr. Lau.

1. A: Sīnsàang ....?	1. A: Sīnsàang gwaising a?
B: ....Léih.	B: Síusing Léih.
A:	A: Léih Sàang.

2. A: Sīnsàang ....?	2. A: Sīnsàang gwaising a?
B: ....Chàhn.	B: Síusing Chàhn.
A:	A: Chàhn Sàang.
3. A: Sīnsàang ....?	3. A: Sīnsàang gwaising a?
B: ....Jèung.	B: Síusing Jèung.
A:	A: Jèung Sàang.
4. A: Síujé ....?	4. A: Síujé gwaising a?
B: ....Wòhng.	B: Síusing Wòhng.
A:	A: Wòhng Síujé.
5. A: Síujé ....?	5. A: Síujé gwaising a?
B: ....Hòh.	B: Síusing Hòh.
A:	A: Hòh Síujé.

12. Conversation Drill

Ex: A: Néih pàhngyáuh sing mēyéh a?	What is your friend's name?
B: Kéuih sing Wòhng ge.	His name is Wong.

1. A: ....?	1. A: Néih pàhngyáuh sing mēyéh a?
B: ......Hòh........	B: Kéuih sing Hòh ge.
2. A: ....?	2. A: Néih pàhngyáuh sing mēyéh a?
B: ......Làuh.......	B: Kéuih sing Làuh ge.
3. A: ....?	3. A: Néih pàhngyáuh sing mēyéh a?
B: ......Wòhng......	B: Kéuih sing Wòhng ge.
4. A: ....?	4. A: Néih pàhngyáuh sing mēyéh a?
B: ......Jèung......	B: Kéuih sing Jèung ge.
5. A: ....?	5. A: Néih pàhngyáuh sing mēyéh a?
B: ......Léih.......	B: Kéuih sing Léih ge.

13. Conversation Drill

Ex: A: Néih pàhngyáuh sing mēyéh a?	A: What is your friend's name?
B: Kéuih sing Wòhng ge.	B: His name is Wong.
A: Kéuih haih m̀hhaih Gwóngdùngyàhn a?	A: Is he a Cantonese?
B: M̀hhaih. Kéuih haih Yahtbúnyàhn.	B: No, he's a Japanese.

1. A: ....?	1. A: Néih pàhngyáuh sing mēyéh a?
B: ....Hòh.	B: Kéuih sing Hòh ge.
A: ....Yìnggwokyàhn a?	A: Kéuih haih m̀hhaih Yìnggwokyàhn a?
B: ......Méihgwokyàhn.	B: M̀hhaih. Kéuih haih Méihgwokyàhn.
2. A: ....?	2. A: Néih pàhngyáuh sing mēyéh a?
B: ....Léih.	B: Kéuih sing Léih ge.
A: ...Seuhnghóiyàhn a?	A: Kéuih haih m̀hhaih Seuhnghóiyàhn a?
B: ......Tòihsāanyàhn.	B: M̀hhaih. Kéuih haih Tòihsāanyàhn.
3. A: ....?	3. A: Néih pàhngyáuh sing mēyéh a?
B: ....Chàhn.	B: Kéuih sing Chàhn ge.
A: ....Méihgwokyàhn a?	A: Kéuih haih m̀hhaih Méihgwokyàhn a?
B: ......Yìnggwokyàhn.	B: M̀hhaih. Kéuih haih Yìnggwokyàhn.
4. A: ....?	4. A: Néih pàhngyáuh sing mēyéh a?
B: ....Máh.	B: Kéuih sing Máh ge.
A: ...Gwóngdùngyàhn a?	A: Kéuih haih m̀hhaih Gwóngdùngyàhn a?
B: .....Seuhnghóiyàhn.	B: M̀hhaih. Kéuih haih Seuhnghóiyàhn.
5. A: ....?	5. A: Néih pàhngyáuh sing mēyéh a?
B: ....Wòhng.	B: Kéuih sing Wòhng ge.

A: .....Yahtbúnyàhn a?	A: Kéuih haih m̀hhaih Yahtbúnyàhn a?
B: ......Jùnggwokyàhn.	B: M̀hhaih. Kéuih haih Jùnggwokyàhn.
6. A: ....?	6. A: Néih pàhngyáuh sing mēyéh a?
B: ....Jèung.	B: Kéuih sing Jèung ge.
A: ...Seuhnghóiyàhn a?	A: Kéuih haih m̀hhaih Seuhnghóiyàhn a?
B: ....Yahtbúnyàhn.	B: M̀hhaih. Kéuih haih Yahtbúnyàhn.

---

14. Conversation Drill: Carry on the suggested conversations following the pattern of the example.

Ex: A: Sīnsàang haih m̀hhaih Méihgwokyàhn a?	Is the gentleman (i.e. Are you) an American?
B: M̀hhaih--ngóh haih Yìnggwokyàhn. Síujé nē?	No, I'm an Englishman. And the lady (i.e. you)?
A: Ngóh haih Gwóngdùngyàhn.	I am a Cantonese.

1. A: (Woman): Sīnsàang ....Gwóngdùngyàhn.	A: Sīnsàang haih m̀hhaih Gwóngdùngyàhn a?
B: (Man) : ....Seuhnghóiyàhn.	B: M̀hhaih. Ngóh haih Seuhnghóiyàhn. Síujé nē?
A: (Woman): .....Yahtbúnyàhn.	A: Ngóh haih Yahtbúnyàhn.
2. A: (Man) : Síujé ....Yahtbúnyàhn...	A: Síujé haih m̀hhaih Yahtbúnyàhn a?
B: (Woman): ....Jùnggwokyàhn...	B: M̀hhaih. Ngóh haih Jùnggwoyàhn. Sīnsàang nē?
A: (Man) : .....Méihgwokyàhn..	A: Ngóh haih Méihgwokyàhn.
3. A: (Man) : Sīnsàang ....Yìnggwokyàhn	A: Sīnsàang haih m̀hhaih Yìnggwokyàhn a?
B: (Man) : .....Méihgwokyàhn.	B: M̀hhaih. Ngóh haih Méihgwokyàhn. Sīnsàang nē?
A: (Man) : .....Gwóngdùngyàhn.	A: Ngóh haih Gwóngdùngyàhn.
4. A: (Woman): Máh Sīnsàang ....Yahtbúnyàhn.	A: Máh Sīnsàang haih m̀hhaih Yahtbúnyàhn a?

B: (Man) : ..... Jùnggwokyàhn. ....Chàhn Síujé...?	B: M̀hhaih. Ngóh haih Jùnggwokyàhn. Chàhn Síujé nē?
A: (Woman): .....Yìnggwokyàhn.	A: Ngóh haih Yìnggwokyàhn.

a. Continue, students using their own situation to carry on the suggested conversations.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

The text of these conversations is written out in Appendix 1.

Listen to the tape with your book closed, checking the text afterward, if necessary.

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE:

In this section you get directed practice in using some of the Cantonese you have learned, using the English sentences to prompt you. This is not to be thought of as a translation exercise--the English is just to get you going. Try to put the ideas into Cantonese, saying it the way the Cantonese would. Often there will be quite a few ways to say the same thing.

A. Ask the person sitting next to you:	And he answers:
1. What is your name?	1. My name is __________.
2. Are you an Englishman?	2. No, I'm an American.
3. Is your friend also an American?	3. Yes, he is.
4. Is Miss Ho from Shanghai?	4. No, she's from Toishan.
5. Is Mr. Lau a Toishan man?	5. Yes, he is.
6. What is your friend's name?	6. His name is Lee.
7. Are you Mr(s). Wong?	7. I'm not Mr(s). Wong, my name is __________.
8. Are you a student?	8. No, I'm not a student, I'm a teacher.

B. At a party:

1. Mr. Wong asks Mr. Ho his name.
2. Mr. Ho replies that his name is Ho, and asks Mr. Wong his name.
3. Mr. Wong gives his name, and asks Mr. Ho if he is a Kwangtung man.
4. Mr. Ho answers that he is. He asks Mr. Ho if he also is from Kwangtung.
5. Mr. Wong says no, that he is a Shanghai man.

C. A and B, two new students, wait for the teacher to come to class:

1. A asks B what his name is. (students use actual names)
2. B replies and inquires A's name.
3. A gives his name, and asks B if he is Japanese.
4. B replies, and asks A if he is an Englishman.
5. A replies, and asks B what C's name is.
6. B replies, adding that C is Chinese.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 2

1. a	ss:	sen. suf., to soften abruptness
2. dōu	Adv:	also
3. ga	ss:	sen. suf., fusion of ge + a = ga
4. Gám	sp:	'Well then, ...' 'Say,...' sen. prefix resuming the thread of previous discussion
5. -ge	bf:	noun-forming boundword; -ge added to a Verb Phrase makes it a Noun Phrase
6. gwaising?	Ph:	what is (your) surname? [polite]
7. Gwóngdùng	pw:	Kwangtung, a province in SE China
8. Gwóngdùngyàhn [go]	n:	Cantonese person, person from Kwangtung Province
9. Jùnggwokyàhn	n:	Chinese person
10. kéuih	Pro:	he, him, his
11. kéuihdeih	Pro:	they, them, their
12. mātyéh?	QW:	what?

13. Méihgwokyàhn	n:	American
14. mēyéh?	QW:	what?
15. mīyéh?	QW:	what?
16. nē	ss:	sen. suf. for questions
17. néih	Pro:	you, your
18. néihdeih	Pro:	you, your (plu.)
19. ngóhdeih	Pro:	we, our, us
20. pàhngyáuh [gò]	n:	friend
21. Seuhnghói	pw:	Shanghai
22. Seuhnghóiyàhn	n:	person from Shanghai
23. Sīnsàang	n:	"Sir," term of direct address
24. sīnsàang	n:	man
25. síujé	n:	'Miss,' Madame, term of direct address
26. síusing	Ph:	my surname is (polite)
27. Tòihsāan	pw:	Toishan, a county in southern Kwangtung about 100 miles west of Hong Kong.
28. Tòihsāanyàhn	n:	person from Toishan
29. yàhn	n:	person
30. Yahtbúnyàhn	n:	Japanese person
31. Yìnggwokyàhn	n:	Englishman, person from England

CLASSROOM PHRASES

Learn to respond to the following classroom instructions. First look at the English equivalents as the teacher reads the Cantonese instructions. Then close your books and listen to the teacher and watch his gestures to help you understand. Check your book if you have difficulty. The teacher will say each sentence several times to help you become familiar with the instructions. Your goal is to be able to respond to the Cantonese without doing mental translations into English. Knowing the scope of what to expect will make the details stand out clearly.

1. Ngóh jídou bīngo, bīngo jauh góng.	1. I'll point to someone, and that person should speak.
2. Yìhgā ngóh duhk, néihdeih sīn tèng.	2. Now I'll read aloud and you (plu.) first listen.
3. Yìhgā néihdeih m̀hhóu tái syù, gànjyuh ngóh duhk.	3. Now don't look at your books, and recite after me.
4. Yìhgā néihdeih gànjyuh laihgeui gám jouh.	4. Do (the problems) according to the pattern set in the example sentence.
5. Yìhgā ngóhdeih tái daih yāt go lihnjaahp.	5. Now we'll look at the first exercise.
6. Yìhgā ngóhdeih tái daih yāt geui.	6. Now we'll look at the first sentence.
7. Yáuh móuh mahntàih?	7. Are there any questions? OR Do you have any questions?
Responses:	
Yáuh.	Have. (i.e., Yes, I have a question)
Móuh.	Don't have. (i.e., No, I don't have any questions.)
8. Nihng táu.	8. Shake the head.
9. Ngahp táu.	9. Nod the head.

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Three colleagues, returning from lunch, are waiting for the elevator in their office building. Next to them two other businessmen are engaged in conversations)

Wòhng Síujé

wá	language
mēyéh wá a?	what language?
góng	speak
góng mēyéh wá a?	speak what language?
Kéuihdeih góng mēyéh wá a?	What language are they speaking?
jī or jīdou	know
jī m̀hjī a?	know/not know?
Néih jī m̀hjī kéuihdeih góng mēyéh wá a?	Do you know what language they are speaking?
Gwokyúh	Mandarin
góng Gwokyúh	speak Mandarin
Haih m̀hhaih góng Gwokyúh a?	Are they speaking Mandarin?

Chàhn Sàang

M̀hhaih.	(They) are not.
Seuhnghóiwá	Shanghai dialect
Kéuihdeih góng Seuhnghóiwá.	They're speaking the Shanghai dialect.

Jèung Síujé

sīk	know (how)
sīk góng Seuhnghóiwá	know how to speak Shanghai dialect, be able to speak Shanghai dialect.
mē?	sentence suf., indicating surprised question
Néih sīk góng Seuhnghóiwá mē?	You can speak Shanghai dialect?!

Chàhn Sàang

sèsíu	a little, somewhat

jē	sentence suf., indicating 'merely', 'only', 'that's all'
Sīk sèsíu jē.	I know a little, that's all.

Wòhng Síujé

tùhng	and
Seuhnghóiwá tùhng Gwokyúh	Shanghai dialect and Mandarin
dōu	both
kéuih dōu sīk góng	he speaks both
Seuhnghóiwá tùhng Gwokyúh kéuih dōu sīk góng	he speaks both Shanghai dialect and Mandarin.
ga	sen. suf. for matter of fact assertion.
Seuhnghóiwá tùhng Gwokyúh kéuih dōu sīk góng ga.	He speaks both Shanghai dialect and Mandarin.

Jèung Síujé

Yīngmán or Yīngmàhn	English language
Gám, néih sīk m̀hsīk Yīngmán a?	Well, do you know English?

Chàhn Sàang

sīk góng sèsíu	can speak a little
sé	write
m̀hsīk sé	can't write
daahnhaih	but
daahnhaih m̀hsīk sé	but can't write
Sīk góng sèsíu, daahnhaih m̀hsīk sé.	I can speak a little, but I can't write.

Jèung Síujé

hohk	study, learn
séung	wish to, want to, would like to
séung hohk	would like to learn
séung hohk Yīngmán	would like to learn English
dī	a little, some
séung hohk dī Yīngmán	would like to learn a little English

Ngóh séung hohk dī Yīngmán--	I'd like to learn a little English--
dím a?	how?
dím góng a?	how (do you) say?
Yīngmán, dím góng a?	how is it said in English?
yāt yih sàam sei ńgh	one two three four five
Yāt yih sàam sei ńgh, Yīngmán dím góng a?	How do you say 'one two three four five' in English?
Chàhn Sàang	
One two three four five.	One two three four five.
Jèung Síujé	
chìngchó	clear
m̀hchìngchó	not clear
Ngóh tèng m̀hchìngchó.	I didn't hear clearly.
yāt chi	one time, once
góng yāt chi	say (it) one time
joi	again
joi góng yāt chi	say (it) once again
m̀hgòi néih	Would you please ...
M̀hgòi néih joi góng yāt chi.	Would you please say it once again?

B. **Recapitulation:**

Wòhng Síujé:	
Néih jì m̀hjì kéuihdeih góng mēyéh wá a? Haih m̀hhaih góng Gwokyúh a?	What language are they speaking? Are they speaking Mandarin?
Chàhn Sàang:	
M̀hhaih. Kéuihdeih góng Seuhnghóiwá.	(They) are not. They're speaking the Shanghai dialect.
Jèung Síujé:	
Néih sīk góng Seuhnghóiwá mē?	You can speak the Shanghai dialect?
Chàhn Sàang:	
Sīk sèsíu jē.	I know a little, that's all.

Wòhng Síujé:	
Seuhnghóiwá tùhng Gwokyúh kéuih dōu sīk góng ga.	He speaks both Shanghai dialect and Mandarin.
Jèung Síujé:	
Gám, néih sīk m̀hsīk Yīngmán a?	Well, do you know English?
Chàhn Sàang:	
Sīk góng sèsíu, daahnhaih m̀hsīk sé.	I can speak a little, but I can't write.
Jèung Síujé:	
Ngóh séung hohk dī Yīngmán--Yāt yih sàam sei ńgh, Yīngmán dím góng a?	I'd like to learn a little English--How do you say 'one two three four five' in English?
Chàhn Sàang:	
One two three four five.	One two three four five.
Jèung Síujé:	
Ngóh tèng m̀hchìngchó. M̀hgòi néih joi góng yāt chi.	I didn't hear clearly. Would you please say it once again.

+ + + + + + + + + + + + + +

Pronunciation

1. Open vowels before nasal consonants:

Practice the open vowel before a nasal final in the syllables of that structure you have had thus far in the text. Hold your nose, listen, and repeat:

-m: gám 敢 gám, sàam 衫 sàam.
-n: Yahtbún 日本 Yahtbún,
Chàhn 陳 Chàhn, jóusàhn 早晨 jóusàhn.
-ng: séung 想 séung, Jèung 張 Jèung,
góng 講 góng, sīnsàang 先生 sīnsàang,
sing 姓 sing, gwaising 貴姓 gwaising.

2. Nasalized vowel following nasal consonant:

Vowels following nasal consonants in the same syllable are nasalized in Cantonese, whereas in English a vowel following a nasal consonant in the same syllable is open.

Listen to your teacher as he holds his nose and says:

ngóh 我

néih 你
nē 呢
Máh 馬
Yìngmán 英文

You notice that the vowels are partially blocked when the nose is blocked, revealing that some air is normally released through the nose. Repeat the above words after your teacher, holding your nose to test if you are nasalizing the vowel.

If you can't quite say these right your pronunciation will sound foreign accented, but it won't make any significant different because what you say won't have some other meaning, as it might if you got the tone wrong.

3. eung practice:

1. séung séung séung
2. Jèung Jèung Jèung

4. eui practice: (Remember that the -i here represents the lip-rounded yu sound.)

1. kéuih kéuih kéuih
2. deuim̀hjyuh deui deui

5. eui/oi contrast practice:

1. deui deui deui
2. joi joi joi
3. deui joi , deui joi , deui joi .
4. joi deui , joi deui , joi deui .

6. ok, as in hohk, Jùnggwok

-k: k in final position is produced by the back of the tongue pressing against the roof of the mouth, stopping the air flow at the junction of the hard and soft palates. In final position k is unreleased--[k˺].

o: o before k has the same value as o elsewhere--mid back rounded vowel: [ɔ].

Listen and repeat:

1. hohk 學 (5 times)
2. Jùnggwok 中國 (5 times)
3. ngóh hohk 我學 , ngóh hohk , ngóh hohk .
4. joi hohk 再學, joi hohk , joi hohk .

5. hohk 學 góng 講 , hohk góng , hohk góng .

7. ng as in ńgh

The velar nasal consonant ng occurs as a vowel, in that the consonant ng is syllabic in the syllable ńgh. (There are also two surnames using the syllable ng.)

Listen and repeat:

想 五 1. séung séung , ńgh ńgh .
我 五 2. ngóh ngóh , ńgh ńgh .
一二三四五 3. yāt yih sàam sei ńgh .

II. NOTES

A. Culture Notes:

1. Chinese languages

Gwóngdùngwá:	The language spoken in the area roughly coinciding with Kwangtung Province in SE China is called Gwóngdùngwá 'Kwangtung - speech.' In English it is referred to as 'Cantonese,' named after the major city in which it was spoken when Westerners arrived in China and began to learn it. There are many dialects of Gwóngdùngwá, of which the recognized standard is the language of Canton and Hong Kong. This book will not concern itself with the many dialects, but will concentrate solely on Standard Cantonese. (The dialect of Cantonese spoken by most American Chinese is Tòihsāanwá, spoken in Toishan county in Southern Kwangtung, from whence most American Chinese emigrated.)
Gwokyúh:	[national-language] called in English 'Mandarin,' is the native language of the greater part of north and northwest China. Mandarin has been promoted as the national language by both the Communist Chinese and the Nationalists and is the language of instruction in the school systems of both China and Taiwan.
Seuhnghóiwá:	'Shanghai dialect' spoken in the area around Shanghai on the East Coast of China.

2. Dialect differences in Standard Cantonese: initial n l

In Standard Cantonese as spoken in Hong Kong there exist variations in pronunciation which cannot be called substandard, since they are used by educated persons. One such variation is to substitute an l sound for an n sound in words and syllables which begin with n. Some educated speakers do not have initial n in their speech, and substitute l wherever n occurs. This is quite common in Hong Kong.

Ex: néih → léih 'you (sing.)'
néihdeih → léihdeih 'you (plu.)'

B. Structure Notes:

1. Uninflected verb forms in Cantonese:

Verbs in English have compulsory differences in form (inflections) to represent action in progress (is eating), intended action (going to eat), past action (ate), general statement (eats), and others.

Broadly speaking, Cantonese verbs do not have the same compulsory differences in form. One form may cover action in progress, intended action, past action, general statement. For example: Kéuih gaau Gwóngdùngwá can mean: He is teaching Cantonese, He taught Cantonese, He teaches Cantonese.

(See Drill 1, 6)

Additional elements may be used by the speaker to particularize action in progress, repeated action, accomplished action, etc., but their use is not the compulsory feature of the language that it is in English.

2. Verbs in series: affirmative, negative, and question forms.

1. When two verbs occur together in series, it is the first verb which forms a set with the negative and the choice-type question.

Example:	Kéuih sīk góng Gwokyúh.	He can speak Mandarin.
	Kéuih m̀hsīk góng Gwokyúh.	He can't speak Mandarin.
	Kéuih sīk m̀hsīk góng Gwokyúh a?	Can he speak Mandarin?

2. haih is frequently used in series with action verbs in the negative and in choice questions, but not normally in the affirmative or in question-word questions.

(QWQ):	Kéuihdeih góng mēyéh wá a?	What language are they speaking?
(CHQ):	Haih m̀hhaih góng Gwokyúh a?	Are they speaking Mandarin?
(Neg):	M̀hhaih góng Gwokyúh--	(They're) not speaking Mandarin--
(Aff):	Kéuihdeih góng Seuhnghóiwá.	They're speaking Shanghai dialect.

(See BC)

3. Sentence suffix mē

mē is an interrogative sentence suffix indicating surprised question. mē makes a question sentence of the statement sentence it attaches to, with the force of "What?! I can hardly believe it!"

Ex: Néih sīk góng Seuhnghóiwá mē?!	What?! You can speak Shanghai dialect?!

(See BC and Drill 2)

4. Sentence suffix jē.

jē has the force of "merely," "only," "that's all." Alternate pronunciations are ja, or jə.

Ex: Sīk góng sèsíu jē.	I can speak just a bit, that's all.

5. Sentence suffix ga

1. Sentence suffix ga (usually pronounced [kə], similar to the gu sound in the English word "Gus") attaches to a sentence, giving a matter-of-fact connotation to the sentiment expressed.

Ex. (from Basic Conversation):

Seuhnghóiwá tùhng Gwokyúh Kéuih dōu sīk góng ga.	Shanghai dialect and Mandarin, he can speak both, that's a fact.

The implication is that there's nothing extraordinary about it, that's simply the way it is.

2. Matter-of-fact ga and NP forming ge.

These two are sometimes difficult to differentiate. A test is that a NP ge sentence either uses the verb haih or can be expanded with haih, but a matter-of-fact ga sentence can't always be expanded with haih.

Ex: 1. Kéuih haih gaau Yìngmán ge. (See Drill 18)	He is someone who teaches English.
2. Kéuih (haih) sing Wòhng ge.	He is someone named Wong.
3. Seuhnghóiwá tùhng Gwokyúh kéuih dōu sīk góng ga.	Shanghai dialect and Mandarin, he can speak both, that's a fact.

6. Loose relationship of Subject-Predicate in Cantonese: Subject + Predicate as Topic + Comment.

We described full sentences above in Lesson One as being composed of Subject and Predicate, in that order.

Below are examples of Subject-Predicate sentences:

Subject	Predicate
1. Ngóh	sing Chàhn.
2. Kéuih	sīk góng Seuhnghóiwá mē?!
3. Néih pàhngyáuh	góng mēyéh wá a?
4. Síujé	gwaising a?
5. Yìngmán	dím góng?
6. Yāt yih sàam	Yìngmán dím góng a?
7. Seuhnghóiwá tùhng Gwokyúh	kéuih dōu sīk góng ga.
8. Néih jì m̀hjì	kéuihdeih góng mēyéh wá a?

You will note from the sentences above that Subject in Cantonese does not cover the same territory that Subject in English does. For example, Sentence No. 7 above might be rendered in English: "Shanghai dialect and Mandarin--he can speak both." The subject of that sentence is "he." If you were to say "Shanghai dialect and Mandarin are both spoken by him," the subject would be "Shanghai dialect and Mandarin." In English the subject of the sentence is that which governs the verb. But in Cantonese the subject doesn't govern the verb--there is no subject-verb concord (He speaks, They speak, It is spoken), and the ground rules are different. In Cantonese the subject comes first in a sentence, and is what is being talked about; the predicate follows, and is what is said about the subject. The subject is thus the *topic* of the sentence, and the predicate is the *comment*. In *Seuhnghóiwá tùhng Gwokyúh kéuih dōu sīk góng ga*, the subject, or topic,--what is being talked about--is *Seuhnghóiwá tùhng Gwókyúh* "Shanghai dialect and Mandarin," the predicate or comment,--what is said about the topic--is "*kéuih dōu sīk góng ga*," "he knows how to speak both."

In Sentence No. 5 above, *Yìngmán dím góng a*? the topic is *Yìngmán*, "English," and the comment *dím góng a*? "how say?" Extended, in Sentence No. 6, to "Yāt yih sàam Yìngmán dím góng a?" the subject, or topic, is *Yāt yih sàam*, the predicate, or comment, is *Yìngmán dím góng a*?

The relationship of Subject and Predicate in Cantonese is looser than that of Subject and Predicate in English. In English Subject and Predicate are tied together by the verb of the predicate being governed by the status of the Subject. In Cantonese Subject and Predicate are bound together by simple juxtaposition.

7. *Types of Predicates*

   a. *Verbal Predicate*. The most common predicate is the verbal predicate, consisting of a verb phrase (VP). A Verb Phrase consists of a verb alone, a verb and preceding modifier(s), or a verb and its following object(s), or a combination of these.

Ex:

Subject	Predicate (modifier)	Verb (Object)	
Ngóh		jīdou.	I know.
Ngóh	m̀h	jī.	I don't know.
Kéuih		góng Gwokyúh.	He's speaking Mandarin.

   b. *Nominal Predicate*. Another type of predicate is the nominal predicate, consisting of a nominal expression. Examples are:

Subject	Predicate	
	Nominal Expression	
Síusing	Hòh.	My name (is) Ho.
Síujé	gwaising a?	Miss your name?

c. Sentence Predicate. The predicate can be in itself a full Subject-Predicate sentence.

Ex:

Subject	Predicate	
Ngóh m̀hjī	kéuihdeih góng mēyéh wá?	I don't know what language they are speaking.
Yāt yih sàam	Yīngmán dím góng a?	How do you say, one two three in English?
Yāt yih sàam	kéuih dōu m̀hsīk góng.	He can't even say one two three.

8. Subject-Verb-Object (SVO) Sentence.

A Subject-Predicate sentence in which the predicate contains a verb and its object is a very frequent sentence type in Cantonese. We take Subject-Verb-Object (SVO) as the base form of the Cantonese sentence.

Ex: Subject: Predicate:

subject verb object
Kéuihdeih góng Seuhnghóiwá.

9. Absence of pronoun object.

Compare Cantonese and English:

1A. Néih sīk m̀hsīk Yīngmán a?	1A. Do you know English?
B. Ngóh sīk góng, m̀hsīk sé.	B. I can speak (it), can't write (it).
2. Ḿhgòi néih joi góng yāt chi.	2. Please say (it) once again.

Note that English requires a pronoun object, and Cantonese does not.

10. Subjectless sentence. The predicate sentence with no subject is a very common sentence type in Chinese.

Ex: Sīk sèsíu jē. = (I) know just a little.

Note that the counterpart English sentence requires stated subject. (We are referring here to statement sentences ('I study'), not to imperative sentences ('study!'), which we will take up in Lesson 5.)

11. tùhng and yauh

1. tùhng, 'and,' links nominal expressions.

Seuhnghóiwá tùhng Gwokyúh kéuih dōu sīk góng ga.

He knows how to speak both Shanghai dialect and Mandarin.

(See Drills 10, 11)

2. yauh, 'and,' links verbal expressions. It is classed as an adverb because it is always linked to a verb, preceding it.

Kéuih sīk góng yauh sīk sé.

He can speak and write.

(See Drill 9)

3. yauh can be in a set with a second yauh, with the force of 'both... and ...'

Kéuih yauh sīk góng yauh sīk sé.

He can both speak and write.

(See Drill 9)

12. dōu 'also,' 'both,' 'all'; 'even'

dōu is classed as an adverb, because it appears always linked to a verb, preceding it.

Ex: 1. Ngóh dōu haih Seuhnghóiyàhn.	I am also a Shanghai person.
2. Kéuih dōu sīk góng Gwokyúh.	He also can speak Mandarin.
3. Seuhnghóiwá tùhng Gwokyúh kéuih dōu sīk góng ga.	He can speak both Shanghai dialect and Mandarin.

13. dōu, 'even'

In the Subject-Predicate pattern X dōu negative Verb, dōu translates into English as 'even'.

Ex: Yāt yih sàam (kéuih) dōu m̀hsīk góng.	(He) can't even say 'one two three.'

(See Drill 14)

14. Auxiliary verbs.

Auxiliary verbs take other verbs as their objects. Two auxiliary verbs appear in Lesson Three: sīk, 'know (how),' and séung 'want to, plan to, be considering, have (it) in mind to ...'

Ex: 1. Néih sīk góng Seuhnghóiwá mē?!

You know how to speak Shanghai dialect?!

2. Ngóh séung hohk dì Yìngmán.

I want to learn a little English.

(See BC and Drill 2, 3, 4, 7)

15. sīk 'know (how),' 'be acquainted with'; 'know (someone)'

sīk operates both as an auxiliary verb and as a main verb.

1. As an auxiliary verb:

Ex: Kéuih sīk góng Gwokyúh.	He can speak Mandarin.

(See Drill 2)

2. As a main verb:

Ex: 1. Kéuih m̀hsīk Seuhnghóiwá.	He is unacquainted with Shanghai dialect.

(See Drill 2a)

2. Ngóh m̀hsīk kéuih.	I don't know him.

(See Drill 13)

III. DRILLS

1. Transformation Drill: Transform the sentences from question to statement, following the pattern of the example.

Ex: T: Kéuih góng mēyéh wá a? /Gwóngdùngwá/ (Cantonese) +	T: What language is he speaking? /Cantonese/
S: Kéuih góng Gwóngdùngwá.	S: He's speaking Cantonese.
1. Kéuih góng mēyéh wá a? /Seuhnghóiwá/	1. Kéuih góng Seuhnghóiwá.
2. Kéuih góng mēyéh wá a?	2. Kéuih góng Gwokyúh.
3. Kéuih góng mēyéh wá a? Yìngmàhn/	3. Kéuih góng Yìngmàhn.
+ 4. Kéuih góng mēyéh wá a? /Yahtbúnwá/ (Japanese spoken language)	4. Kéuih góng Yahtbúnwá. He's speaking Japanese.
5. Kéuih góng mēyéh wá a? /Gwóngdùngwá/	5. Kéuih góng Gwóngdùngwá.

Comment: The examples in this drill could also serve as general statements:

T: What language(s) does he speak?

S: He speaks Cantonese.

2. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Kéuihdeih sīk góng Gwóngdùngwá. /Seuhnghóiwá/	T: They can speak Cantonese. /Shanghai dialect/
S: Kéuihdeih sīk góng Seuhnghóiwá.	S: They can speak Shanghai dialect.
1. Kéuih sīk góng Yīngmàhn. /Gwóngdùngwá/	1. Kéuih sīk góng Gwóngdùngwá.
2. Wòhng Sàang sīk góng Gwóngdùngwá.	2. Wòhng Sàang sīk góng Gwokyúh.
3. Hòh Táai sīk góng Gwokyúh /Seuhnghóiwá/	3. Hòh Táai sīk góng Seuhnghóiwá.
4. Hòh Sīnsàang sīk góng Seuhnghóiwá. /Yīngmán/	4. Hòh Sīnsàang sīk góng Yīngmán.
5. Chàhn Sīujé sīk góng Yīngmán. /Yahtbúnwá/	5. Chàhn Sīujé sīk góng Yahtbúnwá.

a. Repeat, omitting góng:

T: Kéuihdeih sīk Gwóngdùngwá. /Seuhnghóiwá/	They know Cantonese. /Shanghai dialect/
S: Kéuihdeih sīk Seuhnghóiwá.	They know Shanghai dialect.

b. Repeat, adding mē:

T: Kéuihdeih sīk góng Gwóngdùngwá.	They know Cantonese.
S: Kéuihdeih sīk góng Gwóngdùngwá mē!?	They know Cantonese?!?

---

3. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Méihgwokyàhn m̀hsīk góng Gwóngdùngwá.	Americans can't speak Cantonese.
S: Méihgwokyàhn sīk m̀hsīk góng Gwóngdùngwá a?	Can Americans speak Cantonese?
1. Kéuih m̀hsīk góng Yīngmán.	1. Kéuih sīk m̀hsīk góng Yīngmán a?
2. Hòh Sīujé sīk góng Seuhnghóiwá.	2. Hòh Sīujé sīk m̀hsīk góng Seuhnghóiwá a?

3. Kéuihdeih sīk góng Gwokyúh.	3. Kéuihdeih sīk m̀hsīk góng Gwokyúh a?
+ 4. Méihgwokyàhn m̀hsīk sé Jùngmàhn. Americans can't write Chinese.	4. Méihgwokyàhn sīk m̀hsīk sé Jùngmàhn a? Do Americans know how to write Chinese.
+ 5. Kéuih sīk gaau Yahtbúnwá. He knows how to teach spoken Japanese.	5. Kéuih sīk m̀hsīk gaau Yahtbúnwá a?

---

4. Response Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih hohk Gwóngdùngwá. /Seuhnghóiwá/	T: He studies Cantonese. /Shanghai dialect/
S: Gám, kéuih hohk m̀hhohk Seuhnghóiwá a?	S: Well, then, does he study Shanghai dialect?

1. Kéuih sīk Yīngmán. /Jùngmàhn/	1. Gám, kéuih sīk m̀hsīk Jùngmán a?
2. Kéuih gaau Gwóngdùngwá. /Gwokyúh/	2. Gám, kéuih gaau m̀hgaau Gwokyúh a?
3. Kéuih sīk góng Gwokyúh. /Seuhnghóiwá/	3. Gám, kéuih sīk m̀hsīk góng Seuhnghóiwá a?
4. Kéuih sīk sé Jùngmàhn. /Yīngmán/	4. Gám, kéuih sīk m̀hsīk sé Yīngmàhn a?
5. Kéuih sīk gaau Yīngmán. /Gwóngdùngwá/	5. Gám, kéuih sīk m̀hsīk gaau Gwóngdùngwá a?

Comment: gám is a sentence prefix with the connotation of continuing from before, resuming the thread of previous discourse. The closet English approximations would be 'In that case,...', 'Then,...', 'Well, then,...' but these don't always fit. Gám is very frequent in Cantonese, but if translated in counterpart English sentences is not usually idiomatic. We will usually not translate gám in the English sentences. In the above examples gám is translated as 'Well, then,' suggesting continuation from the previous statement.

---

5. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Wòhng Sàang hohk Gwóngdùngwá.	T: Mr. Wong is studying Cantonese.

S: Wòhng Sàang haih m̀hhaih hohk Gwóngdùngwá a?	S: Is Mr. Wong studying Cantonese?
1. Léih Táai gaau Gwokyúh.	1. Léih Táai haih m̀hhaih gaau Gwokyúh a?
2. Hòh Sàang góng Yìngmán.	2. Hòh Sàang haih m̀hhaih góng Yìngmán a?
3. Chàhn Síujé sé Jùngmàhn.	3. Chàhn Síujé haih m̀hhaih sé Jùngmàhn a?
4. Jèung Sàang sīk góng Yahtbúnwá.	4. Jèung Sàang haih m̀hhaih sīk góng Yahtbúnwá a?
5. Làuh Táai sīk gaau Gwóngdùngwá.	5. Làuh Táai haih m̀hhaih sīk gaau Gwóngdùngwá a?

---

6. Question and Answer Drill

Ex: T: Wòhng Sàang sé Yìngmàhn. + /Yahtmàhn/(or) Yahtmán/	Mr. Wong is writing English (right now). /Japanese/
S_1: Wòhng Sàang haih m̀hhaih sé Yahtmán a?	Is Mr. Wong writing Japanese?
S_2: M̀hhaih. Kéuih m̀hhaih sé Yahtmán; kéuih sé Yìngmàhn.	No, he's not writing Japanese, he's writing English.

1. Jèung Táai góng Gwokyúh. /Seuhnghóiwá/	1. S_1: Jèung Táai haih m̀hhaih góng Seuhnghóiwá a? S_2: M̀hhaih. Kéuih m̀hhaih góng Seuhnghóiwá, kéuih góng Gwokyúh.
2. Wòhng Táai gaau Gwóngdùngwá. /Yìngmàhn/	2. S_1: Wòhng Táai haih m̀hhaih gaau Yìngmàhn a? S_2: M̀hhaih. Kéuih m̀hhaih gaau Yìngmàhn; kéuih gaau Gwóngdùngwá.
3. Léih Sàang hohk Yìngmàhn. /Yahtbúnwá/	3. S_1: Léih Sàang haih m̀hhaih hohk Yahtbúnwá a? S_2: M̀hhaih. Kéuih m̀hhaih hohk Yahtbúnwá; kéuih hohk Yìngmàhn.

Comment: The above sentence may also be translated 'He writes' instead of 'He is writing,' etc. For example: sé Yìngmàhn, 'writes English'--not knows how to, but does it as a habit, custom or general rule. For instance, He writes English at the office. Likewise for sentences with main verb hohk, gaau, and góng. The situational context, not the structural form of the Cantonese verb, makes the meaning clear.

---

7. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh sīk góng Gwokyúh. /Seuhnghóiwá/	I can speak Mandarin. /Shanghai dialect/
S: Ngóh sīk góng Gwokyúh, daahnhaih m̀hsīk góng Seuhnghóiwá.	I can speak Mandarin, but not the Shanghai dialect.
1. Ngóh sīk góng Gwóngdùngwá. /Seuhnghóiwá/	1. Ngóh sīk góng Gwóngdùngwá, daahnhaih m̀hsīk góng Seuhnghóiwá.
2. Kéuih sīk góng Yīngmán. /Gwokyúh/	2. Kéuih sīk góng Yīngmán, daahnhaih m̀hsīk góng Gwokyúh.
+ 3. Kéuihdeih sīk góng Tòihsāanwá. They can speak Toishan dialect. /Yīngmán/	3. Kéuihdeih sīk góng Tòihsāanwá, daahnhaih m̀hsīk góng Yīngmán.
4. Hòh Táai sīk góng Gwokyúh. /Gwóngdùngwá/	4. Hòh Táai sīk góng Gwokyúh, daahnhaih m̀hsīk góng Gwóngdùngwá.
5. Chàhn Táai sīk góng Yīngmán. /Yahtbúnwá/	5. Chàhn Táai sīk góng Yīngmán, daahnhaih m̀hsīk góng Yahtbúnwá.

---

8. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh sīk góng Yīngmàhn. /Gwóngdùngwá/	I can speak English. /Cantonese/
S: Ngóh sīk góng Yīngmàhn; dōu sīk góng Gwóngdùngwá.	I can speak English; (and I) can also speak Cantonese.
1. Ngóh sīk góng Gwóngdùngwá. /Seuhnghóiwá/	1. Ngóh sīk góng Gwóngdùngwá' dōu sīk góng Seuhnghóiwá.
2. Kéuih sīk Gwokyúh. /Yīngmán/	2. Kéuih sīk góng Gwokyúh; dōu sīk góng Yīngmán.
3. Léih Sàang sīk góng Seuhnghóiwá. /Gwokyúh/	3. Léih Sàang sīk góng Seuhnghóiwá; dōu sīk góng Gwokyúh.

4. Chàhn Táai sīk góng Yīngmán. /Gwóngdùngwá/

4. Chàhn Táai sīk góng Yīngmán; dōu sīk góng Gwóngdùngwá.

5. Hòh Sīujé sīk góng Seuhnghóiwá. /Gwóngdùngwá/

5. Hòh Sīujé sīk góng Seuhnghóiwá; dōu sīk góng Gwóngdùngwá.

---

9. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih sīk góng Gwóngdùngwá. /Gwokyúh/

He can speak Cantonese. /Mandarin/

+ S: Kéuih (yauh) sīk góng Gwóngdùngwá, yauh sīk góng Gwokyúh. [(both) ... and ...]

He can speak Cantonese and Mandarin. or
He can speak both Cantonese and Mandarin.

1. Kéuih hohk Yahtmàhn./Yīngmán/

1. Kéuih yauh hohk Yahtmán, yauh hohk Yīngmán.
He's studying written Japanese and English.

2. Ngóh gaau Jùngmàhn. /Yīngmán/

2. Ngóh yauh gaau Jùngmán, yauh gaau Yīngmán.

3. Kéuih sīk sé Yīngmàhn. /Yahtmàhn/

3. Kéuih yauh sīk sé Yīngmàhn, yauh sīk sé Yahtmàhn.

4. Kéuih m̀hhaih Méihgwokyàhn. /Yīnggwokyàhn/

4. Kéuih yauh m̀hhaih Méihgwokyàhn, yauh m̀hhaih Yīnggwokyàhn.

5. Ngóh m̀hhohk góng Gwokyúh. /Seuhnghóiwá/

5. Ngóh yauh m̀hhohk góng Gwokyúh, yauh m̀hhohk góng Seuhnghóiwá.

---

10. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Léih Sàang haih Seuhnghóiyàhn. /Léih Táai/

Mr. Lee is from Shanghai /Mrs. Lee/

S: Léih Sàang tùhng Léih Táai dōu haih Seuhnghóiyàhn.

Mr. [Lee] and Mrs. Lee are both from Shanghai.

1. Wòhng Táai sīk góng Gwokyúh. /Chàhn Sīujé/

1. Wòhng Táai tùhng Chàhn Sīujé dōu sīk góng Gwokyúh.

2. Kéuih sīk Wòhng Sàang. /ngóh/

2. Kéuih tùhng ngóh dōu sīk Wòhng Sàang.

3. Jèung Sīujé hohk Gwóngdùngwá. /kéuih pàhngyáuh/	3. Jèung Sīujé tùhng kéuih pàhngyáuh dōu hohk Gwóngdùngwá.
4. Ngóh haih sing Jèung ge. /kéuih/	4. Ngóh tùhng kéuih dōu haih sing Jèung ge.
5. Hòh Táai sīk sé Yahtmàhn. /Chàhn Sīujé/	5. Hòh Táai tùhng Chàhn Sīujé dōu sīk sé Yahtmàhn.

11. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih sīk góng Gwokyúh. /Gwóngdùngwá/	He can speak Mandarin. /Cantonese/
S: Kéuih sīk góng Gwokyúh tùhng Gwóngdùngwá.	He can speak Mandarin and Cantonese.
1. Kéuih hohk Yīngmán. /Yahtmán/	1. Kéuih hohk Yīngmán tùhng Yahtmán.
2. Kéuihdeih gaau Jùngmàhn. /Yīngmán/	2. Kéuihdeih gaau Jùngmàhn tùhng Yīngmán.
3. Léih Táai sīk sé Yahtmàhn. /Jùngmán/	3. Léih Táai sīk sé Yahtmán tùhng Jùngmàhn.
+ 4. Ngóh sīk Léih Sàang. /Léih Táai/ (know (someone))	4. Ngóh sīk Léih Sàang tùhng Léih Táai. I know Mr. and Mrs Lee.

12. Substitution Drill

+ Ex: T: Bīngo gaau Gwóngdùngwá a? /Léih Sàang/	Who teaches Cantonese?
S: Léih Sàang gaau Gwóngdùngwá.	Mr. Lee teaches Cantonese.
1. Bīngo góng Seuhnghóiwá a? /Hòh Táai/	1. Hòh Táai góng Seuhnghóiwá.
2. Bīngo hohk Gwokyúh a? /Wòhng Sàang/	2. Wòhng Sàang hohk Gwokyúh.
3. Bīngo gaau Yīngmàhn a? /Chàhn Sīujé/	3. Chàhn Sīujé gaau Yīngmàhn.
4. Bīngo sīk góng Yahtbúnwá a? /Jèung Sàang/	4. Jèung Sàang sīk góng Yahtbúnwá.

5. Bīngo sīk gaau Gwóngdùngwá a? /Léih Táai/	5. Léih Táai sīk gaau Gwóngdùngwá.

---

13. Response & Expansion Drill

Ex: 1.T: Néih sīk m̀hsīk Wòhng Sàang a? /nod/	T: Do you know Mr. Wong?
S: Ngóh sīk kéuih. Kéuih haih ngóh pàhngyáuh.	S: Yes, he is a friend of mine.
2.T: Néih sīk m̀hsīk Wòhng Sàang a? /shake/	T: Do you know Mr. Wong?
S: Ngóh m̀hsīk kéuih. Kéuih haih bīngo a?	S: No, who is he?
1. Néih sīk m̀hsīk Hòh Táai a? /nod/	1. Ngóh sīk kéuih. Kéuih haih ngóh pàhngyáuh.
2. Néih sīk m̀hsīk Chàhn Sàang a? /shake/	2. Ngóh m̀hsīk kéuih. Kéuih haih bīngo a?
3. Néih sīk m̀hsīk Jèung Síujé a? /nod/	3. Ngóh sīk kéuih. Kéuih haih ngóh pàhngyáuh.
4. Néih sīk m̀hsīk Léih Sàang a? /shake/	4. Ngóh m̀hsīk kéuih. Kéuih haih bīngo a?

---

14. Response Drill

Ex: T: Néih sīk m̀hsīk góng Yahtbúnwá a? /shake/	T: Do you know how to speak Japanese? /shake/
S: M̀hsīk. Yahtbúnwá + ngóh yāt geui dōu m̀hsīk góng.	S: No. I don't even know one sentence in Japanese.
T: /nod/	
S: Sīk sèsíu jē.	S: (I) know just a little.
1. Néih sīk m̀hsīk góng Gwóngdùngwá a? /shake/	1. M̀hsīk. Gwóngdùngwá ngóh yāt geui dōu m̀hsīk góng.
2. Néih sīk m̀hsīk góng Gwokyúh a? /shake/	2. M̀hsīk. Gwokyúh ngóh yāt geui dōu m̀hsīk góng.

3. Néih sīk m̀hsīk góng Seuhnghóiwá a? /nod/	3. Sīk sèsíu jē.
4. Néih sīk m̀hsīk góng Yīngmàhn a? /nod/	4. Sīk sèsíu jē.
5. Néih sīk m̀hsīk góng Yahtbúnwá a? /shake/	5. M̀hsīk. Yahtbúnwá ngóh yāt geui dōu m̀hsīk góng.

---

15. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuihdeih góng mēyéh wá a?	T: What language are they speaking?
S: Néih jī m̀hjī kéuihdeih góng mēyéh wá a?	S: Do you know what language they're speaking?
1. Kéuih sing mēyéh a? What is his name?	1. Néih jī m̀hjī kéuih sing mēyéh a? Do you know what his name is?
2. Kéuih gaau mēyèh wá a? What language does he teach?	2. Néih jī m̀hjī kéuih gaau mēyèh wá a?
3. Kéuih sé mēyèh a? What is he writing?	3. Néih jī m̀hjī kéuih sé mēyèh a?
4. Kéuih haih bīngo a? Who is he?	4. Néih jī m̀hjī kéuih haih bīngo a?
5. Kéuih haihm̀hhaih sing Hòh ga? Is her name Ho?	5. Néih jī m̀hjī kéuih haih m̀hhaih sing Hòh ga? Do you know if her name is Ho?

---

16. Translation Drill

Ex: T: "Pàhngyáuh" Yīngmán dím góng a?	T: How do you say "friend" in English
S: Friend	S: Friend.
1. "Hohk," Yīngmán dím góng a?	1. "Learn".
2. "Gaau," Yīngmán dím góng a?	2. "Teach!"
3. "Daahnhaih," Yīngmán dím góng a?	3. "But."
4. "Sèsíu," Yīngmán dím góng a?	4. "A little!"
5. "Gwokyúh," Yīngmán dím góng a?	5. "Mandarin!"

6. "Jìdou", Yìngmán dím góng a?	6. "Know" (something)."
7. "Sīk", Yìngmán dím góng a?	7. "Know how to or know (a person)."
8. "Sé", Yìngmán dím góng a?	8. "Write."
9. "Hohksāang, "Yìngmán dím góng a?	9. "Student."

---

17. Translation Drill

Ex: T: "Two" Gwóngdùngwá dím góng a?	T: How do you say "two" in Cantonese?
S: "Yih".	S: "Yih".
1. "Three" Gwóngdùngwá dím góng a?	1. "Sàam."
2. "Teach" Gwóngdùngwá dím góng a?	2. "Gaau."
3. "They" Gwóngdùngwá dím góng a?	3. "Kéuihdeih."
4. "Who" Gwóngdùngwá dím góng a?	4. "Bīngo."
5. "Know how" Gwóngdùngwá dím góng a?	5. "Sīk."
6. "But" Gwóngdùngwá dím góng a?	6. "Daahnhaih."
7. "Please say it again" Gwóngdùngwá dím góng a?	7. "M̀hgòi néih joi góng yāt chi."
8. "I don't know" Gwóngdùngwá dím góng a?	8. "Ngóh m̀hjì."
9. "Teacher" Gwóngdùngwá dím góng a?	9. "Sīnsàang."
10. "Four" Gwóngdùngwá dím góng a?	10. "Sei."
11. "Five" Gwóngdùngwá dím góng a?	11. "Ńgh."

---

18. Response Drill:

Ex: T: Kéuih haih bīngo a? /gaau Yìngmán/	T: Who is he? /teach English/
S: Kéuih haih gaau Yìngmán ge.	S: He's someone who teaches English.

1. Kéuih haih bīngo a? /sing Wòhng/	1. Kéuih haih sing Wòhng ge.
2. Kéuih haih bīngo a? /gaau Gwóngdùngwá/	2. Kéuih haih gaau Gwóngdùngwá ge.
3. Kéuih haih bīngo a? /gaau Yìngmán/	3. Kéuih haih gaau Yìngmán ge.
4. Kéuih haih bīngo a? /hohk Gwokyúh/	4. Kéuih haih hohk Gwokyúh ge.

a. Repeat, teacher cueing with right hand column, students responding with correspond haih m̀hhaih question sentence, thus:

T: Kéuih gaau ngóh Yìngmán ge.

S: Kéuih haih m̀hhaih gaau néih Yìngmán ga?

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Listen to tape with book closed.)

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE:

A. Ask your neighbor:	B. And he answers:
1. if he can speak the Shanghai dialect.	1. that he can't, but that he can speak Mandarin.
2. who teaches him to speak Cantonese.	2. that Mr. Cheung does.
3. if Mrs. Wong teaches Cantonese.	3. that she doesn't; she teaches English.
4. if his friend can speak Cantonese.	4. that he can't say even one sentence.
5. how to say 'Good morning' in Cantonese.	5. that he didn't hear you (hear clearly)--would you repeat.
6. if he can write Chinese.	6. that he can't write it, but can speak a little.
7. if Mr. Chan can speak the Taishan dialect.	7. that he can speak Taishan dialect and also can speak Shanghai dialect.
8. if Mr. Cheung can speak Japanese and English.	8. Yes, he can speak both Japanese and English.

9. if he knows what language they are speaking.	9. they're speaking English.
10. whether his student is American.	10. No, he's not an American, he's an Englishman.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 3

1. bīngo?	QW:	who?
2. chi	m:	time, occasion
3. chíngchó	adj:	clear
4. daahnhaih	cj:	but
5. dī	m:	a little, some
6. dím?	QW:	how?
7. dōu	adv:	both
8. gaau	v:	teach
9. ga/ge/g	ss:	sen. suf. for matter of fact assertion
10. geui	m:	sentence
11. góng	v:	speak
12. Gwokyúh	n:	Mandarin spoken language
13. Gwóngdùngwá	n:	Cantonese spoken language
14. hohk	v:	study, learn
15. jē	ss:	sen. suf. only, merely; that's all
16. jí(dou)	v:	know (something)
17. joi	adv:	again
18. Joi góng yātchi	Ph:	Say it again.
19. Jùngmàhn	n:	Chinese (written) language
20. mē	ss:	sen. suf. for question indicating surprise
21. M̀hgòi néih...	Ph:	Please..., Would you please.... sen. pre. preceding a request
22. ńgh	nu:	five
23. sàam	nu:	three
24. sé	v:	write
25. sèsíu	Ph:	a little
26. sei	nu:	four
27. Seuhnghóiwá	n:	Shanghai dialect (spoken language)

28. séung	aux v:	wish to, want to, would like to, am considering, be of a mind to
29. sīk	v:	to know someone
30. sīk	aux v/v:	know how (to do something)
31. tèng	v:	hear, listen
32. Tòihsāanwá	n:	Toishan dialect
33. tùhng	cj:	and (connects nouns)
34. wá	n:	spoken language, dialect
35. Yahtbúnwá	n:	Japanese (spoken) language
36. Yahtmán	n:	Japanese (written) language
37. Yahtmàhn	n:	Japanese (written) language
38. yāt	nu:	one
39. yāt chi	Ph:	once [one-time]
40. yauh	adv:	also (connects Verb Phrases)
41. yauh V, yauh V.	PAdv:	both..., and ....
42. yih	nu:	two
43. Yīngmàhn	n:	English language
44. Yīngmán	n:	English language

CLASSROOM PHRASES

Learn to respond to the following classroom instructions. First look at the English equivalents as the teacher reads the Cantonese instructions. Then close your books and listen to the teacher and watch his gestures to help you understand. Check your book if you have difficulty. The teacher will say the sentences several times to help you become familiar with them. Your goal is to be able to respond to the Cantonese without needing to do mental translations into English.

1. Yìhgā néihdeih tái daih _1_ yihp.	1. Now look at page _1_.
2. Dáhòi néih bún syù, daih _1_ yihp.	2. Open your book to page ____.
3. Yìhgā ngóhdeih duhk daih _4_ fo gèibún wuihwá.	3. Now we'll read aloud Lesson _4_, Basic Conversation.
4. Yìhgā ngóhdeih wānjaahp daih _3_ fo.	4. Now we'll review Lesson _3_.
5. Kàhmyaht gaaudou bīndouh a?	5. Where did we get to [lit. teach to] yesterday?
6. Seuhng chi gaaudou bīndouh a?	6. Where did we get to last time?
7. Kàhmyaht gaaudou daih _2_ yihp, daih _2_ fo, daih _2_ go, lihnjaahp, daih _2_ geui.	7. Yesterday we got to page _2_, Lesson _2_, Drill _2_, Sentence _2_.
8. Dāk meih?	8. Are you ready yet?
Responses:	
Dāk laak.	Ready.
Meih dāk a. or Meih dāk.	Not ready yet.

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

Léih Baak-chìu appears at the door of Làuh Gwok-jūng's office. The two had planned to have lunch together, and Mr. Léih has come to get Mr. Làuh.

Léih:

dāk meih?	ready?
Baak-chìu, dāk meih?	Baak-chìu, are you ready?

Làuh:

meih	not yet
Meih a.	Not yet.
dímjūng *or* dím	hour, o'clock
géidím *or* géidímjūng?	what time?
Géidím a?	What time is it?

Léih:

yìhgā	now
daahp yāt	five after the hour
yāt dím daahp yāt	five after one
Yìhgā ... (he looks at his watch) yāt dím daahp yāt.	It's ...five after one.

Làuh:

wá?	sentence suffix 'what did you say?'
Géidím wá?	What time did you say?

Léih:

yāt go jih	five minutes
Yāt dím yāt go jih.	It's one oh five.

Làuh:

jéun	accurate
jéun m̀hjéun a?	accurate/not accurate
bīu	wristwatch, watch
go bīu	a watch
néih go bīu	your watch
Néih go bīu jéun m̀hjéun ga?	Your watch accurate one? (i.e. Is your watch accurate?)

Léih

Chàm̀hdō--	Approximately--
faai	fast
la	sentence suffix indicating change from previous condition: 'has become'.
faai sèsíu la	gotten a bit fast
lā = la + raised sentence final intonation	raised final intonation = a sentence suffix indicating casualness.
waahkjé	maybe, or
Waahkjé faai sèsíu lā.	Maybe it's a little fast. or Or a little fast.

Làuh

fānjūng	minute(s)
géi	several
géi fānjūng	several minutes
dáng	wait
dáng géi fānjūng	wait a few minutes
dáng ngóh géi fānjūng	wait for me a few minutes
joi dáng ngóh géi fānjūng	again wait for me a few minutes
tìm	in addition, also, more
lā	sentence suffix for suggestion--polite imperative.
Gám, joi dáng ngóh géi fānjūng tìm lā.	Well, wait for me a few minutes more, please.

Léih

hóu	OK, all right, fine
Hóu, ngóh dáng néih lā.	OK, I'll wait for you.

Làuh

m̀hhóu yisi	I'm sorry. or It's embarrassing. (used in apologizing for social gaffe.)

bo	sentence suffix, expressing certainty.
M̀hhóu yisi bo.	I'm sorry.
Léih	
M̀hgányiu.	It's all right.

B. Recapitulation:

Léih	
Baak-chīu, dāk meih?	Baak-chīu, are you ready?
Làuh	
Meih a. Géidím a?	Not yet. What time is it?
Léih	
Yīhgā ... (he looks at his watch) ... yāt dím daahp yāt.	It's ... five after one.
Làuh	
Géidím wá?	What time did you say?
Léih	
Yāt dím yāt go jih.	It's one oh five.
Làuh	
Néih go bīu jéun m̀hjéun ga?	Is your watch accurate? [Your watch accurate one?]
Léih	
Chàm̀hdō--waahkjé faai sèsíu lā.	Approximately--or a little fast.
Làuh	
Gám, joi dáng ngóh géi fānjūng tím lā.	Well, wait for me a few minutes more, please.
Léih	
Hóu, ngóh dáng néih lā.	OK, I'll wait for you.
Làuh	
M̀hhóu yisi bo.	I'm sorry.
Léih	
M̀hgányiu.	That's all right.

+ + + + + + + + + + + + + +

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE

1. aa, (written in our text as a when it is in syllable-final position) as in yìhgā, Máh, wá

   aa as syllable final is a low back vowel [ɑ]. It is similar to the vowel in the American word "Pa," though the American vowel is less backed than the Cantonese one. (American [a]; Cantonese [ɑ]. Some Americans have the backed vowel in their pronunciation of the English word "balm." [bɑm] Since the backed mid-central vowel in Cantonese [ə˃] which we write with the letter a does not occur as a syllable final but only as the first part of a two-part final, we use a single a to write the lowback vowel aa [ɑ] when it is final in its syllable.

   Listen and repeat:

   1. Máh , Máh , Máh . 馬
   2. wá , wá , wá . 話
   3. yìhgā , yìhgā , yìhgā . 而家

2. aap, as in daahp

   aap is a two-part final composed of the low back vowel aa [ɑ] plus the bilabial stop consonant p [p]. As a final p is unreleased: [p˺]. aa before p is produced the same way as aa finally, as a low back vowel, relatively long in an isolated syllable [ɑˑp˺]. The nearest American counterpart is the op in the American word "pop," but the vowel portion is more backed than the American vowel. (American [a], Cantonese [ɑ]).

   Listen and repeat:

   daahp , daahp , daahp . 踏

3. ap, as in sahp, '10'

   ap is a two-part final composed of the backed mid-central vowel a [ə˃] plus the bilabial stop consonant p [p]. As a final p is unreleased: [p˺]. The a is relatively short in an isolated syllable: [əˇp˺], but it can be attenuated in sentence context under certain conditions. The nearest American counterpart to ap is the mid-central vowel [ə] in the up of general American "cup," [kəp], but the Cantonese vowel is more backed than the American one (Cantonese [ə˃], American [ə]).

Listen and repeat:

sahp , sahp , sahp , sahp . 拾

4. ap/aap contrasts

Listen and repeat:

1. sahp , sahp , sahp . 拾
2. daahp , daahp , daahp . 踏
3. sahp daahp , sahp daahp , sahp daahp 拾踏.
4. daahp sahp , daahp sahp , daahp sahp 踏拾.

5. eung practice

1. léuhng (5 times) 兩
2. séung (5 times) 想
3. Jèung (5 times) 張

6. eun, as in jéun

eun is a two-part final composed of the lower mid-central rounded vowel eu [œ] plus the dental nasal n. eu before n is lower and more backed than the same vowel before ng. eun = [œ n]; eung = [ø ŋ] The vowel eu before n is relatively long: [œ :n]. The vowel is an open vowel before the nasal final. The rounded eu has a rounding effect on a consonant preceding and following it. There is no close counterpart in English.

Listen and repeat: (Watch the teacher, copy his lip position)

準 準 準 1. jéun, jéun, jéun ; jéun, jéun, jéun .
準 唔準 呀 , 2. jéun m̀hjéun a? , jéun m̀hjéun a? ,
jéun m̀hjéun a? .

7. eun/eung contrast

1. jéun (3 times) , séung (3 times) .
2. jéun (3 times) , Jèung (3 times) .
3. jéun (3 times) , léuhng (3 times)
4. séung, Jèung, léuhng , jéun jéun jéun ;
5. jéun, jéun, jéun , séung, Jèung, léuhng .

8. eun/eui contrast

1. jéun jéun deui deui
2. jéun deui , deui jéun , jéun deui ,
deui jéun .

9. uk, as in luhk, 'six'

uk is a two-part final composed of the high back rounded vowel u plus the velar stop consonant k. k as a final is unreleased: [k̚] Before k, the tongue position for u is considerably lowered in regard to tongue height from cardinal high position to upper-mid position: [o]. The vowel is relatively short before k: [o k]. The closest American counterpart is the ook of "look," but the Cantonese vowel is lower than the American one. (Cantonese [o˅k], American [Uk].)

Listen and repeat:

1. luhk luhk luhk
2. luhk , luhk , luhk . 六

10. ung, as in tùhng

ung is a two-part final composed of the high back rounded vowel u plus the velar nasal consonant ng: [ŋ]. The tongue position for u before ng is the same as that of u before k--lowered from cardinal high back position to upper mid position: [oŋ]. The vowel is an open vowel before the nasal final. Lips are rounded.

Listen and repeat:

1. tùhng tùhng tùhng
2. tùhng , tùhng , tùhng . 同

11. ung/uk contrast

1. luhk tùhng , luhk tùhng , luhk tùhng .
2. tùhng luhk , tùhng luhk , tùhng luhk .
3. luhk tùhng , tùhng luhk ,
tùhng luhk , luhk tùhng .

12. un/ung contrast [u^{ɨ}n]/[o ŋ]

Compare: Listen and repeat:

1. tùhng tùhng 同 , bun bun 半 .
2. bun tùhng , tùhng bun .
3. tùhng bun tùhng
4. bun tùhng bun

II. NOTES

A. Culture Notes:

Greetings. When two Americans meet for the first time during the day they use some sort of greeting before ordinary talk begins. Hi, hello, good morning, good afternoon, whatever seems appropriate to the situation. In English it is a bit rude not to offer a greeting before getting down to the business at hand. But Cantonese doesn't have one to one correspondences with American greetings and uses greeting forms more sparingly than English does. A good all-purpose greeting is just to greet the addressee by name.

Ex: Mr. Chan (to Mr. Lee): Léih Sàang.
Mr. Lee: A, Chàhn Sàang.

In this connection notice the first lines of dialogue in the opening conversation.

Ex: When A comes to B's office to get him for lunch:

A: Bāk-chìu dāk meih?	Bāk-chìu, are you ready?
B: Meih a.	Not yet.

In an equivalent English situation, A would be likely to say "Hi" or some such greeting before saying "Ready yet?"

B. Structure Notes:

1. 'Dāk meih?'

Dāk means 'OK, all right' and meih, 'not yet,' Together they form a positive-negative question--'OK?, or not yet?,' i.e., "Ready yet?"

Responses to Dāk meih? are:

Dāk la. = Ready.
Meih dāk.= Not ready yet.

2. Time Expressions

1. The following time expressions are used in telling time in Cantonese:

dím or dímjūng = hour, o'clock
fānjūng = minute (not used as much in Cantonese as in English)
gwāt = quarter-hour sections of the hour (transliteration of English "quarter")
jih = five-minute sections of the hour (jih

literally means "figure," here the 12
numbers on the clock dial.)

2. The above time-words combine as follows:
    1. yāt dím (jūng) = one o'clock
    2. yāt dím yāt fānjūng = one minute after one o'clock
    3. yāt dím yāt go jih = five minutes after one
    (See Drill 7)
    4. yāt dím yāt go gwāt = a quarter after one
    (See Drill 6)
    5. yāt dím bun = half past one
    (See Drill 3)

3. daahp in time expressions

daahp, literally "tread on" is used in reference to the number on the clock face to which the minute hand points to tell time:

Ex: yāt dím daahp yāt = five minutes after one
yāt dím daahp yih = ten minutes after one
(See BC and Drills 4, 7)

4. géi? 'which number?' in time expressions

in time expressions operates as an interrogative number, and occupies the position in the sentence which the reply number occupies.

Ex: 1. géi dím a? = what time is it? [What number o'clock?]
Ńgh dím. = It's five o'clock.
2. Yìhgā daahp géi a? = What time is it? [Now treads on what number?]
Yìhgā daahp sei. = It's 20 after. [Now treads 4.]
(See BC and Drills 1, 3, 4)

5. Positioning of time expressions in relation to main verbs:
    1. A time expression which precedes the verb in the sentence indicates the time that the action represented by the verb took/takes/will take place. We refer to the pre-verb time expression as a 'time when' expression.

Ex: Kéuih sahp dímjùng gaau Gwóngdùngwá. He teaches Cantonese at 10 o'clock.
(See Drill 10)

2. A time expression which follows the verb indicates the length of time the action represented by the verb took/takes/will take place. We refer to the post-verb time expression as a "time spent" expression.

Ex: M̀hgòi néih joi dáng ngóh géi fānjūng tìm lā.	Would you mind waiting for me a few more minutes.

(See Drill 12)

3. Sentence suffix wá?

wá is an interrogative sentence suffix attaching to question-word questions, asking for a repeat of the preceding sentence. It has the force of " ??? did you (or he, etc.) say?"

Ex: 1. Géidím wá?	What time did you say it was?
2. Bīngo gaau néih wá?	Who did you say taught you?
3. Kéuih sing mēyéh wá?	What did you say his name was?

(See Drill 11)

4. Measures:

A Measure is a word in Cantonese which comes between a number (or a limited set of other entities) and a noun.

Ex: go = representative of a class of words called Measures.

Ngóh go bīu= my [Measure] watch = my watch

yāt go jih = one [Measure] figure = one figure, i.e., (in relation to time on the clock dial) five minutes past the hour

Inasmuch as ordinary English nouns do not have a category of word standing between number (and certain other modifiers) and noun, Measures are usually not translatable in English equivalent sentences.

sàam go gwāt = 3 [M] quarters = three quarters

In follow sentences the Measure substitutes for the noun.

Ex: Kéuih go bīu jéun m̀hjéun ga?	His [M] watch--is it accurate?

Kéuih go m̀hjéun.	His one isn't accurate.

(See Drill 8)

We defer fuller treatment of Measures to Lessons 6 and 7.

5. Adjectives:

Adjectives in Cantonese are descriptive words. Examples in this lesson are jéun, 'accurate,' faai, 'fast,' maahn, 'slow.'

Adjectives are classed with Verbs, since they can be preceded by the negative m̀h.

Ex: Néih go bīu jéun m̀hjéun ga?	Is your watch accurate?
Ngóh go bīu m̀hjéun.	My watch isn't accurate.

(See BC)

Note that whereas in English an appropriate form of the verb "be" is needed when an adjective is used in the predicate, in Cantonese adjectives are used in the predicate without any other verb.

Compare:

Subject		Predicate
My	watch	is not accurate.
Ngóh go bīu		m̀hjéun.

This class of words which we call "adjectives," some other writers refer to as "stative verbs.'

Adjectives will be treated more fully in Lesson 8.

6. Numbers:

1. Simple numerals

a. From 1 to 10:

1. yāt
2. yih
3. sàam
4. sei
5. ńgh
6. luhk
7. chāt
8. baat
9. gáu
10. sahp

b. From 11 to 19 Cantonese numbers use an adding formula: ten-one, ten-two, etc:

11. sahpyāt
12. sahpyih
13. sahpsàam
14. sahpsei

15. sahpńgh
16. sahpluhk
17. sahpchāt
18. sahpbaat
19. sahpgáu

2. yih and léuhng = "2"

yih and léuhng both represent "2."

yih is used in counting off: yāt, yih, sàam, 'one, two, three,' and in compound numbers: sahpyih, '12,' yihsahp, '20,' yihsahpyih, '22,' etc.

léuhng represents "2" usually, but not in every case, before Measures.

Ex: léung dím = 2:00
léuhng dím yāt go jih = 2:05
léuhng dím léuhng go jih = 2:10

(See Drills 1, 2, 5, 7)

We recommend that students not try to generalize at first about when to use léuhng and when to use yih, but simply learn them as vocabulary in the places where they occur.

7. Sentence suffix la

la is a sentence suffix indicating that the condition described in the sentence to which it is attached is changed from the way it used to be.

Ex: Ngóh go bīu faai sèsíu la. — My watch has gotten a little fast.

More on sentence suffix la in Lesson 5.

8. Raised final intonation.

In the Basic Conversation of this lesson, raised final intonation transforms sentence suffix la into lā in the following:

Waahkjé faai sèsíu lā. — Maybe (it's) a little fast.

Raised final intonation here indicates uncertainty, doubt.

9. Sentence suffix lā

lā attaches to imperative sentences, with the effect of making the imperative a gentle one, definitely a suggestion politely intended rather than a command. (By imperative we mean 'inciting to action,' including everything from peremptory commands to polite requests and also self-imperatives, such as the equivalent of 'I'll do such and such.') Perhaps the closest English equivalent for lā is a polite tone of voice. The connotation is 'please,' 'Would you mind...' and for the self-imperative, 'I'll...'

Ex:		
	1. Ǹhgòi néih dáng ngóh géi fānjūng tìm lā.	Would you please wait for me a few minutes more.
	2. Hóu, ngóh dáng néih lā.	OK, I'll wait for you.

(See BC)

10. Dialect variations: (ng)āam(ng)āam and others

Words in Cantonese which begin with aa, o, and u have a variant pronunciation in Standard Cantonese in which the initial vowel is preceded by ng.

Examples:		
	āamāam, ngāamngāam	'exactly; just'
	oi, ngoi	'want'
	ūk, ngūk	'house'

(See Drill 5)

III. DRILLS

Preliminary Number Drill: 6-10

+	1. Students listen. Teacher counts off from one to five, then from six to ten, gesturing with fingers.	Yāt yih sàam sei ńgh (1 time) luhk chāt baat gáu sahp (six seven eight nine ten) (do 10 times)
	2. Students in chorus count simultaneously with teacher. Teacher counts from 6 to 10, using hand signals.	luhk chāt baat gáu sahp (10 times)
	3. Teacher silent, signals to an individual student to recite by himself.	luhk chāt baat gáu sahp
	4. Random order count: Teacher indicates one finger at a time in random order, signalling students either individually or in chorus to call out appropriate number.	sahp, luhk, gáu. etc. (approximately 30 numbers)

1. Listen and repeat: number drill: clock hours. Teacher uses pointer and blackboard clock. The students repeat after the teacher in the pauses provided.

1.	yāt (pause)	yāt dím. (pause)	yāt dímjūng. (pause)	1, 1:00.
+ 2.	yih (pause)	léuhng dím (pause)	léuhng dímjūng. (pause)	2, 2:00.
3.	sàam (pause)	sàam dím. (pause)	sàam dímjūng. (pause)	3, 3:00.
4.	sei (pause)	sei dím. (pause)	sei dímjūng. (pause)	4, 4:00.
5.	ńgh (pause)	ńgh dím. (pause)	ńgh dímjūng. (pause)	5, 5:00.
6.	luhk (pause)	luhk dím. (pause)	luhk dímjūng. (pause)	6, 6:00.
7.	chāt (pause)	chāt dím. (pause)	chāt dímjūng. (pause)	7, 7:00.
8.	baat (pause)	baat dím. (pause)	baat dímjūng. (pause)	8, 8:00.
9.	gáu (pause)	gáu dím. (pause)	gáu dímjūng. (pause)	9, 9:00.
10.	sahp (pause)	sahp dím. (pause)	sahp dímjūng. (pause)	10, 10:00.
+ 11.	sahpyāt (pause)	sahpyāt dím. (pause)	sahpyāt dímjūng. (pause)	11, 11:00.
+ 12.	sahpyih (pause)	sahpyih dím. (pause)	sahpyih dímjūng. (pause)	12, 12:00.
13.	géi (pause) Which number?	géidím? (pause) What o'clock?	géidímjūng? (pause) What o'clock?	

a. Random order. Teacher silent, points to different numbers on clock dial in random order, students call out time. Individual or group response, or both.

Comment: géi? 'which?' is an interrogative pronoun of number.

---

2. Expansion Drill: Props: A big clock drawn on blackboard. Teacher silent, gives visual cues by pointing to numbers on clock.

Ex: T: (points to 7 on the clock dial)	
S: Yìhgā chāt dím.	It's seven o'clock. [Now seven o'clock.]
1. (3)	1. Yìhgā sàam dím.
2. (6)	2. Yìhgā luhk dím.
3. (9)	3. Yìhgā gáu dím.
4. (8)	4. Yìhgā baat dím.
5. (2)	5. Yìhgā léuhng dím.

a. Continue, teacher pointing to numbers on clock to cue students. Teacher signals for choral or individual response.

3. Expansion Drill: Props: A big clock drawn on blackboard. Teacher points to number and says cue word.

Ex: T: /yāt/	T: /one/
S: Yìhgā daahp yat.	S: It's five after.
1. /sàam/	1. Yìhgā daahp sàam.
2. /baat/	2. Yìhgā daahp baat.
3. /gáu/	3. Yìhgā daahp gáu.
4. /sei/	4. Yìhgā daahp sei.
5. /chāt/	5. Yìhgā daahp chāt.
6. /yih/	6. Yìhgā daahp yih.
7. /sahpyat/	7. Yìhgā daahp sahpyāt.
+ 8. /bun/ half	8. Yìhgā daahp bun. It's half past.
9. /ńgh/	9. Yìhgā daahp ńgh.

---

4. Conversation Drill: Props: A big clock drawn on blackboard. Teacher provides visual cues only, by pointing to number on clock.

Ex: T: 1	
S_1: Yìhgā daahp géi a?	T: What time is it?
S_2: Yìhgā daahp yāt.	S: It's five after.
1. 5	1. A. Yìhgā daahp géi a? B. Yìhgā daahp ńgh.
2. 7	2. A. Yìhgā daahp géi a? B. Yìhgā daahp chāt.
3. 11	3. A. Yìhgā daahp géi a? B. Yìhgā daahp sahpyāt.
4. 8	4. A. Yìhgā daahp géi a? B. Yìhgā daahp baat.
5. 6 +	5. A. Yìhgā daahp géi a? B. Yìhgā daahp bun. (daahp bun = half past)
6. 2	6. A. Yìhgā daahp géi a? B. Yìhgā daahp yih.

5. Expansion Drill: Props: Blackboard clock. Teacher points first to hour number then to the half-hour number, as he voices the cue sentence.

Ex: T: Yìhgā sàam dím bun.	T: It's half past three. [Now three o'clock half.]
+ S: Yìhgā ngāamngāam sàam dím bun. (ng)āam(ng)āam = exactly, just.	S: It's exactly half past three.
1. Yìhgā léuhng dím bun.	1. Yìhgā ngāamngāam léuhng dím bun.
2. Yìhgā ńgh dím bun.	2. Yìhgā ngāamngāam ńgh dím bun.
3. Yìhgā luhk dím bun.	3. Yìhgā ngāamngāam luhk dím bun.
4. Yìhgā baat dím bun.	4. Yìhgā ngāamngāam baat dím bun.
5. Yìhgā sahp dím bun.	5. Yìhgā ngāamngāam sahp dím bun.

6. Expansion Drill: Props: Blackboard clock. Teacher says cue then points to the quarter hour on the clock to signal students' response.

Ex: T: Sahp dím.	T: Ten o'clock
S: Yìhgā sahp dím + yāt go gwāt.	S: It's a quarter after ten. [Now ten o'clock one quarter.]
1. yāt dím	1. Yìhgā yāt dím yāt go gwāt.
2. sei dím	2. Yìhgā sei dím yāt go gwāt.
3. chāt dím	3. Yìhgā chāt dím yāt go gwāt.
4. ńgh dím	4. Yìhgā ńgh dím yāt go gwāt.
5. sàam dím	5. Yìhgā sàam dím yāt go gwāt.
6. léuhng dím	6. Yìhgā léuhng dím yāt go gwāt.

Comment: gwāt 'quarter', a transliteration from English. Grammatically gwāt is a Noun, having the Measure go. It occurs in combination with numbers 1 and 3 to form time phrases marking the 2 quarter-hours:

sàam dím yāt go gwāt - Three o'clock one quarter = 3:15

sàam dím sàam go gwāt - Three o'clock three quarters = 3:45

7. Alteration Drill:

Ex: T: Yìhgā sàam dím daahp yāt.		It's five after three.
	or	It's three-oh-five. [three touch one]
S: Yìhgā sàam dím yāt go jih.		It's five after three.
	or	It's three-oh-five. [Now three o'clock one figure.]

(TO STUDENT: Take out paper & pencil and write a column of numbers from 1 to 7. As you respond orally, write down the times on paper (e.g. 3:05.) After the exercise, the teacher will give responses in English, and you correct your paper.)

1. Yìhgā sàam dím daahp yih.	1. Yìhgā sàam dím lèuhng go jih.
2. Yìhgā sàam dím daahp sei.	2. Yìhga sàam dím sei go jih.
3. Yìhgā sàam dím daahp chāt.	3. Yìhgā sàam dím chāt go jih.
4. Yìhgā sàam dim daahp sàam.	4. Yìhgā sàam dím sàam go jih.
5. Yìhgā sàam dim daahp sahp.	5. Yìhgā sàam dím sahp go jih.

Comment: a. jih, 'figure'. Grammatically jih is a Noun, having the Measure go. It occurs in combination with the numbers 1 through 11 to form a series of time phrases marking the five-minutes subdivisions of the hour.

yāt go jih = 5 after

lèuhng go jih = 10 after, etc.

b. The go jih part of the above phrases may be omitted, with the meaning unchanged:

sàam dím sàam go jih - sàam dím sàam = 3:15

---

8. Expansion Drill:

Ex: T: Léih Táai go bīu faai sēsíu. /maahn sēsíu/	Mrs. Lee's watch is a little fast. /slow a little/
S: Léih Táai go bīu faai sēsíu; ngóh go maahn sēsíu.	Mrs. Lee's watch is a little fast, mine's a little slow.
1. Léih Táai go bīu maahn sēsíu. /faai sesiu/	1. Léih Táai go bīu maahn sēsíu, ngóh go faai sēsíu.
2. Léih Táai go bīu faai yātgo-jih. /maahn yātgojih/	2. Léih Táai go bīu faai yātgo-jih, ngóh go maahn yātgo-jih.

3. Léih Táai go bīu maahn yāt fānjūng /faai yāt fānjūng/ Mrs. Lee's watch is one minute slow.	3. Léih Táai go bīu maahn yāt fānjūng, ngóh go faai yāt fānjūng.
4. Chàhn Táai go bīu faai sésíu. /maahn sésíu/	4. Chàhn Táai go bīu faai sésíu, ngóh go maahn sésíu.
5. Chàhn Táai go bīu maahn léuhng-gojih./faai yāt go gwāt/	5. Chàhn Táai go bīu maahn léuhng go jih, ngóh go faai yāt go gwāt.

9. Response Drill:

Ex: T: Kéuihdeih haih mhaih Yīnggwokyàhn a? /Méihgwokyàhn/	Are they English? /Americans/
S: Ngóh mjī. Waahkjé haih Yīnggwokyàhn, waahkjé haih Méihgwokyàhn.	I don't know - They may be English, may be Americans.
1. Kéuih haih mhaih Gwóngdūngyàhn a? /Seuhnghóiyàhn/	1. Ngóh mjī, waahkjé haih Gwóngdūngyàhn, waahkjé haih Seuhnghóiyàhn.
2. Kéuih haih mhaih Méihgwokyàhn a? /Yīnggwokyàhn/	2. Ngóh mjī, waahkjé haih Méihgwokyàhn, waahkjé haih Yīnggwokyàhn.
3. Kéuih haih mhaih Seuhnghóiyàhn a? /Gwóngdūngyàhn/	3. Ngóh mjī, waahkjé haih Seuhnghóiyàhn; waahkjé haih Gwóngdūngyàhn.
4. Kéuih haih mhaih Jūnggwokyàhn a? /Yahtbúnyàhn/	4. Ngóh mjī, waahkjé haih Jūnggwokyàhn; waahkjé haih Yahtbúnyàhn.

a. Repeat, Teacher giving the two fillers only, students taking both parts of conversation, thus:

T: /Yīnggwokyàhn/ Méihgwokyàhn/

S1: Kéuih haih mhaih Yīnggwokyàhn a?

S2: Waahkjé haih Yīnggwokyàhn, waahkjé haih Méihgwokyàhn.

10. Combining Drill:

Ex: T: Yìhgā sahp dím bun. Kéuihdeih hohk Gwóngdūngwá.	T: It's ten thirty. They study Cantonese.

S: Kéuihdeih sahp dím bun hohk Gwóngdūngwá. S: They study Cantonese at 10:30.

1. Yìhgā gáu dímjūng. Kéuih gaau bīngo a?
1. Kéuih gáu dímjūng gaau bīngo a?

2. Yìhgā léuhng dím yātgogwāt. Bīngo hohk Yīngmàhn a?
2. Bīngo léuhng dím yātgogwāt hohk Yīngmàhn a?

3. Yìhgā sàam dím sàamgogwāt. Léih Sàang hohk mēyéh a?
3. Léih Sàang sàam dím sàamgogwāt hohk mēyéh a?

4. Yìhgā sahpyāt dím bun. Ngóhdeih hohk sé Jùngmàhn.
4. Ngóhdeih sahpyāt dím bun hohk sé Jùngmàhn.

5. Yìhgā sei dím bun. Hòh Síujé gaau Méihgwokyàhn Gwokyúh.
5. Hòh Síujé sei dím bun gaau Méihgwokyàhn Gwokyúh.

6. Yìhgā baat dím sàamgogwāt. Jèung Táai gaau néih góng Gwóngdūngwá.
6. Jèung Táai baat dím sàamgogwāt gaau néih góng Gwóngdūngwá.

Comment: A time phrase which indicates the time that the action represented by the verb takes place, precedes the verb in the sentence.

---

11. Response Drill: Make a wá? question out of each statement, substituting the appropriate question word for the expression underlined in the cue sentence.

Ex: T: Yìhgā sahpdím bun. T: It is now 10:30.
S: Yìhgā géidím wá? S: What time did you say it was now?

1. Kéuih sing Làuh.
1. Kéuih sing mēyéh wá?

2. Kéuih haih ngóh hohksāang.
2. Bīngo haih néih hohksāang wá?

3. Hòh Síujé gaau ngóh Seuhnghóiwá.
3. Bīngo gaau néih Seuhnghóiwá wá?

4. Chàhn Táai haih kéuih sīnsàang. Mrs. Chan is her teacher.
4. Bīngo haih kéuih sīnsàang wá?

5. Léih Sàang haih Méihgwokyàhn.
5. Bīngo haih Méihgwokyàhn wá?

---

12. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

1. Ngóh [illegible] dáng ngh géi fānjūng.
1. Ngóh [illegible] dáng ngh géi fānjūng.

2. /géi go jih/	2. **Ǹhgòi néih dáng ngóh géi go jih.**
3. /yāt go jih/	3. **Ǹhgòi néih dáng ngóh yāt go jih.**
4. /léuhng fānjūng/	4. **Ǹhgòi néih dáng ngóh léuhng fānjūng.**
5. /léuhng go jih/	5. **Ǹhgòi néih dáng ngóh léuhng go jih.**

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Listen to tape with book closed.)

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE.

A. Ask your neighbor:	B. And he replies:
1. if his watch is accurate.	1. that it is a little slow.
2. what time Mr. Chan teaches English.	2. that he is sorry but he doesn't know.
3. if Mr. Wong teaches English at 2:15.	3. no, he teaches English at 2:45.
4. how to say 'five after three' in Cantonese.	4. telling you two ways to say it.
5. to wait for you 10 more minutes.	5. OK, he'll wait.
6. if he's ready.	6. that he is.
7. if he's ready.	7. that he's not--and asks you to wait a few minutes.
8. what time he said it was.	8. 10:30.
9. if Mr. and Mrs. Chan are from Shanghai.	9. that Mr. Chan is from Shanghai but Mrs. Chan is from Taishan.
10. what time his watch has, adding that your own might not be accurate.	10. that it's exactly 11:02.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 4

1. āamāam	adv:	exactly
2. baat	nu:	eight
3. bīu	n:	watch
4. bo	ss:	sen. suf. for certainty
5. bun	nu:	half
6. chàhmhdō	Ph:	approximately
7. chāt	nu:	seven
8. daahp	v:	tread on
9. daahp bun	TW:	half past
10. daahp géi?	TW:	how many five minutes past the hour?
11. Dāk meih?	Ph:	Ready?
12. dáng	v:	wait (for)
13. dím(jūng)	m:	o'clock
14. faai	adj:	fast
15. fānjūng	m:	minute(s)
16. gáu	nu:	nine
17. géi	nu:	several
18. géi?	QW:	which number?
19. géidím(jūng)?	Ph:	What o'clock? What time?
20. go	m:	M. for nouns
21. gwāt	(bf)n:	quarter (hour)
22. Hóu	adj:	OK. All right. (response used in agreeing with someone.)
23. jéun	adj:	accurate, right
24. jih	n:	written figure; word
25. lā	ss:	sen. suf. la for change + raised intonation for doubt.
26. lā	ss:	sen. suf. for polite suggestion
27. la	ss:	sen. suf. indicating change from previous condition.
28. léuhng	nu:	two
29. luhk	nu:	six
30. maahn	adj:	slow
31. Meih	adv:	Not yet.

32. M̀hhóu yisi	Ph:	I'm sorry; It's embarassing.
33. ngāamngāam	adv:	exactly (see āamāam)
34. sàam go gwāt	Ph:	three quarters after the hour
35. sahp	nu:	ten
36. sahpyāt	nu:	eleven
37. sahpyih	nu:	twelve
38. tìm	ss:	in addition, also, more
39. wá	ss:	interrogative sen. suf. calling for repeat of preceding sentence. i.e., ____ did you say?'
40. waahkjé	cj:	maybe; or
41. yāt go gwāt	Ph:	a quarter after the hour
42. yāt go jih	Ph:	five minutes
43. yìhgā	TW:	now

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

Mrs. Wòhng stops in to see her friend Mrs. Jèung at home.

jyúyàhn		host, hostess
	Jyúyàhn	
chóh		sit
chèuihbín		As you wish, at your convenience
Chèuihbín chóh lā.		Sit anywhere you like.
yàhnhaak		guest
	Yàhnhaak	
m̀hgòi		thank you
Hóu, m̀hgòi.		All right, thank you.

(The hostess extends a pack of cigarettes)

	Jyúyàhn	
yīn		tobacco
sihk		eat
sihk yīn		smoke tobacco, smoke
Sihk yīn lā.		Have a cigarette.
	Yàhnhaak	
haakhei		polite
m̀hsái		unnecessary, no need to
M̀hsái haakhei.		You don't need to be polite. (i.e., no thanks)
	Jyúyàhn	
m̀hhóu		don't ... (as a command) [not good to ...]
M̀hhóu haakhei a.		Don't be polite. (i.e., Do have one)
	Yàhnhaak	
Hóu, m̀hgòi.		All right, thanks.
	Jyúyàhn	
M̀hsái m̀hgòi.		No need to thank. (i.e., You're welcome.)

(A servant brings in tea and cakes.)

Jyúhàhn

chàh	tea
yám	drink
Yám chàh lā.	Have some tea.

Yàhnhaak

M̀hgòi.	Thank you.

Jyúyàhn

béng	cake(s), cookie(s)
Sihk béng lā.	Have some cookies.

Yàhnhaak

laak	sentence suffix la indicating change or potential change + k = lively. la + k = laak.
M̀hsái laak; m̀hgòi.	No thanks.

Jyúyàhn

si	try
Sihăh lā.	Try a little.

Yàhnhaak

jànhaih	really
lőh	sentence suffix for definiteness.
Jànhaih m̀hsái haakhei lőh.	No thanks--really.

(They talk awhile, then the guest prepares to leave.)

Yàhnhaak

aiya!	exclamation of consternation
Aiya! Ngh dím la.	Oh--oh. It's five o'clock.
jáu	leave
yiu jáu	must go
Ngóh yiu jáu laak.	I must be going.

Jyúyàhn

faai	fast
gam	so
gam faai	so fast, so soon
gam faai jáu	go so soon

M̀hhóu gam faai jáu lā.	**Don't go so soon!**
Yàhnhaak	
M̀hhaih a--	**No--**
Jànhaih yiu jáu laak.	**I really must go.**

B. Recapitulation:

Mrs. Wòhng stops in to see her friend Mrs. Jèung at home.

Jyúyàhn	
Chèuihbín chóh lā.	**Sit anywhere you like.**
Yàhnhaak	
Hóu, m̀hgòi.	**All right; thanks.**
(The hostess extends a pack of cigarettes.)	
Jyúyàhn	
Sihk yīn lā.	**Have a cigarette.**
Yàhnhaak	
M̀hsái haakhei.	**You don't have to be polite. (i.e., No thanks.)**
Jyúyàhn	
M̀hhóu haakhei a.	**Don't be polite. (i.e., Do have one.)**
Yàhnhaak	
Hóu, m̀hgòi.	**All right, thanks.**
Jyúyàhn	
M̀hsái m̀hgòi.	**No need to thank. (i.e., you're welcome.)**
(A servant brings in tea and cakes.)	
Jyúyàhn	
Yám chàh lā.	**Have some tea.**
Yàhnhaak	
M̀hgòi.	**Thank you.**
Jyúyàhn	
Sihk béng lā.	**Have some cookies.**
Yàhnhaak	
M̀hsái laak; m̀hgòi.	**No thanks.**

Jyúyàhn	
Siháh lā.	Try a little.
Yàhnhaak	
Jànhaih m̀hsái haakhei lēh.	No thanks--really.
(They talk awhile, then the guest prepares to leave.)	
Yàhnhaak	
Aiya! Ńgh dím laak. Ngóh yiu jáu laak.	Oh--oh. It's five o'clock. I must be going.
Jyúyàhn	
M̀hhóu gam faai jáu lā.	Don't go so soon!
Yàhnhaak	
M̀hhaih a-- Jànhaih yiu jáu laak.	No-- I really must go.

+ + + + + + + + + + + + + + +

Pronunciation:

1. ai

ai is a two-part final composed of the backed mid central vowel a [ə˃] plus high front unrounded offglide i [ə˃ⁱ]. The a portion is quite short in an isolated syllable--[ə˃·ⁱ]. The syllable may be lengthened when it occurs in stress position in a sentence, in which case it is the i part that lengthens, not the a part.

m̀hsái (5 times) 唔使

2. aai

aai is a two-part final composed of the low back vowel aa [ɑ] plus high front unrounded offglide i, which following aa is somewhat lower than it is following a. [ɑᴵ]. The aa portion is relatively long in an isolated syllable--[ɑːᴵ]. The aai syllable may be lengthened when it occurs in stress position in a sentence, in which case it is the aa part that lengthens, not the i part. The Cantonese aai is similar to the ie of the American words 'fie,' 'die,' 'tie.'

Listen and repeat:

1. faai (five times) 快
2. daaih (five times) 大

3. ai/aai contrasts

Listen and repeat:

1. m̀hsái, faai . (5 times)
2. faai, m̀hsái . (5 times)

4. ang in dáng (Lesson 4)

ang is a two-part final composed of the backed mid central vowel a [ə˃] plus the velar nasal consonant ng. The closest American counterpart to the Cantonese vowel is the mid central vowel in the English "dung." The Cantonese vowel is shorter than the American one, more backed, and not nasalized before the nasal final.

Compare English and Cantonese--Listen:

dung dáng (5 times) 凍 等

Listen and repeat:

dáng (5 times) 等

5. aang in cháang

aang is a two-part final composed of the low back vowel aa [ɑ] plus the velar nasal consonant ng. The aa before ng is pronounced the same way as aa before p and before i. The closest American counterpart is the low central vowel of "dong" [a] in "ding dong," but the Cantonese aa [ɑ] is more backed and not nasalized before the final nasal consonant.

Compare English and Cantonese--Listen:

dong cháang (5 times) 橙

Listen and repeat:

cháang (5 times) 橙

sīnsàang (5 times) 先生

6. ang/aang contrasts

Listen and repeat:

1. dáng (3 times)
2. cháang (3 times)
3. dáng cháang (3 times)
4. cháang dáng (3 times)

7. ak in dāk (Lesson 4)

ak is a two-part final composed of the backed mid central vowel a [ə˃] plus velar stop consonant k. As a final k is unreleased--[k˺], a is as elsewhere--short in an isolated unstressed syllable, more backed than its closest American counterpart, which is the [ʌ] of "duck." It is also tenser than the American counterpart.

Compare English and Cantonese:

duck dāk (5 times)

Listen and repeat:

dāk (5 times)

Compare the a before k with the a elsewhere:--

Listen and repeat:

1. dāk (3 times)
2. chāt (3 times)
3. sahp (3 times)
4. dāk chāt sahp (3 times)
5. gám (3 times)
6. Chàhn (3 times)
7. dáng (3 times)
8. gám, Chàhn, dáng
9. m̀hsái

8. aak in yàhnhaak, haakhei

aak is a two-part final composed of the low back vowel aa [ɑ] plus the velar stop k. As a final k is unreleased [k˺], aa is produced the same way as before -ng, -p and elsewhere. It is somewhat more backed than the vowel of "hock," the closest general American counterpart.

Listen and repeat:

1. yàhnhaak (3 times) 人客
2. haakhei (3 times) 客氣

9. ak/aak contrasts

Listen and repeat:

1. meih dāk (3 times) 未得
2. yàhnhaak (3 times) 人客
3. meih dāk, yàhnhaak (3 times)
4. yàhnhaak, meih dāk (3 times)

10. Fast speech forms.

Listen to fast speech pronunciation:

1. haakhei 客氣
2. M̀hsái haakhei 唔使客氣
3. M̀hhóu haakhei 唔好客氣

Comments: 1. You notice that there is a tendency for the friction of the h consonant to disappear in fast speech. This is particularly true in such ritual courtesy forms as the above. We similarly abbreviate courtesy forms in English without perhaps noticing it. Ex: "thanksalot" = Thanks a lot.

2. The k in syllable final but not word final position has a tendency in fast speech to be pronounced as a glottal stop rather than as a velar stop. Listen:

1. sīkjó (3 times)
2. Jūnggwokyàhn (3 times)
3. haakhei (3 times)
4. [illegible] (3 times)

We are not going to give much specific attention to fast speech forms in this text. It is probably just as well for you not to try to produce them, because chances are you would notice some and not others.

11. The -k final of sentence suffix lohk.

We have used k to represent the final sound in the sentence suffix lohk. This sound is a glottal stop, rather than the velar stop which is the sound k normally represents. Linguistically this is a messy way to handle this situation, but in practice, restricted as it is to sentence suffix position, it has not given previous students difficulty.

The lohk spelling derives thus:

lo is initial l plus the low back oh vowel [ɔ], which we spell o when it is final in a syllable. (The mid central o vowel [ɵ] never occurs in syllable final position.) Adding k as final makes the oh not final in the syllable, so the spelling is represented as oh: lo + -k = lohk

Ex: Ngóh haih yàhnhaak.	I am a guest.
Ngóh yiu jáu laak.	I must go now.

12. au as in jáu, gáu

au is a two-part final composed of the backed mid central vowel a [ə>] and the high back rounded vowel u [u]. The a before u has a tongue position slightly lower than in other positions (before -i, -p, -k, etc.). The nearest American counterpart is general American ow in "cow."

Listen and repeat:

1. jáu (3 times) 酒
2. bējáu (3 times) 啤酒
3. gáu (3 times) 九
4. jáu jái ("son")酒仔, jáu jái , jáu jái .

13. aau in gaau

aau is a two-part final composed of the low back vowel aa and the high back rounded vowel u [u]. In this position the aa is more fronted [ɑ<] than in other positions. The nearest American counterpart is in the relatively fronted vowel of the Southern Pronunciation of "cow," the vowel of which begins with the low front a [æ] of "cat."

Listen and repeat:

gaau (5 times)

14. au/aau

Listen and repeat, comparing au and aau:

1. jáu gaau (3 times) 酒 教
2. gaau jáu (3 times) 教 酒
3. gáu gaau (3 times) 九 教
4. gau ('enough') gaau (3 times) 夠 教
5. gaau gau (3 times) 教 夠

II. NOTES

A. Culture Notes

1. Customs of polite behavior for host and guest.

In a host-guest situation in Cantonese, it is standard courtesy for the host to offer some refreshment, for the guest to politely decline, and for the host to urge the guest again to have some, at which point the guest politely accepts or declines as he wishes.

Since it is customary to decline offered refreshments, in offering them it is best to avoid phrasing your offer in a choice-type question, because your Cantonese friends will feel it pushy to answer yes when asked this way. If the food is already at hand it is better to use the polite suggestion form: Sihk béng lā. 'Have some cookies.' If the refreshments are not right at hand, use the question-word question: Yám dī mēyéh a? [Drink a little what?] 'What would you like to drink?

2. sihk faahn [eat rice] means 'to have a meal,' 'to eat.' It may also mean to eat Chinese food, in contrast to eating Western food.

3. yám chàh, 'drink tea.'

yám chàh also has a wider meaning, reflecting a distinctively Cantonese custom. This is the custom of going to the teahouse in the morning to drink tea and eat hot snacks, generally steamed shrimp dumplings [hā gāau] and steamed dumplings of minced pork and mushrooms [sīu màai]. This is called 'going out to yám chàh!' It is on the whole a morning custom, though in Hong Kong, perhaps influenced by the British custom of afternoon tea, some teahouse also serve tea and snacks in the afternoon. yám chàh doesn't correspond to the coffee break; instead it substitutes for a regular meal, either breakfast or lunch. At a 'regular' meal you have rice, but when you go to a teahouse to yám chàh, by tradition you don't get rice. Now that custom too is breaking down, and you may, though the chances are against it, get rice with a yám chàh meal.

4. Aiya! is an exclamation of consternation. English equivalents are very much dependent on the speaker, ranging from "Oh, my!" to "Good Lord!" to "Oh my god!" etc.

   Aiya! is said to be used more by women than by men. Men use Wah! more often instead.

5. m̀hgòi, 'thank you' is appropriate for thanking someone for a service. When someone gives you some information or does you a favor, you thank them with m̀hgòi. There is another word, dòjeh, 'thank you,' which is appropriate for thanking someone for a gift. (We encounter this word is the text of Lesson 14.)

   In the Conversation which opens this lesson, the guest accepted a cigarette with m̀hgòi--viewing this as more of a courtesy than a gift.

   (See BC and Drills 7, 8, 9)

B. Structure Notes

1. Sentence suffix laak.

   laak is a fusion of sentence suffix la indicating change--(that change has occurred, or is about to occur, or may occur)--plus k, which is suffixed to a few sentence suffixes, giving the sentence a lively air.

   Whether la or laak is used depends partly on the speaker--some speakers habitually tend to use laak more than la--, partly on whether the conversation is spirited or matter-of-fact, laak tending to be used more in spirited than in matter-of-fact discourses.

   Because la/laak has to do with change, it works pretty well to translate it in English as "now," keeping in mind that it contrasts the present situation to some previous or future one.

   Examples from the Basic Conversation:

1. M̀hsái laak, m̀hgòi.	(In response to being offered some cookies:) Not [necessary] now, thanks. (It's not that I don't want your cookies, I might change and have some later, but not just now, thanks.)
2. Aiya! Ǹgh dím laak!	Wow! It's five o'clock already (I didn't realize it had gotten so late.)

3. Ngóh yiu jáu laak. I must be going now.

(See BC and Drills 7, 8, 9)

2. -k for lively speech.

-k is a glottal stop ending to certain sentence suffixes--for example, la and a which adds liveliness.

(See BC, Drills 7, 8, 9, and Structure Notes 1, 3)

3. Sentence suffix aak.

aak is a fusion of sentence suffix a (which softens abruptness) and the final -k, giving a lively air.

a + k = aak (cf: la + -k = laak)

Example:

Host: Sihk yīn lā. Have a cigarette.
Guest: Hóu aak, m̀hgòi. OK, thanks.

(See Drills 7, 8, 9)

4. Sentence suffix léh.

léh is an emphatic sentence suffix, adding the connotation that you are quite definite about what you say. (léh is probably derived from sentence suffix la.) The tone of voice is polite.

Example from the Basic Conversation:

Jànhaih m̀hsái haakhei léh. (Declining cookies which the host has urged you twice to take) No thanks, really.

(See BC and Drill 11)

5. Sentence suffix lā for polite suggestion.

This lesson has many examples of sentence suffix lā, first encountered in Lesson 4.

lā is suffixed to command sentences, softening the command to a polite suggestion.

Ex: Sihk yīn lā. Have a cigarette. (polite tone of voice.)

(See BC and Drills 1, 2, 4, 5, 7, 8, 9)

6. Imperative sentences without sentence suffix.

Without a softening sentence suffix an imperative sentence has the force of a command rather than a suggestion.

Example:

M̀hhóu sihk béng. Don't eat those cookies.

(See Drill 5)

The above sentence might be one said by a father or mother to a child.

7. -háh, Verb suffix for casualness.

-hah is a verb suffix which gives a somewhat casual air to the verb it attaches to. In this lesson -háh attaches to the verb si, 'try.' Siháh has the force of 'give it a try,'--a bit more casual than 'thr it.'

(See BC)

8. yiu, 'must,' and m̀hsái, 'mustn't,' 'needn't'

yiu used as an auxiliary verb preceding another verb can have the meaning 'must _V_,' ' have to _V_,' 'need to _V_.' The basic meaning of yiu is 'require,' and it can be used as a full verb, though in this lesson it is introduced only in its auxiliary verb use.

Ex:	yiu jáu	=	must leave, have to be going
	Ngóh yiu jáu laak.		I must be going.

To express that you needn't do something, or to ask if something is necessary, Cantonese doesn't use the negative and question forms of yiu, but uses the negative and question forms of the verb sái, 'need,' 'have to.'

Ex:	Ngóh yìhgā	yiu		hohk	Yìngmàhn.	I have to study English right now.
	Ngóh yìhgā		m̀hsái	hohk	Yìngmàhn.	I don't have to study English right now.
	Néih yìhgā	sái	m̀hsái	hohk	Yìngmàhn a?	Do you have to study English right now?

(See BC)

III. DRILLS

1. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Sihk béng lā. /yīn/	T: Have a cookie [polite]. /tobacco/ or Have some cookies [polite].
S: Sihk yīn lā.	S: Have a cigarette [polite].
+ 1. Sihk yīn lā. /faahn/ (rice)	1. Sihk faahn lā. Dinner is ready; come eat.
+ 2. Sihk faahn lā. /pìhnggwó/ (apple)	2. Sihk pìhnggwó lā. Have an apple.
+ 3. /cháang/ (orange)	3. Sihk cháang lā. Have an orange.
4. /béng/	4. Sihk béng lā.
5. /yīn/	5. Sihk yīn lā.
+ 6. /jīu/ (banana)	6. Sihk jīu lā.

---

2. Substitution Drill

+ Ex: T: Yám chàh lā! /gafē/	T: Have some tea! [polite] /coffee/
S: Yám gafē lā!	S: Have some coffee!
1. Yám chàh lā. /gafē/	1. Yám gafē lā.
+ 2. Yám gafē lā. /heiséui/ (soft drink)	2. Yám heiséui lā. Have a soft drink.
+ 3. Yám heiséui lā. /bējáu/ (beer)	3. Yám bējáu lā. Have a beer.
+ 4. Yám bējáu lā. /séui/ (water)	4. Yám séui lā. Have some water.
5. Yám séui lā. /chàh/	5. Yám chàh lā.
+ 6. /ngàuhnáaih/ (milk)	6. Yám ngàuhnáaih lā.
+ 7. /jáu/ (alcoholic beverage)	7. Yám jáu lā.

---

3. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Yám m̀hyám heiséui a? /bējáu/	T: Would you like a soft drink? /beer/
S: Yám m̀hyám bējáu a?	S: Would you like a beer?

1. /gafē/	1. Yám m̀hyám gafē a?
2. /heiséui/	2. Yám m̀hyám heiséui a?
3. /séui/	3. Yám m̀hyám séui a?
4. /bējáu/	4. Yám m̀hyám bējáu a?
5. /ngàuhnáaih/	5. Yám m̀hyám ngàuhnáaih a?

Comment: The above sentences could also mean 'Do you drink?' (as a custom, as opposed to an intention)

Social comment: Chinese custom makes one feel awkward to answer choice type question affirmatively. It is better to ask 'Yám dī mēyéh a?' 'You'll drink a little what?', i.e. "What'll you have to drink?"

---

4. Expansion Drill

Ex: 1. T: chàh	T: tea
S: Yám chàh lā!	S: Have some tea.
2. T: béng	T: cookies
S: Sihk béng lā!	S: Have a cookie. **or** Have some cookies.

1. gafē	1. Yám gafē lā!
2. heiséui	2. Yám heiséui lā!
3. faahn	3. Sihk faahn lā!
4. bējáu	4. Yám bējáu lā!
5. yīn	5. Sihk yīn lā!
6. pìhnggwó	6. Sihk pìhnggwó lā!
7. séui	7. Yám séui lā!
8. cháang	8. Sihk cháang lā!
9. béng	9. Sihk béng lā!
10. chàh	10. Yám chàh lā!
11. jáu	11. Yám jáu lā!
12. jīu	12. Sihk jīu lā!

5. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Sihk yīn lā!	T: Have a cigarette. (polite invitation)
S: M̀hhóu sihk yīn!	S: Don't smoke! (abrupt; note absence of lā)
1. Yám bējáu lā.	1. M̀hhóu yám bējáu!
2. Sihk yīn lā.	2. M̀hhóu sihk yīn!
3. Yám gafē lā.	3. M̀hhóu yám gafē!
4. Sihk béng lā.	4. M̀hhóu sihk béng!
5. Yám heiséui lā.	5. M̀hhóu yám heiséui!

a. Repeat. as polite negative request, thus:

T: Sihk yīn lā!	T: Have a cigarette.
S: M̀hhóu sihk yīn lā.	S: Please don't smoke.

---

6. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih yám chàh. /gafē/	T: He drinks tea. /coffee/
S: Kéuih yám cháh, daahnhaih m̀hyám gafē.	S: He drinks tea, but he doesn't drink coffee. or He drinks tea, but not coffee.
1. Kéuih yám heiséui. /bējáu/	1. Kéuih yám heiséui, daahnhaih m̀hyám bējáu.
2. Kéuih yám gafē. /chàh/	2. Kéuih yám gafē, daahnhaih m̀hyám chàh.
3. Kéuih sihk pìhnggwó. /cháang/	3. Kéuih sihk pìhnggwó, daahnhaih m̀hsihk cháang.
4. Kéuih sihk béng. /yám chàh/	4. Kéuih sihk béng, daahnhaih m̀hyám chàh.
5. Kéuih sīk sé Jùngmàhn. /Yīngmán/	5. Kéuih sé Jùngmán, daahnhaih m̀hsīk sé Yīngmàhn.

7. Response Drill

Ex: 1.	T: Yám gafē lā? /nod/	T: Would you like some coffee? /nod/
+	S: Hóu aak. M̂hgòi.	S: Yes; thanks.
2.	T: Yám gafē lā? /shake/	T: Would you like some coffee? /shake/
	S: M̂hyám laak, m̀hgòi.	S: No thanks, not right now.

1. Yám chàh lā? /nod/	1. Hóu aak. M̂hgòi.
2. Yám bējáu lā? /nod/	2. Hóu aak. M̂hgòi.
3. Yám heiséui lā? /shake/	3. M̂hyám laak, m̀hgòi.
4. Yám gafē lā? /shake/	4. M̂hyám laak, m̀hgòi.
5. Yám séui lā? /nod/	5. Hóu aak. M̂hgòi.

Comment: aak occurs in a set with hóu as a fixed phrase, followed by pause: Hóu aak. 'Agreed.', 'OK.' But hóu, when it introduces a comment, is not followed by aak. Compare the pausing of:

Hóu, m̀hgòi.	OK, thanks.
Hóu aak. M̂hgòi.	OK. Thanks.

---

8. Response Drill

Ex: 1.	T: Sihk béng lā! /nod/	T: Have a cookie. /nod/
	S: Hóu aak. M̂hgòi.	S: All right. Thanks you.
2.	T: Sihk béng lā! /shake/	T: Have a cookie. /shake/
	S: M̂hsihk laak; m̀hgòi.	S: Not just now, thanks.

1. Sihk pìhnggwó lā! /nod/	1. Hóu aak. M̂hgòi.
2. Sihk yīn lā! /nod/	2. Hóu aak. M̂hgòi.
3. Sihk faahn lā! /shake/	3. M̂hsihk laak; m̀hgòi.
4. Sihk cháang lā! /shake/	4. M̂hsihk laak; m̀hgòi.
5. Sihk béng lā! /nod/	5. Hóu aak. M̂hgòi.
6. Sihk jīu lā! /nod/	6. Hóu aak. M̂hgòi.

Comment: If you don't smoke, the way to say so colloquially, when you are invited to have a cigarette, is: "Sīu sihk", 'smoke very little', 'seldom smoke', i.e. "I don't smoke."

9. Response Drill: Respond appropriately, following patterns established in Drills 7 and 8. (For the negative use m̀hsihk and m̀hyám, although m̀hsái is equally appropriate.)

1. Yám chàh lā? /nod/	1. Hóu aak. M̀hgòi.
2. Yám bējáu lā? /shake/	2. M̀hyám laak. M̀hgòi.
3. Sihk yīn lā! /nod/	3. Hóu aak. M̀hgòi.
4. Sihk béng lā! /shake/	4. M̀hsihk laak. M̀hgòi.
5. Yám gafē lā? /nod/	5. Hóu aak. M̀hgòi.
6. Sihk pìhnggwó lā! /nod/	6. Hóu aak. M̀hgòi.
7. Yám heiséui lā? /shake/	7. M̀hyám laak. M̀hgòi.
8. Sihk cháang lā? /shake/	8. M̀hsihk laak. M̀hgòi.

a. Repeat, teacher cueing nouns only, students doing Q&A, answering M̀hsái laak, m̀hgòi. 'No, thanks.'

---

10. Substitution Drill: Substitute in Subject or Object position as appropriate.

Ex: 1. T: Néih yám mēyéh a? /néih pàhngyáuh/	T: What would you like to drink? /your friend/
S: Néih pàhngyáuh yám mēyéh a?	S: What would your friend like to drink?
T: Néih pàhngyáuh yám mēyéh a? /heiséui/	T: What would your friend like to drink? /soft drink/
S: Néih pàhngyáuh yám heiséui.	S: Your friend would like a soft drink.

1. Kéuih yám mēyéh a? /kéuih pàhngyáuh/	1. Kéuih pàhngyáuh yám mēyéh a?
2. /séui/	2. Kéuih pàhngyáuh yám séui.
3. /jáu/	3. Kéuih pàhngyáuh yám jáu.
4. /ngóhdeih pàhngyáuh/	4. Ngóhdeih pàhngyáuh yám jáu.
5. /néih pàhngyáuh/	5. Néih pàhngyáuh yám jáu.
6. /bīngo/	6. Bīngo yám jáu a?
7. /kéuih/	7. Kéuih yám jáu.
8. /mēyéh/	8. Kéuih yám mēyéh a?

Comment: Yám Object can mean (1) 'intend to yám object' and it can mean (2) in process of yám-ing object or could mean (3) 'customarily yám object'. The situation governs which interpretation is appropriate. This follows for all the sentences in this drill.

11. Conversation Drill

Ex: Host: Sihk béng lā?	Host: Won't you have some cookies?
Guest: M̀hsái haakhei.	Guest: Ah, no, thank you.
Host: M̀hhóu haakhei a.	Host: Oh, do have some.
Guest: (shake) Ngóh jànhaih m̀hsihk léh.	Guest: No thanks, really not.
or	or
Guest: (nod) Hóu aak. m̀hgòi.	Guest: Well, all right, thanks.
Host: M̀hsái m̀hgòi.	Host: You're welcome. or Not at all.

1. A. Sihk pìhnggwó lā?	1. A. Sihk pìhnggwó lā?
B.	B. M̀hsái haakhei.
A.	A. M̀hhóu haakhei a.
B. (shake)	B. Ngóh jànhaih m̀hsihk léh.
2. A. Yám gafē lā?	2. A. Yám gafē lā?
B.	B. M̀hsái haakhei.
A.	A. M̀hhóu haakhei a.
B. (nod)	B. Hóu aak, m̀hgòi.
A.	A. M̀hsái m̀hgòi.
3. A. Sihk cháang lā?	3. A. Sihk cháang lā?
B.	B. M̀hsái haakhei.
A.	A. M̀hhóu haakhei a.
B. (shake)	B. Ngóh jànhaih m̀hsihk léh.
4. A. Sihk yīn lā?	4. A. Sihk yīn lā?
B.	B. M̀hsái haakhei.
A.	A. M̀hhóu haakhei a.
B. (shake)	B. Ngóh jànhaih m̀hsihk léh.
5. A. Yám bējáu lā?	5. A. Yám bējáu lā?
B.	B. M̀hsái haakhei.
A.	A. M̀hhóu haakhei a.
B. (shake)	B. Ngóh jànhaih m̀hyám léh.

12. Conversion Drill

Ex: Waiter: Yám mēyéh a?	A: What'll you have to drink?
Customer: Ngóh yám chàh.	B: I'll have tea.
Waiter: Síujé haih m̀hhaih dōu yám chàh a?	A: Will the young lady have tea too?
Customer: M̀hhaih. Kéuih yám gafē.	B: No, she'll have coffee.

1. W. ....?	1. W. Yám mēyéh a?
C. ...... bējáu.	C. Ngóh yám bējáu.
W. Néih pàhngyáuh ......?	W. Néih pàhngyáuh haih m̀hhaih dōu yám bējáu a?
C. ......gafē.	C. M̀hhaih. Kéuih yám gafē.
2. W. ....?	2. W. Yám mēyéh a?
C. ......heiséui.	C. Ngóh yám heiséui.
W. Kéuih ......?	W. Kéuih haih m̀hhaih dōu yám heiséui a?
C. ...... bējáu.	C. M̀hhaih. Kéuih yám bējáu.
3. W. Sīnsàang ......?	3. W. Sīnsàang yám mēyéh a? What will you have to drink, sir?
C. ...... chàh.	C. Ngóh yám chàh.
W. Síujé ......?	W. Síujé haih m̀hhaih dōu yám chàh a? Will the young lady have tea too?
C. ......heiséui.	C. M̀hhaih.Kéuih yám heiséui.
4. W. Hòh Sàang ......?	4. W. Hòh Sàang yám mēyéh a? What'll you have to drink, Mr. Ho?
C. ...... bējáu.	C. Ngóh yám bējáu.
W. Hòh Táai ......?	W. Hòh Táai haih m̀hhaih dōu yám bējáu a? Will Mrs. Ho have beer too?
C. ......heiséui.	C. M̀hhaih.Kéuih yám heiséui.

Comment: In a different situation the Example conversation (and likewise those below) could also be appropriately interpreted as:

A. What's that you're drinking?

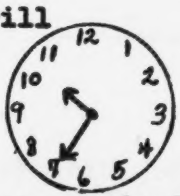
B: I'm drinking tea.

A: Is he drinking tea too?

A: No, he's drinking coffee.

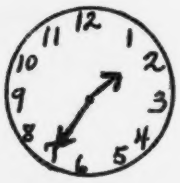
---

13. Conversation Drill



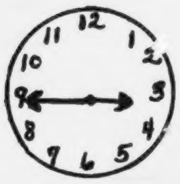
Ex: Guest: Aiya! Yìhgā sahp dím daahp chāt. Ngóh yiu jáu laak.	Guest: Oh-oh! It's 10:35. I must be going.
Host: M̀hhóu gam faai jáu lā!	Host: Oh don't go so soon!
Guest: M̀hhaih a. Jànhaih yiu jáu laak.	Guest: No. Really, I must go.

1.



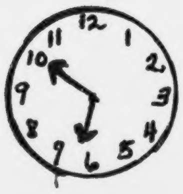
1. A. Aiya! Yìhgā yāt dím daahp chāt. Ngóh yiu jáu laak.
   B. M̀hhóu gam faai jáu lā!
   A. M̀hhaih a. Jànhaih yiu jáu laak.

2.



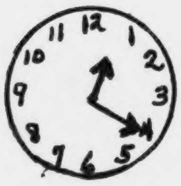
2. A. Aiya! Yìhgā sàam dím sàamgogwāt. Ngóh yiu jáu laak.
   B. M̀hhóu gam faai jáu lā!
   A. M̀hhaih a. Jànhaih yiu jáu laak.

3.



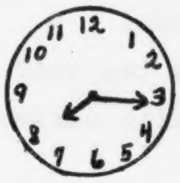
3. A. Aiya! Yìhgā luhk dím daahp sahp. Ngóh yiu jáu laak.
   B. M̀hhóu gam faai jáu lā!
   A. M̀hhaih a. Jànhaih yiu jáu laak.

4.



4. A. Aiya! Yìhgā sahpyih dím daahp sei. Ngóh yiu jáu laak.
   B. M̀hhóu gam faai jáu lā!
   A. M̀hhaih a. Jànhaih yiu jáu laak.

5.



5. A. **Aiya! Yìhgā baat dím yātgogwāt. Ngóh yiu jáu laak.**

B. **Ǹhhóu gam faai jáu lā!**

A. **Ǹhhaih a. Jànhaih yiu jáu laak.**

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Listen to tape with book closed.)

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. Student A to Student B:	B. Student B replies:
1. offers him tea.	1. Thank you.
2. Have some cookies.	2. No thanks.
3. It's 6:30--I have to go.	3. Don't go so soon!
4. Sit anywhere you like.	4. Thanks.
5. (acting the part of a waiter:) What'll you have to drink?	5. I'll have beer.
6. Don't go so soon!	6. No, I really have to go.
7. (offering cookies to a guest who has politely declined them already:) Do try some!	7. I really don't care for any, thanks. [really not eat]

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 5

1.	aak	ss:	sen. suf. a to soften abruptness + -k for liveliness
2.	Aiya!	ex:	exclamation of consternation
3.	bējáu	m:	beer
4.	béng	n:	cake
5.	cháang	n:	orange
6.	chàh	n:	tea
7.	chèuihbín	adv:	As you wish, At your convenience
8.	chèuihbín chóh lā.	Ph:	'Sit anywhere you like.'
9.	chóh	v:	sit
10.	faahn	n:	rice (cooked)
11.	gafē	n:	coffee
12.	gam	adv:	so, such
13.	haakhei	adj:	polite
14.	-háh	Vsuf:	Verb suffix for casual effect
15.	heiséui	n:	soft drink
16.	Hóu aak	Ph:	OK. Agreed. Response indicating agreement.
17.	jànhaih	adv:	really, indeed
18.	jáu	n:	alcoholic beverage
19.	jáu	v:	leave, depart
20.	jīu	n:	banana
21.	jyúyàhn	n:	host, hostess
22.	-k	ss:	a glottal stop ending to certain sentence suffixes, giving sentence a lively air.
23.	la	ss:	sen. suf. indicating potential change
24.	laak	ss:	sen. suf. la (change) + sen. suf. -k (liveliness)
25.	léh	ss:	sen. suf. for definiteness
26.	M̀hgòi	Ph:	Thank you (for service)
27.	m̀hhóu	Ph:	don't (as a command)
28.	M̀hhóu haakhei	Ph:	'Don't be polite.'
29.	M̀hsái	Ph:	no need to, not necessary
30.	M̀hsái la(ak)	Ph:	No thanks (when offered something) [not necessary now]

31.	M̀hsái m̀hgòi.	Ph:	You're welcome. [not necessary] Polite response when someone thanks you for doing him a service
32.	M̀hsái haakhei	Ph:	[don't need to be polite.] "No thanks." (to an offer) "You're welcome." (when someone thanks you.)
33.	ngàuhnáaih	n:	milk
34.	pìhnggwó	n:	apple
35.	séui	n:	water
36.	si	v:	try
37.	siháh	Vsuf:	give it a try
38.	sihk	v:	eat
39.	sihk yīn	vo:	to smoke
40.	Síu sihk	Ph:	'I don't smoke.' non-smoker's response in refusing a cigarette. [seldom-smoke]
41.	yàhnhaak	n:	guest
42.	yám	v:	drink
43.	yīn	(bw)n:	tobacco; smoke
44.	yiu	auxV:	must, need, have to

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Clerk and Customer in a department store)

sauhfoyùhn	sales clerk

Sauhfoyùhn

máaih	buy
Máaih mēyéh a?	Buy what? (i.e., May I help you?)
guhaak	customer

Guhaak

sēutsāam	shirt
gihn	measure for clothing
séung máaih	wish to buy, want to buy
Ngóh séung máaih gihn sēutsāam.	I want to buy a shirt.
chín	money
géidō?	how much?
géidō chín a?	how much money?
nī	this
nī gihn	this one (this 'measure')
Nī gihn géidō chín a?	How much is this one?

Sauhfoyùhn

mān	dollar
yahsei	twenty-four
yahsei mān	$24
Nī gihn yahsei mān.	This one is $24.

Guhaak

gó	that
gó gihn	that one (that 'measure')
gó léuhng gihn	those two
dōu haih yahsei mān	is also $24, are also $24.
haih m̀hhaih dōu haih yahsei mān a?	are (they) also $24? or is (it) also $24?
Gó léuhng gihn haih m̀hhaih dōu haih yahsei mān gihn a?	Those two, are they also $24 each?

Sauhfoyùhn	
M̀hhaih; yihsahp mān jē.	No; twenty dollars only
M̀hhaih--yihsahp mān gihn jē.	No--Only $20 each.
Guhaak	
béi	give
béi ngóh	give me
béi nī gihn ngóh	give this one (to) me
Hóu, béi nī gihn ngóh lā.	OK, give me this one.
Sauhfoyùhn	
géidō gihn	how many ones
Yiu géidō gihn a?	How many do you want?
Guhaak	
gau	enough
Yāt gihn gau laak.	One is enough.
Sauhfoyùhn	
Gám, néih máaih m̀hmáaih gó léuhng gihn a?	Are you going to buy those two?
Guhaak	
M̀hmáaih laak.	Not buy.

B. **Recapitulation:**

Sauhfoyùhn	
Máaih mēyéh a?	What would you like to buy?
Guhaak	
Ngóh séung máaih gihn sēutsāam. Nī gihn géidō chín a?	I'm looking for a shirt. How much is this one?
Sauhfoyùhn	
Nī gihn yahsei mān.	This one is $24.
Guhaak	
Gó léuhng gihn haih m̀hhaih dōu haih yahsei mān gihn a?	Are those two also $24 each?
Sauhfoyùhn	
M̀hhaih; yihsahp mān gihn jē.	No; only $20 each.
Guhaak	
Hóu, béi nī gihn ngóh lā.	OK, give me this one.

	Sauhfoyùhn	
Yiu géidō gihn a?		How many do you want?
	Guhaak	
Yāt gihn gau laak.		One is enough.
	Sauhfoyùhn	
Gám, néih máaih ǹhmáaih gó léuhng gihn a?		Are you going to buy those two?
	Guhaak	
Ǹhmáaih laak.		Not now, thanks.

+ + + + + + + + + + + + + + +

Pronunciation:

1. at in chāt, bāt, maht

at is a two-part final composed of the mid central vowel a [ə˃], plus the consonant stop t. To produce t the tongue tip stops the flow of air at the dental ridge, close to the base of the lower teeth. In final position the t is unreleased:--[t˺]. The closest American counterpart to the Cantonese at is the ut of general American "but," but the Cantonese syllable is shorter in an isolated syllable, more backed, and tenser.

Listen and repeat:

chāt (3 times) 七
bāt (3 times) 筆
maht (3 times) 勿

2. aat in baat

aat is two-part final composed of the low back unrounded vowel aa [ɑ], plus the consonant stop t. t is produced as described above, with the tongue tip stopping the air flow at the dental ridge at the base of the upper teeth, with the air unreleased. aa before t is produced the same way as before the other final stops (-k and -p). The nearest American counterpart to aat is the ot sound in general American "hot," [a], but the Cantonese syllable is more backed, and somewhat longer in the isolated syllable.

3. at/aat contrasts

Listen and repeat:

1. bāt baat (3 times)
2. baat bāt (3 times)
3. baat baat bāt bāt (3 times)
4. bāt bāt baat baat (3 times)
5. chāt baat baat chāt . (3 times)
6. maht baat (3 times)
7. baat maht (3 times)
8. baat maht maht baat (3 times)
9. chāt baat maht (3 times)
10. maht baat chāt (3 times)

4. eui

Listen and repeat-(Remember that the eui final is rounded throughout, that the i part here represents that rounded yu [ü] sound, and that a rounded vowel has a rounding effect on a consonant preceding it in a syllable):

1. chèuihbín (3 times) 隨便
2. chèuih (3 times) 隨
3. séui (3 times) 水
4. deuim̀hjyuh (3 times) 對唔住
5. deui (3 times) 對

5. au/aau practice

Listen and repeat: (Watch the teacher)

1. gau , gau , gau . 夠
2. gaau , gaau , gaau . 教
3. gau gaau , gau gaau , gau gaau .
4. gaau gau , gaau gau , gaau gau .
5. gau gaau gaau gau
6. gaau gau gau gaau
7. m̀hgau唔夠, m̀hgaau唔教.
8. gau m̀hgau a? , gaau m̀hgaau a? .
9. Jáu gau m̀hgau a? 酒夠唔夠呀?
10. M̀hgau jáu.

6. eut, as in sēutsāam

eut is a two-part final composed of the single vowel eu and the consonant stop t. eu before t is a lowered mid front rounded vowel [œ] produced the same way as before n and i. The t as final is produced as elsewhere as final, with the tongue tip stopping the flow of air at the dental ridge, near the base of the upper teeth, unreleased--[t˺]. There is no close comparison in American English to the eut sound, though the "sēut" of "sēutsāam" is a transliteration into Cantonese of the English word "shirt."

Listen and repeat: (Remember that the rounded vowel has a rounding effect on the consonant preceding it in a syllable)

1. sēutsāam (3 times) 恤衫
2. sēut sēut sēut , sēut sēut sēut . 恤恤恤
3. sēut séui (3 times) 恤 水
4. séui sēut (3 times) 水 恤
5. sēut jéun (3 times) 恤 準
6. jéun sēut (3 times) 準 恤

7. eu before dentals in contrast to eu before velars: Notice the difference in tongue height of eu before the dentals t, n, and yu (spelled i following eu); and eu before the velar nasal ng. The eu is relatively lowered before the dentals, raised before the velar.

1. sēut sēun séung séung
2. sēut sēut léuhng léuhng
3. séui séui séung séung
4. deui deui Jèung Jèung
5. jéun jéun Jèung Jèung
6. jéun jéun séung séung

II. NOTES

1. Numbers 20 - 99

a. 20 through 90. For the even 10's the Cantonese use a multiplying formula: two-ten's, three-ten's, etc.

20. yihsahp
30. sàamsahp
40. seisahp
50. ńghsahp
60. luhksahp
70. chātsahp
80. baatsahp
90. gáusahp

b. 21 through 99. For these numbers which are not the even 10's, a combination of the multiplying and adding formula is used: two-ten's-one, two-ten's-two, etc.

21. yihsahpyāt
22. yihsahpyih
23. yihsahpsàam etc., to
99. gáusahpgáu

c. Full forms and abbreviated forms:

There is a full form and an abbreviated form for the numbers from twenty to ninety-nine. Both forms are used in everyday speech. The contracted form shortens the sahp element to -ah-.

Ex:	Full form	Abbreviated form
20	yihsahp	yah
21	yihsahpyāt	yahyāt
22	yihsahpyih	yahyih
30	sàamsahp	sà'ah
31	sàamsahpyāt	sà'ahyāt
40	seisahp	sei'ah
50	ńghsahp	ńgh'ah
60	luhksahp	luhk'ah
70	chātsahp	chāt'ah
80	baatsahp	baat'ah
90	gáusahp	gáu'ah
99	gáusahpgáu	gáu'ahgáu

(See Drill 6)

2. Measures

In Lesson 4 we touched briefly on Measures, saying they were a class of word in Cantonese which comes between a number (or a limited set of other entities) and a noun.

Ex:	M	N	
ngóh	go	bīu	my watch
sàam	go	gwāt	three-quarters

In English some nouns are counted in terms of a measure of their volume or size or shape. For example, we do not ordinarily say 'a water,' but rather 'a glass of water,' 'a gallon of water,' 'a tub of water,' etc. In English 'glass, gallon, tub' type words are measures used in counting nouns perceived as a mass--(sand, bread, milk, tobacco, etc.) but not ordinarily in counting nouns perceived as individual units--(pencil, man, shirt, etc.)

In Chinese, however, a measure word precedes every noun when it is counted. For a mass-type noun the measure is variable--one cup, bowl, pound, etc. of rice, for example--but every individual-type noun has its own invariable measure which is by nature a pronoun standing in apposition to the noun.

a. Individual Measures

In Lesson Six you will encounter several new individual measures.

Ex:	M	Noun	
1. yāt	tìuh	tāai	one [M] tie = one tie
2. ngóh	bá	jē	my umbrella = my umbrella
3. kéuih	gihn	sēutsāam	his [M] shirt = his shirt

The individual measures are in apposition to the noun that follows. Some individual measures have a degree of independent meaning apart from their structural function. For example, bá means'handle,' and is a measure for objects having handles, tìuh means 'strip' and is a measure for objects which are long and narrow in shape. However, go, statistically the most frequent measure, has no independent meaning of its own.

What we have called individual measures some writers have called classifiers, indicating that nouns are classified according to shape. We use the wider term 'measure' to cover individual measures and other types of measure as well.

(See Drills 1, 2, 3, 4)

b. Group Measures

In addition to individual measures, there are other types of measures. One type is the group measure. An example is deui, 'pair.' Structurally group measures do not differ from individual measures--they fill the same position in a sentence that individual measures do, and combine with the same kinds of words. Semantically, of course, a group measure differs from an individual measure.

Ex:	Measure	+ Noun	
yāt	deui	hàaih	one pair shoes = one pair of shoes
yāt	jek	hàaih	one [M] shoe = one shoe

What we call group measures some writers have called 'collective' measures.

c. Standard Measures

Another type of measure is the standard measure. In English we talk of 'standard weights and measures'--pounds, inches, gallons, etc. This is the type involved in the Cantonese category of standard measure. The standard measure is of itself a meaningful unit. Some examples which you have encountered so far are:

Number	+ Standard Measure	
yāt	mān	one dollar
yāt	dím	one o'clock (hour)
yāt	fānjūng	one minute

Standard measures, like all measures, may follow a number directly. They differ from individual and group measures in that they are not in apposition to a following noun, and do not depend on a following noun to give them meaning. Thus they are measures only in the grammatical sense; they behave like measures in that they follow numerals directly. Semantically they are like nouns.

3. Nouns

A word which requires a measure between a number and itself is classed as a noun in Cantonese.

Ex: Number	+ Measure	+ Noun	
léuhng	gihn	sēutsāam	two shirts
sàam	go	bīu	three watches
sei	go	jih	4 figures (in reference to time, 4 numbers on the clock dial, i.e. 20 minutes)

4. Measure as substitute for noun.

In a follow sentence a measure substitutes for the noun it represents. In this way a measure operates like a pronoun.

Ex:	A. Ngóh máaih léuhng tìuh tāai.	I'm buying two [M] ties.
	B. Bīn léuhng tìuh a?	Which two [ones]?
	C. Nī léuhng tìuh.	These two [ones].

(See BC and Drills 3,4)

5. Measure without preceding number.

We noted in Lesson 2 that nouns do not indicate singular and plural in Cantonese. (sēutsāam = shirt, shirts) The use of a measure without a number preceding it indicates singular number.

Ex: 1. Kéuih séung máaih sēutsāam.	1. He wants to buy some shirts. or He wants to buy a shirt.
2. Kéuih séung máaih gihn sēutsāam.	2. He wants to buy a shirt.

(See BC)

6. m̀hsái not used in affirmative.

The verb sái 'need,' 'have to,' is used in the negative and in choice-type question, but not in the affirmative.

Ex: Q: Sái m̀hsái máaih luhk gihn gàm dò a?	Do you need to buy 6--so many? (doubtful that it is necessary)
A: M̀hsái máaih luhk gihn--sàam gihn gau laak.	I don't need 6--3 are enough.

(See Drills 1, 3, 12)

To answer a sái m̀hsái? question affirmatively you use yiu 'require,' 'need,' 'have to.'

Ex:	Q: Sái m̀hsái máaih luhk gihn gàm dò a?	Do you need to buy so many as six?
	A: Yiu máaih luhk gihn--sàam gihn m̀hgau.	I need to buy six--three aren't enough.

(See Drill 12)

7. Free words and boundwords

Words in Cantonese which can be spoken as one word sentences are free words, and ones which are never spoken as a one-word sentence, but always with some other word accompanying, are boundwords. Words which are always bound to an element which follows them we call right-bound (b-), and ones which are always bound to an element which precedes them we call left-bound (-b). Some boundwords can be bound in either direction.

8. nī, 'this,' and gó, 'that' classed as specifiers.

nī, 'this,' and gó, 'that,' are boundwords functioning as modifier in a Noun Phrase (NP). They are right bound, bound to a following element or elements, commonly a measure, or a number + measure:

Ex:	nī/gó	nu.	M	
	nī		gihn	= this one [this M]
	gó	léuhng	go	= those two [that-two-M]

(See BC and Drills 2, 3, 11)

Note the word order of nī/gó constructions:

	N/Pro.	nī/gó	Nu.	M	N	
1.		nī	léuhng	gihn	sēutsāam	these two shirts
2.		gó	sei	bá	jē	those 4 umbrellas
3.	ngóh	nī	léuhng	tīuh	tāai	these two ties of mine

(See Drills 1, 11)

nī and gó fill a position in a sentence that can be occupied by only a few words. bīn? 'which?' fills this same position. We use the class name Specifier to refer to this small group.

We call nī and gó 'this' and 'that' to give you memory-aid definitions. More specifically, nī refers to what is relatively near, and gó to what is relatively distant.

9. Relative word order of direct and indirect object.

Some verbs, such as béi, 'give,' take two objects: a direct object (thing), and indirect object (usually a person). In Cantonese the word order is Verb + Direct object + Indirect object.

Verb +	Direct obj +	Indirect obj		
Béi	nī gihn	ngóh	lā.	Give this one (to) me.
Béi	sàam mān	kéuih	lā.	Give $3 (to) him.

(See BC and Drills 11, 12, 15)

10. géi(dō)?, 'how many, how much?' as an interrogative number.

géidō? and

occupying the position in a question-word sentence that a number occupies in the response sentence. In this frame géi(dō) is classed as an interrogative number. As a number it precedes a measure.

Ex:	Number	Measure		
Kéuih máaih	géi(dō)	gihn	a?	How many is he going to buy?
Kéuih máaih	sàam	gihn.		He's going to buy three.

(See BC and Drill 9)

You will remember that géi has another meaning which you encountered in Lesson Four. géi, 'several' is an approximate number and is distinguished from géi?, 'how many?' in a sentence by the presence of the sentence suffix a in the question sentence but not in the statement sentence.

Ex: 1. Kéuih séung máaih géi gihn. — He's thinking of buying several.

2. Kéuih séung máaih géi gihn a? — How many is he thinking of buying?

11. géidō?, 'how many?' and géi-?, 'how many?' differentiated.

The difference between géi-? and géidō? is that géi-? is a boundword bound to a following Measure, and géidō? is a free word which can be bound to a following measure as modifier (in which case it is interchangeable with géi-?), but may also be head in a nominal construction, which géi-? cannot.

Ex: 1. Kéuih séung máaih $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{géi}\\ \text{géidō}\end{matrix}\right\}$ gihn a? — 1. How many [Ms] does he want?

2. Kéuih séung máaih géidō a? — 2. How many does he want?

12. M̀hjì... $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{nē?}\\ \text{a?}\end{matrix}\right.$, as polite question form: 'I wonder...?,' i.e., 'I wonder (if you could tell me)...?

By extension m̀hjì, 'don't know,' may be taken to mean something like 'I wonder...?' 'Could you tell me...?' a polite way of making a question without being abrupt. By adding the sentence suffix a or nē to the end of the negative sentence, the negative is transformed to the polite 'I wonder...?' question.

Ex: M̀hjì yiu géidō chín.	(I)don't know how much it costs.
M̀hjì yiu géidō chín $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{nē}\\ \text{a}\end{matrix}\right\}$?	(I) wonder how much it costs? (You assume that the person you're talking to does know and in this indirect way prompt him to tell you.)

III. DRILLS

1. Expansion Drill: (Students repeat sentence after the teacher.

+ 1. a. Máaih yúhlāu.	1. a. Buy a raincoat/raincoats.
b. Máaih gihn yúhlāu.	b. Buy a raincoat.
c. Máaih ńgh gihn yúhlāu.	c. Buy 5 raincoats.
d. Máaih nī ńgh gihn yúhlāu.	d. Buy these 5 raincoats.
e. Ngóh máaih nī ńgh gihn yúhlāu.	e. I'll take these 5 raincoats.
+ 2. a. Máaih fu. (slacks, trousers, longpants)	2. a. Buy slacks.
+ b. Máaih tìuh fu. (M. for trousers)	b. Buy a pair of slacks.
c. Máaih léuhng tìuh fu.	c. Buy two pairs of slacks.
d. Máaih nī léuhng tìuh fu.	d. Buy these two pairs of slacks.
e. Máaih nī léuhng tìuh fu lā!	e. Buy these two pairs of slacks!
+ 3. a. Máaih maht.	3. a. Buy socks.
+ b. Máaih deui maht.	b. Buy a pair of socks.
c. Máaih sàam deui maht.	c. Buy three pairs of socks.
d. M̀hsái máaih sàam deui maht.	d. You don't need to buy three pairs of socks.
e. M̀hsái máaih sàam deui maht laak.	e. You don't need to buy 3 pairs of socks just now.
+ 4. a. Máaih bāt. (writing implements)	4. a. Buy pens (or pencils)
+ b. Máaih jī bāt. (M. for bāt)	b. Buy a pen (or pencil)
+ c. Máaih jī yùhnbāt.	c. Buy a pencil.
d. Séung máaih jī yùhnbāt.	d. Want to buy a pencil
e. M̀hséung máaih jī yùhnbāt.	e. Don't want to buy a pencil.
f. Séung m̀hséung máaih jī yùhnbāt a?	f. Do (you) want to buy a pencil? or Are you planning to buy a pencil?

	or Would you like to buy a pencil?
+ 5. a. Jūng.	5. a. Clock
b. Máaih jūng.	b. Buy clock(s)
c. Máaih go jūng.	c. Buy a clock.
d. Séung máaih go jūng.	d. Plan to buy a clock.
e. Séung máaih léuhng go jūng.	e. Plan to buy two clocks.
f. Ngóh séung máaih léuhng go jūng.	f. I plan to buy two clocks.
+ 6. a. Kwàhn.	6. a. Skirt
b. Máaih kwàhn.	b. Buy skirt(s).
c. Máaih tīuh kwàhn.	c. Buy a skirt.
+ d. Máaih tīuh dáikwàhn (slip, petticoat)	d. Buy a slip.
e. Máaih léuhng tīuh dáikwàhn.	e. Buy two slips.
f. Séung máaih léuhng tīuh dáikwàhn.	f. Wish to buy two slips.
g. Ngóh séung máaih léuhng tīuh dáikwàhn.	g. I wish to buy two slips.
7. a. Síujé	7. a. Lady
+ b. Go wái síujé	b. That lady (wái = polite M for person)
c. Sīk go wái síujé.	c. Know that lady
d. M̀hsīk go wái síujé.	d. Not know that lady.
e. Ngóh m̀hsīk go wái síujé.	e. I don't know that lady.
+ 8. a. Jē	8. a. Umbrella
+ b. Bá jē (M. for umbrella)	b. An umbrella
c. Máaih nī bá jē.	c. Buy this umbrella.
d. Máaih nī bá jē, géidō chín a?	d. How much does this raincoat cost?
+ e. Máaih nī bá jē yiu géidō chín a? (yiu + money expression = want X amount, costs X amount, i.e., the asking price)	e. How much (do you) want for this raincoat?

f. Ngóh m̀hjī máaih nī bá jē yiu géidō chín.	f. I don't know how much this umbrella is.
+ g. Ngóh m̀hjī máaih nī bá jē yiu géido chín a? [(Ngóh) m̀hjī...a? = I wonder...? i.e. polite question introduction]	g. I wonder how much this raincoat is?

2. Transformation Drill: Transform the sentences from affirmative to choice type question.

Ex: T: Nī gihn sēutsāam sahpsàam mān.	T: This shirt is thirteen dollars.
S: Nī gihn sēutsāam haih m̀hhaih sahpsàam mān a?	S: Is this shirt thirteen dollars?

1. Nī gihn sēutsāam sahpyāt mān.	1. Nī gihn sēutsāam haih m̀hhaih sahpyāt mān a?
+ 2. Gó tìuh tāai sei mān. That tie is four dollars.	2. Gó tìuh tāai haih m̀hhaih sei mān a?
3. Nī tìuh fu sahpsàam mān.	3. Nī tìuh fu haih m̀hhaih sahpsàam mān a?
+ 4. Gó deui hàaih yahńgh mān. That pair of shoes is twenty-five dollars.	4. Gó deui hàaih haih m̀hhaih yahńgh mān a?
5. Nī deui maht sàam mān.	5. Nī deui maht haih m̀hhaih sàam mān a?
6. Gó bá jē sahpyāt mān.	6. Gó bá jē haih m̀hhaih sahpyāt mān a?
7. Nī gihn yúhlāu sahpgáu mān.	7. Nī gihn yúhlāu haih m̀hhaih sahpgáu mān a?
8. Nī go bīu ńgh'ahgáu mān.	8. Nī go bīu haih m̀hhaih ńgh'ahgáu mān a?
+ 9. Gó jī yùhnjībāt yāt mān. That ball point pen is one dollar.	9. Gó jī yùhnjībāt haih m̀hhaih yāt mān a?

3. Response Drill: Teacher should point to a spot near himself for nī-, students should point away for gó-, to link the words with the situation.

Ex: T: Nī gihn sahpyāt mān.	T: This one is eleven dollars.
S: Gó gihn dōu yiu sahpyāt mān.	S: That one is eleven dollars.

1. Nī tìuh sahpsei mān.	1. Gó tìuh dōu yiu sahpsei mān.
2. Nī deui luhk mān.	2. Gó deui dōu yiu luhk mān.
3. Nī gihn sahpbaat mān.	3. Gó gihn dōu yiu sahpbaat mān.
4. Nī jì yāt mān.	4. Gó jì dōu yiu yāt mān.
5. Nī go yahgáu mān.	5. Gó go dōu yiu yahgáu mān.
+ 6. Nī tìuh dáifu ńgh mān. (underpants, undershorts)	6. Gó tìuh dáifu dōu yiu ńgh mān.

Comment: Note that in the sentences above, numbered money expressions stand as predicate without the inclusion of a verb. The inclusion of haih is, however, also permitted: Nī gihn haih sahpyāt mān. 'This one is $11'.

---

4. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Nī gihn yúhlāu sahp mān.	T: This raincoat is $10.
S: Nī gihn yúhlāu sahp mān, gó gihn dōu haih sahp mān.	S: This raincoat is $10. That one is also $10.
1. Nī gihn sēutsāam sahpńgh mān.	1. Nī gihn sēutsāam sahpńgh mān, gó gihn dōu haih sahpńgh mān.
2. Nī deui hàaih yahluhk mān.	2. Nī deui hàaih yahluhk mān, gó deui dōu haih yahluhk mān.
3. Nī bá jē sahpchāt mān.	3. Nī bá jē sahpchāt mān, gó bá dōu haih sahpchāt mān.
4. Nī tìuh fu yahyih mān.	4. Nī tìuh fu yahyih mān, gó tìuh dōu haih yahyih mān.
5. Nī tìuh tāai baat mān.	5. Nī tìuh tāai baat mān, gó tìuh dōu haih baat mān.

---

5. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute the cues as appropriate to make new sentences.

1. Ngóh séung máaih gihn yúhlāu. I want to buy a raincoat.	1. Ngóh séung máaih gihn yúhlāu.
2. /gó go yàhn/	2. Gó go yàhn séung máaih gihn yúhlāu.

	That man wants to buy this raincoat.
3. Gó go Yīnggwokyàhn.	3. Gó go Yīnggwokyàhn séung máaih gihn yúhlāu.
4. deui maht	4. Gó go Yīnggwokyàhn séung máaih deui maht.
+ 5. Gó go sīujé (woman)	5. Gó go sīujé séung máaih deui maht. That lady wants to buy a pair of socks.
+ 6. Gó wái sīnsàang (man)	6. Gó wái sīnsàang séung máaih deui maht.
7. tīuh fu	7. Gó wái sīnsàang séung máaih tīuh fu.

---

6. Transformation Drill: Transform the numbers from full form to abbreviated form.

Ex: T: Nī tīuh sàamsahp mān.	T: This one is thirty dollars.
S: Nī tīuh sà'ah mān.	S: This one is thirty dollars.

1. Nī tīuh yihsahpsei mān. [24]	1. Nī tīuh yahsei mān.
2. Nī tīuh yihsahpchāt mān. [27]	2. Nī tīuh yahchāt mān.
3. Nī tīuh sàamsahpńgh mān. [35]	3. Nī tīuh sà'ahńgh mān.
4. Nī tīuh sàamsahpyih mān. [32]	4. Nī tīuh sà'ahyih mān.
5. Nī tīuh seisahpbaat mān. [48]	5. Nī tīuh sei'ahbaat mān.
6. Nī tīuh seisahpluhk mān. [46]	6. Nī tīuh sei'ahluhk mān.
7. Nī tīuh ńghsahpsei mān. [54]	7. Nī tīuh ńgh'ahsei mān.
8. Nī tīuh ńghsahpyih mān. [51]	8. Nī tīuh ńgh'ahyih mān.
9. Nī tīuh luhksahpńgh mān. [65]	9. Nī tīuh luhk'ahńgh mān.
10. Nī tīuh luhksahpgáu mān. [69]	10. Nī tīuh luhk'ahgáu mān.

---

7. Response Drill: Teacher points away for gó-, students near for nī-.

Ex: T: Gó tiuh fu sahp mān. /baat mān/	T: That pair of trousers is ten dollars.
S: Nī tiuh baat mān jē.	S: This pair is only eight dollars.
1. Gó deui haaih yahsāam mān. /yahyāt mān/	1. Nī deui yahyāt mān jē.
2. Gó deui maht luhk mān. /sei mān/	2. Nī deui sei mān jē.
3. Gó tiuh fu sahpyih mān. /sahp mān/	3. Nī tiuh sahp mān jē.
4. Gó go bīu sà'ahngh mān. /yahchāt mān/	4. Nī go yahchāt mān jē.
5. Gó gihn yúhlāu yihsahp mān. /sahpgáu mān/	5. Nī gihn sahpgáu mān jē.

---

8. Response Drill

Ex: T: Nī gihn sahpluhk mān.	T: This one is sixteen dollars.
S: Gám, gó gihn haih m̀hhaih dōu haih sahpluhk mān a?	S: Well, is that one sixteen dollars too?
1. Nī bá sahpbaat mān.	1. Gám, gó bá haih m̀hhaih dōu haih sahpbaat mān a?
2. Nī tiuh ńgh mān.	2. Gám, gó tiuh haih m̀hhaih dōu haih ńgh mān a?
3. Nī gihn sahpsei mān.	3. Gám, gó gihn haih m̀hhaih dōu haih sahpsei mān a?
4. Nī deui yahsàam mān.	4. Gám, gó deui haih m̀hhaih dōu haih yahsàam mān a?
5. Kéuih haih Gwòngdùngyàhn. /kéuih pàhngyáuh/	5. Gám, kéuih pàhngyáuh haih m̀hhaih dōu haih Gwóngdùngyàhn a?

---

9. Response Drill

Ex: T: Néih máaih géidō gihn a? /ńgh/	T: How many do you want to buy? are you going to get? /5/
S: Ngóh máaih ńgh gihn.	S: I want five.

1. Néih máaih géidō bá a? /léuhng/	1. Ngóh máaih léuhng bá.
2. Néih máaih géidō tìuh a? /sàam/	2. Ngóh máaih sàam tìuh.
3. Néih máaih géidō deui a? /luhk/	3. Ngóh máaih luhk deui.
4. Néih máaih géidō gihn a? /sei/	4. Ngóh máaih sei gihn.
5. Néih máaih géidō jī a? /sei/	5. Ngóh máaih sei jī.
6. Néih máaih géidō go a? /sahpyih/	6. Ngóh máaih sahpyih go.

a. Repeat, teacher cuing with Measure and number only, students giving question and answer, thus:

T: /gihn/ńgh/	T: /M:/5/
S1: Néih máaih géidō gihn a?	S1: How many are you going to buy?
S2: Ngóh máaih ńgh gihn.	S2: I'm going to buy 5.

---

10. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Máaih sēutsāam.	T: Buy shirts.
S: Kéuih máaih gihn sēutsāam.	S: She's buying a shirt.

Note that the measure is not cued, that student must supply it.

1. Máaih fu.	1. Kéuih máaih tìuh fu.
2. Máaih tāai.	2. Kéuih máaih tìuh tāai.
3. Máaih maht.	3. Kéuih máaih deui maht.
4. Máaih jē.	4. Kéuih máaih bá jē.
5. Máaih hàaih.	5. Kéuih máaih deui hàaih.
6. Máaih yúhlāu.	6. Kéuih máaih gihn yúhlāu.
7. Máaih sēutsāam.	7. Kéuih máaih gihn sēutsāam.
8. Máaih bīu.	8. Kéuih máaih go bīu.
9. Máaih cháang.	9. Kéuih máaih go cháang.
10. Máaih kwàhn.	10. Kéuih máaih tìuh kwàhn.
11. Máaih dáikwàhn.	11. Kéuih máaih tìuh dáikwàhn.
12. Máaih pìhnggwó.	12. Kéuih máaih go pìhnggwó.
13. Máaih bāt.	13. Kéuih máaih jī bāt.
14. Máaih yùhnbāt.	14. Kéuih máaih jī yùhnbāt.
15. Máaih yùhnjíbāt.	15. Kéuih máaih jī yùhnjíbāt.

16. Máaih bējáu.	16. Kéuih máaih jī bējáu.
17. Máaih jūng.	17. Kéuih máaih go jūng.

---

11. Expansion Drill: Expand the given sentence by adding the cue word in the appropriate place.

Ex: T: Béi léuhng tìuh tāai ngóh lā. /nī/	T: Give me two ties. /this/
S: Béi nī léuhng tìuh tāai ngóh lā.	S: Give me these two ties.
1. Béi bá ngóh lā. /nī/	1. Béi nī bá ngóh lā.
2. Béi tìuh fu ngóh lā. /gó/	2. Béi gó tìuh fu ngóh lā.
3. Béi deui maht ngóh lā. /luhk/	3. Béi luhk deui maht ngóh lā.
4. Béi sàam gihn ngóh lā. /gó/	4. Béi gó sàam gihn ngóh lā.
5. Béi sàam tìuh ngóh lā. /nī/	5. Béi nī sàam tìuh ngóh lā.
6. Béi léuhng tìuh ngóh lā. /tāai/	6. Béi léuhng tìuh tāai ngóh lā.
7. Béi gó deui hàaih ngóh lā. /léuhng/	7. Béi gó léuhng deui hàaih ngóh lā.
8. Béi léuhng gihn sēutsāam ngóh lā. /gó/	8. Béi gó léuhng gihn sēutsāam ngóh lā.
9. Béi tìuh kwàhn ngóh lā. /gó/	9. Béi gó tìuh kwàhn ngóh lā.

---

12. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Néih máaih m̀h-máaih nī deui hàaih a? /nod/	T: Are you going to get this pair of shoes? Do you want this pair of shoes?
S: Hóu, béi nī deui ngóh lā.	S: OK, give me that pair.
2. T: Néih máaih m̀h-máaih nī deui hàaih a? /shake/	T: Do you want this pair of shoes?
S: M̀hmáaih laak.	S: Not today, thanks. [not buy now.]
1. Néih máaih m̀hmáaih nī gihn sēutsāam a? /nod/	1. Hóu, béi nī gihn ngóh lā.
2. Néih máaih m̀hmáaih nī gihn yúhlāu a? /nod/	2. Hóu, béi nī gihn ngóh lā.

3. Néih máaih m̀hmáaih nī bá jē a? /shake/

3. M̀hmáaih laak.

4. Néih máaih m̀hmáaih nī tìuh fu a? /shake/

4. M̀hmáaih laak.

5. Néih máaih m̀hmáaih ní deui maht a? /nod/

5. Hóu, béi nī deui ngóh lā.

6. Néih máaih m̀hmáaih nī tìuh tāai a? /shake/

6. M̀hmáaih laak.

7. Néih máaih m̀hmáaih nī deui hàaih a? /nod/

7. Hóu, béi nī deui ngóh lā.

8. Néih máaih m̀hmáaih nī jì yúhnbāt a? /shake/

8. M̀hmáaih laak.

9. Néih máaih m̀hmáaih nī go bīu a? /nod/

9. Hóu, béi nī go ngóh lā.

Comment: In these sentences idiomatic English counterparts for máaih might be 'take,' 'get,' 'want,' as well as 'buy.'

---

13. Expansion/Substitution Drill: Expand or substitute as appropriate with the cue provided.

Ex: T: Máaih nī gihn. /ngóh/ — T: Buy this one. /I/

S: Ngóh máaih nī gihn. — S: I'll take this one. (said to clerk in store)

T: /gó gihn/ — T: That one.

S: Ngóh máaih gó gihn. — S: I'll take that one. (said to clerk)

1. Gó go yàhn máaih sēutsāam. /séung/
That man is buying shirts.

1. Gó go yàhn séung máaih sēutsāam.
That man wants to buy shirts.

2. /gihn/

2. Gó go yàhn séung máaih gihn sēutsāam.

3. /léuhng/

3. Gó go yàhn séung máaih léuhng gihn seutsāam.

4. /géidō/

4. Gó go yàhn séung máaih géidō gihn sēutsāam a?

5. /sei/

5. Gó go yàhn séung máaih sei gihn sēutsāam.

6. /m̀hséung/

6. Gó go yàhn m̀hséung máaih sei gihn sēutsāam.

7. /séung m̀hséung a?/	7. Gó gō yàhn séung m̀hséung máaih sei gihn sēutsāam a?
8. /léuhng tìuh tāai/	8. Gó go yàhn séung m̀hséung máaih léuhng tìuh tāai a?

---

14. Conversation Exercise:

Ex: A: M̀hsái máaih luhk gihn sēutsāam, sàam gihn gau laak.	A: You needn't buy 6 shirts; 3 is enough.
B: M̀hhaih. Sàam gihn m̀hgau; yiu máaih luhk gihn.	B: No, 3 isn't enough; I need to get 6.
1. A. ...sàam deui maht; Yāt deui	1. A. M̀hsái máaih sàam deui maht; yāt deui gau laak.
B.	B. M̀hhaih. Yāt deui m̀hgau; yiu máaih sàam deui.
2. A. ...léuhng bá jē; Yāt bá......	2. A. M̀hsái máaih léuhng bá jē; yāt bá gau laak.
B.	B. M̀hhaih. Yāt bá m̀hgau; yiu máaih léuhng bá.
3. A. ...sahp go cháang; Gáu go......	3. A. M̀hsái máaih sahp go cháang; gáu go gau laak.
B.	B. M̀hhaih. Gáu go m̀hgau; yiu máaih sahp go.
4. A. ...chāt jí bējáu; luhk jí......	4. A. M̀hsái máaih chāt jí bējáu; luhk jí gau laak.
B.	B. M̀hhaih. Luhk jí mhgau; yiu máaih chāt jí.
5. A. ...sei go béng; Léuhng go......	5. A. M̀hsái máaih sei go béng; léuhng go gau laak.
B.	B. M̀hhaih. Léuhng go m̀hgau; yiu máaih sei go.

---

15. Response Drill: Respond affirmatively or negatively as directed, following the pattern of the example.

Ex: 1.	T: Yāt bá jē gau m̀hgau a? /nod/	T: Is one umbrella enough?
	S: Gau laak. Yāt bá gau laak.	S: Yes, one is enough.
2.	T: Yāt bá jē gau m̀hgau a? /shake/	T: Is one umbrella enough?
	S: Yāt bá m̀hgau. m̀hgòi néih béi léuhng bá ngóh lā.	S: One is not enough. Please give me two.

1. Léuhng jí yùhnjíbāt gau m̀hgau a? /nod/	1. Gau laak. Léuhng jí gau laak.
2. Yāt gihn yúhlāu gau m̀hgau a? /shake/	2. Yāt gihn m̀hgau. M̀hgòi néih béi léuhng gihn ngóh lā.
3. Luhk jí heiséui gau m̀hgau a? /nod/	3. Gau laak. Luhk jí gau laak.
4. Yāt deui hàaih gau m̀hgau a? /shake/	4. Yāt deui m̀hgau. M̀hgòi néih béi léuhng deui ngóh lā.
5. Sàam go pìhnggwó gau m̀hgau a? /shake/	5. Sàam go m̀hgau. M̀hgòi néih béi sei go ngóh lā.
6. Léuhng go bīu gau m̀hgau a? /nod/	6. Gau laak. Léuhng go gau laak.
7. Sahp go béng gau m̀hgau a? /shake/	7. Sahp go m̀hgau. M̀hgòi néih béi sahpyāt go ngóh lā.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Listen to tape with book closed.)

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You ask your neighbor:	B. And he replies:
1. What he wants to buy.	1. That he wants to buy a tie.
2. How many (ties) he wants.	2. He wants to buy two.
3. How much these shoes cost.	3. They are $60 a pair.
4. Whether those (shoes) are also $60.00 a pair.	4. No, they are $65.

5. Whether three pairs of socks are enough.	5. That he doesn't need three pairs--two pairs are enough.
6. How much that ballpoint pen is.	6. That it is $1--two sell for $1.90.
7. Whether 5 pencils are enough.	7. That five aren't enough--he wants ten.
8. How much that petticoat costs.	8. That it sells for $12.50.
9. Who that gentleman is.	9. That he doesn't know.
10. Who that lady is.	10. That her name is Chan--she teaches Cantonese.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 6

1. bá	m:	M. for things with handles, such as umbrellas
2. bāt	n:	writing implement; pen or pencil
3. béi	v:	give
4. chín	n/m:	money
5. dáifu	n:	underpants, undershorts
6. dáikwàhn	n:	slip, petticoat
7. deui	m;	pair; group measure for shoes, socks, chopsticks
8. fu	n:	trousers
9. gau	adj:	enough
10. géi(dō)	QW/nu:	how much? how many?
11. gihn	m:	M. for clothes
12. gó	sp:	that
13. go	m:	general M. for nouns
14. guhaak	n:	customer (restricted use)
15. hàaih	n:	shoes
16. jē	n:	umbrella
17. jí	m:	M. for pen, pencil, bottles
18. jūng	n:	clock
19. kwàhn	n:	skirt
20. máaih	v:	buy
21. maht	n:	socks

22. mān	m:	dollar
23. M̀hjī(dou)...a?	Ph:	I wonder...?
24. nī	sp:	this
25. sauhfoyùhn	n:	Salesclerk [sell-goods-personnel]
26. sēutsāam	n:	shirt
27. sīnsàang	n:	man
28. síujé	n:	lady, woman
29. tāai	n:	tie
30. tìuh	m:	M. for trousers, ties, roads
31. wái	m:	polite M. for persons
32. yàhn	n:	person
33. yiu + money expression	v:	wants X amount, costs X amount, (i.e., the asking price is X amount.)
34. yúhlāu	n:	raincoat
35. yùhnbāt	n:	pencil
36. yùhnjíbāt	n:	ball point pen

CLASSROOM PHRASES

Below are some sentences for students to say to the teacher. Don't try to memorize them all at once, but learn them as you find them useful.

1.	Ngóh m̀hjī ____ dím gáai.	I don't know what ____ means. [lit. I don't know how ____ is explained.]
2.	Ǹhgòi néih gáaisīkháh.	Please explain.
3.	Ǹhgòi néih géui go laih làih táiháh.	Please give an example to demonstrate.
4.	Ǹhgòi néih yuhng ____ jouh yāt geui béi ngóh tèngháh.	Please use ____ to make a sentence for me to hear.
5.	Hái mēyéh sìhhauh sínji góng?	When do you say that? (i.e., in what kind of situation?)
6.	Hái mēyéh chìhngyìhng sínji góng?	In what circumstances is that said?
7.	A tùhng B yáuh móuh fànbiht?	Is there any difference between A and B ?
8.	A tùhng B yáuh mēyéh fànbiht?	What is the difference between A and B ?
9.	Ngóh nī geui yáuh dī mahntàih.	I have a question about this sentence.
10.	Ngóh nī go jih yáuh dī mahntàih.	I have a question about this word.
11.	Gám góng dāk m̀hdāk a?	Is it OK to say it this/that way?
12.	____ hóu m̀hhóu tèng?	Does _____ sound right?
13.	____ duhk mēyéh sīng a?	What tone is _____?

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Customer and clerk in a grocery store:)

Fógei	
fógei	clerk
Máaih mēyéh a?	What will you have?
Guhaak	
haih ... làih ge	is...(grammatical structure emphasizing enclosed noun.)
haih mēyéh làih ga?	is what?
dī	mass measure; plural measure
nī dī	this (mass); these (units)
Nī dī haih mēyéh làih ga?	What's this?
Fógei	
ngàuhyuhk	beef
Nī dīhaih ngàuhyuhk.	This is beef.
oi, or ngoi	want, want to possess, want to have
oi m̀hoi, or ngoi m̀hngoi	want/not want?
Néih oi m̀hoi nē?	Do you want some?
Guhaak	
jyùyuhk	pork
dī jyùyuhk	some pork
M̀hoi, ngóh séung oi dī jyùyuhk.	No, I don't; I want to get some pork.
gàn	catty (unit of measure = 600 gms. ca. 1 1/3 pounds)
Géidō chín gàn a?	How much is it per catty?
Fógei	
sei go luhk	$4.60 [4 measure 6 (dimes)]
ngàhnchín	money [silver-money]
sei go luhk ngàhnchín	$4.60 [4 dollars 6 (dimes)]
sei go luhk ngàhnchín gàn	$4.60 per catty
Nī dī sei go luhk ngàhnchín gàn.	This is $4.60 per catty.

Guhaak

béi ngóh lā	give (it to) me please
léuhng gàn	two catties
Béi léuhng gàn ngóh lā.	Please give me two catties.

(They go over to the fruit section.)

Guhaak

maaih	sell
dím maaih nē?	how sell?
cháang dím maaih nē?	oranges--how sell?
Dī cháang dím maaih nē?	What do the oranges sell for?

Fógei

hòuh(jí)	dime
Ńgh hòuhjí go.	50¢ [5 dimes] each.

Guhaak

Dī pìhnggwó nē?	And the apples?

Fógei

yātyeuhng	same
Yātyeuhng--ńgh hòuhji go.	The same--50¢ each.

Guhaak

tòhng	sugar
bohng tòhng	a pound of sugar
léuhng bohng tòhng	two pounds of sugar
A! Ngóh dōu séung máaih léuhng bohng tòhng.	Oh! I also want to buy two pounds of sugar.
géi chín a?	how much money?
Géidō chín bohng a?	How much is it per pound?

Fógei

luhk hòuh bun	65¢ [6 dimes + half]
luhk hòuh bun jí	65¢ [6 dimes half dime]
Luhk hòuh bun jí bohng.	65¢ per pound.

B. **Recapitulation:**

Fógei

Máaih mēyéh a?	What will you have?

Guhaak	
Nī dī haih mēyéh làih ga?	What's this?
Fógei	
Nī dī haih ngàuhyuhk. Néih oi m̀hoi nē?	This is beef. Do you want some?
Guhaak	
M̀hoi, ngóh séung oi dī jyùyuhk. Géidō chín gàn a?	No, I don't; I want to get some pork. How much is it per catty?
Fógei	
Nī dī sei go luhk ngàhnchín gàn.	This is $4.60 per catty.
Guhaak	
Béi léuhng gàn ngóh lā.	Please give me two catties.
(They go over to the fruit counter.)	
Guhaak	
Dī cháang dím maaih nē?	What do the oranges sell for?
Fógei	
Ǹgh hòuhjí go.	50¢ [5 dimes] each.
Guhaak	
Dī pìhnggwó nē?	And the apples?
Fógei	
Yātyeuhng--ǹgh hòuhjí go.	The same--50¢ each.
Guhaak	
A! Ngóh dōu séung máaih léuhng bohng tòhng. Géidō chín bohng a?	Oh! I also want to buy two pounds of sugar. How much is it per pound?
Fógei	
Luhk hòuh bun jí bohng.	65¢ per pound.

Note to teacher: In drill #2 of this lesson there are some visual props needed which you may want to assemble early.

+ + + + + + + + + + + + + + +

Pronunciation

1. Tone practice:

   A. Tone practice with Measures: Repeat during the pauses provided:

      1. máh (= yard (in length) (3 times)
      2. yāt jí , yāt bá , yāt go ; yāt tìuh , yāt máh ,
         yāt gihn .
      3. yāt jí, yāt bá, yāt go ; yāt tìuh, yāt máh, yāt gihn
      4. yāt jí, yāt tìuh , (3 times)
      5. yāt go, yāt gihn (3 times); yāt gihn, yāt go . (3 times)
      6. yāt bá, yāt máh (3 times); yāt máh, yāt bá . (3 times)
      7. yāt gihn, yāt tìuh (3 times)
      8. chēut (= M. for movie) . (3 times)
      9. yāt chēut, yāt go, yāt gihn ; yāt gihn, yāt go, yāt chēut .
      10. jí bá go chēut , tìuh máh gihn .
      11. jí bá go chēut tìuh máh gihn .

   B. Tone practice with Numbers:

      1. lìhng (= 'zero') . (3 times)
      2. sàam, gáu sei ; lìhng, ńgh, yih .
      3. sàam, gáu, sei, lìhng, ńgh, yih .
      4. sàam, gáu, sei, chāt ; lìhng, ńgh, yih .
      5. sàam, gáu,sei, chāt, lìhng, ńgh, yih .
      6. chāt sei , sei chāt ; yih sei , sei yih . .
      7. gáu ńgh , ńgh gáu .
      8. lìhng yih , yih lìhng .
      9. chāt go, baat go, sahp go , sahp go, baat go, chāt go .
      10. sahp go, baat go; baat go, sahp go .
      11. chāt go, baat go , baat go, chāt go .
      12. gáu go, léuhng go , léuhng go, gáu go .

2. ai/aai contrasts

   Listen and repeat: (Notice that ai is shorter and tenser in an isolated syllable than is aai; that the a of ai is a mid central vowel, whereas the aa of aai is a low back vowel; that i after a is high front unrounded, after aa is somewhat lower (i after a is more like the ee sound of English "see," after aa it is more like the i sound of English "is.")

1. gāi gāi gāi 雞 , tāai tāai tāai 呔 .
2. gāi tāai , tāai gāi .
3. haih haih haih , maaih maaih maaih .
4. haih m̀hhaih a? , maaih m̀hmaaih a? .
5. haih m̀hhaih a? , máaih m̀hmáaih a? .
6. Gó wái taaitáai haih m̀hhaih máaih hàaih a?
7. Jànhaih m̀hsái máaih hàaih.

3. maaih and máaih

Listen and repeat:

1. maaih, maaih , máaih, máaih .
2. máaih, máaih , maaih, maaih .
3. máaih m̀hmáaih a? , maaih m̀hmaaih a? .
4. maaih m̀hmaaih a? , máaih m̀hmáaih a? .
5. m̀hséung maaih , m̀hséung máaih .
6. máaih léuhng go, máaih léuhng go ,
maaih léuhng go , maaih léuhng go .

4. yuk = y + uk

yuk is a syllable composed of y as initial and uk as a two-part final, composed of the high back rounded vowel u plus the velar consonant stop k. The high front rounded yu [ü] plus velar stop consonant k doesn't occur as a two-part final in Cantonese. Therefore the spelling yuk, which on paper could be ambiguously interpreted as either yu + k or y + uk, can only be y + uk.

Listen and repeat:

1. jyùyuhk jyùyuhk 豬肉
2. yuhk yuhk 肉肉
3. luhk luhk 六肉
4. yuhk luhk (2 times)肉六

II. NOTES

1. dī 'some,' as general plural measure for individual nouns

a. Plurality unspecified in number is expressed by the plural measure dī, 'some.'

1. go pìhnggwó = the apple, an apple

dī pìhnggwó = the apples, some apples

2. nī go pìhnggwó = this apple

nī dī pìhnggwó = these apples

b. Individual nouns have different individual measures, but dī serves as plural measure for all individual nouns.

Ex: 1. bá jē = the umbrella, an umbrella

dī jē = the umbrellas, some umbrellas

2. tìuh tāai = the tie, a tie

dī tāai = the ties, some ties

3. go cháang = the orange, an orange

dī cháang = the oranges, some oranges

(See BC and Drill 4)

c. In a follow sentence dī substitutes for the noun it represents, serving in such position as an impersonal pronoun.

Béi gó dī cháang ngóh lā. = Give me those [M] oranges.

Béi gó dī ngóh lā. = Give me those. [distant ones]

d. dī is not used as Measure following a number. When number is specified, the individual measure follows the number.

Ex: sp+nu +m +n

nī dī jē = these umbrellas

sàam bá jē = three umbrellas

nī sàam bá jē = these three umbrellas

(-) sàam dī jē -- doesn't occur

(-)nī sàam dī jē -- doesn't occur

(See BC and Drills 1.5. 1.6)

2. Mass Nouns

a. Mass nouns designate substances which are perceived in the mass rather than as discrete units. For example:

tòhng - 'sugar'
séui - 'water'
jyùyuhk - 'pork'

b. When counted, mass nouns do not use individual measures. Instead they are counted in terms of their length, weight, or some other standard; or in terms of a container of their volume; or in terms of a segment of their whole.

Ex: Nu. + M + N
sàam bohng tòhng = three pounds of sugar
sàam máh bou = three yards of cloth
sàam bùi chàh = three cups of tea
sàam faai pāi = three pieces of pie

Certain individual nouns may also be counted in terms of weight or other standard; but they are not limited to being counted this way:

Ex: sàam bohng cháang = three pounds of oranges
sàam go cháang = three oranges

c. Similarities and differences between individual and mass measures.

The standard/container/segment measures used in counting mass nouns occupy the same position in the sentence that individual measures occupy. The measures for mass nouns, however, differ from individual measures in not being in apposition with the following noun. They also differ in having independent meaning.

3. dī, general measure for mass nouns.

When mass nouns are particularized but not counted by number, the plural measure dī serves as general mass measure for all mass nouns. It is translated in English as 'the' in subject position, 'some,' 'a little,' in object position. Incorporated into a nī or gó compound, it translates as 'this' or 'that' in both subject and object positions.

Ex: 1. Nīdī ngàuhyuhk yiu luhk mān gān.	1. This beef costs $6.00 a catty.
2. Dī faahn dungjó.	2. The rice has totten cold.
3. Ngóh séung máaih dī ngàuhyuhk.	3. I'd like to buy some beef.
4. Néih séung yám dī mēyéh a?	4. You'd like to drink a little what? (i.e. What would you like to drink?)

(See BC and Drills 6, 7, 10, 11, 12 for subject position examples: See BC and Drills 1, 2, 3 for object position examples.)

4. haih $\overset{X}{....}$ làih ga? ge.

haih $\overset{X}{....}$ làih ga? (& ge) is a phrase frame which has the effect of emphasizing the noun it envelopes.

Ex: Nī dī haih mēyéh a?	What's this?
Nī dī haih mēyéh làih ga?	What in the world is this?
Gó go haih bīngo làih ga?	Who in the world is that?

(See BC and Drill 14)

Note that the question: Nī dī haih mēyéh làih ga? permits the mass/plural dī regardless of whether the object referred to is unit or mass, or whether, if unit, is singular or plural. If the item is singular, using the singular pronoun is also permitted.

Ex: Q: Nī jī haih mēyéh làih ga?	What's this?
A: Nī jī haih yùhnbāt làih ge.	It's a pencil.
or Q: Nī dī haih mēyéh làih ga?	What's this?
A: Nī dī haih yùhnbāt làih ge.	It's a pencil.

5. Money Measures.

The unit of currency in Hong Kong is the Hong Kong dollar. HK$1.00 = US$0.16 2/3; US$1.00 = approximately HK$6.00 in 1970.

a. The money measures used in counting money are the following:

1. mān = measure for 'dollar,' used when the figure is a round number. The word is derived from the first syllable of the English word 'money.'

2. go ngàhnchín = measure + noun. The compound of the two is used to represent 'dollar' when the figure is a round number. This form less common than the mān form for round number dollar figures. The basic meaning of ngàhnchín is 'money,' [literally 'silver-money']

   Ex: sàam gò ngàhnchín = three dollars

3. go = measure for 'dollar' when the figure is not a round number.

   Ex: $3.10 = sàam go yāt = three dollars one (dime) = $3.10

4. hòuh(jí) = measure for 'dime,' used when the amount is less than one dollar.

   Ex: sàam hòuh(jí) = three dimes, i.e. thirty cents

   Note (in #3 above) that when dimes are part of a money expression which is larger than a dollar the dime measure is not stated. That a number following the dollar measure would indicate the dime number is predictable on the basis of the decimal system used in counting money.

5. The penny measure is not used in Hong Kong, except perhaps in banking. 5¢ is expressed, however, thus:

   sei hòuh bun = 4 dimes (and) half = 45¢

   In fact bun following any measure is left-bound to that measure, and means 'plus half that measure.'

   Ex: sàam go bun = three dollars and a half

b. '$1.00 apiece,' '$1.00 a pound' type phrases.

In 'one dollar apiece' expressions in Cantonese the order of parts is irreversible with the money part coming first. (In English the order is often reversible: '5 cents for two/two for 5 cents.'

In the Cantonese phrase, the last number of the money measure must not directly precede the noun measure.

Ex: (read across)

	Nu	M	Nu	M	Nu	M	
1.	sei	go	sei	ngàhnchín		bá	4 dollars 4 dimes for one [M] = $4.40 each.
2.	sei	go	sei		yāt	bá	
3.	sei	go	sei	ngàhnchín	yāt	bá	
(-) 4.	sei	go	sei			bá	(not said this way)
5.	sei	go	sei	ngàhnchín	léuhng	bá:	4 dollars 4 dimes for two [M] = 2 for $4.40

(See BC and Drills 1, 6, 16.1)

c. Omission of yāt in certain 'one dollar' phrases.

When the dollar amount is one dollar and a fraction, the numeral yāt preceding the dollar measure go is ordinarily omitted in the spoken language.

Ex: go yāt = a dollar ten cents ($1.10)
go yāt ngàhnchín bohng = a dollar ten cents a pound
or go yāt yāt bohng ($1.10 per pound)

(See Drill 1.3)

Yāt is required, however, if the expression reaches a three-figure number.

Ex: yāt go baat hòuh bun jí bohng = $1.85 per pound
yāt go baat hòuh bun = $1.85

6. Words belonging to more than one grammatical category.

Ex: ngàhnchín = noun and measure: 'money' [silver-money]

	nu	+ m	+ nu	+ m	(+ n)	+ nu	+ m.	
1.	sei	go	sàam	ngàhnchín		léuhng	bohng	= $4.30 for 2 pounds
2.			sàam	go	ngàhnchín	léuhng	bohng	= $3.00 for 2 pounds
3.			sàam	mān		léuhng	bohng	= $3.00 for 2 pounds

In Sentence #1 above, ngàhnchín is a measure, in #2 a noun. In comparison with English, there are relatively few words in Cantonese which belong to more than one grammatical category.

III. DRILLS

1. Expansion Drill: Repeat after the teacher:

1. a. Gàn.	1. a. Catty (1-1/3 pounds)
b. Géidō chīn gàn a?	b. How much per catty?
c. Ngàuhyuhk géidō chīn gàn a?	c. How much is beef per catty.
d. Dī ngàuhyuhk géidō chīn gàn a?	d. How much is the beef per catty?
e. Dī ngàuhyuhk maaih géidō chīn gàn a?	e. How much does the beef sell for per catty?
f. Gó dī ngàuhyuhk maaih géidō chīn gàn a?	f. How much does that beef sell for per catty?
g. Gó dī ngàuhyuhk maaih ńgh mān gàn.	g. That beef sells for five dollars per catty.
+ 2. a. Yú	2. a. Fish
b. Dī yú.	b. The fish (in the mass) or These fish.
c. Nī dī yú.	c. This fish (in the mass) or These fish.
d. Nī dī yú géidō chīn gàn a?	d. How much is this fish per catty? or ...are these fish.
e. Nī dī yú sàam go sei ngàhnchín gàn.	e. This fish is $3.40 per catty. or These are ...
3. a. Go yih. (go + number, in a money phrase = one dollar and X number dimes)	3. a. $1.20
b. Go yih ngàhnchín.	b. $1.20
+ c. Go yih ngàhnchín bàau.	c. $1.20 per pack(age)
+ d. Yīnjái go yih ngàhnchín bàau.	d. Cigarettes are $1.20 per pack.
e. Dī yīnjái go yih ngàhnchín bàau.	e. The cigarettes are $1.20 per pack.
f. Nī dī yīnjái go yih ngàhnchín bàau.	f. These cigarettes are $1.20 per pack.
g. Kéuih wah nī dī yīnjái go yih ngàhnchín bàau.	g. He says these cigarettes are $1.20 per pack.
+ 4. a. máh	4. a. yard (in length)
b. Géidō chīn máh a?	b. How much per yard?
+ c. Dī bou géidō chīn máh a? [cloth, fabric, material]	c. How much is the cloth per yard?

d. Nī dī bou géidō chín máh a?	d. How much is this cloth per yard?
e. Nī dī bou géidō chín léuhng máh a?	e. How much is this cloth for 2 yards? How much is 2 yards of this cloth?
f. Nī dī bou yahgáu mān léuhng máh.	f. This cloth is $29 for 2 yards.
+ 5. a. syù	5. a. book
+ b. bún syù (M. for book)	b. a/the book
c. Nī bún syù	c. this book
d. Nī bún syù dím maaih a?	d. How much is this book? or How much does this book sell for?
e. Nī léuhng bún syù dím maaih a?	e. How much do these 2 books sell for?
f. Nī léuhng bún syù maaih yah mān.	f. These two books are $20.00.
g. Nī léuhng bún syù maaih yihsahp mān bún.	g. These two books are $20.00 each.
+ 6. a. Gāi.	6. a. Chicken.
+ b. Jek gāi. (M. for chicken)	b. A/the chicken.
c. Léuhng jek gāi.	c. 2 chickens
d. Nī léuhng jek gāi.	d. These 2 chickens.
e. Nī léuhng jek gāi sei mān gàn.	e. These 2 chickens are $4 a catty.
f. Nī léuhng jek gāi maaih sei mān gàn.	f. These 2 chickens sell for $4 per catty.
g. Nī léuhng jek gāi maaih sei go bun ngàhnchín gàn.	g. These 2 chickens sell for $4.50 per catty.
h. Kéuih wah nī léuhng jek gāi maaih sei go bun ngàhnchín gàn.	h. He says these 2 chickens sell for $4.50 per catty.
+ 7. a. Hàaih.	7. a. Shoe
b. Jek hàaih.	b. the/a shoe
c. Béi jek hàaih ngóh.	c. Give me the shoe.
d. Ǹhgói néih béi jek hàaih ngóh.	d. Please give me the shoe.

Comment: jek is also the M. for maht, 'socks,' 'stockings.'

2. Response Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh séung máaih dī ngàuhyuhk.	T: I want to buy some beef.
S: Kéuih dōu séung máaih dī ngàuhyuhk.	S: He also wants to buy some beef.

1. Ngóh séung máaih bá jē.	1. Kéuih dōu séung máaih bá jē.
2. Ngóh séung máaih dī jyùyuhk.	2. Kéuih dōu séung máaih dī jyùyuhk.
3. Ngóh séung máaih bāau yīnjái.	3. Kéuih dōu séung máaih bāau yīnjái.
4. Ngóh séung máaih dī tòhng.	4. Kéuih dōu séung máaih dī tòhng.
5. Ngóh séung máaih tìuh yú.	5. Kéuih dōu séung máaih tìuh yú.
6. Ngóh séung máaih jī bējáu.	6. Kéuih dōu séung máaih jī bējáu.
7. Ngóh séung máaih gihn sēutsāam.	7. Kéuih dōu séung máaih gihn sēutsāam.

---

3. Conversation Drill

Ex: T: /dī jyùyuhk/	T: /some pork/
S1: Máaih mēyéh a?	S1: May I help you?
S2: Ngóh séung máaih dī jyùyuhk.	S2: I'd like to buy some pork.

1. /dī ngàuhyuhk/	1. A. Máaih mēyéh a? B. Ngóh séung máaih dī ngàuhyuhk.
2. /bāau yīnjái/	2. A. Máaih mēyéh a? B. Ngóh séung máaih bāau yīnjái.
3. /jek gāi/	3. A. Máaih mēyéh a? B. Ngóh séung máaih jek gāi.
4. /bohng tòhng/	4. A. Máaih mēyéh a? B. Ngóh séung máaih bohng tòhng.
5. /dī jyùyuhk/	5. A. Máaih mēyéh a? B. Ngóh séung máaih dī jyùyuhk.

6. /tìuh yú/	6. A. Máaih mēyéh a? B. Ngóh séung máaih tìuh yú.
7. /deui hàaih/	7. A. Máaih mēyéh a? B. Ngóh séung máaih deui hàaih.

---

4. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Nī gihn sēutsāam géidō chín a?	How much is this shirt?
S: Nī dī sēutsāam géidō chín gihn a?	How much are these shirts apiece?
1. Nī bāau yīnjái géidō chín a?	1. Nī dī yīnjái géidō chín bāau a?
2. Nī bá jē géidō chín a?	2. Nī dī jē géidō chín bá a?
3. Nī deui hàaih géidō chín a?	3. Nī dī hàaih géidō chín deui a?
4. Nī gihn yúhlāu géidō chín a?	4. Nī dī yúhlāu géidō chín gihn a?
5. Nī tìuh fu géidō chín a?	5. Nī dī fu géidō chín tìuh a?
6. Nī gihn sāam géidō chín a?	6. Nī dī sāam géidō chín gihn a?

Comment: The individual Measures mean 'apiece,' 'each,' following a money phrase: Standard Measures mean 'per M.'

Ex: Nī dī gāi sei mān gàn.	These chickens are $4.00 per catty.
Nī dī yùhnbāt sàam hòuhjí jí.	These pencils are 30¢ each.
Nī dī yùhnbāt luhk hòuhjí léuhng jí.	These pencils are 60¢ for two.

---

5. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: jyùyuhk /gàn/	T: pork /catty/
S: Nī dī jyùyuhk géidō chín gàn a?	S: How much is this pork per catty?
1. /ngàuhyuhk /gàn/	1. Nī dī ngàuhyuhk géidō chín gàn a?

2. /sēutsāam/gihn/	2. Nī dī sēutsāam géidō chín gihn a?
3. /gāi/jek/	3. Nī dī gāi géidō chín jek a?
4. /bējáu/jī/	4. Nī dī bējáu géidō chín jī a?
5. /yīnjái/bāau/	5. Nī dī yīnjái géidō chín bāau a?
6./tòhng/bohng/	6. Nī dī tòhng géidō chín bohng a?
7. /cháang/go/	7. Nī dī cháang géidō chín go a?
8. /pìhnggwó/go/	8. Nī dī pìhnggwó géidō chín go a?
9. /jīu/gàn/	9. Nī dī jīu géidō chín gàn a?
10. /dáifu/tìuh/	10. Nī dī dáifu géidō chín tìuh a?

6. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Nī dī ngàuhyuhk sàam go luhk ngàhnchín gàn.	T: This beef is $3.60 per catty.
S1: Nī dī ngàuyuhk géidō chín gàn a?	S1: How much is this beef per catty?
S2: Sàam go luhk ngàhnchín gàn.	$3.60 per catty.

1. Nī dī jyùyuhk sei man gàn.	1. A. Nī dī jyùyuhk géidō chín gàn a? B. Sei mān gàn.
2. Nī dī ngàuhyuhk ńgh mān bohng.	2. A. Nī dī ngàuhyuhk géidō chín bohng a? B. Ńgh mān bohng.
3. Nī dī yīnjái go yih ngàhnchín bāau.	3. A. Nī dī yīnjái géidō chín bāau a? B. Go yih ngàhnchín bāau.
4. Nī dī dáikwàhn léuhng mān tìuh.	4. A. Nī dī dáikwàhn géidō chín tìuh a? B. Léuhng mān tìuh.
5. Nī dī dáikwàhn go yih ngàhnchín gihn.	5. A. Nī dī dáikwàhn géidō chín gihn a? B. Go yih ngàhnchín gihn.

7. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Nī dī ngàuhyuhk dím maaih a?	T: How do you sell this beef? or What does this beef sell for?
S: Nī dī ngàuhyuhk géidō chín gàn a?	S: How much is this beef per catty?
1. Nī dī jyùyuhk dím maaih a? /gàn/	1. Nī dī jyùyuhk géidō chín gàn a?
2. Nī dī gāi dím maaih a? /gàn/	2. Nī dī gāi géidō chín gàn a?
3. Nī dī yú dím maaih a? /gàn/	3. Nī dī yú géidō chín gàn a?
4. Nī dī bējáu dím maaih a? /jī/	4. Nī dī bējáu géidō chín jī a?
5. Nī dī tòhng dím maaih a? /bohng/	5. Nī dī tòhng géidō chín bohng a?
6. Nī dī yīnjái dím maaih a? /bàau/	6. Nī dī yīnjái géidō chín bāau a?

---

8. Response Drill: Answer with '2' each time.

Ex: T: Néih oi m̀hoi yīnjái a?	T: Do you want cigarettes?
S: Oi - Béi léuhng baau ngóh lā.	S: Yes - Give me two packs please.
1. Néih oi m̀hoi bējáu a?	1. Oi - Béi léuhng jí ngóh lā.
2. Néih oi m̀hoi yīnjái a?	2. Oi - Béi léuhng bāau ngóh lā.
3. Néih oi m̀hoi ngàuhyuhk a?	3. Oi - Béi léuhng gàn ngóh lā.
4. Néih oi m̀hoi tòhng a?	4. Oi - Béi léuhng bohng ngóh lā.
5. Néih oi m̀hoi heiséui a?	5. Oi - Béi léuhng jí ngóh lā.
6. Néih oi m̀hoi yīnjái a? /jí/ (M for one cigarette)	6. Oi - Béi léuhng jí ngóh lā.

---

9. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Ńgh bohng gau m̀hgau a? /nod/	T: Is five pounds enough?
S: Gau laak.	S: That's enough.

2. T: Ǹgh bohng gau m̀hgau a? /shake/	T: Is five pounds enough?
S: M̀hgau. Ngóh oi luhk bohng.	S: No, I want to get six pounds.

Note: Answer with one more than the given number in response to the negative cue.

1. Sei bohng gau m̀hgau a? /nod/	1. Gau laak.
2. Léuhng bāau gau m̀hgau a? /shake/	2. M̀hgau. Ngóh oi sàam bāau.
3. Luhk gàn gau m̀hgau a? /shake/	3. M̀hgau. Ngóh oi chāt gàn.
4. Sàam jī gau m̀hgau a? /nod/	4. Gau laak.
5. Yāt jek gau m̀hgau a? /shake/	5. M̀hgau. Ngóh oi léuhng jek.
6. Chāt gihn gau m̀hgau a? /nod/	6. Gau laak.
7. Ǹgh tīuh gau m̀hgau a? /nod/	7. Gau laak.
8. Baat deui gau m̀hgau a? /shake/	8. M̀hgau. Ngóh oi gáu deui.
9. Gáu go gau m̀hgau a? /shake/	9. M̀hgau. Ngóh oi sahp go.

---

10. Conversation Drill

Ex: A: Nī dī yīnjái dīm maaih a?	A. What do these cigarettes sell for?
B: Go yih ngàhnchīn bàau. Néih máaih géidō bàau a?	B. $1.20 per pack. How many packs do you want?
A: Yāt bāau gau laak.	A. One pack is enough.

1. A. Nī dī jyùyuhk ......?	1. A. Nī dī jyùhyuhk dīm maaih a?
B. Ǹgh go sei ngàhnchīn gàn.	B. Ǹgh go sei ngàhnchīn gàn. Néih máaih géidō gàn a?
A. Yāt	A. Yāt gàn gau laak.
2. A. Nī dī bējáu ......?	2. A. Nī dī bējáu dīm maaih a?
B. Go baat ngàhnchīn jī.	B. Go baat ngàhnchīn jī. Néih máaih géidō jī a?
A. Luhk	A. Luhk jī gau laak.
3. A. Nī dī fu ....?	3. A. Nī dī fu dīm maaih a?
B. Yahluhk go baat ngàhnchīn tīuh.	B. Yahluhk go baat ngàhnchīn tīuh. Néih máaih géidō tīuh a?
A. Yāt	A. Yāt tīuh gau laak.

4. A. Nī dī bou	4. A. Nī dī bou dím maaih a?
B. Sahpchāt mān máh	B. Sahpchāt mān máh. Néih máaih géidō máh a?
A. Sàam	A. Sàam máh gau laak.
5. A. Nī dī tòhng ....?	5. A. Nī dī tòhng dím maaih a?
B. Luhk hòuhjí bohng....	B. Luhk hòuhjí bohng. Néih máaih géidō bohng a?
A. Yāt	A. Yāt bohng gau laak.
6. A. Nī dī maht	6. A. Nī dī maht dím maaih a?
B. Léuhng go bun ngàhnchín deui	B. Léuhng go bun ngàhnchín deui. Néih máaih géidō deui a?
A. Léuhng	A. Léuhng deui gau laak.

11. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Nī dī haih tòhng. Béi sàam bohng ngóh lā.	T: This is sugar. Give me three pounds.
S: Béi sàam bohng nī dī ngóh lā.	S: Give me three pounds of this.
1. Nī dī haih pìhnggwó. Béi luhk go pìhnggwó ngóh lā.	1. Béi luhk go nī dī ngóh lā. Give me six of these.
2. Nī dī haih bou. Béi léuhng máh bou ngóh lā.	2. Béi léuhng máh nī dī ngóh lā.
3. Nī dī haih yùhnbāt. Béi sei jī yùhnbāt ngóh lā.	3. Béi sei jī nī dī ngóh lā.
4. Nī dī haih syù. Béi bún syù ngóh lā.	4. Béi bún nī dī ngóh lā.
5. Nī dī haih heiséui. Béi sàam jī heiséui ngóh lā.	5. Béi sàam jī nī dī ngóh lā.
6. Nī dī haih yú. Béi tìuh yú ngóh lā.	6. Béi tìuh nī dī ngóh lā.

12. Response Drill

Ex: T: Nī dī haih jē.	T: These are umbrellas.
S: M̀hgòi néih béi bá ngóh lā!	S: Please give me one.

1. Nī dī haih bāt.	1. M̀hgòi néih béi jì ngóh lā!
2. Nī dī haih syù.	2. M̀hgòi néih béi bún ngóh lā!
3. Nī dī haih yùhnbāt.	3. M̀hgòi néih béi jì ngóh lā!
4. Nī dī haih pìhnggwó.	4. M̀hgòi néih béi go ngóh lā!
5. Nī dī haih béng.	5. M̀hgòi néih béi go ngóh lā!

---

13. Conversation Drill:

Ex: T: géi jek jīu	a few bananas
S1: M̀hgòi béi géi jek jīu ngóh lā.	Please give me a few bananas.
S2: Béi géi jek mēyéh wá?	Give a few whats, did you say?
S1: Géi jek jīu.	A few bananas.

1. géi go pìhnggwó	1. S1: M̀hgòi béi géi go pìhnggwó ngóh lā. S2: Béi géi go mēyéh wá? S1: Géi go pìhnggwó.
2. géi tìuh tāai	2. S1: M̀hgòi béi géi tìuh tāai ngóh lā. S2: Béi géi tìuh mēyéh wá? S1: Géi tìuh tāai.
3. géi go cháang	3. S1: M̀hgòi béi géi go cháang ngóh lā. S2: Béi géi go mēyéh wá? S1: Géi go cháang.
4. géi jì yùhnjíbāt	4. S1: M̀hgòi béi géi jì yùhnjíbāt ngóh lā. S2: Béi géi jì mēyéh wá? S1: Géi jì yùhnjíbāt.
5. géi bāau yīn	5. S1: M̀hgòi béi géi bāau yīn ngóh lā. S2: Béi géi bāau mēyéh wá? S1: Géi bāau yīn.

14. Question & Answer Drill: Teacher gives cue by pointing to objects, or pictures of them. Props required: apple, orange, ball point pen, etc.

Ex: T: (pencil)

S1: Nī dī haih mēyéh làih ga?	S1: What's this?
S2: Yùhnbāt. Gó dī haih yùhnbāt.	S2: A pencil. That's a pencil. or Pencils. Those are pencils.
S1: Géidō jī nē? /4/ (holds up fingers)	S1: How many? /unit/
S2: Sei jī.	S2: 4.

1. (apple)	1. A. Nī dī haih mēyéh làih ga? B. Pìhnggwó. Gó dī haih pìhnggwó. A. Géidō go nē? /3/ B. Sàam go.
2. (orange)	2. A. Nī dī haih mēyéh làih ga? B. Cháang. Gó dī haih cháang. A. Géidō go nē? /1/ B. Yāt go.
3. (ball point pen)	3. A. Nī dī haih mēyéh làih ga? B. Yùhnjíbāt. Gó dī haih yùhnjíbāt. A. Géidō jī nē? /6/ B. Luhk jī.
4. (pack of cigarettes)	4. A. Nī dī haih mēyéh làih ga? B. Yīnjái. Gó dī haih yīnjái. A. Géidō bāau nē? /2/ B. Léuhng bāau.
5. (book)	5. A. Gó dī haih mēyéh làih ga? B. Syù. Gó dī haih syù. A. Géidō bún nē? /1/ B. Yāt bún.

---

15. Substitution Drill: Teacher writes numbers on the blackboard to cue the students.

Ex: T: $12.40	T: $12.40

15. Substitution Drill: Teacher writes numbers on the blackboard to cue the students.

Ex: T: $12.40	T: $12.40
S: Nī gihn sēutsāam maaih sahpyih go sei.	S: This shirt sells for $12.40.

1. $12.20	1. Nī gihn sēutsāam maaih sahpyih go yih.
2. $13.60	2. Nī gihn sēutsāam maaih sahpsàam go luhk.
3. $13.20	3. Nī gihn sēutsāam maaih sahpsàam go yih.
4. $13.50	4. Nī gihn sēutsāam maaih sahpsàam go bun.
5. $15.90	5. Nī gihn sēutsāam maaih sahpńgh go gáu.

a. Continue, with other numbers.

16. Expansion Drill

1. a. ngàuhnáaih.	a. milk
b. Dī ngàuhnáaih.	b. the milk, or some milk
c. Dī ngàuhnáaih go baat ngàhnchín jí.	c. The milk is $1.80 a bottle.
d. Dī ngàuhnáaih yiu go baat ngàhnchín jí.	d. The milk costs $1.80 a bottle.
2. a. jīu	a. bananas
b. dī jīu.	b. the bananas *or* some bananas
c. dī jīu ńgh hòuhjí gàn.	c. the bananas are 50¢ a catty.
d. Dī jīu maaih ńgh hòuhjí gàn.	d. The bananas sell for 50¢ a catty.
e. Dī jīu haih m̀hhaih maaih ńgh hòuhjí gàn a?	e. Do the bananas sell for 50¢ a catty?

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Listen to tape with book closed.)

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. In a grocery store, the clerk asks:	B. And the customer answers:
1. What do you want to buy?	1. I want some beef, and also some pork and milk.
2. Is 5 pounds of sugar enough?	2. 5 pounds is not enough--give me 10 pounds.
3. Whether you'd like to buy some fish.	3. Yes, I'd like to buy one fish.
4. How many packs (of cigarettes) do you want?	4. Two packs are enough.

C. In a grocery store, the customer asks:	D: And the clerk answers:
1. How much does the beef sell for?	1. It's $5.80 a catty.
2. How much are these cigarettes?	2. They're $1.20 a pack.
3. Is this fish $3.00 a catty?	3. No, this is $2.80 a catty--those (pointing) are $3.00 a catty.
4. What is this?	4. That's pork--would you like some?
5. These bananas are 80¢ a catty, aren't they?	5. Yes, 80¢ a catty.--how many catties would you like?
6. These apples are 30¢ each, aren't they?	6. No, the apples are 50¢ each--the oranges are 30¢ each.
7. How much is the sugar per pound?	7. It's 75¢ a pound.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 7

1.	bàau	m:	package, M. for cigarette pack
2.	bohng	m:	pound
3.	bou	n:	cloth
4.	bún	m:	M. for book
5.	-bun	nu:	half
6.	dī	m:	some, the
7.	gāi	n:	chicken
8.	gàn	m:	catty, unit of weight ca 1 1/3 lb
9.	gó dī	sp+m:	those (in reference to unit nouns); that (in reference to mass nouns)
10.	haih...làih ge	Ph:	is..(grammatical structure giving emphasis to enclosed noun)
11.	hòuh(jí)	m:	dime
12.	jek	m:	M. for chicken, shoe, sock, ship.
13.	jì	m:	M. for cigarette
14.	jyùyuhk	n:	pork
15.	...làih ge		see: haih...làih ge
16.	maaih	v:	sell
17.	máh	m:	yard (in length)
18.	ngàhnchín	n/m:	money [silver-money]
19.	ngàuhyuhk	n:	beef
20.	nī dī	sp+m:	these (in reference to unit nouns) this (in reference to mass nouns)
21.	ngoi	v:	var. of oi, want, want to have, want to possess
22.	oi	v:	want, want to have, want to possess
23.	syù	n:	book
24.	tòhng	n:	sugar
25.	yātyeuhng	nuM/adj:	same
26.	yīnjái	n:	cigarette
27.	yú	n:	fish

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Buying socks at a department store:)

Guhaak

dyún	short
dyún maht	socks
baahk-	white
baahk dyún maht	white socks
yáuh	have; there is/are
móuh	not have; there is/are not
yáuh móuh?	have/not have? do you have? is there? are there?
yáuh móuh maht?	do (you) have socks?
yáuh móuh baahk dyún maht	do you have white socks? or are there any white socks?
Yáuh móuh baahk dyún maht maaih a?	Do you have white socks for sale?

Sauhfoyùhn

Yáuh.	Yes. [Have]
jeuk	wear (clothes)
Haih m̀hhaih néih jeuk ga?	Are they for you? [ones for you to wear?]

Guhaak

Haih.	That's right.

Sauhfoyùhn

houh	number; size
géi houh?	what size?
Jeuk géi houh a?	What size do you wear?

Guhaak

Gáu houh.	Number nine.

Sauhfoyùhn

pèhng	cheap
leng	pretty
yauh	also

yauh pèhng yauh leng	both cheap and pretty
Nī dī yauh pèhng yauh leng.	These are both cheap and pretty.
jùngyi	like; like to
jùng m̀hjùngyi a?	do you like (it/them)?
Néih jùng m̀hjùngyi a?	Do you like them?

Guhaak

hóu	good, nice
géi hóu	quite nice, pretty nice
daaih	big
m̀hgau daaih	not big enough
Géi hóu, daahnhaih m̀hgau daaih.	They're quite nice, but they're not big enough.
-dī	somewhat--, a little bit--
daaihdī	a little larger
daaihdī ge	larger one (or ones)
Yáuhmóuh daaihdī ge nē?	Do you have any little bit larger ones?

Sauhfoyùhn

-saai	completely
maaihsaai laak.	all sold out
Deuim̀hjyuh--daaihdī ge dōu maaihsaai laak.	I'm sorry, the larger ones are all sold out.
hāak-	black
hāaksīk	black color
hóu m̀hhóu?	is (that) all right?
Hāaksīk, hóu m̀hhóu a?	Would black be all right?
Hāaksīk dōu hóu leng ga.	The black are also very pretty.

Guhaak

Hóu aak.	All right.

Sauhfoyùhn

Nī dī sàam mān, nīdī sàam go bun.	These are three dollars, and these are three and a half.
bīn-?	which?
júng	kind, type

Néih ngoi bīn júng a?	Which ones do you want?
Guhaak	
sàam go bun ge	the three-fifty ones (or one)
Oi sàam go bun ge lā.	I'd like the $3.50 ones.
Sauhfoyùhn	
dā	dozen
máaih bun dā	buy half a dozen
àh	sentence suffix adding force of 'I suppose' to sentence it attaches to.
Máaih bun dā àh.	You'll take a half a dozen, I suppose.
Guhaak	
dò	much, many
M̀hsái gam dò.	(I) don't need that many.
Sàam deui gau laak.	Three pairs are enough.

B. **Recapitulation:**

Guhaak	
Yáuh móuh baahk dyún maht maaih a?	Do you have white socks for sale?
Sauhfoyùhn	
Yáuh. Haih m̀hhaih néih jeuk ga?	Yes. Are they for you?
Guhaak	
Haih.	That's right.
Sauhfoyùhn	
Jeuk géi houh a?	What size do you wear?
Guhaak	
Gáu houh.	Number nine.
Sauhfoyùhn	
Nī dī yauh pèhng yauh leng. Néih jùng m̀hjùngyi a?	These are both cheap and pretty. Do you like them?
Guhaak	
Géi hóu, daahnhaih m̀hgau	They're quite nice, but they're

daaih.	not big enough.
Yáuh móuh daaihdī ge nē?	Do you have any larger ones?
Sauhfoyùhn	
Deuim̀hjyuh--daaihdī ge dōu maaihsaai laak.	I'm sorry, the larger ones are all sold out.
Hāaksīk, hóu m̀hhóu a?	Would black be all right?
Hāaksīk dōu hóu leng ga.	The black are also very pretty.
Guhaak	
Hóu aak.	All right.
Sauhfoyùhn	
Nī dī sàam mān, nī dī sàam go bun.	These are three dollars, these are $3.50.
Néih ngoi bīn júng nē?	Which ones do you want?
Guhaak	
Oi sàam go bun ge lā.	I'd like the three-fifty ones, please.
Sauhfoyùhn	
Máaih bun dā àh.	Half a dozen, I suppose.
Guhaak	
M̀hsái gam dò. Sàam deui gau laak.	I don't need so many. Three pairs are enough.

+ +

Pronunciation Practice:

1. yun as in dyún

yun is a two-part final composed of the high front rounded vowel yu [ü], plus the dental nasal consonant n. The yu is an open vowel before the nasal final, and being a rounded vowel, has a rounding effect on a consonant preceding it in the same syllable, as well as the consonant following it.

Listen and repeat:

短 1. dyún , dyún , dyún .
鉛筆 2. yùhnbāt (5 times separately)
短鉛 3. dyún yùhn , yùhn dyún . 鉛短
鉛短 4. yùhn dyún , dyún yùhn . 短鉛

2. yu/yun contrasts

Listen and repeat: (Watch the teacher)

1. yú yú 魚 , dyún dyún 短 .
2. dyún dyún , yú yú .
3. dyún yú , yú dyún .

3. euk in jeuk, (ng)āamjeuk

euk is a two-part final composed of the rounded mid front vowel eu plus the velar stop consonant k. In final position in a syllable, k is unreleased--[k˺]. Before k, the positioning for eu is the same as that for eu before ng--raised mid front rounded--[ø]. Lips are rounded for the vowel and also for consonants preceding and following it in a syllable.

Listen and repeat: (Watch the teacher)

着 1. jeuk jeuk jeuk ; jeuk , jeuk , jeuk .

啱着 2. āamjeuk āamjeuk .

3. ngāamjeuk ngāamjeuk .

4. euk/eung contrasts

Listen and repeat: (Note that tongue and lip position is the same for eu before k as it is for eu before ng.)

1. jeuk, jeuk , Jèung, Jèung .
2. jeuk Jèung , Jèung jeuk .
3. jeuk séung , jeuk léuhng ,
4. jeuk chèuhng , jeuk yātyèuhng .

5. euk/eut contrasts

Listen and repeat: (Note that the tongue position for eu before the dental t is somewhat lower than its position before the velar k.)

1. jeuk jeuk , sēut sēut .
2. jeuk sāam , sēutsāam .
3. sēutsāam , jeuk sāam .

6. ek as in jek

ek is a two-part final composed of the mid front unrounded vowel e [E] plus the velar stop consonant k. In final position in a syllable, k is unreleased--[k˺]. The American counterpart of the

Cantonese ek is the eck in 'peck,' although in final position the American k is not necessarily unreleased--it may or may not be, with no significant difference.

Listen and repeat:

jek (5 times) 隻

7. eng as in leng, pèhng, béng, tèng

eng is a two-part final composed of the mid front unrounded vowel e [E] plus the velar nasal consonant ng. The e is like the e in the American 'bet.' It is an open vowel before the nasal final.

Listen and repeat, comparing English and Cantonese:

(Read across)

	English	Cantonese	
1.	bet	béng	餅
2.	pet	pèhng	平
3.	let	leng	靚
4.	Tet	tèng	聽

8. ut as in fut, 'wide' (See Drill 3)

ut is a two-part final composed of the high back rounded vowel u plus the dental stop consonant t. The tongue position for t is like that for English words ending with t--the tip of the tongue stops the flow of air at the dental ridge behind the upper teeth. In final position the Cantonese t is unreleased--[t˺]. u before t is produced the same as was u finally and u before n--as a high back rounded vowel [u] with tongue position somewhat higher than for u before k and ng. Before t the u is relatively long and has a slight offglide to high central position--[u·$^{\dot{u}}$] [u·$^{\dot{u}}$t˺].

Listen and repeat:

濶 fut , fut , fut , fut , fut .

9. u/ut contrasts

u before t is similar to u as a one-part final; both are high back rounded vowels, but u before t has a slight offglide to high central position [u^{u}t].

Listen and repeat:

褲 1. fu fu fu , fu fu fu .

濶 2. fut fut fut , fut fut fut .

3. fu fut , fu fut , fu fut ,
fut fu , fut fu , fut fu .

10. ut/un contrasts

u before t is pronounced the same as u before n, rather long, and with a slight forward offglide before the final consonant--[u·^{u}t˺], [u:^{u}n].

Listen and repeat:

1. fut fut , bun bun .
2. fut bun , bun fut .
3. bun bun , fut fut .

11. ut/uk contrasts

Tongue position for u before k is slightly lower than that for u before t, and the vowel is relatively short before k and long before t--[Uˇk˺], [u:^{u}t˺].

Listen and repeat:

1. fut fut , luhk luhk .
2. ngàuhyuhk yuhk, yuhk , fut fut .
3. fut yuhk , fut luhk , luhk yuhk fut fut .

12. ak/aak contrasts

Listen and repeat:

1. dāk dāk 得 , hāak hāak 黑 .
2. dāk hāak , hāak dāk .
3. jaak jaak ('narrow') 窄 , jaak dāk .
4. hāak dāk , jaak dāk , baahk dāk .
5. hāak hāak , jaak jaak , baahk baahk , dāk dāk .

II. NOTES

1. The verb yáuh, 'have,' 'there is/are'

a. yáuh is irregular in that its negative is not 'm̀hyáuh' but móuh. It patterns like other verbs in the affirmative, negative and choice questions:

Ex: aff: yáuh = have; there is
neg: móuh = don't have; there isn't
q: yáuh móuh ...? = do (you) have?; is there?

(See BC and Drills 1.1, 1.3, 8)

2. Adjectives

a. Adjectives are descriptive words. Words like daaih, 'big,' and dyún, 'short,' are adjectives.

b. From the grammatical point of view an adjective is a word that fits into certain positions in a sentence. A word which may be preceded by the following words and word groups is classed as an adjective in Cantonese:

hóu	very
géi	quite
m̀hhaih géi	not very
m̀hhaih hóu	not exceptionally

(See BC and Drills 4, 5)

c. A word which is an adjective in Cantonese may translate into another part of speech in English. For example, ngāamjeuk 'fits, fits well' is an adjective in Cantonese, because it patterns like an adjective, whereas the English equivalent expression 'fit' is a verb:

Nī gihn sēutsāam hóu ngāamjeuk. = This shirt fits well. [This shirt is very well-fitting.]

hóusihk 'good to eat,' 'tasty,' and hóuyám 'good to drink,' 'tasty,' are also adjectives, since they pattern like adjectives. They can be modified with the set of words, 'géi,' 'hóu,' etc. that modify adjectives.

1. Nī go pìhnggwó hóu hóusihk. This apple is very tasty. (i.e., tastes good.)
2. Dī bējáu hóu hóuyám. The beer is very tasty. (i.e., tastes good.)

(See Drill 2)

d. Adjectives in Cantonese, unlike English, do not require the equivalent of the verb 'is' to serve as the predicate.

Compare:

Cantonese:		English:	
Subject	Predicate	Subject	Predicate
	Adj.		Verb + Adj.
Nī gihn	daaih.	This one	is big.
Nī dī	hóu leng.	Those	are very pretty.

Since adjectives share this characteristic of verbs, and share also the characteristic of being able to be preceded directly by m̀h, 'not,' we consider adjectives in Cantonese to be a sub-category of verbs. Some writers call this category of word 'stative verb' rather than adjective.

e. Adjectives modified and unmodified.

1. An adjective modified by géi 'quite' or hóu 'very' carries the force which an unmodified adjective does in English:

Ex: Nī gihn géi leng. Nī gihn hóu leng.	This one is pretty.

2. An unmodified adjective indicates an implied comparison in a Cantonese sentence with a single adjective as predicate.

Ex: A: Néih wah bīn gihn leng a?	Which one do you think is pretty?
B: Nī gihn leng.	This one is pretty. (i.e. prettier than the other)

3. With two adjectives in the predicate, a yauh...yauh... construction is required, and in such a case, the unmodified adjective is the norm.

Ex: Nī go pìhnggwó yauh pèhng yauh leng.	This apple is both cheap and good.

(See BC and Drill 10)

4. The choice-type question follows the verbal pattern of V m̀hV, yielding Adj m̀hAdj.

Ex: Nī gihn gwai m̀hgwai a?	Is this one expensive?

(See Drills 3, 11)

To say 'Is this one very expensive?' requires a haih m̀hhaih question:

Ex: Nī gihn haih m̀hhaih hóu gwai a?	Is this one very expensive?

f. Adj + ge combination = noun phrase (NP).

An adjective is frequently used to form a noun phrase by adding the noun-forming suffix ge.

Ex: 1. M̀hhaih daaih ge, haih sai ge.	1. It's not the big one, it's the small one. or They aren't the big ones, they are the small ones.
2. yiu daaihdī ge.	2. Want a large one (or ones).

(See Drill 13)

Note that when an adjective combines with ge to form a noun construction, it is necessary to add haih or another verb to form a sentence.

3. dī as adj. suffix, 'a little,' 'Adj-er.'

In Cantonese Adj-dī has a comparative sense, but the English equivalents are translated variously, depending on context as: 'somewhat,' 'a little;' and also the comparative '-er.'

Ex: Ngóh go bīu faaidī.	[My watch is a bit faster (than the right time).] My watch is a little fast.
Nī gihn lāangsāam daaihdī.	[This sweater is a little larger (than the size I need).] This sweater is a little too large.
Yáuh móuh saidī ge nē?	Do you have a smaller one? (or smaller ones)

(See BC and Drills 13, 15)

4. Two syllable verbs and adjectives form the choice-type questions by using only the first syllable before the m̀h, and the whole word after:

V/Adj.		Choice question	
jùngyi	like	jùng m̀hjùngyi a?	(do you) like (it)?
ngāamjeuk	well-fitting	ngāam m̀hngāamjeuk a?	(Does it) fit?

(See BC)

5. àh sentence suffix, adding force of 'I suppose' to sentence it attaches to. It makes the sentence a rhetorical question. The speaker indicates with the àh final that he knows the response to his sentence will be in agreement with what he says. The intonation has the sentence-final fall characteristic of statement sentences.

Ex: Máaih bún dā àh.	(You'll) buy a half dozen, I suppose.

(See BC and Drill 9)

Compare the two following English sentences, of which the second has a connotation similar to the Cantonese àh sentences:

1. He's drinking tea, isn't he? (you're not sure)
2. He's drinking tea, isn't he. (you're sure he is)

6. Further use of sentence suffix nē?

A question sentence which continues a topic already being discussed often uses the sentence suffix nē?, with force of: '...then?;' '...And...?'

Ex: Yáuh móuh daaihdī ge nē?	Do you have any larger ones, then? (Having been shown smaller ones)

(See BC and Drill 16)

This nē? is the same final you encountered in Lesson 2 in the sentence composed of Noun + nē:

Sīnsàang nē?	'And you, Sir?'

The use of nē in this lesson is new in that it is here a final in a sentence which is itself a question. This use of nē is apparently used more frequently by women than by men, and its frequent use by men is said to give an effiminate cast to their speech. Sentence suffix a can be substituted for nē in all cases in which nē is a sentence suffix to a sentence which is itself a question.

7. Noun modification structures.

a. Noun as modifier to a following noun head:

1. Nouns as modifiers directly precede the noun they modify:

Ex:	Yìnggwok hàaih	English shoes
	Yahtbún bējáu	Japanese beer
	bou hàaih	cloth shoes
	pìhnggwó pāi	apple pie

2. When the noun head is already established, ge may substitute for the noun head in a follow sentence, keeping modification structures intact:

Ex:	a. Ngóh yiu máaih jì Yahtbún bējáu. Yáuh móuh a?	I want to buy a bottle of Japanese beer [Japan beer]. Do you have any?
	b. Móuh a. Máaih jì Méihgwok ge, hóu m̀hhóu a?	No, we don't. How about getting an American one? [America-one]

(See Drill 8)

b. Adjectives as modifiers to a following noun head:

1. A one syllable adjective as modifier directly preceeds the noun it modifies:

Ex:	1. Néih gihn sàn sēutsāam hóu leng.	Your new shirt is pretty.
	2. Ngóh m̀hjùngyi jeuk dyún fu.	I don't like to wear shorts. [short trousers]

2. Adjectives that are pre-modified add ge when modifying a following noun:

1. chèuhng yùhnbāt	long pencil
2. hóu chèuhng ge yùhnbāt	very long pencil
3. hóu gwai ge chèuhng yùhnbāt	very expensive long pencil

(See Drill 1.3)

8. dò 'many'

1. dò, 'many,' patterns like an adjective in taking the adjective modifiers hóu, géi, etc. and the adjective suffix dī, but within the larger framework of the sentence it patterns differently from adjectives. dò is a boundword, bound either to a preceding adverb or a following measure; adjectives are free words. Adjectives when pre-modified add ge when modifying a following noun, but dò does not:

Ex: hóu pèhng ge syù	very cheap books
hóu dò syù	very many books

A dò phrase patterns like a noun in that it can be the object of a verb without adding ge; but adjectives add ge when nominalized.

Ex: Kéuih yáuh hóu dò.	He has many.
Kéuih yáuh hóu daaih ge.	He has a big one (or ones.)

dò also shares some characteristics with numbers and can be viewed as an indefinite number. It is, in fact, a case unto itself, and you will learn its various faces bit by bit.

9. bīn- M ? = 'which M ?'

bīn-? is an interrogative boundword, bound to a following measure. It occupies the same position in a sentence as nī-, 'this' and gó-, 'that' and is classed with them as a specifier.

Ex: A: Néih séung máaih bīn gihn a?	Which one are you going to buy?
B: Ngóh máaih nī gihn laak.	I'll buy this one.

(See BC and Drill 14)

III. DRILLS

1. Expansion Drill: Students repeat after the teacher.

+ 1. a. chèuhng.	1. a. long.
b. chèuhng fu.	b. slacks, trousers. [long trousers]
c. yáuh tìuh chèuhng fu.	c. Have a pair of slacks.
d. Yáuh tìuh hāak chèuhng fu.	d. Have a pair of black slacks.
e. Yáuh tìuh hāak sīk ge chèuhng fu.	e. Have a pair of black coloured slacks.
+ 2. a. gwai	2. a. expensive.
+ b. géi gwai	b. rather expensive, quite expensive
+ c. m̀hhaih géi gwai	c. not very expensive, not expensive
d. Dī bou m̀hhaih géi gwai.	d. The cloth is not too expensive.
e. Dī Yahtbún bou m̀hhaih géi gwai.	e. The Japanese cloth is not expensive.
3. a. Jì yùhnbāt.	3. a. A (or The) pencil.
b. Yáuh jì yùhnbāt.	b. Have a pencil.
c. Ngóh yáuh jì yùhnbāt.	c. I have a pencil.
d. Ngóh yáuh jì chèuhng yùhnbāt.	d. I have a long pencil.
e. Ngóh yáuh jì hóu gwai ge chèuhng yùhnbāt.	e. I have a very expensive long pencil.
+ 4. a. Gihn lāangsāam.	4. a. The (or a) sweater.
+ b. Gihn sàn lāangsāam.	b. The new sweater.
c. Ngóh gihn sàn lāangsāam.	c. My new sweater.
d. Ngóh gihn sàn lāangsāam hóu gwai.	d. My new sweater is very expensive.
e. Kéuih m̀hjìdou ngóh gihn sàn lāangsāam hóu gwai.	e. He does not know (that) my new sweater is very expensive.
+ 5. a. gauh	5. a. old
b. gauh bāt	b. old pen.
c. Jì gauh bāt.	c. The old pen (or pencil).
d. Jì gauh yùhnjíbāt.	d. The old ball-point pen.

2. Substitution Drill: Adjectives

Ex: T: Nī dī géi daaih. /leng/	T: These are (or this (mass) is) quite big. /pretty/
S: Nī dī géi leng.	S: These are very pretty. or This (mass) is very pretty.
1. Nī dī géi gwai. /pèhng/	1. Nī dī géi pèhng.
+ 2. /sai/ (small)	2. Nī dī géi sai. These are (or This (mass) is) quite small.
3. /daaih/	3. Nī dī géi daaih.
+ 4. /hóuyám/ (tasty, good to drink.)	4. Nī dī géi hóuyám. These are (or This is) very tasty. - very good to drink.
+ 5. /hóusihk/ (tasty, good to eat.)	5. Nī dī géi hóusihk These are (or This is) very tasty. - very good to eat.
+ 6. /ngāamjeuk (or āamjeuk) (well fitting, fits properly)	6. Nī dī géi ngāamjeuk. These fit well.

---

3. Expansion Drill: Fluency practice.

Ex: 1. T: Leng m̄hleng a?	Is it pretty?
+ S: Néih wah leng m̀hleng a? (say, think)	Do you think it's pretty?
2. T: Hóu m̀hhóusihk a?	Is it tasty?
S: Néih wah hóu m̀hhóusihk a?	Do you think it's tasty?
1. Ngāam m̀hngāamjeuk a?	1. Néih wah ngāam m̀hngāam jeuk a?
2. Gwai m̀hgwai a?	2. Néih wah gwai m̀hgwai a?
3. Pèhng m̀hpèhng a?	3. Néih wah pèhng m̀hpèhng a?
4. Sai m̀hsai a?	4. Néih wah sai m̀hsai a?
5. Daaih m̀hdaaih a?	5. Néih wah daaih m̀hdaaih a?
6. Hóu m̀hhóuyám a?	6. Néih wah hóu m̀hhóuyám a?
7. Hóu m̀hhóusihk a?	7. Néih wah hóu m̀hhóusihk a?
8. Leng m̀hleng a?	8. Néih wah leng m̀hleng a?

9. Gauh m̀hgauh a?	9. Néih wah gauh m̀hgauh a?
+ 10. Fut m̀hfut a? (wide)	10. Néih wah fut m̀hfut a?
+ 11. Jaak m̀hjaak a? (narrow)	11. Néih wah jaak m̀hjaak a?

---

4. Substitution Drill: Pre-modifiers of Adjectives

Ex: T: Gó tìuh fu géi pèhng. /hóu/	Those slacks are quite cheap. /very/
S: Gó tìuh fu hóu pèhng.	Those slacks are very cheap.
1. Gó tìuh fu géi pèhng. /hóu/	1. Gó tìuh fu hóu pèhng.
2. Gó tìuh fu hóu gwai. /m̀hhaih géi/	2. Gó tìuh fu m̀hhaih géi gwai. Those slacks aren't very expensive.
3. Gó tìuh fu m̀hhaih géi gwai. /géi/	3. Gó tìuh fu géi gwai.
4. Gó tìuh fu géi pèhng. /m̀h/	4. Gó tìuh fu m̀h pèhng.
+ 5. Gó tìuh fu m̀h pèhng. /m̀hhaih hóu/ (not very)	5. Gó tìuh fu m̀hhaih hóu pèhng.

---

5. Substitution Drill: Mixed: Nouns and Adjectives

Ex: 1. T: Gó tìuh yú géi pèhng. /hóu/	That fish is pretty cheap. /very/
S: Gó tìuh yú hóu pèhng.	That fish is very cheap.
2. T: Gó tìuh yú hóu pèhng. /go bīu/	That fish is very cheap. /watch/
S: Gó go bīu hóu pèhng.	That watch is very cheap.
1. Kéuih deui maht hóu leng. /m̀hhaih géi/	1. Kéuih deui maht m̀hhaih géi leng.
2. /tìuh dyún fu/	2. Kéuih tìuh dyún fu m̀hhaih géi leng.
3. /hóu gwai/	3. Kéuih tìuh dyún fu hóu gwai.
4. /nī dī yīnjái/	4. Nī dī yīnjái hóu gwai.
5. /hóu hóusihk/	5. Nī dī yīnjái hóu hóusihk.

---

6. Substitution Drill: Adjectives as predicates

Ex: T: Nī gihn lāangsāam hóu leng. /hóu jaak/	T: This sweater is pretty.
S: Nī gihn lāangsāam hóu jaak.	S: This sweater is narrow.
1. Nī gihn lāangsāam hóu jaak. hóu ngāamjeuk.	1. Nī gihn lāangsāam hóu ngāamjeuk.
2. Hóu gwai.	2. Nī gihn lāangsāam hóu gwai.
3. Gwaidī.	3. Nī gihn lāangsāam gwaidī.
4. Sai sèsíu.	4. Nī gihn lāangsāam sai sèsíu.
5. Daaihdī.	5. Nī gihn lāangsāam daaihdī.
6. Hóu pèhng.	6. Nī gihn lāangsāam hóu pèhng.
7. M̀hhaih géi gwai.	7. Nī gihn lāangsāam m̀hhaih géi gwai.
8. M̀hhaih hóu leng. Not very pretty.	8. Nī gihn lāangsāam m̀hhaih hóu leng.
9. Hóu jaak.	9. Nī gihn lāangsāam hóu jaak.

---

7. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

1. Kéuih m̀hjùngyi jeuk dyún fu. She doesn't like to wear shorts.	1. Kéuih m̀hjùngyi jeuk dyún fu.
+ 2. /chèuhngsāam/(cheongsaam)	2. Kéuih m̀hjùngyi jeuk chèuhngsāam. She doesn't like to wear cheongsaams.
3. /dyún maht/(socks)	3. Kéuih m̀hjùngyi jeuk dyún maht.
4. /chèuhng maht/(stockings)	4. Kéuih m̀hjùngyi jeuk chèuhng maht.
5. /lāangsāam/	5. Kéuih m̀hjùngyi jeuk lāangsāam.
6. /chèuhng fu/(long pants)	6. Kéuih m̀hjùngyi jeuk chèuhng fu.

Comment: A cheongsaam is the style of dress worn by Chinese women, with a high collar and the skirt slit at the sides.

8. Response Drill

Ex: T: Yáuh móuh cháang maaih a? /pìhnggwó/	T: Are there oranges for sale [to sell] (here)? or (Do you) have oranges for sale? /apples?
S: Deuimhjyuh, maaihsaai laak. Pìhnggwó hóu m̀hhóu a?	S: Sorry, they're all sold out. Would apples be OK?
1. Yáuh móuh Yīnggwok hàaih maaih a? /Méihgwok ge/ Do you have English shoes for sale? /American ones/ (ge as noun substitute)	1. Deuim̀hjyuh, maaihsaai laak. Méihgwok ge hóu m̀hhóu a? I'm sorry, they're all sold out. Would American ones be all right?
2. Yáuh móuh Méihgwok yīnjái maaih a? /Yīnggwok ge/	2. Deuim̀hjyuh, maaihsaai laak. Yīnggwok ge hóu m̀hhóu a?
3. Yáuh móuh jyùyuhk maaih a? /ngàuhyuhk/	3. Deuim̀hjyuh, maaihsaai laak. Ngàuhyuhk hóu m̀hhóu a?

+ (beside item 1)

Comment: ge can substitute for a noun in a follow sentence. The structure modifier + ge substitutes for modifier + Noun. See #1 and #2 above.

---

9. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Néih yáuh móuh sahp mān a? /nod/	1. T: Do you have ten dollars?
S: Yáuh. Néih yiu àh!	S: Yes I do. You want it, huh.
2. T: Néih yáuh móuh sahp mān a? /shake/	2. T: Do you have $10?
S: Móuh a. Deuim̀hjyuh laak.	S: No I don't, I'm sorry.
1. Néih yáuh móuh tòhng a? /shake/	1. Móuh a. Deuim̀hjyuh laak.
2. Néih yáuh móuh yīnjái a? /shake/	2. Móuh a. Deuim̀hjyuh laak.
3. Néih yáuh móuh jē a? /shake/	3. Móuh a. Deuim̀hjyuh laak.
4. Néih yáuh móuh go bun ngàhnchīn a? /nod/	4. Yáuh. Néih yiu àh.
5. Néih yáuh móuh yih sahp mān a? /shake/	5. Móuh a. Deuim̀hjyuh laak.

6. Néih yáuh móuh léuhng go bun ngàhnchìn a? /nod/	6. Yáuh. Néih yiu àh!
7. Néih yáuh móuh yāt dā bējáu a? /nod/	7. Yáuh. Néih yiu àh!

Comment: Móuh a. and Móuh laak. compared as follow sentences to a yáuh móuh? question:

Móuh a. indicates simple negative 'Don't have any.'

Móuh laak. indicates that you used to have some, but you don't have any any more.

---

10. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Nī go pìhnggwó hóu pèhng. /hóusihk/	T: This apple is cheap. /delicious/
S: Nī go pìhnggwó yauh pèhng yauh hóusihk.	S: This apple is both cheap and delicious.
1. Nī go cháang hóu gwai. /m̀hhóusihk/	1. Nī go cháang yauh gwai yauh m̀hhóusihk.
2. Nī go bīu hóu pèhng. /jéun/	2. Nī dī bīu yauh pèhng yáuh jéun.
3. Gó dī béng hóu sai. /gwai/	3. Gó dī béng yauh sai yauh gwai.
4. Kéuih gihn sēutsāam hóu chèuhng. /daaih/	4. Kéuih gihn sēutsāam yauh chèuhng yauh daaih.
5. Nī tìuh kwàhn hóu fut. /daaih/	5. Nī tìuh kwàhn yauh fut yauh daaih.
6. Nī júng bāt hóu pèhng. /leng/	6. Nī júng bāt yauh pèhng yauh leng.

---

11. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih gihn yúhlāu hóu leng.	T: Her raincoat is pretty.
S: Kéuih gihn yúhlāu leng m̀hleng a?	S: Is her raincoat pretty?
1. Kéuih gó tìuh fu hóu ngāamjeuk. Those trousers of his fit very well.	1. Kéuih gó tìuh fu ngāam m̀hngāamjeuk a?

2. Sahp mān m̀hgwai.	2. Sahp mān gwai m̀hgwai a?
3. Nī dī maht hóu pèhng.	3. Nī dī maht pèhng m̀hpèhng a?
4. Hāak sīk ge m̀hhaih géi leng.	4. Hāak sīk ge leng m̀hleng a?
5. Gó dī jyùyuhk gei hóusihk.	5. Gó dī jyùyuhk hóu m̀hhóu sihk a?
6. Gó tìuh saidī.	6. Gó tìuh sai m̀hsai a?
7. Nī gihn baahk sēutsāam daaihdī.	7. Nī gihn baahk sēutsāam daaih m̀hdaaih a?
8. Kéuih gihn sāam hóu leng.	8. Kéuih gihn sāam leng m̀hleng a?
9. Kéuih gó deui hàaih hóu jaak.	9. Kéuih gó deui hàaih jaak m̀hjaak a?

---

12. Transformation Drill: Transform the cue sentence into a wá? question sentence, following the pattern of the example.

Ex: T: Kéuih sing Wòhng.	His name is Wong.
S: Kéuih sing mēyéh wá?	You said his name was what?

1. Wòhng Sàang séung máaih tìuh fu.	1. Wòhng Sàang séung máaih mēyéh wá?
2. Léih Sīujé jùngyi ngóh.	2. Léih Sīujé jùngyi bīngo wá?
3. Kéuih máaih nī gihn. She wants this one.	3. Kéuih máaih bīn gihn wá? which one does she want?
4. Kéuih séung oi gó tìuh. He wants to have that one.	4. Kéuih séung oi bīn tìuh wá? Which one does he want?
5. Kéuih sihk béng.	5. Kéuih sihk mēyéh wá?
6. Kéuih jeuk gáu houh.	6. Kéuih jeuk géidō houh wá?
7. Yìhgā daahp yāt.	7. Yìhgā daahp géi wá?
8. Yìhgā sāam dím bun.	8. Yìhgā géidímjùng wá?
9. Kéuih máaih sei deui.	9. Kéuih máaih géidō deui wá?
10. Kéuih yáuh sahp mān.	10. Kéuih yáuh géidō chín wá?

13. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Nī gihn yúhlāu saidī.	This raincoat is a bit small.
S: Nī gihn yúhlāu saidī, yauh móuh daaihdī ge nē?	This raincoat is a bit small; do you have any larger ones?
1. Nī dī yú gwaidī.	1. Nī dī yú gwaidī, yáuh móuh pèhngdī ge nē?
2. Nī tìuh fu daaihdī.	2. Nī tìuh fu daaihdī, yáuh móuh saidī ge nē?
3. Nī gihn lāangsāam chèuhngdī.	3. Nī gihn lāangsāam chèuhngdī, yáuh móuh dyúndī ge nē?
+ 4. Nī gihn dáisāam saidī. (underwear)	4. Nī gihn dáisāam saidī, yáuh móuh daaihdī ge nē?
5. Nī tìuh fu jaak dī.	5. Nī tìuh fu jaak dī, yáuh móuh fut dī ge nē?

---

14. Response Drill

Ex: T: Néih oi bīn gihn sēutsāam nē? /baahk sīk/	Which shirt do you want? /white color/
S: Ngóh oi baahk sīk gó gihn.	I want that (or the) white one.
1. Néih oi bīn deui maht nē? /hāak sīk/	1. Ngóh oi hāak sīk gó deui.
2. Néih oi bīn bá jē nē? /daaihdī/	2. Ngóh oi daaihdī gó bá.
3. Néih oi bīn tìuh fu nē? /chèuhngdī/	3. Ngóh oi chèuhngdī gó tìuh.
4. Néih oi bīn bāau yīnjái nē? /saidī/	4. Ngóh oi saidī gó bāau.
5. Néih oi bīn jek gāi nē? /gwaidī/	5. Ngóh oi gwaidī gó jek.

---

15. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh ngoi gihn daaihdī ge.	I want a larger one.
S: Béi gihn daaihdī ge ngóh lā!	Give me a larger one.
1. Ngóh ngoi tìuh futdī ge.	1. Béi tìuh futdī ge ngóh lā!
2. Ngóh ngoi deui jaakdī ge.	2. Béi deui jaakdī ge ngóh lā!
3. Ngóh ngoi bá lengdī ge.	3. Béi bá lengdī ge ngóh lā!
4. Ngóh ngoi jī saidī ge.	4. Béi jī saidī ge ngóh lā!
5. Ngóh ngoi go pèhngdī ge.	5. Béi go pèhngdī ge ngóh lā!
6. Ngóh ngoi géi gihn saidī ge.	6. Béi géi gihn saidī ge ngóh lā!
7. Ngóh ngoi géi tìuh chèuhngdī ge.	7. Béi géi tìuh chèuhngdī ge ngóh lā!

---

16. Response Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh séung máaih léuhng tìuh tāai.	T: I want to buy two ties.
S: Máaih bīn léuhng tìuh nē?	S: Which two do you want?
1. Ngóh séung máaih tìuh tāai.	1. Máaih bīn tìuh nē?
2. Ngóh séung máaih dī yùhnbāt.	2. Máaih bīn dī nē?
3. Ngóh séung máaih dī bou.	3. Máaih bīn dī nē?
4. Ngóh séung oi sàam deui dyún maht. I want to get three pairs of socks.	4. Oi bīn sàam deui nē?

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Listen to tape with book closed.)

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. In a store, the customer says:	B. And the clerk responds:
1. These shoes are pretty--do you have (are there?) size eight for sale?	1. I'm sorry, size eight is all sold out.
2. I don't like the black ones--are there white ones (do you have white ones)?	2. Yes, what size do you want?
3. This sweater is a little too wide--I want a smaller one.	3. This one is narrower--try it.
4. I'll take a dozen of these socks.	4. Fine, what size do you wear?
5. This sweater is pretty, but it doesn't fit--do you have larger one?	5. Yes.
6. These shoes are a bit expensive, do you have any cheaper ones?	6. Yes, those are cheaper--do you like them?
7. How much do these shorts cost?	7. This one is $15.00 and that one is $15.50--which one do you want?
8. This one (sweater) is pretty and fits well, but it's a bit expensive--$30, OK?	8. OK.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 8

1. āamjeuk	adj:	fits well, well-fitting
2. àh	ss:	sen. suf. with force of 'I suppose'
3. baahk	adj:	white
4. bīn?	QW:	which?
5. chèuhng	adj:	long (in length)
6. chèuhngsāam	n:	cheongsaam
7. dā	m:	dozen
8. daaih	adj:	large
9. daaihdī	Ph:	a little larger
10. dáisāam	n:	underwear
11. -dī	adj.s:	attaches to adjectives to mean 'a little Adj; somewhat adj; Adj--er.

12. dò	bf:	much, many
13. dyún	adj:	short
14. fut	adj:	wide
15. gauh	adj:	old (not new)
16. -ge	bf:	one(s) = (noun substitute)
17. géi	adv:	rather, quite
18. gwai	adj:	expensive
19. hāak	adj:	black
20. hóu	adv:	very
21. hóu	adj:	good
22. Hóu m̀hhóu a?	Ph:	OK? Is (that) all right?
23. houh	m:	number
24. hóusihk	adj:	good to eat; tasty
25. hóuyám	adj:	good to drink; tasty
26. jaak	adj:	narrow
27. jeuk	v:	wear; put on (clothes)
28. júng	m:	type
29. jùngyi	auxV/v:	like, prefer; like to
30. lāangsāam	n:	sweater
31. leng	adj:	pretty; good-looking; good, nice (for foods)
32. Máaihsaai laak	Ph:	All sold out.
33. m̀hhaih géi	adv:	not very..., not....
34. m̀hhaih hóu	adv:	not very
35. móuh	v:	not have, there isn't (aren't)
36. ngāamjeuk	adj:	well fitting (for clothes), fits well (var. of āamjeuk)
37. pèhng	adj:	cheap
38. -saai	Vsuf:	completely
39. sai	adj:	small
40. sàn	adj:	new
41. sīk	(bf)n:	color
42. wah	v:	say, opine
43. yáuh	v:	have, there is (are)

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

gùngyàhn	servant
Gùngyàhn	
Wéi.	Hello.
wán	look for, search
Wán bīnwái a?	Who are you calling?
Jèung Sàang	
dihnwá	telephone
tèng	listen, hear
tèng dihnwá	talk [listen] on the telephone
giu	instruct, order, tell
giu kéuih tèng dihnwá	ask her to come to the phone
M̀hgòi néih giu Léih Táai tèng dihnwá.	Please ask Mrs. Lee to come to the phone.
Gùngyàhn	
Wán bīnwái wá? Ngóh tèng m̀hchìngchó.	Who did you say you were looking for? I didn't hear.
daaihsēngdī	louder voice
M̀hgòi daaihsēngdī lā.	Please speak louder.
Jèung Sàang	
Léih Taaitáai.	Mrs. Lee.
Gùngyàhn	
heui gāai	go out [go street]
jó	Verb suffix, indicating fulfillment of an expectation.
heuijó gāai	has gone out, went out
Kéuih heuijó gāai bo.	She's gone out.
Gwaising wán kéuih a?	Who is calling please?
Jèung Sàang	
Sing Jèung ge.	My name is Cheung.
fàanlàih	come back, return

géisìh (géisí)	when?
Kéuih géisìh fàanlaih a?	When will she be back?

Gùngyàhn

sahpyih dím	12 o'clock
-lèhng-	-and some odd. Added to a number phrase.
Waahkjé sahpyih dím lèhng lā.	Probably a little after 12.
sihk aan *or* sihk ngaan	eat the midday meal
yiu	going to, intend to
Kéuih yiu fàanlàih sihk ngaan gé.	She's going to come home for lunch.
sih	business, affair, matter
yáuh sih	have something to attend to; have errand, business
Yáuh mēyéh sih a?	What is it you want? (i.e., What matter are you calling about?)

Jèung Sàang

dá dihnwá	make a phone call, to telephone.
dá dihnwá béi ngóh	telephone me
giu kéuih dá dihnwá béi ngóh	tell her to phone me
m̀hgòi néih giu kéuih dá dihnwá béi Jèung Sàang lā.	please ask her to phone Mr. Cheung.
Gám, kéuih fàanlàih, m̀hgòi néih giu kéuih dá dihnwá béi Jèung Sàang lā.	Well, when she comes home, please ask her to call Mr. Cheung.

Gùngyàhn

néih ge dihnwá	your telephone
géidō houh?	what number?
néih ge dihnwá géidō houh a?	what is your telephone number?
Kéuih jī m̀hjī néih ge dihnwá géidō houh a?	Does she know your telephone number?

Jèung Sàang	
Kéuih m̀hjī ga.	She doesn't know.
Ngóh ge dihnwá haih chāt baat ...	My telephone number is 7 8 ...
Gùngyàhn	
ló	fetch, go get
dáng ngóh	let me; wait while I ...
dáng ngóh ló jī bāt sīn	let me get a pen first.
Dáng ngóh ló jī bāt sīn lā.	Let me get a pen first ...
(She returns with a pen:)	
Gùngyàhn	
Wéi, géidō houh wá?	Hello, what number did you say?
Jèung Sàang	
lìhng	zero
Chāt baat luhk lìhng ńgh gáu.	786059
Gùngyàhn	
Chāt baat luhk lìhng ńgh gáu.	786059
wah kéuih jī	tell her
ngóh wah kéuih jī	I'll tell her
Hóu, kéuih fàanlàih, ngóh wah kéuih jī lā.	All right--when she comes back, I'll tell her.
Jèung Sàang	
Hóu, m̀hgòi.	Fine; thanks.

B. **Recapitulation:**

Gùngyàhn	
Wéi. Wán bīnwái a?	Hello. Who are you calling?
Jèung Sàang	
M̀hgòi néih giu Leih Táai tèng dihnwá.	Please ask Mrs. Lee to come to the phone.
Gùngyàhn	
Wán bīnwái wá? Ngóh tèng m̀hchīngchó. M̀hgòi daaihsēngdī lā.	Who did you say you wanted? I couldn't hear. Please speak louder.

Jèung Sàang	
Léih Taaitáai.	Mrs. Lee.
Gùngyàhn	
Kéuih heuijó gāai bo. Gwaising wán kéuih a?	She's gone out. Who is calling please?
Jèung Sàang	
Sing Jèung ge. Kéuih géisìh fàanlàih a?	My name is Cheung. When will she be back?
Gùngyàhn	
Waahkjé sahpyih dím lèhng lā. Kéuih yiu fàanlàih sihk aan gé. Yáuh mēyéh sih a?	Probably a little after 12. She's going to come home for lunch. What is it you want?
Jèung Sàang	
Gám, kéuih fàanlàih, m̀hgòi néih giu kéuih dá dihnwá béi Jèung Sàang lā.	Well, (when) she comes home, please ask her to call Mr. Cheung.
Gùngyàhn	
Kéuih jí m̀hjí néih ge dihnwá géidō houh a?	Does she know your telephone number?
Jèung Sàang	
Kéuih m̀hji ga. Ngóh ge dihnwá haih chāt baat ...	She doesn't know. My telephone number is 7 8 ...
Gùngyàhn	
Dáng ngóh ló jí bāt sín lā.	Let me get a pen first.
(She returns with a pen:)	
Gùngyàhn	
Wéi, géidō houh wá?	Hello, what number did you say?
Jèung Sàang	
Chāt baat luhk lìhng ńgh gáu.	786059
Gùngyàhn	
Chāt baat luhk lìhng ńgh gáu.	786059
Hóu, kéuih fàanlàih, ngóh wah kéuih jí lā.	All right--when she comes back, I'll tell her.

Jēung Sàang

Hóu, m̀hgòi.	Fine; thanks.

+ + + + + + + + + + + + + +

Pronunciation Practice:

1. i as in si, chi, jī, dī, nī, síh, sih, hòuhjí

   i as syllable final is a high front unrounded vowel--[i].

   Listen and repeat:

   1. nī nī .
   2. si si .
   3. sih sih .
   4. síh sih .
   5. jí jí .

2. ik as in sīk, sihk

   ik is a two-part final composed of the high front unrounded vowel i plus the velar stop consonant k. Before k the tongue position for i approaches higher-mid front unrounded [e], tenser and lower than the American i in "sick,"--[I], closer to the French é in été, 'summer.' The tongue position of k following the front vowel is more forward than that of k following the back vowels u, o, and a -- [Ik˥].

   Listen and repeat:

   1. sīk sīk sīk . 識
   2. sihk sihk sihk . 食

3. i/ik contrasts

   Note that in addition to the difference in tongue position for i as a final and before k as described, there is also a length difference. i before k is shorter than i as final--[Iˇk] or [e ˇk], and [iː].

   Listen and repeat:

   1. sih sih , sihk sihk .
   2. sih sihk , sihk sih .

4. ing as in lìhng, sing, pìhnggwó, chīngchó

   ing is a two-part final composed of the high front unrounded vowel i and the velar nasal ng. The tongue position for i before ng is similar to that of i before k--lowered from high front position. The vowel is open before the nasal final.

Listen and repeat:

1. sing sing 姓 , lihng lihng 零 , chīng chīng 清 .
2. chīng sing lihng . 清姓零
3. lihng lihng 零 , pihng pihng 蘋 .

5. ing/eng contrasts

Listen and repeat:

1. lihng lihng 零 , pèhng pèhng 平 .
2. pihng pihng pihnggwó . 蘋 蘋 蘋果
3. pihng pèhng蘋平, pihng pèhng .
4. leng sing靚姓, sing leng姓靚.

6. ing/ik contrasts

Listen and repeat:

1. sīk sīk 識 , sing sing 姓 .
2. sihk sihk 食 , sing sing .

7. eu finals

A. eut, eun, and eui

Listen and repeat:

1. chēut, sēut 出 恤
2. deui, heui 對 去
3. jéun, jéun 準 準

B. eung and euk

Listen and repeat:

1. Jèung chèuhng 張 長
2. séung, léuhng 想 兩
3. jeuk, jeuk 著 著

8. s as in sing, sihk, si, sé, sei, séung, sàang, sahp, séui.

s is an initial consonant in Cantonese. Like the American s (as in 'see'), the Cantonese s is voiceless. In terms of air flow the American and Cantonese s sounds are the same--both are spirants, that is to say, the air is forced through a narrow passage under friction, producing a hissing sound. The tongue position for the Cantonese s differs from that of the American s. The friction points for the Cantonese sound are the blade of the tongue (that part just back from the tip) and the dental ridge. The flat surface of the blade of the tongue comes close to the dental ridge (the tip of the tongue is at rest, approximately near the base of the upper teeth) and air is forced through the passage thus provided. For the American s, the friction points are the tip of the tongue, not the blade, and the dental ridge. For the American s the grooved tip of the tongue approaches the dental ridge and air is forced through this passageway. For the Cantonese sound the lips are rounded before a rounded vowel and spread before an unrounded one.

1. Compare American and Cantonese s sounds:

American	Cantonese
1. see see see	si si si
2. sing sing sing	sing sing sing
3. set set set	sé sé sé
4. say say say	sei sei sei
5. son son son	sàn sàn sàn
6. soot soot soot	sēut sēut sēut

2. Listen and repeat:

1. si , si , si .
2. sih , sih , sih .
3. sé , sé , sé .
4. sing , sing , sing .
5. sēut , sēut , sēut .

9. s/j/ch compared.

There are some similarities of tongue positioning among these sounds. To make s the blade of the tongue approaches close to the dental ridge at the point where the tongue touches the ridge to make the j and ch sounds. The flat surface of the blade is the friction point for all three sounds.

Listen and repeat:

1. ji 至 , chi 次 , si 識 .
2. jing 正 , chìng 清 , sing 姓 .
3. jē 姐 , chē 車 , sé 寫 .
4. jái 仔 , chàih 齊 , sai 細 .

II. NOTES

1. __bo__ = sentence suffix expressing definiteness, conviction.

Ex: Kéuih chēutjó gāai laak.	She's gone out. (change from former condition)
Kéuih chēutjó gāai bo.	She's gone out, that's definite.

(See BC)

2. __-jó__ verb suffix indicating accomplishment of intended action.

This will be treated in detail in later lessons. At present learn it in the set phrases you will be apt to need to say and comprehend over the telephone:

Ex: Kéuih fàanjó gùng.	He's gone to work. [return-jó work]
Kéuih heuijó gāai.	She's gone out (from her own house). [go-jó street]
Kéuih fàanjó ngūkkéi.	He's gone home. [return-jó home]

(See BC and Drills __1.3, 4, 5, 6, 7__)

3. __ge__ translated as possessive.

__ge__ is suffixed to personal nouns and pronouns to show ownership, 'belonging to,' referred to in grammatical terms as the possessive. __ge__ operates as possessive in noun phrases both in head and modifier structures:

a. In head structures:

__ge__ combines with a preceding personal noun (or pronoun) to form the head of a noun phrase.

Ex: 1. Gó dī Gó bún syù haih __Léih Síujé ge__.	Those That book(s) is/are Miss Lee's.
2. Nī dī Nī bún haih __ngóh ge__.	These are This one is mine.
3. __Léih Síujé ge__ haih sàn ge.	Miss Lee's is a new one. are ones.
4. __Ngóh ge__ haih gauh ge.	Mine are old ones. is an one.

In a head structure __ge__ cannot be omitted from the __N-ge__ combination.

(See Drills __10, 11__)

b. In modification structures:

ge combines with personal nouns (and pronouns) to form a possessive modifier to a following noun head.

Ex: 1. Ngóh ge dihnwá haih ...houh.	My telephone number is....
2. Kéuihdeih ge néuih-pàhngyáuh fàanjó ngūkkéi laak.	Their girlfriends have gone home.
3. Ngóh m̀hjùngyi Léih Síujé ge sàn lāangsāam.	I don't like Miss Lee's new sweater.

(See BC)

4. ge/Measure overlap.

ge may replace the measure in a modification structure.

Ex: 1. Ngón go néui m̀hhái douh.	My daughter is not here.
2. Ngóh dī néui m̀hhái douh.	My daughters are not here.
3. Ngóh ge néui m̀hhái douh.	My daughter(s) is (are) not here.

5. Possessive modification without ge or Measure.

A few nouns accept modification by personal nouns and pronouns directly. Pàhngyáuh, (ng)ūkkéi, and gùngyàhn are the only nouns of this type we have studied so far.

Ex: Ngóh pàhngyáuh	My friend/friends
Léih Síujé (ng)ūkkéi	Miss Lee's home

But even for these nouns, ge must be used with bīngo ge, whose? to differentiate from bīn go, which (M)?

Ex: Bīn go pàhngyáuh?	Which friend?
Bīngo ge pàhngyáuh?	Whose friend?

Compare:

bīngo ge pàhngyáuh?	whose friend?
bīn go pàhngyáuh?	which friend?
Léih Táai gaau bīngo ge pàhngyáuh?	Whose friend does Mrs. Lee teach?
Léih Táai gaau bīn go pàhngyáuh?	Which friend does Mrs. Lee teach?

The nouns that accept direct modification by personal noun/

pronoun will be treated as exceptions and noted as such. As a rule of thumb, such nouns must be of more than one syllable.

6. yiu..V..;séung..V.. differentiated.

yiu..V.. = definitely intend to ..V..

séung..V.. = plan to ..V.. (but maybe it won't happen)

In English yiu can be translated as 'going to' if the sentence is one of future reference. Yiu contrasts with séung in such sentences in that with séung the implication is that it's iffy whether or not the action expressed by the following verb will actually take place, but with yiu the person has definitely made up his mind to do the action.

Ex: 1. Kéuih wah ngóh jì kéuih séung fàanlàih sihk aan.	She told me she was planning to come home for lunch.
2. Kéuih wah ngóh jì kéuih yiu fàanlàih sihk aan.	She told me she was coming home for lunch.

7. séung..V.. and jùngyi..V..differentiated.

séung = would like to ..V..; think I'll ..V..

jùngyi = like (as a general statement)

Ex: Ngóh séung yám dī chàh.	I'd like some tea.
Ngóh séung sihk go pìhnggwó.	I'd like an apple.
Ngóh hóu jùngyi yám chàh.	I like to drink tea. I like tea.

The differentiation of meaning between jùngyi and séung breaks down with a mēyéh question, where the jùngyi pattern is used as a polite way to ask what the addressee wishes. (The jùngyi mēyéh? question may also mean: What do you like?)

Ex: Néih séung yám dī mēyéh a?	What would you like to drink?
Néih jùngyi yám dī mēyéh a?	What would you like to drink?

(See Drill 12)

8. Omission of yāt in certain 'one o'clock' phrases.

The numeral yāt is ordinarily omitted in the spoken language before the time measure dím, 'o'clock,' when dím is followed by géi, lèhng or bun.

Ex: 1. dím géi jūng = sometime after one o'clock

2. dím lèhng (jūng) = a little after one o'clock

3. dím bun = half past one

(See Drill 7)

In all other phrases concerning one o'clock, yāt cannot be omitted.

9. Omission of go jih in a time phrase.

go jih is frequently omitted in the spoken language as the final element in a time phrase.

Ex: sàam dím yāt = 3:05

sàam dím sàam = 3:15

sàam dím sei = 3:20

Note in these abbreviated forms that the numeral following dím is in construction with an unspoken go jih, not with go gwāt. Thus sàam dím sàam is 3:15, not 3:45. X:30 is never stated as X dím luhk, but as X dím bún.

(See Drill 7)

Although infrequent, X dím yih rather than (-) X dím léuhng is the abbreviated form for X dím léuhng go jih.

III. DRILLS

1. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

1. M̀hgòi néih giu Léih Táai tèng dihnwá lā. Please call Mrs. Lee to the telephone.	1. M̀hgòi néih giu Léih Tāai tèng dihnwá lā.
2. Hòh Táai	2. M̀hgòi néih giu Hòh Táai tèng dihnwá lā.
3. Hóh Síujé	3. M̀hgòi néih giu Hòh Síujé tèng dihnwá lā.
4. Jèung Sàang	4. M̀hgòi néih giu Jèung Sàang tèng dihnwá lā.
5. Chàhn Táai	5. M̀hgòi néih giu Chàhn Táai tèng dihnwá lā.

---

2. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Jèung Sàang, tèng dihnwá.	T: Mr. Cheung, telephone!
S: M̀hgòi néih giu Jèung Sàang tèng dihnwá.	S: Please ask Mr. Cheung to come to the phone.
1. Chàhn Sàang, tèng dihnwá.	1. M̀hgòi néih giu Chàhn Sàang tèng dihnwá.
2. Léih Táai, tèng dihnwá.	2. M̀hgòi néih giu Léih Táai tèng dihnwá.
3. Hòh Síujé, tèng dihnwá.	3. M̀hgòi néih giu Hòh Síujé tèng dihnwá.
4. Wòhng Sáang, tèng dihnwá.	4. M̀hgòi néih giu Wòhng Sáang tèng dihnwá.
5. Làuh Táai, tèng dihnwá.	5. M̀hgòi néih giu Làuh Táai tèng dihnwá.

---

3. Expansion Drill: telephone talk; listen and repeat:

+ 1. cho	mistake, make a mistake
+ cho sin (line, thread)	wrong line
+ Daap cho sin	Wrong number! [connected the wrong line]

	2. dáng	wait
+	dáng (yāt)jahn (var: (yāt)ján)	wait awhile
	Ǹhgòi néih dáng yātjahn.	Just a moment, please. [Please wait awhile]
	Ǹhgòi néih dáng yātjahn lā.	Just a moment, please!
+	3. fàan	go [return] to place you habitually go to.
+	fàan gùng	go [return] to work
	fàanjó gùng	has gone [or went] to work
	Kéuih fàanjó gùng.	(S)He's gone to work.
	Kéuih fàanjó gùng bo.	I am sorry, but he's gone to work.
+	4. chēut gāai	go out [out (to) street]
	chēutjó gāai	has gone [or went] out
	Kéuih chēutjó gāai.	(S)He's gone out.
	Kéuih chēutjó gāai bo.	I'm sorry, but she's gone out.
+	5. fàan (ng)ūkkéi	go [return] home
	fàanjó (ng)ūkkéi	has gone [or went] home
	Kéuih fàanjó (ng)ūkkéi	(S)He's gone home.
	Kéuih fàanjó (ng)ūkkéi bo.	I'm sorry, but he's gone home.
+	6. fàan hohk	go [return] to school
	fàanjó hohk	gone to school, left for school
	Kéuih fàanjó hohk la.	He's gone to school.
+	7. heui gāai	go out [go (to) street]
	heuijó gāai	has gone (or went) out
	Kéuih heuijó gāai.	(S)He's gone out.
	Kéuih heuijó gāai bo.	I'm sorry, but he's gone out.
+	8. joi dálàih	call back (on the phone)
	dángjahn joi dálàih	call back later
	Dángjahn joi dálàih lā.	Call back later.

a. Repeat the final sentence of each of the above problem sentences as a Listen and Repeat drill, students repeating after the teacher.

b. Repeat, teacher giving the English of the final sentences, students called on individually to give Cantonese equivalents.

4. Conversation Drill: Carry on the suggested conversations following the pattern of the example.

Ex: 1. T: Néih wán mēyéh a? /jī yùhnbāt/	T: What are you looking for? /a pencil/
S: Ngóh wán jī yùhnbāt.	S: I'm looking for a pencil.
2. T: Néih wán bīngo a? /Chàhn Sàang/	T: Who are you looking for? /Mr. Chan/
S: Ngóh wán Chàhn Sàang.	S: I'm looking for Mr. Chan.

1. Néih wán mēyéh a? /bàau yīnjái/	1. Ngóh wán bàau yīnjái.
2. Néih wán mēyéh a? /bá jē/	2. Ngóh wán bá jē.
3. Néih wán bīngo a? /Wòhng Táai/	3. Ngóh wán Wòhng Táai.
4. Néih wán bīngo a? /Làuh Síujé/	4. Ngóh wán Làuh Síujé.
5. Néih wán mēyéh a? /jī yùhnjíbāt/	5. Ngóh wán jī yùhnjíbāt.
6. Néih wán bīngo a? /Jèung Sàang/	6. Ngóh wán Jèung Sàang.

a. Repeat as Conversation Drill, thus:

1. T: /yùhnbāt/
   S1: Néih wán mēyéh a?
   S2: Ngóh wán jī yùhnbāt.
2. T: /Chàhn Sàang/
   S1: Néih wán bīngo a?
   S2: Ngóh wán Chàhn Sàang.

---

5. Conversation Drill

Ex: A: M̀hgòi néih giu Wòhng Sàang tèng dihnwá lā.	A: Please ask Mr. Wong to come to the phone.
B: Kéuih chēutjó gāai bo. Gwaising wán kéuih a?	B: I'm sorry but he's gone out. Who is calling please?
A: Sing Jèung ge.	A: My name is Cheung.
1. A. ......Hòh Táai	1. A. M̀hgòi néih giu Hòh Táai tèng dihnwá lā.

B.	B. Kéuih chēutjó gāai bo. Gwaising wán kéuih a?
A. ...... Léih	A. Sing Léih ge.
2. A. ...... Jèung Sàang	2. A. M̀hgòi néih giu Jèung Sàang tèng dinhwá lā.
B.	B. Kéuih chēutjó gāai bo. Gwaising wán kéuih a?
A. ...... Máh	A. Sing Máh ge.
3. A. ...... Chàhn Síujé	3. A. M̀hgòi néih giu Chàhn Síujé tèng dinhwá lā.
B.	B. Kéuih chēutjó gāai bo. Gwaising wán kéuih a?
A. ...... Wòhng	A. Sing Wòhng ge.

a. Continue, using actual names of students.

Comment: Bīnwái?, who? (polite) may be substituted for Gwaising thus:

Gwaising wán kéuih a? Bīnwái wán kéuih a?	Who is calling her?

---

6. Translation & Conversation Drill

Ex: S1: M̀hgòi néih giu Léih Sàang tèng dihnwá lā.	S1: Please ask Mr. Lee to come to the phone.
S2: Kéuih heuijó gāai bo.	S2: I'm sorry, but he's gone out.

1. A.	1. A. M̀hgòi néih giu Léih Sàang tèng dihnwá lā.
T. Wrong number!	
B.	B. Daap cho sin.
2. A.	2. A. M̀hgòi néih giu Léih Sàang tèng dihnwá lā.
T. Just a moment, please.	
B.	B. M̀hgòi néih dáng yātján lā.
3. A.	3. A. M̀hgòi néih giu Léih Sàang tèng dihnwá lā.

T. He's gone to work.	
B.	B. Kéuih fàanjó gùng bo.
4. A.	4. A. M̀hgòi néih giu Léih Sàang tèng dihnwá lā.
T. He's gone out.	
B.	B. Kéuih chēutjó gāai bo. **or** Kéuih heuijó gāai bo.
5. A.	5. A. M̀hgòi néih giu Léih Sàang tèng dihnwá lā.
T. He's gone home.	
B.	B. Kéuih fàanjó ngūkkéi bo.
6. A.	6. A. M̀hgòi néih giu Léih Sàang tèng dihnwá lā.
T. He's gone to school.	
B.	B. Kéuih fàanjó hohk bo.

---

7. Expansion Drill:

Ex: T: chāt dím	T: 7 o'clock.
S: Yìhgā chāt dím + gamseuhnghá lā. (approximately)	S: It's about 7 o'clock.
T: Nī tìuh dyúnfu sahp mān.	T: These shorts are $10.
S: Nī tìuh dyúnfu sahp mān gamseuhnghá lā.	S: These shorts are about $10.

+ 1. dím bun. 1:30 (time expression)	1. Yìhga dím bun gamseuhnghá lā. It's about 1:30.
2. luhk dím sàam six-fifteen (short for luhk dim sàamgojih)	2. Yìhga luhk dím sàam gamseuhnghá lā.
3. Nī gihn chèuhngsāam yahńgh mān.	3. Nī gihn chèuhng sàam yahńgh mān gamseuhnghá lā.
4. Nī tìuh chèuhngfu sahpluhk mān.	4. Nī tìuh chèuhngfu sahpluhk mān gamseuhnghá lā.
5. Nī gihn lāangsāam sà'ahsei man.	5. Nī gihn lāangsāam sà'ahsei mān gamseuhnghá lā.

Comments: a. gamseuhnghá attaches to the end of a number expression, to make it an approximate number.

---

8. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Léih Táai wah nī gihn sahp mān.	T: Mrs. Lee says this one is ten dollars.
S: Léih Táai wah ngóh jī nī gihn sahp mān	S: Mrs. Lee told me this one is ten dollars.
1. Léih Sàang wah kéuih sahp dím fàanlàih.	1. Léih Sàang wah ngóh jī kéuih sahp dím fàanlàih.
2. Kéuih wah gó go yàhn haih sing Wòhng ge.	2. Kéuih wah ngóh jī gó go yàhn haih sing Wòhng ge.
3. Chàhn Táai wah kéuih hohk Gwóngdùngwá.	3. Chàhn Táai wah ngóh jī kéuih hohk Gwóngdùngwá.
4. Hòh Síujé wah kéuih go bīu hóu pèhng.	4. Hòh Síujé wah ngóh jī kéuih go bīu hóu pèhng.
5. Kéuih wah kéuih sahpyih dím yiu jáu laak.	5. Kéuih wah ngóh jī kéuih sahpyih dím yiu jáu laak.

Comment: wah (Person jī), 'tell someone', is interchangeable with góng (Person) tèng, góng (Person) jī, and wah (Person) tèng.

Learn to recognize the alternate ways when you hear them.

---

9. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih sihk faahn.	T: He is eating dinner.
S: Giu kéuih sihk faahn lā!	S: Tell him to come to dinner! (i.e. Dinner is on the table-come eat.)
1. Léih Táai, tèng dihnwá. Telephone for you, Mrs. Lee.	1. Giu Léih Táai tèng dihnwá lā! Tell Mrs. Lee to come to the phone.
2. Kéuih yìhgā fàanlàih. He's coming back now.	2. Giu kéuih yìhgā fàanlàih lā! Tell him to come back right now.
3. Kéuih dáng jahn joi dá làih.	3. Giu kéuih dáng jahn joi dá làih lā!

He'll call back in a little while.	Tell him to call back in a little while.
4. Kéuih léuhng dím làih wán ngóh. She's coming to see me [lit: look for me] at two o'clock. + (heui wán yàhn = go see someone)	4. Giu kéuih léuhng dím làih wán ngóh lā! Tell her to come see me at 2 o'clock.
5. Kéuih gaau ngóh góng Gwóngdùngwá.	5. Giu kéuih gaau ngóh góng Gwóngdùngwá lā!

---

10. Response Drill

Ex: T: Nī bún syù haih bīngo ga? /ngóh/	T: Whose book is this? /I/
+ S: Haih ngóh ge. (ge = possessive marker)	S: It's mine.
1. Gó bá jē haih bīngo ga? /ngóh gùngyàhn/	1. Haih ngóh gùngyàhn ge.
2. Nī dī bāt haih bīngo ga? /Léih Síujé/	2. Haih Léih Síujé ge.
3. Gó dī maht haih bīngo ga? /Wòhng Sàang/	3. Haih Wòhng Sàang ge.
4. Nī lèuhng jī bējáu haih bīngo ga? /ngóh pàhngyáuh/	4. Haih ngóh pàhngyáuh ge.
5. Gó sàam go pìhnggwó haih bīngo ga? /gó go Yìnggwokyàhn/	5. Haih gó go Yìnggwokyàhn ge.

---

11. Response Drill

Ex: T: Bīn jī yùhnjíbāt haih néih ga? /hāak sīk/	T: Which ball point pen is yours?
S: Hāaksīk gó jī.	S: That (or the) black one.
1. Bīn gihn sēutsāam haih néih pàhngyáuh ga? /chèuhngdī/	1. Chèuhngdī gó gihn.
2. Bīn bá jē haih néih ga? /daaihdī/	2. Daaihdī gó bá.
3. Bīn bún syù haih néih ga? /saidī/	3. Saidī gó bún.
4. Bīn gihn lāangsāam haih néih ga? /sa'ahsei houh/	4. Sa'ahsei houh gó gihn.

5. Bīn deui hàaih haih néih ga? /baat houh/	5. Baat houh gó deui.
6. Bīn tīuh fu haih néih ga? /dyún/	6. Dyún gó tīuh.

---

12. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

1. Ngóh hóu jùngyi yám bējáu. I like to drink beer. = I like beer.	1. Ngóh hóu jùngyi yám bējáu.
2. /kéuih/	2. Kéuih hóu jùngyi yám bējáu. He likes to drink beer.
3. /séung/	3. Kéuih séung yám bējáu. He'd like some beer.
4. /mēyéh/	4. Kéuih séung yám mēyéh a? What would he like to drink?
5. /jùngyi/	5. Kéuih jùngyi yám mēyéh a? What does he like ...? or (Polite) What does he want ...?
6. /gafē/	6. Kéuih jùngyi yám gafē. He likes coffee.
7. /m̀hjùngyi/	7. Kéuih m̀hjùngyi yám gafē. He does not like coffee.
8. /m̀hséung/	8. Kéuih m̀hséung yám gafē. He does not want any coffee.
9. /séung m̀hséung/	9. Kéuih séung m̀hséung yám gafē a? Would he like some coffee?
10. /hóu séung/	10. Kéuih hóu séung yám gafē. He'd like very much to have some coffee.
11. /hóu jùngyi/	11. Kéuih hóu jùngyi yám gafē. He likes coffee.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Listen to tape with book closed.)

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. On the telephone, you say:	B. And the other person responds:
1. Hello, who are you calling?	1. Please ask Mr. Chang to come to the phone.
2. Mr. Chang is out--may I take a message [lit: What is your business?]	2. My name is Wong. Please ask Mr. Chang to call me when he gets back.
3. What did you say your name was? Please speak louder.	3. My name is ____________. My phone number is ________.
4. Mrs. Ma has gone to work.	4. Will she be home for lunch?
5. May I speak to Mr. Lee?	5. He's gone home.
6. Please ask Miss Ho to come to the phone.	6. You have the wrong number.
7. My phone number is ________.	7. Just a minute, let me get a pen.
8. Hello, what number did you say?	8. ________.
9. When is Mr. Lau coming home?	9. I don't know. Do you have a message?
10. When he comes back I'll tell him.	10. Thank you.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 9

1. aan (var: ngaan)	bf:	noon, midday
2. chēut gāai	VO:	go out (from one's own house)
3. cho	n/v:	mistake, make a mistake
4. Daaihsèngdī	Ph:	Speak louder!
5. dáng yātján (also dáng yātjahn)	Ph:	wait awhile
6. Daap cho sin!	Ph:	Wrong number! [caught-mistake-line]
7. dá	v:	hit
8. dihnwá	VO:	make a telephone call
9. dáng	v:	wait
10. dáng Person Verb	v:	allow, let Person do something; wait while Person does something.
11. dihnwá	n:	telephone
12. dím bun	TW:	1:30 o'clock

13.	fàan	v:	return (to/from a place you habitually go to)
14.	fàan gùng	VO:	go [return] to work
15.	fàan hohk	VO:	to to school
16.	fàanlàih	v:	come back, return (here)
17.	fàan (ng)ūkkéi	VO:	go [return] home
18.	gamseuhnghá	Ph:	approximately
19.	ge	bf:	mark of the possessive. joins with preceding personal noun (or pronoun) to form possessive.
20.	géidō houh?	Ph:	what number?
21.	géisi? or géisỉh?	QW:	when?
22.	giu	v:	instruct, tell, order, call
23.	góng Person jỉ	Ph:	tell someone
24.	góng Person tèng	Ph:	tell someone
25.	gùngyàhn	n:	servant, laborer
26.	heui gāai	VO:	go out (from one's own house)
27.	-jó	Vsuf:	verb suf. indicating accomplishment of the action
28.	joi dálàih	Ph:	call back (on the phone)
29.	lèhng	nu:	'and a little bit' in a number phrase
30.	lỉhng	nu:	zero
31.	ló	v:	fetch, to go get (something)
32.	ngaan	bf:	noon, midday
33.	ngūkkéi or ūkkéi	PW:	home
34.	sih	v:	business, affair, matter
35.	sihk (ng)aan	VO:	eat lunch
36.	sỉn	adv/ss:	first
37.	sin	n:	line, thread
38.	tèng	v:	hear, listen to
39.	tèng dihnwá	VO:	talk [listen] on the telephone
40.	ūkkéi or ngūkkéi	PW:	home
41.	wah ngoh jỉ	Ph:	tell me
42.	wah yàhn tèng	Ph:	tell someone
43.	wah yàhn jỉ	Ph:	tell someone
44.	wán	v:	look for, search
45.	wán yàhn	VO:	look someone up

46. heui/làih wán yàhn	Ph:	come/go see someone
47. Wéi!	ex:	Hello! (Telephone greeting)
48. (Yáuh) mēyéh sih a?	Ph:	What is it you want? (i.e.,(on the phone) May I take a message?)
49. yáuh sih	VO:	have something to attend to; have errand, business
50. yiu	auxV:	going to, intend to

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

yàuhhaak	tourist

Yàuhhaak

bīndouh?	where?
hái	location verb, variously translated. 'is located.'
hái bīndouh a?	where is (it)?
jáudim	hotel
Màhnwàh Jáudim	Mandarin Hotel
Màhnwàh Jáudim hái bīndouh a?	Where is the Mandarin Hotel?
Chéng mahn ...?	May I ask ...? polite form used in asking questions, equivalent to English: Could you please tell me ...?
Chéng mahn, Màhnwàh Jáudim hái bīndouh a?	Could you please tell me where the Mandarin Hotel is?

Búndeihyàhn

búndeihyàhn	a native, person belonging to a place by ancestry and upbringing.
-bihn	side
gó bihn	over there, on that side
hái gó bihn	(it) is over there
Nē!	there! an exclamation accompanying pointing out something to somebody.
Nē!-hái gó bihn.	There!--over there.

Yàuhhaak

táidóu	see [look successfully = see]
táim̀hdóu	look, but don't see; don't see.

Deuihm̀yjyuh, ngóh táim̀hdóu. Gó bihn bīndouh a?	**Excuse me, I don't see it. Over there where?**
Búndeihyàhn	
deuimihn	**opposite, facing**
máhtàuh	**pier, wharf**
máhtàuh deuimihn	**opposite the pier**
Tīnsīng Máhtàuh	**Star Ferry Pier**
Hái Tīnsīng Máhtàuh deuimihn.	**It's opposite the Star Ferry Pier.**
Yàuhhaak	
gūngsī	**department store**
yáuh móuh gūngsī a?	**is there a department store?**
nījógán, (var: jógán)	**hereabouts, close by**
Nījógán yáuh móuh gūngsī a?	**Is there a department store near here?**
Búndeihyàhn	
Yáuh.	**Yes, there is.**
gàan	**measure for buildings**
Nē - gó bihn yáuh gàan.	**There's one over there.**
ngàhnhòhng	**bank**
gó gàan ngàhnhòhng	**that bank**
gaaklèih	**next to, adjacent**
Hái gó gàan ngàhnhòhng gaaklèih.	**Next to the bank.**
Yàuhhaak	
A! Táidóu laak! Ǹhgòi.	**Oh, I see it! Thanks.**

B. Recapitulation:

Yàuhhaak	
Chéng mahn, Màhnwàh Jáudim hái bīndouh a?	**Could you please tell me where the Mandarin Hotel is?**
Búndeihyàhn	
Nē!--hái gó bihn.	**There!--over there.**
Yàuhhaak	
Deuim̀hjyuh, ngóh táim̀hdóu. Gó bihn bīndouh a?	**Excuse me, I don't see it. Over there where?**

Búndeihyàhn	
Hái Tīnsīng Máhtàuh deuimihn.	It's opposite the Star Ferry Pier.
Yàuhhaak	
Nījógán yáuh móuh gūngsī a?	Is there a department store near here?
Búndeihyàhn	
Yáuh. Nē - gó bihn yáuh gàan. Hái gó gàan ngàhnhòhng gaaklèih.	Yes, there is. There's one over there. It's next to the bank.
Yàuhhaak	
A! Táidóu laak! M̀hgòi.	Oh, I see it! Thanks.

II. NOTES

A. Culture Notes: Restaurants:

In this lesson we introduce two of the many names for different types of restaurants: chāansāt, and chàhlàuh. Chāansāt is the generic term for a restaurant serving Western food. (Western in contrast to Chinese, that is.) chàhlàuh is the word for Cantonese teahouse, mentioned in the notes for Lesson 5. In the teahouse you select what you want to eat from trays of hot snacks that are circulated up and down the aisles of the restaurant by vendor-girls. You don't have to order, just point. Very convenient for beginning language students. Of other names for restaurants, chāantēng refers to restaurants serving Western food. (chāansāt is the generic term, chāantēng is more elegant, used more frequently in restaurant names. Ex: Méih Sām Chāantēng haih gàan chāansāt. 'Maxim's Restaurant is a restaurant serving Western food.)

Restaurants serving Chinese food are called jáugā, jáulàuh, faahndim, choigwún, and faahngwún.

B. Structure Notes

1. Placewords.

Placeword is a name given to expressions which can, as the final element in the sentence, follow the location verb hái. Placewords can occupy the positions of subject, object, and modifier.

There are several different kinds of placewords:

1. Geographic names:

Hèunggóng = Hong Kong

Kéuih yìhgā hái Hèunggóng. = He is in Hong Kong now.

Geographic names may also function as ordinary nouns, though this is not their most common use.

Ex: Bīngo wah yáuh leuhng go Hèunggóng a?	Who says there are two Hong Kongs?

2. Locatives

Locatives are pronouns of place, whose meanings derive from position in relation to another element:

Ex: nīdouh = 'here' [near-place]
in relationship to the speaker = near the speaker

gódouh = 'there' [distant-place]
in relationship to the speaker = distant from the speaker

deuimihn = opposite, facing [facing-face]
in relationship to speaker or other place element: facing the point of reference.

Kéuih hái nīdouh.	He is here.
Kéuih hái gódouh.	He is there.
Kéuih hái deuimihn.	He is facing (this way).

(See BC and Drill 6)

Locatives may be preceded by placeword nouns in modification-head structure.

Ex: Kéuih hái gaaklèih.	He is next door. [adjacent]
Kéuih hái ngàhnhòhng gaaklèih.	He is next door to the bank.

(See BC and Drill 7)

3. Some ordinary nouns double as placewords.

Ex: chàhlàuh = teahouse

a. as an ordinary noun:

Gó gàan chàhlàuh hou gwai.	That teahouse is very expensive.

b. as a placeword:

Wòhng Sàang hái chàhlàuh.	Mr. Wong is at the teahouse.

(See Drill 2)

4. Nouns and pronouns which are not placewords (cannot follow hái as final element in sentence) form placeword phrases by suffixing a locative or the boundword -douh 'place.'

Ex: Bún syù hái ngóh (nī)douh.	The book is (here) by me.
Bún syù hái Léih Sàang douh.	The book is at Mr. Lee's.
Bún syù hái tói (gó)douh.	The book is (there) on the table.

2. -douh, -syu = placeword formants

-douh 'place,' is a boundform, left-bound to the verb hái, or to one of the specifiers nī/gó/bīn, or to a noun or pronoun to form a place phrase.

Ex: 1. Wòhng Táai hái m̀hhái douh a?	Is Mrs. Wong at home? or here? or there? [i.e., at the place where the listener is]
Hái douh.	(She) is here.
M̀hhái douh.	She's not here.
2. Kéuih hái nīdouh.	She's at this place.
3. Kéuih hái ngóh douh.	She's at my place. (here by me.)

-syu, 'place,' is another boundword of place, which can be substituted for -douh everywhere. In Hong Kong -douh seems favored by most speakers, but -syu is occasionally heard also.

3. hái = location verb, requiring placeword object.

a. hái occurs: (1) as the only verb in the sentence, and
(2) as one verb in a series of verbal expressions.

(1) as the only verb in the sentence:

aff: Kéuih hái Méihgwok.	He's in America.
neg: Kéuih m̀hhái Méihgwok.	He isn't in America.
q: Kéuih hái m̀hhái Méihgwok a?	Is he in America?

(See BC and Drills 1, 2, 3, 4)

(2) as one verb in a series of verbal expressions:

aff:	Kéuih hái ūkkéi dáng ngóh.	She's waiting (or waited) for me at home.
neg:	Kéuih m̀hhái ūkkéi dáng ngóh.	She's not waiting (or didn't wait) for me at home.
q:	Kéuih haih m̀hhaih hái ūkkéi dáng néih a?	Is she waiting (or did she wait) for you at home?

(See Drill 9)

b. Translation of hái into English

When hái is the only verb in the sentence, it translates into English as the appropriate tense and person of the verb 'be,' with in/on/at/ added as necessary, according to the requirements of English grammar.

Ex: 1. Kéuih hái Méihgwok.	He is/was in	America.
2. Kéuih hái ūkkéi.	He is/was (at)	home.
3. Kéuih hái séjihlàuh.	He is/was at	the office.
4. Kéuih hái gódouh.	He is/was	there.

When hái is one verb in a series of verbs, it translates into English as a preposition-- 'at,' 'on,' or 'in.'

Ex: Kéuih hái Méihgwok dáng ngóh.	He waited/is waiting for me in America.

4. Placeword yáuh Noun sentence type.

The Placeword yáuh Noun sentence is a form of SVO sentence, with yáuh as 'there is,' 'there are,' 'there exists.'

Ex: aff:	1. Gaaklèih yáuh (gāan) ngàhnhòhng.	Next door there is a bank.
neg:	2. Gaaklèih móuh ngàhnhòhng.	There's no bank next door.
q:	3. Gaaklèih yáuh móuh ngàhnhòhng a?	Is there a bank next door?

(See BC and Drills 11, 12, 13)

5. Pivotal constructions: PW yáuh SVO

The PW yáuh N sentence can be expanded to PW yáuh SVO, with the S of the SVO standing as the object of the first verb (yauh) and the subject of the verb which follows it. Such a construction, in which the object of V_1 is the subject of V_2, we call a pivotal construction.

Ex: Gaaklèih yáuh yàhn sihk faahn.	Next door there are people (or there is someone) eating dinner.

(See Drill 14)

6. -dóu = verb suffix, indicating successful accomplishment of action of the verb.

a. Verbs which take the suffix -dóu include the following:

Verb		V-dóu	
tái	look	táidóu	see [look successfully]
wán	search, look for	wándóu	find [search successfully]
máaih	buy	máaihdóu	buy [i.e. after overcoming obstacles]

b. Illustrative examples:

A. Tái m̀htáidóu gó gàan ngàhnhòhng a?	A: Do you see that bank?
B. Táidóu.	B: Yes, I see it.
C. Táim̀hdóu.	C: No, I don't see it.
A. Nē, hái gó gàan jáudim gaaklèih.	A: There--next to the hotel.
C. A, yìhgā táidóu laak.	C: Oh, now I see it.

c. Verb forms of V-dóu:

aff: táidóu
neg: táim̀hdóu (or m̀htáidóu)
q: tái m̀htáidóu? (or tái m̀htáidākdóu?)

Of the negative forms V-m̀hdóu is more common, though m̀htáidóu also is said. Both question forms are common.

(See BC and Drill 13)

III. DRILLS

1. Expansion Drill: Students point nearby for nīdouh, away for gódouh.

Ex: T: /Ngóh/Néih/Kéuih/	T: I, you, he.
+ S: Ngóh hái nīdouh. + Néih hái gódouh. Kéuih hái bīndouh a?	S: I'm here; you're there; where's she?
1. /ngóhdeih/néihdeih/kéuihdeih/	1. Ngóhdeih hái nīdouh; néihdeih hái gódouh; kéuihdeih hái bīndouh a?
2. /Chàhn Sàang/Chàhn Táai/Chàhn Síujé/	2. Chàhn Sàang hái nīdouh; Chàhn Táai hái gódouh; Chàhn Síujé hái bīndouh a?
3. /tìuh fu/gihn sēutsāam/ deui hàaih/	3. Tìuh fu hái nīdouh; gihn sēutsāam hái gódouh; deui hàaih hái bīndouh a?
4. /jì yùhnbāt/jì yùhnjíbāt/ bún syù/	4. Jì yùhnbāt hái nīdouh; jì yùhnjíbāt hái gódouh; bún syù hái bīndouh a?
5. /dī pìhnggwó/dī cháang/dī jīu/	5. Dī pìhnggwó hái nīdouh; dī cháang hái gódouh; dī jīu hái bīndouh a?

---

2. Conversation Drill: Carry on the suggested conversations following the pattern of the example.

Ex: T: /jáudím/	hotel
S1: Kéuih hái bīndouh a?	Where is (or was) he? /hotel/
S2: Kéuih hái jáudim.	He is (or was) at the hotel.
1. /ngàhnhòhng/	1. S1: Kéuih hái bīndouh a? S2: Kéuih hái ngàhnhòhng.
+ 2. /chāansāt/ (Western restaurant)	2. S1: Kéuih hái bīndouh a? S2: Kéuih hái chāansāt.
+ 3. /chàhlàuh/ (teahouse)	3. S1: Kéuih hái bīndouh a? S2: Kéuih hái chàhlàuh.
4. /jáudim/	4. S1: Kéuih hái bīndouh a? S2· Kéuih hái jáudim.
+ 5. /séjihlàuh/ (office)	5. S1: Kéuih hái bīndouh a? S2: Kéuih hái séjihlàuh.

6. /gūngsī/	6. S1: Kéuih hái bīndouh a? S2: Kéuih hái gūngsī.
+ 7. /tòuhsyùgwún/ (library)	7. S1: Kéuih hái bīndouh a? S2: Kéuih hái tòuhsyùgwún.

---

3. Expansion Drill:

Ex: T: Chàhn Táai m̀hhái ngūkkéi. /chāansāt/	T: Mrs. Chan is not at home.
S: Chàhn Táai m̀hhái ngūkkéi, hái chāansāt.	S: Mrs. Chan is not at home, she's at the restaurant.
1. Kéuih m̀hhái tòuhsyùgwún. /gūngsī/ He's not at the library. /department store/	1. Kéuih m̀hhái tòuhsyùgwún, hái gūngsī. He's not at the library, he's at the department store.
2. Léih Sàang m̀hhái gūngsī. /jáudim/	2. Léih Sàang m̀hhái gūngsī, hái jáudim.
3. Léih Síujé m̀hhái chāansāt. /séjihlàuh/	3. Léih Síujé m̀hhái chāansāt, hái séjihlàuh.
4. Chàhn Sàang m̀hhái séjihlàuh. /chāansāt/	4. Chàhn Sàang m̀hhái séjihlàuh, hái chāansāt.
+ 5. Màhnwàh Jáudim m̀hhái Daaih Douh Jùng. /Tīnsīng Máhtàuh deuimihn/ The Mandarin Hotel is not on Queen's Road Central. /opposite the Star Ferry/	5. Màhnwàh Jáudim m̀hhái Daaih Douh Jùng, hái Tīnsīng Máhtàuh deuimihn.
+ 6. Go chē jaahm m̀hhái deuimihn. + /nī bihn/ The bus stop is not across the street. /this side/	6. Go chē jaahm m̀hhái deuimihn, hái nī bihn. The car stop is not across the street, it's on this side.
+ 7. Méihgwok Ngàhnhòhng m̀hhái nī bihn. /deuimihn/ The Bank of America is not on this side.	7. Méihgwok Ngàhnhòhng m̀hhái nī bihn, hái deuimihn. The Bank of America is not on this side, it's in front.
+ 8. Kéuih gàan ngūk m̀hhái Hèunggóng nī bihn. /Gáulùhng gō bihn/ His house is not here on the Hong Kong side. /there on the Kowloon side/	8. K´uih gàan ngūk m̀hhái Hèunggóng nī bihn, hái Gáulùhng gó bihn.

9. Hèunggóng chāansāt m̀hhái gó bihn. /nī bihn/	9. Hèunggóng chāansāt m̀hhái góbihn, hái nī bihn.
10. Tīnsīng Máhtàuh m̀hhái gaaklèih. /deuimihn/	10. Tīnsīng Máhtàuh m̀hhái gaaklèih, hái deuimihn.
+ 11. Méihgwok Jáudim m̀hhái (nī) jógán. (Jùngwàahn/ The American Hotel is not hereabouts. /Central District/	11. Méihgwok Jáudim m̀hhái (nī) jógán, hái Jùngwàahn.
12. Gó gàan gūngsī m̀hhái nī jógán. /Daaih Douh Jùng/	12. Gó gàan gūngsī m̀hhái nī jógán, hái Daaih Douh Jùng.

Comments: (1) Méihgwok Jáudim, 'American Hotel' is the Hong Kong Hilton, also called 'Hèiyīhdeuhn Jáudim'

(2) (ng)ūk 'house,' is not the one you live in. ngūkkéi, 'home,' 'house one lives in'

---

4. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Wòhng Sàang hái m̀hhái ūkkéi a?	T: Is Mr. Wong at home?
S: Wòhng Sàang haih m̀hhaih hái ūkkéi a?	S: Is Mr. Wong at home?

1. Kéuih hái m̀hhái séjihlàuh a?	1. Kéuih haih m̀hhaih hái séjihlàuh a?
2. Chàhn Sīujé bá jē hái m̀hhái nīdouh a? Is Miss Chan's umbrella here?	2. Chàhn Sīujé bá jē haih m̀hhaih hái nīdouh a?
3. Hòh Táai gihn lāangsāam hái m̀hhái néih ūkkéi a? Is Mrs. Ho's sweater at your house?	3. Hòh Táai gihn lāangsāam haih m̀hhaih hái néih ūkkéi a?

Comment: a location question of the choice type may be either hái m̀hhái Placeword? or haih m̀hhaih hái Placeword?

---

5. Substitution Drill: Repeat first sentence, then substitute as directed.

1. Méihgwok Jáudim hái bīndouh a? Where is the American Hotel?	1. Méihgwok Jáudim hái bīndouh a?
2. /Màhnwàh Jáudim/	2. Màhnwàh Jáudim hái bīndouh a?

3. /Méihgwok Ngàhnhòhng/	3. Méihgwok Ngàhnhòhng hái bīndouh a?
4. /Daaih Douh Jùng/	4. Daaih Douh Jùng hái bīndouh a?
5. /Néih ge séjihlàuh/	5. Néih ge séjihlàuh hái bīndouh a?
+ 6. /Dākfuh Douh Jùng/ Des Voeux Road Central	6. Dākfuh Douh Jùng hái bīndouh a?
7. /Tīnsīng Máhtàuh/	7. Tīnsīng Máhtàuh hái bīndouh a?

6. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Làuh Sīujé hái nīdouh.	T: Miss Lau is (or was) here.
S: Wòhng Sīujé wah ngóh jī Làuh Sīujé hái nīdouh.	S: Miss Wong told me Miss Lau was here.

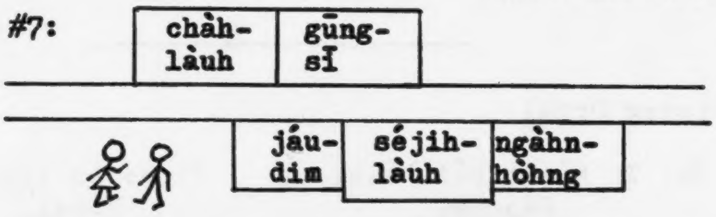
1. Làuh Sīujé hái gódouh.	1. Wòhng Sīujé wah ngóh jī Làuh Sīujé hái gódouh.
2. Làuh Sīujé hái nī bihn.	2. Wòhng Sīujé wah ngóh jī Làuh Sīujé hái nī bihn.
3. Làuh Sīujé hái gó bihn.	3. Wòhng Sīujé wah ngóh jī Làuh Sīujé hái gó bihn.
4. Làuh Sīujé hái deuimihn.	4. Wòhng Sīujé wah ngóh jī Làuh Sīujé hái deuimihn.
5. Làuh Sīujé hái gaaklèih.	5. Wòhng Sīujé wah ngóh jī Làuh Sīujé hái gaaklèih.
6. Làuh Sīujé hái nījógán.	6. Wòhng Sīujé wah ngóh jī. Làuh Sīujé hái nī jogán.
+ 7. Làuh Sīujé hái mùhnháu. Miss Làuh is at the door. (doorway)	7. Wòhng Sīujé wah ngóh jī Làuh Sīujé hái mùhnháu.

7. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Gàan ngàhnhòhng hái deuimihn. /chē jaahm/	T: The bank is on the opposite side. /bus stop/
S: Gàan ngàhnhòhng hái chē jaahm deuimihn.	S: The bank is opposite the bus stop.

1. Gàan gūngsī hái deuimihn. /jáudim/	1. Gàan gūngsī hái jáudim deuimihn.
2. Gàan jáudim hái deuimihn. /gūngsī/	2. Gàan jáudim hái gūngsī deuimihn.
3. Gàan ngàhnhòhng hái nī jógán. /chē jaahm/ The bank is near here.	3. Gàan ngàhnhòhng hái chē jaahm nī jógán. The bank is near the bus stop, here.
4. Go chē jaahm hái nījógán. /ngàhnhòhng/ The bus stop is nearby. /bank/	4. Go chē jaahm hái ngàhnhòhng nī jógán. The bus stop is near the bank.
5. Gàan gūngsī hái gaaklèih. /chāansāt/ The department store is next door. /restaurant/	5. Gàan gūngsī hái chāansāt gaaklèih. The department store is next the restaurant.
6. Gàan chāansāt hái gaaklèih. /tòuhsyùgwún/	6. Gàan chāansāt hái tòuhsyùgwún gaaklèih.
7. Ngóh ge séjihlàuh hái nībihn. /jáudim/ My office is on this side of the street. /hotel/	7. Ngóh ge séjihlàuh hái jáudim nī bihn. My office is this side of the street, on the side where the hotel is.

Comment on #7:



Ngóh ge séjihlàuh hái jáudim nī bihn. Ngóh, séjihlàuh, and jáudim are all on the same side of the street. Above, in refering to the dept. store, speaker would say: Gūngsī hái chàhlàuh gó bihn. The dept. store is on that side (away from me) where the teahouse is.

---

8. Response Drill

Ex: T: Méihgwok Jáudim hái bindouh a? /Daaih Douh Jùng/	T: Where's the Hilton Hotel?
S: Méihgwok Jáudim hái Daaih Douh Jùng.	S: The Hilton Hotel is on Queen's Road Central.

1. Néih ge séjihlàuh hái bīndouh a? /Dākfuh Douh Jùng/	1. Ngóh ge séjihlàuh hái Dākfuh Douh Jùng.
2. Méihgwok Jáudim hái bīndouh a? /Daaih Douh Jùng/	2. Méihgwok Jáudim hái Daaih Douh Jùng.
3. Daaih Douh Jùng hái bīndouh a? /Hèunggóng nī bihn/ on the Hongkong side	3. Daaih Douh Jùng hái Hèunggóng nī bihn.
+ 4. Màhnwàh Jáudim hái bīnbihn a? /deuimihn/ (which side?)	4. Màhnwàh Jáudim hái deuimihn.
5. Tīnsīng Máhtàuh hái bīndouh a? /gó bihn/	5. Tīnsīng Máhtàuh hái gó bihn.
6. Go chē jaahm hái bīndouh a? /ngàhnhòhng deuimihn/	6. Go chē jaahm hái ngàhnhòhng deuimihn.
7. Tòuhsyùgwún hái bīndouh a? /gaaklèih/	7. Tòuhsyùgwún hái gaaklèih.

Comment: People in Hongkong identify places as being 'on the Hongkong side' or 'on the Kowloon side'. Kowloon and Hongkong are on opposite sides of the Hongkong Harbour. Hèunggóng nī bihn 'on the Hongkong side' [Hongkong this side] is said from the standpoint of a person who is on the Hongkong side. To him the Kowloon side would be Gáulùhng gó bihn 'on the Kowloon side' [Kowloon that side].

---

9. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih hái Méihgwok Jáudim. Kéuih dáng ngóh.	T: He is (or was) at the American Hotel. He is (or was) waiting (or He waited) for me.
S: Kéuih hái Méihgwok Jáudim dáng ngóh.	S: He is (or was) waiting, (or He waited) for me at the American Hotel.
1. Kéuih hái mùhnháu. Kéuih dáng pàhngyáuh.	1. Kéuih hái mùhnháu dáng pàhngyáuh.
2. Kéuih hái Tīnsīng Máhtàuh. Kéuih dáng pàhngyáuh.	2. Kéuih hái Tīnsīng Máhtàuh dáng pàhngyáuh.
3. Jèung Sàang hái Yahtbún. Jèung Sàang gaau Yahtmàhn.	3. Jèung Sàang hái Yahtbún gaau Yahtmàhn.
4. Ngóh hái Hèunggóng. Ngóh hohk Gwóngdùngwá.	4. Ngóh hái Hèunggóng hohk Gwóngdùngwá.
+ 5. Kéuih hái Méihgwok Ngàhnhòhng. Kéuih ló chín. He withdraws money.	5. Kéuih hái Méihgwok Ngàhnhòhng ló chín. He's at the Bank of America withdrawing money.

6. Chèuhn Táai hái chē jaahm. + Chèuhn Táai dáng chē. Mrs. Cheun is waiting for the bus. [vehicle]	6. Chèuhn Táai hái chē jaahm dáng chē.
7. Wòhng Sīujé hái Jùnggwok Chàhlàuh. Wòhng Sīujé sihk faahn.	7. Wòhng Sīujé hái Jùnggwok Chàhlàuh sihk faahn.

---

10. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Néih bá jē hái gódouh. /Làuh Táai/	T: Your umbrella is over there. /Mrs. Lau/
S: Néih bá jē hái Làuh Táai gódouh.	S: Your umbrella is there by Mrs. Lau.
1. Jī yùhnbāt hái nīdouh. /ngóh/	1. Jī yùhnbāt hái ngóh nīdouh.
2. Gihn yúhlāu hái gódouh. /Wòhng Táai/	2. Gihn yúhlāu hái Wòhng Táai gódouh.
3. Ngóh bāau yīnjái hái nīdouh. /Léih Sàang/	3. Ngóh bāau yīnjái hái Léih Sàang nīdouh.
4. Tīuh kwàhn hái nīdouh. /ngóh/	4. Tīuh kwàhn hái ngóh nīdouh.
5. Gihn sāam hái gódouh. /kéuih/	5. Gihn sāam hái kéuih gódouh.

Comment: Nouns and pronouns which do not in themselves have any reference to place, can function in placeword expressions when joined to a following locative.

---

11. Conversation Exercise

Ex: A: Nīdouh jógàn yáuh móuh chāansāt a?	A: Is there a western restaurant around here?
B: Yáuh. Deuimihn yáuh gàan.	B: Yes. There's one across the street.
1. A. ....?	1. A. Nīdouh jógán yáuh móuh chāansāt a?
B. Yáuh. Gó bihn	B. Yáuh. Gó bihn yáuh gàan.
2. A. ....?	2. A. Nīdouh jógán yáuh móuh chāansāt a?
B. Yáuh. Gaaklèih	B. Yáuh. Gaaklèih yáuh gàan.
3. A. ....?	3. A. Nīdouh jógán yáuh móuh chāansāt a?

B. Yáuh. Dāk Fuh Douh Jùng ...	B. Yáuh. Dāk Fuh Douh Jùng yáuh gàan.
4. A. ....?	4. A. Nīdouh jógán yáuh móuh chāansāt a?
B. Yáuh. Daaih Douh Jùng ...	B. Yáuh. Daaih Douh Jùng yáuh gàan.
5. A. ....?	5. A. Nīdouh jógán yáuh móuh chāansāt a?
B. Yáuh. Ngàhnhòhng gaaklèih.	B. Yáuh. Ngàhnhòhng gaaklèih yáuh gàan.
6. A. ....?	6. A. Nīdouh jógán yáuh móuh chāansāt a?
B. Yáuh. Gó gàan gūngsī deuimihn ...	B. Yáuh. Gó gàan gūngsī deuimihn yáuh gàan.

---

12. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence then substitute as directed.

1. Chéng mahn, nīdouh jógán yáuh móuh gūngsī a? Could you please tell me, is there a department store around here?	1. Nīdouh jógán yáuh móuh gūngsī a?
2. /chē jaahm/	2. Chéng mahn, nī jógán yáuh móuh chē jaahm a?
3. /jáudim/	3. Chéng mahn, nīdouh jógán yáuh móuh jáudim a?
4. /chāansāt/	4. Chéng mahn, nī jógán yáuh móuh chāansāt a?
5. /ngàhnhòhng/	5. Chéng mahn, nīdouh jógán yáuh móuh ngàhnhòhng a?

---

13. Conversation Drill

Ex: T: /deuimihn/	T: opposite
+ S1: Néih tái m̀htáidóu deuimihn yáuh mēyéh a?	S1: Can you see what there is opposite us?
T: /jáudim/	T: hotel
S2: Deuimihn yáuh gàan jáudim.	S2: Opposite us there's a hotel. or There's a hotel across the street.

1./gaaklèih/	1. A. Néih tái m̀htáidóu gaaklèih yáuh mēyéh a?
/gūngsī/	B. Gaaklèih yáuh gàan gūngsī.
2./gódouh/	2. A. Néih tái m̀htáidóu gódouh yáuh mēyéh a?
/chāansāt/	B. Gódouh yáuh gàan chāansāt.
3./deuimihn/	3. A. Néih tái m̀htáidóu deuimihn yáuh mēyéh a?
/chē jaahm/	B. Deuimihn yáuh go chē jaahm.
4./gaaklèih/	4. A. Néih tái m̀htáidóu gaaklèih yáuh mēyéh a?
/ngàhnhòhng/	B. Gaaklèih yáuh gàan ngàhnhòhng.
6./nī bihn/	5. A. Néih tái m̀htáidóu nībihn yáuh mēyéh a?
/jáudim/	B. Nī bihn yáuh gàan jáudim.

---

14. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Gó go yàhn dá dihnwá. /gódouh/	T: That man is making a phone call/there/
S: Gódouh yáuh go yàhn dá dihnwá.	S: Over there there's a man making a phone call.
1. Gó go yàhn wán néih. /mùhnháu gódouh/	1. Mùhnháu gódouh yáuh go yàhn wán néih. There's a man at the door looking for you.
2. Gó wái sīnsàang dáng chē. /chē jaahm gódouh/	2. Chē jaahm gódouh yáuh wái sīnsàang dáng chē.
3. Gó go Yīnggwokyàhn sihk chāan. /chāansāt gódouh/	3. Chāansāt gódouh yáuh go Yīnggwokyàhn sihk chāan.
+ 4. Gó go Méihgwokyàhn tái syù. /séjihlàuh gódouh/ ([read-book], read) That American is reading.	4. Séjihlàuh gódouh yáuh go Méihgwokyàhn tái syù.
5. Gó go yàhn maaih cháang. /mùhnháu/	5. Múhnháu yáuh go yàhn maaih cháang.
6. Gó go yàhn dá dihnwá. /gó bihn/	6. Gó bihn yáuh go yàhn dá dihnwá.

Comment: Note that in the left hand column sentences above, of the structure: Noun Phrase Verb Phrase, the nouns are

gó go yàhn = that person.

In the right hand column sentences, of the structure: Placeword yáuh Noun Phrase Verb Phrase, the nouns are un-specific:

go yàhn = 'a person'.

This is characteristic of the Placeword yáuh ...... structure.

Compare:	(1) Gó go yàhn hái gó bihn dá dihnwá.	That man is making a phone call over there.
	(2) Gó bihn yáuh go yàhn dá dihnwá.	Over there, there's someone making a phone call.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

1) yātján = dángyātjahn = 'in a little while'

2) wán àhdóu = can't find it, search but not successful

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You ask a pedestrian:	B. And he responds:
1. Could you please tell me where the Star Ferry is?	1. There! (pointing) It's over there.
2. Could you please tell me where the Hilton Hotel is?	2. There! It's across the street.
3. Is there a car stop around here?	3. Yes, there's one opposite the library.
4. Where is the Bank of America?	4. The Bank of America is in Central District.

C. You ask a friend:	D. And he replies:
1. Where is your umbrella?	1. It's here.
2. Where is your office?	2. It's on Des Voeux Road Central.
3. Can you make out (see successfully) what that is across the street?	3. Across the street there's a tea-house.

4. Who is over there waiting for you?	4. It's my wife.
5. Where is Mr. Wong's office?	5. It's next to my office.
6. Is Mr. Wong in his office now?	6. No, he's at home.
7. There's a man over there making a phone call-- do you know him?	7. Yes, he's my student.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 10

1. bīnbihn?	PW:	which side?
2. -bihn	bf:	side
3. bīndouh?	QW:	where?
4. búndeihyàhn	n:	a native of the place under discussion
5. chāantēng	n/PW:	western style restaurant
6. chàhlàuh	n/PW:	Cantonese style tea-house
7. chē	n:	vehicle: car, bus, or tram
8. chē jaahm	n/PW:	car stop (bus or tram stop)
9. chéng mahn	Ph:	"May I ask...?"
10. Daaih Douh Jūng	PW:	Queen's Road Central
11. Dākfuh Douh Jūng	PW:	Des Voeux Road Central
12. deuimihn	PW:	opposite side
13. -dóu	vs:	verb suffix indicating successful accomplishment of the action of the verb.
14. gāan	m:	M. for buildings
15. gaaklèih	PW:	next door
16. gódouh	PW:	there
17. gó bihn	PW:	over there, on that side
18. gūngsī	n/PW:	department store; office (of a commercial company)
19. hái	v:	location verb, translated as: is in/at/on
20. Hēunggóng	PW:	Hong Kong
21. jaahm	n:	station, stop (as train station, bus stop)
22. jáudim	n/PW:	hotel
23. jógán	PW:	nearby, hereabouts
24. Jūngwàahn	PW:	Central District

25. ló chín	VO:	withdraw money (from bank)
26. máhtàuh	n/PW:	pier
27. Màhnwàh Jáudim	PW:	Mandarin Hotel
28. mahn	v:	ask
29. Méihgwok Jáudim	PW:	'American Hotel,' (in HK, the Hong Kong Hilton)
30. Méihgwok Ngàhnhòhng	PW:	Bank of America
31. mùhnháu	n/PW:	doorway
32. Nē!	ex:	'There!' an exclamation used when pointing out something to someone
33. nībihn	PW:	this side
34. nīdouh	PW:	here
35. nījógán	PW:	closeby, hereabouts
36. ngàhnhòhng	n/PW:	bank
37. ngūk (or ūk)	n/PW:	house
38. séjihlàuh	n/PW:	office
39. táiǹhdóu	VP:	can't see
40. táidóu	VP:	see [look successfully]
41. tái ǹhtáidóu?	VP:	can [you] see?
42. tái syù	VO:	read (a book)
43. Tīnsīng Máhtàuh	PW:	Star Ferry Pier
44. tòuhsyūgwún	n/PW:	library
45. ūk (var: ngūk)	n/PW:	house
46. yàuhhaak	n:	tourist

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(A brother and sister are sharing a taxi to work)

saimúi	younger sister
Saimúi	
ǹhgeidāk	forgot, forget
daai	carry, take or bring along
ǹhgeidāk daai chín	forgot to bring money
tīm	sentence suffix, indicating taken by surprise
Ngóh ǹhgeidāk daai chín tīm!	I forgot to bring my money!
Aiya! Ngóh ǹhgeidāk daai chín tīm!	Aiya! I forgot to bring my money!
agō	elder brother
Agō	
Ǹhgányiu--ngóh yáuh.	Never mind--I have (some).

(He hands $3.00 to the driver)

jáaufàan	give back change (give change--return)
jáaufàan sàam hòuh	give back 30¢ change
dāk laak	that will be all right
Jáaufàan sàam hòuh dāk laak.	Give me 30¢ change, that'll be OK.
sīgēi	driver, cab driver, chauffeur
Sīgēi	
móuhdāk	not have available
Ngóh móuhdāk jáau.	I don't have any change. [don't have (money) available to give change]
sáan ngán	small coins
Néih yáuh móuh sáan ngán a?	Do you have any small coins?
Agō	
Yáuh, yáuh.	Yes, I have.

m̀hginjó	lose/lost (something), 'nowhere to be seen'
Yí!	exclamation of distress
Yí! M̀hginjó gé?	Eh? Disappeared?
A--hái douh.	Oh--they're here.
nàh!	here!
Nàh, nīdouh chāt hòuhjí.	Here, here's 70¢.

(The two get out of the taxi)

Agō

yuhng	use
Néih yiu chín yuhng.	You'll need some money to use.
je	lend
-jyuh	temporarily, for a short time
jejyuh béi néih	lend to you
Ngóh nīdouh jejyuh béi néih sín lā.	I'll lend you some (of what I have) here.
Yiu géidō a?	How much do you need?

Saimúi

Sahp mān gau laak.	Ten dollars will be enough.

Agō

baak	hundred
baak mān	hundred dollars
jí	paper. here, paper money, i.e. $ bill
baak mān jí	hundred dollar bill
jèung	measure for bank notes
jèung yāt baak mān jí	a one-hundred-dollar bill
dāk	have only, only have
ja	jē + a = ja
Ngóh dāk jèung yāt baak mān jí ja.	I only have a hundred dollar bill.
cheunghòi	break (a large note for ones of smaller denomination)

Dáng ngóh cheunghòi béi néih lā.	I'll get it changed and give you (the money).
(They stop in at a bank to change the $100 bill. The elder brother addresses a teller:)	
Agō	
cheunghoi jèung yāt baak mān jí tùhng ngóh	split a hundred dollar bill for me, on my behalf
M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh cheunghòi jèung yāt baak mān jí lā.	Would you please change a hundred dollar bill for me.
Síujé	
dāk	OK, sure
Dāk. Sahp jèung sahp mān jí hóu m̀hhóu a?	Sure. Are 10 ten's OK?
Agō	
Hóu aak.	Fine.

B. Recapitulation:

Saimúi	
Aiya! Ngóh m̀hgeidāk daai chín tím!	Aiya! I forgot to bring my money!
M̀hgányiu--ngóh yáuh.	Never mind--I have some.
(He hands $3.00 to the driver)	
Jáaufáan sàam hòuh dāk laak.	Give me 30¢ change, that'll be OK.
Sīgēi	
Ngóh móuhdāk jáau. Néih yáuh móuh sáan ngán a?	I don't have any change. Do you have any small coins?
Agō	
Yáuh, yáuh. Yí! M̀hginjó gé? A--hái douh. Nàh, nīdouh chāt hòuhjí.	Yes, I have. Eh? Disappeared? Oh, they're here. Here, here's 70¢.
(They get out of the taxi)	
Agō	
Néih yiu chín yuhng. Ngóh nīdouh jejyuh béi néih sín lā. Tim	You'll need some money to use. I'll lend you some. How much

gēidō a?	do you need?
Saimúi	
Sahp mān gau laak.	Ten dollars will be enough.
Agō	
Ngóh dāk jèung yāt baak mān jí ja. Dáng ngóh cheunghòi béi néih lā.	I only have a hundred dollar bill. I'll get it changed and give you (the money).

(They stop in at a bank to change the $100 bill. The elder brother addresses a teller:)

Agō	
Ǹhgòi néih tùhng ngóh cheunghòi jēung yāt baak mān jí lā.	Would you please change a hundred dollar bill for me.
Síujé	
Dāk. Sahp jèung sahp mān jí hóu m̀hhóu a?	Sure. Are ten 10's OK?
Agō	
Hóu aak.	Fine.

II. NOTES

1. sìn, 'first,'

sìn, 'first,' attaches to the end of a clause sentence, or a minor sentence consisting of a timeword, with the implication that something else is to follow.

Ex: 1. Dáng ngóh ló jí bāt sìn lā.	1. Let me get a pencil first--(and then I can write down the number.)
2. Ngóh nīdouh jejyuh béi néih sìn lā.	2. I'll lend you (some money) first--(and then you can get through the day.)
3. A: Dāk meih a?	3. A: Ready yet?
B: Meih--dángjahn sìn lā.	B: Not yet--wait a minute first--(then I'll be ready.)

(See BC)

Students of Mandarin will recall that the Mandarin equivalent of sìn, syān, occupies a different sentence position. In Mandarin syān comes before the verb, rather than coming at the end of the clause.

Ex: Děng wǒ syān ná (yì) jř bǐ lái. Let me first get a pen.

2. Dāk = OK, will do, all right

a. Forms:

aff: dāk	That's OK, that'll do, all right, can do.
neg: m̀hdāk	That's not OK, that won't do, can't.
q: dāk m̀hdāk a?	Will that be all right?
Ex: 1. Ngóh séung yìhgā sihk faahn, dāk m̀hdāk a?	1. I'd like to eat now, OK?
2. M̀hdāk. Yiu dáng yātjahn sīn.	2. Not OK. We have to wait awhile.
3. Dāk. Sihk faahn lā.	3. Sure. Eat!

(See BC)

b. Dāk joins with laak in the affirmative and meih in the negative and question forms to form fixed phrases:

aff: dāk laak.	It's OK now (change from before) It's ready.
neg: meih dāk	Not OK yet, it's not ready, it's not right yet.
q: dāk meih a?	Is it ready yet? Is it OK yet?
Ex: 1. Ngóh gihn chèuhngsāam dāk meih a?	Is my dress ready yet?
2. Meih dāk.	Not OK yet.
3. Dāk laak. Néih siháh sīn lā.	It's ready. Try it on!

3. Dāk + quantity phrase = have only, get only, obtain only:

dāk in this sense has a quantity phrase as its object, with the implication that the quantity is insufficient. It contrasts with yáuh, 'have,' which does not have the connotation of insufficiency.

1. Ngóh dāk léuhng gihn sēutsāam.	I have only two shirts.
2. Ngóh yáuh léuhng gihn sēutsāam.	I have two shirts.

(See BC and Drill 11)

dāk, as 'have insufficient amount,' is a defective verb--that is, it does not have all three forms: affirmative, negative, and question. It is not used in the negative form, and does not form the choice question regularly:

Forms:

aff:	Dāk jèung yāt baak mān jī.	Have only a $100 bill.
neg:	-- --	-- --
q:	Haih m̀hhaih dāk jèung yāt baak mān jī a?	Do you have only a $100 bill?

4. yáuhdāk + verb = 'have available to ..V..,' 'have available for ..V..ing.'

dāk used between the verb yáuh (or its negative móuh) and a second verb, forms a verb phrase (VP) 'have (or not have) available for ..V..ing.'

The basic meaning of dāk in a yáuhdāk V is 'can.'

Ex: aff:	yáuhdāk maaih	have-can-sell, have for sale
neg:	móuhdāk maaih	don't have-available for sale
q:	yáuh móuh dāk maaih a?	are there any available for sale?

(See BC and Drills 7, 8)

5. tīm! sentence suffix indicating that the speaker has been taken by surprise.

tīm! adds the connotation that the situation expressed in the sentence is different from what the speaker expected.

This tīm! perhaps is derived from tīm, 'more,' 'in addition,' which you encountered before in Lesson 4, but differs both in implication and in expressive intonation.

tīm! expressing surprise is a stressed syllable in its sentence, but tīm, 'in addition' does not receive heavy sentence stress. Further, tīm, 'in addition' can be followed by another sentence suffix, but tīm!, expressing surprise, cannot.

Ex: 1.	Joi dáng ngóh géi fānjūng tīm lā.	'Please wait for me a few minutes more.'
2.	M̀hgéidāk tīm!	I forgot it! (having just realized it)

(See BC and Drill 3)

6. -dò and -síu phrases of indefinite amounts

a. -dò 'large amount' and -síu 'small amount' combine with preceding hóu- and others to form phrases of indefinite amounts.

Ex:		
1.	hóudò	a lot, many, much
2.	géidò	quite a lot
3.	móuhgéidò	not very much
4.	hóusíu	very little, very few
5.	sèsíu	a little
6.	síusíu	just a little, just a few

b. These -dò/-síu phrases can be used as modifier to a following nominal construction or as head in a nominal construction.

Ex:

as modifier:

Ngóh yáuh hóudò chín.	I have a lot of money.

as head:

Kéuih dōu yáuh hóudò.	He has a lot too.

c. sèsíu and síusíu modify mass nouns only, directly preceding the noun. As head structures they are used only in connection with mass nouns.

Ex:		
1.	Béi sèsíu tòhng ngóh lā.	Please give me a little sugar.
2.	Béi síusíu tòhng ngóh lā.	Please give me just a tiny bit of sugar.
3.	Sèsíu hóu lā.	A little bit is fine. (Someone asked how much sugar you want in your coffee.)
4.	Síusíu hóu lā.	Just a tiny bit is fine.

d. The following -dò/-síu phrases can modify individual and mass nouns directly:

-dò/-síu	Ind/Mass Noun	
1. hóudò	sēutsāam	1. many shirts; much sugar
2. géidò	tòhng	2. quite a few shirts; quite a bit of sugar
3. móuhgéidò		3. not many shirts; not much sugar
4. (QW) géidò	....?	4. how many shirts?; how much sugar?
5. hóusíu		5. very few shirts; very little sugar

(See Drills 11, 12)

e. The following can precede a Measure (+ Noun):

-dò	M	N	
hóudò	gihn	sēutsāam	many[M] shirts
móuhgéidò	"	"	not many [M] shirts
géidò (& géidō?)	"	"	quite a few [M] shirts (how many [M] shirts?)

7. cheung and cheunghòi 'to change money into smaller denomination'

These both form VO phrases with a following money phrase.

cheung = change into (what you want) (followed by denomination wanted)

cheunghòi = change, i.e., break (a big bill) (followed by denomination held.)

Ex: cheung sahp mān jí = change into $10 bills

cheunghòi jèung sahp mān jí = break a $10 bill

8. Sentence suffix gé

gé represents sentence suffix ge, 'that's the way it is' plus rising intonation for uncertainty and doubt.

Ex: Yí-m̀hgínjó gé? Eh? (They're) lost?

(See BC)

III. DRILLS

1. Alteration Drill

Ex: 1. T: Nī go haih cháang làih ge.	T: This is an orange.
S: Nàh--nīdouh yáuh go cháang.	S: Here--here's an orange.
1. Nī dī haih ngàuhyuhk làih ge.	1. Nàh--nīdouh yáuh dī ngàuhyuhk.
2. Nī jī haih heiséui làih ge.	2. Nàh--nīdouh yáuh jī heiséui.
3. Nī dī haih tòhng làih ge.	3. Nàh--nīdouh yáuh dī tòhng.
4. Nī go haih pìhnggwó làih ge.	4. Nàh--nīdouh yáuh go pìhnggwó.
5. Nī jèung haih sahp mān jí làih ge.	5. Nàh--nīdouh yáuh jèung sahp mān jí.
+ 6. Nī go haih ńgh hòuhjí ngán làih ge. (ngán = coin)	6. Nàh--nīdouh yáuh go ńgh hòuhjí ngán.
7. Nī go haih yāt mān ngán làih ge.	7. Nàh--nīdouh yáuh go yāt mān ngán.

a. Repeat, in reverse, teacher cueing with yáuh sentences, students responding with haih sentences.

---

2. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Béi ńgh hòuhjí ngóh. /jáaufàan/	T: Give me 50¢. /give back change/
S: Jáaufàan ńgh hòuhjí ngóh.	S: Give me back 50¢ change.
1. Béi sahp mān ngóh. /je/ Give me ten dollars.	1. Je sahp mān ngóh. Lend me ten dollars.
2. Béi jī bāt ngóh. /ló/	2. Ló jī bāt ngóh. Bring me a pen(cil).
3. Béi gihn sēutsāam ngóh. /máaih/	3. Máaih gihn sēutsāam ngóh. Buy me a shirt. (Buy a shirt to give me.)
4. Béi go dihnwá ngóh. /dá/ Give me a phone call. (also: Give me a phone.)	4. Dá go dihnwá ngóh.
+ 5. Béi jèung sahp mān jí ngóh. /wuhn/ Give me a ten-dollar bill. /Change (into)/	5. Wuhn jèung sahp mān jí ngóh. Change (this) into a ten-dollar bill for me. (The speaker is holding small

change and bills that he wants converted into a larger bill.)

Comment: wuhn 'exchange,' 'change (into)' in reference to money, is usually used when you have small denominations that you want to change for larger. When you have a large bill you want to break into smaller denominations you use the verb cheungchín 'break (a bill into smaller denominations)', 'change.' (See BC). wuhn also means to exchange one currency for another, as exchange HK money for US money.

a. Repeat the above drill as expansion drill thus:

T: Jáaufàan ngh hòuhjí ngóh.
Give me back 50¢ change.

S: Mhgòi néih jáaufàan ngh hòuhjí ngóh lā.
Please give me back 50¢ change.

5. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Mhngāamjeuk bo.	It doesn't fit, that's for sure.
S: Mhngāamjeuk tìm	It doesn't fit, shucks! (tìm here carries the implication that you are disappointed. I like it, but it doesn't fit - shucks.)
1. [illegible] bo.	1. [illegible] tìm
* 2. Mhhái douh bo. ((He's) not here.)	2. Mhhái douh tìm (Ans-phone)
3. [illegible] bo.	3. [illegible] tìm
4. Mhgau chín bo.	4. Mhgau chín tìm
5. Tēng mhdóu bo. I can't hear it.	5. Tēng mhdóu tìm
6. Wán mhdóu bo. (I) can't find (it).	6. Wán mhdóu tìm
7. Dámhdóu bo. I can't reach him by phone. or He can't be reached by phone. (ambiguous as to whether he has no phone or his phone is busy.)	7. Dámhdóu tìm
8. Mhgeidāk bo. (I) forget.	8. Mhgeidāk tìm

a. Reverse roles, teacher cueing with sentences in right hand column, students responding with those at the left.

---

4. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Yāt baak mān jí.	T: This is a $100 bill.
S: Ǹhgòi néih cheunghòi jèung yāt baak mān jí ngóh lā!	S: Please break this $100 bill for me.
1. /ńgh hòuhjí ngán/	1. Ǹhgòi néih cheunghòi go ńgh hòuhjí ngán ngóh lā!
2. /yāt mān ngán/	2. Ǹhgòi néih chèunghòi go yāt mān ngán ngóh lā!
3. /sahp mān jí/	3. Ǹhgòi néih chèunghòi jèung sahp mān jí ngóh lā!
4. /ńgh mān jí/	4. Ǹhgòi néih chèunghòi jèung ńgh mān jí ngóh lā!
5. /ńgh baak mān jí/	5. Ǹhgòi néih chèunghòi jèung ńgh baak mān jí ngóh lā!
6. /yāt baak mān jí/	6. Ǹhgòi néih chèunghòi jèung yāt baak mān jí ngóh lā!

a. Repeat, teacher writing visual cues ($100, 50¢, etc.) on the blackboard, students responding chèunghòi sentence.

T: Write: $100

S: Ǹhgòi néih chèunghòi jèung yāt baak mān jí ngóh lā!

---

5. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih yámsaai dī heiséui.	T: He drank up all the soft drinks.
S: Kéuih yámsaai dī heiséui. Gám, ngóh móuhdāk yám tìm.	S: He drank up all the soft drinks. So I don't have any [available to drink], blast it!
1. Kéuih yuhngsaai dī chín. He used up all the money.	1. Kéuih yuhngsaai dī chín. Gám, ngóh móuhdāk yuhng tìm.
2. Kéuih sihksaai dī faahn.	2. Kéuih sihksaai dī faahn. Gám, ngóh móuhdāk sihk tìm.

3. Kéuih lósaai dī chín.	3. Kéuih lósaai dī chín. Gám, ngóh móuhdāk ló tìm.
4. Kéuih yámsaai dī gafē.	4. Kéuih yámsaai dī gafē. Gám, ngóh móuhdāk yám tìm.

6. Expansion Drill

Ex: 1.	T: Yìnggwok yáuh Yahtbún bējáu maaih. /nod/ Méihgwok/	T: In England there is Japanese beer for sale. /nod/America/
	S: Méihgwok dōu yáuhdāk maaih.	S: In America also they have it for sale. [America also have-can-sell.]
2.	T: Yìnggwok yáuh Yahtbún bējáu maaih. /shake/ Méihgwok/	T: England has Japanese beer for sale. /shake/America/
	S: Yìnggwok yáuh Yahtbún bējáu maaih, daahnhaih Méihgwok móuhdāk maaih.	S: England has Japanese beer for sale but in America they don't have it for sale. [America not have-can-sell.]

1. Ngóh yaúh chín yuhng. /nod/ngóh pàhngyáuh/	1. Ngóh yáuh chín yuhng, ngóh pàhngyáuh dōu yauhdāk yuhng.
2. Kéuih yáuh chàh yám. /shake/ngóh/	2. Kéuih yáuh chàh yám, daahnhaih ngóh móuhdāk yám.
3. Chāansāt yáuh chàh yám. /nod/chàhlàuh/	3. Chāansāt yáuh chàh yám, chàhlàuh dōu yáuhdāk yám.
4. Kéuih yáuh yúhlāu jeuk. /shake/Léih Sàang/	4. Kéuih yáuh yúhlāu jeuk, daahnhaih Léih Sàang móuhdāk jeuk.
5. Hèunggóng yáuh Jùngmàhn syú maaih. /nod/Yahtbún/	5. Hèunggóng yáuh Jùngmàhn syù maaih, Yahtbún dōu yáuhdāk maaih.

7. Follow Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh séung hohk Gwóngdùngwá.	T: I'm thinking of studying Cantonese.
S: Bīndouh yáuhdāk hohk a?	S: Where can one study (it)? [Where have-can-study?]
1. Ngóh séung hohk Gwokyúh.	1. Bīndouh yáuhdāk hohk a?
2. Ngóh yiu dá dihnwá.	2. Bīndouh yáuhdāk dá a?
3. Ngóh séung sihk faahn.	3. Bīndouh yáuhdāk sihk a?
4. Ngóh séung yám gafē.	4. Bīndouh yáuhdāk yám a?
5. Ngóh séung máaih lāangsāam. /maaih/	5. Bīndouh yáuhdāk maaih a?
6. Ngóh séung máaih chē. /maaih/	6. Bīndouh yáuhdāk maaih a?

8. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Gó júng chē, bīndouh yáuhdāk maaih a? /Hèunggóng/	T: That kind of car--where is it available for sale? /Hongkong/
S: Gó júng chē, Hèunggóng yáuh móuhdāk maaih a?	S: That kind of car--is it for sale in Hongkong? or Can you buy that kind of car in Hongkong?
1. Nī júng bīu, bīndouh yáuhdāk maaih a? /Yahtbún/	1. Nī júng bīu, Yahtbún yáuh móuhdāk maaih a?
2. Nī júng pìhnggwó, bīndouh yáuhdāk maaih a? /Jùnggwok/	2. Nī júng pìhnggwó, Jùnggwok yáuh móuhdāk maaih a?
3. Nī júng gafē, bīndouh yáuhdāk yám a? /chāansāt/	3. Nī júng gafē, chāansāt yáuh móuhdāk yám a?
4. Nī júng béng, bīndouh yáuhdāk sihk a?/Màhnwàh Jáudim/	4. Nī júng béng, Màhnwàh Jáudim yáuh móuhdāk sihk a?
5. Nī júng bāt, bīndouh yáuhdāk maaih a? /Hèunggóng/	5. Nī júng bāt, Hèunggóng yáuh móuhdāk maaih a?

9. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Jáaufàan ńgh hòuhjí béi ngóh lā.	T: Give me back 50¢
S: Jáaufàan ńgh hòuhjí béi ngóh dāk laak.	S: It'll be OK to give me back 50¢. (You can keep the rest) [Give me back 50¢, then it will be OK.]

1. M̀hgòi néih wah kéuih jí ngóh m̀hfàanlàih sihk faahn lā.	1. M̀hgòi néih wah kéuih jí ngóh m̀hfàanlàih sihk faahn dāk laak. (i.e. you don't need to do anything further)
2. M̀hgòi néih giu kéuih hái chē jaahm dáng ngóh lā.	2. Giu kéuih hái chē jaahm dáng ngóh dāk laak. (i.e. doesn't need to come all the way to the house)
3. Giu kéuih hái jógán máaih lā.	3. Giu kéuih hái jógán máaih dāk laak. (i.e. doesn't have to go to town)
4. Daai yih baak mān lā.	4. Daai yih baak mān dāk laak.
5. Jejyuh baak lèhng mān béi ngóh lā.	5. Jejyuh baak lèhng mān béi ngóh dāk laak.
6. Béi sáanjí ngóh lā.	6. Béi sáanjí ngóh dāk laak.
7. Ló béi kéuih lā.	7. Ló béi kéuih dāk laak.
8. Yuhng yùhnbāt sé lā.	8. Yuhng yùhnbāt sé dāk laak.

---

10. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Néih gau m̀hgau chín máaih bējáu a? /nod/

S: Gau. Ngóh ngāamngāam gau chín máaih.

2. T: Néih gau m̀hgau chín máaih hàaih a? /shake/

S: Mhgau. Ngóh m̀hgau chín máaih.

1. Néih gau m̀hgau chín máaih yùhnbāt a? /nod/	1. Gau. Ngóh ngāamngāam gau chín máaih.
2. Néih gau m̀hgau chín máaih pìhnggwó a? /shake/	2. M̀hgau. Ngóh m̀hgau chín máaih.
3. Néih gau m̀hgau chín máaih yīnjái a? /nod/	3. Gau. Ngóh ngāamngāam gau chín máaih.
4. Néih gau m̀hgau chín máaih cháang a? /nod/	4. Gau. Ngóh ngāamngāam gau chín máaih.

5. Néih gau m̀hgau chín máaih sēutsāam a? /shake/	5. M̀hgau. Ngóh m̀hgau chín máaih.
6. Néih gau m̀hgau chín máaih hàaih a? /shake/	6. M̀hgau. Ngóh m̀hgau chín máaih.

---

11. Expansion & Substitution Drill

+ Ex: 1. T: Ngóh dāk hóusíu chín. /hóudò/ (very little) +	T: I have very little money. /a lot/
S: Ngóh dāk hóusíu chín, daahnhaih kéuih yáuh hóudò.	S: I have very little money, but he has a lot.
2. T: Kéuih yáuh hóudò chín. /hóusíu ja/	T: He has a lot money. /very little/
S: Kéuih yáuh hóudò chín, daahnhaih ngóh dāk hóusíu ja.	S: He has a lot of money, but I have very little.

1. Kéuih yáuh hóudò chín. + /móuhgéidò ja/ /not much/	1. Kéuih yáuh hóudò chín, daahnhaih ngóh móuhgéidò ja. He has a lot of money, but I don't have much.
2. Ngóh móuhgéidò chín. + /géidò ga/ /quite a lot/	2. Ngóh móuhgéidò chín, daahnhaih kéuih yáuh géidò ga. I don't have much money, but he has quite a lot.
3. Kéuih yáuh géidò chín. /sèsíu ja/	3. Kéuih yáuh géidò chín, daahnhaih ngóh dāk sèsíu ja.
4. Ngóh yáuh sèsíu chín. /hóudò ga/ /much, a lot/ I have a little money.	4. Ngóh yáuh sèsíu chín, daahnhaih kéuih yáuh hóudò ga. I have a little money, but he has a lot.
5. Kéuih yáuh hóudò chín. /hóusíu ja/	5. Kéuih yáuh hóudò chín, daahnhaih ngóh dāk hóusíu ja.
6. Ngóh yáuh hóusíu chín. /géidò/	6. Ngóh yáuh hóusíu chín, daahnhaih kéuih yáuh géidò ga.

7. Kéuih yáuh géidò chīn. /sèsīu ja/ /just a little/	7. Kéuih yáuh géidò chīn, daahnhaih ngóh dāk sèsīu ja.
8. Ngóh yáuh sèsīu chīn. /hóudò ga/	8. Ngóh yáuh sèsīu chīn, daahnhaih kéuih yáuh hóudò ga.
9. Kéuih yáuh géidò pàhngyáuh. /móuhgéidò ja/ /not many/	9. Kéuih yáuh géidò pàhngyáuh, daahnhaih ngóh dāk móuhgéidò ja. He has quite a few friends, but I have not many.
10. Ngóh móuhgéidò pàhngyáuh. /hóudò/ /many, a lot/	10. Ngóh móuhgéidò pàhngyáuh, daahnhaih kéuih yáuh hóudò.
11. Kéuih yáuh hóudò pàhngyáuh. /hóusīu ja/ /just a few/	11. Kéuih yáuh hóudò pàhngyáuh, daahnhaih ngóh dāk hóusīu ja.

Comment: 1) ja (pronounced [jə] is a fusion of jē and a, and implies 'not much,' 'merely.'

2) ga is a fusion of final ge, indicating matter-of-fact statement, and final a, the sentence softener. Here ga is pronounced [gə].

---

12. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih sihk hóudò ngàuhyuhk ga. /géidò ga/	T: He eats a lot of beef. /quite a lot/
S: Kéuih sihk géidò ngàuhyuhk ga.	S: He eats quite a lot of beef.
1. Kéuih sihk géidò ngàuhyuhk ga. /faahn/	1. Kéuih sihk géidò faahn ga.
2. Kéuih sihk géidò faahn. /jyùyuhk ga/	2. Kéuih sihk géidò jyùyuhk.
3. Kéuih sihk géidò jyùyuhk ga. /yám chàh/	3. Kéuih yám géidò chàh.
4. Kéuih yám géidò chàh. /hóusīu ge ja/	4. Kéuih yám hóusīu chàh ge ja.
5. Kéuih yám hóusīu chàh ge ja. /bējáu/	5. Kéuih yám hóusīu bējáu.
6. Kéuih yám hóusīu bējáu. /ngàuhnáaih/	6. Kéuih yám hóusīu ngàuhnáaih.
7. Kéuih yám hóusīu ngàuhnáaih ge ja. /sihk faahn/	7. Kéuih sihk hóusīu faahn ge ja.

8. Kéuih sihk hóusíu faahn ge ja. /móuhgéidò/	8. Kéuih sihk móuhgéidò faahn.
9. Kéuih sihk móuhgéidò faahn ge ja. /ló chín/	9. Kéuih ló móuhgéidò chín ge ja.

---

13. Substitution Drill:

Ex: T: Yí, ngóh jī bāt mhginjó gé. /yùhnbāt/	S: Yí, ngóh jī yùhnbāt m̀hginjó gé.
1. Yí, ngóh go bīu m̀hginjó gé. /sàam/	1. Yí, ngóh gihn sàam m̀hginjó gé.
2. /dáifu/	2. Yí, ngóh tìuh dáifu m̀hginjó gé.
3. /kwàhn/	3. Yí, ngóh tìuh kwàhn m̀hginjó gé.
4. /jē/	4. Yí, ngóh bá jē m̀hginjó gé.
+ 5. /fu ngáhngéng/ (M. + eyeglasses)	5. Yí, ngóh fu ngáhngéng m̀hginjó gé.
+ 6. /go ngáhngéngdói/ (eyeglass case)	6. Yí, ngóh go ngáhngéngdói m̀hginjó gé.
+ 7. /go sáudói/ ((woman's) handbag)	7. Yí, ngóh go sáudói m̀hginjó gé.
8. /gihn dáisāam/	8. Yí, ngóh gihn dáisāam m̀hginjó gé.

---

14. Money Drill: For class practice: teacher writes on the blackboard.

Ex: T: 2 (50¢)	T: 2 50¢ coins
S: Béi léuhng go ńgh hóuhjí ngán ngóh lā!	S: Please give me 2 50¢ [5 dime] coins.
1. 10 $ 10	1. Béi sahp jèung sahp mān jí ngóh lā!
2. 1 $ 10	2. Béi jèung sahp mān jí ngóh lā!
3. 1 $ 100	3. Béi jèung yāt baak mān jí ngóh lā!
4. 5 $ 10	4. Béi ńgh jèung sahp mān jí ngóh lā!

5. 2 $\boxed{\$\ 500}$ 5. Béi léuhng jèung ńgh baak mān jí ngóh lā!

6. 5 50¢ 6. Béi ńgh go ńgh hòuhjí ngán ngóh lā!

7. 3 10¢ 7. Béi sàam go yāt hòuhjí ngán ngóh lā!

8. 10 $\$1^{\underline{00}}$ 8. Béi sahp go yāt mān ngán ngóh lā!

9. 2 50¢ 9. Béi léuhng go ńgh hòuhjí ngán ngóh lā!

10. 10 10¢ 10. Béi sahp go yāt hòuhjí ngán ngóh lā!

Comment: jí 'bill', and ngán 'coin', can be omitted from the sentences above without changing meaning or emphasis.

15. Money Exchange Drill: For class practice. Teacher writes on blackboard, or holds up actual or pretend money.

Ex: T: 10 $\boxed{\$\ 10} \longrightarrow 1 \quad \boxed{\$\ 100}$

S1: Nīdouh yáuh sahp jèung sahp mān (jí). S1: Here's ten $10 bills.

S2: M̀hgòi néih wuhn jèung yāt baak mān (jí) ngóh lā! S2: Please change into a $100 bill for me. [give me.]

1. 5 $\$1^{\underline{00}} \longrightarrow 1 \quad \boxed{\$\ 5^{\underline{00}}}$ 1. A. Nīdouh yáuh ńgh go yāt mān (ngán).
M̀hgòi néih wuhn jèung ńgh mān (jí) ngóh lā!

2. 10 $\$1^{\underline{00}} \longrightarrow 1 \quad \boxed{\$\ 10}$ 2. A. Nīdouh yáuh sahp go yāt mān (ngán).
M̀hgòi néih wuhn jèung sahp mān (jí) ngóh lā!

3. 5 $\boxed{\$\ 100} \longrightarrow 1 \quad \boxed{\$\ 500}$ 3. A. Nīdouh yáuh ńgh jèung yāt baak mān (jí).
M̀hgòi néih wuhn jèung ńgh baak mān (jí) ngóh lā!

4. 2 $\boxed{\$\ 5^{\underline{00}}} \longrightarrow 1 \quad \boxed{\$\ 10}$ 4. A. Nīdouh yáuh léuhng jèung ńgh mān (jí).
M̀hgòi néih wuhn jèung sahp mān (jí) ngóh lā!

5. 10 (10¢) → 1 ($\$1^{00}$)

5. A. Nīdouh yáuh sahp go yāt hòuhjī (ngán).
M̀hgòi néih wuhn go yāt mān (ngán) ngóh lā!

6. 2 (50¢) → 1 ($\$1^{00}$)

6. A. Nīdouh yáuh léuhng go ńgh hòuhjī (ngán).
M̀hgòi néih wuhn go yāt mān (ngán) ngóh lā!

16. Money Change Drill: Teacher draws on board, or holds up real or pretend money.

Ex: T: 1 $ 10 10 $\$\,1^{00}$

S1: Nīdouh yáuh jèung sahp mān (jí). — S1: Here's a $10 bill.

+ S2: M̀hgòi néih cheung sahp go yat man (ngán) (béi) ngóh lā! — S2: Please change (this) for me into 10 on-dollar coins.

1. 1 $\boxed{\$\ 500} \rightarrow 5\ \boxed{\$\ 100}$

1. A. Nīdouh yáuh jèung ńgh baak mān jí.
B. M̀hgòi néih cheung ńgh jèung yāt baak mān jí ngóh lā!

2. 1 $\boxed{\$\ 100} \rightarrow 10\ \boxed{\$\ 10}$

2. A. Nīdouh yáuh jèung yāt baak mān jí.
B. M̀hgòi néih cheung sahp jèung sahp mān jí ngóh lā!

3. 1 $\boxed{\$\ 5^{00}} \rightarrow 10$ (50¢)

3. A. Nīdouh yáuh jèung ńgh mān jí.
B. M̀hgòi néih cheung sahp go ńgh hòuhjī ngán ngóh lā!

4. 1 $\boxed{\$\ 10} \rightarrow 10$ ($\$1^{00}$)

4. A. Nīdouh yáuh jèung sahp mān jí.
B. M̀hgòi néih cheung sahp go yāt mān ngán ngóh lā!

Comment: cheung 'change money into smaller denomination' (followed by denomination desired)

---

17. Number Drill I: Classroom practice.

A. Teacher writes examples on board, calls them out, students listen.

Example:

1. 10	1. sahp
2. 100	2. yāt baak
+ 3. 1000	3. yāt chīn (chīn = thousand)
4. 20	4. yihsahp
5. 200	5. yih baak
6. 2000	6. yih chīn

B. Teacher says number in Cantonese, students write it down. Teacher then writes figure on board. At end of section, teacher points to numbers on board at random, students say them.

1. 40
2. 80
3. 800
4. 9000
5. 300
6. 700
7. 6000
8. 500
9. 4000
10. 30
11. 900
12. 3000
13. 600
14. 5000
15. 100

(answers)

1. seisahp
2. baatsahp
3. baat baak
4. gáu chīn
5. saam baak
6. chāt baak
7. luhk chīn
8. ńgh baak
9. sei chīn
10. sàamsahp
11. gáu baak
12. sàam chīn
13. luhk baak
14. ńgh chīn
15. yāt baak

---

18. Number Drill II: Numbers with final zeroes.

A: Teacher writes example numbers on board, calls them out. Students listen.

Example:

1. 11 = sahpyāt
2. 110 = baak yāt or yāt baak yātsahp
3. 1100 = chīn yāt or yāt chīn yāt baak
4. 21 = yihsahpyāt or yahyāt
5. 210 = yih baak yāt or yih baak yāt sahp

6. 2100 = yih chīn yāt or yih chīn yāt baak

Comment: In numbers with a final zero (or zeroes), the Cantonese favor not calling the measure of the last number, It is of course predictable from the Measure preceding.

B. Teacher says number, students write it down (without looking at book). Teacher then writes figure on board. At end of section, teacher points to numbers on board at random, students say the numbers.

1. 340
2. 680
3. 7500
4. 9900
5. 440
6. 78
7. 190
8. 830
9. 880
10. 480
11. 170
12. 990
13. 52
14. 540
15. 180
16. 710
17. 38
18. 280
19. 85
20. 140
21. 14
22. 1400
23. 5900
24. 460

---

19. Number Drill III: Numbers with internal zeroes.

A. Teacher writes the numbers on the board and calls them out, pointing to them as he does so. Students listen.

Example:

1. 1 = yāt
2. 101 = yāt baak lìhng yāt
3. 1,001 = yāt chīn lìhng yāt
4. 1,010 = yāt chīn lìhng yātsahp
5. 4 = sei
6. 404 = sei baak lìhng sei
7. 4,004 = sei chīn lìhng sei
8. 4,040 = sei chīn lìhng seisahp

Comment: In saying a number, Cantonese marks the presence of an internal zero (or zeroes) by lìhng.

B. Teacher says number, students write it down; teacher then writes figure on blackboard. At end of section, teacher points to numbers on board at random, students say them.

1. 1018
2. 1029
3. 1101
4. 808
5. 8008
6. 8080

7. 209
8. 2029
9. 2008
10. 2202
11. 508
12. 5008
13. 6708
14. 9009
15. 307
16. 708
17. 3303
18. 5804
19. 701
20. 7406
21. 805
22. 908

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to the wordlist below as you listen to the tape.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

1) oi = here: to have in your possession
2) gàmyaht = today
3) yātján = dángyātjahn = 'in a little while'

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:	B. And he responds:
1. I forgot to bring money!	1. I'll lend you some--how much do you need?
2. Do you have enough money to buy beer?	2. I have just enough to buy six bottles, but I'd like to buy a dozen.
3. I don't have enough money to buy a dozen bottles.	3. You want some money, huh?--I'll lend you $20, OK?
4. What the...? I can't find my glasses.	4. They're here by me.
5. Please break this $10 bill for me.	5. OK. One five and five ones, is that all right?
6. How much is US$10 in Hong Kong dollars?	6. About $60.00.
7. How much is HK$100.00 in American money?	7. About $16.60.
8. Does Hong Kong have that kind of car for sale?	8. Sure, you can buy them in H.K. (Hongkong-available-sell)
9. You can't buy English beer in Japan--can you buy Japanese beer in England?	9. I don't know, probably so.

10. I have very few sweaters, but my younger sister has a lot.	10. Not so! You have quite a lot too!
11. Keep the change! (Don't need to give back.)	11. Thanks.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 11

1.	agō	n:	elder brother
2.	baak	nu:	hundred
3.	cheung	v:	change money into smaller denomination
4.	cheunghòi	v:	split, break up large banknote or coin to exchange for ones of lesser denomination.
5.	chīn	nu:	thousand
6.	daai	v:	carry
7.	daai...heui	v:	take...along
8.	daai...làih	v:	bring...along
9.	dāk	v:	all right, OK, will do
10.	-dāk-	bf:	in yáuhdāk .V. = available, can
11.	dāk...	v:	only have ...
12.	fu	m:	M. for eyeglasses
13.	géidò	Ph:	quite a lot
14.	hái douh	Ph:	(he, she, it, etc.) is here; is at (this) place
15.	hóudò	Ph:	a lot
16.	hóusíu	Ph:	very little
17.	jáau	v:	give change
18.	jáaufàan	v:	give back change
19.	je	v:	lend, borrow
20.	jejyuh	v:	lend or borrow temporarily
21.	jèung	m:	M. for banknotes
22.	jí	n:	banknote; paper
23.	-jyuh	Vsuf:	temporarily, for a short time
24.	m̀hgeidāk	VP:	forget (not remember)
25.	m̀hginjó	VP:	lose, lost; 'nowhere to be seen'
26.	móuhdāk .V.	VP:	not have available for .V.-ing
27.	móuhgéidò	Ph:	not much, not many

28. Nàh!	ex:	Here!
29. ngáhngéng	n:	eyeglasses
30. ngáhngéngdói	n:	eyeglasses case
31. ngán	n:	coin
32. sáanngán	n:	small coins
33. saimúi	n:	younger sister
34. sáudói	n:	(woman's) handbag
35. sīgēi	n:	taxi driver
36. tīm	ss:	sen. suf. indicating speaker has been taken by surprise.
37. tùhng	coV:	on behalf of, for
38. wuhn	v:	in ref. to money, change small denomination for larger one (followed by denomination desired); exchange one currency for another.
39. yáuhdāk	VP:	have available to .V., have available for .V.ing.
40. Yí!	ex:	exclamation of distress:'Oh-oh!'
41. yuhng	v:	use; spend (money)

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Two friends meet at the bus stop)

Chàhn Táai

heui	go
heui bīndouh a?	where are you going?
A, Wòhng Táai, heui bīndouh a?	Ah, Mrs. Wong, where are you going?

Wòhng Táai

Ngóh heui ngàhnhòhng ló chín. Néih nē?	I'm going to the bank to get some money. And you?

Chàhn Táai

hohkhaauh	school
Ngóh heui hohkhaauh.	I'm going to school.

Wòhng Táai

Heui gódouh yáuh mēyéh sih a?	What is it you're going there to do?

Chàhn Táai

néui	daughter
ngóh gó néui	my daughter
jip	meet, fetch, pick up (a person)
heui jip ngóh go néui	go to get my daughter
Ngóh heui jip ngóh go néui.	I'm going to get my daughter.
Kéuih yihgā hái hohkhaauh dáng ngóh.	She's at school now waiting for me.
màhmā	mother
ngóh màhmā	my mother
taam	visit
taam ngóh màhmā	visit my mother
daai kéuih	take/bring him along
Ngóh daai kéuih heui taam ngóh màhmā.	I'm taking her to visit my mother.

Wòhng Táai

jyuh	live
Néih màhmā hái bīndouh jyuh a?	Where does your mother live?

Chàhn Táai

Gáulùhng	Kowloon
Kéuih hái Gáulùhng jyuh.	She lives in Kowloon.

(Mrs. Wong looks down the street and sees a bus coming)

Wòhng Táai

làih	come
ga chē	a car
A, yáuh ga chē làih laak. Haih m̀hhaih baat houh a?	Oh, there's a bus [car] coming. Is it a Number 8?
tái m̀hchíngchó	not see clearly
Ngóh tái m̀hchíngchó.	I can't see clearly.

Chàhn Táai

M̀hhaih baat houh, haih sàam houh.	It's not a Number 8, it's a Number 3.
hauhbihn	in back, behind
Hauhbihn yáuh ga baat houh.	There's a Number 8 behind it.

Wòhng Táai

móuh cho	right! correct! [not have mistake]
A, móuh cho--	Ah, that's right--
sàam houh hauhbihn	behind the Number 3
gànjyuh	follow
Sàam houh hauhbihn gànjyuh yáuh ga baat hauh.	Behind the Number 3, following there is a Number 8.

B. **Recapitulation:**

Chàhn Táai

A, Wòhng Táai, heui bīndouh a?	Ah, Mrs. Wong, where are you going?

Wòhng Táai

Ngóh heui ngàhnhòhng ló chín. Néih nē?	I'm going to the bank to get some money. And you?

Chàhn Táai

Ngóh heui hohkhaauh.	I'm going to school.

Wòhng Táai	
Heui gódouh yáuh mēyéh sih a?	What is it you're going there for?
Chàhn Táai	
Ngóh heui jip ngóh go néui. Kéuih yihgā hái hohkhaauh dáng ngóh. Ngóh daai kéuih heui taam ngóh māhmā.	I'm going to get my daughter. She's at school now waiting for me. I'm taking her to visit my mother.
Wòhng Táai	
Néih màhmā hái bīndouh jyuh a?	Where does your mother live?
Chàhn Táai	
Kéuih hái Gáulùhng jyuh.	She lives in Kowloon.
Wòhng Táai	
A, yáuh ga chē làih laak. Haih m̀hhaih baat houh a? Ngóh tái m̀hchìngchó.	Oh, there's a bus coming. Is it a Number 8? I can't see clearly.
Chàhn Táai	
M̀hhaih baat houh, haih sàam houh. Hauhbihn yáuh ga baat houh.	It's not a Number 8, it's a Number 3. There's a Number 8 behind it.
Wòhng Táai	
A, móuh cho-- Sàam houh hauhbihn gànjyuh yáuh ga baat houh.	At, that's right-- Behind the Number 3, following there's a Number 8.

II. NOTES

A. Culture Notes

1. Greetings.

In Lesson 4 we touched on the matter of differences in the way Americans and Cantonese greet each other. One very common form of greeting between Cantonese who run into each other on the street is Heui bīndouh a? or Heui bīn a? 'Where are you going?' This isn't being nosey, it's just a greeting form, just as in English 'How are you?' is a greeting form and doesn't call for a detailed description of your health. To answer Heui bīndouh a?, you say where you're going, or, if you don't want to tell, simply say Chēut gāai or Heui gāai 'I'm going out' (said as you emerge from your house) or Chēutlàih hàahngháh 'I've come out for a walk' (if you're already out).

Other greetings are Fàan gùng a? (Going to work?' Chēut gāai a? 'You're out?' Fàan hohk a? 'Going to school?' You can respond to all of these by nodding you head, saying an A of assent, and greeting the person by name: A, Hòh Táai!

Around noontime or dinnertime if two acquaintances meet, a common greeting form is Sihk faahn meih a? 'Have you eaten yet?' Responses are: Meih a, néih nē? 'Not yet, and you?' and Sihkjó laak, 'I've eaten.'

2. Counting system of numbering the floors of a building.

The Chinese system of numbering floors of a building is the same as the American system, but different from the British system. The floor above the ground floor is called yih láu [two-storey] in Cantonese, 'the second floor' in American English, and 'the first floor' in British English.

The British system of numbering floors is used in Hong Kong when one speaks English. This, of course, means referring to the floor above the ground floor as the first floor, the floor two storeys up as the second floor, and so on.

Ex: Ngóh jyuh hái sàam láu.	I live on the second floor. (British counting system) I live on the third floor. (American counting system)

(See Drill 2.8)

B. Structure Notes

1. Sentence type: Subordinate clause-primary clause sentence.

In Cantonese sentences, subordinate clauses precede the primary clause.

Ex: Kéuih fàanlàih, m̀hgòi néih giu kéuih dá dihnwá béi Jèung Táai lā.	When she comes back, please tell her to phone Mrs. Cheung.

The order is fixed. This contrasts with the situation in the English counterpart, in which subordinate-primary clauses are reversible:

Ex:

Subordinate	Primary
When she comes home	please tell her to call Mrs. Cheung.

or

Primary	Subordinate
Please tell her to call Mrs. Cheung	when she comes home.

2. Sentence type: Multi-verb sentence.

The term multi-verb sentence refers to single-clause sentences containing a series of verb phrases. Whereas English typically expands a single clause sentence by retaining one principle verb and adding on such adjuncts as prepositional phrases (with me), participles (waiting for me), infinitive phrases (to fetch his girlfriend), adverbial nouns of place (home), Chinese typically expands a simple sentence into a series of verbal expressions, so that an expanded single clause sentence in Chinese has the shape: S + V(O) + V(O) (+ V(O)).

Ex:

1. Kéuih hái hohkhaauh dáng ngóh.	He's at school waiting for me [at-school+await-me]
2. Kéuih je chín béi ngóh.	He lent me money. [lend-money+give-me]
3. M̀hgòi néih gàn ngóh làih.	Please come with me. Please follow me. [follow-me+come]
4. Kéuih heui ngàhnhòhng ló chín.	He's going to the bank to get some money. [go-bank+get-money]
5. Kéuih sung ngóh fàan ngūkkéi.	He took me home. [deliver-me+return-home]
6. Kéuih séung maaih gihn sēutsāam.	He wants to buy a shirt. [wish+buy-shirt]
7. Kéuih heui tái hei.	He went to see a movie. [go+see-movie]
8. Kéuih heui Gáuluhng jip néuihpàhngyáuh.	He's going to Kowloon to fetch his girlfriend.
9. Kéuih jip kéuih go jái heui Gáuluhng tái hei.	He's fetching his son to take him to Kowloon to see a movie. [fetch-son+go-Kowloon+see-movie]

3. Auxiliary verbs.

Auxiliary verbs cannot serve as the only verb in a sentence, but require another verb as their object. The negative and question forms attach to the auxiliary verb.

Ex: séung = be of a mind to..., want to..., think (I'll)...

aff:	Ngóh séung sihk faahn.	I think I'll eat dinner.
neg:	Ngóh m̀hséung sihk faahn.	I don't think I'll eat.
q:	Séung m̀hséung sihk faahn a?	Do you want to have dinner?

4. Co-verbs.

There is a category of verb in Cantonese which cannot serve as the only verb in a sentence, and which takes a noun as its object. This category is given the name co-verb (companion verb). A co-verb phrase precedes the verb it is companion to. Co-verbs ordinarily translate into English as prepositions, and the co-verb and its object as a prepositional phrase; but in Cantonese co-verbs are verbs, since they can occur in the three basic verb forms: affirmative, negative, and choice question.

Ex:	Co-V +	Noun object +	Verb	
aff:	Gàn	sīnsàang	góng.	Repeat after the teacher [Follow-teacher speak.
neg:	M̀hgàn	sīnsàang	góng.	Don't repeat after the teacher.
q:	Gàn m̀hgàn	sīnsàang	góng a?	(Should we) repeat after the teacher?

(See Drills 11, 12)

5. Verb sequence: Aux V + Co-V + V

Auxiliary verb precedes Co-Verb phrase in a sentence in which both occur:

Ex: Ngóh séung gàn kéuih heui.	I think I'll follow him.

6. tùhng 'with' (Co-V) compared with tùhng 'and' (Cj)

tùhng 'with' and tùhng 'and' both stand between two nouns (N tùhng N), but since otherwise they pattern differently in a sentence, they are classed as different parts of speech.

tùhng 'with' may take negative and question forms as well as the affirmative, and may be preceded by an auxiliary verb. It is therefore a verb. But as it cannot stand as the only verb in a sentence, and requires another verb following its noun object, it is classed as a Co-Verb.

Ex: Ngóh m̀hséung tùhng Léih Táai heui.	I don't want to go with Mrs. Lee.

tùhng, 'and' does not take the negative and question forms, therefore it cannot be called a verb. It cannot be preceded by an auxiliary verb. It joins two nouns which then act as a compound unit in subject or object position. tùhng, 'and' is classed as a conjunction.

Ex: Léih Táai tùhng ngóh heui. Máh Sàang tùhng Máh Táai m̀hheui.	Mrs. Lee and I are going. Mr. and Mrs. Ma aren't going.
Làuh Sàang tùhng Làuh Taaitáai m̀hséung heui.	Mr. and Mrs. Lau don't wish to go.
Ngóh m̀hsīk Làuh Síujé tùhng kéuih màhmā.	I don't know Miss Lau and her mother.

(See Drills 12.5 and 6)

7. gànjyuh, gàn, 'to follow'

These two are alike in meaning, but different in use. gànjyuh is a full verb, can serve as the only verb in a sentence. gàn is a co-verb, cannot serve as the only verb in a sentence. It is limited to multi-verb sentences in which it precedes another verb. phrase.

Ex: M̀hgòi néih gàn ngóh làih.	Please follow me.
M̀hgòi néih gànjyuh ngóh làih.	Please follow me.
Gànjyuh gó ga chē!	Follow that car!
(-) Gàn gó ga chē!	(doesn't occur)
Gàn (jyuh) gó ga chē heui!	Follow that car!

In the Basic Conversation of this lesson gànjyuh is used as the subject of a clause, the clause itself being predicate in the larger topic: comment sentence:

Subject (topic)	Predicate (Comment)	
	Subject	Predicate
Sàam houh hauhbihn	gànjyuh	yáuh ga baat houh.
[Three-number behind	following	there is [M] eight-number]

'Behind the Number 3 there's a Number 8 following.'

(See Drills 6, 7)

8. sung 'deliver (someone or something),' 'take (someone/something) to destination and leave him/it there.'

sung, 'deliver,' can be the only verb in a sentence, or it can be the verb of a VO expression which is followed by heui or some other verb indicating movement.

Ex: Ngóh sung néih.	I'll see you to your destination.
Ngóh sung dī jáinéui heui taam pàhngyáuh.	I took the children to visit friends.
Gàan gūngsī sung dī yéh làih.	The department store delivered the goods (to speaker's place).

(See Drill 10)

9. daai, 'to bring, take along'

daai, 'bring/take someone/something along' can serve as the only verb in the sentence, usually with an impersonal object:

Ex: Kéuih daai chín.	He's brought money along.

daai can also serve as the verb of a VO expression which is followed by heui or some other verb indicating movement.

Ex: Ngóh daai ngóh go néui heui tái yīsāng.	I'm taking my daughter to see the doctor.

(See BC)

10. jip = 'fetch (someone),' 'meet (someone) and take him someplace else.'

Ex: Ngóh heui Gáuluhng jip ngóh go néui.	I'm going to Kowloon to get my daughter.
Ngóh jip ngóh go néui heui Gáuluhng.	I'm meeting my daughter to take her to Kowloon.

(See BC)

Ordinarily, the grammatical object of jip is a personal noun (jip yàhn = go fetch someone), but the grammatical object can be a vehicle (jip chē = meet the bus [car] and fetch someone away). In such a case the vehicle is the grammatical object but a person is the underlying object.

11. hái phrase in a multi-verb clause.

With most verbs a hái phrase precedes the other verb phrase, but with verbs of thrust (put, place) it follows the other verb phrase, and with verbs of station (live, sit, stand) it can precede or follow the other verb phrase. In all cases hái has a placeword object.

Ex:	(before other V)	Kéuih hái chāan-sāt sihk faahn.	He's eating (or he ate) at the restaurant.
	(after other V)	Jài dī chàh hái nīdouh.	Put the tea here.
	(before or after)	Kéuih hái Géu-luhng jyuh.	He lives (or lived) in Kowloon.
		Kéuih jyuh hái Gáuluhng.	

(See Drill 4)

12. Possessive modification with family names: ngóh màhmā, 'my mother' and others.

Some family names function irregularly with respect to possessive modification, not using either the general possessive ge or the individual measures go and dī between modifier and head noun. In such cases the modifier precedes the noun directly. With other family names either ge or go/dī is required in modification structure; with still other family names filling the ge/go position is optional.

(Examples are on following page)

Ex:

modifier	go/dī/ge or/--/	Noun	Eng. equivalents	
ngóh	--	màhmā	my	mother
néih	--	bàhbā	your	father
Léih Táai	--	sīnsāang	Mrs. Lee's	husband
Léih Sàang	--	taaitáai	Mr. Lee's	wife
	/go/dī/ge/	jái		son(s)
	go/dī/ge/	néui		daughter(s)
	dī/ge/	jáinéui		children
	go/dī/ge	múi		younger sister
	/-/go/dī/ge	sáimúi		younger sister
	/-/go/dī/ge	gājē		elder sister
	/-/go/dī/ge/	sáilóu		younger brother
	/-/go/dī/ge/	agō		elder brother

(See Drill 3)

13. Chinese response to questions negatively phrased.
(You're not going, are you? type):

Negatively phrased questions in Cantonese are tricky from the English speaking student's point of view, because where the English answer would be 'No,' the Cantonese answers seem to be 'yes,' and where the English answer is 'yes,' the Cantonese answer sounds like 'no.'

Ex: 1. A. Néih ūkkéi móuh dihnwá àh.	Your house doesn't have a phone, does it.
B. Haih a. Móuh dihnwá.	That's right. There's no phone. (Idiomatic English answer: No, it doesn't.)
2. A. Kéuih m̀hfàanlàih sihk aan àh.	He's not coming home for lunch, is he.
B. Móuh cho. M̀hfàan-làih.	That's right. He's not coming home. (Idiomatic English answer: No, he's not.)
3. A. Néih ūkkéi móuh dihnwá àh.	You don't have a phone at your house, do you.
B. M̀hhaih. Yáuh dihnwá.	Not so! We do have one. (Idiomatic English: Yes, we do.)

4. A. Kéuih m̀hfàanlàih sihk aan àh.	He's not coming home for lunch, is he.
B. M̀hhaih. Kéuih fàanlàih.	Not so. He is. (Idiomatic English: Yes, he is.)

(See Drill 14)

III. DRILLS

1. Question & Answer Drill

Ex: T: Hèunggóng.
A: Néih hái bīndouh jyuh a?
B: Ngóh hái Hèunggóng jyuh.

1. Gáulùhng.	1. A. Néih hái bīndouh jyuh a? B. Ngóh hái Gáulùhng jyuh.
2. Méihgwok.	2. A. Néih hái bīndouh jyuh a? B. Ngóh hái Méihgwok jyuh.
3. Jùngwàahn.	3. A. Néih hái bīndouh jyuh a? B. Ngóh hái Jùngwàahn jyuh.
4. Hohkhaauh.	4. A. Néih hái bīndouh jyuh a? B. Ngóh hái hohkhaauh jyuh.
5. Hèunggóng.	5. A. Néih hái bīndouh jyuh a? B. Ngóh hái Hèunggóng jyuh.

---

2. Expansion Drill: Repeat after the teacher.

+ 1. a. jái	1. a. son
b. ngóh go jái	b. my son
c. Ngóh go jái heui	c. My son is going
d. Ngóh go jái heui Gáulùhng.	d. My son is going to Kowloon.
e. Ngóh go jái yìhgā heui Gáulùhng.	e. My son is going to Kowloon now.
+ 2. a. jáinéui	2. a. children (of a family), sons and daughters (of a family)
b. dī jáinéui	b. the children
c. daai dī jáinéui	c. bring/take the children
d. daai dī jáinéui heui	d. take the children.
e. daai dī jáinéui heui Wòhng Táai douh.	e. take the children to Mrs. Wong's.
+ f. Ngóh sīnsàang daai dī jáinéui heui Wòhng Táai douh. Note the new meaning for sīnsàang: 'husband.'	f. My husband is taking the children to Mrs. Wong's (Though sīnsàang may also mean 'teacher'

	the context usually makes the meaning clear.)
+ 3. a. jouh	3. a. do
b. jouh mēyéh	b. do what?
c. heui Gáulùhng jouh mēyéh a?	c. go to Kowloon to do what?
d. Kéuih heui Gáulùhng jouh mēyéh a?	d. What is he going to Kowloon to do?
e. Kéuih heui Gáulùhng taam pàhngyáuh.	e. He's going to Kowloon to see a friend.
+ 4. a. yīsāng	4. a. doctor
b. tái yīsāng	b. see a doctor
c. heui tái yīsāng	c. go to see a doctor
d. jip kéuih go néui heui tái yīsāng.	d. meet her daughter and go to see the doctor.
e. Kéuih jip kéuih go néui heui tái yīsāng.	e. She's meeting her daughter to take her to the doctor.
+ 5. a. ngóh taaitáai	5. a. my wife
b. tùhng ngóh taaitáai	b. with my wife
c. tùhng ngóh taaitáai heui	c. go with my wife
d. m̀htùhng ngóh taaitáai heui	d. not go with my wife
e. Wòhng Táai m̀htùhng ngóh taaitáai heui.	e. Mrs. Wong isn't going with my wife.
+ 6. a. máaih yéh (yéh = things, stuff)	6. a. buy things, do shopping
b. heui máaih yéh	b. go shopping
c. bīngo heui máaih yéh a?	c. who is going shopping?
d. tùhng bīngo heui máaih yéh a?	d. go shopping with whom?
e. Néih tùhng bīngo heui máaih yéh a?	e. Who are you going shopping with?
7. a. sih	7. a. affairs, business
+ b. jouh sih	b. work, have a job
c. hái bīndouh jouh sih a?	c. work where?
d. Néih hái bīndouh jouh sih a?	d. Where do you work?
e. Ngóh hái Jùngwàahn jouh sih.	e. I work in the Central District.
+ 8. a. douh	8. a. road

+	b. Nèihdēun Douh	b. Nathan Road
+	c. Nèihdēun Douh ńgh baak luhksahpyih houh (houh = number)	c. Number 562 Nathan Road
+	d. Nèihdēun Douh ńgh baak luhksahpyih houh sàam láu (láu = floor, story of a building)	d. 562 Nathan Road 3rd floor (2nd floor British counting system)
	e. Ngóh jyuh hái Nèihdēun Douh ńgh baak luhksahpyih houh sàam láu.	e. I live at 562 Nathan Road, on the 3rd floor.

Comment: In Hongkong, when speaking English, the British system of counting the floors of a building is used: ground floor, 1st floor, 2d floor, etc. In speaking Cantonese, the Chinese (which is also the American) system is used: the ground floor is called 1st floor the floor above the 1st floor is called the 2d floor, etc.

---

3. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the techer, then substitute as directed.

	1. Ngóh sīnsàang m̀hhái ngūkkéi. My husband is not at home.	1. Ngóh sinsāang m̀hhái ngūkkéi.
	2. /ngóh go jái/	2. Ngóh go jái m̀hhái ūkkéi.
	3. /ngóh go néui/	3. Ngóh go néui m̀hhái ūkkéi.
	4. /ngóh ge jái/	4. Ngóh ge jái m̀hhái ūkkéi.
	5. /ngóh ge jáinéui/	5. Ngóh ge jáinéui m̀hhái ūkkéi.
	6. /ngóh ge néui/	6. Ngóh ge néui m̀hhái ūkkéi.
	7. /ngóh taaitáai/	7. Ngóh taaitáai m̀hhái ūkkéi.
+	8. /ngóh bàhbā/	8. Ngóh bàhbā m̀hhái ūkkéi. My father is not at home.
+	9. /ngóh ge néuihpàhngyáuh/	9. Ngóh ge néuihpàhngyáuh m̀hhái ūkkéi. My girl friend is not at home.
	10. /ngóh ge nàahmpàhngyáuh/	10. Ngóh ge nàahmpàhngyáuh m̀hhái ūkkéi. My boy friend is not at home.

---

4. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh hái Hèunggóng jyuh.	T: I live in Hong Kong.
S: Ngóh jyuh hái Hèunggóng.	S: I live in Hong Kong.
1. Ngóh màhmā hái Gáulùhng jyuh.	1. Ngóh màhmā jyuh hái Gáulùhng.
2. Néih hái bīndouh jyuh a?	2. Néih jyuh hái bīndouh a?
3. Ngóh néuihpàhngyáuh hái Hèunggóng jyuh.	3. Ngóh néuihpàhngyáuh jyuh hái Hèunggóng.
4. Kéuih bàhbā hái Yìnggwok jyuh.	4. Kéuih bàhbā jyuh hái Yìnggwok.
5. Gó go yàhn hái douh jyuh.	5. Gó go yàhn jyuh hái douh.

---

5. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Hòh Sàang heui Gáulùhng.	T: Mr. Ho is going to Kowloon.
S: Hòh Sàang heui Gáulùhng jouh mātyéh a?	S: What's Mr. Ho going to Kowloon to do? or What's Mr. Ho going to Kowloon for?
1. Ngóh heui hohkhaauh.	1. Néih heui hohkhaauh jouh mātyéh a?
2. Ngóh sīnsàang heui gaaklèih.	2. Néih sīnsàang heui gaaklèih jouh mātyéh a?
3. Kéuih nàahmpàhngyáuh heui Dāk Fu Douh Jùng.	3. Kéuih nàahmpàhngyáuh heui Dāk Fu Douh Jùng jouh mātyéh a?
4. Léih Sàang néuihpàhngyáuh heui Jùngwàahn.	4. Léih Sàang néuihpàhngyáuh heui Jùngwàahn jouh mātyéh a?
5. Ngóh màhmā heui ngàhnhòhng.	5. Néih màhmā heui ngàhnhòhng jouh mātyéh a?
6. Ngóh bàhbā heui Hèunggóng Chāansāt.	6. Néih bàhbā heui Hèunggóng Chāansāt jouh mātyéh a?

Comment: Note that néuihpàhngyáuh and nàahmpàhngyáuh accept possessive modifiers with or without ge or go:

Ex: Léih Siujé $\left\{\begin{matrix}-\\ \text{ge}\\ \text{go}\end{matrix}\right\}$ nàahmpàhngyáuh   Miss Lee's boyfriend

6. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: M̀hgòi néih gànjyuh ngóh làih lā.	T: Please follow me.
S: M̀hhóu gànjyuh ngóh làih lā.	S: Don't follow me, please.
1. M̀hgòi néih gànjyuh kéuih heui lā. Please follow him.	1. M̀hhóu gànjyuh kéuih heui lā.
2. M̀hgòi néih gànjyuh ngóh góng lā. Please repeat after me.	2. M̀hhóu gànjyuh ngóh góng lā.
3. M̀hgòi néih gànjyuh gó ga hāak chē heui lā.	3. M̀hhóu gànjyuh gó ga hāak chē heui lā.
4. M̀hgòi néih gànjyuh gó go yàhn heui lā.	4. M̀hhóu gànjyuh gó go yàhn heui lā.
5. M̀hgòi néih gànjyuh ngóh làih lā.	5. M̀hhóu gànjyuh ngóh làih lā.

---

7. Response Drill

Ex: T: M̀hgòi néih gànjyuh ngóh heui lā.	T: Please follow me.
+ S: Sái m̀hsái gàn néih heui a?	S: Should I follow you? [Should I following you, go?]
1. M̀hgòi néih gànjyuh kéuih heui lā.	1. Sái m̀hsái gàn kéuih heui a?
2. M̀hgòi néih gànjyuh Wòhng Táai heui lā.	2. Sái m̀hsái gàn Wòhng Táai heui a?
3. M̀hgòi néih gànjyuh gó go Méihgwokyàhn heui lā.	3. Sái m̀hsái gàn gó go Méihgwokyàhn heui a?
4. M̀hgòi néih gànjyuh ngóh màhmā heui lā.	4. Sái m̀hsái gàn néih màhmā heui a?
5. M̀hgòi néih gànjyuh ngóh pàhngyáuh làih lā.	5. Sái m̀hsái gàn néih pàhngyáuh làih a?

Comment: gànjyuh and gàn both mean 'follow' and in some cases may be used interchangeably; but gàn cannot be used as the only verb in a sentence, whereas gànjyuh can.

---

8. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Ngóh heui Yìnggwok. I'm going to England.	1. Ngóh heui Yìnggwok.
2. /ngóh go jái/	2. Ngóh go jái heui Yìnggwok.
3. /tòuhsyùgwún/	3. Ngóh go jái heui tòuhsyùgwún.
4. /kéuih taaitáai/	4. Kéuih taaitáai heui tòuhsyùgwún.
5. /séjihlàuh/	5. Kéuih taaitáai heui séjihlàuh.
6. /kéuih sīnsàang/	6. Kéuih sīnsàang heui séjihlàuh.
7. /Méihgwok/	7. Kéuih sīnsàang heui Méihgwok.
8. /ngóh màhmā/	8. Ngóh màhmā heui Méihgwok.

---

9. Conversation Exercise

Ex: A: Hòh Sàang heui bīndouh a?	A: Where is Mr. Ho going?
B: Kéuih heui Gáulùhng.	B: He's going to Kowloon.
A: Heui̱ Gáulùhng jouh mātyéh a?	A: What's he going to do there?
B: Heui máaih yéh.	B: He's going shopping.
A: A, heui máaih yéh.	A: Oh, he's going shopping.

1. A. Wòhng Síujé..........?	1. A. Wòhng Síujé heui bīndouh a?
B. ....Hèunggóng.	B. Kéuih heui Hèunggóng.
A. ....?	A. Heui̱ Hèunggóng jouh mēyéh a?
B. ....taam pàhngyáuh.	B. Heui taam pàhngyáuh.
A.	A. A, heui taam pàhngyáuh.
2. A. Néih taaitáai ....?	2. A. Néih taaitáai heui bīndouh a?
B. ....ngàhnhòhng.	B. Kéuih heui ngàhnhòhng.
A. ....?	A. Heui̱ ngàhnhòhng jouh mēyéh a?
B. ....ló chín.	B. Heui ló chín.
A.	A. A, heui ló chín.

3. A. Néih..............?	3. A. Néih heui bīndouh a?
B. ....Tīnsīng Máhtàuh.	B. Ngóh heui Tīnsīng Máhtàuh.
A. ....?	A. Heui Tīnsīng Máhtàuh jouh mēyéh a?
B. ......jip ngóh ge jáinéui.	B. Heui jip ngóh ge jáinéui.
A.	A. A, heui jip néih ge jáinéui.

Comment: To let the other person know you've been paying attention in English, we have such phrases as 'I see' and 'Is that so?'. On the telephone we signal we're still listening by such phrases as 'unhuh', 'yes', 'I see,' during pauses in the flow of speech from the person at the other end of the phone. A favorite way to signal such information in Cantonese is for the listener to repeat the speaker's last sentence, or a portion of it.

---

10. Question and Answer Drill

+ Ex: T: Néih sung néih go néui heui bīndouh a? /hohkhaauh/ (Sung = deliver)	T: Where are you taking your daughter? /school/
S: Ngóh sung ngóh go néui heui hohkhaauh.	S: I'm taking my daughter to school.

1. Néih sung néih go néui heui bīndouh a? /Tīnsīng Máhtàuh/	1. Ngóh sung ngóh go néui heui Tīnsīng Máhtàuh.
2. Néih sung néih go néui heui bīndouh a? /Màhnwàh Jáudim/	2. Ngóh sung ngóh go néui heui Màhnwàh Jáudim.
3. Néih sung néih go jái heui bīndouh a? /Chàhn Yīsāng douh/	3. Ngóh sung ngóh go jái heui Chàhn Yīsāng douh. I'm taking my son to Dr. Chan's.
4. Néih sung néih go jái heui bīndouh a? /hohkhaauh/	4. Ngóh sung ngóh go jái heui hohkhaauh.
5. Néih sung néih go jái heui bīndouh a? /fàan hohk/	5. Ngóh sung ngóh go jái fàan hohk.
6. Néih sung néih ge néuihpàhngyáuh heui bīndouh a? /fàan gùng/	6. Ngóh sung ngóh ge néuihpàhngyáuh fàan gùng.
7. Néih sung néih màhmā heui bīndouh a? /fàan ngūkkéi/	7. Ngóh sung ngóh màhmā fàan ngūkkéi.

Comment: sung 'deliver,'= to accompany someone to a destination and leave him there, contrasts with daai 'take along,'= take someone along with you and he stays with you.

---

11. Response Drill

+ Ex: T: Néih tùhng bīngo heui máaih yéh a? /Wòhng Sīujé/	T: Who are you going shopping with? /Miss Wong/
S: Ngóh tùhng Wòhng Sīujé heui.	S: I'm going with Miss Wong.
1. Néih tùhng bīngo heui sihk faahn a? /ngóh taaitáai/	1. Ngóh tùhng ngóh taaitáai heui.
2. Wòhng Sàang tùhng bīngo heui ngàhnhòhng a? /Wòhng Táai/	2. Wòhng Sàang tùhng Wòhng Táai heui.
3. Kéuih tùhng bīngo heui tái yīsāng a? /kéuih sīnsàang/	3. Kéuih tùhng kéuih sīnsàang heui.
4. Jèung Sīujé tùhng bīngo heui yám chàh a? /kéuih bàhbā/	4. Jèung Sīujé tùhng kéuih báhbā heui.
5. Néih tùhng bīngo làih a? /ngóh màhmā/	5. Ngóh tùhng ngóh màhmā làih.

Repeat, as Alteration Drill, thus:

T: Néih tùhng bīngo heui máaih yéh a? /Wòhng Sīujé/
Who are you going shopping with? /Miss Wong/

S: Néih tùhng m̀htùhng Wòhng Sīujé heui maaih yéh a?
Are you going shopping with Miss Wong?

---

12. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh tùhng kéuih heui tái yīsāng.	T: I'm going with him to the doctor's.
S: Ngóh m̀htùhng kéuih heui tái yīsāng.	S: I'm not going with him to the doctor's.
1. Kéuih daai ngóh heui máaih yéh.	1. Kéuih m̀hdaai ngóh heui máaih yéh.
2. Kéuih jip ngóh heui hohkhaauh.	2. Kéuih m̀hjip ngóh heui hohkhaauh.
3. Kéuih dáng ngóh sihk faahn.	3. Kéuih m̀hdáng ngóh sihk faahn.
4. Ngóh sung kéuih fàan ūkkéi.	4. Ngóh m̀hsung kéuih fàan ūkkéi.
5. Ngóh jùngyi tùhng kéuih heui gāai.	5. Ngóh m̀hjùngyi tùhng kéuih heui gāai.

I like to go out with him.	I don't like to go out with him.
6. Ngóh tùhng kéuih dōu jùngyi heui gāai. We both like to go out.	6. Ngóh tùhng kéuih dōu m̀hjùngyi heui gāai. Neither one of us likes to go out.
7. Ngóh gàn kéuih heui Méihgwok.	7. Ngóh m̀hgàn kéuih heui Méihgwok.
8. Ngóh séung gàn kéuih heui Yahtbún.	8. Ngóh m̀hséung gàn kéuih heui Yahtbún.
+ 9. Ngóh yiu daai kéuih heui jouh sāam. (jouh sāam = make clothes, have clothes made) I have to take her to have clothes made.	9. Ngóh m̀hsái daai kéuih heui jouh sāam. I don't have to take her to have clothes made.
10. Kéuih tùhng ngóh heui máaih sáudói.	10. Kéuih m̀htùhng ngóh heui máaih sáudói.

13. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih heui hohkhaauh. /baat dim bun/	T: He's going to school. /8:30/
S: Kéuih baat dim bun heui hohkhaauh.	S: He's going to school at 8:30.

1. Kéuih heui sihk faahn. /tùhng ngóh/	1. Kéuih tùhng ngóh heui sihk faahn.
2. Kéuih heui chàhlàuh. /yám chàh/	2. Kéuih heui chàhlàuh yám chàh.
3. Kéuih tùhng kéuih sīnsàang heui Gáulùhng. /m̀htùhng/	3. Kéuih m̀htùhng kéuih sīnsàng heui Gáulùhng.
4. Kéuih daai kéuih go jái heui tái yīsāng. /daai m̀hdaai a?/	4. Kéuih daai m̀hdaai kéuih go jái heui tái yīsāng a?
5. Kéuih heui jip kéuih sīnsàang. /séjihlàuh/	5. Kéuih heui séjihlàuh jip kéuih sīnsàang.
6. Kéuih gàn màhmā heui chāansāt. /yám chàh/	6. Kéuih gàn màhmā heui chāansāt yám chàh.
7. Kéuih sung néuihpàhngyáuh fāan ūkkéi. /kéuih ge/	7. Kéuih sung kéuih ge néuihpàhngyáuh fàan ūkkéi.
8. Kéuih hái chāansāt dáng ngóh. /yìhgā/	8. Kéuih yīhgā hái chāansāt dáng ngóh.

14. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih yám gafē àh.	T: He's drinking coffee. isn't he.
S: Haih a, yám gafē.	S: That's right--drinking coffee.
2. T: Kéuih m̀hsīk góng Yìngmahn àh.	T: She doesn't know how to speak English, does she?
S: Haih a, m̀hsīk góng.	S: That's right; she doesn't.
1. Kéuih chēutjógāai àh. She's gone out, hasn't she.	1. Haih a, chēutjógāai. That's right, gone out.
2. Néih ūkkéi móuh dihnwá àh.	2. Haih a, móuh dihnwá.
3. Hòh Sàang heui yám chàh àh.	3. Haih a, heui yám chàh.
4. Chàhn Síujé séung máaih hàaih àh.	4. Haih a, séung máaih hàaih.
5. Néih sīnsàang m̀hfàanlàih sihk faahn àh.	5. Haih a, m̀hfàanlàih sihk faahn.
6. Gó go yàhn hái Méihgwok Ngàhnhòhng jouh sih àh.	6. Haih a, hái Méihgwok Ngàhnhòhng jouh sih.
7. Kéuihdeih heui Gáulùhng máaih yéh àh.	7. Haih a, heui Gáulùhng máaih yéh.
8. Néih m̀hjùngyi yám bējáu àh.	8. Haih a, m̀hjùngyi yám bējáu.
9. Kéuih taaitáai heui jip kéuih go néui àh?	9. Haih a, heui jip kéuih go néui.

---

15. Expansion Drill

1. Hauhbihn yáuh go chē jaahm. /Ngóh séjihlàuh/ There's a car stop in back.	1. Ngóh séjihlàuh hauhbihn yáuh go chē jaahm. Behind my office there's a car stop.
+ 2. Chìhnbihn yáuh gàan ngàhnhòhng. /Chàhn Síujé ūkkéi/ (in front; front side)	2. Chàhn Síujé ūkkéi chìhnbihn yáuh gàan ngàhnhòhng. In front of Miss Chan's house there's a bank.
3. Hauhbihn yáuh gàan jáudim. /Hèunggóng Ngàhnhòhng/	3. Hèunggóng Ngàhnhòhng hauhbihn yáuh gàan jáudim.
4. Hauhbihn yáuh gàan gūngsī. /Hèunggóng Chāansāt/	4. Hèunggóng Chāansāt hauhbihn yáuh gàan gūngsī.
5. Chìhnbihn yáuh mēyéh a? /Jùnggwok Chàhlàuh/	5. Jùnggwok Chàhlàuh chìhnbihn yáuh mēyéh a?

Comment: chìhnbihn and hauhbihn literally mean 'front side' and 'back side' and are not specific as to whether the positions designated are inside/outside the front/back side. Only very rarely, though, is the meaning unclear in context.

IV: CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

1) bīn? = bīndouh?
2) Mēyéh sih a? = What's the matter?
3) lòh = sen. suf. expressing sympathy
4) ngāamngāam = just now, just on the point of, just
5) Yáuh mēyéh sih a? = What's going on?
6) Móuh mēyéh sih.= Nothing special.
7) ngāamngāam séung heui = just thinking of going
8) yātján = in a little while

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:	B. And he responds:
1. A, Mr. Lau, where are you going?	1. I'm going to work, how about you?
2. I'm going to Kowloon to buy something.	2. I'm going to Kowloon too.
3. Where do you live?	3. I live in the Central District.
4. I'm taking my daughter to see the doctor.	4. Which doctor are you going to?
5. Who are you going shopping with?	5. I'm going with Miss Lee.
6. You don't have a phone at home, do you. (confident that he doesn't)	6. That's right, we don't have one.
7. She doesn't drink alcoholic beverages, does she. (confident that she doesn't.)	7. Not so! She does drink alcoholic beverages.
8. What are you going over to Kowloon to do?	8. I'm going to visit my father.
9. Where is the Number 8 car stop?	9. It's in front of the bank.
10. I can't make out what bus that is over there.	10. Over there where?
11. Your office is behind the Mandarin Hotel, isn't it?	11. No, it's in the vicinity of the Central Market.

12. I take my son to school at eight.	12. What time does your daughter go?
13. Where are you going?	13. I'm going to my girl friend's house to meet her.
14. I'm going to Kowloon to go shopping.	14. Is your boy friend going with you?
15. My boy friend is not going shopping with me.	15. He told me he wanted to go with you.
16. Should I follow you?	16. Yes, please follow me.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 12

1.	bàhbā	n:	father
2.	chìhnbihn	PW:	front (front side)
3.	chìngchó	adj:	clear, vivid, clearly
4.	daai	V/coV:	take/bring (someone/something) along
5.	douh	bf:	road, restricted to use following named road
6.	ga	m:	M. for vehicle
7.	gàn	coV:	follow, come behind
8.	gànjyuh	v:	follow, come behind
9.	Gáulùhng	PW:	Kowloon
10.	hauhbihn	PW:	back (back side); behind
11.	heui	v:	go
12.	hohkhaauh	n/PW:	school
13.	houh	m:	number
14.	jái	n:	son
15.	jáinéui	n:	children (of a family), sons and daughters
16.	jip	v:	meet, fetch, pick up (a person)
17.	jouh	v:	do, work
18.	jouh sāam	vo:	make clothes, have clothes made
19.	jouh sih	vo:	to work, have a job
20.	jyuh	v:	live
21.	làih	v:	come
22.	láu	m:	floor, storey of a building
23.	màhmā	n:	mother
24.	Móuh cho.	Ph:	That's right.

25. nàahmpàhngyáuh	n:	boy-friend
26. Nèihdēun Douh	PW:	Nathan Road
27. néui	n:	daughter
28. néuihpàhngyáuh	n:	girl-friend
29. sih	n:	piece of business, affair, matter
30. sīnsàang	n:	husband
31. sung	coV/V:	deliver
32. taaitáai	n:	wife; married woman
33. taam	v:	to visit
34. tái yīsāng	vo:	see the doctor
35. tùhng	coV:	with
36. yéh	n:	things, stuff
37. yīsāng	n:	doctor

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

Sīgēi	
Heui bīndouh a?	Where to?
daaphaak	passenger
Daaphaak	
gāai	street
gó tìuh gāai	that street
méng	name
mēyéh méng	what name?
giujouh, or giu	called, be called
giujouh mēyéh méng a?	what's its name?
gó tìuh gāai giujouh mēyéh méng a?	what's the name of that street?
Ngóh ǹhgeidāk gó tìuh gāai giujouh mēyéh méng.	I don't remember the name of the street.
hàahng	go; walk; drive
yātjihk	straight
Néih yātjihk hàahng sin.	Go straight first.
dou	arrive
wah néih tèng	tell you
Dou gamseuhnghá, ngóh wah néih tèng.	I'll tell you as we go along.
yauh	right
jyun	turn
jyun yauh	turn right
Hái nīdouh jyun yauh.	Turn right here.
jó	left
jyun jó	turn left
gwodī	a little farther on
Gwodī, jyun jó.	Just a little farther on, turn left.
Sīgēi	
Haih ǹhhaih nīdouh a?	Is this the place?

Daaphaak

M̀hhaih--gwodī tim.	No--still farther.
gwo	pass, cross by
gwo géi gàan	pass a few buildings
jauh	clause connector: then; and
Gwo géi gàan, jauh haih laak.	Pass a few buildings (more) and that's it.
Dou laak!	Arrived! (i.e.: Here it is!)
jósáubihn or jóbihn	left hand side, left side
Hái jósáubihn gó gàan.	It's that building on the left.

Sīgēi

tíhng	stop
tíhng chè	stop the car
hóyíh	be permitted, can
Nīdouh m̀hhóyíh tíhng chè.	You can't stop here.

Daaphaak

(pointing to the driveway:)

yahp-	in
yahpheui	go in
Jyun yahpheui lā.	Turn in (the driveway).
wái	place; seat
paak	park
yáuh wái paak chè	there's a place to park
yahpbihn	inside
Yahpbihn yáuh wái paak chè.	Inside there's a place to park.

(The car goes into the driveway)

Daaphaak

Hóu laak. Hái nīdouh tíhng chè lā.	OK. Stop here.
M̀hgòi néih dáng jahn--	Please wait--
jauh	immediately, soon
Ngóh jauh fàanlàih.	I'll be right back.

B. **Recapitulation:**

Sīgēi	
Heui bīndouh a?	Where to?
Daaphaak	
Ngóh m̀hgeidāk gó tìuh gāai giujouh mēyéh méng.	I don't remember the name of the street.
Néih yātjihk hàahng sìn.	Go straight first.
Dou gamseuhnghá, ngóh wáh néih tèng.	I'll tell you as we go along.
Hái nīdouh jyun yauh.	Turn right here.
Gwodī, jyun jó.	Just a little farther on, turn left.
Sīgēi	
Haih m̀hhaih nīdouh a?	Is this the place?
Daaphaak	
M̀hhaih--gwodī tìm.	No--still farther.
Gwo géi gàan, jauh haih laak.	Pass a few buildings more and that's it.
Dou laak!	Here it is!
Sīgēi	
Nīdouh m̀hhóyíh tìhng chè.	You aren't allowed to stop here.
Daaphaak	
(pointing to the driveway:)	
Jyun yahpheui lā.	Turn in (the driveway).
Yahpbihn yáuh wái paak chè.	Inside there's a place to park.
(The car goes into the driveway:)	
Daaphaak	
Hóu laak. Hái mīdouh tìhng chē lā.	OK--stop here.
M̀hgòi néih dáng jahn--ngóh jauh fàanlàih.	Please wait--I'll be right back.

II. NOTES

1. (yāt)jihk 'straight,' 'straight-away'

In combination with following heui, the portion yāt can be omitted.

(Yāt)jihk heui lā!	go straight.

In combination with following hàahng, yātjihk is preferred:

yātjihk hàahng: go (or walk) straight

(See BC)

(yāt)jihk may have the meaning 'straight-away,' 'without being interrupted or diverted'

Ex: Nī ga chē jihk heui Jùng-wàahn ga.	This bus goes straight to the Central District.

2. jauh = (1) ..., then....
(2) immediately

a. jauh in a two-clause sentence = ..., then ....

jauh connects subordinate clause and main clause in a sentence of sequential relationship:

(When or After) A, then B.

As clause connector jauh comes in the second clause (the main clause), following the subject of the clause (if any) and preceding the verb.

Ex: 1. Gwo géi gàan, jauh haih laak.	(After we) pass a few buildings, then there it is.
2. Gwo géi fānjūng, néih jauh hóyíh fàanlàih.	After a few minutes pass, you can come back.

(See BC and Drill 10)

b. jauh in a single clause sentence = 'right away, immediately'

In this jauh acts as an adverb, positioned immediately before the verb it concerns:

Ex: Ngóh jauh fàanlàih.	I'll be right back.
Ngóh jauh tùhng kéuih fàanlàih.	I'll be right back with him. or I'll bring him right back.
Ngóh tùhng kéuih jauh fàanlàih.	He and I will be right back.
Ngóh sàam dímjūng jauh fàanlàih.	I'll be back at 3 o'clock. (an early hour from the speaker's point of view)

(See BC)

3. hóyíh = 'can,' in the sense of 1) 'permitted to'
2) 'willing and able,' 'can do a favor'

hóyíh is an auxiliary verb, which takes another verb as its object. The colloquial English equivalent is usually 'can,' but it may have one of two different underlying meanings.

a. 'can' in the sense of 'permitted to'

Nīdouh m̀hhóyíh paak chē.	You can't park here. [Here it is not allowed to park]

(See BC and Drills 1, 4)

b. 'can' in the sense of 'can do a favor,' 'able and willing to...' In the negative = 'willing but unable'

1. Ngóh hóyíh je yāt baak mān (béi) néih.	I can lend you $100.
2. Néih hó m̀hhóyíh je yāt baak mān (béi) ngóh a?	Can you lend me $100?
3. Deuim̀hjyuh--ngóh m̀hhóyíh làih jip néih--yáuh dī sih.	I'm sorry, I can't come get you, I have some work (I have to attend to.)

4. tìhng, 'stop' with hái phrases.

tìhng, 'stop' is one of a group of verbs which a hái phrase can either precede or follow. (See note on hái with verbs of station,p273.)

Hái nīdouh tìhng chē lā.	Here stop. (i.e. Stop here.)

(See BC)

Tìhng hái bīndouh a?	Stop where?

(See Drill 7)

paak, 'park (a car)' also belongs to the group of verbs which a hái phrase can either precede or follow. Abstracting a common characteristic of this group of verbs, we say that they are 'standing still' verbs, or verbs of station. The verbs for stand, sit, lie down, stop, park and others are members of this group.

As for which comes first, the hái phrase or the other verb, it goes according to the Chinese language characteristic of making what you're talking about the subject of the sentence and putting it at the beginning of the sentence. If you're concerned about 'where' you put the hái phrase first; if you're most concerned about stopping, you put that part first.

(See BC and Drill 7)

5. Sentence suffix la for friendly advice or persuasion.

An imperative sentence with sentence suffix la at mid pitch on the intonation scale adds the connotation of friendly advice or persuasion.

Ex: M̀hhóu fàanjyun tàuh la.	Don't turn and go back = Better not turn and go back. (Said as friendly advice rather than command)

(See Drill 12)

6. jó and yauh, 'left' and 'right.'

jó and yauh are boundwords which may be bound to a preceding verb to form a VO phrase, or to a following boundword of place to become a PW, or to a following noun as a modifier.

Ex: VO:	jyun jó	turn left
PW:	jóbihn	left side, left, to the left
mod+N:	jó sáu	left hand

(See BC)

III. DRILLS

1. Expansion Drill

+ 1. a. fàanjyuntàuh	1. a. turn (the car) around and go back the other way
b. hái nīdouh fàanjyuntàuh	b. turn around here and go back
c. hóyíh hái nīdouh fàanjyuntàuh	c. you may turn around and go back here or it is permitted to turn around and go back from here
d. m̀hhóyíh hái nīdouh fàanjyuntàuh	d. it's not allowed to turn around and go back here
e. Hó m̀hhóyíh hái nīdouh fàanjyuntàuh a?	e. May I turn around and go back here?

Comment: fàanjyuntàuh [return-turn-head] is used when you have overshot the place you intend to go and want to direct the driver to turn the car around and go back.

+ 2. a. tanhauh	2. a. back up, reverse (a car)
b. tanhauh lā	b. back up please
c. tanhauh lā, gódouh yáuh go wái	c. back up, there's a place
d. tanhauh lā, gódouh hauhbihn yáuh go wái	d. back up, behind us there's a place
e. Tanhauh lā, gódouh hauhbihn yáuh go wái paak chē.	e. Back up, behind us there's a place to park.
+ 3. a. Wíhng Ōn Gūngsī	3. a. Wing On Company. (a department store in Hong Kong)
b. hái Wíhng Ōn Gūngsī	b. at Wing On
c. hái Wíhng Ōn Gūngsī tíhng chē	c. stop the car at Wing On
d. m̀hgòi néih hái Wíhng Ōn Gūngsī tíhng chē lā	d. please stop the car at Wing On
e. M̀hgòi néih hái Wíhng Ōn Gūngsī gwodī tíhng chē lā.	e. Please stop the car a little beyond Wing On.
4. a. yahpheui	4. a. enter, go in.
b. jyun yahpheui	b. turn in (there) [turn, go in]
c. gànjyuh jyun yahpheui.	c. follow (that car) in

d. gànjyuh gó ga chē jyun yahpheui	d. follow that car in [follow that car, turn in]
e. gànjyuh gó ga hāak chē jyun yahpheui	e. follow that black car in [follow that black car there turn in]
f. Gànjyuh chìhnbihn gó ga hāak chē jyun yahpheui.	f. Follow that black car ahead in. or Turn where that black car up there is. [Follow that black car over there, turn in.]
5. a. yáuh wái	5. a. there is space
b. yáuh go wái	b. there is a space
c. yáuh go wái paak chē	c. there is a place to park cars
d. hauhbihn yáuh go wái paak chē	d. in the back there is a place to park cars
e. ga hāak chē hauhbihn yáuh go wái paak chē	e. behind the black car there is a parking place
f. gó ga hāak chē hauhbihn yáuh go wái paak chē	f. behind that black car there is a parking place
g. Nē! Gó ga hāak chē hauhbihn yáuh go wái paak chē.	g. There! Behind the black car there is a parking place.

---

2. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

1. Hàaih, Yìngmán giujouh mēyéh a? How do you say "shoes" in English?	1. Hàaih, Yìngmán giujouh mēyéh a?
2. /pìhnggwó/	2. Pìhnggwó, Yìngmán giujouh mēyéh a?
3. /tòhng/	3. Tòhng, Yìngmán giujouh mēyéh a?
4. /bīu/	4. Bīu, Yìngmán giujouh mēyéh a?
5. /jūng/	5. Jūng, Yìngmán giujouh mēyéh a?
6. /gāi/	6. Gāi, Yìngmán giujouh mēyéh a?

7. /gāai/	7. Gāai, Yìngmán giujouh mēyéh a?

Comment: giu may substitute for giujouh in all sentences above.

---

3. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Gó gàan gūngsī giu mēyéh méng a? /Wìhng Ōn Gūngsī/	T: What's the name of that department store? /Wing On Company/
S: Giujouh Wìhng Ōn Gūngsī.	S: It's called the Wing On Company.
2. T: Gó gàan gūngsī giu mēyéh méng a? /shake/	T: What's the name of that department store? /shake/
S: Deuim̀hjyuh, ngóh m̀hjīdou giujouh mēyéh méng.	S: Excuse me, I don't know what it's called.

1. Gaaklèih gàan chàhlàuh giu mēyéh méng a? /shake/	1. Deuim̀hjyuh, ngóh m̀hjīdou giujouh mēyéh méng.
2. Jógán gó gàan ngàhnhòhng giu mēyéh méng a? /Méihgwok Ngàhnhòhng/	2. Giujouh Méihgwok Ngàhnhòhng.
3. Gó bihn gàan jáudim giu mēyéh méng a? /Màhnwàh Jáudim/	3. Giujouh Màhnwàh Jáudim.
4. Daaih Douh Jùng gó gàan chāansāt giu mēyéh méng a? /shake/	4. Deuim̀hjyuh, ngóh m̀hjīdou giujouh mēyéh méng.
5. Deuimihn go máhtàuh giu mēyéh méng a? /Tīnsīng Máhtàuh/	5. Giujouh Tīnsīng Máhtàuh.
6. Nī tìuh gāai giu mēyéh méng a? /Daaih Douh Jùng/	6. Giujouh Daaih Douh Jùng.
7. Gó gàan gūngsī giu mēyéh méng a? /shake/	7. Deuim̀hjyuh, ngóh m̀hjīdou giujouh mēyéh méng.

a. Repeat: Omitting 'méng' in question and answer.

---

4. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: M̀hgòi néih hái nīdouh tìhng chē lā.	T: Please stop (the car) here.
S: Hó m̀hhóyìh hái nīdouh tìhng chē a?	S: May one stop here? or Is it permitted to stop here?
1. M̀hgòi néih gwodī jyun jó lā.	1. Hó m̀hhóyìh gwodī jyun jó a?
2. M̀hgòi néih jyun yahpheui lā.	2. Hó m̀hhóyìh jyun yahpheui a?
+ 3. M̀hgòi néih jyun yahp yauhsáubihn lā. (yauhsáubihn = right hand side) Please turn in on the right hand side.	3. Hó m̀hhóyìh jyun yahp yauhsáubihn a?
4. M̀hgòi néih hái nīdouh jyun yahp heui lā.	4. Hó m̀hhóyìh hái nīdouh jyun yahp heui a?
5. M̀hgòi néih tanhauh lā.	5. Hó m̀hhóyìh tanhauh a?

---

5. Substitution Drill: Students gesture where appropriate. Repeat first sentence, then substitute as directed.

1. Nīdouh m̀hhóyìh jyun yauh. It's not allowed to turn to the right here.	1. Nīdouh m̀hhóyìh jyun yauh.
+ 2. diuhtàuh (turn around (a car))	2. Nīdouh m̀hhóyìh diuhtàuh.
3. jyun yahpheui	3. Nīdouh m̀hhóyìh jyun yahpheui.
4. tanhauh	4. Nīdouh m̀hhóyìh tanhauh.
5. yāt jihk heui	5. Nīdouh m̀hhóyìh yāt jihk heui.
6. jyun jó.	6. Nīdouh m̀hhóyìh jyun jó.

Comment: Compare word order of:

1. Nīdouh m̀hhóyìh jyun jó.
2. M̀hhóyìh hái nīdouh jyun jó.
3. Hái nīdouh m̀hhóyìh jyun jó.

} You can't turn left here.

These are interchangeable. Note absence of hái before nīdouh in first sentence. Omission of hái before PW is permitted when PW begins the sentence.

---

6. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

1. Yiu hái nīdouh tanhauh. (We) want to back up here. or Back up here.	1. Yiu hái nīdouh tanhauh.
2. m̀hsái	2. M̀hsái hái nīdouh tanhauh.
3. diuhtàuh	3. M̀hsái hái nīdouh diuhtàuh.
4. yiu	4. Yiu hái nīdouh diuhtàuh.
5. jyun yahpheui	5. Yiu hái nīdouh jyun yahpheui.
6. hóyíh	6. Hóyíh hái nīdouh jyun yahpheui.
7. jyun yauh	7. Hóyíh hái nīdouh jyun yauh.
8. hóu m̀hhóu	8. Hóu m̀hhóu hái nīdouh jyun yauh a? Is it OK to turn right here?
9. yātjihk heui	9. Hóu m̀hhóu hái nīdouh yātjihk heui a?
10. fàanjyun tàuh	10. Hóu m̀hhóu hái nīdouh fàanjyuntàuh a?

---

7. Response Drill: Students gesture where appropriate.

Ex: T: Tīnsīng Máhtàuh	T: Star Ferry
S1: Tìhng hái bīndouh a?	S1: Where should I stop?
S2: Tìhng hái Tīnsīng Máhtàuh lā.	S2: Stop at the Star Ferry.

1. Tìhng hái bīndouh a? /Màhnwàh Jáudim mùhnháu/	1. Tìhng hái Màhnwàh Jáudim mùhnháu lā.
2. Tìhng hái bīndouh a? /Wìhng Ōn Gūngsī deuimihn/	2. Tìhng hái Wìhng Ōn Gūngsī deuimihn lā.
3. Tìhng hái bīndouh a? /Méihgwok Ngàhnhòhng gaaklèih/	3. Tìhng hái Méihgwok Ngàhnhòhng gaaklèih lā.
4. Tìhng hái bīndouh a? /Jùnggwok Chàhlàuh chìhnbihn/	4. Tìhng hái Jùnggwok Chàhlàuh chìhnbihn lā.
5. Tìhng hái bīndouh a? /tòuhsyùgwún mùhnháu/	5. Tìhng hái tòuhsyùgwún mùhnháu lā.
6. Tìhng hái bīndouh a? /Tīnsīng Máhtàuh gwodī/	6. Tìhng hái Tīnsīng Màhtàuh gwodī lā.

7. Tìhng hái bīndouh a? /Méihgwok Jáudim yauhsáubihn/	7. Tìhng hái Méihgwok Jáudim yauhsáubihn lā.
+ 8. Tìhng hái bīndouh a? /ngàhnhòhng yauhbihn/ (right side)	8. Tìhng hái ngàhnhòhng yauhbihn lā.

Comment: Tìhng, 'stop' is one of a group of verbs which accepts a hái phrase in either pre-verb position or post-verb position.

Ex: A: Tìhng hái bīndouh a?
Hái bīndouh tìhng a? } Where should I stop?

B: Tìhng hái Tīnsīng Máhtàuh lā.
Hái Tīnsīng Máhtàuh tìhng lā. } Stop at the Star Ferry.

---

8. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

1. Jùnggwok Chàhlàuh gwodī, jyun yauh. A little beyond the China Teahouse, turn right.	1. Jùnggwok chàhlàuh gwodī, jyun yauh.
2. jyun jó	2. Jùnggwok Chàhlàuh gwodī, jyun jó.
3. chē jaahm	3. Chē jaahm gwodī, jyun jó.
4. jyun yauh	4. Chē jaahm gwodī, jyun yauh.
5. Hèunggóng Chāansāt	5. Hèunggóng Chāansāt gwodī, jyun yauh.
6. Màhnwàh Jáudim	6. Màhnwàh Jáudim gwodī, jyun yauh.
7. Dāk Fuh Douh	7. Dāk Fuh Douh gwodī, jyun yauh.
8. hohkhaauh	8. Hohkhaauh gwodī, jyun yauh.
9. Daaih Douh Jùng	9. Daaih Douh Jùng gwodī, jyun yauh.
10. jyun jó	10. Daaih Douh Jùng gwodī, jyun jó.

a. Do #1-4 as expansion drill, incorporating hàahngdou 'walk to, go to,' thus:

T: Jùnggwok Chàhlàuh gwodī, jyun yauh.	A little beyond the China Teahouse, turn right.
S: Hàahngdou Jùnggwok Chàhlàuh gwodī, jyun yauh.	Go a little beyond the China Teahouse, and turn right.

Note that hàahng is not limited to the meaning 'walk,' but is used as a verb of locomotion for cars as well.

---

9. Expansion Drill: Students should gesture to indicate directions.

Ex: T: Wíhng Ōn Gūngsī gwodī, jyun jó.	T: Turn left a little beyond Wing On Department Store.
S: Wíhng Ōn Gūngsī gwodī, jyun jó, m̀hhaih jyun yauh.	S: Turn left a little beyond Wing On Department Store; not right.
1. Méihgwok Ngàhnhòhng gwodī, jyun jó.	1. Méihgwok Ngàhnhòhng gwodī, jyun jó, m̀hhaih jyun yauh.
2. Chē jaahm gwodī, jyun yauh.	2. Chē jaahm gwodī, jyun yauh, m̀hhaih jyun jó.
3. Jùnggwok Chàhlàuh gwodī, jyun yauh.	3. Jùnggwok Chàhlàuh gwodī, jyun yauh, m̀hhaih jyun jó.
4. Hèunggóng Chāansāt gwodī, jyun jó.	4. Hèunggóng Chāansāt gwodī, jyun jo, m̀hhaih jyun yauh.
5. Màhnwàh Jáudim gwodī, jyun yauh.	5. Màhnwàh Jáudim gwodī, jyun yauh, m̀hhaih jyun jó.

---

10. Substitution Drill: Repeat first sentence, then substitute as directed.

1. Gwo léuhng go chē jaahm, jauh haih laak. Pass two bus stops, and there you are.	1. Gwo léuhng go chē jaahm, jauh haih laak.
2. yāt tìuh gāai	2. Gwo yāt tìuh gāai, jauh haih laak.
3. sàam go chē jaahm	3. Gwo sàam go chē jaahm, jauh haih laak.
4. léuhng gàan gūngsī	4. Gwo léuhng gàan gūngsī, jauh haih laak.
5. léuhng tìuh gāai	5. Gwo léuhng tìuh gāai, jauh haih laak.
6. yāt gàan	6. Gwo yāt gàan, jauh haih laak.
7. géi gàan	7. Gwo géi gàan, jauh haih laak.

---

11. Response Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih hái bīn gàan chàhlàuh a? /gaaklèih/	Which teahouse is he in? /next door, adjacent/
S: Kéuih hái gaaklèih gó gàan.	He's in the one next door.
1. Kéuih hái bīn gàan ngàhnhòhng a? /deuimihn/	1. Kéuih hái deuimihn gó gàan.
2. Néih heui bīn gàan gūngsī a? /chìhnbihn/	2. Ngóh heui chìhnbihn gó gàan.
3. Néih màhmā hái bīn gàan séjihlàuh a? /yauhbihn/	3. Ngóh màhmā hái yauhbihn gó gàan.
4. Néih_séung heui bīn gàan chāansāt a? /nī bihn/	4. Ngóh séung heui nī bihn gó gàan.
5. Kéuih hái bīn gàan hohkhaauh a? /jósáubihn/	5. Kéuih hái jósáubihn gó gàan.

Comment: Compare the structure and meaning above with one you have studied previously:

1. Kéuih hái gaaklèih gó gàan chàhlàuh.
   He's at the teahouse next door. [next-door teahouse]
2. Kéuih hái gó gàan chàhlàuh gaaklèih.
   He's next door to the teahouse.

---

12. Transformation Drill: Affirmative to Negative.

Ex: T: Kéuih heui Tīnsīng Máhtàuh.	T: He's going to the Star Ferry.
S: Kéuih m̀hheui Tīnsīng Máhtàuh.	S: He's not going to the Star Ferry.
1. Kéuih_jip ngóh heui tái yīsāng.	1. Kéuih_m̀hjip ngóh heui tái yīsāng.
2. Hái nīdouh hóyíh tanhauh.	2. Hái nīdouh m̀hhóyíh tanhauh.
3. Ngóh yáuh sahp mān.	3. Ngóh móuh sahp mān.
4. Ngóh gau chīn máaih bīu.	4. Ngóh m̀hgau chīn máaih bīu.
5. Chàhn Táai deui hàaih géi leng.	5. Chàhn Táai deui hàaih m̀hhaih géi leng.
6. Wòhng Sàang jùngyi tùhng ngóh bàhbā heui yám chàh.	6. Wòhng Sàang_m̀hjùngyi tùhng ngóh bàhbā heui yám chàh.
+ 7. Sihk yīn lā!	7. M̀hhóu sihk yīn la! (friendly advice)

8. Wòhng Táai tùhng ngóh màhmā hóu jùngyi jouh sāam.	8. Wòhng Táai tùhng ngóh màhmā m̀hjùngyi jouh sāam.
9. Ngóh táidóu Léih Sīujé hái deuimihn gàan chàhlàuh.	9. Ngóh táim̀hdóu Léih Sīujé hái deuimihn gàan chàhlàuh.
10. Fàanjyun tàuh lā!	10. M̀hhóu fàanjyun tàuh la. or M̀hsái fàanjyun tàuh la.

Comment: in #7 and #10 above note that the sentence suffix on the negative sentences is la and not lā. The mid-pitched final la gives the imperative sentence a connotation of friendly advice, contrasting to the high pitch lā, polite but more urgent.

---

13. Transformation Drill: Change the sentence from a question-word question to a choice type question, following the pattern of the example.

Ex: T: Bīn tīuh haih Dāk Fuh Douh Jùng a?	T: Which street is Des Voeux Central?
S: Nī tīuh haih m̀hhaih Dāk Fuh Douh Jùng a?	S: Is this Des Voeux Road Central?

1. Bīn gàan haih Jùnggwok Ngàhnhòhng a?	1. Nī gàan haih m̀hhaih Jùnggwok Ngàhnhòhng a?
2. Bīn gàan haih Wìhng Ōn Gūngsī a?	2. Nī gàan haih m̀hhaih Wìhng Ōn Gūngsī a?
3. Bīn gàan haih Méihgwok Jáudim a?	3. Nī gàan haih m̀hhaih Méihgwok Jáudim a?
4. Bīn tīuh haih Daaih Douh Jùng a?	4. Nī tīuh haih m̀hhaih Daaih Douh Jùng a?
5. Bīn gàan haih Màhnwàh Jáudim a?	5. Nī gàan haih m̀hhaih Màhnwàh Jáudim a?

---

14. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

1. Chìhnbihn yáuh móuh wái paak chē a? Is there a place to park the car in front?	1. Chìhnbihn yáuh móuh wái paak chē a?
2. /yahpbihn/	2. Yahpbihn yáuh móuh wái paak chē a?
3. /deuimihn/	3. Deuimihn yáuh móuh wái paak chē a?

4. /m̀uhnháu/	4. M̀uhnháu yáuh móuh wái paak chē a?
5. /gaaklèih/	5. Gaaklèih yáuh móuh wái paak chē a?
6. /nījógán/	6. Nījógán yáuh móuh wái paak chē a?
7. /jóbihn/	7. Jóbihn yáuh móuh wái paak chē a?
8. /yauhbihn/	8. Yauhbihn yáuh móuh wái paak chē a?

15. Response Drill:

+ Ex: T: Néih sīk m̀hsīk jà chē a? /m̀hsīk/	Do you know how to drive? [drive car] /not know how/
S: Ngóh m̀hsīk jà chē.	I don't know how to drive.
1. Bīngo gaau néih jà chē ga? /Hòh Sàang/	1. Hòh Sàang gaau ngóh jà chē ge.
2. Hèunggóng yáuh móuh hohkhaauh gaau jà chē ga? /dāk géi gàan...ge ja/	2. Hèunggóng dāk géi gàan hohkhaauh gaau jà chē ge ja.
3. Néih hái bīndouh hohk jà chē ga? /Gáulùhng/	3. Ngóh hái Gáulùhng hohk jà chē ge.
4. Nī tìuh gāai hó m̀hhóyíh hohk jà chē ga? /m̀hhóyíh bo/++ Is this a street that you can learn to drive on?	4. Nī tìuh gāai m̀hhóyíh hohk jà chē bo.
5. Néih jùngyi jà bīn gwok ge chē a? /Méihgwok chē/ Which country's cars do you like to drive?	5. Ngóh jùngyi jà Méihgwok chē.
6. Néih jùng m̀hjùngyi jà chē a? /m̀hhaih géi jùngyi ge ja/	6. Ngóh m̀hhaih géi jùngyi jà chē ge ja.

++ Access to some streets in Hong Kong is prohibited to learner drivers.

16. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: M̀hgòi néih, faaidī lā! /jà/	T: Faster please. /drive/
S: M̀hgòi néih jà faaidī lā!	S: Please drive faster.

1. M̀hgòi néih, maahndī lā! /góng/	1. M̀hgòi néih góng maahndī lā!
2. M̀hgòi néih, faaidī lā! /hàahng/	2. M̀hgòi néih hàahng faaidī lā!
3. M̀hgòi néih, chèuhngdī lā! /jouh/ Longer please. (said to a tailor)	3. M̀hgòi néih jouh chèuhngdī lā! Make it longer please.
4. M̀hgòi néih, dyúndī lā! /jouh/	4. M̀hgòi néih jouh dyúndī lā!
5. M̀hgòi néih, pèhngdī lā! /maaih/ Cheaper! (said to shopkeeper)	5. M̀hgòi néih maaih pèhngdī lā! Sell it cheaper!
6. M̀hgòi néih, daaihdī lā! /jouh/	6. M̀hgòi néih jouh daaihdī lā!
7. M̀hgòi néih, faaidī lā! /sé/	7. M̀hgòi néih sé faaidī lā!
8. M̀hgòi néih, saidī lā! /sé/	8. M̀hgòi néih sé saidī lā!
9. M̀hgòi néih, futdī lā. /jouh/ Wider please. (said to a tailor)	9. M̀hgòi néih jouh futdī lā! Please make (it) a bit wider.
10. M̀hgòi néih, jaakdī lā. /jouh/ A bit narrower, please.	10. M̀hgòi néih jouh jaakdī lā! Please make (it) a bit narrower.

---

17. Classroom Conversation Drill: Teacher asks, students answer, giving their actual Cantonese names. Students should learn to react appropriately to the different questions.

1. Gwaising a? (polite)	1. Sīu sing Surname. or Ngóh sing _______.
2. Sing mēyéh a? (ordinary)	2. Ngóh sing Surname.
+ 3. Gwaisingmìhng a? (polite) Your family name and given name?	3. Surname Given name.
4. Mēyéh méng a?	4. Surname Given name.
5. Néih giu mēyéh méng a?	5. Surname Given name.
6. Néih mēyéh méng a?	6. Surname Given name.

Comment: The response to #4 mēyéh méng a? may be simply the given name if the surname is not in question.

Comment: An expanded form of the responses to #3-6 is:

Ngóh sing _________ giu(jouh) _________.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

1) yātján = in a little while

2) dīksí = taxi

3) gàaiháu = intersection [street-mouth]

4) hóu chíh = very likely ...., most likely ...

5) Ei! = mild exclamation

6) gwojó la = here: we've overshot it, we've passed it.
gwo = pass by

7) sái = drive

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. Say to the classmate next to you:	B. And he responds:
1. Could you please tell me which building is the Wing On Company?	1. It's that one on the right hand side.
2. What's the name of this street?	2. This is Queens Road Central.
3. Is this Nathan Road?	3. No--Nathan Road is on the Kowloon side.
4. Here it is! Please stop here. (as if said to taxi-driver)	4. It's not permitted to stop here--a little further down it's OK to stop.
5. Is it OK to park here?	5. No. Go in there to the right--there's a place inside to park.
6. What street is your school on?	6. I forget the name of the street--
7. Can you drive a car?	7. Yes, I can--do you want me to teach you to drive?
8. Turn right just beyond the library.	8. You can't turn in to the right on that street. Should I stop here?

9. Is that the Mandarin Hotel there on the right?	9. No, that building is the Hilton Hotel.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 13

1. daaphaak	n:	passenger
2. diuhtàuh	vo:	turn (a car) around [reverse head]
3. dou	v:	arrive
4. fàanjyun tàuh	vp:	turn (the car) around and go back [return-turn head]
5. gāai	n:	street
6. giu(jouh)	v:	is called, is named
7. gwaisingmìhng?	Ph:	what is your surname and given name? (polite)
8. gwo	v:	pass by (a point); cross (a street); go over to (a place)
9. gwodī	Ph:	beyond; a little farther on
10. Gwodī tīm.	Ph:	Go further on; Keep going (said to taxi driver)
11. hàahng	v:	go; walk; drive
12. hóyíh	auxV:	can, as (1) be permitted, allowed to; (2) be willing to
13. jà chē	vo:	to drive a car
14. jauh	adv:	immediately, soon; as clause connector = then; and
15. jihk	bf:	straight
16. jó	bf:	left (direction)
17. jóbihn	PW:	left side
18. jósáubihn	PW:	lefthand side
19. jyun	v:	turn
20. la	ss:	as sen. suf. to imperative sentence, gives connotation of friendly advice
21. méng	n:	name; given name
22. paak (chē)	v(o):	park a car
23. tanhauh	v:	back (a car) up, move back
24. tìhng	v:	stop
25. wái	n:	place, seat
26. Wíhngōn Gūngsī	PW:	Wing On Department Store
27. yahp	bf:	enter

28.	yahpbihn	PW:	inside
29.	yahpheui	v:	go in; enter
30.	yātjihk	adv:	straight a) direction b) without being diverted: straightaway
31.	yauh	bf:	right (direction)
32.	yauhbihn	PW:	right side
33.	yauhsáubihn	PW:	right hand side

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(A Hong Kong native and a foreign friend have lunch in a Chinese restaurant:)

Búndeihyàhn	
fógei	waiter
A1 Fógei!	Waiter!
choipáai	menu, bill of fare
nìng	carry
nìnglàih; nìngheui	bring; take
nìng go choipáai làih lā	bring the food list please
nìng go choipáai làih béi ngóh lā	please bring me a menu
táiháh	have a look
béi ngóh táiháh lā	please let me have a look
M̀hgòi néih nìng go choipáai làih béi ngóh táiháh lā.	Please bring me a menu to have a look at.
Fógei	
Hóu aak, jauh làih.	Yes sir; coming right away.
ngoihgwokyàhn	foreigner
Ngoihgwokyàhn	
dím	order (food from a list)
choi	food, dishes
Ngóh m̀hsīk dím choi ge.	I don't know how to order food.
gaaisiuh	recommend, introduce
M̀hgòi néih gaaisiuhháh lā.	Please make a recommendation.
Búndeihyàhn	
Gám, dáng ngóh dím lā.	Well then, I'll choose.
yúhjyū	suckling pig
gwo	verb-suffix: indicates experience; to have done something before.
meih	not yet
sihkgwo meih?	have (you) eaten (it) before?

	question formula: Verbed before, or not yet?
Néih sihkgwo yúhjyū meih a?	Have you ever eaten roast suckling pig?
Ngoihgwokyàhn	
Meih a.	Not yet.
yāt chi dōu meih ...	not yet even one time
Yāt chi dōu meih sihkgwo.	I haven't eaten it even once.
Búndeihyàhn	
hóu ma?	OK?
ma?	sen. suf. which makes a question of the sentence it is attached to.
Sihháh lā, hóu ma?	Let's try it, OK?
Ngoihgwokyàhn	
Hóu ā.	Fine.
Búndeihyàhn	
hā	shrimp
yīkwaahk?	... or ...?
Néih jùngyi sihk hā yīkwaahk sihk yú nē?	Do you like to eat shrimp, or eat fish?
Ngoihgwokyàhn	
Sihdaahn lā.	As you wish. i.e., Either one.
jùngyi sihk hā	like to eat shrimp
dōuhaih jùngyi sihk hā	really like to eat shrimp
bātgwo	however, but, although
Bātgwo ngóh dōuhaih jùngyi sihk hā.	Although I really like shrimp. (i.e., I really like shrimp better.)
juhng	still, in addition, also (precedes verbal expression)
juhng oi dī mēyéh a?	also want some what?
juhng séung oi dī mēyéh a?	also want to have some what?

Ngóhdeih juhng séung oi dī mēyéh a?	What else do we want to have?

Búndeihyàhn

tōng	soup
Juhng séung oi go tōng tīm.	In addition let's have a soup too.

(Later the local resident calls the waiter again:)

Búndeihyàhn

-dò-	additional; another; more (precedes Measure expression)
bēi dò jī bējáu ngóh	give me another bottle of beer
-dò léuhng jī bējáu	two more bottles of beer
Fógei! Bēi dò léuhng jī bējáu ngóhdeih tīm lā.	Waiter! Please give us two more bottles of beer.

Ngoihgwokyàhn

àhcho	good [not wrong]
Dī yùhjyù jàmhaih àhcho.	The suckling pig is really good.

Búndeihyàhn

dōdī	more
Sihk dōdī lā!	Have some more!

Ngoihgwokyàhn

dòjeh	thank you (for the gift)
Gau laak. Dòjehsaai.	I've had plenty. Thanks a lot.

Búndeihyàhn

máaihdāan	check please! [together-list]
Fógei! Máaihdāan!	Waiter! The check please!

B. Recapitulation:

(A Hong Kong native and a foreign friend have lunch in a Chinese restaurant:)

Búndeihyàhn

Ai! Fógei!	Waiter!

Ǹhgòi néih nìng go choipáai làih béi ngóh táiháh lā.	Please bring me a menu to have a look at.
Fógei	
Hóu aak, jauh làih.	Yes sir, coming right away.
Ngoihgwokyàhn	
Ngóh m̀hsīk dím choi ga. Ǹhgòi néih gaaisiuhháh lā.	I don't know how to order food. Please make a recommendation.
Búndeihyàhn	
Gám, dáng ngóh dím lā.	Well then, I'll choose.
Néih sihkgwo yúhjyū meih a?	Have you ever eaten roast suckling pig?
Ngoihgwokyàhn	
Meih a--yāt chi dōu meih sihkgwo.	Not yet--I've not eaten it even once.
Búndeihyàhn	
Siháh lā, hóu ma?	Let's try it, OK?
Ngoihgwokyàhn	
Hóu ā.	Fine.
Búndeihyàhn	
Néih jùngyi sihk hā yīkwaahk sihk yú nē?	Do you prefer shrimp, or fish?
Ngoihgwokyàhn	
Sihdaahn lā.	As you wish. i.e., Either one.
Bātgwo ngóh dōuhaih jùngyi sihk hā.	Although I really like shrimp. (i.e., I really like shrimp better.)
Ngóhdeih juhng séung oi dī mēyéh a?	What else do we want to have?
Búndeihyàhn	
Juhng séung oi go tòng tīm.	In addition, let's have a soup, too.
(Later the Hong Kong native calls the waiter again:)	
Fógei! Béi dò léuhng jī bējáu ngóhdeih tīm lā.	Waiter! Please give us two more bottles of beer.

Ngoihgwokyàhn	
Dī yúhjyū jànhaih m̀hcho.	The suckling pig is really good!
Búndeihyàhn	
Sihk dōdī lā!	Have some more!
Ngoihgwokyàhn	
Gau laak. Dòjehsaai.	I've had plenty. Thanks a lot.
Búndeihyàhn	
Fógei! Màaihdāan!	Waiter! The check please!

II. NOTES

A. Culture notes

1. Styles of cooking Chinese food.

Different areas of China have different styles of cooking and different specialties, making use of the foods particular to each area. For an interesting discussion of the hows and whats of Chinese food, see How to Cook and Eat in Chinese, by Buwei Yang Chao, (NY: John Day, 1949)

2. choi. 'a dish (of food),' 'food'.

The Chinese style of informal eating is for each person to have a bowl of rice (if it's in the South--in the North they eat bread more) for himself, and for there to be several dishes on the table which are communal property for everyone to eat from. The eater uses his chopsticks or a spoon to take food from the center dishes. The center dishes are called choi.

A choi can be a fish dish, a meat dish, or a vegetable dish. choi is also the general term for 'vegetable.' Finally, choi may mean 'cooking style,' or 'food,' as in Seuhnghói choi, 'Shanghai cooking,' 'Shanghai food'; Jùngchoi 'Chinese cooking,' 'Chinese food.'

(In this book we use the term Jùngchoi as the general term for Chinese food. There is another term sometimes used having the same meaning: Tòhngchoi = Chinese food.)

3. choipáai and choidāan, 'menu'

choipáai, 'menu,' 'bill of fare,' is the list you choose from in a restaurant.

choidāan, 'menu' is the written-down account of a particular meal.

B. Structure Notes:

1. directional verb compounds. Ex: nìnglàih, 'bring (something) here; and nìngheui, 'take (something) there'

a. Directional verbs use -làih and -heui as suffixes to indicate direction towards and away from the speaker (or other point of reference).

Ex:	
nìng	carry
nìnglàih	carry towards the speaker--i.e., bring here
nìngheui	carry away from the speaker--i.e., take there

We give the directional verb plus the heui/làih suffix the name directional verb compound.

b. The noun object of a directional verb compound comes between the verb and the suffix. In the absence of a noun object, the verb and suffix come together, since a pronoun object is not stated:

Ex:	
A: Nìng jì bējáu làih lā.	Please bring a bottle of beer.
B: Hóu, jauh nìnglàih.	Right--bringing it right away.

(See BC and Drills 1.3, 10)

c. Another way of forming sentences with directional verb compounds is to put the logical object of the verb into subject position.

Ex:	
Dī bējá yìhgìng nìnglàih laak.	The beer (I've) already brought.

2. gwo 'pass,' used as verb suffix

gwo, a verb with the basic meaning 'pass,' 'pass by,' 'pass through,' is used as a verb suffix indicating 'have passed through (experienced)' the action expressed by the verb.

Ex: sihkgwo, 'pass through the experience of eating,' 'have eaten,' 'ate.'

(See BC and Drills 7, 8, 9, 13)

3. meih 'not yet.'

The negative meih 'not yet' precedes the verb in a negative sentence. In a choice question, it follows the verb:

Ex:	1. Meih sihkgwo.	(I) haven't had the experience of eating (it).
	2. Sihkgwo meih?	Have (you) had the experience of eating (this)?

(See BC and Drills 3, 8, 9, 13)

meih 'not yet,' indicates that the action expressed by the verb is one which the speaker contemplates doing--'I haven't eaten it yet,' (but I'd like to.)

4. mēyéh, (mātyéh) as mass noun.

mēyéh functions as a mass noun, in taking the mass measure dī:

Ex:	dī mēyéh?	Some what?
	Sihk dī mēyéh a?	What will you have to eat? [eat-a little-what?]

5. ...,yìkwaahk...... = '....., or .....?'

yìkwaahk 'or' can be called an interrogative conjunction. It connects two verb phrases, indicating: .A. or .B., which one?

Ex: Néih jùngyi sihk hā, yìkwaahk sihk yú nē?	Which do you prefer, to eat shrimp, or to eat fish? or Do you want shrimp, or would you rather have fish?

(See BC and Drills 2, 3)

The English possibility of:

A: Do you want coffee or tea?

B: No thanks.

is not covered by yìkwaahk. In Chinese you would have to rephrase the sentence to say something like 'Would you like something to drink? We have coffee and tea.'

6. dōuhaih 'really'

In the following sentence taken from the Basic Conversation,

Bātgwo ngóh dōuhaih jùngyi sihk hā.	Although I really like shrimp.

dōuhaih is said with very light stress, and has very little content meaning. It serves as an intonation marker, lightening an otherwise blunt statement. The same function is served by 'really' in the English translation. The situation is: you'd rather have shrimp than fish but you don't want to insist upon it.

7. sentence suffix ma?

ma? is an interrogative sentence suffix which makes a question of the affirmative or negative sentence it attaches to. It is not used with a sentence which is already in question form--i.e., it is not used with choice-type and question-word questions.

(See BC)

8. sentence suffix ā

In the Basic Conversation there is the following exchange:

A: Siháh lā, hóu ma?	Let's try it, OK?
B: Hóu ā.	Fine.

The raised intonation on the final ā expresses liveliness.

(See BC)

9. juhng 'still,' 'in addition,' 'also'

juhng is an adverb which positions before a verb.

Ex: 1. Juhng séung oi dī mēyéh a?	Also think you want some what? i.e. What else would you like to have?
2. Juhng séung oi dī tòng tím.	We also think we want some soup too.

(See BC and Drills 6,11)

10. dò 'additional;' 'more'

dò with the above meanings is bound to a following number-measure phrase. When the number is yāt 'one,' the number part may be omitted. Before mass nouns the measure dī follows dò, with the number yāt omitted.

Ex: 1. dò (yāt)dī	another bottle, one more bottle, an additional bottle
2. dò léuhng go	two more, an additional two
3. dò (yāt) dī tòng	more soup, additional soup

(See BC and Drils 1.3, 1.4, 5, 10)

11. bātgwo however, but, although

bātgwo is a conjunction joining two clauses. Its sentence position is first word in the second clause.

Ex: Yú tùhng hā dóu hóu hóusihk, bātgwo ngóh dōuhaih jùngyi sihk hā.	Fish and shrimp are both good--but I really prefer shrimp.

III. DRILLS

1. Expansion Drill

+ 1.	a. Wún	a. bowl
	b. Wún tòng.	b. bowl of soup
	c. Yám wún tòng.	c. have a bowl of soup
	d. Yám wún tòng lā.	d. Please have a bowl of soup.
	e. Yám dò wún tòng lā.	e. Have another bowl of soup.
	f. Yám dōdī tòng lā.	f. Have some more soup.

Comment: In this group of sentences wún, 'bowl' is used as a Measure. wún may also be used as a Noun, as in sàam jek wún, '3 bowls.' (also sàam go wún, '3 bowls.')

+ 2.	a. Bùi	a. cupful
	b. Bùi chàh	b. a cup of tea
	c. Béi bùi chàh ngóh lā.	c. Please give me a cup of tea.
	d. Ǹhgòi néih béi bùi chàh ngóh lā.	d. Please give me a cup of tea.
+ 3.	a. Būi.	a. cup
	b. Jek būi.	b. a cup
	c. Nìng jek būi làih.	c. Bring a cup.
	d. Nìng dò jek būi lāih.	d. Bring another cup.
	e. Nìng dò léuhng jek būi làih.	e. Bring two more cups.
	f. Nìng dò léuhng jek būi làih tìm.	f. Bring two more cups too.
+ 4.	a. Baahk faahn.	a. white rice. (i.e. plain boiled or steamed rice)
	b. Wún baahk faahn.	b. a bowl of rice.
	c. Béi wún baahk faahn ngóh.	d. Give me a bowl of rice.
	d. Béi dò wún baahk faahn ngóh.	d. Give me another bowl of rice.
	e. Ǹhgòi néih béi dò wún baahk faahn ngóh lā.	e. Please give me another bowl of rice.
+ 5.	a. Cháau mihn	a. fried noodles
	b. Sihk cháau mihn	b. eat fried noodles
	c. Jùngyi sihk cháau mihn	c. like to eat fried noodles
+	d. Jùngyi sihk cháau mihn yìkwaahk tòng mihn a?	d. like to eat fried noodles or soup noodles?

e. Néih jùngyi sihk cháau mihn yìkwaahk tòng mihn a?	e. Would you like to eat fried noodles or soup noodles?

---

2. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Néih yám mātyéh a? /chàh/gafē/	T: What will you have to drink? /tea/coffee/
S: Néih yám chàh yìkwaahk gafē nē?	S: Would you like tea, or coffee? (i.e., Which would you like, tea or coffee?)
1. Néih yám mātyéh a? /heiséui/bējáu/	1. Néih yám heiséui yìkwaahk bējáu a?
2. Néih oi mātyéh a? /jyùyuhk/ngàuhyuhk/	2. Néih oi jyùyuhk yìkwaahk ngàuhyuhk a?
3. Néih heui bīndouh a? /Jùngwàahn/Gáulùhng/	3. Néih heui Jùngwàahn yìkwaahk Gáulùhng a?
4. Néih wán bīngo a? /Hòh Sàang/Hòh Táai/	4. Néih wán Hòh Sàang yìkwaahk Hòh Táai a?
+ 5. Néih jùngyi bīndī a? /cháau faahn/cháau mihn/ (cháau faahn = fried rice)	5. Néih jùngyi cháau faahn yìkwaahk cháau mihn a? Would you prefer fried rice, or fried noodles?
6. Néih jùngyi bīndī a? + /Seuhnghói choi/Gwóngdùng choi/ (/Shanghai food/Cantonese food/)	6. Néih jùngyi Seuhnghói choi yìkwaahk Gwóngdùng choi nē? Would you prefer Shanghai food or Cantonese food?
7. Néih jùngyi bīndī a? + /Jùng choi/Sāichāan/ (/Chinese food/Western food/)	7. Néih jùngyi Jùng choi yìkwaahk Sāichāan nē? Would you prefer Chinese food, or Western food?

---

3. Response Drill

Ex: T: /chaau faahn/ chaau mihn/	T: /fried rice/fried noodles/
S1: Néih jùngyi sihk cháau faahn yìhwaahk sihk cháau mihn a?	S1: Do you want to have fried rice, or fried noodles.
S2: Sihdaahn lā. Cháau faahn tùhng cháau mihn dōu dāk.	S2: Either one. Fried rice and fried noodles are both fine.
1. /jyùyuhk/ngàuhyuhk/	1. S1: Néih jùngyi sihk jyùyuhk yìkwaahk ngàuhyuhk a? S2: Sihdaahn lā. Jyùyuhk tùhng ngàuhyuhk dōu dāk.
2. /Jùngchoi/Sāichāan/	2. S1: Néih jùngyi sihk Jùngchoi yìkwaahk Sāichāan a? S2: Sihdaahn lā. Jùngchoi tùhng Sāichāan dōu dāk.
3. /Seuhnghói choi/Gwóngdùng choi/	3. S1: Néih jùngyi sihk Seuhnghói choi yìkwaahk Gwóngdùng choi a? S2: Sihdaahn lā. Seuhnghói choi tùhng Gwóngdùng choi dōu dāk.
4. /ngàuhnáaih/heiséui/	4. S1: Néih jùngyi yám ngàuhnáaih yìkwaahk heiséui a? S2: Sihdaahn lā. Ngàuhnáaih tùhng heiséui dōu dāk.
5. /chàh/gafē/	5. S1: Néih jùngyi yám chàh yìkwaahk gafē a? S2: Sihdaahn lā. Chàh tùhng gafē dōu dāk.

---

4. Expension Drill

Ex: T: /jī bējáu/	T: /a bottle of beer/
S: Béi jī bējáu ngóh lā.	S: Give me a bottle of beer.
1. /jī heiséui/	1. Béi jī heiséui ngóh lā.
◆ 2. /jek gāng/ (a spoon)	2. Béi jek gāng ngóh lā. Please give me a spoon.
3. /bùi chàh/	3. Béi bùi chàh ngóh lā.
4. /bùi gafē/	4. Béi bùi gafē ngóh lā.
5. /go cháau mihn/	5. Béi go cháau mihn ngóh lā.
6. /go cháau faahn/	6. Béi go cháau faahn ngóh lā.

7. /go tòng mihn/	7. Béi go tòng mihn ngóh lā.
8. /wún baahk faahn/	8. Béi wún baahk faahn ngóh lā.
9. /wún tòng mihn/	9. Béi wún tòng mihn ngóh lā.
10. /tíuh kwàhn/	10. Béi tíuh kwàhn ngóh lā.
11. /jek jīu/	11. Béi jek jīu ngóh lā.

Comment: The sentences in the right hand column are appropriate said by a diner in a restaurant to a waiter.

Note that tòng mihn may be either go tòng mihn, 'an order of soup noodles' (see #7) or wún tòng mihn, 'a bowl of soup noodles' (see #9).

---

5. Expansion Drill: Expand the sentences by adding dō.

Ex: 1. T: Béi bāau yīnjái ngóh lā!	T: Give me a pack of cigarettes.
S: Béi dō bāau yīnjái ngóh lā!	S: Give me another pack of cigarettes.
2. T: Béi léuhng gihn sēutsāam ngóh lā!	T: Give me two shirts.
S: Béi dō léuhng gihn sēutsāam ngóh lā!	S: Give me two more shirts.

• 1. Béi deui faaijí ngóh lā! (chopsticks)	1. Béi dō deui faaijí ngóh lā! Please give me another pair of chopsticks.
2. Béi go tòng ngóh lā!	2. Béi dō go tòng ngóh lā!
3. Béi bá jē ngóh lā!	3. Béi dō bá jē ngóh lā!
4. Béi jek gāng ngóh lā!	4. Béi dō jek gāng ngóh lā!
5. Béi léuhng bāau yīnjái ngóh lā!	5. Béi dō léuhng bāau yīnjái ngóh lā!

---

6. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Juhng séung yiu dī mātyéh a? What else do you want?	1. Juhng séung yiu dī mātyéh a?
2. /yám/	2. Juhng séung yám dī mātyéh a?
3. /sihk/	3. Juhng séung sihk dī mātyéh a?

4. /oi/	4. Juhng séung oi dī mēyéh nē?
5. /si/	5. Juhng séung si dī mēyéh nē? What else would you like to try? (in restaurant, ordering food)
6. /ló/	6. Juhng séung ló dī mēyéh nē? What else do you want to get?
7. /máaih/	7. Juhng séung máaih dī mēyéh nē?

---

7. Response Drill

Ex: T: Néih jeukgwo nī júng yúhlāu meih a? /nod/	T: Have you worn this kind of raincoat before? /nod/
S: Jeukgwo.	S: Yes.
T: Néih jeukgwo gó deui hàaih meih a? /shake/	T: Have you worn that pair of shoes yet?
S: Meih.	S: No, not yet.

1. Néih sihkgwo hā meih a? /shake/	1. Meih.
2. Néih yámgwo nī júng bējáu meih a? /nod/	2. Yámgwo.
3. Néih làihgwo Hèunggóng meih a? /shake/	3. Meih.
4. Néih heuigwo Méihgwok meih a? /nod/	4. Heuigwo.
5. Néih jyuhgwo Gáulùhng meih a? /shake/	5. Meih.
6. Néih yuhnggwo faaijí meih a? /shake/	6. Meih.
7. Néih yámgwo nī dī tòng meih a? /shake/	7. Meih.
+ 8. Néih jouhgwo nī dī yéh meih a? /nod/ Have you done this kind of work before? (jouh yéh = do chores; have a job)	8. Jouhgwo.

8. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh sihkgwo cháau mihn.	I've eaten fried noodles before.
S: Ngóh meih sihkgwo cháau mihn.	I've never eaten fried noodles before.
1. Ngóh jàgwo chē.	1. Ngóh meih jàgwo chē.
2. Ngóh heuigwo Méihgwok.	2. Ngóh meih heuigwo Méihgwok.
3. Ngóh jyuhgwo Gáulùhng.	3. Ngóh meih jyuhgwo Gáulùhng.
4. Ngóh yámgwo nī júng bējáu.	4. Ngóh meih yámgwo nī júng bējáu.
5. Ngóh yuhnggwo faaijí.	5. Ngóh meih yuhnggwo faaijí.
+ 6. Ngóh làihgwo nī gàan jáugā. (Chinese style restaurant)	6. Ngóh meih làihgwo nī gàan jáugā.

9. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh meih sihkgwo hā.	I've never eaten prawns.
S: Ngóh meih sihkgwo hā, néih sihkgwo meih a?	I've never eaten prawns; have you?
1. Ngóh meih sihkgwo yúhjyū.	1. Ngóh meih sihkgwo yúhjyū. Néih sihkgwo meih a?
2. Ngóh meih yámgwo nī júng tòng.	2. Ngóh meih yámgwo nī júng tòng. Néih yámgwo meih a?
3. Ngóh meih sihkgwo gó júng yīnjái.	3. Ngóh meih sihkgwo gó júng yīnjái. Néih sihkgwo meih a?
4. Ngóh meih heuigwo gó gàan jáugā.	4. Ngóh meih heuigwo gó gàan jáugā. Néih heuigwo meih a?
5. Ngóh meih dímgwo nī júng choi.	5. Ngóh meih dímgwo nī júng choi. Néih dímgwo meih a?

10. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: M̀hgòi néih nīng jī bējáu làih.	Please bring a bottle of beer.
S: M̀hgòi néih nīng dò jī bējáu làih.	Please bring another bottle of beer.
1. M̀hgòi néih nīng deui faaijí làih.	1. M̀hgòi néih nīng dò deui faaijí làih.
2. M̀hgòi néih nīng jek gāng làih.	2. M̀hgòi néih nīng dò jek gāng làih.
3. M̀hgòi néih nīng jek būi làih.	3. M̀hgòi néih nīng dò jek būi làih.
+ 4. M̀hgòi néih nīng go wúnjái làih. /small bowl/	4. M̀hgòi néih nīng dò go wúnjái làih.
+ 5. M̀hgòi néih nīng jek séui būi làih. /water glass/	5. M̀hgòi néih nīng dò jek séui būi làih.

a. Repeat, teacher giving cue only, students responding with sentences in left hand column, thus:

T: jī bējáu

S: M̀hgòi néih nīng jī bējáu làih.

---

11. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Néih sihksaai dī hā meih a?	Have you eaten up all the shrimp
S: Sihksaai laak, ngóh juhng séung yiu dī tīm.	I've eaten (them all) up, and I still want some more. [in addition, want to have some more]
1. Néih sihksaai dī yú meih a?	1. Sihksaai laak, ngóh juhng séung yiu dī tīm.
2. Néih sihksaai dī cháau faahn meih a?	2. Sihksaai laak, ngóh juhng séung yiu dī tīm.
3. Néih yám saai dī chàh meih a?	3. Yám saai laak, ngóh juhng séung yiu dī tīm.
4. Néih yuhngsaai dī chīn meih a?	4. Yuhngsaai laak, ngóh juhng séung yiu dī tīm.
5. Néih sihksaai dī cháau mihn meih a?	5. Sihksaai laak, ngóh juhng séung yiu dī tīm.
6. Néih yámsaai dī tòng meih a?	6. Yámsaai laak, ngóh juhng séung yiu dī tīm.

12. Response Drill

+ Ex: T: Yú tùhng hā, néih jùngyi bīn yeuhng a? (type, kind)	T: Which do you like better, fish or prawns? [fish and prawns, you like which kind more?]
S: Yú tùhng hā, ngóh léuhng yeuhng dōu jùngyi.	S: Fish and prawns, I like both.
1. Jùngchoi tùhng Sāichāan, néih jùngyi bīn yeuhng a?	1. Jùngchoi tùhng Sāichāan, ngóh léuhng yeuhng dōu jùngyi.
2. Gwóngdùng choi tùhng Seuhnghói choi, néih jùngyi bīn yeuhng a?	2. Gwóngdùng choi tùhng Seuhnghói choi, ngóh léuhng yeuhng dōu jùngyi.
3. Cháau mihn tùhng tòng mihn, néih jùngyi bīn yeuhng a?	3. Cháau mihn tùhng tòng mihn, ngóh léuhng yeuhng dōu jùngyi.
4. Cháau faahn tùhng baahk faahn, néih jùngyi bīn yeuhng a?	4. Cháau faahn tùhng baahk faahn, ngóh léuhng yeuhng dōu jùngyi.
+ 5. Jùnggwok choi tùhng Yahtbún choi, néih jùngyi bīn yeuhng a? (Chinese food) (Japanese food)	5. Jùnggwok choi tùhng Yahtbún choi, ngóh léuhng yeuhng dōu jùngyi.

---

13. Response Drill

Ex: T: Néih heuigwo géidō chi a?	T: How many times have you been there?
S: Yāt chi dōu meih heuigwo.	S: I've never been even once.
1. Néih làihgwo géidō chi a?	1. Yāt chi dōu meih làihgwo.
2. Néih yuhnggwo géidō chi a?	2. Yāt chi dōu meih yuhnggwo.
3. Néih heuigwo géidō chi a?	3. Yāt chi dōu meih heuigwo.
4. Néih sihkgwo géidō chi a?	4. Yāt chi dōu meih sihkgwo.
5. Néih fàangwo Seuhnghói géidò chi a?	5. Yāt chi dōu meih fàangwo.

---

14. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih yáuh léuhng ga chē.	T: He has two cars.
S: Kéuih yáuh léuhng ga chē, daahnhaih ngóh yāt ga dōu móuh.	S: He has two cars, but I don't even have one.
1. Gó go hohkwàang yáuh géi jī yùhnjíbāt.	1. Gó go hohksàang yáuh géi jī yùhnjíbāt, daahnhaih ngóh yāt jī dōu móuh.
2. Kéuih yáuh léuhng go taaitáai.	2. Kéuih yáuh léuhng go taaitáai, daahnhaih ngóh yāt go dōu móuh.
3. Kéuih yáuh léuhng go sáudói.	3. Kéuih yáuh léuhng go sáudói, daahnhaih ngóh yāt go dōu móuh.
4. Gó go sīgēi yáuh léuhng ga chē.	4. Gó go sīgēi yáuh léuhng ga chē, daahnhaih ngóh yāt ga dōu móuh.
5. Kéuih yáuh léuhng go jái.	5. Kéuih yáuh léuhng go jái, daahnhaih ngóh yāt go dōu móuh.

15. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Sihk dōdī lā.	T: Have some more.
S: M̀hhóu sihk gam dò a.	S: Don't eat so much.
1. Jà maahndī lā!	1. M̀hhóu jà gam maahn a.
2. Dím dōdī lā!	2. M̀hhóu dím gam dò a.
3. Sihk dōdī lā!	3. M̀hhóu sihk gam dò a.
4. Jà faaidī lā!	4. M̀hhóu jà gam faai a.
5. Hàahng faaidī lā!	5. M̀hhóu hàahng gam faai a.
6. Yám dōdī lā!	6. M̀hhóu yám gam dò a.
7. Jouh chèuhngdī lā!	7. M̀hhóu jouh gam chèuhng a.
8. Jouh dyúndī lā!	8. M̀hhóu jouh gam dyún a.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

1) ngāamngāam = just now
2) fòng gùng = leave work, get off from work
3) yìhm guhk gāi = salt-roasted chicken
4) gaailáan cháau ngàuhyuhk = stir fried beef and broccoli
5) taai - too, excessively
6) sài yèuhng choi tòng = watercress soup
7) giu = order, call for (without having to look at a listed menu)
8) Yèuhngjàu cháau faahn = Yangchow fried rice
9) Sàiyèuhngchoi tòng = watercress soup
10) faai = soon, almost, approaching (preceding a time expression)
11) yáuh méng = famous
12) gù lòu yuhk = sweet & sour pork
13) dōu yiu sai ge = want both to be small portions

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. Say to the classmate sitting next to you:	B. And he answers:
1. Have you eaten fried noodles before?	1. Yes, many times.
2. Which do you like better, fried noodles or fried rice?	2. Fried rice.
3. (deciding on a restaurant:) Which would you prefer--Shanghai food or Cantonese food?	3. Either one, I like both.
4. I don't know how to order--would you suggest something?	4. Let's have fried noodles and a soup, OK?
5. What else shall we have?	5. Shall we have some beer?
6. Waiter, would you please bring two bottles of beer?	6. Yes, sir, right away.
7. Waiter, please bring another glass.	7. All right--shall I bring another bottle of beer?

8. Can you use chopsticks?	8. No--please show me (introduce).
9. The soup noodles are not bad!	9. I think so too.
10. Have some more!	10. I've had enough, thanks.
11. Have you eaten in this (Western style) restaurant before?	11. No, I've never been here even once.
12. Have you ever eaten roast suckling pig?	12. Yes, several times.
13. Have you drunk up all your beer?	13. Yes, and I think I'd like some more.
14. Mr. Chan has 10 sons.	14. Is that so! I don't even have one.
15. Don't eat so much!	15. Don't drink so much!

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 14

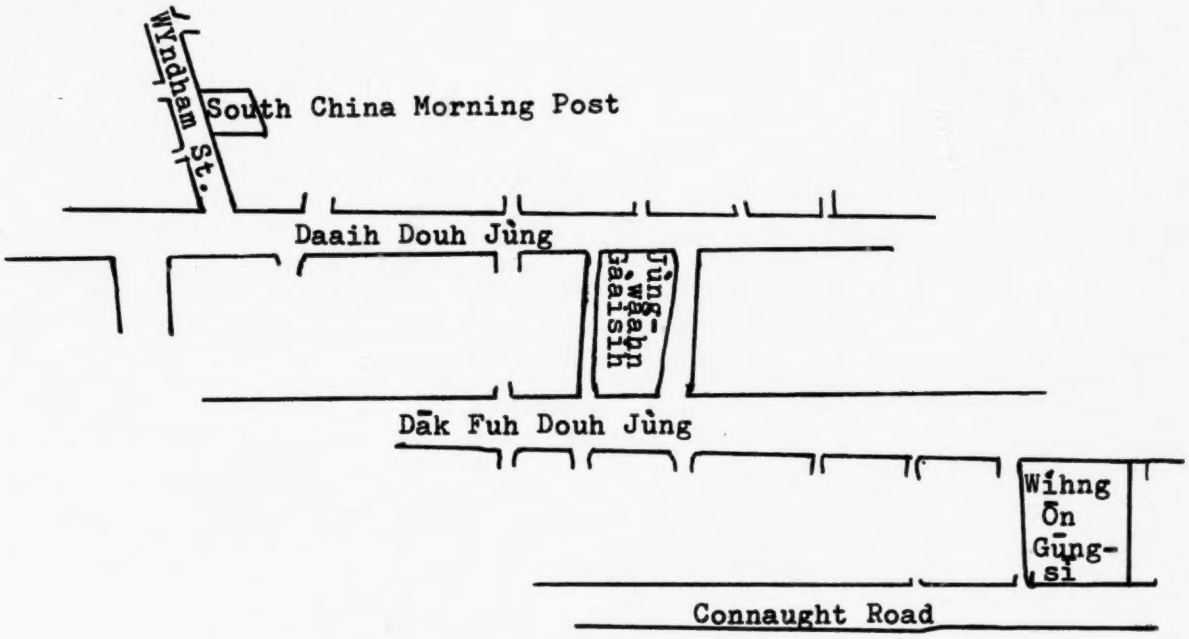
1.	baahk faahn	n:	boiled or steamed rice [white rice]
2.	bātgwo	cj:	however; but; although
3.	būi	n:	cup, glass
4.	bùi	m:	M. for cup, glass
5.	cháau	v:	to toss-fry in small amt of oil, as in scrambling eggs.
6.	cháau faahn	n:	fried rice
7.	cháau mihn	n:	fried noodles
8.	choi	n:	food; a particular food, a dish
9.	choipáai	n:	menu, bill of fare
10.	dím	v:	to order (food)
11.	dò	bf:	additional, as modifier in Noun phrase
12.	dōdī	adv:	more (in addition) (follows V)
13.	Dòjeh.	Ph:	Thank you. (for a gift)
14.	Dòjehsaai.	Ph:	Thank you very much.
15.	dōuhaih	adv:	always, really
16.	faaijí	n:	chopsticks
17.	fógei	n:	waiter in restaurant
18.	gaaisiuh	v:	recommend; introduce
19.	gāng	n:	spoon

20. -gwo	Vsuf:	indicates experience; to have done something before
21. Gwóngdùng choi	n:	Cantonese food
22. hā	n:	shrimp
23. Hóu ma?	Ph:	Is that OK?
24. jáugā	n/PW:	Chinese style restaurant
25. jek	m:	M. for spoon
26. jouh yéh	vo:	do chores; have a job
27. juhng	adv:	still, in addition, also (+ verb)
28. Jùngchoi	n:	Chinese food
29. Jùnggwok choi	n:	Chinese food
30. ma?	ss:	sen. suf. making a question of the sentence it attaches to
31. Màaihdāan!	Ph:	The check please!
32. meih	adv:	negative, 'not yet'
33. m̀hcho	Ph:	good [not-wrong], 'not bad!'
34. ngoihgwokyàhn	n:	foreigner(s)
35. nìng	v:	carry (something)
36. nìng...heui	v:	take, carry off (something)
37. nìng...làih	v:	bring (something)...here
38. Sāichāan	n:	Western meal
39. Seuhnghói choi	n:	Shanghai food
40. séui būi	n:	water glass
41. Sihdaahn lā.	Ph:	Either one. No preference. As you wish. (when offered a choice)
42. táiháh	VP:	have a look
43. tòng	n:	soup
44. tòng mihn	n:	soup noodles
45. wún	m:	M. a bowl of...
46. wún	n:	bowl
47. wúnjái	n:	small bowl
48. Yahtbún choi	n:	Japanese food
49. yāt chi dōu meih...	VP:	not even once...
50. yāt..M..dōu ..Neg..V.	Ph:	Not even one...; can't V. even one M.
51. yéh	n:	work (as in jouh yéh) (with restricted use)
52. yeuhng	m:	kind, type

53. yìkwaahk...?	cj:	or?
54. yúhjyū	n:	roast suckling pig

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:



(Mr. Wong approaches another pedestrian on the street in front of the South China Morning Post building on Wyndham Street)

Wòhng Sàang

dím heui?	**how go?, how (do you) go (to)?**
dím heui Wìhng Ōn Gūngsī a?	**how do you go to the Wing On Company?**
yàuh	**from**
yàuh nīdouh	**from here**
yàuh nīdouh dím heui Wìhng Ōn Gūngsī a?	**how do you get to the Wing On Company from here?**
Chéng mahn néih, yàuh nīdouh dím heui Wìhng Ōn Gūngsī a?	**Could you please tell me how to get to the Wing On Company from here?**
louhyàhn	**pedestrian**

Louhyàhn

lohk	**down**

lohkheui	go down [down go]
hàahng lohkheui	walk down (to)
hàahng lohkheui Daaih Douh Jūng	go down to Queen's Road Central
hàahng lohkheui Daaih Douh Jūng sin	first go down to Queen's Road Central
yìhn(jì)hauh	then, after that
Hàahng lohkheui Daaih Douh Jūng sin, yìhnhauh jyun jó.	First go down to Queen's Road Central, then turn left.

Wòhng Sàang

Jyun jó.	Turn left.

Louhyàhn

gàaisíh	food market
Jùngwàahn Gàaisíh	Central Market
hàahngdou Jùngwàahn Gàaisíh	walk to Central Market
-dou	verb suf. to verbs of action indicates arrival at goal.
Gám, yātjihk hàahngdou Jùngwàahn Gààisíh, jyun yauh.	Then, go straight till you get to Central Market, and turn right.
gwojó gàaisíh	get past the market
Gwojó gàaisíh, jauh haih Dāk Fuh Douh Jùng laak.	When you get past the market, you are on Des Voeux Road Central.
mahn yàhn lā	ask someone
Heuidou gódouh, joi mahn yàhn lā.	When you get there, ask again.

(Mr. Wong arrives at Wing On and approaches a salesclerk:)

Wòhng Sàang

bouhfahn	department (in a store)
gó go bouhfahn	that department
maaih lāangsāam gó go bouhfahn	the sweater department [the department that sells sweaters]

Maaih lāangsāam gó go bouhfahn hái bīndouh a?	Where is the sweater department?

Sauhfoyùhn

séuhng	go up
séuhng sàam láu	go up to the third floor (Chinese and American style of counting; 2nd floor British style of counting)
chéng	invite; please
Chéng séuhng sàam láu lā.	Please go up to the second (or third) floor.

B. Recapitulation:

Wòhng Sàang

Chéng mahn néih, yàuh nīdouh dím heui Wìhng Ōn Gūngsī a?	Could you please tell me how to get to the Wing On Company from here?

Louhyàhn

Hàahng lohkheui Daaih Douh Jùng sin, yìhnhauh jyun jó.	First go down to Queen's Road Central, then turn left.

Wòhng Sàang

Jyun jó.	Turn left.

Louhyàhn

Gám, yātjihk hàahngdou Jùngwàahn Gàaisíh, jyun yauh.	Then go straight till you get to Central Market, and turn right.
Gwojó gàaisíh, jauh haih Dāk Fuh Douh Jùng laak.	When you get past the market, you are at Des Voeux Road Central.
Heuidou gódouh, joi mahn yàhn lā.	When you get there, ask again.

(Mr. Wong gets to the store and asks a clerk:)

Wòhng Sàang

Maaih lāangsāam gó go bouhfahn hái bīndouh a?	Where is the sweater department?

Sauhfoyùhn

Chéng séuhng sàam láu lā!	**Please go up to the second floor.**

II. NOTES

1. Paired conjunctions:

...sīn, yìhnhauh (or yìhnjìhauh).... = 'first..., then....'

This set of paired conjunctions connects two primary clauses in a sentence of sequential relationship.

Ex: Hàahng lohkheui Daaih Douh Jùng sīn, yìhnhauh jyun jó.	Go down to Queen's Road Central first, then turn left.

(See BC and Drills 10, 11)

2. Directional verbs.

a. Examples of directional verbs are:

1. séuhng = up
2. lohk = down
3. yahp = in
4. chēut = out
5. gwo = over, across

b. In Cantonese these words pattern as verbs. They can be preceded by m̀h, and form a question on the Vm̀hV pattern.

Ex: A: Néih lohk m̀hlohk a?	Are you going down? (Said at top of escalator)
B: M̀hlohk.	No, I'm not going down.

c. These directional verbs can be followed by either a placeword object, or one of the two directional suffixes, -làih and -heui, or both.

Ex: 1. Kéuih séuhng sàam láu.	He went up to the 2nd floor.
2. Ngóh dōu séuhngheui.	I went up too.
3. Kéuih séuhng(làih) sàam láu.	He came up to the 2nd floor.
4. Kéuih chēutheui Daaih Douh Jùng.	He went out to Queen's Road Central.

(See Drills 13, 14)

d. The directional verbs may combine with a preceding verb of movement, such as hàahng 'walk,' jyun 'turn,' nìng 'carry.'

Ex: 1. Kéuih hàahng lohk-(heui) sàam láu. He walked down to the second floor.

2. Kéuih jyun yahp(heui) Dāk Fuh Douh Jùng. He turned into Des Voeux Road Central.

3. M̀hgòi néih nìng chēutlaih. Please bring it out.

(See Drill 12)

3. deihhá, làuhhah, hahbihn differentiated.

1. deihhá simply means 'ground floor.'

2. làuhhah [floor-below] is a pronoun of place whose meaning derives from position in relationship to another location. If you are on the 3d floor làuhhah is a floor below the 3d floor. If you are on the ground floor làuhhah is the basement.

3. hahbihn [below-side] is also a locative whose meaning derives from position in relationship to another position. It can mean 'downstairs' in relation to upstairs, 'under' something, 'below' something.

4. Two-part Verb forms: performance and achievement. Chinese verbs are often in two parts, with the first part telling of the performance and the second part telling of the achievement. For example:

tái + dóu = look + successful = see
wán + dóu = search + successful = find
heui + dou = go + arrive = reach (a place)
gwo + jó = pass + accomplish = get past (a place)
chéng + dóu = invite + successful = invite (someone) and have him accept

The second part of these two-part verbs we regard as suffix to the first part.

5. -dou as verb suffix, indicates reaching the destination or goal.

Ex: 1. heuidou = arrive [go-arrive]

Kéuih heuidou gódouh,... When he got there,... or When he gets there,...

2. duhkdou = read to [read-arrive]

Kéuih duhkdou sa'ahsei yihp. He read to page 34.

(See BC and Drills 3,4)

6. -jó verb suffix = accomplish the performance: 'get/got it done'

Ex: Gwojó Jùngwàahn Gàaihsíh, jyun jó.	When you get past the Central Market, turn left.

The -jó indicates that the action of the verb to which it is attached is viewed from the standpoint of its being accomplished.

Ex: gwojó X = 'accomplish going past X'

(See BC and Drill 9)

7. daih- = ordinal prefix.

a. daih- prefixed to a number makes it an ordinal number:

Ex: sàam fo = 3 lessons
daih sàam fo = the 3d lesson

(See Drill 3)

b. daihyih- is ambiguous.

daihyih-, bound to a following measure, may mean 'the second'; 'the next'; or 'another, some others Only rarely is there any mixup in an actual situation.

Ex: 1. daihyih ga chē	the second car
2. daihyih tìuh gāai	the next street, the second street. (i.e. the first one after the place you're talking about)
3. daihyih go gùngyàhn	another servant
4. daihyih dī gùngyàhn	other servants

In this lesson we practice only the first two meanings.

daihyih as 'other' you will meet in Lesson 16.

8. yàuh (and hái) as 'from ..PW..'

yàuh (or alternately, hái) serves as 'from' in the PW phrase:

yàuh ..PW.. + ..Verb of movement.. = go/come/etc. from ..PW..

Though similar to co-verbs in having an object, yàuh differs from co-verbs in not normally being preceded by m̀h, but using the verb haih between m̀h and itself.

Ex: M̀hhaih yàuh nīdouh chēutheui.	Don't exit from here.

Occasionally you may hear someone say M̀hyàuh nīdouh chēutheui or some other phrase with m̀hyàuh, but it is not common usage. Therefore we class yàuh (and hái used in this position) not as a co-verb but as a preposition.

(See BC and Drill 6)

9. yihp 'page' and fo 'lesson' classed as measures.

Note that in the grammatical sense yihp and fo are measures, inasmuch as they can follow numbers directly. From the point of view of having substantive meaning, they are like nouns.

(See Drills 3,4)

10. chéng... = invite (someone to do something); Please $\overset{V}{\ldots}$

chéng basically means 'invite.' chéng + Verb is used as a polite imperative:

Ex: Chéng séuhng sàam láu. Please go up to the 3d floor [invite you to go up]

(See BC)

As polite imperative it is only used affirmatively. To say 'Please don't$\overset{V}{\ldots}$' with chéng, the negative attaches to the following verb.

Ex: Chéng m̀hséuhng sàam láu. Please don't go up to the 3d floor.

III. DRILLS

1. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Kéuih hái douh dáng néih. He's waiting for you here.	1. Kéuih hái douh dáng néih.
2. /hauhbihn/	2. Kéuih hái hauhbihn dáng néih.
+ 3. /yahpbihn/	3. Kéuih hái yahpbihn dáng néih. He's waiting for you inside.
+ 4. /deihhá/ ground floor	4. Kéuih hái deihhá dáng néih. He's waiting for you on the ground floor.
+ 5. /seuhngbihn/ above; upstairs; on top [up-side]	5. Kéuih hái seuhngbihn dáng néih. He's waiting for you upstairs.
+ 6. /hahbihn/ downstairs; below; under [down-side]	6. Kéuih hái hahbihn dáng néih. He's waiting for you downstairs.
+ 7. /làuhseuhng/ upstairs [floor-above]	7. Kéuih hái làuhseuhng dáng néih. He's waiting for you upstairs.
+ 8. /làuhhah/ downstairs [floor[below]	8. Kéuih hái làuhhah dáng néih. He's waiting for you downstairs.
9. /sei láu/	9. Kéuih hái sei láu dáng néih.
+ 10. /chēutbihn/ outside	10. Kéuih hái chēutbihn dáng néih.

---

2. Response Drill: Students gesture the directions.

Ex: 1. T: Màhnwàh Jáudim hái chìhnbihn, haih m̀hhaih a? /hauhbihn/	T: The Mandarin Hotel is in front, isn't it? /behind, in the back/
S: M̀hhaih, hái hauhbihn.	S: No, it's in the back.
2. T: Màhnwàh Jáudim hái chìhnbihn, haih m̀hhaih a? /chìhnbihn/	T: The Mandarin Hotel is in front, isn't it? /in front, ahead/

S: Haih. Hái chìhnbihn.	S: That's right, it's in front.
1. Méihgwok Ngàhnhòhng hái jósáubihn, haih m̀hhaih a? /yauhsáubihn/	1. M̀hhaih, hái yauhsáubihn.
2. Néih sīnsàang (ge) séjihlàuh hái chìhnbihn, haih m̀hhaih a? /hauhbihn/	2. M̀hhaih, hái hauhbihn.
3. Wòhng Sàang hái chēutbihn, haih m̀hhaih a? /chēutbihn/	3. Haih, hái chēutbihn.
4. Léih Táai hái yahpbihn, haih m̀hhaih a? /chìhnbihn/	4. M̀hhaih, hái chìhnbihn.
5. Tīnsīng Máhtàuh hái yauhsáubihn, haih m̀hhaih a? /yauhsáubihn/	5. Haih, hái yauhsáubihn.
6. Maaih hàaih gó go bouhfahn hái yih láu, haih m̀hhaih a? /deihhá/	6. M̀hhaih, hái deihhá.
7. Maaih syù gó go bouhfahn hái làuhseuhng, haih m̀hhaih a? /làuhhah/	7. M̀hhaih, hái làuhhah.

Comment: Note (#2 above) that ge can be omitted in everyday speech in modification structure before séjihlàuh.

a. Repeat, students taking both parts, teacher cueing thus:

1. /Màhnwàh Jáudim/chìhnbihn/hauhbihn/

or 2. /Màhnwàh Jáudim/chìhnbihn/

---

3. Expansion Drill

+	1. a. yihp	1. a. page
	b. sei'ah yihp.	b. 40 pages
+	c. duhk sei'ah yihp	c. read 40 pages
+	d. duhkdou sei'ah yihp	d. read to page 40
+	e. seuhngchi duhkdou sei'ah yihp	e. last time read to page 40
+	f. seuhngchi duhkdou daih sei'ah yihp (ordinal number marker, -st, -nd, -rd, etc.)	f. last time read to the 40th page.
	g. Ngóhdeih seuhngchi duhkdou daih sei'ah yihp.	g. Last time we read to the 40th page.

+ 2. a. fo	2. a. lesson
b. géi fo a?	b. how many lessons?
c. daih géi fo a?	c. which[th] lesson?
d. duhk daih géi fo a?	d. read which lesson?
e. seuhngchi duhk daih géi fo a?	e. last time read which lesson?
f. Ngóhdeih seuhngchi duhk daih géi fo a?	f. What lesson did we do last time?
3. a. daih sahp yihp	3. a. the 10th page
+ b. dáhòi bún syù daih sahp yihp	b. open your book to page 10
c. dáhòi bún syù daih sei'ah sàam yihp	c. open your books to the 43rd page (page 43)
d. Dáhòi bún syù daih sàam baak sei'ah sàam yihp.	d. Open your books to page 343.

4. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Ngóhdeih seuhngchi duhkdou daih géi yihp a? /43/	T: What page did we get to last time?
S: Duhkdou daih sei'ahsàam yihp.	S: We got to page 43.
2. T: Ngóhdeih seuhngchi duhk daih géi fo a? /3/	T: What lesson did we do last time?
S: Daih sàam fo.	S: We did lesson 3.

1. Ngóhdeih seuhngchi duhkdou daih géi yihp a? /86/	1. Duhkdou daih baatsahpluhk yihp.
2. Ngóhdeih seuhngchi duhk daih géi fo a? /7/	2. Daih chāt fo.
3. Ngóhdeih seuhngchi duhk daih géi fo a? /15/	3. Daih sahpńgh fo.
4. Ngóhdeih seuhngchi duhkdou daih géi yihp a? /254/	4. Duhkdou daih yih baak ńgh-sahpsei yihp.
5. Ngóhdeih seuhngchi duhk daih géi fo a? /26/	5. Daih yahluhk fo.

5. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Sàam láu yáuh dī mēyéh maaih a? What's for sale on the 2nd floor? What do they have (for sale) on the 2nd floor?	1. Sàam láu yáuh dī mēyéh maaih a?
2. /sei láu/	2. Sei láu yáuh dī mēyéh maaih a?
3. /làuhhah/	3. Làuhhah yáuh dī mēyéh maaih a?
4. /làuhseuhng/	4. Làuhseuhng yáuh dī mēyéh maaih a?
5. /yahpbihn/	5. Yahpbihn yáuh dī mēyéh maaih a?
6. /seuhngbihn/	6. Seuhngbihn yáuh dī mēyéh maaih a?
7. /hahbihn/	7. Hahbihn yáuh dī mēyéh maaih a?

Comment: Note in #1 and #2 above the absence of ordinalizing prefix daih in connection with láu, 'floor, story'.

Compare: sàam láu = the third floor.
daih sàam fo = the third lesson.

daih is not used before numbers when modifying láu.

---

6. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Yàuh nīdouh, dím heui Tīn-sīng Máhtàuh a? How do you get to the Star Ferry from here?	1. Yàuh nīdouh, dím heui Tīn-sīng Máhtàuh a?
2. /Màhnwàh Jáudim/	2. Yàuh nīdouh, dím heui Màhnwàh Jáudim a?
3. /Méihgwok Ngàhnhòhng/	3. Yàuh nīdouh, dím heui Méihgwok Ngàhnhòhng a?
4. /Jùngwàahn Gàaisíh/	4. Yàuh nīdouh, dím heui Jùngwàahn Gàaisíh a?
5. /Hèunggóng Chāansāt/	5. Yàuh nīdouh, dím heui Hèunggóng Chāansāt a?

Comment: hái is used in place of yàuh by some speakers, with no difference in meaning.

Ex: Hái nīdouh, dím heui Tīnsīng Máhtàuh a? or Yàuh nīdouh, dím heui Tīnsīng Máhtàuh a?	How do you get to the Star Ferry from here?

---

7. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: /WíhngŌn Gūngsī/	T: The WingŌn Company
S: Chéng mahn néih, dím heui WíhngŌn Gūngsī a?	S: Can you please tell me how to get to the WingŌn Company?
1. /Jùnggwok Jáugā/	1. Chéng mahn néih, dím heui Jùnggwok Jáugā a?
2. /Jùngwàahn Gàaisíh/	2. Chéng mahn néih, dím heui Jùngwàahn Gàaisíh a?
3. /Tīnsīng Máhtàuh/	3. Chéng mahn néih, dím heui Tīnsīng Máhtàuh a?
4. /Gáulùhng WíhngŌn Gūngsī/	4. Chéng mahn néih, dím heui Gáulùhng Wíhng Ōn Gūngsī a?
5. /Nèihdēun Douh/	5. Chéng mahn néih, dím heui Nèihdēun Douh a?

---

8. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Gwo sàam gàan, jauh dou laak.	T: Pass three buildings, then (you) arrive. (i.e., It's just 3 buildings away.)
S: Gwojó daih sàam gàan, jauh dou laak.	S: When you've passed the third building, then you're there.
+ 1. Gwo sàam go gàaiháu, jauh dou laak. Pass three intersections [street-mouth], and there it is.	1. Gwojó daih sàam go gàaiháu, jauh dou laak. When you've passed the third intersection, it's right there.
2. Gwo yāt gàan, jauh haih laak.	2. Gwojó daih yāt gàan, jauh haih laak.
3. Gwo sàam gàan, jauh jyun jó.	3. Gwojó daih sàam gàan, jauh jyun jó.

4. Gwo sei go gàaiháu, jauh jyun yauh.	4. Gwojó daih sei go gàaiháu, jauh jyun yauh.
5. Gwo léuhng gàan, jauh táidóu laak.	5. Gwojó daih yih gàan, jauh táidóu laak.
6. Gwo sàam go gàaiháu, jauh tìhng lā.	6. Gwojó daih sàam go gàaiháu, jauh tìhng lā.

Comment: -jó may be added to gwo in left hand column, but not subtracted from right hand. Instead of gwojó on right, hàahngdou is permissable.

---

9. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Gwojó Méihgwok Jáudim, jauh jyun yauh.	T: After you pass the Hilton, turn right.
S: Méihgwok Jáudim gwodī, jyun yauh.	S: Beyond the Hilton, turn right.
1. Gwojó Jùngwàahn Gàaisíh, jauh jyun yauh.	1. Jùngwàahn Gàaisíh gwodī, jyun yauh.
2. Gwojó WíhngŌn Gūngsī, jauh haih laak.	2. WíhngŌn Gūngsī gwodī, jauh haih laak.
3. Gwojó Màhnwàh Jáudim, jauh jyun jó.	3. Màhnwàh Jáudim gwodī, jyun jó.
4. Gwojó Nèihdēun Douh, jauh haih laak.	4. Nèihdēun Douh gwodī, jauh haih laak.
5. Gwojó daih sàam go gàaiháu, jauh jyun yauh.	5. Daih sàam go gàaiháu gwodī, jyun yauh.

---

10. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. M̀hgòi néih heui Jùngwàahn sìn, yìhnhauh heui Gáulùhng. Please go to the Central District first, and after that go to Kowloon.	1. M̀hgòi néih heui Jùngwàahn sìn, yìhnhauh heui Gáulùhng.
2. /Méihgwok Ngàhnhòhng/ /Jùngwàahn Gàaisíh/	2. M̀hgòi néih heui Méihgwok Ngàhnhòhng sìn, yìhnhauh heui Jùngwàahn Gàaisíh.
3. /Màhnwàh Jáudim/ /WíhngŌn Gūngsī/	3. M̀hgòi néih heui Màhnwàh Jáudim sìn, yìhnhauh heui WíhngŌn Gūngsī.

4. /Jùnggwok Jáugā/
/Tīnsīng Máhtàuh/

4. M̀hgòi néih heui Jùnggwok Jáugā sīn, yìhnhauh heui Tīnsīng Máhtàuh.

5. /séjihlàuh/fàan ūkkéi/

5. M̀hgòi néih heui séjihlàuh sīn, yìhnhauh fàan ūkkéi.

---

11. Expansion Drill

1. /heui máaih yéh/
/fàan hohk/

1. Ngóh séung heui máaih yéh sīn, yìhnhauh fàan hohk.
I think I'll go shopping first, and after that go to school.

2. /heui yám chàh/fàan gùng/

2. Ngóh séung heui yám chàh sīn, yìhnhauh fàan gùng.

3. /heui taam Wòhng Táai/
/heui wán Léih Síujé/

3. Ngóh séung heui taam Wòhng Táai sīn, yìhnhauh heui wán Léih Síujé.

4. /heui Jùngwàahn Gàaisíh/
/fàan ūkkéi/

4. Ngóh séung heui Jùngwàahn Gàaisíh sīn, yìhnhauh fàan ūkkéi.

5. /yám bùi chàh/
/chēutheui mùhnháu dáng kéuih/

5. Ngóh séung yám bùi chàh sīn, yìhnhauh chēutheui mùhnháu dáng kéuih.

++ 6. /wuhn sāam/dá dihnwá giu chē/
/change clothes/phone for a cab/

6. Ngóh séung wuhn sāam sīn, yìhnhauh dá dihnwá giu chē.
I'll change clothes first, and after that call for a cab.

---

12. Expansion Drill

Ex: 1. T: /deihhá/yih láu/ T: /ground floor/1st floor/
S: Ngóh yàuh deihhá hàahng séuhng (heui) yih láu. S: I walked from the ground floor up to the 1st floor.

2. T: /sàam láu/yih láu/ T: /2nd floor/1st floor/
S: Ngóh yàuh sàam láu hàahng lohk (heui) yih láu. S: I walked from the 2nd floor down to the 1st floor.

1. /yih láu/deihhá/

1. Ngóh yàuh yih láu hàahng lohk (heui) deihhá.

2. /sàam láu/ńgh láu/	2. Ngóh yàuh sàam láu hàahng séuhng (heui) ńgh láu.
3. /luhk láu/sei láu/	3. Ngóh yàuh luhk láu hàahng lohk (heui) sei láu.
4. /chāt láu/baat láu/	4. Ngóh yàuh chāt láu hàahng séuhng (heui) baat láu.
5. /baat láu/luhk láu/	5. Ngóh yàuh baat láu hàahng lohk (heui) luhk láu.

---

13. Expansion Drill: Students should gesture the directions.

Ex: T: Ngóh hái sàam láu. /sei láu/	I am on the 2nd floor. /3rd floor/
S: Ngóh hái sàam láu, yìhgā séuhng sei láu.	I am on the 2nd floor, now I'm going up to the 3rd floor.
1. Ngóh hái yih láu. /sàam láu/	1. Ngóh hái yih láu, yìhgā séuhng sàam láu.
2. Ngóh hái sàam láu. /yih láu/	2. Ngóh hái sàam láu, yìhgā lohk yih láu.
3. Ngóh hái deihhá. /yih láu/	3. Ngóh hái deihhá, yìhgā séuhng yih láu.
4. Ngóh hái yih láu. /deihhá/	4. Ngóh hái yih láu, yìhgā lohk deihhá.
5. Ngóh hái deihhá. /sei láu/	5. Ngóh hái deihhá, yìhgā séuhng sei láu.

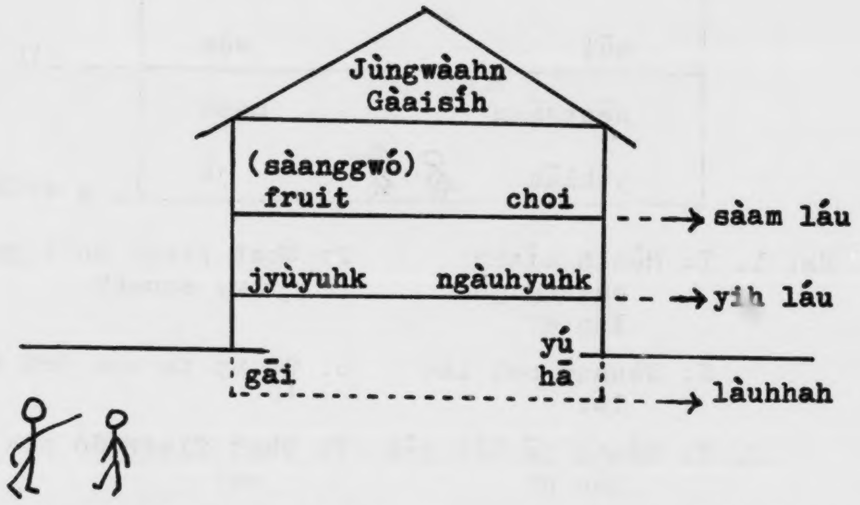
---

14. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh hái Dākfuh Douh Jùng. /Wìhng Ōn Gūngsī/	T: I am at Des Voeux Road Central. /Wing On Company/
S: Ngóh hái Dākfuh Douh Jùng, yìhgā ngóh yahpheui Wìhng Ōn Gūngsī dáng néih.	S: I'm at Des Voeux Road Central, now I'm going into Wing On Company to wait for you.
1. Ngóh hái Dākfuh Douh Jùng. /Jùngwàahn Gàaisíh/	1. Ngóh hái Dākfuh Douh Jùng, yìhgā ngóh yahpheui Jùngwàahn Gàaisíh dáng néih.

2. Ngóh hái Wíhng Ōn Gūngsī. /Dākfuh Douh Jùng/	2. Ngóh hái Wíhng Ōn Gūngsī, yìhgā ngóh chēutheui Dākfuh Douh Jùng dáng néih.
3. Ngóh hái Méihgwok Ngàhnhòhng. /Daaih Douh Jùng/	3. Ngóh hái Méihgwok Ngàhnhòhng, yìhgā ngóh chēutheui Daaih Douh Jùng dáng néih.
4. Ngóh hái Daaih Douh Jùng. /Méihgwok Ngàhnhòhng/	4. Ngóh hái Daaih Douh Jùng, yìhgā ngóh yahpheui Méihgwok Ngàhnhòhng dáng néih

15. Response Drill: Do the right hand column of this drill first as a Listen & Repeat drill, teacher writing picture on blackboard & pointing to appropriate section as he speaks, students repeating after him.



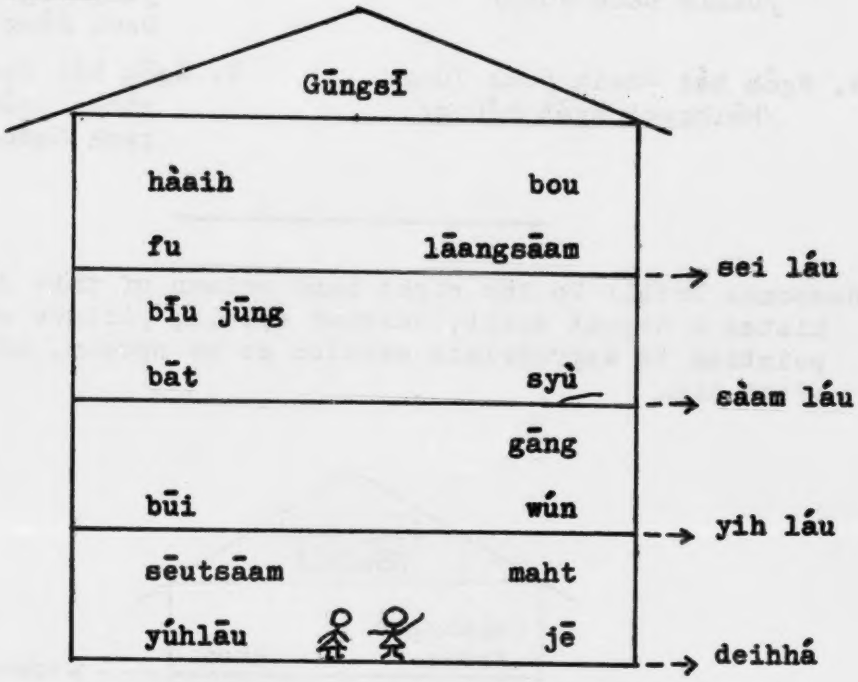
1. Maaih gāi gó go bouhfahn hái bīndouh a?	1. Làuhhah jósáubihn.
2. Maaih choi gó go bouhfahn hái bīndouh a?	2. Sàam láu yauhsáubihn.
3. Bīndouh yáuh pìhnggwó tùhng cháang maaih a?	3. Sàam láu jósáubihn.
4. Bīndouh yáuh jyùyuhk maaih a?	4. Yih láu jósáubihn.
5. Maaih hā gó go bouhfahn hái bīndouh a?	5. Làuhhah yauhsáubihn.
6. Bīndouh yáuh yú maaih a?	6. Làuhhah yauhsáubihn.
7. Bīndouh yáuh ngàuhyuhk maaih a?	7. Yih láu yauhsáubihn.

Comment: Central Market has three floors, the lowest of which is below the level of the street on the Queen's Road

Central side. Thus làuhhah instead of deihhá.

---

16. Response Drill



Ex: 1. T: Máaih hàaih séuhng géi láu a?	T: What floor do I go up to buy shoes?
S: Séuhng sei láu lā.	S: Go up to the 3rd floor.
2. T: Máaih jē hái géi láu a?	T: What floor do you buy umbrellas on?
S: Hái deihhá.	S: On the ground floor.

1. Máaih lāangsāam séuhng géi láu a?	1. Séuhng sei láu lā!
2. Máaih bāt séuhng géi láu a?	2. Séuhng sàam láu lā!
3. Máaih jē hái géi láu a?	3. Hái deihhá.
4. Máaih syù hái géi láu a?	4. Hái sàam láu.
5. Máaih hàaih séuhng géi láu a?	5. Séuhng sei láu lā!
6. Máaih bīu séuhng géi láu a?	6. Séuhng sàam láu lā!
7. Máaih sēutsāam hái géi láu a?	7. Hái deihhá.
8. Máaih bou hái géi láu a?	8. Hái sei láu.
9. Máaih būi hái géi láu a?	9. Hái yih láu.
10. Máaih fu séuhng géi láu a?	10. Séuhng sei láu lā!

11. Máaih maht hái géi láu a?	11. Hái deihhá.
12. Máaih gāng séuhng géi láu a?	12. Séuhng yih láu lā!
13. Máaih wún séuhng géi láu a?	13. Séuhng yih láu lā!
14. Máaih yúhlāu hái géi láu a?	14. Hái deihhá.
15. Máaih jūng séuhng géi láu a?	15. Séuhng sàam láu lā!

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

1) yáuh yuhng = useful

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. Say to the classmate sitting next to you:	B. And he responds:
1. Where did we read to last time?	1. We read to page 300.
2. What lesson did we read last time?	2. Lesson 14.
3. Could you please tell me how to get to the Mandarin Hotel?	3. Go straight, and when you get to the 3d intersection, turn left. Go two blocks and you'll be there.
4. How do you get to the Central Market from here?	4. Turn left at the next intersection and it's two blocks down.
5. (in a dept store:) Where is the umbrella department?	5. On the ground floor.
6. Where is the shoe department?	6. Go up to the 1st floor.
7. I'm going down to the ground floor to buy a raincoat I'll wait for you there, OK?	7. Wait just a sec, and I'll go with you.
8. Turn left just beyond the library.	8. You can't turn in there--I'll stop at the intersection, OK?
9. What's for sale on the 4th floor?	9. Sweaters and shoes and fabrics.
10. Go up to the 3d floor first, then go down to the 1st floor.	10. OK, want to come with me?

11. Could you please tell me how to get to the Wing On Company from here?	11. From here you go straight, after you pass the 2d intersection, it's the 1st building on the right.
12. When you get to Queens Road Central, turn left.	12. Thanks a lot.
13. Your father is waiting for you upstairs.	13. What does he want, do you know?
14. My glasses are downstairs--would you go down and get them for me?	14. OK. Downstairs where?
15. Your boy friend is outside waiting for you.	15. Please ask him to come in.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 15

1.	bouhfahn	n:	department (in a store)
2.	chéng...	v:	please (+ verb); invite
3.	chēut	v:	out
4.	chēutheui	v:	go out
5.	chēutlàih	v:	come out
6.	chēutbihn	PW:	outside, exterior
7.	dá dihnwá giu chē	VP:	phone for a cab
8.	dáhòi	v:	open (as of a book)
9.	daih-	bf:	ordinal number marker: -st, -nd, -rd, -th.
10.	daihyāt	Ph:	the first
11.	deihhá	PW:	ground, ground floor
12.	-dou	Vsuf:	suffix to verbs of motion, indicating arrival at goal
13.	duhk	v:	read
14.	duhkdou...	v:	read to...
15.	fo	m:	lesson
16.	gàaiháu	n/PW:	street opening, i.e. intersection
17.	gàaisíh	n/PW:	food market
18.	hàahng	v:	walk; go
19.	hahbihn	PW:	below; under
20.	hái	prep:	from

21. -heui	Vsuf:	attaches to verbs of motion, indicating direction away from speaker
22. -jó	Vsuf:	verb suf. indicating 'accomplish the performance'
23. Jùngwàahn Gàaisíh	PW:	Central Market
24. -làih	Vsuf:	attaches to verbs of motion, indicating direction towards the speaker
25. làuhhah	PW:	[floor-below] downstairs
26. làuhseuhng	PW:	[floor-above] upstairs
27. lohk	v:	descend
28. lohkheui	v:	go down
29. louhyàhn	n:	pedestrian
30. séuhng	v:	ascend
31. seuhngbihn	PW:	above; on top
32. seuhngchi	TW:	last time
33. ...sín, yíhnhauh...	PCj:	...first, then...
34. wuhn sāam	VO:	change clothes
35. yàhn	n:	someone
36. yàuh	prep:	from
37. yíhn(jí)hauh	Cj:	afterwards, then
38. yihp	m:	page

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

Lesson Two

1. At a party:

Man : Síujé gwaising a?

Woman: Ngóh sing Chàhn. Sīnsàang gwaising a?

Man : Síusing Hòh. Chàhn síujé haih m̀hhaih Gwóngdùngyàhn a?

Woman: M̀hhaih a. Ngóh haih Seuhnghóiyàhn. Néih nē? Néih haih m̀hhaih Méihgwokyàhn a?

Man : Haih a. Ngóh haih Méihgwokyàhn.

2. At the first day of school, students are getting acquainted:

First student: Néih sing mēyéh a?

Second student: Ngóh sing Wòhng.

First student: Néih pàhngyáuh nē?

Second student: Kéuih dōu haih sing Wòhng ge.

First student: Néih haih m̀hhaih Gwóngdùngyàhn a?

Second student: Haih.

First student: Néih pàhngyáuh haih m̀hhaih dōu haih Gwóngdùngyàhn a?

Second student: M̀hhaih a. Kéuih haih Seuhnghóiyàhn.

Lesson Three

The following conversations take place among some university students between classes.

1. A: Léih Sàang sīk m̀hsīk góng Yahtbúnwá a?

B: Sīk sèsíu.

A: Gám, kéuih sīk m̀hsīk góng Yīngmán nē?

B: Dōu sīk sèsíu.

A: Bīngo gaau kéuih góng Yīngmán ge nē?

B: Haih Wòhng Sàang gaau kéuih ge.

2. A: Néih sīk m̀hsīk góng Gwokyúh a?

B: Deuim̀hjyuh. Ngóh tèng m̀hchīngchó - m̀hgòi néih joi góng yātchi.

A: Néih sīk m̀hsīk góng Gwokyúh a?

B: Sīk sèsíu jē.

A: Gám, néih sīk m̀hsīk Yīngmàhn nē?

B: Sīk góng, m̀hsīk sé. Néih nē?

A: Ngóh dōu m̀hsīk. 'Yāt yih sàam' dōu m̀hsīk góng.

3. A: Néih gaau bīngo Gwóngdùngwá a?
B: Ngóh gaau Wòhng Táai.
A: Kéuih haih m̀hhaih Méihgwokyàhn a?
B: M̀hhaih. Kéuih haih Yìnggwokyàhn.
A: Kéuih sīk m̀hsīk sé Jùngmàhn nē?
B: M̀hsīk. Kéuih hohk góng, daahnhaih m̀hhohk sé.
A: Kéuih hohk m̀hhohk Gwokyúh a?
B: Ngóh m̀hjīdou a.

Lesson Four

1. Man : Ngóh go bīu maahn sèsíu. Néih go haih m̀hhaih a?
Woman: M̀hhaih. Ngóh go haih jéun ge.
Man : Gám, yìhgā géidímjūng a?
Woman: Yìhgā ngāamngāam sahpyih dím.
Man : Ngóh go bīu yìhgā haih sahpyāt dím daahp sahp.
Woman: Gám, néih go maahn léuhnggojih.

2. Woman: Yìhgā haih m̀hhaih baat dím sàamgogwāt a?
Man : M̀hhaih. Ngóh go bīu yìhgā haih baat dím daahp baat jē.
Woman: Néih go bīu jéun m̀hjéun a?
Man : Jéun. M̀hfaai m̀hmaahn.
Woman: Gám, ngóh go faai yāt go jih.
Man : Waahkjé haih.

3. Woman: Jóusàhn, Wòhng Sàang. Néih jī m̀hjī yìhgā géidímjūng a?
Man : A, jóusàhn, Chàhn Síujé. Ngóh go bīu yìhgā haih gáu dím daahp yāt.
Woman: Néih go bīu haih m̀hhaih faai sèsíu a?
Man : Waahkjé haih. Ngóh m̀hjī.
Woman: Néih jī m̀hjī Léih Táai géidímjūng hohk Gwóngdùngwá a?
Man : Ngóh jīdou. Haih sahp dím bun.

Lesson Five

1. Two friends in a coffee shop deciding what to have for a mid-afternoon tea:
A: Néih yám mēyéh a?
B: Ngóh yám gafē. Néih nē?

A: Ngóh yám chàh. Sihk m̀hsihk béng a?

B: Hóu aak.

A: Néih géidímjūng yiu jáu a?

B: Sei dím.

A: Jànhaih gam faai yiu jáu mē?

B: Haih a, jànhaih.

2. A hostess is entertaining a new acquaintance at tea:

Hostess: Yám chàh lā.

Guest: Hóu, m̀hgòi.

Hostess: Sihk béng lā.

Guest: Hóu aak, m̀hgòi.

Hostess: Sihk yīn lā.

Guest: Síu sihk. M̀hsái haakhei.

Hostess: Néih haakhei jē.

3. At lunchtime Mrs. Wong instructs her servant about the work for the rest of the day:

Mrs. Wong: Ngóh tùhng Wòhng Sàang sàam dím bun yiu yám chàh.

Servant : Sihk m̀hsihk béng a?

Mrs. Wong: Sèsíu lā.

Servant : Gám, géidímjūng sihk faahn a?

Mrs. Wong: Baat dím lā.

Servant : Hóu aak.

Lesson Six

1. In a department store:

Clerk: Jóusàhn, séung máaih mēyéh a?

Customer: Ngóh séung máaih tíuh fu. Nī léuhng tíuh yiu géidò chín a?

Clerk: Nī tíuh sahpbaat mān, gó tíuh yahyih mān.

Customer: Gám, ngóh máaih nī tíuh lā.

2. In a department store:

Customer: Nī gihn sēutsāam haih m̀hhaih yahsei mān a?

Clerk : M̀hhaih. Haih yahgáu mān.

Customer: Gó gihn dōu haih yahgáu mān, haih m̀hhaih nē?

Clerk : Haih. Néih haih m̀hhaih léuhng gihn dōu máaih nē?

Customer: M̀hhaih. Ngóh máaih nī gihn, m̀hmáaih gó gihn.

3. In a department store:

Clerk : Máaih mēyéh a?
Customer: Ngóh séung máaih sēutsāam. Nī gihn géidò chín a?
Clerk : Nī gihn sahpyih mān jē. Máaih géidò gihn nē?
Customer: Béi yāt gihn ngóh lā.

Lesson Seven

The following conversations take place between clerk and customer:

1. Clerk : Máaih mēyéh a?
Customer: Ngóh séung máaih bējáu. Géidō chín jī a?
Clerk : Go baat ngàhnchín. Oi géidō jī a?
Customer: Oi léuhng jī.
Clerk : Sái m̀hsái máaih yīnjái a?
Customer: Hóu, béi bāau ngóh lā!

2. Customer: Nī dī bou géidō chín máh a?
Clerk : Yahsàam go bun. Néih yiu géido máh a?
Customer: Ngóh m̀hyiu laak. Gó dī nē? Géidō chín máh a?
Clerk : Gó dī sahpsàam go bun ngàhnchín máh. Néih máaih m̀hmáaih a?
Customer: Hóu. Ngóh oi léuhng máh.
Clerk : Yahchāt mān léuhng máh lā.

3. Clerk : Máaih mēyéh a?
Customer: Ngóh séuhng máaih dī ngàuhyuhk. Dím maaih nē?
Clerk : Nī dī sei go baat ngàhnchín gàn. Gó dī chāt go bun ngàhnchín gàn.
Customer: Béi sàam gàn gó dī ngóh lā.
Clerk : Sàam gàn yahyih go bun.
Customer: Ngóh dōu séung oi léuhng gàn nī dī.
Clerk : Hóu aak, gán go luhk ngàhn chín lā.

Lesson Eight

1. In a department store:

Clerk : Jóusàhn. Séung máaih mēyéh a?
Customer: Yáuh móuh baahk sēutsāam a?
Clerk : Haih m̀hhaih néih jeuk ga?

Customer: Haih.

Clerk : Néih jeuk géidō houh a?

Customer: Sàamsahp luhk, waahkjé sàamsahp baat.

Clerk : Nī gihn haih sàamsahpluhk.

Customer: Nī gihn m̀hgau daaih. Yáuh móuh sàamsahpbaat ge nē?

Clerk : Deuim̀hjyuh - sàamsahpbaat ge maaihsaai laak.

2. In a department store:

Customer: Yáuh móuh baahk hàaih maaih a?

Clerk : Yáuh. Néih jùng m̀hjùngyi nī deui nē?

Customer: Géi leng. Géi(dō) chín deui a?

Clerk : Nī deui haih Méihgwok hàaih. Chāt'ahgáu mān deui.

Customer: Yáuh móuh pèhngdī ge nē?

Clerk : Yáuh. Gó deui haih Yahtbún hàaih. Yahńgh mān deui jē.

Customer: M̀hgòi néih béi deui Yahtbún ge ngóh lā.

Clerk : Hóu aak.

3. In a department store:

Customer: Yáuh móuh maht a?

Clerk : Yáuh. Nī dī néih jùng m̀hjùngyi nē?

Customer: Géi jùngyi. Dím maaih a?

Clerk : Luhk go bun ngàhnchín deui. Néih jeuk géi houh a?

Customer: M̀hjī - Ngóh jeuk luhk houh ge Méihgwok hàaih.

Clerk : Gám, gáu houh lā. Néih séung máaih géidō deui a?

Customer: Béi sàam deui ngóh lā.

Clerk : Hóu aak. Oi m̀hoi hàaih nē?

Customer: M̀hoi laak. M̀hgòi.

4. At a grocery store:

Customer: Yáuh móuh tòhng maaih a?

Clerk : Yáuh. Máaih géidō bohng nē? Ńgh bohng gau m̀hgau a?

Customer: M̀hsái gam dò. Léuhng bohng gau laak. A! Ngóh séung oi dī ngàuhyuhk, dím maaih a?

Clerk : Sei go baat ngàhnchín gàn.

Customer: Béi yāt gàn ngóh lā.

Clerk : Hóu.

Lesson Nine

1. Mr. Wong phones Mrs. Ho:

Amah : Wéi.

Caller : Haih m̀hhaih chāt-sàam-lìhng-sei-ńgh-lìhng a?

Amah : M̀hgòi néih daaihsēngdī. Ngóh tèng m̀hchìngchó.

Caller : Chāt-sàam-lìhng-sei-ńgh-lìhng, haih m̀hhaih a?

Amah : Haih. Wán bīngo a?

Caller : M̀hgòi néih giu Hòh Táai tèng dihnwá lā.

Amah : Hóu. Dáng (yāt)ján.

Mrs. Ho: Wéi.

Caller : Hòh Táai, jóusàhn.

Mrs. Ho: Jóusàhn.

Caller : Ngóh haih Wòhng Sàang a. Néih jì m̀hjì Chàhn Sīnsàang ge dihnwá géidò houh a?

Mrs. Ho: A! Jì. Kéuih ge dihnwá haih ńgh sei sàam yih yāt lìhng.

Caller : Hóu, m̀hgòi.

Mrs. Ho: M̀hsái m̀hgòi.

2. Mr. Wong calls a businessman at his office:

Secretary: Wái.

Caller : Wái. Haih m̀hhaih sàam baat luhk lìhng ńgh gáu a?

Secretary: Haih. Wán bīnwái nē?

Caller : Ngóh séung wán Léih Sàang tèng dihnwá.

Secretary: Deuim̀hjyuh laak. Kéuih chēutjó gāai bo.

Caller : Gám, kéuih géidímjūng fàanlàih nē?

Secretary: Léuhng dím lèhng jūng gamseuhnghā lā.

Caller : Hóu. M̀hgòi néih.

Secretary: M̀hsái m̀hgòi.

3. Mr. Ho telephones Mr. Chan:

Amah : Wéi. Wán bīngo a?

Caller: Wái. M̀hgòi néih giu Chàhn Sīnsàang tèng dihnwá lā.

Amah : Kéuih fàanjó gùng bo. Gwaising wán kéuih a?

Caller: Sing Hòh ge. Kéuih géisìh fàanlàih nē?

Amah : M̀hjì bo.

Caller: Dáng kéuih fàanlàih m̀hgòi néih giu kéuih dá dihnwá béi ngóh lā. Ngóh ge dihnwá haih....

Amah : M̀hgòi néih dáng yātján; ngóh ló jí bāt sin. Wéi, néih ge dihnwá haih....

Caller: Chāt-yāt-yāt-yih-líhng-chāt.

Amah : Hóu lā. Kéuih fàanlàih, ngóh giu kéuih dá béi néih lā.

Lesson Ten

1. Asking directions:

A: Chéng mahn Tīnsīng Máhtàuh hái bīndouh a?

B: Hái Màhnwàh Jáudim deuimihn.

A: Ngóh m̀hjí Màhnwàh Jáudim hái bīndouh bo.

B: Nē -- hái gó bihn gó gàan - néih tái m̀htáidóu a?

A: A, táidóu. M̀hgòisaai.

B: M̀hsái m̀hgòi.

2. Two friends discuss restaurants:

A: Néih séjihlàuh hái m̀hhái Hèunggóng nī bihn a?

B: Hái. Hái Daaih Douh Jūng.

A: Gódouh jógán yáuh móuh hóu ge chàhlàuh a?

B: Yáuh. Ngóh séjihlàuh gaaklèih yáuh gàan hóu hóu ga. Ngóh hóu jungyi hái gódouh yám chàh ga.

A: Ngóh séjihlàuh jógán ge chàhlàuh dōu m̀hhaih géi hóu, daahnhaih yáuh gàan géi hóu ge chāansāt. Ngóh jùngyi hái gódouh sihk ngaan.

3. Mrs. Ho compliments Miss Wong on her sweater:

Mrs. Ho : Néih gihn lāangsāam hóu leng. Hái bīndouh máaih ga?

Miss Wong: Hái Jùngwàahn yāt gàan gūngsī máaih ge.

Mrs. Ho : Bīn gàan nē?

Miss Wong: Hái ngóh séjihlàuh gaaklèih gó gàan.

Mrs. Ho : Haih m̀hhaih hái chējaahm deuimihn a?

Miss Wong: Haih. Haih gó gàan.

4. Mr. Ho calls Mr. Lee on the phone:

Léih Sàang: Wéi.

Hòh Sàang : Léih Sàang àh.

Léih Sàang: Haih a, bīn wái a?

Hòh Sàang : Ngóh haih Hòh Yaht-sīn a. Néih jí m̀hjí Méihgwok Jáudim hái bīndouh a? Yáuh go pàhngyáuh yātján sàam dīm hái gódouh dáng ngóh. Kéuih wáh ngóh ji Méihgwok Jáudím hái Seuhnghói Ngàhnhòhng gàakléih, daahnhaih ngóh wán m̀hdóu.

Léih Sàang: Méihgwok Jáudim m̀hhaih hái Seuhnghói Ngàhnhòhng gaaklèih. Hái Jùnggwok Ngàhnhòhng deuimihn. Néih jí m̀hjí Jùnggwok Ngàhnhòhng hái bīndouh a?

Hòh Sàang : O. Gám, ngóh jí laak. M̀hgòisaai. Joigin.

1) yātján = dángyātjahn = 'in a little while'

2) wán m̀hdóu = can't find it, search but not successful

Lesson Eleven

1. A clerk totals the bill for a customer at a grocery store:

Clerk : Sei jí bējáu, luhk jí heiséui, sahp go cháang...sahpsàam go yih lā.

Customer: Nàh, nīdouh yāt baak mān.

Clerk : Hóu, dáng ngóh jáaufàan béi néih lā. Aiya, deuim̀hjyuh, m̀hgau sáanjí tím. Néih yáuh móuh sáanjí a?

Customer: Ngóh dōu móuh bo.

Clerk : Gám, m̀hgòi néih dáng jahn, ngóh wán yàhn cheunghòi kéuih lā.

Customer: Hóu lā.

Clerk : Nīdouh jáaufàan baatsahpluhk go baat béi néih.

Customer: Néih yáuh móuh yāt mān ngán a?

Clerk : Yáuh, néih séung yiu géidō nē?

Customer: M̀hgòi néih cheung sahp mān ngóh lā.

Clerk : Hóu.

Customer: M̀hgòisaai.

2. At the teller's window in the bank Mr. Wong puts down a $500 bill and says:

Mr. Wòhng: M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh cheunghòi kéuih lā!

Teller : Cheung géidō a? Haih m̀hhaih ngoisaai sahp mān jí a?

Mr. Wòhng: M̀hhaih. Oi sei jèung yāt baak mān jí, sahp jèung sahp mān.

Teller : M̀hgau sahp mān jí bo. Oi gáu jèung sahp mān jí, sahp go yāt mān ngán, hóu m̀hhóu a?

Mr. Wòhng: Hóu, oi dī sáangán dōu hóu.

1) oi = here: to have in your possession

3. Talking about a borrowed book:

A: Néih gàmyaht m̀hgeidāk daai gó bún syù fàanlàih béi ngóh a?

B: Aiya! M̀hgeidāk tim! Jànhaih deuim̀hjyuh laak! Néih géisíh (géisí) yiu yuhng a?

A: Ngóh dáng jahn yiu ga. Yātján ngóh hohk Yīngmán móuh syù tái, m̀hdāk ge bo!

B: Gám, ngóh yìhgā fàan ūkkéi ló béi néih lā.

A: Yiu fàan ūkkéi ló àh. M̀hhóu laak. Néih jī m̀hjī nīdouh bīngo yáuh nī bún syù hóyíh jejyuh béi ngóh sin ga?

B: A! Chàhn Sàang dōu yuhng gó bún syù hohk Yīngmán, dáng ngóh giu kéuih je béi néih lā.

A: Hóu aak! M̀hgòisaai.

1) gàmyaht = today
2) yātján = dángyātjahn = 'in a little while'

Lesson Twelve

1. Two women meet in the elevator of their apartment building. One woman has her daughter with her:

Wòhng Táai: A, Léih Táai, tùhng gó néui heui bīn a?

Léih Táai : Ngóh daai kéuih heui tái yīsāng a.

Wòhng Táai: Mēyéh sih a?

Léih Táai : Kéuih m̀hséung sihk faahn lòh.

Wòhng Táai: Néih daai kéuih heui tái bīn go yīsāng a?

Léih Táai : Ngóh sīnsàang giu ngóh daai kéuih tái Jèung Yīsāng. Kéuih haih ngóhdeih gè pàhngyáuh.

Wòhng Táai: Bīn go Jèung Yīsāng a? Haih m̀hhaih Seuhnghói Ngàhnhòhng gó go a?

Léih Táai : Móuh cho, haih kéuih laak.

Wòhng Táai: Gám, ngóh sung néihdeih heui lā. Ngóh ngāamngāam yiu heui ngàhnhòhng ló chín.

Léih Táai : Hóu aak. M̀hgòisaai bo.

1) bīn = bīndouh?
2) Mēyéh sih a? = What's the matter?
3) lòh = sen. suf. expressing sympathy
4) ngāamngāam = just now, just on the point of, just

2. Two men on their way to the bus stop. They have just finished work:

A: Néih haih m̀hhaih fàan ūkkéi a?

B: M̀hhaih, ngóh yìhgā yiu heui ngóh néuipàhngyáuh ūkkéi taam kéuih màhmā.

A: Kéuih màhmā yáuh mēyéh sih a?

B: Móuh mēyéh sih. Kéuih giu ngóh heui kéuihdeih douh sihk faahn jē.

A: O--kéuihdeih jyuh hái bīn a?

B: Kéuihdeih ngāamngāam jyuh hái néih hauhbihn.

A: Haih mē? Gám, ngóh sung néih heui lā.

B: M̀hgòisaai.

1) Yáuh mēyéh sih a? = What's going on?

2) Móuh mēyéh sih = Nothing special.

3. Mr. and Mrs. Lee at home:

Léih Táai : Ngóh yātján yiu heui gūngsī máaih yéh. Néih yáuh móuh chín a?

Léih Sàang: Ngóh dāk sèsíu ja. Ngóh ngāamngāam séung heui ngàhnhòhng ló chín. Néih géidímjung cheutgaai a?

Leíh Táai : Hmmm...Ngóh yiu dáng Hòh Táai dihnwá bo.

Léih Sàang: Gám...Ngóh yìhgā heui ngàhnhòhng ló chín sin. Néih yātján làih ngóh séjihlàuh ló chín, hóu m̀hhóu a?

Léih Táai : Hóu! ...A, ...néih yáuh móuh yéh yiu máaih a?

Léih Sàang: Móuh laak.

1) ngāamngāam séung heui = just thinking of going

2) yātján = in a little while

Lesson Thirteen

1. Two girls driving in a car talk about a young man they see:

A: Hái hāak sīk gó ga chē hauhbihn gó go yàhn haih m̀hhaih néih pàhngyáuh a?

B: Haih bo! M̀hgòi néih fàanjyuntàuh lā. Ngóh yáuh dī yéh séung wah kéuih jí ge.

A: Hóu aak. Kéuih haih m̀hhaih sing Jèung ga?

B: M̀hhaih, kéuih sing Chàhn ge.

A: Kéuih giujouh mēyéh méng a?

B: Kéuih giujouh Gwok-wàh.

A: Chàhn Gwok-wàh...Hmm...Gám, m̀hhaih laak.

B: M̀hhaih mēyéh a?

A: Kéuih m̀hhaih Léih Síujé ge nàahmpàhngyáuh laak.

2. A young girl calls home:

Wòhng Táai: Wéi!

Sīu-Yīng : Wéi, màhmā àh? Ngóh haih Sīu-Yīng a. Ngóh yìhgā hái Màhnwàh Jáudim yám chàh. Néih làih m̀hlàih a?

Wòhng Táai: Néih tùhng bīngo yám chàh a?

Sīu-Yīng : Ngóh tùhng Hòh Méi-Wàh. Nīdouh dī béng hóu leng ga. Néih làih lā.

Wòhng Táai: Néih yáuh pàhngyáuh hái douh, ngóh m̀hlàih la.

Sīu-Yīng : Làih lā, màhmā, ngóh séung néih yātján tùhng ngóh heui máaih yéh a.

Wòhng Táai: Gám àh, sái m̀hsái ngóh jà chē làih ā?

Sīu-Yīng : Nījógán hóu síu wái paak chē ge bo. Néih giu dīksí làih lā.

Wòhng Táai: Hóu lā, ngóh jauh làih laak.

1) yātján = in a little while

2) dīksí = taxi

3. Asking directions:

A: Chéng mahn nī tìuh haih m̀hhaih Daaih Douh Jùng a?

B: M̀hhaih, néih hái nīdouh yātjihk heui, haahng dou daih sàam go gàaiháu gó tìuh jauh haih laak.

A: O, m̀hgòi.

(He goes on...)

A: Chéng mahn, Daaih Douh Jūng ńgh baak lìhng sei houh hái m̀hhái nījógán a?

C: Ńgh baak lìhng sei houh àh. Nē, chìhnbihn yauhsáubihn daih sàam gàan jauh haih laak.

A: Gó douh yáuh móuh wái paak chē ga?

C: Hóu chìh móuh bo.

A: Hóu. M̀hgòisaai.

1) gàaiháu = intersection [street-mouth]

2) hóu chìh = very likely..., most likely...

4. Passenger and taxi driver:

A: M̀hgòi Nèih Dèun Douh, ńgh baak yihsahp sei houh.

B: Hóu.

(They ride for awhile)

A: Gwojó daih yih go gàaiháu yauhbihn, tìhng chè lā. Ei! Gwojó la, m̀hgòi néih tanhauh sèsíu lā.

B: O, m̀hdāk bo, hauhbihn yáuh chē làih, m̀hhóyíh tanhauh.

1) Ei! = mild exclamation

2) gwojó la = here: we've overshot it, we've passed it. gwo = pass by

A: Gám, joi sái gwodī, fàanjyuntàuh lā.

B: Dāk.

The driver makes a U-turn at the intersection and goes back)

A: Hóu. Hái douh tìhng.

(He pays the driver $3 for the $2.70 ride)

M̀hsái jáau la.

B: Dòjeh.

1) sái = drive

Lesson Fourteen

1. Lunchtime:

Wòhng Sàang: A, Léih Síujé. Heui bīndouh a?

Léih Síujé : O, Wòhng Sàang. Ngóh ngāamngāam fòng gùng. Néih nē?

Wòhng Sàang: Ngóh ngāamngāam hái ngàhnhòhng ló chín fàanlàih. Sihk faahn meih a?

Léih Síujé : Meih a! Néih nē?

Wòhng Sàang: Ngóh dōu meih a, ngóh chéng néih heui sihk faahn lā, hóu m̀hhóu a?

Léih Síujé : Hóu aak, heui bīn gàan nē?

Wòhng Sàang: Gwóngjàu Jáugā dī yìhm guhk gāi hóu leng ga, néih sihkgwo meih a?

Léih Síujé : Meih sihkgwo.

Wòhng Sàang: Gám, ngóhdeih heui siháh lā.

(They arrive at the restaurant)

Wòhng Sàang: Fógei! Ngóhdeih séung yiu jek yìhm guhk gāi, mm...Léih Síujé, juhng yiu meyéh choi tīm nē?

Léih Síujé : Gaailáan cháau ngàuhyuhk lā, mm...yāt jek gāi taai dò, ngóhdeih sihk m̀hsaai, yiu bun jek jauh gau la, joi dīm go sài yèuhng choi tòng, hóu m̀hhóu a?

Wòhng Sàang: A. Hóu, Léih Síujé jànhaih sīk dím choi ge laak. Fógei m̀hgòi néih faai dī bo.

1) ngāamgnāam = just now

2) fòng gùng = leave work, get off from work

3) yìhm guhk gāi = salt-roasted chicken

4) gaailáan cháau ngàuhyuhk = stir fried beef and broccoli

5) taai = too

6) sài yèuhng choi tòng = watercress soup

Léih Síujé : Nīdouh dī choi jànhaih m̀hcho, ngóh dōu yiu daai ngóh māhmā làih sihháh.

(They finish eating)

Wòhng Sàang: Fógei, màaihdāan.

Fógei : Sīnsàang, yahsàam mān lā!

Wòhng Sàang: Nīdouh yah ńgh mān, m̀hsái jáau laak.

Léih Síujé : Wòhng sīnsàang, dòjehsaai bo.

Wōhng Sàang: M̀hsái haakhei.

2. Miss Lee takes her foreign friend to a restaurant for lunch:

A: Nī gàan jáugā m̀hcho ga. Dī yéh yauh pèhng yauh leng.

B: O. Haih mē?

A: Wai, fógei! M̀hgòi néih nīng go choipáai làih táiháh lā.

W: Hóu. Jauh làih.

A: Nīdouh yáuh Gwóngdùng choi, Seuhnghói choi. Néih séung sihk bīn yeuhng nē?

B: Ngóh séung sihháh Gwóngdùng choi. M̀hgòi néih gaaisiuhháh lā.

A: Gám, dím go yúhjyù, joi yiu go daaih hā. Hóu m̀hhóu a?

B: Hóu aak. Giu go Yèuhngjàu cháau faahn sihháh lā.

A: Mmm...Néih séung oi go mēyéh tòng tīm nē?

B: Sàiyèuhngchoi tòng lā.

A: A, fógei, m̀hgòi ló dò léuhng jī heiséui làih lā.

B: Mmm, dī cháau faahn tùhng daaih hā jànhaih m̀hcho laak.

A: Sihk dōdī tīm lā! M̀hhóu haakhei a.

B: Gau la! Dòjehsaai.

A: Fógei! Màaihdāan!

1) giu = order, call for (without having to look at a listed menu)

2) Yèuhngjàu cháau faahn = Yangchow fried rice

3) Sàiyèuhngchoi tòng = watercress soup

3. Deciding where to eat:

A: Néih jùngyi sihk mēyéh nē?

B: Néih wah lā, ngóh mēyéh dōu sihk gé.

A: Gám, néih séung sihk Jùngchoi yīkwaahk sāichāan nē?

B: Dōu dāk; néih wah lā.

A: Gam, ngóhdeih heui sihk Gwóngdùng choi, hóu m̀hhóu a?

B: Hóu! Néih jī m̀hjī bīndouh ge Gwóngdùng choi hóusihk a?

A: Jùnggwok Chàhlàuh ge géi hóu. Heui gódouh, hóu m̀hhóu a?

B: Hóu aak. Jà m̀hjà chē heui nē?

A: M̀hsái la. Jùnggwok Chàhlàuh hái deuimihn jē. Ngóhdeih hàahng heui lā.

4. Time for lunch. Two women friends:

A: A! Yìhgā jauh faai sahp-yih dím la. Ngóhdeih heui sihk aan sin, hóu m̀hhóu a?

B: Hóu aak!

A: Nīdouh jógán yáuh gàan hóu yáuh méng ge Gwóngdùng jáugā. Ngóh daai néih heui siháh lā.

B: Hóu a.

(In the restaurant a waiter
gives them a menu card:)

Waiter: Léuhng wái séung dím dī mēyéh choi nē?

A : Wòhng Táai, néih jùngyi sihk dī mēyéh a?

B : Ngóh m̀hsīk dím ga. Néih gaaisiuh géi yeuhng jauh dāk la.

A : Gám, ngóh dím géi yeuhng nīdouh yáuh méng ge béi néih siháh lā. Fógei, yiu go gùlòu yuhk, yāt go daaih hā, dōu yiu sai ge.

B : Joi yiu yāt go jyùhuhk tòng, hóu m̀hhóu a?

A : Hóu aak! Fógei, juhng yiu yāt go jyùyuhk tòng tím. Faaidī bo.

Waiter: Hóu.

A : Wòhng Táai, sihk dōdī lā.

B : Gau la--nīdouh dī choi jànhaih m̀hcho bo!

A : Haih a. A! Yìhgā jauh faai yāt dím bun la, ngóhdeih jáu la, hóu ma?

B : Hóu aak.

A : Fógei! Màaihdāan. (She pays the check, leaving a tip.)

Waiter: Dòjehsaai.

1) faai = soon, almost, approaching (preceding a time expression)
2) yáuh méng = famous
3) gùlòu yuhk = sweet & sour pork
4) dōu yiu sai ge = want both to be small portions

Lesson Fifteen

1. Asking directions:

A: Chéng mahn néih, Méihgwok Gūngsī hái bīndouh a?

B: Hái Dāk Fuh Douh Jùng.

A: Yàuh nīdouh dím heui a?

B: Hái nīdouh yātjihk hàahng, gwojó daih yih go gàaiháu, yìhnhauh jyun yauh.

A: Jyun yauh jìhauh nē?

B: Joi yātjihk hàahng, gwojó gàaisíh, jauh haih Dāk Fuh Douh Jùng. Heuidou gódouh, néih jauh táidóu ga laak.

A: Hóu, m̀hgòi.

B: M̀hsái m̀hgòi.

2. At a department store, looking for a friend who works there:

A: Chéng mahn, Léih Síu-lìhng Síujé hái bīndouh a?

B: Léih Síu-lìhng, kéuih hái bīn go bouhfahn jouh sih ga?

A: Hái maaih lāangsāam gó go bouhfahn.

B: O, haih laak. Kéuih wah ngóh jī yáuh wái sīnsàang yiu wán kéuih, yìhgā kéuih hái yahpbihn dáng néih.

A: Gám, ngóh hái bīndouh yahpheui a?

B: Hmm...Néih hái nīdouh yātjihk hàahng, yìhnhauh jyunchēut jósáubihn, Léih Síujé jáuh hái gódouh laak.

A: M̀hgòisaai.

B: M̀hsái m̀hgòi.

3. Mr. Cheung has rung the bell of apt. 12-A. A servant answers the door, and Mr. Cheung says:

A: Chéng mahn néih, Wòhng Sīnsàang hái m̀hhái douh a?

B: Bīn wái Wòhng Sīnsàang a?

A: Wòhng Wíhng-yihp Sīnsàang.

B: M̀hhái nīdouh bo. Chéng néih séuhngheui sei láu mahnháh lā.

(Goes up)

A: Chéng mahn, Wòhng Wíhng-yihp Sīnsàang hái m̀hhái douh a?

C: Néih wán bīngo a? Ngóhdeih nīdouh móuh sing Wòhng ge bo.

A: Haih mē? Deuim̀hjyuh bo. Daahnhaih ngóh ngāamngāam mahngwo yih láu yāt go yàhn, kéuih wah Wòhng Wíhng-yihp jyuh hái sei láu ge bo.

C: Oh! Wòhng Wíhng-yihp! Kéuih haih m̀hhaih gaau Gwóngdùngwá ga?

A: Móuh cho, haih kéuih laak.

C: Kéuih jyuh hái sàam láu, néih hàahng fàan lohk heui lā.

A: Hóu, m̀hgòisaai.

4. Discussing Cantonese lessons:

A: Yìhgā bīngo gaau néih góng Gwongdùngwá a?

B: Dōu haih Jèung Sàang.

A: Hohkdou daih géi fo a?

B: Daih sahpńgh fo ge la.

A: Daih sahpńgh fo góng mēyéh ga?

B: Haih góng heui gūngsī máaih yéh gé, nī fo jànhaih hóu yáuh yuhng. Hohkjó nī fo ngóh jauh hóyíh tùhng gūngsī ge fógei góng Gwóngdùngwá laak.

A: Haih àh.

B: Haih a! Go fógei juhng wah ngóh ge Gwóngdùngwá hóu hóu tìm.

A: Haih ā. Néih ge Gwóngdùngwá haih m̀hcho aak.

B: Néih gám góng, ngóh jauh jànhaih m̀hhóu yisi la.

1) yáuh yuhng = useful

GRAMMATICAL INDEX

Numbers to the left of the period refer to lesson numbers, and those to the right, to page numbers.

ā, ss: a (QV) + raised intonation for liveliness, 14.316

a, ss: sen. softener, 2.40-41

àh, ss: 'I suppose,' indicating rhetorical question, 8.186

aak, ss: a (QV) + -K (QV), 5.114

adjectives, 4.92; 8.183-85; as modifier to nouns, 8.187

adverbs, 1.25

auxiliary verbs, 3.68; compared with co-verbs, 12.270

bātgwo, 14.316

bīn-M?, 'which?', 8.177, 8.188

bīnwái?, substituting for gwaising?, 9.214

bo, ss: for definiteness, 9.207

boundwords, 6.136

chéng V , 'please V ', polite imperative, 15.336

chìhnbihn, 12.285

co-verbs, 12.270

daai, 'bring/take along', 12.272; 'take/bring along', contrasted with sung, 12.282-83

daih-, ordinal prefix, 15.335

daihyih-, 1) the second, 2) the next, 15.335

dāk, 'OK', 11.245; 'ready', 11.245; with quantity phrase object, = 'have only X amount', have sufficient amount, 11.245; in yáuhdāk V ', 'have available to V ', 11.246

deihhá, differentiated from làuhhah and hahbihn, 15.334

dī, as adj. suffix, 8.185; general measure for mass nouns, 7.159; plural measure, 7.158; substitute for noun in a follow sentence, 7.158

dialect variations, hl tone substituted for hf tone, 1.6; initial consonant l substituted for n, 3.63; ng before words beginning with /a/o/u/, 4.94

directional verbs, 15.333; preceded by verbs of movement, 15.334

directional verb compounds, 14.314; position of noun object, 14.314

dò, 'additional,' 'more', bound to following Nu-M phrase; nominal construction, 14.316; patterning like adj., patterning like N, patterning like Nu, 8.188; 'large amount' in phrases of indefinite amounts, 11.247-48

-dò/-síu phrases, with following Measure, 11.248; with following N, 11.247

dōu, also, both, all, 3.68; even, 3.68

dōuhaih, 'really' as intonation marker lightening a blunt statement, 14.315

-dōu, Vsuf indicating reaching destination or goal, 15.334

-douh, PW formant, 10.226

-dóu, Vsuf, indicating successful accomplishment of performance of the verb, 10.228

fo, 'lesson', classed as Measure, 15.336

Free words, 6.136

ga, fusion of ge, noun-forming boundword (QV) + ss. a (QV), 2.43

ga, ss: fusion of ss. ge, 'that's the way it is,' and ss. a, sentence softener, 11.256

gàn, 'follow', compared with gànjyuh, 12.271

gànjyuh, (follow', compared with gàn, 12.271

-ge, noun-forming boundward, 2.43

ge, as nominal, adj + ge = Noun Phrase, 8.185; suffix to adj in modification structure, 8.187; as nominal, substituting for noun, 8.187

ge, ss., matter-of-fact 'that's the way it is' connotation, 3.64

ge, as possessive marker, 9.207-08; overlap with Measure, 9.208

gé, ss. ge, 'that's the way it is' + rising intonation for uncertainty, 11.248

géi(dō)?,as interrogative number, 6.137

géi?, how many?, compared with géi, several, 6.137; compared w. géidō?, 6.137

géi, several,compared with géi? 'how many?', 6.137

go jih, omission of in time phrases, 9.210

gó, 'that', 6.136

-gwo, Vsuf, experiential verb suffix, 14,314

hahbihn, differentiated from deihá and làuhhah, 15.334

-háh, Vsuf for casualness, 5.115

haih, as first verb in series, 3.64

haih...X...laih ge, phrase frame for nouns, 7.160

hái, location verb, 10.22; in multi-verb clauses follows verbs of thrust (ex: jài, 'put,' 'place'), precedes or follows verbs of station (ex: jyuh, 'live'), 12.273; as preposition 'from', interchangeable with yàuh, 15.341

hauhbihn, back side, 12.285

hóyíh, 'can' in the sense of 'can do a favor', 'willing and able', 13.293

hóyíh, 'can', in the sense of 'permitted to', 13.293

indirect object, 6.137

ja, ss: fusion of ss. jē (QV) and ss. a (QV), implies 'not much', 11.256

jauh, 'then', in two-clause sentence, 13.292

jauh, 'right away,' 'immediately', in single-clause sentence, 13.292

jē, ss: 'merely', 3.64

jip, 'fetch,' 'meet', 12.272-73

-jó, Vsuf accomplishment of intended action, 9.207; 'accomplish the performance', 15.335

juhng, still, in addition, also, 14.316

jùngyi, differentiated from séung, 9.209

-k, word suffix, suffixed to certain sentence suffixes, indicating liveliness, 5.114

lā, ss: for polite suggestion in imperative sentence, 4.93; for polite imperative, 5.114

la, ss: indicating change, 4.93; in imperative sentence, conveying attitude of friendly advice, 13.294 and 13.303

laak, ss: for change, 5.113

léh, ss: for definiteness, 5.114

làih ge see haih....X....làih ge, 7.160

làuhhah, differentiated from deihhá and hahbihn, 15.334

léuhng and yih, '2', 4.93

locatives, 10.225

M̀hjì...a?, as polite question, 6.137

m̀hsái, 6.135

ma?, ss: interrogative sentence suffix, 14.316

mē?, ss: for surprised question, 3.64

Measures, 4.91-9; as word class, 6.133; individual measures, 6.133; group measures, 6.134; standard measures, 6.134; substituting for noun, 6.135; without preceding number, 6.135

Measure, overlap with possessive ge, 9.208

meih, 14.315

mēyéh, as mass noun, 14.315

money expressions, 7.160-162

nē?, interrogative ss, How about___?, 2.41; ss: to a question sentence continuing the same topic, 8.186

nē, ss: used more by women than men, suffix to clause sentence, 8.186

negative questions, responses to, 12.274

nī, 'this', 6.136

noun modification structures, 8.187

Nouns, absence of singular/plural distinction, 2.39; modification of nouns, 2.40; as word class, 6.135; individual nouns, 6.133; mass nouns, 7.159; mass nouns, how counted, 7.159; individual and mass nouns compared, 7.159

Nouns as modifiers to Nouns, 8.187

Numbers, 1-19, 4.92; 20-29, 6.132; abbreviated forms, 6.132; numbers with internal zeroes, 11.261; numbers with final zeroes, 11.261

paired conjunctions, ...sìn, yìhnhauh...., 15.333

Phrases, 1.25-26

Phrase frame, 7.160

Placewords (PW), 10.224-26; ordinary nouns which are also PWs, 10.225; -douh as PW formant for non-PWs, 10.226

Possessive with -ge, in head structures, 9.207-08

Possessive modification, with -ge, 9.207-08; without -ge, 9.208; without ge or M, for some family names, 12.273-74; with without ge or M, 12.279; with without ge or M, 15.338

Predicates, verbal predicate, 3.66; nominal predicate, 3.66; sentence predicate, 3.67

Pronouns, personal pronouns, 2.39; plural marker for personal pronouns, 2.39-40; absence of pronoun object, 3.67

Question sentences with N nē?, 2.41; choice type, 2.42; word order of question-word sentences, 2.43; with ss. mē?, 3.64; with ss. àh for rhetorical question, 8.186; with VP nē?, 8.186; with _ hjì....a? (or....nē?), 6.13 ; choice type Q for 2 syllable adjs Vsuf, 8.185; responses to questions negatively phrased, 12.274; with ss. ma?, 14.316

Question words (QW): bīn-M?, 8.177, 8.188; bīndouh?, 10.222; bīngo?, 3.75; géi-?, 4.90, 6.137; géidím(jūng)?, 4.90; géidō?, 6.127, 6.137; géisí?(var:géisih?), 9.201 dím? 3.59; mātyéh? (var:mēyéh?, mīyéh?), 2.32, 2.42.

sèsíu, 'a little,' modifies mass nouns only, 11.247

Sentence suffixes: as means to signal feelings, 2.40; tone marks inappropriate, 2.41; intonational, 4.93, 11.248, 2.41, 14.316.

Sentence suffixes, list of:
    ā, 14.316
    a, 2.40-41
    àh, 8.186
    aak, 5.114
    bo, 9.207
    ge/ga, 3.64; 11.256
    ja [j], 11.257
    jē, 3.64
    lā, 4,93; 5,114
    la, for change, 4.93
    la, for friendly advice, 13.294, 13.303
    laak, 5.113
    léh, 5.114
    ma?, 14.316
    mē?, 3.64
    nē?, 2.41; 8.186
    tìm, 'in addition', 4.84
    tìm!, for taken by surprise, 11.246
    wá?, 4.91

Sentence types: full sentence, 1.25; minor sentence, 1.25; SP sentence, 1.25; lead sentence, 1.26; follow sen., 1.26; choice-type question, 2.42; QW question, 2.42; loose relationship of Subject and Predicate, 3.65; Topic:Comment sentence, 3.65; sentence w. verbal predicate, 3.66; sentence w. nominal predicate, 3.66; sentence w. sentence predicate, 3.67; SVO sentence 3.67; subjectless sentence 3.67; subordinate clause, primary clause sentence, 12.268-69; multi-verb single clause sentence, 12.269

séung, 'plan to,' 'am considering', 3.58; differentiated from jùngyi, 9.209; differentiated from yiu, 9:209

sīk, 'know (how to);' 'know (someone),' 3.69

sìn, 'first,' implies something else to follow, 11.244

-síu, 'small amount,' in phrases of indefinite amounts, 11.247-48

síusíu,'a tiny bit,' 'very little,' modifies mass nouns only, 11.247

Specifiers, 6.136

sung, 'deliver,' 12.272; contrasted with daai, 12-282-83

tìm , s.s.: 'in addition,' 4.84

tìm!, s.s.: indicating speaker has been taken by surprise, 11.246

Time When expressions, 4.90

Time Spent expressions, 4.91

tùhng, 'and,' 3.68

tùhng, 'with,' 12.283; compared with tùhng, 'and,' 12.270-71

Verb suffixes, list of:
    -dou, 15.334
    -dóu, 10.228
    -gwo, 14.314
    -háh, 5.115
    -jó, 9.207;15.335

Verbs: preceded by m̀h, 1.25; modification by adverbs, 1.25; absence of subject-verb concord, 2.39; verbs in series, 3.63, 12.269; uninflected verb forms, 3.63; haih as first verb in series, 3.64; two-part verbs of performance and achievement, 15.334

wá?, interrogative sen.suf., 4.91

word class, multiple membership:7.162

yāt, 'one,' ommssion in certain 'one dollar' phrases, 7.162; omission in certain 'one o'clock' phrases, 9.210

yātjihk, 'straight'; 'straightaway', 13.292

yauh, 'and,' 3.68

yàuh PW, 'from PW '. 15.335;

yáuh, 'to have; there is/are', 8.183; in pivotal construction, 10.227

yáuhdāk V , 'have available for V-ing, 11.246

yih, '2,' compared with léuhng, 4.93

yìkwaahk, '...., or...?, 14.315

yihp, 'page,' 15.336

yiu, 'must,' 5.115; relationship with m̀hsái, 5.115, 6.136; with following money expression='wants,' 'costs,' 6.140; 'intends to,' 9.209; contrasted with séung, 9.209

CUMULATIVE VOCABULARY LIST

LESSONS 1-15

Entries are arranged in alphabetical order by syllable, with h indicating lower register disregarded alphabetically. When words having the same syllable but different tones are listed, the sequence of tone listing is: high level, mid level, low level, high falling, low falling, high rising, low rising. Numbers in the right hand column refer to the lesson in which the item first appears, thus:

12 = Lesson 12 Basic Conversation
12.1 = Lesson 12, Drill 1
1CP = Lesson 1, Classroom Phrases
1N = Lesson 1, Notes

Items which appear for the first time in the Classroom Phrases and Notes are listed again when appearing for the first time in the main body of the text. Measures for the nouns follow the noun entries in brackets.

ā	啊	sen. suf. a (QV) + raised intonation for liveliness	14
A	呀	oh, ah. (a mild exclamation)	1
a	呀	sen. suf., to soften abruptness	2
agō [go]	阿哥	elder brother	11
àh	吖	sen. suf. with force of 'I suppose.'	8
aak	呃	sen. suf. a (QV) + -k (QV)	5.7
āam (var: ngāam)	啱	fitting, proper, right	2CP
āamāam (var: ngāamngāam)	啱啱	exactly	4.5
āamjeuk (var: ngāamjeuk)	啱著	well-fitting (for clothes), fits well	8.2
aan (var: ngaan)	晏	noon, midday	9
Aiya!	哎吔	exclamation of consternation	5
bá	把	Measure for things with handles, such as umbrellas	6.1
baak	百	hundred	11
baahk	白	white	8
baahk faahn [wún] [dī]	白飯	boiled or steamed rice	14.1
baat	八	eight	4.0
bàau	包	package, Measure for cigarette pack	7.1
bàhbā [go]	爸爸	father	12.3
bāt [jī]	筆	writing implement, either pen or pencil	6.1
bātgwo	不過	however; but; although	14

béi	俾	give	6
béi	俾	let, allow	7CP
bējáu [jī] [bùi] [jèun]	啤酒	beer	5.2
béng [go] [dī] [faai]	餅	cake	5
bīn-?	邊	which?	8
bīnbihn?	邊便	which side?	10.8
bīndouh?	邊度	where? [which place?]	4CP;10
bīngo	邊個	whomever, whoever, whichever	3CP
bīngo?	邊個	who?; which person?	3.12
-bihn	便(邊)	side	10
bīu [go]	錶(個)	watch, wristwatch	4
bo	噃	sen. suf. expressing certainty	4
bohng	磅	pound (weight)	7
bou [fàai] [fāt]	布	cloth	7.1
bouhfahn [go]	部分(個)	department (in a store)	15
būi [jek] [go]	杯(隻)(個)	a cup, glass	14.1
bùi	杯	cupful, glass-full (measure of volume)	14.1
bun	半	half	4.3
bún	本	Measure for book	1CP;7.1
búndeihyàhn [go]	本地人(個)	a native of the place under discussion [this-place-person]	10
chàm̀hdō	差唔多	approximately	2CP;4
chàh [bùi] [wùh]	茶(杯)(壺)	tea	5
chàhlàuh [gàan]	茶樓(間)	Cantonese style tea-house	10.2
chāansāt [gàan]	餐室(間)	Western style restaurant	10.2
cháang [go]	橙(個)	orange (fruit)	5.1
cháau	炒	to toss-fry in a small amount of oil, as in scrambling eggs	14.2
cháau faahn [wún] [dihp]	炒飯(碗)(碟)	fried rice	14.2
cháau mihn [wún] [dihp]	炒麵(碗)(碟)	fried noodles	14.1
Chàhn	陳	Chan (sur.)	1
chāt	七	seven	4.0
chē [ga]	車(架)	vehicle: car, bus, or tram	10.9
chē jaahm [go]	車站(個)	car stop (bus or tram stop)	10.3
chéng...	請	please (+ Verb). polite preface to imperative sentence.	15

Chéng mahn	請問	'May I ask...?' Polite form used to preface a question equivalent to English 'Could you please tell me...?'	10
chèuihbín	隨便	As you wish. At your convenience.	5
Chèuihbín chóh lā.	隨便坐啦	'Sit anywhere you like.' Polite phrase used by host to guest.	5
cheung	暢(唱)	change money into smaller denomination (followed by denomination desired)	11.16
cheunghòi	暢(唱)開	split, break up a large banknote or coin for ones of lesser denomination (followed by denomination held)	11
chèuhng	長	long (in length)	8.1
chèuhng sāam [gihn]	長衫[件]	cheongsaam. Chinese style dress for women, with high collar and slit skirt	8.7
chēut	出	out, emerge	15
chēutheui	出去	go out	
chēutlàih	出嚟	come out	
chēutbihn	出便(邊)	outside, exterior	15.1
chēut gāai	出街	to go out (from one's own house)	9.3
chi	次	time, occasion	1CP;3
chīn	千	thousand	11.17
chìhnbihn	前便(邊)	front side, in front, at the front	12.15
chín [dī]	錢[dī]	money	6
chīngchó	清楚	clear	3
chìhngyìhng	情形	circumstances, conditions	7CP
cho	錯	mistake (v/n)	9
chóh	坐	sit	5
choi [dihp] [go]	菜[碟][個]	food; a particular food, a dish	14
choidāan [jèung]	菜單[張]	menu of a specific dinner	14N
choipáai [go]	菜牌[個]	menu, bill of fare	14
dā	打	dozen	8
dá	打	hit	9
dá dihnwá	打電話	make a telephone call	9
dá dihnwá giu chē	打電話叫車	phone for a cab	15.11
dáhòi	打開	open (as of book)	1CP;15.3
daai	帶	carry; bring/take something along; bring/take someone along	11;12

-dóu	到	verb suf., indicating successful accomplishment of what is attempted	10
duhk	讀	read aloud; recite; read	3CP;15.3
duhkdou	讀到	read to...	15.3
duhk syù	讀書	to study	18
dyún	短	short	8
faahn [wún] [túng]	飯[碗][桶]	rice (cooked)	5.1
fàan	返	return (to/from a place you habitually go to)	9.3
fàan gùng	返工	go [return] to work	9.3
fàanheui	返去	go back, return	17
fàan hohk	返學	go to school	9.3
fàanjyuntàuh	返轉頭	turn (the car) around and go back in the direction you had been coming. [return-turn-head]	13.1
fàanlàih	返嚟	come back, return (here)	9
fàan (ng)ūkkéi	返屋企	go [return] home	9.3
faai	快	fast	4
faaijí [deui] [jek] [sēung]	筷子[對][隻][雙]	chopstick(s)	14.5
fānjūng	分鐘	minute(s)	4
fànbiht	分別	difference	7CP
fo	課	lesson	4CP;15.3
fógei [go]	伙記[個]	clerk in a grocery store	6
fógei [go]	伙記[個]	waiter in a restaurant	14
fu [tìuh]	褲[條]	trousers, slacks, long pants	6.1
fu	副	pair; M. for eyeglasses	11.13
fut	濶	wide	8.3
ga	㗎	sen. suf: a fusion of noun-forming boundword ge and sen.suf. a (QV)	2.9
ga (var: ge, [gə])	㗎	sen. suf. for matter of fact assertion: 'that's a fact'	3
ga	架	M. for vehicles	12
gāai [tìuh]	街[條]	street	13
gaaisiuh	介紹	recommend; introduce	14
gàaiháu [go]	街口[個]	street opening; i.e., intersection	15.8
gàaisíh [go]	街市[個]	food market	15
gáai(sīk)	解(釋)	explain	7CP

daaih	大	large	8
Daaih Douh Jùng	大道中	Queen's Road Central	10.3
daaihsēng	大聲	loud (voice)	2CP
Daaihsēngdī!	大聲的	Speak louder!	9
daahnhaih	但係	but	3
daap	答	to answer	2CP
Daap cho sin.	搭錯線	Wrong number. [connected the wrong line] (said over the phone)	9.3
daaphaak [dī]	搭客(的)	passenger	13
daahp	搭	tread on. in time expression daahp combines with the numbers on the clock face to indicate the 5-minute subdivisions of the hour. Thus, daahp yāt = 5 after, daahp yih = 10 after, etc.	4
daahp bun	搭半	half past (the hour)	4.4
daahp géi?	搭幾	how many five minutes past the hour? [tread on-which number?]	4.4
daih	第	ordinal number marker: -st, -nd, -rd, -th, etc.	3CP;15.3
daihyāt	第一	the first	15
dáifu [tìuh]	底褲(條)	underpants, undershorts	6.3
dáikwàhn [tìuh]	底裙(條)	slip, petticoat	6.1
dáisāam [gihn]	底衫(件)	underwear	8.13
dāk	得	OK, all right	7CP;11
dāk...	得....	have only..., only have X quantity. (dāk with a quantity phrase as object implies that the quantity is insufficient.)	11
yáuh -dāk-	有-得-	available, can. (used between the verb yáuh (or its negative móuh) and a second verb, forms a phrase: 'have (or not have) available for V.-ing'; 'can V.'	11
Dākfuh Douh Jùng	德輔道中	Des Veoux Road Central	10.5
Dāk meih?	得未	Are you (Is he, etc.) ready?	4
dáng	等	wait (for)	4
dáng Person Verb	等	allow, let Person do something; wait while Person does something	9
dáng (yāt)ján or dáng yātjahn	等(一)陣 等一陣	wait awhile; in a little while	9.3

deihhá	地下	ground, ground floor	15.1
deui	對	pair; group measure for shoes, socks, chopsticks, things that come in two's	6.1
Deuim̀hjyuh.	對唔住	Excuse me; I beg your pardon; I'm sorry.	1
deuimihn	對面	opposite side, facing; across the street	10
dī	的	the; some. (plural M for individual nouns)	1CP;7
dī	的	a little, some; the. (general M for mass nouns)	3;7
-dī	的	suffixed to Adj. to mean: a little Adj, somewhat Adj, Adj-er. Attached to predicate Adj. means: a little too Adj.	2CP;8
dihnwá [go]	電話[個]	telephone	9
dím	點	to order (food, by pointing out your choice from a list.)	14
dím?	點	how?	3
dím bun	點半	1:30 o'clock	9.7
dím(jūng)	點(鐘)	o'clock. (represents the hour place in a time phrase)	4
diuhtàuh	掉頭	turn (a car) around [turn-head]	13.4
dōdī	多的	more (in addition). (follows Verb)	14
dò	多	much, many	8
dò	多	additional, another, more. (precedes Number + M phrase)	14
Dòjeh.	多謝	Thank you (for gift)	14
Dòjehsaai.	多謝晒	Thank you very much.	14
dōu	都	also	2
dōu	都	both; and	3
dōuhaih	都係	really	14
dōu + neg. V.	都	not even V.	3.16
dou	到	arrive	13
-dou	到	verb suf. to verbs of motion, indicating arrival at goal	15
Douh	道	Road (restricted to use following named road)	12.2
-douh	度	place. also see: hái douh	11

gaaklèih	隔籬	next door, adjacent	10
gàan	間	M. for buildings	10
gaau	教	teach	3.3
gaaudou	教到	teach to...	4CP
gafē [bùi] [wùh]	咖啡[杯][壺]	coffee	5.2
gāi [jek]	雞[隻]	chicken	7.1
gaijuhk	繼續	continue	2CP
gam	咁	so (+ Adj.)	5
gamseuhnghá	咁上下	approximately	9.7
gám	咁	that way, this way, thus, such a way	2CP;3CP
Gám,...	咁	'Well then,...' 'Say,...' (Sen. preface, resuming the thread of previous discussion)	3
gàn	斤	catty. unit of weight equalling 600 gms., ca. 1 lb 5 oz.	7
gàn	跟	follow, come behind	12.7
gànjyuh	跟住	follow, come after	1CP; 3CP 12.7
gāng [jek]	羮[隻]	spoon	14.4
gau	夠	enough	6
gauh	舊	old (not new)	8.1
gáu	九	nine	4.0
Gáulùhng	九龍	Kowloon	12
-ge	嘅	noun-forming boundword. added to Verb Phrase makes it a Noun Phrase	2
-ge	嘅	as noun substitute	8.8
ge	嘅	possessive marker, joins with preceding personal noun or pronoun to form possessive.	9.10
gèibún	基本	basic; foundation	4CP
géi	幾	several	4
géi_?	幾	which number?; how many?	4 ; 6
géi	幾	rather, quite	8
géidím? (var: géidímjūng?)	幾點 (幾點鐘)	what time is it? [which number - o'clock?]	4
géidō?	幾多	how much?, how many?	6
géidò	幾多	quite a lot	11.11

géidō houh?	幾多號	what number?	9
géisī? (var: géisìh?)	幾時	when?	9
geui	句	sentence	3CP;3.14
géui	舉	give (an example)	7CP
gihn	件	M. for clothes, such as shirt, dress, raincoat	6
giu	叫	instruct, tell (someone to do something); order; call	9
giu chē	叫車	call a cab	15.11
giu(jouh)	叫(做)	is called, is named	13
go	個	general M. for many nouns	1CP;4
go	個	M. for dollar; represents the dollar place in a money phrase	7
gó-	嗰	that; those	6
gó bihn	嗰便(邊)	over there, on that side	10
gódī	嗰的	those (in reference to unit nouns); that (in reference to mass nouns)	7
gódouh	嗰度	there [that-place]	10.1
góng	講	speak	1CP;2CP;3
góng Person jī	講……知	tell Person	9.8
góng Person tèng	講……聽	tell Person	9.8
guhaak [dī]	顧客	customers	6
gūngsī [gàan]	公司[間]	department store; office (of a commercial company)	10
gùngyàhn [go]	工人[個]	servant, laborer	9
gwai	貴	expensive	8.1
gwaising?	貴姓	what is (your) surname? (polite)	2
gwaisingmìhng?	貴姓名	what is your surname and given name? (polite)	13.17
gwāt	骨	quarter (hour)	4
gwo	過	pass by (a point); cross (a street); go over (to a place)	13
-gwo	過	V. suf. indicating experience; to have done something before.	14
gwodī	過的	beyond; a little farther on	13
Gwodī tīm.	過的添	Go further on; i.e. Keep going. (said to taxi driver)	13
Gwokyúh	國語	Mandarin spoken language [National-language]	3

Gwóngdùng	廣東	Kwangtung, province in SE China	2
Gwóngdùng choi	廣東菜	Cantonese food	14.2
Gwóngdùngwá	廣東話	Cantonese spoken language	3.1
Gwóngdùngyàhn [go]	廣東人[個]	Cantonese person, person from Kwangtung province	2
hā [jek]	蝦[隻]	shrimp	14
hahbihn	下便(邊)	below, downstairs	15.1
-háh	吓	verb suf. giving casual effect to the verb it is joined to.	5
hàaih [deui] [jek]	鞋[對][隻]	shoes	6.2;7.1
hāak	黑	black	8
haakhei	客氣	polite	5
hàahng	行	go; walk; drive	13
haih	係	am, is, are, was, were, etc.	1
haih...làih ge	係…嚟嘅	is...; grammatical structure emphasizing enclosed noun	7
hái PW	喺	from PW	15.6
hái PW	喺	location verb, translated as '(is) in/on/at' (requires PW following)	7CP;10
haí douh	喺度	(he, she, it) is here; is at (this) place	11
hauhbihn	後便(邊)	back side; behind, in the back, at the back	12
heiséui [jí] [jèun] [bùi]	汽水[支][樽][杯]	soft drink	5.2
heui	去	go	12
-heui	去	attaches to verbs of motion, indicating direction away from the speaker	15
heui gāai	去街	go out (from one's own house)	9.3
Hèunggóng	香港	Hong Kong	10.3
Hòh	何	Ho (sur.)	1
hóyíh	可以	be permitted, allowed to	13
hohk	學	study, learn	3
hohkhaauh [gàan]	學校[間]	school	12
hohksāang [go]	學生[個]	student	1
houh	號	number; 'size' (for some articles of clothing)	8
houh	號	number (for street number in giving an address)	12.2

hòuh(jí)	毫子	dime (represents the same place in a money expression when the figure is less than a dollar)	7
hóu	好	very, quite	2CP;8
hóu	好	well, good	2CP;8
Hóu	好	OK, All right, Fine, Agreed. (Response phrase indicating agreement.)	4
Hóu aak.	好呃	OK. Agreed. (Lively response phrase indicating agreement.)	5.7
hóudò	好多	a lot	11.11
Hóu ma?	好嗎	Is that OK?	14
hóu m̀hhóu a?	好唔好呀	OK?, is (that) all right?	8
hóusihk	好食	good to eat; tasty	8.2
hóusíu	好少	very little	11.11
hóuyám	好飲	good to drink; tasty	8.2
ja	咋	sen. suf: a fusion of sen. suffixes jē and a, implying not much, merely	11.11
jà	揸	to clutch in the hand(s), grab	13.15
jà chē	揸車	to drive a car	13.15
jaak	窄	narrow	8.3
jaahm	站	stop, station, as in 'bus stop,' 'train station'	10.3
jáau	找	give change	11
jáaufàan	找翻	give back change [change-return]	11
jái [go]	仔〔個〕	son	12.2
jáinéui [dī]	仔女〔的〕	children of a family, sons and daughters of a family	12.2
jànhaih	真係	really, indeed	5
jauh	就	then; and; immediately; soon	3CP;13
jáu	走	leave, depart	5
jáu [jèun] [bùi]	酒〔樽〕〔杯〕	alcoholic beverage	5.2
jáudim [gàan]	酒店〔間〕	hotel	10
jáugā [gàan]	酒家〔間〕	Chinese style restaurant	14.8
jē	啫	sen. suf: only, merely; that's all	3
jē [bá]	遮	umbrella	6.1
je	借	lend, borrow	11
jejyuh	借住	lend or borrow temporarily	11

jek	隻	M. for shoe, sock, ship, cup, spoon, chicken and others.	7.1
jeuk	著	wear; put on (clothes)	8
jéun	準	accurate, right	2CP;4
Jèung	張	Cheung (sur.)	1.1
jèung	張	M. for banknote, table, chair, newspaper, and other sheet-snaped objects	11
jih [go]	字[個]	written figure; word; used in telling time, indicates the 5-minute divisions of the hour, thus: yāt go jih = 5 minutes; 5 min. past the hour.	4;7CP
jihgéi	自己	my-, your-, him-self; our-, your-, them-selves	2CP
jī	支	M. for pens, pencils, bottles, and other things that are small thin and striplike in size	6.1
jī(dou)	知	to know (something)	3
jí [jèung]	紙[張]	banknote; paper	11
jīdou	知道	point to	3CP
jip	接	meet, fetch, pick up (a person)	12
jīu [jek] [sō]	蕉[隻][梳]	banana	5.1
-jó	咗	verb suf. indicating accomplishment of performance undertaken	9
jó	左	left (direction)	13
jóbihn	左便(邊)	left side	13
-jógán	左近	nearby,(t)hereabouts	10
jósáubihn	左手便(邊)	lefthand side	13
joi	再	again	1CP;3
joi dá làih	再打嚟	call back (on the phone)	9.3
Joigin.	再見	Goodbye.	1
joi góng yātchi	再講一次	say it again	3
jouh	做	do; work; act as	2CP;3CP;12.2
jouh sāam	做衫	make clothes, have clothes made	12.12
jouh sih	做事	to work, have a job	12.2
jouh yéh	做嘢	do chores, have a job	14.7
Jóusàhn.	早晨	Good morning.	1
jūng [go]	鐘[個]	clock	6.1

juhng	重	still, in addition, also (+ verb)	14
Jùngchoi	中菜	Chinese food	14.2
Jùnggwok choi	中國菜	Chinese food	14.13
Jùnggwokyàhn	中國人	Chinese person	2.1
Jùngmàhn	中文	Chinese (written) language	3.3
Jùngwàahn	中環	Central District (in Hong Kong)	10.3
Jùngwàahn Gàaihsīh	中環街市	Central Market (in Hong Kong)	15
jùngyi	鍾意	like; prefer; like to	8
júng	種	type, kind	8
jyuh	住	live, reside	12
-jyuh	住	V. suf. indicating temporarily, for a short time	11
jyùyuhk [gàn] [bohng] [dī]	豬肉[斤][磅][的]	pork	7
jyúyàhn [wái] [go]	主人[位][個]	host, hostess	5
jyun	轉	turn	13
-k		glottal stop ending to certain sen. suffixes, giving sentence a lively air	5
kàh[illegible]aht	琴日	yesterday	4CP
kámmàaih	冚埋	to close, shut (as of books)	1CP
kéuih	佢	he/him, she/her, it	2
kéuihdeih	佢地	they, them, their	2.1
kwàhn [tìuh]	裙[條]	skirt	6.1
lā	啦	sen. suf. for polite imperative, polite suggestion.	4
lā	啦	sen. suf. la for change + raised intonation for casualness	4
la	啦(喇)	sen. suf. indicating change--(that change has occurred, or is about to occur, or may occur)	4CP;4;5
la	啦(喇)	sen. suf. to imperative sentence, giving connotation of friendly advice	13.12
laak	嘞	sen. suf. la indicating change or potential change + suffix -k indicating lively mood (la + -k = laak)	2CP;5
lāangsāam [gihn]	冷衫[件]	sweater	8.1
laih	例	example	7CP
laihgeui	例句	example, example sentence	3CP

làih	嚟	for the purpose of	7CP
làih	嚟(來)	come	12
-làih	嚟	attaches to verbs of motion, indicating direction towards the speaker	15
...làih ge	嚟嘅	see: haih...làih ge	7
Làuh	劉	Lau (sur.)	1.1
làuhhah	樓下	downstairs [floor-below]	15.1
làuhseuhng	樓上	upstairs [floor-above]	15.1
láu	樓	floor, story of a building	12.2
léh	咧	sen. suf. for definiteness	5
Léih	李	Lee (sur.)	1
leng	靚	pretty, good-looking; good, nice (for edibles)	8
lèhng	零	'-and a little bit' in a time phrase following dím, thus: -dím lèhng jūng = a little after the hour	9
léuhng	兩	two	4.1
lihnjaahp [go]	練習[個]	exercise, drill	3CP
lìhng	零	zero	9
ló	攞	fetch, go get (something)	9
ló chín	攞錢	withdraw money (from bank)	10.9
lohk	落	descend	15
lohkheui	落去	go down	15
louhyàhn [go]	路人[個]	pedestrian	15
luhk	六	six	4.0
ma?	嗎	sen. suf. making a question of the sentence it attaches to	14
màhmā	媽媽	mother	12
Máh	馬	Ma (sur.)	1.1
máh	碼	yard (in length)	7.1
máhtàuh [go]	碼頭[個]	pier	10
maaih	賣	sell	7
Maaihsaai laak.	賣哂嘞	All sold out.	8
-màaih	埋	V. suf. meaning together, close	1CP
Màaihdāan!	埋單	The check please! (said to a waiter in restaurant)	14

máaih	買	buy	6
maahn	慢	slow	4.8
mān	蚊	dollar	6
mahn	問	ask	2CP;10
mahntàih [go] [dī]	問題[個][的]	question	3CP
Màhnwàh Jáudim	文華酒店	Mandarin Hotel	10
māt yéh?	乜嘢	what?	2
maht [deui] [jek]	襪[對][隻]	socks	6.1;7.1
mē?	咩	interrogative sen. suf. indicating surprise	3
mēyéh?	咩嘢	what?	2
meih	未	neg: not yet	4
Méihgwok Jáudim	美國酒店	American Hotel (in HK, another name for the Hong Kong Hilton)	10.3
Méihgwok Ngàhnhòhng	美國銀行	Bank of America	10.3
Méihgwokyàhn	美國人	American person	2.1
méng [go]	名[個]	name; for persons = given name (in contrast to surname)	13
m̀h-	唔	not	1
m̀hcho	唔錯	good, 'not bad' [not-mistake] (said in commenting favorably about something)	14
M̀hgányiu.	唔緊要	That's all right; It doesn't matter; Never mind.	1
m̀hgeidāk	唔記得	forget (not remember)	11
m̀hginjó	唔見咗	lose, lost; 'nowhere to be seen'	11
m̀hgòi	唔該	Thank you (for a service)	5
M̀hgòi néih...	唔該你	Please..., Would you please... (sen. preface preceding a request)	3
m̀hhaih géi Adj	唔係幾...	not very Adj, not Adj	8.1
m̀hhaih hóu Adj	唔係好...	not very Adj	8.4
m̀hhóu .V.	唔好...	don't .V. (as a command) [not good to .V.]	1CP;3CP; 5
V dāk m̀hhóu	得 唔好	badly, not well	2CP
M̀hhóu haakhei.	唔好客氣	'Don't be polite.' Polite phrase used by host to urge guest to have something that he has just politely declined.	5

Ḿhhóu yisi.	唔好意思	I'm sorry; It's embarrassing. (used in apologizing for social gaffe)	4
Ḿhjī(dou)...a?	唔知(道)..呀	I wonder...?	6.1
m̀hsái	唔使	no need to, not necessary	5
Ḿhsái haakhei.	唔使客氣	[don't need to be polite.] 'No thanks!' (to an offer) 'You're welcome.' (when someone thanks you)	5
Ḿhsái la.	唔使啦	[Not necessary] No thanks. polite phrase used in declining a courtesy or a gift.	5
Ḿhsái m̀hgòi.	唔使唔該	[Not necessary to (say) thanks] Polite response when someone thanks you for something you have done for him.	5
mīyéh?	乜嘢	what?	
móuh	冇	not have, there isn't (aren't)	3CP;8
Móuh cho.	冇錯	That's right.	
móuhdāk $\overset{V}{\ldots}$	冇得...	not have available for $\overset{V\text{-ing}}{\ldots\ldots}$, there's none to $\overset{V}{\ldots}$, not have available to $\overset{V}{\ldots}$ (used in combination with following verb)	11
móuhgéidò	冇幾多	not much, not many	11.11
mùhnháu [go]	門口[個]	doorway	10.6
nàahmpàhngyáuh [go]	男朋友[個]	boyfriend	12.3
Nàh!	嗱	Here! (expression accompanying giving something to someone)	11
nē?	呢	interrogative sen. suf.	2
Nē!	呢	There! (expression accompanying pointing out something to someone)	10
Nèihdēun Douh	彌敦道	Nathan Road	12.2
néih	你	you, your	2
néihdeih	你哋	you (plu.)	1CP;2
néui [go]	女[個]	daughter	12
néuihpàhngyáuh [go] [wái]	女朋友[個][位]	girlfriend	12.3
ńgh	五	five	3
ngāam	啱	fitting, proper, right	2CP
ngāamjeuk	啱著	well-fitting (for clothes), fits well	8.2

ngāamngāam(var:āamāam)	啱啱	exactly, just	4.5
ngaan (var:aan)	晏	noon, midday	9
ngàhnchín [go]	銀錢[個]	money [silver-money]	7
ngàhnhòhng [gàan]	銀行[間]	bank	10
ngán	銀	coin	11.1
ngáhngéng [fu]	眼鏡[副]	eyeglasses	11.13
ngáhngéngdói [go]	眼鏡袋[個]	eyeglasses case	11.13
ngahp táu	頷頭	nod the head	3CP
ngàuhnáaih [dī]	牛奶[的]	milk [cow-milk]	5.2
ngàuhyuhk [gàn] [bohng] [dī]	牛肉[斤][磅][的]	beef	7
ngóh	我	I, me, my	1
ngóhdeih	我哋	we, our, us	2.1
ngoi (var: oi)	愛	want, want to have, want to possess	7
ngoihgwokyàhn [go]	外國人[個]	foreigner [outside-country-person] (in practice, this word refers to Caucasians only)	14
ngūk (var: ūk) [gàan]	屋[間]	house	10.3
ngūkkéi (var: ūkkéi)	屋企	home	9.3
nī	呢	this	6
nī bihn	呢便	this side	10.3
nī dī	呢的	these (in reference to individual nouns), this (in reference to mass nouns)	7
nīdouh	度	here [this-place]	10.1
nījógán	左近	close by, hereabouts	10.3
nihng táu	擰頭	shake the head	3CP
nīng	拎	carry (something)	14
nīngheui, nīng...heui	拎去, 拎…去	take, carry something away	14
nīnglàih, nīng...làih	拎嚟, 拎…嚟	bring something here	14
oi (var: ngoi)	愛	want, want to have, want to possess	7
paak	泊	park (a car)	13
paak chē	泊車	to park a car	13
pàhngyáuh [go]	朋友[個]	friend	2
pèhng	平	cheap	8
pìhnggwó [go]	蘋果[個]	apple	5.1
-saai	哂	completely	8

sàam	三	three	3
sàam go gwat	三個骨	three quarters after the hour	4.6
sáanngán [dī]	散銀[的]	small coins, small change	11
Sàang	生	Mr.	1
Sāichāan [go]	西餐[個]	Western meal	14.2
sai	細	small	8.2
saimúi [go]	細妹[個]	younger sister	11
sàn	新	new	8.1
sahp	十	ten	4.0
sahpyāt	十一	eleven	4.1
sahpyih	十二	twelve	4.1
sauhfoyùhn [go]	售貨員[個]	salesclerk [sell-goods-personnel]	6
sáudói [go]	手袋[個]	(woman's) handbag	11.13
sèsíu	些少	a little	3
sé	寫	write	3
séjihlàuh [gàan]	寫字樓[間]	office [write-words-building]	10.2
sei	四	four	3
seuhngbihn	上便(邊)	above, upstairs	15.1
seuhngchi	上次	last time, the previous time	4CP;15.3
Seuhnghói	上海	Shanghai	2
Seuhnghói choi	上海菜	Shanghai food	14.2
Seuhnghóiwá	上海話	Shanghai dialect (spoken language)	3
Seuhnghóiyàhn [go]	上海人[個]	person from Shanghai	2
séung	想	be of a mind to, wish to, would like to, want to, considering. (always followed by Verb)	3
séuhng	上	ascend	15
séui [bùi] [dī]	水[杯][的]	water	5.2
séui būi [jek]	水杯[隻]	water glass	14.10
sēutsāam [gihn]	恤衫[件]	shirt	6
sīgēi [go]	司機[個]	taxi driver; chauffeur	11
si	試	try	5
siháh	試吓	give it a try	5
sih	事	business, affair, matter	9
Sihdaahn lā.	是但啦	Phrase used when offered a choice, meaning: As you wish; Either one; Both equally preferable.	14

sìhhauh	時候	time	7CP
sīk	識	know how (to do something)	3
sīk	識	know someone	3.11
sīk	色	color (n.)	8
sihk	食	eat	5
sihk (ng)aan	食晏	eat lunch	2.1
sihk yīn	食烟	to smoke [eat-tobacco]	5
sīnsàang [go]	先生[個]	husband	12.2
sīnsàang [go] [wái]	先生[個][位]	man, gentleman	1N;2
Sīnsàang	先生	Mr.	1N
Sīnsàang	先生	'Sir,' polite term of direct address	2
sīnsàang [go]	先生[個]	teacher	1
sin	線	line, thread (n.)	9
sìn	先	first	3CP;9
...sìn, yìhnhauh...	...先,然後...	...first, then...	15
sìnji	先至	then	7CP
sing	姓	be surnamed, have the surname; surname	1
síujé [wái] [go]	小姐[位][個]	unmarried woman; woman, lady	1N;2
Síujé	小姐	Miss (polite term of direct address; also, title following surname)	1
Síu sihk.	少食	Thanks, I don't smoke. [seldom-smoke] (response by non-smoker when offered a cigarette.)	5.8
Síusing...	小姓	My surname is... (polite)	2
suhk	熟	ripe (in regard to speech = smoothly and with understanding of the content)	2CP
sung	送	deliver	12.10
-syu	處	place (PW boundword)	10N
syù [bún]	書[本]	book	1CP;3CP; 7.1
tāai [tìuh]	呔[條]	tie	6.2
Taaitáai	太太	Mrs.	1N;1
taaitáai [go] [wái]	太太[個][位]	married woman; wife	1N;12.2
Taai	太	Mrs. (title to surname)	1
taam	探	to visit	12
tái	睇	look, look at	1CP;3CP; 10

táidóu	睇倒	see (look-successfully)	10
táiháh	睇吓	have a look	14
tái syù	睇書	read (a book)	10.14
tái yīsāng	睇醫生	see a doctor	12.2
tanhauh	𨂽後	back (a car) up, move back, reverse [move-back]	13.1
táu = tàuh	頭	head	3CP
tèng	聽	hear, listen (to)	1CP;3CP;3
tèng dihnwá	聽電話	talk [listen] on the telephone	9
tìm	添	sen. suf. indicating speaker is taken by surprise by a situation contrary to his expectation	11
tìm	添	in addition, also, more	4
Tīnsīng Máhtàuh	天星碼頭	Star Ferry Pier	10
tìhng	停	to stop	13
tìuh	條	M. for trousers, ties, and certain other objects long and narrow in shape	6.1
Tòihsāan	台山	Taishan, a county in Southern Kwangtung about 100 mi. west of Hong Kong	2.1
Tòihsāanwá	台山話	Taishan dialect	3.7
Tòihsāanyàhn	台山人	person from Taishan	2.1
tòng [go] [wún]	湯[個][碗]	soup	14
tòng mihn [go] [wún]	湯麵[個][碗]	soup noodles	14.1
tòhng	糖	sugar	7
Tòhngchoi	唐菜	Chinese food	14N
tòuhsyùgwún [gàan]	圖書館[間]	library	10.2
tùhng	同	and (connects nouns)	3
tùhng	同	on behalf of, for	11
tùhng	同	with	12.11
ūk (var: ngūk) [gàan]	屋[間]	house	10.3
ūkkéi (var: ngūkkéi)	屋企	home	9.3
wá	話	spoken language; dialect	3
wá?	話	interrogative sen. suf. calling for repeat of the preceding sentence	4
waahkjé	或者	maybe	4

wah	話	say; opine	8.3
wah yàhn jī	話人知	tell someone (any personal noun or pronoun can fill yàhn position)	9
wah yàhn tèng	話人聽	tell someone	9.8
wái	位	polite M. for persons	6.1
wái [go]	位[個]	a place, seat	13
wānjaahp	温習	to review	4CP
wán	搵	look for, search	9
Wán bīnwái a?	搵邊位呀	(on telephone:) Who do you wish to speak to?	9
wán yàhn	搵人	look someone up	9.9
làih wán person heui wán person	嚟搵.... 去搵....	come/go see someone	9.9
Wéi!	喂	Hello! (telephone greeting)	9
WíhngŌn Gūngsī	永安公司	Wing On Department Store	13.1
Wòhng	黃(王)	Wong (sur.)	1.1
wuihwá	會話	conversation	4CP
wuhn	換	to change. re money, to change into... (followed by denomination of money desired); to exchange one national currency for another (followed by currency desired)	11
wuhn sāam	換衫	change clothes	15.11
wún [go] [jek]	碗[個][隻]	bowl (n.)	14.1
wún	碗	a bowl of... (m)	14.1
wúnjái [go] [jek]	碗仔[個][隻]	small bowl	14.10
yám	飲	to drink	5
yàhn [go]	人[個]	person	2,6
yàhn [go]	人[個]	someone	15
yàhnhaak [wái]	人客[位]	guest	5
yahp	入	enter	13
yahpbihn	入便(邊)	inside	13
yahpheui	入去	go in; enter	13
yāt	一	one	1CP;3
yātchàih	一齊	together	1CP
yātchi	一次	once, one time	3
yāt chi dōu meih...	一次都未...	not even once	14

yāt .M. dōu .Neg.V.	一..都...	not even one...	14
yāt go gwāt	一個骨	a quarter after the hour	4.6
yāt go jih	一個字	five minutes; five minutes after the hour	4.7
yāt go yāt go	一個一個	one by one	1CP
yātjihk	一直	straight a) in a straight direction b) without being interrupted or diverted.	13
yātyeuhng	一樣	same	7
Yahtbún choi	日本菜	Japanese food	14.12
Yahtbúnwá	日本話	Japanese (spoken) language	3.1
Yahtbúnyàhn	日本人	Japanese person	2.1
Yahtmán	日文	Japanese (written) language	3.6
Yahtmàhn	日文	Japanese (written) language	3.6
yauh	右	right (direction)	13
yauh	又	also (connects Verb Phrases)	3.9
yauh .V.yauh.V.	又..又...	both..., and....	3.9
yauhbihn	右便(邊)	right side	13.7
yauhsáubihn	右手便(邊)	right hand side	13.4
yàuh.PW.	由...	from .PW.	15
yàuhhaak [go]	遊客(個)	tourist	10
yáuh	有	has/have; there is/are	3CP;8
yáuhdāk.V.	有得	to have available to .V., have available for .V-ing. (used in combination with following verb)	11.7
(Yáuh) mēyéh sih a?	(有)咩嘢事呀	What is it you want? (on the phone: May I take a message?)	9
yáuh sih	有事	have something to attend to; have errand, business	9
yéh	嘢	work; chores	14.7
yéh	嘢	things, stuff	12.2
yeuhng	樣	kind, type	14.12
yīsāng [go]	醫生(個)	doctor	12.2
yih	二	two	3
yìhgā	而家	now, at this moment	1CP;2CP; 3CP;4
Yí!	噫	Exclamation of distress	11

...yīkwaahk...?	...抑或...	..., or...? (connects two verbal expressions)	14
yīn [bāau] [dī]	烟[包][的]	tobacco	5
yīnjái [jī]	烟仔[支]	a cigarette	7.1
yìhn(jī)hauh	然(之)後	then; immediately afterwards	15
Yīngmán	英文	English language	3
Yīngmàhn	英文	English language	3
Yīnggwokyàhn [go]	英國人[個]	Englishman, person from England	2.1
yihp	頁	page	4CP;15.3
yiu	要	want, require	2CP
yiu	要	must; need; have to	5
yiu + money expression	要	want X amount, costs X amount. (i.e., the asking price is X amount)	6.1
yiu	要	going to, intend to	9
yú	魚	fish	7.1
yúhjyū [jek]	乳豬[隻]	roast suckling pig	14
yúhlāu [gihn]	雨褸[件]	raincoat	6.1
yùhnbāt [jī]	鉛筆[支]	pencil	6.1
yùhnjībāt [jī] [dī]	原子筆[支][的]	ballpoint pen	6.2
yuhng	用	use	7CP;11

☆ U. S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE : 1970 O - 396-398 (153)

FSI Language Publications Available from
Superintendent of Documents
Washington, D.C. 20402

BASIC COURSES

Amharic	(Units 1-50)	$2.25
Amharic	(Units 51-60)	$2.50
Cambodian	(Units 1-45)	$2.00
Cambodian	(Units 46-90)	
Cantonese	(Units 1-30)	
Chinyanja	(Units 1-63)	$1.75
French (set)	(Units 1-12	$4.00
	(Units 13-14	
Fula	(Units 1-40)	$2.75
German	(Units 1-12)	$2.00
German	(Units 13-24)	$1.75
Greek	(Vol. I)	$1.75
Greek	(Vol. II)	$1.00
Greek	(Vol. III)	$2.00
Hebrew	(Units 1-40)	$5.00
Hungarian	(Units 1-12)	$2.00
Hungarian	(Units 13-24)	$1.75
Kirundi	(Units 1-30)	$2.75
Kituba	(Units 1-35)	$2.25
Korean	(Vol. I)	$3.00
Korean	(Vol. II)	$4.75
Lao	(Vol I)	
Lingala	(Units 1-24)	$2.75
Luganda	(Lessons 1-94)	$2.25
More	(Units 1-48)	$1.75
Serbo-Croatian	(Units 1-25)	$3.50
Serbo-Croatian	(Units 26-50)	$4.00
Shona	(Units 1-49)	$2.50
Spanish (set)	(Units 1-15	$12.25
	(Units 16-30	
Spanish	(Units 31-45)	$3.25
Spanish	(Units 46-55)	$4.00
Swahili	(Units 1-150)	$3.00
Thai	(Units 1-20)	
Thai	(Units 21-40)	
Turkish	(Units 1-30)	$3.75
Turkish	(Units 31-50)	$2.25
Twi	(Units 1-20)	$1.25
Vietnamese	(Vol. I)	$2.75
Vietnamese	(Vol. II)	$1.50
Yoruba	(Units 1-49)	$2.75

Finnish Graded Reader	$4.50
French Supplemental Exercises	$3.25
Hindi - An Active Introduction	
Hungarian Reader	$3.75
Indonesian Newspaper Reader	$1.75
Luganda Pretraining Program	
Modern Written Arabic	$4.00
Spanish Programmatic Course (Instructor's Manual-Vol. I)	$0.75
Spanish Programmatic Course (Student Workbook-Vol. I)	$2.25
Spanish Programmatic Course (Instructor's Manual-Vol. II)	
Spanish Programmatic Course (Student Workbook-Vol. II)	
Swahili General Conversation	$0.75
Swahili Geography	$0.65
Thai - Reference Grammar	$1.25
Turkish Graded Reader	
Vietnamese Familiarization Course	$1.75
Yoruba Intermediate Texts	$1.25

Supplies of all publications listed are limited, and prices are subject to change without advance notice. Rules require remittance in advance of shipment. Check or money order should be made payable to the Superintendent of Documents. Postage stamps and foreign money are not acceptable.

Tapes for the above courses are available from the National Audiovisual Center, National Archives and Record Service, GSA, National Archives Building, Room G-5, Washington, D.C. 20408.

OE/115. BR-5-1102 BA48

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE

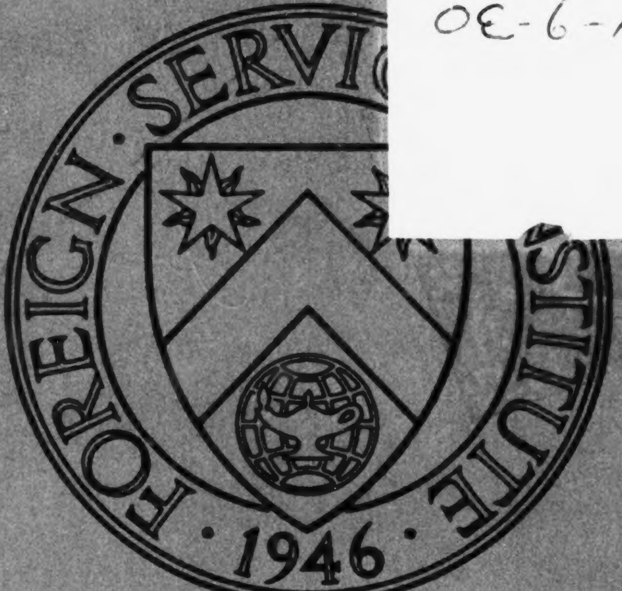
AL

CANTONESE

ED041265

BASIC COURSE
VOLUME TWO

ERIC
Title VI, NDEA
OE-6-14-019



U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION & WELFARE
OFFICE OF EDUCATION

THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRODUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM THE PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIGINATING IT. POINTS OF VIEW OR OPINIONS STATED DO NOT NECESSARILY REPRESENT OFFICIAL OFFICE OF EDUCATION POSITION OR POLICY.

AL 002 466

DEPARTMENT OF STATE

CANTONESE

ED041265

BASIC COURSE
VOLUME TWO

ELIZABETH LATIMORE BOYLE
with the assistance of
PAULINE NG DELBRIDGE and others

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
WASHINGTON, D.C.
1970

DEPARTMENT OF STATE

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
BASIC COURSE SERIES
Edited by
AUGUSTUS A. KOSKI

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office
Washington, D.C. 20402 - Price $3.50

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page
LESSON 16	1
LESSON 17	23
LESSON 18	44
LESSON 19	64
LESSON 20	93
LESSON 21	122
LESSON 22	146
LESSON 23	170
LESSON 24	195
LESSON 25	219
LESSON 26	239
LESSON 27	262
LESSON 28	283
LESSON 29	308
LESSON 30	333
CONVERSATION FOR LISTENING	355
GRAMMATICAL INDEX	384
CUMULATIVE VOCABULARY	389

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Three colleagues, Mrs. Chan, Mr. Lee, and Miss Ho, discuss what they did the previous day, which was Sunday:)

Chàhn Táai	
kàhmyaht	yesterday
Néih kàhmyaht heui bīndouh a?	Where did you go yesterday?
Léih Sàang	
hói	sea
gwo hói	cross the sea, harbour
Ngóh kàhmyaht gwo hói.	I went over to Kowloon yesterday.
Chàhn Táai	
Gwo hói jouh mēyéh a?	What did you do over there?
Léih Sàang	
hàahng gūngsī	windowshop
Ngóh tùhng ngóh taaitáai heui hàahng gūngsī.	I went with my wife to windowshop.
Chàhn Táai	
Yáuh móuh máaih yéh a?	Did you buy anything?
Léih Sàang	
dáfógèi	(cigarette) lighter
Yáuh--máaihjó go dáfógèi.	Yeah, I got a cigarette lighter.
Chàhn Táai	
daihyih-[+ M] (var: daih + M)	other [M]
daihyih dī yéh	other things
Móuh máaihdou daihyih dī yéh àh.	You didn't buy anything else, huh.
Léih Sàang	
jihnghaih	only
Móuh, jihnghaih máaihjó go dáfógèi jē.	No, just the lighter.
-làih	verb phrase suffix (see Note 5)

Néihdeih nē?--kàhmyaht heui bīndouh làih a?	How about you two? Where did you go yesterday?
Hòh Sīujé	
Móuh heui gāai--	I didn't go out--
dá páai	play mahjong
Jihnghaih hái ngūkkéi dá páai làih.	I just stayed at home and played mahjong.
Chàhn Táai	
tái hei	see a movie
heiyún	movie theatre
Hòuh Wàh Heiyún	Hoover Theatre (a movie theatre in Hong Kong)
Ngóh tùhng ngóh sīnsàang heui Hòuh Wàh Heiyún táihei làih.	My husband and I went to the Hoover Theatre to see a movie.
chēut	Measure for movie
Néih táigwo gó chēut hei meih a?	Have you seen that film?
Hòh Sīujé	
Juhng meih.	Not yet. [still not yet]
sìhgaan	time
Kàhmyaht móuh sìhgaan, móuh heuidou.	I didn't have time yesterday, and didn't go.
gàmyaht	today
dākhàahn	free time, leisure
Gàmyaht dākhàahn, jauh gàmyaht heui.	If I'm free today, then I'll go today.
tīngyaht	tomorrow
Ǹhdākhàahn, jauh tīngyaht heui lā.	If I'm busy, then I'll go tomorrow.

B. Recapitulation:

(Three colleagues, Mrs. Chan, Mr. Lee, and Miss Ho, discuss what they did the previous day, which was Sunday:)

Chàhn Táai	
Néih kàhmyaht heui bīndouh a?	Where did you go yesterday?
Léih Sàang	
Ngóh kàhmyaht gwo hói.	I went over to Kowloon yesterday.
Chàhn Táai	
Gwo hói jouh mēyéh a?	What did you do over there?
Léih Sàang	
Ngóh tùhng ngóh taaitáai heui hàahng gūngsī.	I went with my wife to window-shop.
Chàhn Táai	
Yáuh móuh máaih yéh a?	Did you buy anything?
Léih Sàang	
Yáuh--máaihjó go dáfógèi.	Yeah, I got a cigarette lighter.
Chàhn Táai	
Móuh máaihdou daihyih dī yéh àh.	You didn't buy anything else, huh.
Léih Sàang	
Móuh, jihnghaih máaihjó go dáfógèi jē.	No, just the lighter.
Néihdeih nē?--kàhmyaht heui bīndouh làih a?	How about you two? Where did you go yesterday?
Hòh Sīujé	
Móuh heui gāai--	I didn't go out--
Jihnghaih hái ngūkkéi dá páai làih.	I just stayed at home and played mahjong.
Chàhn Táai	
Ngóh tùhng ngóh sīnsàang heui Hòuh Wàh Heiyún tái hei làih.	My husband and I went to the Hoover Theatre to see a movie.
Néih táigwo go cheut hei meih a?	Have you seen that film?
Hòh Sīuyé	
Juhng meih.	Not yet.
Kàhmyaht móuh sìhgaan, móuh heuidou.	I didn't have time yesterday, and didn't go.

Gàmyaht dākhàahn, jauh gàmyaht heui.	If I'm free today, then I'll go today.
M̀hdākhàahn, jauh tìngyaht heui lā.	If I'm busy, then I'll go tomorrow.

II. NOTES

1. Verb forms: past reference.

a. Class 1 Verbs: those partially distinguishing past and non-past forms. Most verbs exhibit partial distinction between past and non-past forms. The basic affirmative form for past and non-past is the same, but the negative and choice question forms differ.

Ex: **sihk** = eat; ate

past:	aff:	**sihk**	ate
	neg:	móuh sihk	didn't eat
	que:	yáuh móuh sihk a?	did (he) eat?
non-past:	aff:	sihk	eat
	neg:	m̀hsihk	doesn't eat
	que:	sihk m̀hsihk a?	does (he) eat?

Example sentences:

a	Past	Kéuih kàhmyaht sihk Sāichāan.	He ate Western food yesterday.
	Non-Past	Kéuih tìngyaht sihk Sāichāan.	He is going to eat Western food tomorrow.
n	Past	Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh sihk Sāichāan.	He didn't eat Western food yesterday.
	Non-Past	Kéuih tìngyaht m̀hsihk Sāichāan.	He's not going to eat Western food tomorrow.
q	Past	Kéuih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh sihk Sāichāan a?	Did he eat Western food yesterday?
	Non-Past	Kéuih tìngyaht sihk m̀hsihk Sāichāan a?	Is he going to eat Western food tomorrow?

(See Drills 3, 4, 5)

From the point of view of semantic meaning, the verbs that pattern as described above can be called performance verbs, since they are verbs that denote actions performed. For convenience in referring to them, we call them also Class 1 Verbs.

b. Class 2 Verbs: those showing no distinction between past and non-past.

A few verbs make no distinction in form between past and non-past. These verbs use the same forms for the affirmative, negative and choice-question for both past and non-past.

Ex: yáuh = have; had

yáuh sih = have something to do; had something to do

Example sentences:

a	Past	Ngóh kàhmyaht yáuh sih.	I had some business to do yesterday.
	Non-Past	Ngóh tìngyaht yáuh sih.	I have some business to do tomorrow.
n	Past	Ngóh kàhmyaht móuh sih.	I didn't have any business to do yesterday.
	Non-Past	Ngóh tìngyaht móuh sih.	I don't have any business to do tomorrow.
q	Past	Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh sih a?	Did you have any business to do yesterday?
	Non-Past	Néih tìngyaht yáuh móuh sih a?	Do you have any business to do tomorrow?

In addition to yáuh, other verbs which show no distinction in form between past and non-past include:

hái, 'is located'

haih, 'is'

most auxiliary verbs: ex: jùngyi, 'like'

Adjectives: ex: hóu, 'good'

(See Drills 1, 2)

Semantically, these verbs can be called 'non-performance verbs,' or 'steady-state verbs,' or perhaps 'existence verbs.' For convience in referring to them, we call them also Class 2 Verbs.

2. Past reference with uninflected verb to express general activity.

For describing general activity performed in the past, Cantonese uses the plain form of the verb, without any suffixes.

Examples:

1. Ngóh kàhmyaht hái ngūkkéi tái syu.	Yesterday at home I read.
2. Ngóh kàhmyaht sihk Sāichāan.	Yesterday I ate Western food.
3. Ngóh kàymyaht heui yàuhséui.	Yesterday I went swimming.
4. Ngóh **kàhmyaht** gwo hói **hàahng** gūngsī.	Yesterday I went across the harbour to windowshop.
5. Ngóh yíhchìhn hohk Yìngmàhn.	I formerly studied English.

The general activity sentence with uninflected verb is more apt to be a 'set the stage' initiating sentence which starts a conversation than it is to be a follow sentence. The follow sentences, describing particular things accomplished within the general activity, are apt to be V + suffix sentences. Remember the rainy day 'I went to see my Grandmother' game of your childhood which goes down the alphabet with things you took along? 'I went to see my grandmother and I took an apple, a box, a cocoanut, etc.' Cantonese would render the general activity 'I went to see my grandmother' part with an uninflected verb and the particular accomplishments, 'took A, B. C' part with a two-part (performance + accomplishment) verb + suffix.

3. Past reference with verb + suffix, to express performance + achievement, experience, success, or other information.

The role of verb suffixes in Cantonese is to give additional information about the action performed-- that it has been done before, that the objective was achieved, that the performance was temporary, etc.

Examples:

1. Ngóh máaihjó go dáfógēi.	[I buy-accomplish a cigarette lighter.] i.e., I accomplish the purchasing of a cigarette lighter; I bought a cigarette lighter. (Think of buying as a performance of dickering back and forth. Then you see that máaih-jó is to dicker for and achieve the objective of purchasing, to engage in a purchase transaction and carry it through.)

2. Ngóh sihkgwo Jùngchoi, daahnhaih ngóh kàhmyaht dōu sihk Sāichāan.	I eat-experience Chinese food, but I yesterday in every case eat Western food. i.e., I have had the experience of eating Chinese food, but yesterday in every case I ate Western food.

4. Role of verb suffixes in English and Cantonese compared.

In English verb suffixes are time-markers, relating the moment of speaking (i.e., now) to the moment spoken about (past, present, future). Note, for example, how the suffixes -s and -ed in English give information on the relation of time of speaking and time spoken about in the sentences: 'She loves me.' and 'She loved me.' In English the verb form changes according to the time spoken about, and this change is compulsory. In sentences relating to the past, English uses a past form of the verb, and in sentences relating to non-past time, a non-past form.

In Cantonese, verb suffixes themselves do not indicate when the performance took/takes/will take/ place in relation to the time of speaking, as verb suffixes do in English. In Cantonese, different suffixes represent 'accomplish,' 'succeed,' 'good,' 'possible,' 'temporary,' 'in progress,' etc. (It is very hard to talk about this in English, because when you make a sentence in English, you have to put past or present marks on the verbs. 'Perform-accomplish' doesn't make sense in English, you have to say 'performance accomplished' in which case you indicate that it has already happened, or 'Performance will have been accomplished' in which case you indicate that it hasn't happened yet but will have by the time you are speaking of, and so on.) For example, in Cantonese, Verb-jó = 'perform-accomplish,' indicates that the performance is viewed from the standpoint of its being accomplished, but when Verb-jó occurs in a subordinate clause without a timeword as clue, the sentence must rely on context, not grammar, to determine whether it refers to a past event or a non-past one. (Example given on following page.)

Ex: Gwojó sàam go gàaiháu, jauh haih laak.	(1) (He) crossed three intersections, then (there it) was. (2) (After you) cross three intersections, then (there it) is. (gwojó = pass-accomplish) i.e., cross (an intersection) i.e., When you have crossed three intersections, it'll be right there.

In a later lesson you will encounter another use of -jó in reference to non-past.

5. VP + sen. suf. làih in past reference sentences

VP + làih is used in two different types of past reference sentences, with different stress on làih in each and different meanings of the VP + làih set.

1) Movement VP + làih, to indicate having returned from having been away. The làih in this instance receives medium stress.

Ex: 1. Néih heui bīndouh làih a?	Where have you been?
2. Néih kàhmyaht heui bīndouh làih a?	Where did you go yesterday?
3. Kéuih ngāamngāam heuilàih.	He has just returned from having been away.

(See BC)

2) VP + làih in a response sentence which contradicts the stimulus sentence's assertion of action performed. The speaker emphasizes by VP + làih that that was the action done, not what the stimulus sentence asserts or implies. The làih in this instance receives light stress. In this use the verb of the VP to which làih is attached does not have to be a movement verb, though it can be.

Ex: A: Néih saimúi wah ngóh jī néih kàhmyaht heui tái hei.	Your younger sister told me you went to the movies yesterday.
B: Mhhaih gwā! Ngóh hái ngūkkei dá páai làih-- mouh heui tái hei.	Un-un! I played mahjong at home, that's what-- (I) didn't go to the movies.

(See BC and Drill 9)

6. daihyih M (var: daih M), 'other M'

a. daihyih, literally 'the second,' can have the meaning 'other,' 'another,' 'additional one,' bound to a following Measure. If the Measure is plural, daihyih is of course part of the plural expression.

Ex: Kéuih máaihjó daihyih go dáfógēi.	He bought another cigarette lighter.
Néih yáuh móuh máaih daihyih dī yéh a?	Did you buy any other things?

(See BC)

b. daih-M is a contraction of daihyih-M

Ex: daih dī yéh = daihyih dī yéh, 'other things'

7. Responses to questions negatively phrased.

There are two ways to answer a question negatively phrased (the you're not going, are you? kind of question). You have learned one way to answer such a question (See Lesson 12, pp 274-75)-- to respond by agreeing or disagreeing with the verb of the question.

Examples:

	Q:	Néih ūkkéi móuh dihnwá àh.	Your house doesn't have a phone, huh.
(agree:)	A^1:	Haih a. Móuh dihnwá.	Right, there's no phone.
		Móuh cho. Móuh dihnwá.	Right, there's no phone.
or (disagree:)	A^2:	Mhhaih. Yáuh dihnwá.	Incorrect-- there's a phone.

The other way to answer is to respond with the affirmative or negative form of the verb which was used to ask the question. The problem for American learners is that the negative verb said in response in different intonations means opposite things. This is easier to grasp through hearing examples than by reading about it, but we'll give examples and then try to describe the differences.

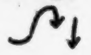
Examples:

1)	Q: Móuh máaihdou daihyih dī yéh àh.	You didn't buy anything else, huh.
	A: Móuh--jihnghaih máaihjó go dáfógēi jē.	No-- just bought the cigarette lighter, that's all.

The Móuh of the response is an echo of the negative verb in the question, agreeing with the negative assumption of the questioner. The stress on móuh is medium, the intonation unspirited.

(See BC)

2) Q: Móuh máaihdou daihyih dī yéh àh.	You didn't buy anything else, huh.
A: Móuh! Juhng máaihjó hóudò ga.	Not so! I bought a lot more.

Here the móuh of the response negates the whole sentence of the question. The stress on Móuh is strong, the word itself is drawn out long, the intonation is spirited and contoured like this: 

(English too uses difference in intonation to signal difference in meaning in two sentences otherwise identical. Think how different intonations can make 'That's great' mean 'That's wonderful' or 'That's horrible.')

3) A: Néih ngūkkéi móuh dihnwá àh.	Your house doesn't have a phone, huh.
B: Yáuh. Ngóh ngūkkéi yáuh dihnwá.	It has. My house does have a phone.

The intonation and stress on Yáuh may be normal, like the Móuh of Example #1 above, or spirited and contoured like that of Example #2, but the central message is the same in both cases. In answering Yáuh to the stimulus sentence's móuh, it contradicts the stimulus sentence's assumption.

(See Drills 8, 9, 11)

8. séung, 'wish to': its function in past reference sentences.

séung permits yáuh móuh séung Verb? as well as séung m̀hséung Verb? in the past reference question, with séung m̀hséung? favored. The negative permits only m̀hséung, not (-) móuh séung.

Ex: 1. Néih màhmā wah ngóh jì néih kàhmyaht mhsyufuhk-- néih yáuh móuh séung sihk yéh a? or néih séung m̀hséung sihk yéh a?	1. Your mother told me you weren't feeling well yesterday-- did you want to eat?
2. Ngóh kàhmyaht m̀hsyùfuhk-- m̀hséung sihk yéh.	2. I didn't feel well yesterday-- I didn't want to eat.

séung has another meaning-- 'to think of'-- with the connotation 'it occurred to me.' In this sense *séung* takes *móuh* and *yáuh móuh?* in sentences of past reference.

Ex:	Ngóh kàhmyaht séung heui.	I thought of going yesterday.
	Ngóh kàhmyaht móuh séung-dou heui.	It didn't occur to me to go yesterday.
	Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh séung heui a?	Did it occur to you to go yesterday?

III. DRILLS

1. Transformation Drill: Transform the sentences from affirmative to negative.

Ex: T: Ngóh sāam dím bun dākhàahn.	I'm free at three-thirty.
S: Ngóh sāam dím bun m̀hdākhàahn.	I'm busy at three-thirty. [I'm not free at 3:30.]

1. Ngóh kàhmyaht dākhàahn. I was free yesterday.	1. Ngóh kàhmyaht m̀hdākhàahn. I wasn't free yesterday.
+ 2. Ngóh nīpáai dākhàahn. /recently, these few days/ I've been free lately. I'll be free these few days.	2. Ngóh nīpáai m̀hdākhàahn. I've been busy lately. I'll be busy these few days.
3. Ngóh tìngyaht dākhàahn.	3. Ngóh tìngyaht m̀hdākhàahn.
4. Ngóh gàmyaht dākhàahn.	4. Ngóh gàmyaht m̀hdākhàahn.
5. Ngóh sīgēi yìhgā dākhàahn.	5. Ngóh sīgēi yìhgā m̀hdākhàahn.
6. Ngóh tìngyaht yāt dím dākhàahn.	6. Ngóh tìngyaht yāt dím m̀hdākhàahn.
7. Ngóh kàhmyaht sei dím dākhàahn.	7. Ngóh kàhmyaht sei dím m̀hdākhàahn.

Repeat: Students changing statement into question, thus:

T: Ngóh kàhmyaht dākhàahn.	I was free yesterday.
S: Néih kàhmyaht dākhàahn a?	Were you busy yesterday?

Comment: Adjectives exhibit no formal distinction between past and non-past.

---

2. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih tìngyaht hái ūkkéi.	He will be home tomorrow.
S: Kéuih kàhmyaht hái ūkkéi.	He was home yesterday.

1. Néih tìngyaht dāk m̀hdākhàahn a?	1. Néih kàhmyaht dāk m̀hdākhàahn a?
2. Ngóh tìngyaht yáuh sih.	2. Ngóh kàhmyaht yáuh sih.
3. Ngóh tìngyaht m̀hdākhàahn.	3. Ngóh kàhmyaht m̀hdākhàahn.
4. Ngóh tìngyaht m̀hsái fàangùng.	4. Ngóh kàhmyaht m̀hsái fàangùng.

5. Ngóh tìngyaht m̀hséung heui taam kéuih. Tomorrow I don't want to go see her.	5. Ngóh kàhmyaht m̀hséung heui taam kéuih. Yesterday I didn't want to go see her.
6. Néih tìngyaht yáuh móuh sih a?	6. Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh sih a?
7. Kéuih tìngyaht hái m̀hhái séjihlàuh a?	7. Kéuih kàhmyaht hái m̀hhái séjihlàuh a?
8. Ngóh tìngyaht m̀hgau sìhgaan gwo hói.	8. Ngóh kàhmyaht m̀hgau sìhgaan gwo hói.
9. Ngóh tìngyaht móuh sìhgaan.	9. Ngóh kàhmyaht móuh sìhgaan.
10. Ngóh tìngyaht séung tái chēut hei.	10. Ngóh kàhmyaht séung tái chēut hei.

Comment: Non-performance verbs do not differentiate past and non-past by verb form.

---

3. Transformation Drill: Change the sentences from tìngyaht to kàhmyaht.

+ Ex: 1.	T: Kéuih tìngyaht dá màhjéuk.	T: He's going to play mahjong tomorrow.
	S: Kéuih kàhmyaht dá màhjéuk.	S: He played mahjong yesterday.
2.	T: Kéuih tìngyaht m̀hdá màhjéuk.	T: He's not going to play mahjong tomorrow.
	S: Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh dá màhjéuk.	S: He didn't play mahjong yesterday.
3.	T: Kéuih tìngyaht dá m̀hdá màhjéuk a?	T: Is he going to play mahjong tomorrow?
	S: Kéuih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh dá màhjéuk a?	S: Did he play mahjong yesterday?

1. Kéuih tìngyaht dá dihnwá béi néih.	1. Kéuih kàhmyaht dá dihnwá béi néih.
2. Kéuih tìngyaht m̀hdá dihnwá béi néih.	2. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh dá dihnwá béi néih.
3. Kéuih tìngyaht dá m̀hdá dihnwá béi néih a?	3. Kéuih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh dá dihnwá béi néih a?
4. Kéuih tìngyaht fàanlàih.	4. Kéuih kàhmyaht fàanlàih.
5. Kéuih tìngyaht m̀hfàanlàih.	5. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh fàanlàih.

6. Kéuih tìngyaht fàan m̀hfàanlàih a?	6. Kéuih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh fàanlàih a?
7. Kéuih tìngyaht wán néih.	7. Kéuih kàhmyaht wán néih.
8. Kéuih tìngyaht m̀hwán néih.	8. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh wán néih.
9. Kéuih tìngyaht wán m̀hwán néih a?	9. Kéuih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh wán néih a?
+ 10. Kéuih tìngyaht heui yàuhséui. (swim) He's going swimming tomorrow.	10. Kéuih kàhmyaht heui yàuhséui. He went swimming yesterday.
11. Kéuih tìngyaht m̀hheui yàuhséui.	11. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh heui yàuhséui.
12. Kéuih tìngyaht heui m̀hheui yàuhséui a?	12. Kéuih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh heui yàuhséui a?

---

4. Transformation Drill: Pos → Neg

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih kàhmyaht gwo Gáulùhng.	He went over to Kowloon yesterday.
S: Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh gwo Gáulùhng.	He didn't go over to Kowloon yesterday.
2. T: Kéuih tìngyaht gwo Gáulùhng.	He's going over to Kowloon tomorrow.
S: Kéuih tìngyaht m̀hgwo Gáulùhng.	He's not going over to Kowloon tomorrow.

1. Kéuih kàhmyaht heui tái hei.	1. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh heui tái hei.
+ 2. Kéuih kàhmyaht heui dá bō. /play ball/	2. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh heui dá bō.
3. Wòhng Sàang tìngyaht heui Méihgwok.	3. Wòhng Sàang tìngyaht m̀hheui Méihgwok.
4. Chàhn Táai tìngyaht heui Jùngwàahn.	4. Chàhn Táai tìngyaht m̀hheui Jùngwàahn.
5. Ngóh taaitáai kàhmyaht heui yám chàh.	5. Ngóh taaitáai kàhmyaht móuh heui yám chàh.
6. Ngóh sìnsàang tìngyaht heui Gáulùhng taam pàhngyáuh.	6. Ngóh sìnsàang tìngyaht m̀hheui Gáulùhng taam pàhngyáuh.
7. Ngóh go jái kàhmyaht heui ngàhnhòhng ló chín.	7. Ngóh go jái kàhmyaht móuh heui ngàhnhòhng ló chín.

Repeat as choice-type question transformation.

1. T: Kéuih kàhmyaht gwo Gáulùhng.	He went over to Kowloon yesterday.
S: Kéuih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh gwo Gáulùhng a?	Did he go over to Kowloon yesterday?
2. T: Kéuih tīngyaht gwo Gáulùhng.	He will go over to Kowloon tomorrow.
S: Kéuih tīngyaht gwo m̀hgwo Gáulùhng a?	Will he go over to Kowloon tomorrow?

---

5. Transformation Drill: Change haih m̀hhaih Verb? to the suitable form of Verb m̀h Verb?

Ex: T: Néih tīngyaht haih m̀hhaih heui tái hei a?	T: Are you going to the movies tomorrow?
S: Néih tīngyaht heui m̀hheui tái hei a?	S: Will you go to the movies tomorrow?
T: Néih kàhmyaht haih m̀hhaih heui tái hei a?	T: Did you go to the movies yesterday?
S: Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh heui tái hei a?	S: Did you go to the movies yesterday?

1. Néih sīgēi tīngyaht haih m̀hhaih heui Gáulùhng a?	1. Néih sīgēi tīngyaht heui m̀hheui Gáulùhng a?
2. Chàhn Sàang tīngyaht haih m̀hhaih heui yám chàh a?	2. Chàhn Sàang tīngyaht heui m̀hheui yám chàh a?
3. Néih taaitáai kàhmyaht haih m̀hhaih heui Jùngwàahn a?	3. Néih taaitáai kàhmyaht yáuh móuh heui Jùngwàahn a?
4. Gó go yàhn kàhmyaht haih m̀hhaih heui Gáulùhng a?	4. Gó go yàhn kàhmyaht yáuh móuh heui Gáulùhng a?
+ 5. Néih dī sailóugō tīngyaht haih m̀hhaih heui Méihgwok a? (child(ren))	5. Néih dī sailóugō tīngyaht heui m̀hheui Méihgwok a?

---

6. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh kàhmyaht dá páai. /tái hei/	T: I played mahjong yesterday. /see movie/
S: Ngóh kàhmyaht dá páai làih--móuh tái hei.	S: I played mahjong yesterday, I didn't see a movie.
1. Ngóh kàhmyaht heui chàhlàuh yám chàh. /tái hei/	1. Ngóh kàhmyaht heui chàhlàuh yám chàh làih--móuh tái hei.
+ 2. Ngóh kàhmyaht hái ūkkéi tái dihnsih. (watch television) /chēut gāai/	2. Ngóh kàhmyaht hái ūkkéi tái dihnsih làih--móuh chēut gāai.
3. Ngóh kàhmyaht heui ngàhnhòhng ló chín. /yàuhséui/	3. Ngóh kàhmyaht heui ngàhnhòhng ló chín làih--móuh yàuhséui.
4. Kéuih kàhmyaht gaau ngóh Gwóngdùngwá. /dá páai/	4. Kéuih kàhmyaht gaau ngóh Gwóngdùngwá làih--móuh dá páai.
5. Ngóh kàhmyaht heui yàuhséui. /tái dihnsih/	5. Ngóh kàhmyaht heui yáuhséui làih--móuh tái dihnsih.

Comment: The suffix--làih is used in the past reference sentence in the affirmative form only. The speaker emphasizes with VP-làih that that was the activity he did, not some other activity. The plainfact sentence without làih has no special emphasis.

---

7. Response Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh kàhmyaht máaih sēutsāam làih. /sàam gihn/	T: I bought some shirts yesterday. /3 unit/
S1: Máaihjó géidō gihn nē?	S1: How many did you buy? [buy-accomplish how many?]
S2: Máaihjó sàam gihn.	S2: I bought three. [buy-accomplish three.]
1. Ngóh kàhmyaht yám bējáu làih. /léuhng jì/	1. S1: Yámjó géidō jì a? S2: Yámjó léuhng jì.
2. Ngóh kàhmyaht sihk pìhnggwó làih. /sei go/	2. S1: Sihkjó géidō go a? S2: Sihkjó sei go.
3. Ngóh kàhmyaht ló chín làih. /yāt baak mān/	3. S1: Lójó géidō a? S2: Lójó yāt baak mān.

4. Ngóh kàhmyaht máaih maht làih. /sàam deui/	4. S1: Máaihjó géidō deui a? S2: Máaihjó sàam deui.

---

8. Response Drill

Ex: T: Néih kàhmyaht móuh máaih sēutsāam àh.	T: You didn't buy a shirt yesterday, did you.
S: Yáuh! Máaihjó la.	S: Yes, I did buy one.
1. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh tái hei àh. You didn't see a movie yesterday, did you.	1. Yáuh! Táijó la. Yes, I did see one.
2. Wòhng Sàang kàhmyaht móuh + chéng haak ah. Mr. Wong didn't have a dinner party yesterday, did he.	2. Yáuh! Chéngjó la.
3. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh fàanlàih àh.	3. Yáuh! Fàanjó la.
4. Néih kàhmyaht móuh tái yī-sāng àh.	4. Yáuh! Táijó la.
5. Néih kàhmyaht móuh cheung chīn àh.	5. Yáuh! Cheungjó la.

Comment: chéng haak = have a dinner party
chéng sihk faahn, chéng yàhn sihk faahn = invite someone for dinner.

---

9. Response Drill: Contradict the other person's impression.

Ex: T: Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh dá páai àh.	He didn't play mahjong yesterday, did he.
S: Yáuh! Dá làih.	Yes, he did play.
1. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh wán kéuih àh.	1. Yáuh, wán làih.
2. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh dá bò àh.	2. Yáuh, dá làih.
3. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh tái dihnsih àh.	3. Yáuh, tái làih.
4. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh heui yàuhséui àh.	4. Yáuh, heui làih.

Comment: The answers in Drills 8 and 9 above represent spirited denial. Ordinary denial would be:

Q: ...móuh tái hei àh.	Q: ...didn't see a movie, huh.
A: Yáuh, yáuh tái.	A: Yes, I did.

10. Expansion-Transformation Drill: Expand or transform as appropriate.

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih kàhmyaht gwo Gáulùhng taam sīnsāang. /haih m̀hhaih a?/	Yesterday he crossed over to Kowloon to see his teacher. /isn't that right?/
S: Kéuih kàhmyaht haih m̀hhaih gwo Gáulùhng taam sīnsàang a?	Did he cross over to Kowloon yesterday to see his teacher?
2. T: Kéuih kàhmyaht haih m̀hhaih gwo Gáulùhng taam sīnsàang a? /móuh/	Did he cross over to Kowloon yesterday to see his teacher? /didn't/
S: Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh gwo Gáulùhng taam sīnsàang.	He didn't cross over to Kowloon yesterday to see his teacher.

1. Kéuih gwo Gáulùhng máaih yéh. /kàhmyaht/	1. Kéuih kàhmyaht gwo Gáulùhng máaih yéh.
2. /móuh/	2. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh gwo Gáulùhng máaih yéh.
3. /yáuh móuh a?/	3. Kéuih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh gwo Gáulùhng máaih yéh a?
4. /haih m̀hhaih/	4. Kéuih kàhmyaht haih m̀hhaih gwo Gáulùhng máaih yéh a?
5. /m̀hhaih aak/	5. Kéuih kàhmyaht m̀hhaih gwo Gáulùhng máaih yéh aak.
6. /haih aak/	6. Kéuih kàhmyaht haih gwo Gáulùhng máaih yéh aak.

---

11. Question and Answer drill

Ex: T: /tái dihnsih/	/watch television/
S_1 Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh tái dihnsih a?	Did you watch television yesterday?
S_2 Yáuh, yáuh tái.	Yes, I did.

1. /dá bō/	1. S_1: Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh dá bō a?
	S_2: Yáuh, yáuh dá.
2. /tái syù/	2. S_1: Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh tái syú a?
	S_2: Yáuh, yáuh tái.

3. /yám jáu/

3. S_1: Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh yám jáu a?

S_2: Yáuh, yáuh yám.

4. /heui yám chàh/

4. S_1: Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh heui yám chàh a?

S_2: Yáuh, yáuh heui.

5. /tái yīsāng/

5. S_1: Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh tái yīsāng a?

S_2: Yáuh, yáuh tái.

6. /wán kéuih/

6. S_1: Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh wán kéuih a?

S_2: Yáuh, yáuh wán.

Comment: The above represents the ordinary way to ask and answer with no special emphasis or assumption.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to worklist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

1) wáan = amuse oneself, play (general verb for leisure time activity)
2) sóyíh = therefore
3) dá móhng kàuh = play tennis
   a) móhng kàuh = tennis ball
4) Bóuwàhn Douh = Bowen Road
5) kàuh chèuhng = tennis court
6) daih yaht = daih (yih) yaht = another day
7) beisyù = secretary
8) Máhnèihlāai = Manilla
9) Fēileuhtbān = Philippines
10) gūngjái = doll
11) Wei! = Hey!; Say!; exclamation used to attract someone's attention
12) yātchàih = together
13) ginmihn = meet

14) Haih gám wah lā. = We'll do it the way you say.

15) Móuh heui bīndouh. = Haven't gone anywhere.

16) ā ma = sen. suf. of response sentence, indicating in a nice way: 'This is pretty obvious.'

17) haih bo = here: by the way,...

18) máaih sung = buy groceries

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the classmate sitting next to you:	B. And he responds:
1. What'd you do yesterday?	1. I went to the movies with my wife.
2. What movie did you see?	2. I forget the name.
3. I didn't go out yesterday, I stayed at home watching television.	3. I watched television yesterday too.
4. Where'd you go yesterday? I went to your house to look for you, but you weren't home.	4. I went swimming yesterday.
5. I'd like to learn to play mahjong-- could you teach me?	5. Sure. When are you free these days?
6. Could you please tell me how to get to the Hoover Theater?	6. First go to the next intersection and turn left, then go straight until the second intersection, and it's on the right hand side.
7. What would you like to do today-- play ball or go swimming?	7. I went swimming yesterday, let's play ball today.
8. Did you go to Kowloon to see your girl friend yesterday?	8. No, I was very busy yesterday and didn't go.
9. I went to the Central District yesterday to buy shoes-- I bought a pair of white ones.	9. I went shopping for shoes too, but I didn't buy any.
10. (still talking about yesterday) I bought a nice-looking lighter at a department store.	10. I also wanted to buy a lighter, but I didn't get one.
11. My son played ball yesterday. Did your son go?	11. No, he didn't. He stayed home and read.

12. Miss Chan went to the movies with Mr. Lee yesterday.	12. Not so! She didn't go with Mr. Lee, she went with me!
13. Mr. Lee took Miss Chan swimming yesterday.	13. Not so! They didn't go swimming, they stayed at Miss Chan's house and played mahjong.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 16

1. bō	n:	ball
2. chéng haak	VO:	have a dinner party [invite-guests]
3. chéng sihk faahn, or cheng yàhn sihk faahn	VO:	invite someone to dinner
4. chēut	m:	M for a movie, a film
5. dá bō	VO:	play ball
6. dá màhjéuk	VO:	play mahjong
7. dá páai	VO:	play mahjong [hit-tiles]
8. dáfógèi	n:	(cigarette) lighter
9. daihdī	Ph:	var. of 'daihyih dī,' others, other (ones)
10. daihyih (+ M)		another (M) [lit: the 2d M]
11. daihyih dī	Ph:	others, other (ones) [lit: the 2d ones]
12. dākhàahn	Adj:	free, at leisure
13. dihnsih	n:	television
14. gàmyaht	TW:	today
15. gwo hói	VO:	cross the sea, harbor
16. hàahng gūngsī	VO:	windowshop
17. hei	n:	movie
18. heiyún	n/PW:	movie theater
19. hói	n:	sea
20. Hòuh Wàh Heiyún	PW:	Hoover Theater
21. jihnghaih _V_	Adv:	just, merely, only _V_
22. kàhmyaht	TW:	yesterday
23. -làih	ss:	suffixed to a heui VP, indicates that person spoken about has returned from where he went
24. -làih	ss:	VP suffix in response sentence adding connotation of 'that's what happened, not the thing you thought'

25. màhjéuk	m:	mahjong
26. m̀hdākhàahn	Adj:	busy
27. nīpáai	TW:	lately, recently, these few days
28. sailóugō	n:	child, children
29. sìhgaan	n:	time
30. tái dihnsih	VO:	watch television
31. tái hei	VO:	see a movie
32. tìngyaht	TW:	tomorrow
33. yàuhséui	VO:	swim; swimming

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Two acquaintances, one Chinese, one American, talk together at a party:)

Jùnggwokyàhn

noih	long (time)
hóu noih móuh gin	'long time no see'
Wòhng Sàang! Hóu noih móuh gin bo.	Mr. Wong! I haven't seen you in a long time.
fàanheui	go back, return
fàanheui Méihgwok	go back to America
láihbaai	week
hah go láihbaai	next week
hah go láihbaai fàanheui	go back next week
tèngginwah	hear tell, I hear ...
Tèngginwah néih hah go láihbaai fàanheui Méihgwok--haih m̀hhaih a?	I hear you're going back to the States next week--is that right?

Méihgwokyàhn

Móuh cho.	That's right.
-houh	day of the month
yahluhk houh	the 26th (of the month)
dásyun	plan on, plan to
dásyun yahluhk houh fàanheui	plan to go back on the 26th
láihbaaisei	Thursday
jīkhaih	that is, in other words, that is to say
Ngóh dásyun yahluhk houh fàanheui--jīkhaih láihbaaisei.	I plan to go back on the 26th--Thursday, that is.

Jùnggwokyàhn

Ngóh dōu dásyun heui Méihgwok.	I plan to go to America, too.

Méihgwokyàhn

Haih mē? Néih géisih heui nē?	Is that so?! When are you going?

Jùnggwokyàhn	
wah m̀hdihng	can't say for sure; uncertain
Wah m̀hdihng ga.	I'm not sure.
chēutnín	next year
yihyuht	February
Waahkjé chēutnín yihyuht lā.	Maybe February next year.
Méihgwokyàhn	
Néih yáuh móuh heuigwo Méihgwok a?	Have you ever been to the States before?
Jùnggwokyàhn	
-nìhn	year
yāt-gáu-luhk-chāt nìhn	in 1967
Yáuh--yāt-gáu-luhk-chāt nìhn heuilàih.	Yes, I made a trip in 1967.
Méihgwokyàhn	
deihfòng	place
bīn dī deihfòng	which places?
Heuigwo bīn dī deihfòng a?	What places did you go?
Jùnggwokyàhn	
Sàamfàahnsíh	San Fransisco
Wàhsihngdeuhn	Washington
Heuigwo Sàamfàahnsíh tùhng Wàhsihngdeuhn jē.	I went to San Fransisco and Washington, that's all.
daat	Measure for deihfōng
gó léuhng daat deihfòng	those two places
chānchīk	relatives
Gó léuhng daat deihfòng, ngóh dōu yáuh chānchīk hái douh.	In those two places I have relatives.
Méihgwokyàhn	
hahchi	next time
Néih hahchi haih m̀hhaih dōuhaih heui Wàhsihngdeuhn a?	Will you go to Washington next time, too?
Jùnggwokyàhn	
Haih a.	That's right.

Méihgwokyàhn	
deihjí	address
Dáng ngóh sé ngóh go deihjí béi néih lā.	Let me write my address and give it to you.
jigányiu	be sure to, by all means do [most important]
Làih chóh lā.	'Come visit me.' [come sit]
Doujó Wàhsihngdeuhn jigányiu làih ngóhdouh chóh ā.	When you get to Washington, be sure to come see me.
Jùnggwokyàhn	
A! Ngóh dōu m̀hjí néih ngūkkéi hái Wàhsihngdeuhn tím.	Oh--I didn't know your home was in Washington.
Méihgwokyàhn	
chēutsai	born
Haih a. Ngóh hái gódouh chēutsai ge.	Yes, I was born there.

B. **Recapitulation:**

Jùnggwokyàhn	
Wòhng Sàang! Hóu noih móuh gin bo.	Mr. Wong! I haven't seen you in a long time.
Tèngginwah néih hah go láihbaai fàanheui Méihgwok--haih m̀hhaih a?	I hear you're going back to the States next week--is that right?
Méihgwokyàhn	
Móuh cho.	That's right.
Ngóh dásyun yahluhk houh fàanheui--jīkhaih láihbaaisei.	I plan to go back on the 26th--Thursday, that is.
Jùnggwokyàhn	
Ngóh dōu dásyun heui Méihgwok.	I'm planning to go to America, too.
Méihgwokyàhn	
Haih mē? Néih géisíh heui nē?	Is that so?! When are you going?
Jùnggwokyàhn	
Wah m̀hdihng ga--	I'm not sure--

Waahkjé chēutnín yihyuht lā.	Maybe February next year.
Méihgwokyàhn	
Néih yáuh móuh heuigwo Méihgwok a?	Have you ever been to the States before?
Jùnggwokyàhn	
Yáuh--yāt-gáu-luhk-chāt nìhn heuilàih.	Yes, I made a trip in 1967.
Méihgwokyàhn	
Heuigwo bīn dī deihfòng a?	What places did you go?
Jùnggwokyàhn	
Heuigwo Sàamfàahnsīh tùhng Wàhsihngdeuhn jē.	I went to San Fransisco and Washington, that's all.
Gó léuhng daat deihfòng ngóh dōu yáuh chānchīk hái douh.	In those two places I have relatives.
Méihgwokyàhn	
Néih hahchi haih m̀hhaih dōuhaih heui Wàhsihngdeuhn a?	Will you go to Washington next time too?
Jùnggwokyàhn	
Haih a.	That's right.
Méihgwokyàhn	
Dáng ngóh sé ngóh go deihjí béi néih lā.	Let me write my address for you.
Doujó Wàhsihngdeuhn jigányiu làih ngóhdouh chóh lā.	When you get to Washington be sure to come visit me.
Jùnggwokyàhn	
A! Ngóh dōu m̀hjī néih ngūkkéi hái Wàhsihngdeuhn tìm.	Oh--I didn't know your home was in Washington.
Méihgwokyàhn	
Haih a. Ngóh hái gódouh chēutsái ge.	Yes, I was born there.

II. NOTES

A. Culture Notes

1. Lunar and solar calendar. In Hong Kong dates are reckoned by the solar calendar. Many people, however, reckon the dates of births, deaths, and weddings by the traditional lunar calendar. (On traditional Chinese wedding invitations both the lunar date and the solar date are given.)

2. Where you're born and where you're from. Traditionally a Chinese counts himself as being from the place where his ancestral village is, which may or may not be where he was born and brought up. A similar way of looking at things might be held by a person born to American parents living outside the U.S.

B. Structure Notes:

1. Fixed order in dates and addresses. Larger units precede smaller in descending order:

Ex: chēutnìhn yihyuht sàam houh	next year on February 3rd

(See BC and Drill 6)

Addresses are given in the same descending order:

Ex: Ngóh ge séjihlàuh hái Daaih Douh Jùng yāt-sei-gáu houh, sei láu.	My office is at 149 Queen's Road Central, on the 3rd floor.

2. Dates.

a. Days of the week. Starting with Monday as the first day, Monday through Saturday are serially numbered:

1. Láihbaaiyāt	Monday
2. Láihbaaiyih	Tuesday
3. Láihbaaisàam	Wednesday
4. Láihbaaisei	Thursday
5. Láihbaaińgh	Friday
6. Láihbaailuhk	Saturday
7. Láihbaai(yaht)	Sunday

Láihbaai is commonly used for 'Sunday'; but láihbaai also means 'week.' Láihbaaiyaht, 'Sunday,' may be used in sentences which would be ambiguous with the use of láihbaai; generally, however, context makes the meaning clear.

Ex: 1. Tìngyaht láihbaai. Tomorrow is Sunday.

2. Ngóh hahgo láihbaai m̀hdākhaahn. } I'm busy next week. or I'm busy next Sunday.

(See Drill 2)

Another word for 'week' is sīngkèih. Sīngkèih is substitutable for láihbaai everywhere, with one exception: Sīngkèih is not used to mean 'Sunday.'

b. Months of the year. Starting with January as the first month, January through December are serially numbered.

yātyuht	January	chātyuht	July
yihyuht	February	baatyuht	August
sàamyuht	March	gáuyuht	September
seiyuht	April	sahpyuht	October
ńghyuht	May	sahpyātyuht	November
luhkyuht	June	sahpyihyuht	December

c. Years.

1. -nìhn, 'year,' is preferred, but not obligatory, in year dates.

Ex: yāt-gáu-yāt-yāt (nìhn) 1911

yāt-gáu-sei-gáu-(nìhn) 1949

2. Note that -nín is a rising tone in:

gauhnín	last year
gàmnín	this year
chēutnín	next year

-nìhn is, however, used by some people in these phrases:

gauhnìhn

gàmnìhn

chēutnìhn

d. Question-Word formulas for dates:

bīn nìhn ?	which (or what) year?
bīn nìhn bīn yuht bīn yaht?	what date?
géi yuht?	which (or what) month?
géi(dō) houh?	which (or what) day?
láihbaaigéi?	which (or what) day of the week?
bīn yaht?	which (or what) day? (answer stated as day of week or tíngyaht, gamyaht, etc.)

(See Drill 3)

3. Timewords.

a. A word or phrase which can fill the position before or after ji 'until,' 'to' is a Timeword (TW).

Ex: Láihbaaisei ji láihbaailuhk	Thursday to Saturday
Kéuih láihbaaisei ji láihbaailuhk yiu fàangúng.	He has to go to work from Thursday until Saturday.

b. Timewords fill the Time When position before a verb. (See example above.)

c. Names of months are Timewords, but one month, two months, etc., are number-measure compounds that cannot fill the Timeword position. Instead they fill the length of time (time span) position after the verb.

Ex:

	TimeWhen	Verb	Time-span	
1. Kéuih	Sàamyuht	heui.		He's going in March.
2. Kéuih séung		heui	sáam go yuht.	He plans to go for three months.

4. Sentence suffix lā, for uncertainty.

Suffixed to sentences predicting time of an action the raised intonation lā suggests a degree of uncertainty, suggests that the time is approximate rather than exact.

Ex: 1. A. Néih géi dím yiu jáu a?	When do you have to go?
B. Léuhng dím lā.	About two o'clock.
2. A. Néih géisìh heui a?	When are you going?
B. Waahkjé chēutnín yihyuht lā.	Oh, probably February next year.

(See BC)

III. DRILLS

1. Expansion Drill:

+ 1. a. yuht	1. a. month
+ b. hahgo yuht	b. next month
c. hahgo yuht heui	c. go next month
d. hahgo yuht fàanheui	d. go back next month
e. dásyun hah̀go yuht fàanheui	e. plan to go back next month
f. Ngóh dásyun hahgo yuht fàanheui Yìnggwok.	f. I plan to go back to England next month.

---

2. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

+ 1. Ngóh láihbaaiyāt heui tái hei. I'm going to a movie Monday.	1. Ngóh láihbaaiyāt heui tái hei.
+ 2. /láihbaaiyih/ (Tuesday)	2. Ngóh láihbaaiyih heui tái hei.
+ 3. /láihbaaisàam/ (Wednesday)	3. Ngóh láihbaaisàam heui tái hei.
+ 4. /láihbaaińgh/ (Friday)	4. Ngóh láihbaaińgh heui tái hei.
+ 5. /láihbaailuhk/ (Saturday)	5. Ngóh láihbaailuhk heui tái hei.
+ 6. /láihbaaiyaht/ (Sunday)	6. Ngóh láihbaaiyaht heui tái hei.
+ 7. /láihbaai/ (Sunday)	7. Ngóh láihbaai heui tái hei.

---

3. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Kéuih kàhmyaht làih ge. He came yesterday.	1. Kéuih kàhmyaht làih ge.
+ 2. /gauh nín/ (last year)	2. Kéuih gauhnín làih ge.
+ 3. /gàm nín/ (this year)	3. Kéuih gàmnín làih ge. He came this year.

+ 4. /seuhng go yuht/	4. Kéuih seuhnggo yuht làih ge.
+ 5. /seuhng go láihbaai/	5. Kéuih seuhnggo láihbaai làih ge.
+ 6. /nī go láihbaai/ (this week)	6. Kéuih nīgo láihbaai lāih ge. He came this week.
+ 7./nī go yuht/ (this month)	7. Kéuih nīgo yuht làih ge. He came this month.
+ 8./géi yuht?/ (which month?) (what month?)	8. Kéuih géi yuht làih ga? What month did he come?
+ 9./bīn nìhn?/ (which year?) (what year?)	9. Kéuih bīn nìhn làih ga? What year did he come?
+ 10./bīn nìhn, bīn yuht, bīn yaht?/ (what date?)	10. Kéuih bīn nìhn bīn yuht, bīn yaht làih ga? What date did he come?
+ 11./géi(dō) houh?/ (what day?) (of the month)	11. Kéuih géi(dō) houh làih ga?
+ 12./láihbaaigéi?/ (what day of the week?)	12. Kéuih láihbaaigéi làih ga?
+ 13./bīn yaht?/ (what day?)	13. Kéuih bīn yaht làih ga?

Comment: géi yuht? is the usual way for asking which/what month? but in a nìhn yuht yaht 'year-month-day' phrase, bīn is prefered as question-word: bīn nìhn, bīn yuht, bīn yaht a? = what date?

---

4. Conversation Drill: Students should recite the days of the week after the teacher before beginning this drill.

Ex: T: Gàmyaht láihbaaisei.	T: Today is Thursday.
S1: Tīngyaht láihbaaigéi a?	S1: What day of the week is tomorrow?
S2: Tīngyaht láihbaaińgh.	S2: Tomorrow is Friday.

1. Gàmyaht láihbaaiyih.	1. A. Tīngyaht láihbaaigéi a? B. Tīngyaht láihbaaisàam.
2. Gàmyaht láihbaaisei.	2. A. Tīngyaht láihbaaigéi a? B. Tīngyaht láihbaaińgh.

3. Gàmyaht láihbaaiyāt.	3. A. Tìngyaht láihbaaigéi a? B. Tìngyaht láihbaaiyih.
4. Gàmyaht láihbaai.	4. A. Tìngyaht láihbaaigéi a? B. Tìngyaht láihbaaiyāt.

---

5. Conversation Drill

Ex: T: Láihbaaiyāt sàam houh.	T: Monday is the third.
S1: Láihbaaiyih géidō houh a?	S1: What day of the month is it Tuesday?
S2: Láihbaaiyih sei houh.	S2: Tuesday is the 4th.
1. Láihbaaiyaht baat houh.	1. A. Léihbaaiyāt géidō houh a? B. Láihbaaiyāt gáu houh.
2. Láihbaaisei yih houh.	2. A. Láihbaaińgh géidō houh a? B. Láihbaaińgh sàam houh.
3. Láihbaaisàam sahpluhk houh.	3. A. Láihbaaisei géidō houh a? B. Láihbaaisei sahpchāt houh.
4. Léihbaaińgh sahpchāt houh.	4. A. Láihbaailuhk géidō houh a? B. Láihbaailuhk sahpbaat houh.
5. Láihbaailuhk yahyāt houh.	5. A. Láihbaaiyaht géidō houh a? B. Léihbaaiyaht yahyih houh.

---

6. Expansion Drill

Ex: 1. T: Ngóh yih houh làih ge. /chāt yuht/	T: I came on the 2nd. /July/
S: Ngóh chāt yuht yih houh làih ge.	S: I came on July 2nd.
1. Ngóh luhk yuht làih ge. /yahsei houh/	1. Ngóh luhk yuht yahsei houh làih ge.
2. Ngóh sei yuht làih ge. /yāt-gáu-luhk-sàam nìhn/	2. Ngóh yāt-gáu-luhk-sàam nìhn sei yuht làih ge.

3. Ngóh gauh nín làih ge. /sàam yuht/	3. Ngóh gauh nín sàam yuht làih ge. I came in March last year.
4. Ngóh chāt houh làih ge. /gáu yuht/	4. Ngóh gáu yuht chāt houh làih ge.
5. Ngóh yāt gáu luhk sei nìhn làih ge. /baat yuht/	5. Ngóh yāt gáu luhk sei nìhn baat yuht làih ge.

---

7. **Translation-Expansion Drill**

Ex: 1. T: /last year/

S1: Kéuih géisìh làih ga?	S1: When did he come?
S2: Kéuih gauhnín làih ge.	S2: He came last year.

2. T: /next year/

S1: Kéuih géisìh làih a?	S1: When is he coming?
S2: Kéuih chēutnín làih.	S2: He's coming next year.

1. /last month/	1. A. Kéuih géisìh làih ga? B. Kéuih seuhnggo yuht làih.
2. /last week/	2. A. Kéuih géisìh làih ga? B. Kéuih seuhnggo láihbaai làih ge.
3. /13th of last month/	3. A. Kéuih géisìh làih ga? B. Kéuih seuhnggo yuht sahpsàam houh làih ge.
4. /next month/	4. A. Kéuih géisìh làih a? B. Kéuih hahgo yuht làih.
5. /September next year/	5. A. Kéuih géisìh làih a? B. Kéuih chēutnín gáuyuht làih.
6. /next Wednesday/	6. A. Kéuih géisìh làih a? B. Kéuih hahgo láihbaaisàam làih.
7. /January last year/	7. A. Kéuih géisìh làih ga? B. Kéuih gauhnín yāt yuht làih ge.

8. /29th of next month/	8. A. Kéuih géisìh làih a? B. Kéuih hahgo yuht yahgáu houh làih.

---

8. Question & Answer Drill

Ex: T: 'Jáugā' haih sihk Jùngchoi ge deihfòng.	T: 'Jáugā' is a place where you eat Chinese food.
S1: Mēyéh giujouh 'jáugā' a?	S1: What thing is called a 'jáugā'?
S2: 'Jáugā' jīkhaih sihk Jùngchoi ge deihfòng.	S2: 'Jáugā' is a place where you eat Chinese food, that's what.

1. 'Chāansāt haih sihk Sāichāan ge deihfòng.	1. S1: Mēyéh giujouh 'chāansāt' a? S2: 'Chāansāt' jīkhaih sihk Sāichāan ge deihfòng.
2. 'Séjihlàuh' haih jouh sih ge deihfòng.	2. S1: Mēyéh giujouh 'séjihlàuh' a? S2: 'Séjihlàuh' jīkhaih jouh sih ge deihfòng.
3. 'Gūngsī' haih maaih yéh ge deihfòng.	3. S1: Mēyéh giujouh 'gūngsī' a? S2: 'Gūngsī' jīkhaih maaih yéh ge deihfòng.
4. 'Ngūk' haih jyuh ge deihfòng.	4. S1: Mēyéh giujouh 'ngūk' a? S2: 'Ngūk' jīkhaih jyuh ge deihfòng.
5. 'Chàhlàuh' haih yám chàh ge deihfòng.	5. S1: Mēyéh giujouh 'chàhlàuh' a? S2: 'Chàhlàuh' jīkhaih yám chàh ge deihfòng.
6. 'Heiyún' haih tái hei ge deihfòng.	6. S1: Mēyéh giujouh 'heiyún' a? S2: 'Heiyún' jīkhaih tái hei ge deihfòng.

---

9. Response Drill

Ex: 1.	T: Kéuih dásyun géisìh heui a? /hahgo yuht/	T: When does she plan to go? /next month/
	S: Dásyun hahgo yuht heui.	S: (She) plans to go next month.
2.	T: Kéuih géisìh heui ga? /seuhnggo yuht/	T: When did she go? /last month/
	S: Seuhnggo yuht heui ge.	S: She went last month.

1. Wòhng Sàang dásyun géisìh jáu a? /nīgo yuht/	1. Dásyun nīgo yuht jáu.
2. Néih dásyun géisìh máaih a? /hahgo láihbaai/	2. Dásyun hahgo láihbaai máaih.
3. Néihdeih géisìh jouh ga? /seuhnggo yuht/	3. Seuhnggo yuht jouh ge.
4. Néih sīnsàang géisìh fàanlàih ga? /nīgo yuht yāt houh/	4. Nīgo yuht yāt houh fàan làih ge.
5. Hòh Táai dásyun géisìh fàanheui a? /tìngyaht/	5. Dásyun tìngyaht fàanheui.

Comment: If the action expressed by the verb has already occurred, the géisìh question adds ge (ga) to the verb phrase. To a géisìh VP-ga question, the answer is stated in VP-ge form.

Ex: 1. Kéuih géisìh heui Yìnggwok ga?	1. When did he go to England?
2. Kéuih gauhnìn heui ge.	2. He went last year. (It was last year that he went.)

But if the statement sentence is a lead sentence, not a response to a géisìh question, the prefered form is without ge.

Ex: Kéuih gauhnìn heui Yìnggwok.	He went to England last year.

This sentence is a plain fact statement of general activity and as such uses SVO word order and an uninflected verb. The géisí question throws the focus of the sentence to the Timeword. The sentence pattern for highlighting the Timeword in a past reference sentence is: S Timeword V ge.

10. Transformation Drill: Change the sentence to a time expression question, following the pattern of the example.

Ex: T: Kéuih yāt-gáu-luhk-baat(nìhn) làih ge.	T: What year did he come to Hong Kong?
S: Kéuih bīn nìhn làih Hèunggóng ga?	S: He came in 1968.
1. Kéuih yāt gáu sei gáu nìhn chēutsai ge.	1. Kéuih bīn nìhn chēutsai ga?
2. Kéuih gáu yuht fàan Méihgwok.	2. Kéuih géi yuht fàan Méihgwok a? What month is he returning to America?
3. Kéuih tìngyaht dākhàahn.	3. Kéuih bīn yaht dāknàahn a? What day is he free?
4. Kéuih yāt-gáu-sàam-luhk nìhn, sahpyāt yuht, sei houh chēutsai ge.	4. Kéuih bīn nìhn, bīn yuht, bīn yaht chēut sai ga?
5. Kéuih yahluhk houh heui taam kéuih làih.	5. Kéuih géi houh heui taam kéuih làih a?
6. Kéuih séung gáu dím bun chēut gāai.	6. Kéuih séung géi dím jūng chēut gāai a?

---

11. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh yáuh pàhngyáuh hái douh. /gó léuhng gàan jáudim/	T: I have friends there.
S: Gó léuhng gàan jáudim, ngóh dōu yáuh pàhngyáuh hái douh.	S: I have friends in both of those two hotels.
1. Ngóh yáuh jáinéui hái douh. /gó léuhng gàan hohkhaauh/	1. Gó léuhng gàan hohkhaauh, ngóh dōu yáuh jáinéui hái douh.
2. Ngóh yáuh taaitáai hái douh. /gó léuhng daat deihfòng/	2. Gó léuhng daat deihfòng, ngóh dōu yáuh taaitáai hái douh.
3. Ngóh yáuh chín hái douh. /gó léuhng gàan ngàhnhòhng/	3. Gó léuhng gàan ngàhnhòhng, ngóh dōu yáuh chín hái douh.
4. Ngóh yáuh ngūk hái douh. /Hèunggóng, Gáulùhng/	4. Hèunggóng, Gáulùhng, ngóh dōu yáuh ūk hái douh.

5. Kéuih yáuh nàahm pàhngyáuh hái douh. /chìhn, hauh, jó, yauh/ /ahead, behind, right and left/	5. Chìhn, hauh, jó, yauh, kéuih dōu yáuh nàahm pàhngyáuh hái douh.

12. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh chānchīk jyuh hái Wàhsihngdeuhn.	T: My relatives live in Washington DC.
S: Ngóh yáuh chānchīk jyuh hái Wàhsihngdeuhn.	S: I have relatives who live in Washington DC.
1. Kéuih fu ngáhngéng hóu leng.	1. Kéuih yáuh fu ngáhngéng hóu leng.
2. Kéuih gàan ngūk hóu daaih.	2. Kéuih yáuh gàan ngūk hóu daaih.
3. Ngóh pàhngyáuh hái Sàamfàahnsīh jouh sih.	3. Ngóh yáuh pàhngyáuh hái Sàamfàahnsīh jouh sih.
4. Néih bún syù hái douh.	4. Néih yáuh bún syù hái douh.
5. Ngóh go jái hái Yīnggwok gaau syù.	5. Ngóh yáuh go jái hái Yīnggwok gaau syù.
6. Ngóh chānchīk hái gó gàan ngàhnhòhng jouh sih.	6. Ngóh yáuh chānchīk hái gó gàan ngàhnhòhng jouh sih.

13. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: M̀hgòi néih giu kéuih dá dihnwá béi ngóh lā.	T: Please tell him to telephone me.
S: M̀hgòi néih jigányiu giu kéuih dá dihnwá béi ngóh a.	S: Please be sure to tell him to telephone me.
1. Geidāk bo!	1. Jigányiu geidāk a!
2. M̀hhóu m̀hgeidāk a!	2. Jigányiu m̀hhóu m̀hgeidāk a!
3. Néih m̀hhóu wah kéuih jī a!	3. Néih jigányiu m̀hhóu wah kéuih jī a!
4. Tīngyaht làih ngóhdouh sihk faahn lā.	4. Tīngyaht jigányiu làih ngóhdouh sihk faahn a.

14. Expansion Drill: Expand the sentences with the cue words.

Ex: T: Ngóh yiu heui taam Chàhn Táai. /láihbaai/	T: I'm going to go visit Mrs. Chan. /Sunday/
S: Ngóh láihbaai yiu heui taam Chàhn Taai.	S: I'm going to go visit Mr. Chan on Sunday.
1. Ngóh séung máaih dī yéh béi ngóh néuihpàhngyáuh. /nī go láihbaai/	1. Ngóh séung nī go láihbaai máaih dī yéh béi ngóh néuihpàhngyáuh.
2. Nī deui hàaih juhng hóu sàn bo. /néih/	2. Néih nī deui hàaih juhng hóu sàn bo.
3. Néih jyuh hái bīndouh a? /kéuih dím jí/ (how did he know)	3. Kéuih dím jí néih jyuh hái bīndouh a?
4. Yihyuht dāk yihsahpbaat yaht jē. /gàmnín/	4. Gàmnín yihyuht dāk yihsahpbaat yaht jē.
+ 5. Kéuih m̀hsīk jà faaijí. /ngóh m̀hjí/ He does not know how to use chopsticks. [clasp -chopsticks]	5. Ngóh m̀hjí kéuih m̀hsīk jà faaijí.
+ 6. Kéuih hái Méihgwok fàanjó làih. /seuhng go yuht sei houh/ He has come back from America.	6. Seuhng go yuht sei houh kéuih hái Méihgwok fàanjó làih.
7. Kéuih ūkkéi yáuh dihnsih. /juhng meih/ Their house has (or had) television.	7. Kéuih ūkkéi juhng meih yáuh dihnsih. Their house doesn't (or didn't) have television.
8. M̀hgòi néih nìng làih nīdouh lā. /bùi chàh/	8. M̀hgòi néih nìng bùi chàh làih nīdouh lā.
9. M̀hgòi néih béi jek gāng ngóh lā. /dò/	9. M̀hgòi néih béi dò jek gāng ngóh lā.

Comment: hái, as 'from,' is interchangeable with yàuh, 'from,' choice of hái or yàuh rests with personal preference, personal habit. See #6 above, and Comment in Vol. One, Lesson 15, p. 341.

15. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh yih houh heui. Ngóh hahgo yuht heui.	T: I'm going on the 2nd. I'm going next month.
S: Ngóh hahgo yuht yih houh heui.	S: I'm going on the 2nd of next month.
1. Kéuih chēutnín fàanheui. Kéuih sei yuht fàanheui.	1. Kéuih chēutnín sei yuht fàanheui.
2. Kéuihdeih láihbaaisàam làih. Kéuihdeih hah go láihbaai làih.	2. Kéuihdeih hah go láihbaaisàam làih.
3. Wòhng Sàang hah go yuht heui Méihgwok. Wòhng Sàang sahpyih houh heui Méihgwok.	3. Wòhng Sàang hah go yuht sahpyih houh heui Méihgwok.
4. Hòh Síujé seuhng go láihbaai làih ge. Hòh Síujé láihbaaiyāt làih ge.	4. Hòh Síujé seuhng go láihbaaiyāt làih ge.
5. Ngóh gauhnín heui ge. Ngóh chāt yuht yahsàam houh heui ge.	5. Ngóh gauhnín chāt yuht yahsàam houh heui ge.

---

16. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Nīpáai yáuh móuh tái hei a? /kàhmyaht/	T: Have you seen any movies lately?
S: Yáuh, kàhmyaht tái làih.	S: Yes, I saw one yesterday.
2. T: Nīpáai yáuh móuh dá bō a? /m̀hdākhàahn/	T: Have you played ball recently?
S: Móuh, nīpáai dōu m̀hdākhàahn dá.	S: No, I haven't had (leisure) time to play lately.
1. Nīpáai yáuh móuh heui yàuhséui a? /láihbaailuhk/	1. Yáuh, láihbaailuhk heui làih.
2. Nīpáai yáuh móuh dá màhjéuk a? /m̀hdākhàahn/	2. Móuh, nīpáai dōu m̀hdākhàahn dá.
3. Nīpáai yáuh móuh heui máaih yéh a? /seuhng go láihbaai/ (last week or last Sunday)	3. Yáuh, seuhng go láihbaai heui làih.

4. Nīpáai yáuh móuh heui hàahng gūngsī a? /m̀hdākhàahn/	4. Móuh, nīpáai dōu m̀hdākhàahn heui.
5. Nīpáai yáuh móuh hohk jà chē a? /m̀hdākhàahn/	5. Móuh, nīpáai dōu m̀hdākhàahn hohk.
6. Nīpáai yáuh móuh dá páai a? /láihbaaisàam/	6. Yáuh, láihbaaisàam dá làih.
7. Nīpáai yáuh móuh fàanheui taam màhmā a? /seuhng go yuht yāt houh/	7. Yáuh, seuhng go yuht yāt houh fàanheui làih.
8. Nīpáai yáuh móuh gwo hói a? /m̀hdākhàahn/	8. Móuh, nīpáai dōu m̀hdākhàahn gwo.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

1) Móuh = Nothing special
2) ji = (not until) then
3) go deihjí = here: your address
4) Lóuh Wóng = 'Old Wong'--Lóuh + surname is used as form of address to a man by good friends. (The tone of the surname changes from low falling tone to high rising tone.)
5) Sínggabō = Singapore
6) ngāamngāam = just
7) ji = (only) then, (not until) then
8) tùhngmàaih = tùhng
9) Tòihwāan = Taiwan
10) yíhchìhn = previously
11) sàangyi = (commercial) business

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:	B: And he replies:
1. What day of the week is it today?	1. It's _________.
2. What day of the month is Thursday?	2. Thursday's the _______th/rd/st/nd.

3. What's your birth date?	3. I was born on __________.
4. When did you come to Hong Kong?	4. I came last year.
5. I hear you arrived last month--is that right?	5. No, I came this month.
6. I hear he went to America last week--is that right?	6. No, he went this week.
7. What day are you free?--I'd like to ask you to dinner.	7. How about tomorrow?
8. Have you been to England before?	8. Yes, I went in 1968, and returned last year.
9. I hear you're leaving for Japan on October 10th.	9. No, it's November 10th that I'm going.
10. What is it that's called a jáugā?	10. A jáugā is a place where you eat Chinese food.
11. Be sure to come see me when you get to San Francisco.	11. Fine! Please give me your address.
12. Do you have relatives in the States?	12. No, I don't have any relatives there, but I have a few friends in San Francisco.
13. Mr. Lee went to Shanghai last year and still hasn't returned.	13. His wife told me he might be back next month.
14. Where'd we read to last week?	14. I'm not sure. We read lesson 17 last Friday, but I don't remember what page we got to.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 17

1. baatyuht	TW August
2. bīn nìhn?	TW which year?
3. bīn nìhn, bīn yuht, bīn yaht?	TW what date?
4. bīn yaht?	TW what day?
5. bīn yuht?	TW what month? (in a year-month-day phrase)
6. chānchīk	n relative(s)
7. chātyuht	TW July
8. chēutnín	TW next year
9. chēutsai	VO to be born

10. dásyun	AuxV	plan on, plan to
11. daat	m	M. for a place
12. deihfōng or deihfòng	n	place
13. deihjí	n	address
14. fàanheui	V	go back, return
15. gàmnín	TW	this year
16. gauhnín	TW	last year
17. gáuyuht	TW	September
18. géi(dō) houh?	TW	what day of the month?
19. géiyuht	TW	what month?
20. gin	V	meet, see
21. hahchi	TW	next time
22. hahgo láihbaai	TW	next week
23. hahgo yuht	TW	next month
24. hái	prep	from
25. -houh	bf	day of the month
26. Hóu noih móuh gin.	Ph	'Long time no see.'
27. jà faaijí	VO	use chopsticks [clasp-chopsticks]
28. jigán(yiu)_V_	Ph	be sure to--, by all means do _V_
29. jīkhaih	Ph	that is, in other words, that is to say
30. Làih (PW) chóh lā! ā!	Ph	Come visit (place)!
31. láihbaai	n	week
32. láihbaai	TW	Sunday
33. láihbaai géi?	TW	what day of the week?
34. láihbaailuhk	TW	Saturday
35. láihbaaińgh	TW	Friday
36. láihbaaisàam	TW	Wednesday
37. láihbaaisei	TW	Thursday
38. láihbaaiyaht	TW	Sunday
39. láihbaaiyāt	TW	Monday
40. láihbaaiyih	TW	Tuesday
41. luhkyuht	TW	June
42. nī go láihbaai	TW	this week
43. nī go yuht	TW	this month

44. nìhn	m	year
45. ńghyuht	TW	May
46. noih	Adj	long (time)
47. Sàamfàahnsíh	PW	San Francisco
48. sàamyuht	TW	March
49. sahpyātyuht	TW	November
50. sahpyihyuht	TW	December
51. sahpyuht	TW	October
52. seiyuht	TW	April
53. seuhng go láihbaai	TW	last week
54. seuhng go yuht	TW	last month
55. tèngginwah	Ph	hear tell, (I) hear... [hear-see-talk]
56. Wàhsihngdeuhn	PW	Washington
57. Wah m̀hdihng.	Ph	Can't say for sure, uncertain
58. yātyuht	TW	January
59. yaht	M	day
60. yihyuht	TW	February
61. yuht	n	month

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(University student Bàau Bok-lèuhng, waiting for his girl to get ready to go out, talks to her elder sister:)

gāje̅	elder sister
Gāje̅	
Néih haih bīndouh yàhn a?	What place are you from? (i.e., Where is your family from?)
Bok-lèuhng	
Gwóngjàu.	Canton.
Gāje̅	
géi nói? or géi noih?	how long?
jyuhjó géi nói?	have lived how long?; lived how long?
Néih hái Hèunggóng jyuhjó géi nói a?	How long have you lived in Hong Kong?
Bok-lèuhng	
-dóu	approximately
Léuhng nìhn dóu.	About two years.
Gāje̅	
Néih dásyun juhng jyuh géi nói a?	How much longer do you plan to stay?
Bok-lèuhng	
jisíu	at least
Jisíu yāt nìhn.	At least a year.
daaihhohk	university
duhk daaihhohk	study at the university
duhk léuhng nìhn daaihhohk	study two years at the university
Ngóh duhkjó léuhng nìhn daaihhohk ge la.	I've studied two years at the university.
bātyihp	graduate
Juhng yáuh yāt nìhn jauh bātyihp.	I still have another year then I'll graduate.

Gājē	
yìhchìhn	previously
duhk syù	study
Néih yìhchìhn hái bīndouh duhk syù a?	Where did you study before?
Bok-lèuhng	
jìchìhn	before
meih..VP..jìchìhn,...	before Verb Phrase.
ngóh meih láih Hèunggóng jìchìhn,...	before I came to Hongkong,...
Tòihwāan, or Tòihwàan	Taiwan
Ngóh meih làih Hèunggóng jìchìhn, ngóh hái Tòihwāan duhk syù.	Before I came to Hongkong, I studied in Taiwan.
Hái gódouh jyuhjó géi nìhn.	I lived there for several years.
Gājē	
góján or gójahn	when, at the time
Néih hái Tòihwāan góján, hái bīndouh jyuh a?	When you were in Taiwan, where did you live?
Bok-lèuhng	
Tòihbāk	Taipei
Hái Tòihbāk.	In Taipei.
Gājē	
jìhauh	after
bātjó yihp jìhauh	after you graduate
Néih bātjó yihp jìhauh, dásyun heui bīndouh a?	After you graduate, where do you plan to go? (i.e., what do you plan to do?)
Bok-lèuhng	
kyutdihng	decide
meih kyutdihng	not decided yet
juhng meih kyutdihng	still not decided yet
hèimohng	hope
hèimohng hóyìh heui Yìnggwok làuhhohk	I hope I can go to England to study abroad
Yìhgā juhng meih kyutdihng, daahnhaih ngóh hèimohng hóyìh heui Yìnggwok làuhhohk.	It's still not decided yet, but I hope to be able to go to England to study.

yùhgwó	if
yùhgwó m̀hheui làuhhohk	if I don't go abroad to study
wán yéh jouh	look for a job [look for something to do]
Yùhgwó m̀hheui làuhhohk, jauh hái douh wán yéh jouh.	If I don't go abroad to study, I'll look for a job here.

B. Recapitulation:

(University student Bàau Bok-lèuhng, waiting for his girl to get ready to go out, talks to her elder sister:)

Gājē	
Néih haih bīndouh yàhn a?	What place are you from?
Bok-lèuhng	
Gwóngjàu.	Canton.
Gājē	
Néih hái Hèunggóng jyuhjó géi nói a?	How long have you lived in Hong Kong?
Bok-lèuhng	
Léuhng nìhn dóu.	About two years.
Gājē	
Néih dásyun juhng jyuh géi nói a?	How much longer do you plan to stay?
Bok-lèuhng	
Jisíu yāt nìhn.	At least a year.
Ngóh duhkjó léuhng nìhn daaihhohk ge la.	I've studied two years at the university.
Juhng yáuh yāt nìhn jauh bātyihp.	I still have another year then I'll graduate.
Gājē	
Néih yíhchìhn hái bīndouh duhk syù a?	Where did you study before?
Bok-lèuhng	
Ngóh meih làih Hèunggóng jīchìhn, ngóh hái Tòihwāan duhk syù.	Before I came to Hongkong, I studied in Taiwan.

Hái gódouh jyuhjó géi nìhn.	I lived there several years.
Gājē	
Néih hái Tòihwāan góján hái bīndouh jyuh a?	When you were in Taiwan, where did you live?
Bok-lèuhng	
Hái Tòihbāk.	In Taipei.
Gājē	
Néih bātjó yihp jìhauh, dásyun heui bīndouh a?	After you graduate, what do you plan to do?
Bok-lèuhng	
Yìhgā juhng meih kyutdihng, daahnhaih ngóh hèimohng hóyíh heui Yìnggwok làuhhohk.	It's still not decided yet, but I hope to be able to go to England to study.
Yùhgwó m̀hheui làuhhohk, jauh hái douh wán yéh jouh.	If I don't go abroad to study, I'll look for a job here.

II. NOTES

1. ...jìchìhn,... = 'Before....'
...jìhauh,... = 'After....'
...gójahn (góján),... = 'When....'

a. jìchìhn, jìhauh, and gójahn are conjunctions which stand at the end of the first (subordinate) clause and join it to the following (main) clause. The order of subordinate clause first and main second is irreversible.

Ex (from BC):

1. Ngóh meih làih Hèunggóng jìchìhn, ngóh hái Tòihwāan duhk syù.	Before I came to Hongkong, I studied in Taiwan.
(See also Drill 12)	
2. Néih bātjó yihp jìhauh, dásyun heui bīndouh a?	After you graduate, where do you plan to go?
(See also Drill 12)	
3. Néih hái Tòihwāan góján, hái bīndouh jyuh a?	When you were in Taiwan, where did you live? or
(See also Drill 11)	

b. (meih)..VP..jìchìhn,...

meih is often used before the verb of the jìchìhn phrase. The meaning of the phrase is the same with or without meih.

Ex: Ngóh (meih) làih Hèunggóng jìchìhn, hái Tòihwāan duhk syù. — Before I came to Hongkong, I studied in Taiwan.

c. jìchìhn and jìhauh form Timewords with a preceding Number + Measure when the Measure is a time measure.

Ex: Nu + M jìchìhn/jìhauh

sàam nìhn jìchìhn = 3 years before; 3 years ago

sàam nìhn jìhauh = 3 years later, 3 years afterwards; after 3 years

Example sentences:

1. Kéuih sàam nìhn jìchìhn } heui Méihgwok làuhhohk. — 1. He went to America to study abroad three years ago. (or three years before)

2. Kéuih sàam nìhn jìhauh } heui Méihgwok làuhhohk. — 2. He went to America to study abroad three years later. (or: After 3 years, he went to America to study abroad.)

(See Lesson 22,Drill 17)

d. gójahn does not link with a length-of-time Number + Measure compound as jìchìhn and Jìhauh do, but can itself act as a Timeword.

Ex: gójahn = 'at that time'

Kéuih gójahn heui Méihgwok làuhhohk. — At that time he went to America to study abroad.

2. yíhchìhn, 'previously,' and yíhhauh, 'afterwards'

yíhchìhn, 'formerly,' 'previously,' 'before,' and yíhhauh, 'afterwards,' 'later,' can operate in single clause sentences.

Ex: 1. Kéuih yíhchihn hái nīdouh jyuh. — He lived here previously.

2. Kéuih yíhhauh hái nīdouh jyuh. — He lived here afterwards.

yíhchìhn and yíhhauh must come before the verb and can come before the subject of the sentence as well. To words in this category we give the name Moveable Adverb (MA).

Ex: Yíhchìhn kéuih hái nīdouh jyuh. }
Kéuih yíhchìhn hái nīdouh jyuh. } Previously he lived here.

(See Drills 9, 14)

3. Time spent expressions in sentences of future reference.

In sentences of future reference the central verb is often preceded by such auxiliary verbs as séung, 'plans to,' dásyun, 'plans to,' or yiu, 'wants, intends to,' when a Time-spent expression follows.

Ex: Kéuih	dásyun séung yiu	duhk léuhng nìhn Yìngmàhn.

He plans to take two years of English.

(See BC & Drills 7, 12, 15)

4. Time spent expressions in sentences of past reference.

In sentences of past reference the verb adds the suffix -jó 'accomplish' or -gwo 'experience,' when a Time-spent expression follows.

Ex: S	V	-jó -gwo	TS	
Kéuih	duhk	jó gwo	léuhng nìhn Yìngmàhn.	He took two years of English.

(See BC and Drills 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 15)

5. V-jó + timespent and V-gwo + timespent compared

a. V-jó + timespent phrase

This pattern is used to express both:

a. action or condition which began in the past and continues to the moment of speaking:

Ex: 1. Kéuih hái nī douh jyuhjó sàam nìhn la.	He has lived here 3 years.
2. Kéuih heuijó sàam go làihbaai la.	He has been gone for 3 weeks.

b. action or condition which began in the past and ended in the past:

Ex: 1. Kéuih hái Wàhsìhngduhn jyuhjó sàam nìhn.	He lived in Washington for 3 years.
2. Kéuih heuijó sàam go láihbaai.	He went for three weeks. or He was away for 3 weeks.

Sentences of the type described in a. above generally end in la, prompting the analysis that time spent sentences of the pattern V-jó + time spent + la are restricted to those describing actions which began in the past and continue into the present. However la is also used at the end of sentences of type b above, describing actions which began in the past and ended in the past.

In such cases la is used to stress that the time spent is considered a long time. (For an example of the latter see CL 18.1)

b. Verb-gwo + time spent phrase

This pattern is used to express action which began in the past and ended in the past. This structure marks the action of the verb as terminating sometime before the moment of speaking.

Ex: Ngóh hohkgwo sàam nìhn Yìngmàhn.	I studied English for 3 years. (am not studying now)

6. Relative position of Timespent phrase and other post-verbal expressions.

a. With most VO phrases, the time-spent phrase precedes the direct object as modifier to it.

Ex: Ngóh dájó yātgo jūngtàuh bō.	I played ball for an hour. I played an hour of ball.

(See BC and Drill 13)

b. With other VO phrases, the time-spent phrase follows the object of the verb:

Ex: Ngóh dángjó kéuih léuhng go jih.	I waited for her for ten minutes.

(See Drill 5)

c. With still other VO phrases the preference is to treat the direct object and the time-spent phrase as two verbal expressions in series:

VO + V-jó timespent:

Ex: Kéuihdeih wán ūk, wánjó géi go yuht.	They looked (or have been looking) for a house for several months.

(Lesson 19, D 15)

d. Another favorite treatment puts the logical object in topic position, with the comment an SVO clause, the O of SVO being the time-spent phrase:

Ex: Nī gàan ngūk ngóhdeih jyuhjó sàam go yuht la.	This house we've lived in three months.

e. When the VO is a movement verb + PW object, the time spent phrase follows the PW object.

Ex: 1. Kéuih làihjó Hèunggóng móuhgéinoih.	1. He's been in Hong Kong for just a short time.
2. Kéuih dásyun heui Tòihwāan (jyuh) sàam nìhn.	2. He plans to go to Taiwan (to live) for three years.

(See Drill 15)

7. Time-since phrases

Time elapsed since a particular action or since the establishment of a state of affairs, is also expressed by V-jó + timespent. If the sentence is an SVO direct object sentence, the time spent phrase follows the direct object.

Ex: 1. Kéuih gitjó fàn yāt nìhn.	1. He's been married for one year. or It's been a year since he got married.
2. Kéuih bùnjó ūk léuhng nìhn. bùn ngūk = [move-house], i.e., move	2. He's been moved for 2 years. or It's been 2 years since he moved. ie: He moved 2 years ago.
3. Ngóh ga chē máaihjó sàam nìhn.	3. My car has been bought for three years. i.e. I've had this car 3 years.

A sentence which is phrased Verb-jó + Timespent is potentially ambiguous, inasmuch as both the time-spent pattern and the time-since pattern both use this formula of expression. Thus:

Nī gihn sāam jouhjó léuhng yaht.	This dress took two days to make. or This dress has been made (finished) for 2 days.

In an SVO construction there is no ambiguity--the time-since follows the SVO, and the time-spent adopts the pattern of verbal expressions in series:

Ex: 1. Kéuih jouhjó nīgihn sāam léuhng yaht.	1. She's had the dress made for 2 days. (since 2 days ago)
2. Kéuih jouh nī gihn sāam, jouhjó 2 jaht.	2. She took 2 days to make the dress.

III. DRILLS

1. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Kéuih máhmā jyuh hái Sāamfàahnsíh.	1. Kéuih máhmā jyuh hái Sāamfàahnsíh.
2. /kéuih/Gwóngjàu/ Canton	2. Kéuih jyuh hái Gwóngjàu. He lives in Canton.
* 3. /ngóh ge sailóugō/Daaihluhk/ (continent) (Mainland China)	3. Ngóh ge sailóugō jyuh hái Daaihluhk. My children live on the Mainland.
* 4. /ngóh máhmā/Oumún/ (Macao)	4. Ngóh máhmā jyuh hái Oumún.
5. /kéuih dī jáinéui/Tòihwāan/	5. Kéuih dī jáinéui jyuh hái Tòihwāan.

Comment: Chinese use the word for 'continent,' daaihluhk, to refer to Mainland China. We spell it with a capital letter to differentiate 'continent' from 'the Mainland.'

---

2. Transformation Drill

Ex: 1. T: Làihjó géi nìhn.	T: Has been here (or came here) for several years.
S: Làihjó géi(dō) nìhn a?	S: How many years, has (he) been (or was he) here?
2. T: Làihjó géigo jih.	T: Has been (or was) here for several 5 minute periods.
S: Làihjó géi(dō) go jih a?	S: How many 5 minute periods has (he) been (or was he) here?

1. Làihjó géi nìhn.	1. Làihjó géi(dō) nìhn a?
2. Làihjó géi yaht.	2. Làihjó géi(dō) yaht a?
3. Làihjó géi go jih.	3. Làihjó géi(dō) go jih a?
4. Làihjó géi go láihbaai.	4. Làihjó géi(dō) go láihbaai a?
* 5. Làihjó géi go jūngtàuh. Has been here several hours.	5. Làihjó géi(dō) go jūngtàuh a?
6. Làihjó géi go yuht.	6. Làihjó géi(dō) go yuht a?
7. Làihjó géi fānjūng.	7. Làihjó géi(dō) fānjūng a?

Comment: láihjó, 'arrived here,' is used in a time spent phrase with the meaning 'been (or was) here X length of time.'

Note that the question 'how many M?' can be either géi M? or géidō M?, and if the form used is géi M?, the question sentences above differ from the statement sentences only by the final sentence suffix a. Note the intonation differences of the spoken forms.

---

3. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Láihjó sàam go yuht. /duhk/	T: Has been here (or came here) for three months. /study/
S: Duhkjó sàam go yuht.	S: Has studied (or studied) for three months.
* 1. Dángjó móuhgéinoih jē. /heui/ (not very long)	1. Heuijó móuhgéinoih jē. Has been gone for not very long. or Has been gone for just a little while.
2. Duhkjó géi nìhn. /jyuh/	2. Jyuhjó géi nìhn.
3. Láihjó yāt go jūngtàuh. /dou/	3. Doujó yāt go jūngtàuh.
4. Máaihjó géigo láihbaai. /heui/ Has been bought for several weeks. [i.e. bought it several weeks ago; have had it for several weeks]	4. Heuijó géigo láihbaai.
5. Láihjó móuhgéinoih jē. /dou/	5. Doujó móuhgéinoih jē.
6. Duhkjó hóudō nìhn la. /máaih/	6. Máaihjó hóudō nìhn la.
7. Doujó sàam go yuht la. /láih/	7. Láihjó sàam go yuht la.
8. Láihjó géi yaht jē. /heui/	8. Heuijó géi yaht jē.

---

4. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Duhkjó sàam go yuht. Studied 3 months.	1. Duhkjó sàam go yuht.
2. /móuhgéinoih/	2. Duhkjó móuhgéinoih.
3. /dáng/	3. Dángjó móuhgéinoih.
4. /géi go jih/	4. Dángjó géi go jih.

5. /heui/	5. Heuijó géi go jih.
6. /léuhng go jūngtàuh/	6. Heuijó léuhng go jūngtàuh.
7. /làih/	7. Làihjó léuhng go jūngtàuh.
8. /sei nìhn/	8. Làihjó sei nìhn.

5. Transformation Drill: Transform from statement to question following the pattern of the example.

Ex: T: Ngóh dángjó kéuih léuhng go jih jē.	T: I've waited for him for ten minutes, that's all.
S: Néih dángjó kéuih géi(dō) go jih a?	S: How many 5 minute periods have you waited for him?

1. Ngóh sīnsàang heuijó Daaihluhk sàam go yuht la.	1. Néih sīnsàang heuijó Daaihluhk géi(dō) go yuht a?
2. Ngóh taaitáai fàanjólàih bun go jūngtàuh jē. My wife has been back home for half an hour, that's all. or My wife came home just half an hour ago.	2. Néih taaitáai fàanjólàih géi(dō) go jūngtàuh a?
3. Wòhng Sàang duhkjó sahp géi nìhn Yīngmàhn la.	3. Wòhng Sàang duhkjó géi(dō) nìhn Yīngmàhn a?
4. Kéuih jyuhjó Tòihwāan léuhng nìhn jē.	4. Kéuih jyuhjó Tòihwāan géi(dō) nìhn a?
5. Gó go Tòihwāan yàhn làihjó nīdouh sei go láihbaai la.	5. Gó go Tòihwāan yàhn làihjó nīdouh géi(dō) go láihbaai a?
6. Hòh Síujé go sàn dáfógēi máaihjó géi yaht jē.	6. Hòh Síujé go sàn dáfógēi máaihjó géi(dō) yaht a?
7. Kéuih sīnsàang gàan ūk máaihjó léuhng nìhn la. Her husband's house was bought 2 years ago. [(has been) bought 2 years]	7. Kéuih sīnsàang gàan ūk máaihjó géi(dō) nìhn a?
8. Chàhn Táai fàanjó ūkkéi yāt go jūngtàuh jē. Mrs. Chan went home an hour ago.	8. Chàhn Táai fàanjó ūkkéi géi(dō) go jūngtàuh a?

6. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh hái nīdouh jyuhjó sahp nìhn.	T: I have lived here 10 years.
S: Ngóh dásyun hái nīdouh jyuh sahp nìhn.	S: I plan to live here 10 years.

1. Ngóh hái Hèunggóng duhkjó sàam go yuht.	1. Ngóh dásyun hái Hèunggóng duhk sàam go yuht.
2. Kéuih hái gódouh jouhjó géi go yuht.	2. Kéuih dásyun hái gódouh jouh géi go yuht.
3. Ngóh sīnsàang hái nīdouh jyuhjó géi nìhn.	3. Ngóh sīnsàang dásyun hái nīdouh jyuh géi nìhn.
4. Ngóh taaitáai hái Méihgwok jyuhjó hóu noih. My wife has lived (or lived) in America for a long time.	4. Ngóh taaitáai dásyun hái Méihgwok jyuh hóu noih. My wife intends to live in America for a long time.
5. Ngóhdeih hái nīdouh dángjó yātgogwāt.	5. Ngóhdeih dásyun hái nīdouh dáng yātgogwāt.

7. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Néihdeih dásyun jyuh géi noih a?	T: How long do you intend to stay?
S: Néihdeih dásyun juhng jyuh géi noih a?	S: How much longer do you intend to stay?

1. Néih kyutdihng dáng géi noih tìm a?	1. Néih kyutdihng juhng dáng géi noih tìm a?
2. Néih hèimohng duhk géi noih tìm a?	2. Néih hèimohng juhng duhk géi noih tìm a?
+ 3. Ngóh jidò chéng chāt baat go yàhn jē. I'm going to invite only 7 or 8 people at most.	3. Ngóh jidò juhng chéng chāt baat go yàhn jē. I'm only going to invite 7 or 8 more people at most.
4. Néih jisíu yiu géi chìn a?	4. Néih jisíu juhng yiu géi chìn a?
5. Ngóh jidò dáng néih géi fānjūng jē.	5. Ngóh jidò juhng dáng néih géi fānjūng jē.

8. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh chéng sihk faahn.	T: I'm going to have a dinner party.
S: Yùhgwó ngóh yáuh chín, ngóh jauh chéng sihk faahn.	S: If I have (or had) the money, I'm going to have (or would have) a dinner party.
1. Ngóh duhk daaihhohk.	1. Yùhgwó ngóh yáuh chín, ngóh jauh duhk daaihhohk.
2. Ngóh heui Méihgwok jyuh.	2. Yùhgwó ngóh yáuh chín, ngóh jauh heui Méihgwok jyuh.
3. Ngóh máaih chē.	3. Yùhgwó ngóh yáuh chín, ngóh jauh máaih chē.
+ 4. Ngóh gitfàn. [to get married] I'm going to get married.	4. Yùhgwó ngóh yáuh chín, ngóh jauh gitfàn.
5. Ngóh daai dī sailóugō heui Tòihwāan.	5. Yùhgwó ngóh yáuh chín, ngóh jauh daai dī sailóugō heui Tòihwāan.
6. Ngóh m̀hsái tùhng kéuih jyuh.	6. Yùhgwó ngóh yáuh chín, ngóh jauh m̀hsái tùhng kéuih jyuh.
7. Ngóh taaitáai m̀hsái jouh yéh.	7. Yùhgwó ngóh yáuh chín, ngóh taaitáai jauh m̀hsái jouh yéh.

---

9. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih yíhchìhn hái Hèunggóng jyuh.	T: He lived in Hong Kong before.
S: Kéuih yíhchìhn hái Hèunggóng jyuh, yìhgā hái bīndouh jyuh a?	S: He lived in Hong Kong before, where does he live now?
1. Kéuih yíhchìhn hái Tòihbāk duhksyù.	1. Kéuih yíhchìhn hái Tòihbāk duhksyù, yìhgā hái bīndouh duhk a?
2. Kéuih yíhchìhn hái Wìhng Ōn Gūngsī jouh sih.	2. Kéuih yíhchìhn hái Wìhng Ōn Gūngsī jouh sih, yìhgā hái bīndouh jouh a?
3. Kéuih yíhchìhn hái Màhnwàh Jáudim jyuh.	3. Kéuih yíhchìhn hái Màhnwàh Jáudim jyuh, yìhgā hái bīndouh jyuh a?

4. Jèung Táai yìhchìhn hái Daaihluhk gaau Gwokyúh.	4. Jèung Táai yìhchìhn hái Daaihluhk gaau Gwokyúh, yìhgā hái bīndouh gaau a?
5. Kéuih yìhchìhn tùhng kéuih pàhngyáuh jyuh.	5. Kéuih yìhchìhn tùhng kéuih pàhngyáuh jyuh, yìhgā tùhng bīngo jyuh a?

---

10. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: M̀hgòi néih dá dihnwá béi ngóh.	T: Please phone me.
S: Néih jáu jīchìhn, m̀hgòi néih dá dihnwá béi ngóh.	S: Before you leave, please phone me.
1. M̀hgòi néih wah ngóh jī.	1. Néih jáu jīchìhn, m̀hgòi néih wah ngóh jī.
2. M̀hgòi néih giu Hòh Síujé yahplàih.	2. Néih jáu jīchìhn, m̀hgòi néih giu Hòh Síujé yahplàih.
+ 3. M̀hgòi néih béifàan bún syù ngóh. (give back, return (something))	3. Néih jáu jīchìhn, m̀hgòi néih béifàan bún syù ngóh.
4. M̀hgòi néih dá dihnwá béi kéuih.	4. Néih jáu jīchìhn, m̀hgòi néih dá dihnwá béi kéuih.
5. M̀hgòi néih séuhng heui wah béi ngóh màhmā jī.	5. Néih jáu jīchìhn, m̀hgòi néih séuhng heui wah béi ngóh màhmā jī.

---

11. Response Drill: Transform each sentence to choice type question, following the pattern of the example.

Ex: T: Ngóh duhk daaihhohk gójahn, hái chānchīk ūkkéi jyuh.	T: When I was at the university, I lived at my relative house.
S: Néih duhk daaihhohk gójahn, hái m̀hhái chānchīk ūkkéi jyuh a?	S: When you were at the university, did you live at your relative's house?
1. Ngóh gitfān gójahn, ngóh màhmā hái Tòihwāan. When I got married, my mother was in Taiwan. or	1. Néih gitfān gójahn, néih màhmā hái m̀hhái Tòihwāan a? When you got married, was your mother in Taiwan?

When I get married, my mother will be in Taiwan.	
+ 2. Ngóh bùn ūk gójahn, m̀hsái máaih yéh. When I move, I don't need to buy anything. (bùn ngūk = [move-house], move)	2. Néih bùn ūk gójahn, sái m̀hsái máaih yéh a?
3. Ngóh hái Tòihbāk gójahn, hái Tòihwāan Daaihhohk duhk syù.	3. Néih hái Tòihbāk gójahn, haih m̀hhaih hái Tòihwāan Daaihhohk duhk syù a?
4. Ngóh heui máaih yéh gójahn, góng Gwokyúh.	4. Néih heui máaih yéh gójahn, haih m̀hhaih góng Gwokyúh a?
5. Ngóh gitfàn gójahn, hái Màhnwàh Jáudim chéng yám. When I got married, I had the wedding reception at the Mandarin Hotel.	5. Néih gitfàn gójahn, haih m̀hhaih hái Màhnwàh Jáudim chéng yám a? When you got married, didn't you have the wedding reception at the Mandarin Hotel?
6. Ngóh gitfàn gójahn, séung hái Màhnwàh Jáudim chéng yám.	6. Néih gitfàn gójahn, séung m̀hséung hái Màhnwàh Jáudim chéng yám a?

---

12. Expansion Drill

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih dásyun máaih ga chē.	T: He's planning to buy a car.
S: Kéuih làihjó Hèunggóng jīhauh, dásyun máaih ga chē.	S: After he gets to Hong Kong, he plans to buy a car.
T: Kéuih máaihjó ga chē.	T: He bought a car.
S: Kéuih làihjó Hèunggóng jīhauh, máaihjó ga chē.	S: After he got to Hong Kong, he bought a car.

1. Kéuih dásyun bùnheui Gáulùhng jyuh. He plans to move to Kowloon to live.	1. Kéuih làihjó Hèunggóng jīhauh, dásyun bùnheui Gáulùhng jyuh. After he gets to Hong Kong, he plans to move to Kowloon to live.
2. Kéuih jouhjó hóudò sāam.	2. Kéuih làihjó Hèunggóng jīhauh, jouhjó hóudò sāam.

3. Kéuih sīkjó móuh géidò go Jùnggwok pàhngyáuh jē.	3. Kéuih làihjó Hèunggóng jīhauh, sīkjó móuh géidò go Jùnggwok pàhngyáuh jē.
4. Kéuih dásyun wán ngūk máaih.	4. Kéuih làihjó Hèunggóng jīhauh, dásyun wán ngūk máaih.
5. Kéuih dásyun wán sih jouh.	5. Kéuih làihjó Hèunggóng jīhauh, dásyun wán sih jouh.

---

13. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh go néui sé Jùngmàhn. /yāt go jūngtàuh/	T: My daughter writes Chinese. /one hour/
S: Ngóh go néui séjó yāt go jūngtàuh Jùngmàhn.	S: My daughter wrote (or has written) Chinese for an hour.
1. Ngóh taaitáai dá páai. /géi go jūngtàuh/	1. Ngóh taaitáai dájó géi go jūngtàuh páai.
2. Ngóh dá dihnwá. /sei fānjūng/	2. Ngóh dájó sei fānjūng dihnwá.
3. Kéuih duhk syù. /sahp nìhn/	3. Kéuih duhkjó sahp nìhn syù.
4. Kéuih tái dihnsih. /léuhng go jūngtàuh/	4. Kéuih táijó léuhng go jūngtàuh dihnsih.
5. Ngóh gaau Yīngmàhn. /yāt go yuht/	5. Ngóh gaaujó yāt go yuht Yīngmàhn.

---

14. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Néih yuhng saai dī chín. Néih móuhdāk yuhng.	T: You used up all the money. There isn't any to spend.
S: Yùhgwó néih yìhgā yuhngsaai dī chín, + yìhhauh néih jauh móuhdāk yuhng laak. (afterwards)	S: If you use up all the money now, afterwards you won't have any to spend.
1. Néih m̀hhohk. Ngóh m̀hgaau néih laak.	1. Yùhgwó néih yìhgā m̀hhohk, yìhhauh ngóh jauh m̀hgaau néih laak.
2. Néih m̀hduhk syù. Néih móuhdāk duhk laak.	2. Yùhgwó néih yìhgā m̀hduhk syù,

	yìhhauh néih jauh móuhdāk duhk laak.
3. Néih máaih gàan ūk. Néih m̀hsái béi chín jauh yáuh deihfōng jyuh laak.	3. Yùhgwó néih yìhgā máaih gàan ūk, yìhhauh néih m̀hsái béi chín jauh yáuh deihfōng jyuh laak.
4. Néih hohk dōdī Gwóngdùngwá. Néih máaih yéh hóyíh pèhngdī laak.	4. Yùhgwó néih yìhgā hohk dōdī Gwóngdùngwá, yìhhauh néih máaih yéh jauh hóyíh pèhngdī laak.
5. Néih hohk sé Jùngmàhn. Néih hóyíh tái Jùngmàhn syù laak.	5. Yùhgwó néih yìhgā hohk sé Jùngmàhn, yìhhauh néih jauh hóyíh tái Jùngmàhn syù laak.
6. Néih jegam dò chín béi kéuih. Néih m̀hgau chín yuhng laak.	6. Yùhgwó néih yìhgā je gam dò chín béi kéuih, jìhhauh néih jauh m̀hgau chín yuhng laak.

---

15. Expansion Drill

Ex: 1.	T: Kéuih làihjó yāt nìhn. /Hèunggóng/	T: He has been here a year. /Hong Kong/
	S: Kéuih làihjó Hèunggóng yāt nìhn.	S: He has been in Hong Kong a year.
2.	T: Kéuih dásyun heui gódouh. /géidō yaht a?/	T: He plans to go there. /how many days?/
	S: Kéuih dásyun heui gódouh géidō yaht a?	S: How many days does he plan to be away?

1. Kéuih dásyun fāanheui géi go yuht. /Méihgwok/	1. Kéuih dásyun fāanheui Méihgwok géi go yuht. He plans to go back to America for a few months.
2. Kéuih chānchīk kyutdihng làih Hèunggóng. /géi noih a?/	2. Kéuih chānchīk kyutdihng làih Hèunggóng géi noih a?
3. Kéuih dásyun heui jyuh géidō nìhn a? /Tòihwāan/	3. Kéuih dásyun heui Tòihwāan jyuh géidō nìhn a?
4. Kéuih hēimohng fāanlàih nīdouh. /géi go láihbaai/	4. Kéuih hēimohng fāanlàih nīdouh géi go láihbaai.
5. Kéuih làihjó chāt baat nìhn laak. /nīdouh/	5. Kéuih làihjó nīdouh chāt baat nìhn laak.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

1) Jouh mātyéh = How come?
2) Móuh = 'Nothing special' A response making light of topic discussed.
3) sihk ngaanjau = sihk ngaan = eat lunch
   a) ngaanjau = 'noon'
4) tùhnghohk = schoolmate
5) jùnghohk = high school, middle school
6) yātchàih = together
7) gójahnsìh = at that time
8) sahpgéi = more than ten [ten-several]
9) ji = (not until) then, (only) then
10) wáan = play, amuse oneself, enjoy leisure time

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the person next to you:	B. And he replies:
1. How long have you lived here?	1. About two years.
2. How much longer do you plan to stay?	2. Can't say for sure--maybe one year, maybe ten.
3. Where did you live before you came here?	3. Before I came here, I lived in Taiwan.
4. I attended university in England--I lived there for three years.	4. After I graduate, I plan to go to England for further study.
5. At most, how long do you plan to stay?	5. At most five years, at least three.
6. After Mr. Ho comes back, he and Miss Chan are getting married.	6. Really! Before he left, he planned to marry Miss Cheung!
7. That car of yours is very nice--when'd you get it?	7. I bought it after I got to Hong Kong.
8. That's a nice lighter--where did you get (buy) it?	8. I don't remember--I got (bought) it before I came to Hong Kong.

9. (said in Hong Kong:) He told me he moved to Hong Kong last year. Do you know where he lived before?	9. His wife told me they previously lived in Macau.
10. He's been gone for three weeks--do you know when he's coming back?	10. He planned to be away about three weeks--maybe he'll be back tomorrow.
11. I've been married 3 years--How long have you been married?	11. Not very long--only eleven months.
12. How long did you play ball yesterday?	12. We played ball for three hours, and afterwards then came home and studied Cantonese for two hours.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 18

1. bātyihp	VO graduate
2. béifàan	v give back
3. bùn	v move
4. bùn (ng)ūk	VO move (house)
5. daaihhohk	n/PW university
6. daaihluhk	PW/n continent; term used to refer to Mainland China
7. -dóu	suf. suf. to nu.m. expression = approximately Nu.M.
8. duhk daaihhohk	VO study at a university, attend a university
9. duhk syù	VO to study, to go to school
10. gājē	TA/n elder sister
11. géi nói	Ph how long (time)?
12. gitfàn	VO get married, be married
13. VP góján,	Cj when, at the time of..., combines with preceding verb phrase to express 'at the time of (thus and so),' 'when'
14. gójahn	Cj same as góján (q.v.)
15. Gwóngjàu	PW Canton, city of Canton
16. hèimohng	v hope
17. jidō	Ph at most
18. jisíu	Ph at least

19. ____ jīchìhn	Cj before ____ (combines with preceding VP or nu.m. length of time expression)
20. ____ jīhauh	Cj after ____ (combines with preceding VP or nu.m. length of time expression)
21. -jó	vs verb suf. in time spent phrase of past reference
22. jūngtàuh	n hour
23. kyutdihng	v decide
24. làuhhohk	v study abroad
25. meih VP jīchìhn, ...	Cj before VP ,....
26. móuhgéinoih	Ph not very long (time)
27. Oumún	PW Macau
28. Tòihbāk	PW Taipei
29. Tòihwāan or -wāan	PW Taiwan
30. wán yéh jouh	VP look for a job, search for work to do
31. yíhchìhn	MA previously, formerly, before
32. yíhhauh	MA afterwards
33. yùhgwó	Cj if, on condition that

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Walking from the bus stop on his way to work in
the morning, a foreigner who is a new resident
in Hong Kong meets a friend, a native resident:)

sàn làih ge yàhn	newcomer, new arrival
Sàn làih ge yàhn	
A, Léih Sāang, jóusàhn.	Good morning, Mr. Lee.
jóuchāan	breakfast [early-meal]
Sihkjó jóuchāan meih a?	Have you had breakfast yet?
Búndeihyàhn	
Meih a.	Not yet.
jíng	fix; make
M̀hgau sìhgaan hái ngūkkéi jíng.	There wasn't enough time to fix it at home.
Sàn làih ge yàhn	
ngāam	fitting, suitable
yātchàih	together
Ngāam laak--yātchàih lā!	Great! (We can eat) together!
Búndeihyàhn	
Hóu aak.	Fine.

(The two enter a cafe and take a table)

wán ngūk	look for a house
wánjó hóu noih	searched for a long time
Tèngginwah néih wán ngūk, wánjó hóu noih--	I hear you've been looking for a house for quite a while--
wándóu	find [search-succeed]
Wándóu meih a?	Have you found one?
Sàn làih ge yàhn	
Wándóu laak.	Yeah, we did.
sìnji (var.: ji)	finally, (not until) then, (only) then
Seuhng go láihbaai sìnji wándóu jē.	Last week we finally found one.

Búndeihyàhn

Gám, néih dásyun géisìh bùn nē?	When do you plan to move?

Sàn làih ge yàhn

chéng	invite, request
chéngdóu	hire, employ [invite-attain]
chéngdóu gùngyàhn	employ servants
ji	(not until) then (same as sinji)
Dáng ngóhdeih chéngdóu gùngyàhn jìhauh, ji bùn.	We won't move until after we hire servants.

Búndeihyàhn

Néih yáuh móuh máaih yéh a?	Have you bought things (for the house)?

Sàn làih ge yàhn

Yáuh--	Yes--
díp	plates
chēunglím	curtains
chēunglím bou	curtain material
a	suffix to members of series in parallel construction
Seuhng go láihbaai ngóh taaitáai máaihjó dī būi a, díp a, chēunglím bou a--	Last week my wife bought some glasses, and plates, and some curtain material--
gám	that kind of thing, such things
Seuhng go láihbaai ngóh taaitáai máaihjó dī būi a, díp a, chēunglím bou a, gám jē.	Last week my wife bought some glasses, and plates, and some curtain material--that kind of stuff, that's all.
gāsí	furniture
tou gāsí	set of furniture
jòu	to rent
jòu tou gāsí	rent a set of furniture
Kéuih juhng jòu tou gāsí tím bo.	She also rented a set of furniture, too.

Búndeihyàhn

-hóu	verb suffix: bring to satisfactory conclusion
Dī yéh jínghóusaai meih a?	Is everything fixed up by now?

Sàn làih ge yàhn

yíhgíng	already
Yíhgíng jínghóusaai laak.	(Yes, it's) already all fixed up.
Dākhàahn chéng heui chóh lā.	When you have time, please go visit.

Búndeihyàhn

Hóu aak.	Fine!
yātdihng	definitely, certainly
yātdihng yiu máaih chè	certainly want to buy a car
Gám, néih hái Hèunggóng yātdihng yiu máaih chè ga.	Say, in Hong Kong you'll definitely have to buy a car.
Máaihjó meih a?	Have you bought one yet?

Sàn làih ge yàhn

Ngóh meih máaihdou bo.	I haven't gotten around to buying one yet.
Néih ga hái bīndouh máaih ga?	Where was yours bought?
Ngóh waahkjé heui gódouh táihah.	Maybe I'll go there and have a look.

B. **Recapitulation**:

(Walking from the bus stop on his way to work in the morning, a foreigner who is a new resident in Hong Kong meets a friend, a native resident:)

Sàn làih ge yàhn

A, Léih Sàang, jóusàhn.	Good morning, Mr. Lee.
Sihkjó jóuchāan meih a?	Have you had breakfast yet?

Búndeihyàhn

Meih a.	Not yet.
M̀hgau sìhgaan hái ūkkéi jíng.	There wasn't enough time to fix it at home.

Sàn làih ge yàhn	
Ngāam laak--yātchàih lā!	Great! (We can eat) together!
Búndeihyàhn	
Hóu aak.	Fine.
Tèngginwah néih wán ngūk, wánjó hóu noih--	I hear you've been looking for a house for quite a while--
Wándóu meih a?	Have you found one?
Sàn làih ge yàhn	
Wándóu laak.	Yeah, we did.
Seuhng go láihbaai sìnji wándóu jē.	Last week we finally found one.
Búndeihyàhn	
Gám, néih dásyun géisìh bùn nē?	When do you plan to move?
Sàn làih ge yàhn	
Dáng ngóhdeih chéngdóu gùngyàhn jìhauh, ji bùn.	We won't move until after we hire servants.
Búndeihyàhn	
Néih yáuh móuh máaih yéh a?	Have you bought things (for the house)?
Sàn làih ge yàhn	
Yáuh--	Yes--
Seuhng go láihbaai ngóh taai-táai máaihjó dī būi a, díp a, chēunglím bou a, gám jē.	Last week my wife bought some glasses, and plates, and some curtain material--that kind of stuff, that's all.
Kéuih juhng jōu tou gāsì tìm bo.	She also rented a set of furniture, too.
Búndeihyàhn	
Dī yéh jìnghóusaai meih a?	Is everything fixed up by now?
Sàn làih ge yàhn	
Yìhgìng jìnghóusaai laak.	Yes, (it's) already all fixed up.
Dākhàahn chéng heui chóh lā.	When you have time, please go visit.

Búndeihyàhn	
Hóu aak.	Fine!
Gám, néih hái Hèunggóng yātdihng yiu máaih chè ga.	Say, in Hong Kong you'll definitely want to buy a car.
Máaihjó meih a?	Have you bought one yet?
Sàn làih ge yàhn	
Ngóh meih máaihdou bo.	I haven't gotten around to buying one yet.
Néih ga hái bīndouh máaih ga?	Where was yours bought?
Ngóh waahkjé heui gódouh táihah.	Maybe I'll go there and have a look.

II. NOTES

1. Verb **forms for** talking about what happened in the past: affirmative, negative, and question forms.

a. Affirmative forms for talking about the past: V, V-jó, V-gwo, V-hóu, V-ge, and others.

The way the verb is inflected (whether it is plain or how it is suffixed) depends in part on what aspect of the activity the speaker wishes to focus on.

1) Focus on general activity: V(O)

Ex: 1. Ngóh kàhmyaht gwo hói hàahng gūngsī.	I went across the harbour yesterday to windowshop.
2. Tèngginwah néih wán ngūk.	I hear you've been house-hunting.

2) Focus on a particular experience: V-gwo

Ex: Ngóh táigwo yīsāng, daahnhaih kéuih wah móuh meyéh.	I went to the doctor, but he said it wasn't anything.

3) Focus on the success of a particular performance: V-hóu

Ex: Dī chēunglím jínghóusaai laak.	The curtains are all fixed.

4) Focus on accomplishment of a particular performance: V-jó

Ex: 1. Kéuih máaihjó ga sān chè.	He bought a new car.
2. Kéuih kàhmyaht heuijó Méihgwok.	He took off for America yesterday.
3. Kéuih nīpáai chéngjó gùngyàhn.	He recently hired a servant.

5) Focus on attainment of a particular objective (though it was hard, you did it): V-dóu

Ex: Ngóh kàhmyaht sìnji chéngdóu gùngyàhn laak.	I finally hired a servant yesterday.

6) Focus on the time or place the action happened: TW+V+ge; PW+V+ge

Ex: 1. Kéuih kàhmyaht heui ge.	He went yesterday.
2. Nīdī yéh hái bīndouh máaih ga?	Where was this bought?

Basically the verb forms are set by the grammar of the language, and the speaker has only limited flexibility within grammatical confines. For example, time spent doing something in the past is expressed as Vjó + time-span phrase, or V-gwo + time-span phrase. The -jó or -gwo is required in such cases by the grammar. If the speaker uses the V+ time-span pattern, he must use either -jó or -gwo, whichever is appropriate.

Ex: Ngóh $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{duhkjó}\\ \text{duhkgwo}\end{array}\right\}$ léuhng nìhn daaihhohk.	I studied at college for two years.

Money transactions accomplished are also expressed in VO form, with a -jó or -gwo suffix to the V, and a nu.-M money expression as O.

Ex: Nī ga chè yiu maaih maahn ńgh mān, sāumēi maaihjó maahn yih mān.	This car (we) wanted to sell for $15,000, but finally closed the deal (sell-accomplish) for $12,000.

(See Drill 12)

b. Negative forms for talking about the past: móuh V and meih V.

1) móuh V

Móuh Verb (ex. móuh máaih, móuh sihk, móuh heui) concerns a certain time in the past and asserts that the action expressed by the verb phrase did not take place at that time.

Ex: Ngóh gàmyaht móuh sihk jóuchāan.	I didn't eat breakfast today. (said in the afternoon)

2) meih V

Meih Verb (ex. meih máaih, maih sihk, meih heui) concerns an action which the speaker expects/expected to happen, but which hasn't/hadn't happened at the moment of speaking/moment spoken about, but which is/was still planned.

Ex: 1. Ngóh meih sihk jóuchāan.	I haven't eaten breakfast. (implies that you're planning to)
2. Ngóh góján meih bātyihp.	At that time I hadn't graduated. (implies that you later did graduate)

c. Choice-question forms for talking about the past: yáuh móuh V?, and

$\left.\begin{array}{l}\text{V-jó}\\ \text{V-gwo}\\ \text{V-hóu}\\ \text{Etc.}\end{array}\right\}$ meih?

1) yáuh móuh V?

This form concerns time prior to the time of speaking, and inquires whether an action expressed by the verb phrase took place. The speaker has no preconception of whether the action did or did not occur.

Ex:	1. Néih yáuh móuh máaih sàn chē a?	Have you bought a new car? (I don't know that you plan to.)
	2. Kéuih yáuh móuh daaihhohk bātyihp ga?	Did he graduate from college? (Is he a college graduate?-- I don't have any knowledge of his educational attainments)
	3. Néih yáuh móuh tái yīsāng a?	Have you seen a doctor?

2) V-jó/gwo/hóu, etc, meih?

In using the meih form the speaker indicates that he knows the action of the verb has happened or will happen at some time. The question is not whether the action occurred, but whether it has/had occurred at the time he is talking/talking about.

Ex:	1. Néih máaihjó ga sàn chē meih?	Have you bought (or did you buy) a/the new car yet? (I know you plan to.)
	2. Kéuih gójahnsìh bātjó yihp meih a?	Had he graduated at that time?
	3. Néih táigwo yīsāng meih a?	Have you seen a doctor (yet)?

2. meih 'not (yet)' in sentences of future reference.

meih occasionally occurs in negative and question sentences referring to future events. The sentence patterns in such cases are:

Neg: future-TW meih V = will not have V-ed by future TW time

Q: future-TW V meih? = will have V-ed or not by future TW time?

Example sentences:

Neg:	Tìngyaht meih fàanlàih.	He won't have come back by tomorrow. [Tomorrow not yet return.]
Q:	Tìngyaht fàanlàih meih a?	Will he have come back by tomorrow? (You expected him back yesterday and have just been told that he is still not back.)

These are not garden variety futures-- (the garden variety futures being mhV and V mhV?). The negative expresses that something which you would normally expect to happen by a certain time will not have happened by then. The question indicates that you expected something to have happened by the time indicated by the timeword, but you now have reason to doubt that it will have happened by then.

(See Drill 5)

3. sìnji (variant: ji) 'finally;' '(only) then;' '(not until) then'

(sìn)ji implies 'later than one would expect or desire.' It functions as an adverb in a single clause sentence, and as a conjunction in a double clause sentence.

Ex:		
	1. Kéuih tìngyaht (sìn)ji jáu.	Tomorrow he finally leaves. Not until tomorrow does he leave.
	2. Dáng ngóhdeih chéngdóu gùngyahn jìhauh, (sìn)ji bùn.	We'll wait till after we get servants hired, only then will we move.

(See BC and Drills 4,5,6)

4. a = suffix to members of series in parallel construction

Example:

1. Ngóh máaihjó dī būi a, díp a, chēunglím a.	I bought some cups, and plates, and curtains.
2. Ngóh kàhmyaht sihkháh yéh a, táiháh syù a, fanháh gaau a.	Yesterday I ate, and read, and slept.

(See BC)

5. $$\underline{S}\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{hái bīndouh}\\ \text{tùhng bīngo}\\ \text{géisí}\end{matrix}\right\}\text{V ge/ga} = \text{S is/was}\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{where}\\ \text{with whom}\\ \text{when}\end{matrix}\right\}\text{V-ed.}$$

a. The central point of a sentence is sometimes not the 'who does what' of it, but the 'where, when, from or with whom' of it. For example, compare the following two English sentences:

1. I bought plates at Wing On, not at Sincere.
2. I bought plates at Wing On, not glasses.

When the point of the sentence is where, when, from whom, with whom something is done, the Cantonese preference is to split the basic VO phrase and reconstruct the sentence, putting the O of the VO into subject position, making the when/where part central and the verb last, followed by the sentence suffix ge/ga 'that's the way it is.'

Example:

1. Néih ga chē (haih) hái bīndouh máaih ga?	Where was your car bought?
2. Néih ga chē (haih) géisí máaih ga?	When was your car bought?
3. Neih ga chē (haih) tùhng bīngo máaih ga?	From whom was your car bought?
4. Néih ga chē tùhng bīngo máaih ga?	For (on behalf of) whom was your car bought?

(See BC and Drill 16)

b. For convenience in referring to this pattern we will call it the hái bīndouh V ge pattern, though as you see hái bīndouh is not the only phrase that fills the position.

c. It usually turns out that this pattern translates into English in a past tense form, because ordinarily what is talked about using this pattern are things that have already happened. The form is, however, not a past reference form, and can be used for non-past situations.

Ex: Nī júng bējáu hái Weihòhng maaih ga.	This kind of beer is sold at Wellcome Company.
(Compare with:)	
Nī dī bējáu hái Weihòhng máaih ga.	This beer was bought at Wellcome Company.

(See Drill 14)

d. When one wishes to highlight the 'what' part, rather than the 'where/when/from whom' part, the sentence is phrased in standard SVO form instead of the hái bīndouh V ge form.

Ex: Ngóh hái Wíhng Ōn Gūngsī máaihjó dī bui.	I bought some glasses at Wing On Company.
(Compare with:)	
Nī dī būi hái Wíhng Ōn Gūngsī máaih ge.	These glasses were bought at Wing On Company.

6. -hóu = V.suf. indicating that the action expressed by the performance verb preceding is brought to a satisfactory conclusion.

Ex: jíng = to work on, to make, to fix

jínghóu = to fix up, to fix so that it's OK

góng = speak

gónghóu = to talk it over and come to an agreement

gwa = to hang

gwahóu = to hang up

III. DRILLS

1. Expansion Drill

+ 1. a. ngūkjòu, ngūkjōu	1. a. house rent
b. géi(dō) chín ngūkjōu a?	b. how much rent?
c. béi géi(dō) chín ngūkjōu a?	c. how much rent (do you) pay? [give]
d. yiu béi géi(dō) chín ūkjōu a?	d. have to pay how much rent?
e. yāt go yuht yiu béi géi(dō) chín ūkjōu a?	e. have to pay how much rent per month?
f. Néih yāt go yuht yiu béi géi(dō) chín ūkjōu a?	f. How much rent do you pay a month?
+ 2. a. yàhngùng, yàhngūng	2. a. wages (of servants, day laborers)
b. géidō chín yàhngūng a?	b. how much wages?
c. béi géidō chín yàhngūng a?	c. how much wages (do you) pay?
d. yiu béi géidō chín yàhngūng a?	d. How much wages do you have to pay?
e. yāt go yuht yiu béi géidō chín yàhngūng a?	e. How much wages (do you) have to pay per month?
f. Néih yāt go yuht yiu béi géidō chín yàhngūng a?	f. How much wages do you have to pay per month?
g. Néih yāt go yuht yiu béi géidō chín yàhngūng néih gùngyàhn a?	g. How much wages do you have to pay your servant per month? or What do you pay your servant per month?
+ 3. a. sànséui	3. a. salary (of white collar workers)
+ b. maahn lèhng mān sànséui gamseuhnghá (maahn = ten thousand)	b. approximately ten thousand and some dollars salary
c. yáuh maahn lèhng mān sānséui gámseuhnghá	c. gets approximately $10,000 and some salary
d. yāt nìhn yáuh maahn lèhng mān sànséui gamseuhnghá	d. gets approximately $10,000 and some salary a year
e. Kéuih yāt nìhn yáuh maahn lèhng mān sànséui gamseuhnghá.	e. He gets a salary of approximately $10,000 and some per year.

4. a. jòu ge, jōu ge	4. a. rented one, rented
b. haih jòu ge	b. is a rented one
c. gàan ngūk haih jòu ge	c. The house is rented, is a rented one
d. Gó gàan ngūk haih jòu ge	d. That house is a rented one
e. Gó gàan ngūk haih m̀hhaih jōu ga?	e. Is that house a rented one?
f. Néih jyuh gó gàan ngūk haih m̀hhaih jōu ga?	f. Is the house you are living in a rented one?
g. Néih chānchīk jyuh gó gàan ngūk haih m̀hhaih jōu ga?	g. Is the house your relative lives in a rented one?
+ 5. a. jyú	5. a. cook
+ b. jyú faahn	b. cook rice, i.e., cook (Chinese style) food
c. sīk jyú faahn	c. knows how to cook (Chinese) food
d. sīk m̀hsīk jyú faahn a?	d. know how to cook Chinese food?
e. go gùngyàhn sīk m̀hsīk jyú faahn a?	e. Does the servant know how to cook (Chinese) food?
f. Gó go gūngyàhn sīk m̀hsīk jyú faahn a?	f. Does that servant know how to cook (Chinese) food?
g. Néih gó go gūngyàhn sīk m̀hsīk jyú faahn a?	g. Does your servant know how to cook (Chinese) food?
6. a. jīng	6. a. fix
+ b. jīng chāan	b. make, cook (Western) meals
c. m̀hsīk jīng chāan	c. can't cook Western style food
d. m̀hsīk jīng jóuchāan	d. doesn't know how to cook breakfast

2. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih bātjó yihp meih a? /gauhnín/	T: Has she graduated yet? /last year/
S: Bātjó laak. Gauhnín bāt ge.	S: Yes, she has -- (she) graduated last year.
2. T: Kéuih bātjó yihp meih a? /chēutnín/	T: Has she graduated yet? /next year/
S: Meih. Chēutnín sìnji bātyihp.	S: Not yet. She graduates [not until] next year.

1. Kéuih fàanjó làih meih a? /seuhnggo láihbaai/	1. Fàanjó laak. Seuhnggo láihbaai fàan ge.
2. Néih sīnsàang fàanjó heui Méihgwok meih a? /hahgo yuht/	2. Meih. Hahgo yuht sìnji fàan heui.
3. Néih go néui bātjó yihp meih a? /chēut nín sàam yuht/	3. Meih. Chēut nín sàam yuht sìnji bātyihp.
4. Néih go jái bātjó yihp meih a? /gauh nín luhk yuht/	4. Bātjó laak. Gauh nín luhk yuht bāt ge.
5. Chàhn Síujé dájó dihnwá béi néih meih a? /kàhmyaht/	5. Dájó laak. Kàhmyaht dá ge.
+ 6. Néih táijó boují meih a? /dángján/ Have you read the newspaper yet? /in a (short) while/	6. Meih. Dángján sìnji tái. Not yet. I'm going to read it in a little while.
7. Yìhgā chāt dím laak. Wòhng + Sàang sihkjó máahnfaahn meih a? /baat dím/ (evening meal)	7. Meih. Baat dím sìnji sihk. Not yet -- He's going to eat at 8.
8. Yìhgā baat dím laak. Hōh + Táai héijó sàn meih a? /chāt dím/ (héi sàn = get up (from sleeping)	8. Héijó laak. Chāt dím héi ge.

3. Expansion Drill

Ex: 1.	T: Kéuih seuhnggo láihbaai móuh heui. /hahgo láihbaai/	T: He didn't go last week. /next week/
	S: Kéuih seuhnggo láihbaai móuh heui, hahgo láihbaai sīnji heui.	S: He didn't go last week, (he) will go [not until] next week.
2.	T: Kéuih nīgo yuht meih heui. /hahgo yuht/	T: He hasn't gone this month. /next month/
	S: Kéuih nīgo yuht meih heui, hahgo yuht sīnji heui.	S: He hasn't gone this month, (he) will go [not until] next month.
3.	T: Kéuih seuhnggo yuht móuh sìhgaan heui. /hahgo yuht/	T: He didn't have time to go last month. /next month/
	S: Kéuih seuhnggo yuht móuh sìhgaan heui, hahgo yuht sīnji heui.	S: He didn't have time to go last month, (he'll) go [not until] next month.

1. Ngóh taaitáai yāt houh meih heui. /sàam houh/	1. Ngóh taaitáai yāt houh meih heui, sàam houh sīnji heui.
2. Ngóh go jái gàmnín meih bātyihp. /chēutnín/	2. Ngóh go jái gàmnín meih bātyihp, chēutnín sīnji bātyihp.
3. Ngóh sīnsàang kàhmyaht móuh fàangùng. /gàmyaht/	3. Ngóh sīnsàang kàhmyaht móuh fàangùng, gàmyaht sīnji fàan.
4. Ngóh dī sailóugō seuhng go láihbaai móuh heui yàuhséui. /nīgo láihbaai/	4. Ngóh dī sailóugō seuhng go láihbaai móuh heui yàuhséui, nīgo láihbaai sīnji heui.
5. Wòhng Sàang nīgo yuht móuh sìhgaan bùn ūk. /hahgo yuht/	5. Wòhng Sàang nīgo yuht móuh sìhgaan bùn ūk, hahgo yuht sīnji bùn.
6. Hòh Táai nīgo láihbaaiyaht móuh sìhgaan jouh sāam. /hahgo láihbaaiyaht/	6. Hòh Táai nīgo láihbaaiyaht móuh sìhgaan jouh sāam, hahgo láihbaaiyaht sīnji jouh.

4. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih héijó sàn meih a? /shake; gáu dīmjūng/	T: Has he gotten up yet? /shake; 9 o'clock/
S: Meih. Kéuih dásyun gáu dīmjūng ji héisàn.	S: Not yet. He plans to get up at 9 o'clock. [only then]
2. T: Kéuih fàanjógùng meih a? nod; baat dīmjūng/	T: Has he gone to work yet? /nod; 8 o'clock/
S: Fàanjó laak. Kéuih baat dīmjūng jauh fàanjó laak.	S: Yes, he has. He went back at 8. [that soon]

1. Kéuih sihkjó ngaanjau meih a? /nod/ yāt dīmjūng/	1. Sihkjó la. Kéuih yāt dīmjūng jauh sihkjó laak.
2. Néih sīnsàang fàanjólàih meih a? /shake/ luhk dīm géi/	2. Meih. Kéuih dásyun luhk dīm géi ji fàan.
3. Néih go jái heuijó dá bō meih a? /nod/ gáu dīmjūng/	3. Heuijó la. Kéuih gáu dīmjūng jauh heuijó laak.
4. Néih taaitáai heuijó yám chàh meih a? /shake/ gáu dīm bun/	4. Meih. Kéuih dásyun gáu dīm bun ji heui.
5. Wòhng Sàang héijó sàn meih a? /nod/ baat dīm/	5. Héijó la. Kéuih baat dīm jauh héijó laak.
6. Léih Táai sihkjó máahnfaahn meih a? /nod/ baat dīm yātgogwāt/	6. Sihkjó la. Kéuih baat dīm yātgogwāt jauh sihkjó laak.

Comment: The action expressed in a clause introduced by (sīn)ji is felt to be later than one might expect.

---

5. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih tīngyaht fàan m̀hfàanlàih a?	T: Will he be back tomorrow?
S: Kéuih tīngyaht fàanlàih meih a?	S: Will he be back by tomorrow?

1. Kéuih tīngyaht jáu m̀hjáu a?	1. Kéuih tīngyaht jáu meih a?
2. Kéuih sīnsàang tīngyaht fàan m̀hfàangùng a?	2. Kéuih sīnsàang tīngyaht fàangùng meih a?
3. Néih tīngyaht heui m̀hheui ló chín a?	3. Néih tīngyaht heui ló chín meih a?

4. Néih taaitáai tìngyaht heui m̀hheui tái yīsāng a?	4. Néih taaitáai tìngyaht heui tái yīsāng meih a?
5. Kéuih gáu dím héi m̀hhéisàn a?	5. Kéuih gáu dím héisàn meih a?
6. Kéuih dī jáinéui tìngyaht fàan m̀hfàanlàih a?	6. Kéuih dī jáinéui tìngyaht fàanlàih meih a?

---

6. Response Drill

Ex: 1.	T: Kéuih tìngyaht fàanlàih meih a? /nod/	T: Will he be back by tomorrow? /nod/
	S: Fàan laak.	S: Yes, he will have returned by then.
2.	T: Kéuih tìngyaht fàanlàih meih a? /shake/ hahgo láihbaai/	T: Will he be back by tomorrow? /shake/ next week/
	S: Meih a, hahgo láihbaai sìnji fàan.	S: It'll be next week before he gets back. or No, he's not coming back until next week.

1. Kéuih tìngyaht heui meih a? /nod/	1. Heui laak.
2. Kéuih taaitáai tìngyaht jáu meih a? /nod/	2. Jáu laak.
3. Kéuih sīnsàang tìngyaht làih meih a? /shake/ hahgo láihbaai/	3. Meih a, hahgo láihbaai sìnji làih.
4. Néih tìngyaht fàangùng meih a? /shake/ hahgo láihbaaiyāt/	4. Meih a, hahgo láihbaaiyāt sìnji fàan.
5. Néih go jái tìngyaht heui tái yīsāng meih a? /nod/	5. Heui laak.
6. Kéuihdeih tìngyaht bùn ūk meih a? /shake/ hahgo yuht/	6. Meih a, hahgo yuht sìnji bùn.
7. Hòh Táai tìngyaht máaih díp meih a? /nod/	7. Máaih laak.

7. Alteration Drill: Transform the sentences from géisìh Verb to Verb-jó meih.

Ex: Kéuih géisìh làih a?	T: When is he coming?
S: Kéuih làihjó meih a?	S: Has he come yet?
1. Kéuih géisìh chēutgāai a?	1. Kéuih chēutjó gāai meih a?
2. Néih sīnsàang géisìh heui Méihgwok a?	2. Néih sīnsàang heuijó Méihgwok meih a?
3. Wòhng Táai géisìh bùn ūk a?	3. Wòhng Táai bùnjó ūk meih a?
4. Néih géidímjūng sihk ngaanjau a?	4. Néih sihkjó ngaanjau meih a?
5. Néih géidímjūng sihk faahn a?	5. Néih sihkjó faahn meih a?
6. Néih taaitáai géisìh fàanlàih a?	6. Néih taaitáai fàanjólàih meih a?
7. Kéuih géisí máaih sān chè a?	7. Kéuih máaihjó sān chè meih a?
8. Kéuih géisí jáu a?	8. Kéuih jáujó meih a?
9. Kéuih géisí heui Yahtbún.a?	9. Kéuih heuijó Yahtbún meih a?
10. Kéuih géisí heui dá bō a?	10. Kéuih heuijó dá bō meih a?
11. Kéuih géisí fāangùng a?	11. Kéuih fàanjó gùng meih a?
12. Kéuih géisí héisàn a?	12. Kéuih héijó sàn meih a?
13. Kéuih géisí gitfan a?	13. Kéuih gitjó fan meih a?

8. Response Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih bùnjó ūk meih a? /tīngyaht/	T: Has he moved house yet? /tomorrow/
S: Meih. Waahkjé tīngyaht lā.	S: Not yet -- maybe tomorrow.

1. Kéuih sihkjó faahn meih a? /yāt dīmjūng/	1. Meih. Waahkjé yāt dīmjūng lā.
2. Kéuih héijó sàn meih a? /gáu dīm bun/	2. Meih. Waahkjé gáu dīm bun lā.
3. Néih sīnsàang fàanjó Méihgwok meih a? / **hahgo** yuht/	3. Meih. Waahkjé **hahgo** yuht lā.
4. Néih taaitáai wándóu gùngyàhn meih a? /**hahgo** láihbaai/	4. Meih. Waahkjé **hahgo** láihbaai lā.
5. Wòhng Táai làihjó Hèunggóng meih a? /**hahgo** yuht yāt houh/	5. Meih. Waahkjé **hahgo** yuht yāt houh lā.
6. Néih go jái máaihjó chē meih a? /**nīgo** láihbaai/	6. Meih. Waahkjé nīgo láihbaai lā.

---

9. Transformation Drill: Transform the sentences from séung Verb to Verb-jó.

Ex: T: Tèngginwah kéuih séung máaih ga sàn chē.	T: I hear he plans to buy a new car.
S: Tèngginwah kéuih máaihjó ga sán chē laak.	S: I hear he bought a new car.

1. Tèngginwah kéuih séung bùn ngūk.	1. Tèngginwah kéuih bùnjó ngūk laak.
2. Tèngginwah néih sīnsàang séung fàan Méihgwok.	2. Tèngginwah néih sīnsàang fàanjó Méihgwok laak.
3. Tèngginwah néih taaitáai séung máaih tou sàn gāsī.	3. Tèngginwah néih taaitáai máaihjó tou sàn gāsī laak.
4. Tèngginwah Léih Sàang séung heui Méihgwok.	4. Tèngginwah Léih Sàang heuijó Méihgwok laak.
5. Tèngginwah Jèung Táai séung máaih gàan ūk.	5. Tèngginwah Jèung Táai máaihjó gàan ūk laak.
6. Tèngginwah néih go jái séung máaih ga chē.	6. Tèngginwah néih go jái máaihjó ga chē laak.

7. Tèngginwah Chàhn Síujé séung wán ngūk.	7. Tèngginwah Chàhn Síujé wándóu ngūk laak. I hear Miss Chan found a house.
8. Tèngginwah Hòh Táai séung chéng gūngyàhn. /chéngdóu/	8. Tèngginwah Hòh Táai chéngdóu gūngyàhn laak. I hear Mrs. Ho engaged a servant.

---

10. Expansion Drill: Expand the sentences with the given time expressions.

Ex: T: Hòh Sàang yíhgīng dájó dihnwá béi ngóh laak. /kàhmyaht/	T: Mr. Ho already called me. /yesterday/
S: Hòh Sàang kàhmyaht yíhgīng dájó dihnwá béi ngóh laak.	S: Mr. Ho already called me yesterday.
1. Kéuih yíhgīng héijó sàn laak. /chāt dím bun/ He's already gotten up. /7:30/	1. Kéuih chāt dím bun yíhgīng héijó sàn laak. He's already gotten up by half past seven.
2. Ngóh sīnsàang yíhgīng máaihjó ga sàn chē laak. /seuhnggo yuht/	2. Ngóh sīnsàang seuhnggo yuht yíhgīng máaihjó ga sàn chē laak.
3. Chàhn Táai yíhgīng chéngdóu gūngyàhn laak. /seuhnggo láihbaaisàam/	3. Chàhn Táai seuhnggo láihbaaisàam yíhgīng chéngdóu gūngyàhn laak.
4. Wòhng Síujé yíhgīng bùnjó ūk laak. /seuhnggo yuht sei houh/	4. Wòhng Síujé seuhnggo yuht sei houh yíhgīng bùnjó ūk laak.
5. Ngóh taaitáai yíhgīng heuijó yám chàh laak. /gáu dím bun/	5. Ngóh taaitáai gáu dím bun yíhgīng heuijó yám chàh laak.
6. Ngóh go jái yíhgīng heuijó dá bō laak. /baat dímjūng/	6. Ngóh go jái baat dímjūng yíhgīng heuijó dá bō laak.

11. Response Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih heuijó meih a? /seuhnggo yuht/	T: Has he gone yet? /last month/
S: Heuijó laak. Kéuih seuhnggo yuht heui ge.	S: Yes - He went last month.
1. Kéuih làihjó meih a? / seuhnggo láihbaai/	1. Làihjó laak. Kéuih seuhnggo láihbaai làih ge.
2. Néih sīnsàang fàanjó Méihgwok meih a? /nīgo yuht/	2. Fàanjó laak. Kéuih nīgo yuht fàan ge.
3. Wòhng Sàang máaihjó chē meih a? /seuhnggo láihbaaisàam/	3. Máaihjó laak. Kéuih seuhnggo láihbaaisàam máaih ge.
4. Néih taaitáai chéngjó gūngyahn meih a? /kàhmyaht/	4. Chéngjó laak. Kéuih kàhmyaht chéng ge.
5. Chàhn Sīujé sihkjó ngaanjau meih a? /dím bun jūng/	5. Sihkjó laak. Kéuih dím bun jūng sihk ge.

---

12. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: /chē/maahn yih mān/	T: /car/12 thousand dollars/
S: Nī ga chē máaihjó maahn yih mān.	S: This car was bought for $12,000. or This car (I) bought (it) for $12,000.
1. /ūk/$56,000/	1. Nī gàan ūk máaihjó ńgh maahn luhk mān.
2. /faaijí/$8/	2. Nī deui faaijí máaihjó baat mān.
3. /gāng/$6.50/	3. Nī jek gāng máaihjó luhk go bun.
4. /dáfógēi/$46.50/	4. Nī go dáfógēi máaihjó seisahp luhk go bun.
5. /chē/$35,000/	5. Nī ga chē máaihjó sàam maahn ńgh mān.
+ 6. /jèung tói/$16.00/ (table)	6. Nī jèung tói máaihjó sahpluhk mān.
7. /gāsi/$10,000/	7. Nī tou gāsī máaihjó yāt maahn mān.

---

13. Alteration Drill

+ Ex: 1. T: Yāt mān Méihgām hóyíh wuhn luhk + mān góngjí gamseuhnghá. (American money) (Hong Kong money)	T: One dollar U.S. can be exchanged for about six dollars Hong Kong.
S: Yāt mān Méihgām jīkhaih luhk mān góngjí gamseuhnghá.	S: One dollars U.S. -- well, that's about six dollars Hong Kong
2. T: Léuhng mān Méihgām hóyíh wuhn géi chín góngjí a?	T: How much in Hong Kong money can you get for two dollars U. S.?
S: Léuhng mān Méihgām jīkhaih géi chín góngjí a?	S: Two dollars U.S. is how much in Hong Kong money?

+ 1. Yāt Yīngbohng hóyíh wuhn sahpluhk mān Góngjí. (English pound (sterling))	1. Yāt Yīngbohng jīkhaih sahpluhk mān Góngjí.
2. Sahpyih mān Góngjí hóyíh wuhn géi chín Méihgām a?	2. Sahpyih mān Góngjí jīkhaih géi chín Méihgām a?
3. Ńgh Yīngbohng hóyíh wuhn géi chín Góngjí a?	3. Ńgh Yīngbohng jīkhaih géi chín Góngjí a?
4. Yāt Yīngbohng hóyíh wuhn géi chín Méihgām a?	4. Yāt Yīngbohng jīkhaih géi chín Méihgām a?
5. Yāt Yīngbohng hóyíh wuhn léuhng go géi ngàhnchín Méihgām gamseuhnghá.	5. Yāt Yīngbohng jīkhaih léuhng go géi ngàhnchín Méihgām gamseuhnghá.
6. Ńgh mān Méihgām hóyíh wuhn sàamsahp mān góngjí gamseuhnghá.	6. Ńgh mān Méihgām jīkhaih sàamsahp mān góngjí gamseuhnghá.
7. Yāt maahn mān góngjí hóyíh wuhn géi chín Yīngbohng a?	7. Yāt maahn mān góngjí jīkhaih géi chín Yīngbohng a?
8. Sahp maahn mān Méihgām hóyíh wuhn luhksahp maahn góngjí.	8. Sahp maahn mān Méihgām jīkhaih luhksahp maahn góngjí.
9. Yāt maahn Yīngbohng hóyíh wuhn sahpluhk maahn góngjí.	9. Yāt maahn Yīngbohng jīkhaih sahpluhk maahn góngjí.
10. Yāt baak maahn góngjí hóyíh wuhn géi chín Yīngbohng a?	10. Yāt baak maahn góngjí jīkhaih géi chín Yīngbohng a?

Comment: Note that Yìngbohng 'English pound (sterling)' (also pronounced Yìngbóng) has the grammatical status of a Measure, whereas Méihgām, 'American money', and Góngjí, 'Hong Kong money' have the status of Nouns:

Number	- Measure	- Noun	
sàam	Yìngbohng		= 3
sàam	mān	Méihgām	= $\text{US\$}3^{\underline{00}}$
sàam	mān	Góngjí	= $\text{HK\$}3^{\underline{00}}$

---

14. Response Drill

Ex: T: Nī go dáfógēi hái bīndouh máaih ga? /Yahtbún/	T: Where did you buy this lighter? /Japan/
S: Nī go dáfógēi hái Yahtbún máaih ge.	S: I bought this lighter in Japan.
1. Nī go dáfógēi géisí máaih ga? /seuhnggo laihbaaiyāt/	1. Nī go dáfógēi seuhnggo laihbaaiyāt máaih ge.
2. Nī jì bāt tùhng bīngo je ga? /Léih Táai/	2. Nī jì bāt tùhng Léih Táai je ge.
3. Nī gihn sēutsāam sung béi bīngo ga? /ngóh bàhbā/	3. Nī gihn sēutsāam sung béi ngóh bàhbā ge.
4. Nī júng hàaih hái bīn gàan gūngsī máaih ga? /Wíhng Ōn Gūngsī/	4. Nī júng hàaih hái Wíhng Ōn Gūngsī máaih ge.
5. Nī júng hàaih haih bīn gwok jouh ga? /Yìnggwok/	5. Nī júng hàaih haih Yìnggwok jouh ge.
6. Nī dī béng bīngo jíng ga? /ngóh taaitáai/	6. Nī dī béng ngóh taaibáai jíng ge.
7. Nī ga chē hái bīndouh máaih ga? /Hèunggóng/	7. Nī ga chē hái Hèunggóng máaih ge.

Comment: The sentences above are not necessarily past in reference. For example #5 might be: This kind of shoe is made in what country? and #3: This shirt is one you're giving to whom?

---

15. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih wán ūk. /hóu noih/	T: He is looking for (or looked for) a house. /very long (time)/
S: Kéuih wán ūk, wánjó hóu noih.	S: He's been looking (or looked) for a house for a long time.
1. Kéuih wán gùngyàhn. /hóu noih/	1. Kéuih wán gùngyàhn, wánjó hóu noih.
2. Kéuih sihk aan. /móuhgéinoih/	2. Kéuih sihk aan, sihkjó móuhgéinoih. He didn't take long to eat lunch.
3. Kéuih bùn ūk. /géi go jūngtàuh/	3. Kéuih bùn ūk, bùnjó géi go jūngtàuh. He took several hours to move.
4. Kéuih fàan Gwóngjàu. /sei go yuht/	4. Kéuih fàan Gwóngjàu, fàanjó sei go yuht.
5. Kéuih duhk Yìngmàhn. /baat nìhn/	5. Kéuih duhk Yìngmàhn, duhkjó baat nìhn.
6. Kéuih heui Tòihwāan. /sàam go yuht/	6. Kéuih heui Tòihwāan, heuijó sàam go yuht.
7. Kéuih jouh sāam. /yāt go láihbaai/	7. Kéuih jouh sāam, jouhjó yāt go láihbaai.
+ 8. Kéuih jíng chē. /léuhng yaht/ He repairs cars.	8. Kéuih jíng chē, jíngjó léuhng yaht.
9. Kéuih jyú faahn. /bun go jūngtàuh/	9. Kéuih jyú faahn, jyújó bun go jūngtàuh.
+ 10. Kéuih sé jih. /yihsahp fānjūng/ (write [write-words])	10. Kéuih sé jih, séjó yihsahp fānjūng.

---

16. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Néih ga chē tùhng bīngo jōu ga? Your car is/was rented from whom? i.e. Who'd you rent your car from?	1. Néih ga chē tùhng bīngo jōu ga?
2. /tou gāsì/	2. Néih tou gāsì tùhng bīngo jōu ga?

3. /hái bīndouh/	3. Néih tou gāsì hái bīndouh jōu ga?
4. /máaih/	4. Néih tou gāsì hái bīndouh máaih ga?
+ 5. /tou būi-dīp/ (tea set; i.e., a set of cups and saucers)	5. Néih tou būidīp hái bīndouh máaih ga? Where did you buy your tea set?
+ 6. /tou wún-dihp/ (a set of dishes--bowls and plates)	6. Néih tou wún-dihp hái bīndouh máaih ga? Where did you buy your set of china?
7. /jèung tói/	7. Néih jèung tói hái bīndouh máaih ga?
8. /jīng/	8. Néih jèung tói hái bīndouh jīng ga?
+ 9. /jèung yí/	9. Néih jèung yí hái bīndouh jīng ga? Where was your chair made?

---

17. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

1. A Sei, ngóh fu ngáhngéng wán m̀hdóu gé. A Sei! I can't find my glasses!	1. A Sei, ngóh fu ngáhngéng wán m̀hdóu gé.
2. /jek dīp/	2. A Sei, ngóh jek dīp wán m̀hdóu gé!
3. /tìuh dáifu/	3. A Sei, ngóh tìuh dáifu wán m̀hdóu gé!
4. /go ngáhngéngdói/	4. A Sei, ngóh go ngáhngéngdói wán m̀hdóu gé!
5. /tìuh kwàhn/	5. A Sei, ngóh tìuh kwàhn wán m̀hdóu gé!
6. /go sáudói/	6. A Sei, ngóh go sáudói wán m̀hdóu gé!
7. /jek gāng/	7. A Sei, ngóh jek gāng wán m̀hdóu gé!

Comment: The rising intonation of final gé connotes impatience.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

1) m̀hheuidāk = can't go
    a) -dāk = 'can', 'able to', verb suffix
2) yāt go ngàhnchín = one dollar ($1.00) (See L-21, Ex. 8)
3) sihk ngaanjau = eat lunch
4) séuhng bāan = start work
5) daaihkoi = probably
6) beisyù = secretary
7) hóu chíh = it seems
8) Hóu wah = Equivalent to 'You're welcome', 'Not at all', Response to being thanked for a service.
9) ā ma? = 'isn't that right?' (being pretty sure it is)
10) gùngfo = lessons, homework
11) góndākchit = can make it in time; there will be time to do it
12) fèi = ticket
13) -yùhn = finish
    a) sihkyùhn = finish eating
    b) duhkyùhn = finish studying
14) gónm̀hchit = can't make it in time
15) ngāamngāam = just
16) lauhdài = leave behind
17) hónàhng = probably
18) fóng = room
19) ā ma = sen. suf. for obviousness (see also 16-CL-1)
20) Lóuh Wóng = 'Old Wong' term of address used as form of address to a man by good friends. (See 17-CL-3)
21) Hòi faahn = 'Dinner is ready'
22) Haih gám sín la = 'That's all for now'
23) mēyéh dōu móuh = doesn't have anything
24) chàbātdō = chàm̀hdō
25) Maahn hàahng = 'Walk slowly' -- a polite goodby form, said to person leaving by person remaining.

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:	B. And he replies:
1. Has your younger sister graduated yet?	1. Not yet--she doesn't graduate until next year.
2. (on the phone:) Has Mr. Wong gone to work yet?	2. Not yet, he doesn't go until 8:30.
3. Have you moved yet?	3. Yes, we moved last week.
4. How much rent do you pay a month?	4. We pay HK$2,000.
5. How much is a US dollar in Hong Kong money?	5. A US dollar is about HK$6.00.
6. How much is an English pound?	6. I'm not sure (not clear)--maybe it's around HK$14.40.
7. Has Mr. Ma come yet?	7. Not yet--when he arrives, I'll tell him to go see (look for) you.
8. Have you hired a servant yet?	8. Yes, we hired one last week.
9. (on the phone:) Is Mr. Chan at home?	9. No, he already went out--at 8:00 o'clock--to have tea.
10. Where did you buy that table?	10. It was bought in Japan.
11. Your furniture is very nice--did you buy it in Hong Kong?	11. Yes, it was bought here, at a department store on the Kowloon side.
12. Mrs. Lau didn't eat breakfast until 10:15.	12. What time did she get up?
13. Can your servant cook Chinese food?	13. She can cook both Chinese food and Western food.
14. Did someone come to fix the phone?	14. Yes, it's already been fixed.
15. Have you cooked dinner yet?	15. I haven't started to make it yet.
16. I hear you've recently moved--did you buy any new furniture?	16. Yes, we bought a table and several chairs.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 19

1. a	bf:	suf. to members of series in parallel construction
2. āam	adj:	see ngāam
3. boují	n:	newspaper
4. būi-díp	n:	tea set
5. chéng	v:	invite, request
6. chéngdóu	v:	invite and have the invitation accepted
7. chéng gùngyàhn	VO:	hire servant(s)
8. chēunglím	n:	curtain
9. díp	n:	plate
10. ...gám	pro:	that kind of thing, such things
11. gāsì	n:	furniture
12. góngjí	n:	Hong Kong money
13. héisàn	VO:	get up (from bed)
14. -hóu	vs:	verb suf. = bring to satisfactory conclusion
15. ji	adv:	finally, (not until) then, (only) then
16. jíng	v:	make, fix; repair
17. jíng chāan	VO:	make, cook (Western) meals
18. jíng chē	VO:	repair cars
19. jínghóu	v:	fix satisfactorily
20. V-jó meih a?	VP:	a question form
21. jòu	v:	rent
22. jóuchāan	n:	breakfast
23. jyú	v:	cook
24. jyú faahn	VO:	cook Chinese style food
25. maahn	m:	ten thousand
26. máahnfaahn	n:	supper
27. méihgām	n:	American money
28. ngāam	adj:	fitting, suitable
29. Ngāam laak!	Ph:	That's fine! That's as it should be!
30. ngūkjòu, ngūkjōu	n:	house rent
31. sàn làih ge yàhn	Ph:	newcomer, new arrival
32. sànséui	n:	salary
33. sé jih	VO:	write [write-words]

34. sìnji	adv:	(not until) then, (only) then, finally
35. tói	n:	table
36. tou	m:	set, M. for furniture, dishes...
37. wándóu	v:	find [search-succeed]
38. wún-dihp	n:	a set of china
39. yàhngùng	n:	wages
40. yātchàih	adv:	together
41. yātdihng	adv:	certainly, definitely
42. yí	n:	chair
43. yíhgìng	adv:	already
44. yìngbóng or -bohng	m:	British pounds sterling

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Mr. Ma asks Miss Lee about her boss, Mr. Cheung, and his family:)

Máh Sīnsàang	
gàyàhn	family
Jèung Sàang ge gàyàhn	Mr. Cheung's family
Yáuh yàhn góng ngóh tèng	somebody told me..
Yáuh yàhn góng ngóh tèng Jèung Sàang ge gàyàhn kàhmyaht fàanheui Méihgwok.	Somebody told me Mr. Cheung's family went back to America yesterday.
Léih Síujé	
Haih a.	That's right.
Máh Sīnsàang	
tùhng person yātchàih verb	verb together with person
tùhng Jèung Sàang yātchàih heui	go with Mr. Cheung
dímgáai?	why?
Kéuihdeih dímgáai m̀htùhng Jèung Sàang yātchàih heui nē?	Why didn't they go with Mr. Cheung?
Léih Síujé	
-dāk	able to, can. Verb suffix indicating physical ability
m̀hheuidāk	can't go
Jèung Sàang nī géi yaht dōu m̀hheuidāk a.	Mr. Cheung was unable to go these few days.
Máh Sīnsàang	
Dímgáai m̀hheuidāk a?	Why couldn't he go?
Léih Síujé	
Kéuih nīpáai dōu hóu m̀hdākhàahn.	He's been awfully busy recently.
syùhn	ship
daap	catch, take (a train, plane, etc.)
daap syùhn	take a ship

gónm̀hchit	not have time [hurry-not make it]
gónm̀hchit daap syùhn	not have time to take a ship
Yùhgwó dáng kéuih dākhàahn góján, jauh góhm̀hchit daap syùhn ge laak.	If they waited until he was free, then there wouldn't be time to take a ship.
fēigèi	airplane
daap fēigèi	catch, take a plane
pa	be afraid of
hóu pa daap fēigèi	afraid of taking a plane
yànwaih ...,	because, since
sóyíh ...	so, therefore
yànwaih ..., sóyíh ...	because ...
yànwaih Jèung Táai hóu pa daap fēigèi gé, sóyíh ...	because Mrs. Cheung is afraid of taking the plane ...
yìhché	furthermore
Yìhché yànwaih Jèung Táai yauh hóu pa daap fēigèi gé, sóyíh kéuih tùhng dī sailóugō daap syùhn heui sìn.	Furthermore, because Mrs. Cheung also is afraid of taking planes, she went first with the children by boat.
Jèung Sàang hahgo láihbaaisàam ji daap fēigèi heui.	Mr. Cheung will go by plane next Wednesday.
Máh Sīnsàang	
yùhnlòih	origin, source; reason why
O, yùhnlòih haih gám gé.	Oh, so that's the reason.
yiu (+ time expression)	takes (amount of time)
Daap fēigèi yiu géi nói a?	How long does it take by plane?
Léih Síujé	
Yāt yaht dōdī jē.	Only a little over one day.
sahpgéi	ten-several = a few more than ten
Daap syùhn jauh yiu sahpgéi yaht ge la.	If you take a ship, then it takes more than ten days.

Máh Sīnsàang

múih	every, each
múih go láihbaai	every week, each week
bāan	trip (voyage Measure)
Múih go láihbaai yáuh géidō bāan fēigèi heui Méihgwok a?	How many flights each week are there going to America?

Léih síujé

sàamsei	three or four
Yāt yaht yáuh sàamsei bāan lā.	There are three or four flights a day.

Máh Sīnsàang

hòi	start, leave, take off, (on voyage)
gó bāan géisí hòi a?	what time does the flight leave?
Jèung Sàang daap gó bāan géisí hòi a?	The flight Mr. Cheung is taking--when does it leave?

Léih Síujé

Ngóh m̀hjí ga--yiu mahnháh kéuih ji jí laak.	I don't know--you'll have to ask him to find out. [ask him and only then you'll know.]

B. Recapitulation:

(Mr. Ma asks Miss Lee about her boss, Mr. Cheung, and his family:)

Máh Sīnsàang

Yáuh yàhn góng ngóh tèng Jèung Sàang ge gàyàhn kàhmyaht fàanheui Méihgwok.	Somebody toldme Mr. Cheung's family went back to America yesterday.

Léih Síujé

Haih a.	That's right.

Máh Sīnsàang

Kéuihdeih dímgáai m̀htùhng Jèung Sàang yātchàih heui nē?	Why didn't they go with Mr. Cheung?

Léih Síujé

Jèung Sàang nī géi yaht dōu m̀hheuidāk a.	Mr. Cheung couldn't leave these few days.

Máh Sīnsàang	
Dīmgáai m̀hheuidāk a?	Why couldn't he leave?
Léih Síujé	
Kéuih nīpáai dōu hóu m̀hdākhàahn.	He's been awfully busy recently.
Yùhgwó dáng kéuih dākhàahn góján, jauh gónm̀hchit daap syùhn ge laak.	If they waited until he was free, then there wouldn't be time to take a ship.
Yìhché, yànwaih Jèung Táai yauh hóu pa daap fēigèi gé, sóyíh kéuih tùhng sailóugō daap syùhn heui sìn.	Furthermore, since Mrs. Cheung also is afraid of taking planes, she left first with the children by ship.
Jèung Sàang hahgo láihbaaisàam ji daap fēigèi heui.	Mr. Cheung will go by plane next Wednesday.
Máh Sinsàang	
O, yùhnlòih haih gám ge.	Oh, so that's the reason.
Daap fēigèi yiu géi nói a?	How long does it take by plane?
Léih Síujé	
Yāt yaht dōdī jē.	Only a little over one day.
Daap syùhn jauh yiu sahpgéi yaht ge la.	If you take a ship, then it takes more than ten days.
Máh Sīnsàang	
Múih go láihbaai yáuh géidō bāan fēigèi heui Méihgwok a?	How many flights each week are there going to America?
Léih Síujé	
Yāt yaht yáuh sàamsei bāan lā.	There are three or four flights a day.
Máh Sīnsàang	
Jèung Sàang daap gó bāan géisí hòi a?	The flight Mr. Cheung is taking--when does it leave?
Léih Síujé	
Ngóh m̀hjì ga--Yiu mahnháh kéuih ji jì laak.	I don't know--you'll have to ask him to find out.

II. NOTES

1. -dāk as verb suffix, meaning 'able to,' 'can.'

Verb-dāk forms a unit meaning 'physically able to V,' 'can V.'

Examples, showing question, negative, and affirmative forms:

	Forms	Examples	English equivalents
q	Vm̀hV-dāk?	Ga chē gam gauh--hàahng m̀hhàahngdāk a?	The car is so old--can it run?
n	m̀hV-dāk	Ga chē gam gauh--m̀hhàahngdāk tìm!	The car is so old--it isn't able to run!
a	V-dāk	Ga chē hàahngdāk ga--néih meih hoi sósíh ja!	The car can run--it's simply that you haven't turned on the ignition!

By extension (Vm̀h)V-dāk can be used when the (in)ability is not strictly physical, as in a sentence from the BC of this lesson:

Ex: Jèung Sàang nī géi yaht dōu m̀hheuidāk a.	Mr. Cheung couldn't get away these few days.

(See BC)

2. yànwaih..., sóyíh...= 'because..., so...'; 'since..., therefore...'

Yànwaih, sóyíh form a set of paired conjunctions linking the two clauses of a 'because' sentence. Use of both yànwaih and sóyíh in one sentence is, however, not required.

A common pattern is to use either one or the other but not both. The order of the two clauses is irreversible.

Ex: 1. Yànwaih ngóh hái Gáulùhng jouh sih, ngóh m̀hjùngyi hái Hèunggóng jyuh.	Because I work in Kowloon, I wouldn't like to live in Hong Kong.
2. Ngóh hái Gáulùhng jouh sih, sóyíh ngóh m̀hjùngyi hái Hèunggóng jyuh.	I work in Kowloon, so I wouldn't like to live in Hong Kong. (or: so I don't like to live in Hong Kong.)

(See BC and Drill 7)

3. **Number-Measure expressions: with fractions, partials, and approximate numbers.**

a. In **Nu-M** expressions concerning units greater than 1:

For numbers greater than 1, fractions and other partials fit into a number expression following the grammatical Measure word, preceding the Noun (if any).

Ex:	Nu.	M.	Fraction or Partial	N.	
1.	sàam	go		jūngtàuh	3 hours
	sàam	go	géi	jūngtàuh	3 hours and some
	sàam	go	bun	jūngtàuh	3 1/2 hours
	sàam	go	dō	jūngtàuh	more than 3 hours
2.	léuhng	gàn		ngàuhyuhk	2 catties of beef
	léuhng	gàn	bun	ngàuhyuhk	2 1/2 catties of beef
3.	sahp	nìhn			10 years
	sahp	nìhn	dō		more than 10 years

Note that the fraction part comes after the Measure, and that though most Chinese standard measures (for time, length, weight, etc.) are grammatically Measures, some standard measures are grammatically Nouns.

Thus:	Nu.	M.	1/2	(N)	
	sàam	nìhn	bun		3 1/2 years
	sàam	go	bun	jūngtàuh	3 1/2 hours

You will probably need considerable practice to be able to produce the two types smoothly.

(See BC and Drill 11)

b. In number expressions for units less than 1:

bun, 'half' precedes the Measure word in number expressions concerning units less than 1.

Ex: 1/2 M (N)

bun go jūngtàuh	half an hour
bun go yuht	half a month
bun gàn	half a catty
bun máh	half a yard (of cloth, etc.)
bun yaht	half a day
bun nìhn	half a year

c. Approximate numbers:

sàamsei yaht	3 or 4 days
séingh go yàhn	4 or 5 people

Cantonese uses serial numbers as approximate numbers, as indicated above. Ordinarily the numbers used are adjacent numbers in series with the smaller first. Occasionally the larger number can be first;

for example: sàamléuhng geui, 'two or three sentences' ~~[3-2-sentences]~~. gáusahp is not used as an approximate number for 'nine or ten,' but is used only as the specific number 'ninety.'

(See BC and Drill 14)

d. sahpgéi, [ten-several] 'ten some'

sahpgéi is an approximate number representing 'ten and a few more'--more than ten but less than twenty. All the round numbers--sahp, baak, chīn--use this form in this way:

Ex:		
	1. sahpgéi	ten some, a few more than ten
	2. yihsahpgéi	twenty some
	3. baakgéi	a hundred some
	4. yihbaakgéi	two hundred some
	5. chīngéi	a thousand some

(See BC)

4. múih, 'every,' 'each,' in Time Expressions.

múih 'every,''each,' occupies the position of specifying words (nī, gó) before the number in a numbered Time Expression.

Ex:		
	1. Kéuih múih léuhng go láihbaai heui Sàngaai yāt chi.	1. He goes to the New Territories once very two weeks.
	2. Kéuih nī léuhng go láihbaai heuijó Sàngaai léuhng chi.	2. He has taken off for the New Territories twice these last two weeks.

(See BC and Drills 8, 14)

When the number in the Time Expression is yāt 'one,' either the múih or the yāt can be omitted, or both can be said.

Ex:		
	1. Kéuih múih nìhn heui Sàngaai yāt chi.	He goes to the New Territories once every year.
	2. Kéuih yāt nìhn heui Sàngaai yāt chi.	
	3. Kéuih múih yāt nìhn dōu heui Sàngaai yāt chi.	

5. Duplication of Measure word to express 'each and every'

'Each and every,' 'every and all' may be expressed by saying the Measure word twice: yahtyaht, 'each and every day,' [day-day]; gogo láihbaai, 'each and every week,' [Measure-Measure week]. When the duplicated Measure is used, the phrase occurs in a set with a following dōu, the dōu appearing directly before the verb.

Ex:	1. Kéuih yahtyaht dōu hohk Gwóngdungwa.	He studies Cantonese every day.
	2. Kéuih gogo láihbaai dōu sihk yātléuhng chi Jūngchoi.	He eats Chinese food once or twice every week.

(See Drills 2, 15)

The duplicated Measure is only used for 'every _____ without exception;' for 'every two _____,' etc., you must use múih.

Ex:	1. Kéuih nìhnnìhn dōu heui Méihgwok yāt chi máaih yéh.	Every year he goes to America on a buying trip.
	2. Kéuih múih/léuhng nìhn, dōu heui Méihgwok yāt chi máaih yéh.	He goes to America once every two years on a buying trip.

5. Voyage Measures

In English we may say:

1. There are two planes taking off in an hour.
   There are two flights taking off in an hour.
2. There are two ships on June 15.
   There are two sailings on June 15.

'Flight' and 'sailing' refer not to the vessel but to the voyage.

Cantonese makes the same distinction between vessel and voyage, but differs from English in that the distinction is compulsory. Referring to the vessel, Cantonese uses the individual measure for the vessel; when referring to a voyage, the voyage measure is used.

Ex: 1. Gó ga fēigēi chóhdāk géidō yáhn a?
How many people does that plane seat? [that individual-M plane]

2. Gó bāan fēgēi géidímjūng hòi a?
When does that flight leave? [that voyage-M plane]

Chart of Carriers with individual and voyage Measures:

individual measure	voyage measure	carrier
ga	bāan	fēigēi airplane
ga	lèuhn	chē, bāsí, laahmchē, fochē, dihnchē. car, bus, cablecar, train, tram.
jek	douh	syùhn ship

This division is not always strictly adhered to. hahyāt ga chē, 'the next [individual-M] car' is said interchangeably with hahyāt bāan chē,

'the next [voyage-M] car,' referring to the next car (usually bus) leaving.
(See BC and Drills 1, 8)

6. dímjūng, 'hour' as Time Spent word.

dímjūng in 'time when' position, i.e., before the verb, translates into English as 'o'clock,' a point in time. dímjūng in 'time spent' position, i.e., following the verb, indicates 'hour(s),' a length of time. It occupies the same sentence position that jùngtáuh, 'hour,' does.

Ex: 1.	Kéuih sàam dímjūng heui gódouh.	He's going there at 3 o'clock.
2.	Heui gódouh yiu sàam dímjung.	It takes three hours to get there.
3.	Heui gódouh yiu sàam go jùngtauh.	

(See Drill 6)

7. m̀hVerb as 'refuses to Verb,' 'refused to Verb,' 'unwilling to Verb' and V m̀hV? as 'willing to V?'

Compare:

1.a.	Ngóh m̀hjì bo—kéuih mouh wah ngóh jì.	I'm sorry, I don't know—she didn't tell me.
b.	Ngóh m̀hjì bo—kéuih m̀hwah ngóh jì.	I'm sorry, I don't know—she wouldn't tell me.
2.a.	Kéuih káhmyaht dímgáai móuh tùhng néih heui a?	Why didn't he go with you yesterday? (plainfact question)
b.	Kéuih kàhmyaht dímgáai m̀htùhng néih heui a?	Why didn't he go with you yesterday? (implication that he refused to go—that he could have, but he wouldn't)
3.a.	Kéuih gogo láihbaai dōu m̀htùhng ngóh heui gāai ge.	She won't ever go out with me on Sunday.
b.	Gám, kàhmyaht láihbaai-kéuih tùhng m̀htùhng néih heui a?	Well, yesterday was Sunday—did she (was she willing to) go out with you?
4.a.	Ngóh néuihpàhngyáuh gogo láihbaai dōu tùhng ngóh heui gāai.	My girlfriend always goes out with me on Sunday.
b.	Gám, kàhmyaht láihbaai-kéuih yáuh móuh tùhng néih heui a?	Well, yesterday was Sunday—did she go out with you?

m̀hVerb may be used to express 'not willing to Verb,' in which case the negative remains mh regardless of whether the sentence is one of past reference, non-past reference, or habitual action.

(See BC and Drill 19)

8. yiu as 'cause or make (someone do something),' 'be caused or made (to do something)'

Ex: 1. Néih dímgáai yiu hàahng louh heui nē?	[you why made walk-road go eh?] What makes you be walking? or What made you walk? (Speaker indicates he expected addressee not to be walking and assumes something special made him walk.) (Cf. English: 'What did you want to do that for?' when someone hits you unprovoked.)
2. Yiu néih dáng ngóh gam noih, m̀hhóu yisi.	Making you wait for me so long--I'm very sorry.

yiu which basically means 'require,' 'be required' has an extended meaning 'cause' or 'be caused.'

(See Drill 1,4)

9. SVO yáuh TS (time-spent) Expression.

Ex: Kéuih duhk Yìngmàhn yáuh sei nìhn.	His English study amounts to four years. He studied English four years.

In this type sentence the Subject is composed of an SVO phrase. There is a pause, then the Predicate, composed of yáuh TS Expression, follows.

We regard this type sentence as being derived from a V(jó) time-spent structure:

Ex: 1. Kéuih séung duhk sei nìhn Yìngmàhn.	He plans to study English for four years.
2. Kéuih duhkjó sei nìhn **Yìngmàhn.**	He studied English for four years.

In the SVO yáuh TS Expression, the time-spent expression has been separated from its verb. Its verb (duhk in the example above) becomes part of the Subject, and the TS expression (sei nìhn above) becomes Object in the Predicate. yáuh in this type sentence is an equating verb, affirming that Subject 'amounts to' Object. (You will learn in later lessons that there are other sentence types in which yáuh is used as an equating verb.)

In this type sentence the verb of the SVO subject does not require (but can have) the verb suffix -jó, even when the action concerns one which began in the past. Talking of action which began in the past one may say:

1. Kéuih duhk Yìngmàhn yáuh sei nìhn.	His English study--it amounted to four years.
2. Kéuih duhkjó Yìngmàhn yáuh sei nìhn ge la.	He's studied English--it's been four years now. or He studied English--it was four years.

(See Drill 15)

10. Noun Modification: **Sp-M-N compound modified by VP**

A verbal modifier in Cantonese **directly precedes a Sp+M+N phrase:**

V Sp+M N

Ex: Kéuih daap gó bāan fēigēi sei dím hòi.	The plane he is taking leaves at 4 o'clock. (or took/left)
Kéuih máaih gó dī syù dōu hóu gwai ga.	The books he bought were all very expensive.

(See BC and Drill 16)

(The above contrasts with the situation of verbal modification in Mandarin, in which a verbal modifier is followed by the subordinating particle de ( ) before a Sp M N phrase.

V de Sp+M N

Ex: 1. Tā dzǒu de néi ban fēijī sz̀ dyǎn jūng chīfēi.	The plane he is taking leaves at 4 o'clock.
2. Tā mǎi de nèi sye shū dōu hěn gwèi.	The books he bought were all very expensive.)

11. Noun modification: Verbal modifier preceding a numbered phrase.

When a verbal modifier precedes a numbered phrase, there are two possibilities: 1) the V modifier is followed by the subordinating particle ge; or 2) it is followed by Sp+the general plural M dī.

Ex: Kéuih máaih {ge / gó dī} sàam bún syù dōu hóu gwai.	The three books he bought were all very expensive.

III. DRILLS

1. Expansion Drill

+ 1. a. laahmchē.	1. a. cable car
b. yāt bāan laahmchē.	b. one [trip] cable car
+ c. Hahyāt bāan laahmchē. (the next)	c. The next cable car
d. Hahyāt bāan laahmchē daahp géi hòi a?	d. When does the next car leave?
e. Hahyāt bāan laahmchē daahp sàam hòi.	e. The next car leaves at quarter after.

Comment: Tape has lèuhn where text has bāan. bāan can always be substituted for lèuhn as a journey measure.

+ 2. a. bāsí.	2. a. bus
b. yáuh bāsí.	b. there are buses
c. yáuh bāan bāsí.	c. there's a [trip] bus
d. yáuh géidō bāan bāsí a?	d. how many buses are there?
e. Yāt go jūngtàuh yáuh géidō bāan bāsí a?	e. How many buses there are in one hour?
f. Yāt go jūngtàuh yauh sei bāan bāsí.	f. There are 4 buses an hour.
3. a. chē	3. a. bus [car]
b. bāan chē	b. a [trip] bus
c. yáuh bāan chē	c. there's a [trip] bus
d. múih léuhnggo jih yáuh bāan chē.	d. There's a bus every 10 minutes.
e. múih sàamgo jih yáuh bāan chē.	e. There's a bus every 15 minutes.
f. múih seigo jih yáuh bāan chē.	f. There's a bus every 20 minutes.
+ 4. a. hàahng louh.	4. a. walk [walk-road]
b. hàahng louh heui.	b. go on foot
c. yiu hàahng louh heui.	c. have to go on foot
d. dímgáai yiu hàahng louh?	d. Why do you have to walk? or What causes you to be walking?
e. Néih dímgáai yiu hàahng louh heui nē?	e. How come you are walking?

Comment: The d and e sentences could be: 'Why do you (or did you) want to walk?' or Why is it you are (or were) walking? In the latter case yiu has a new meaning:

+ yiu = 'cause, make (someone do something)': "What causes you to be walking?" The implication being that the speaker expects the addressee not to be walking.

+	5. a. fóchē	5. a. train
+	b. chóh fóchē.	b. take the train, go by train
	c. chóh fóchē heui.	c. go by train
+	d. chóh fóchē heui Sàngaai.	d. go by train to the New Territories
	e. Chóh fóchē heui Sàngaai yiu géi noih a?	e. How long does it take to get to the New Territories by train?
	6. a. géi houh bāsí	6. a. what number bus
	b. daahp géi houh bāsí	b. catch what number bus
	c. yiu daahp géi houh bāsí	c. have to get what number bus
+	d. Heui fēigēichèuhng yiu daahp géi houh bāsí a?	d. What number bus do you catch to get to the airport?
+	e. Heui Sāandéng yiu daahp géi houh bāsí a?	e. What number bus do you catch to get to the Peak?
	f. Heui Sàngaai yiu daahp géi houh bāsí a?	f. What number bus do you catch to get to the New Territories?
+	7. a. léuihhàhng	7. a. trip, excursion
	b. heui léuihhàhng	b. go on a trip, excursion
	c. heui Tòihwāan léuihhàhng	c. go to Taiwan on a trip
	d. gauh nín heui Tòihwāan léuihhàhng	d. took a trip to Taiwan last year
	e. Gauh nín heui Tòihwāan léuihhàhng, heuijó léuhng go láihbaai.	e. took a trip last year to Taiwan for two weeks.

2. Transformation Drill: Transform from múih time expression to equivalent expression using duplicated Measure.

+ 1. Kéuih múih yaht heui yāt chi.	1. Kéuih yahtyaht dōu heui yāt chi. (every day)
+ 2. Kéuih múih go láihbaai heui yāt chi.	2. Kéuih gogo láihbaai dōu heui yat chi. (every week)
+ 3. Kéuih múih go yuht heui yāt chi.	3. Kéuih gogo yuht dōu keui yāt chi. (every month)
+ 4. Kéuih múih nìhn heui yāt chi.	4. Kéuih nìhnnìhn dōu heui yāt chi. (every year)

Comment: Note that in the above sentences the duplicated Measure expressions (nìhnnìhn, etc) are followed by dōu before the Verb: nìhnnìhn dōu fàanheui, etc. In the muih sentences dou can be included, to indicate that the frequency stated is thought to be high.

---

3. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Néih haih m̀hhaih chóh fóchē làih ga? /bāsí/	T: Did you come by train? /bus/
S: M̀hhaih. Ngóh chóh bāsí làih ge.	S: No, I came by bus.
2. T: Néih haih m̀hhaih chóh bāsí làih ga? /bāsí/	T: Did you come by bus? /bus/
S: Haih. Ngóh chóh bāsí làih ge.	S: Yes, I came by bus.

1. Néih haih m̀hhaih daap syùhn làih ga? /fēigēi/	1. M̀hhaih. Ngóh daap fēigēi làih ge.
2. Néih haih m̀hhaih chóh fēigēi làih ga? /fēigēi/	2. Haih. Ngóh chóh fēigei làih ge.
3. Néih haih m̀hhaih chóh fóchē làih ga? /bāsí/	3. M̀hhaih. Ngóh chóh bāsí làih ge.
+ 4. Néih haih m̀hhaih chóh bāsí làih ga? /dīksí/ (taxi)	4. M̀hhaih. Ngóh chóh dīksí làih ge.
5. Néih haih m̀hhaih chóh dīksí làih ga? /hàahng louh/	5. M̀hhaih. Ngóh hàahng louh làih ge.
6. Néih haih m̀hhaih hàahng louh làih ga? /chòh fóchē/	6. M̀hhaih. Ngóh chòh fóchē làih ge.
7. Néih haih m̀hhaih daap fóchē làih ga? /fóchē/	7. Haih. Ngóh daap fóchē làih ge.

8. Néih haih m̀hhaih daap fóchē làih ga? /bāsí/	8. M̀hhaih. Ngóh daap bāsí làih ge.
9. Néih haih m̀hhaih daap bāsí làih ga? /laahmchē/	9. M̀hhaih. Ngóh daap laahmchē làih ge.
10. Néih haih m̀hhaih daap laahmchē làih ga? /laahmchē/	10. Haih. Ngóh daap laahmchē làih ge.

---

4. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Néih dím heui ga? /bāsí/	T: How did you get there?
S: Ngóh daap bāsí heui ge.	S: I went by bus.
2. T: Néih dím heui a? /hàahng louh/	T: How are you going to get there?
S: Ngóh hàahng louh heui.	S: I'm going to walk.

1. Néih dím heui a? /laahmchē/	1. Ngóh daap laahmchē heui.
2. Néih dím làih ga? /fóchē/	2. Ngóh daap fóchē làih ge.
3. Kéuih dím heui ga? /fēigēi/	3. Kéuih daap fēigēi heui ge.
4. Néih dím heui a? /syùhn/	4. Ngóh daap syùhn heui.
5. Néih dím làih ga? /hàahng louh/	5. Ngóh hàahng louh làih ge.
6. Néih dím làih ga? /bāsí/	6. Ngóh daap bāsí làih ge.
7. Néih dím heui a? /dīksí/	7. Ngóh daap dīksí heui.
8. Néih dím lohk heui ga? /laahmchē/	8. Ngóh daap laahmchē lohk heui ge.
9. Néih dím heui a? /jà chē/	9. Ngóh jà chē heui.

---

5. Substitution Drill

1. Hahyāt bāan chē daahp géi hòi a? When will the next bus leave?	1. Hahyāt bāan chē daahp géi hòi a?
2. /bāan fēigēi/géisìh/	2. Hahyāt bāan fēigēi géisìh hòi a?
3. /bāan laahmchē/daahp géi/	3. Hahyāt bāan laahmchē daahp géi hòi a?

4. /bāan fóchē/géisíh/	4. Hahyāt bāan fóchē géisíh hòi a?
5. /bāan syùhn/daahpgéi/	5. Hahyāt bāan syùhn daahp géi hòi a?

---

6. Transformation Drill: Change the sentences from yiu to m̀hsái.

Ex: T: Hàahng louh heui Jùngwàahn Gàaisíh yiu sàam go jih.	T: It takes [requires] 15 minutes to walk to Central Market.
S: Hàahng louh heui Jùngwàahn Gàaisíh m̀hsái sàam go jih.	S: It takes less than [doesn't require] 15 minutes to walk to Central Market.

+ 1. Daap bāsí heui yiu yāt dím-jūng. (one hour)	1. Daap bāsí heui m̀hsái yāt dímjūng.
2. Chóh syùhn heui yiu seińgh yaht.	2. Chóh syùhn heui m̀hsái seińgh yaht.
3. Chóh fēigèi heui Yahtbún yiu chātbaat dímjūng.	3. Chóh fēigèi heui Yahtbún m̀hsái chātbaat dímjūng.
4. Daap laahmchē séuhng heui yiu ńghluhk go jih.	4. Daap laahmchē séuhng heui m̀hsái ńghluhk go jih.
5. Chóh dīksí heui tòuhsyùgwún yiu léuhngsāam go jih.	5. Chóh dīksí heui tòuhsyùgwún m̀hsái léuhngsàam go jih.
6. Hàahng louh heui yiu léuhng dím géi jūng.	6. Hàahng louh heui m̀hsái léuhng dím géi jūng.

---

7. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Gó dī ngàuhyuhk m̀hhóusihk. Ngóh m̀hsihk.	T: That beef doesn't taste good. I'm not going to eat it.
S: Yànwaih gó dī ngàuhyuhk m̀hhóusihk, sóyíh ngóh m̀hsihk.	S: I'm not going to eat that beef, because it doesn't taste good.

1. Gó dī jyùyuhk m̀hhóusihk. Ngóh móuh sihk.	1. Yànwaih gó dī jyùyuhk m̀hhóusihk, sóyíh ngóh móuh sihk.
2. Kàhmyaht láihbaai. Ngóhdeih m̀hsái fàangùng.	2. Yànwaih kàhmyaht láihbaai, sóyíh m̀hsái fàangùng.
3. Gó deui hàaih m̀hhóutái. Ngóh m̀hjeuk.	3. Yànwaih gó deui hàaih m̀hhóutái, sóyíh ngóh m̀hjeuk.

4. Nī gihn yúhlāu daaihdī. ngóh m̀hséung máaih.	4. Yànwaih nī gihn yúhlāu daaihdī, sóyíh ngóh m̀hséung máaih.
5. Gàmyaht m̀hsái fàangùng. Ngóh heui chàhlàuh yám chàh.	5. Yànwaih gàmyaht m̀hsái fàangùng, sóyíh ngóh heui chàhlàuh yám chàh.

---

8. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Múih yaht yáuh géi (dō) bāan fēigēi a? /3/	T: How many flights are there each day?
S: Múih yaht yáuh sàam bāan.	S: There are three flights every day.
1. Múih yaht duhk géi(dō) go jūngtàuh syù a? /4/	1. Múih yaht duhk séi go jūngtàuh.
2. Múih yaht yáuh géi(dō) lèuhn fóchē a? /9/	2. Múih yaht yáuh gáu lèuhn.
3. Múih go láihbaai hohk géi dímjūng Gwóngdùngwá a? /2/	3. Múih go láihbaai hohk lèuhng dímjūng.
4. Múih yaht hohk géi(dō) go jūngtàuh Yìngmàhn a? /1/	4. Múih yaht hohk yāt go jūngtàuh.
5. Múih go jūngtàuh yáuh géi(dō) bāan syùhn a? /9/	5. Múih go jūngtàuh yáuh gáu bāan.
6. Múih yaht yáuh géi(dō) bāan fēigēi a? /3/	6. Múih yaht yáuh sàam bāan.

---

9. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Chóh bāsí yiu géi noih a? /Jùngwàahn/	T: How long does it take to go by bus? /Central District/
S: Chóh bāsí heui Jùngwàahn yiu géi noih a?	S: How long will it take to go to Central District by bus?
1. Hàahng louh yiu géi noih a? /Hèunggóng Daaihhohk tòuhsyùgwún/	1. Hàahng louh heui Hèunggóng Daaihhohk tòuhsyùgwún yiu géi noih a?
2. Daap fēigēi yiu géi noih a? /Yahtbún/	2. Daap fēigēi heui Yahtbún yiu géi noih a?
3. Chóh dīksí yiu géi noih a? /Daaih Douh Jùng/	3. Chóh dīksí heui Daaih Douh Jùng yiu géi noih a?

4. Daap bāsí yiu géi noih a? /Wìhng Ōn Gūngsī/	4. Daap bāsí heui Wìhng Ōn Gūngsī yiu géi noih a?
5. Daap syùhn yiu géi noih a? /Tòihwāan/	5. Daap syùhn heui Tòihwāan yiu géi noih a?
6. Chóh laahmchē yiu géi noih a? /séuhng Sāandéng/	6. Chóh laahmchē séuhng Sāandéng yiu géi noih a?
7. Daap fóchē yiu géi noih a? /Sàngaai/	7. Daap fóchē heui Sàngaai yiu géi noih a?
8. Chóh fóchē yiu géi noih a? /Gwóngjàu/	8. Chóh fóchē heui Gwóngjàu yiu géi noih a?

10. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Yàuh Jùngwàahn Gàaisíh hàahnglouh heui Tīnsīng Máhtàuh yiu géi noih a?	1. Yàuh Jùngwàahn Gàaisíh hàahnglouh heui Tīnsīng Máhtàuh yiu géi noih a?
2. /Jùngwàahn Gàaisíh/Màhnwàh Jáudim/	2. Yàuh Jùngwàahn Gàaisíh hàahng louh heui Màhnwàh Jáudim yiu géi noih a?
3. /Màhnwàh Jáudim/Méihgwok Jáudim/	3. Yàuh Màhnwàh Jáudim hàahng louh heui Méihgwok Jáudim yiu géi noih a?
4. /Méihgwok Jáudim/Wìhng Ōn Gūngsī/	4. Yàuh Méihgwok Jáudim hàahng louh heui Wìhng Ōn Gūngsī yiu géi noih a?
5. /daap dīksí/	5. Yàuh Méihgwok Jáudim daap dīksí heui Wìhng Ōn Gūngsī yiu géi noih a?
6. /WìhngŌn Gūngsī/(Hèung)góng Daaih(hohk)/	6. Yàuh Wìhng Ōn Gūngsī daap dīksí heui (Hèung)góng Daaih(hohk) yiu géi noih a?
7. /Hèunggóng Daaihhohk/séuhng Sāandéng/	7. Yàuh Hèunggóng Daaihohk daap dīksí séuhng Sāandéng yiu géi noih a?
8. /Sāandéng/lohk Jùngwàahn/	8. Yàuh Sāandéng daap dīksí lohk Jùngwàahn yiu géi noih a?

Comment: Góng Daaih is an abbreviation for Hong Kong University.

11. Expansion Drill: Add géi in the appropriate place.

Ex: 1. T: Daap fēigēi yiu sàam go jūngtàuh.	T: It takes three hours to go by plane.
S: Daap fēigēi yiu sàam go géi jūngtàuh.	S: It takes more than three hours (but less than 4) to go by plane.
2. T: Chóh syùhn yiu ńgh yaht.	T: It takes five days to go by boat.
S: Chóh syùhn yiu ńgh yaht géi.	S: It takes a little over five days (but less than 6) to go by boat.

1. Jouh nī gihn sih yiu yāt nìhn. This job will take a year to do.	1. Jouh nī gihn sih yiu (yāt) nìhn géi.
2. Chóh syùhn yiu yāt go yuht.	2. Chóh syùhn yiu go géi yuht.
3. Daap fóchē yiu séi go jih.	3. Daap fóchē yiu séi go géi jih.
4. Heui laahmchē jaahm yiu yāt go jūngtàuh.	4. Heui laahmchē jaahm yiu (yāt) go géi jūngtàuh.
5. Fàan ūkkéi yiu sahp fānjūng.	5. Fàan ūkkéi yiu sahpgéi fānjūng.
6. Hohk Gwóngdùngwá yiu léuhng nìhn.	6. Hohk Gwóngdùngwá yiu léuhng nìhn géi.
7. Daap syùhn heui Tòihwāan yiu sàam yaht.	7. Daap syùhn heui Tòihwāan yiu sàam yaht géi.
8. Heui fēigēichèuhng yiu léuhng dím jūng.	8. Heui fēigēichèuhng yiu léuhng dím géi jūng.

Repeat, thus:

T: Daap fēigēi yiu sàam go jūngtàuh.

S: Daap fēigēi yiu sàam go jūngtàuh dóu lā.

---

12. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Néih heuidou góján, kéuihdeih sihkjó faahn meih a? /nod/	T: When you got there, had they eaten yet?
S: Ngóh heuidou góján, kéuihdeih yìhgìng sihkjó faahn laak.	S: When I got there, they had already eaten their meal.

2. T: Néih heuidou góján, kéuihdeih sihkjó faahn meih a? /shake/	T: When you got there, had they eaten yet?
S: Ngóh heuidou góján, kéuihdeih juhng meih sihk faahn.	S: When I got there, they still hadn't eaten yet.

1. Kéuih heuidou góján, néih sihkjó jóuchāan meih a? /shake/	1. Kéuih heuidou góján, ngóh juhng meih sihk jóuchāan.
2. Kéuih heuidou góján, néih táijó yīsāng meih a? /nod/	2. Kéuih heuidou góján, ngóh yíhgìng táijó yīsang laak.
3. Néih làihdou góján, kéuih fàanjóheui meih a? /shake/	3. Ngóh làihdou góján, kéuih juhng meih fàanheui.
4. Néih heuidou góján, kéuih jáujó meih a? /nod/	4. Ngóh heuidou góján, kéuih yíhgìng jáujó laak.
5. Kéuih làihdou góján, néih yámjó chàh meih a? /shake/	5. Kéuih làihdou góján, ngóh juhng meih yám chàh.
6. Néih heuidou góján, ga fóchē hòijó meih a? /nod/	6. Ngóh heuidou góján, ga fóchē yíhgìng hóijó laak.
7. Néih heuidou góján, jek syùhn hòijó meih a? /shake/	7. Ngóh heuidou góján, jek syùhn juhng meih hòi.
8. Néih heuidou góján, kéuih bùnjó ūk meih a? /shake/	8. Ngóh heuidou góján, kéuih juhng meih bùn ūk.
9. Néih heuidou góján, kéuih fàanjó ūkkéi meih a? /nod/	9. Ngóh heuidou góján, kéuih yíhgìng fàanjó ūkkéi laak.
10. Kéuih heuidou góján, néih duhkjó syù meih a? /shake/	10. Kéuih heuidou góján, ngóh juhng meih duhk.

---

13. Alteration Drill

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih múih yaht dōu lohk Jùngwàahn.	T: He goes to the Central District everyday.
S: Kéuih yahtyaht dōu lohk Jùngwaahn.	S: He goes to the Central District everyday.
2. T: Kéuih múih go láihbaai dōu hái ūkkéi dá páai.	T: She plays mahjong at home every week.

S: Kéuih gogo láihbaai dōu hái ūkkéi dá páai.	S: She plays mahjong at home every week.
1. Kéuih múih go láihbaai dōu heui dá bō.	1. Kéuih gogo láihbaai dōu heui dá bō.
2. Kéuih múih go yuht dōu fàanheui Oumún.	2. Kéuih gogo yuht dōu fàanheui Oumún.
3. Kéuih múih nìhn dōu fàanheui Méihgwok.	3. Kéuih nìhnnìhn dōu fàanheui Méihgwok.
4. Kéuih múih yaht dōu sihk Sāichāan.	4. Kéuih yahtyaht dōu sihk Sāichāan.
5. Kéuih múih go láihbaaiyaht dōu chéng sihk faahn.	5. Kéuih gogo láihbaaiyaht dōu chéng sihk faahn.
6. Kéuih múih go yuht yāt houh dōu heui ló chín.	6. Kéuih gogo yuht yāt houh dōu heui ló chín.
7. Kéuih múih nìhn sei yuht dōu fàan Gwóngjàu.	7. Kéuih nìhnnìhn sei yuht dōu fàan Gwóngjàu.

---

14. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih múih nìhn heui Tòihbāk léuhng chi. /láihbaai/	T: He goes to Taipei twice each year. /week/
S: Kéuih múih go láihbaai heui Tòihbāk léuhng chi.	S: He goes to Taipei twice a week.
1. Kéuih múih yaht gwo hói sei chi. /láihbaai/	1. Kéuih múih go láihbaai gwo hói sei chi.
2. Kéuih múih go láihbaai làih ngóh ūkkéi yāt chi. /yuht/	2. Kéuih múih go yuht làih ngóh ūkkéi yāt chi.
3. Kéuih múih go yuht fàan Gwóngjàu léuhng chi. /nìhn/	3. Kéuih múih nìhn fàan Gwóngjàu léuhng chi.
4. Kéuih múih nìhn fàanheui hohkhaauh sei chi. /yaht/	4. Kéuih múih yaht fàanheui hohkhaauh sei chi.
5. Kéuih múih yaht lohk Jùngwàahn sàamsei chi. /láihbaai/	5. Kéuih múih go láihbaai lohk Jùngwàahn sàamsei chi.
6. Kéuih múih go láihbaai heui Sàngaai géi chi. /yuht/	6. Kéuih múih go yuht heui Sàngaai géi chi.

15. Alteration Drill

Ex: 1. T: Néih làihjó Hèunggóng yáuh géi noih a?	T: How long have you been in Hong Kong?
S: Néih làihjó Hèunggóng géi noih a?	S: How long have you been in Hong Kong?
2. T: Kéuih gaaujó Gwokyúh yáuh sàam nìhn laak.	T: He has taught Mandarin for three years.
S: Kéuih gaaujó sàam nìhn Gwokyúh laak.	S: He has taught Mandarin for three years.

1. Kéuih heuijó Méihgwok yáuh géi noih a?	1. Kéuih heuijó Méihgwok géi noih a?
2. Ngóh bùnjó ūk yáuh bun nìhn laak. I moved half a year ago.	2. Ngóh bùnjó ūk bun nìhn laak.
3. Kéuih gwojó hói yáuh géi go jūngtàuh laak.	3. Kèuih gwojó hói géi go jūngtàuh laak.
4. Ngóh nàahmpàhngyáuh fàanjóheui Tòihbāk yáuh yāt go láihbaai laak.	4. Ngóh nàahmpàhngyáuh fàanjó heui Tòihbāk yāt go láihbaai laak.
5. Kéuih bātjó yihp yáuh léuhng nìhn laak.	5. Kéuih bātjó yihp léuhng nìhn laak.
6. Néih gitjó fàn yáuh géi noih a?	6. Néih gitjó fàn géi noih a?
7. Kéuih sihkjó faahn yáuh yihsahp fānjūng laak. He finished his meal twenty minutes ago.	7. Kéuih sihkjó faahn yihsahp fānjūng laak.
8. Ga fóchē hòijó yáuh géi noih a?	8. Ga fóchē hòijó géi noih a?

---

16. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Jèung Sàang daap fēigēi. Gó bāan fēigēi géi dímjūng hōi a?	T: Mr. Cheung is going to catch that flight. When does that flight take off?
S: Jèung Sàang daap gó bāan fēigēi géi dímjūng hòi a?	S: When does the flight Mr. Cheung is taking take off? or When does the flight take off that Mr. Cheung is taking?

1. Léih Táai chóh bāsí. Gó bāan bāsí heui bīndouh a?	1. Léih Táai chóh gó bāan bāsí heui bīndouh a?
2. Ngóhdeih chóh fóchē. Gó bāan fóchē láihbaaisei dou.	2. Ngóhdeih chóh gó bāan fóchē láihbaaisei dou.
3. Wòhng Sàang daap syùhn. Gó bāan syùhn daahp géi hòi a?	3. Wòhng Sàang daap gó bāan syùhn daahp géi hòi a?
4. Kéuihdeih daap laahmchē. Gó bāan laahmchē yāt go jih hauh hòi.	4. Kéuihdeih daap gó bāan laahmchē yāt go jih hauh hòi.
5. Kéuih máaih sēutsāam. Gó gihn sēutsāam m̀hngāamjeuk.	5. Kéuih máaih gó gihn sēutsāam m̀hngāamjeuk.
6. Hòh Síujé duhk gó bún syù. Gó bún syù maaih sahp mān.	6. Hòh Síujé duhk gó bún syù maaih sahp mān. The book Miss Ho is reading sells for $10.

Comment: Tape has lèuhn in sentences 1, 2, and 3, where text has bāan. In sentence 4, tape has douh where text has bāan. bāan can always be substituted for douh as a journey measure.

---

17. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Kéuih yāt go jùngtàuh (jī)hauh fàanlàih. [He, after an hour, return.] He'll be back in an hour.	1. Kéuih yāt go jùngtàuh (jī)hauh fàanlàih.
2. /go géi jùngtàuh/	2. Kéuih go géi jùngtàuh (jī)hauh fàanlàih.
3. /léuhng go jùngtàuh/	3. Kéuih léuhng go jùngtàuh (jī)hauh fàanlàih.
4. /léuhng go géi jùngtàuh/	4. Kéuih léuhng go géi jùngtàuh (jī)hauh fàanlàih.
5. /sàamsei go jùngtàuh/	5. Kéuih sàamsei go jùngtàuh (jī)hauh fàanlàih.
6. /go géi láihbaai/	6. Kéuih go géi láihbaai (jī)hauh fàanlàih.
7. /yāt nìhn/	7. Kéuih yāt nìhn (jī)hauh fàanlàih.
8. /nìhn géi/	8. Kéuih nìhn géi (jī)hauh fàanlàih.
9. /léuhng nìhn géi/	9. Kéuih léuhng nìhn géi (jī)hauh fàanlàih.

10. /yāt nìhn dóu/	10. Kéuih yāt nìhn dóu (jì)hauh fàanlàih.
11. /yāt go yuht dóu/	11. Kéuih yāt go yuht dóu (jì)hauh fàanlàih.

---

18. Double Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

1. Kéuih heuijó Méihgwok--waahkjé sàam go yuht (jì)hauh fàanlàih. He's gone to America--and will probably be back in three months.	1. Kéuih heuijó Méihgwok--waahkjé sàam go yuht (jì)hauh fàanlàih.
2. /yám chàh/bun go jūngtàuh/	2. Kéuih heuijó yám chàh, waahkjé bun go jūngtàuh (jì)hauh fàanlàih.
3. /Yìnggwok/léuhnggo géi yuht/	3. Kéuih heuijó Yìnggwok, waahkjé léuhnggo géi yuht (jì)hauh fàanlàih.
4. /dá bō/yāt go géi jūngtàuh/	4. Kéuih heuijó dá bō, waahkjé yāt go géi jūngtàuh (jì)hauh fàanlàih.
5. /Gwóngjàu/géi yaht/	5. Kéuih heuijó Gwóngjàu, waahkjé géi yaht (jì)hauh fàanlàih.
6. /yàuhséui/sàamsei go jūngtàuh/	6. Kéuih heuijó yàuhséui, waahkjé sàamsei go jùngtàuh (jì)hauh fàanlàih.
7. /Jùngwàahn/géi go jih/	7. Kéuih heuijó Jùngwàahn, waahkjé géi go jih (jì)hauh fàanlàih.

Comment: The structure Time Expression (jì) hauh 'after X time' as in sàam yaht hauh fàanlàih 'return after 3 days' represents a Time When expression which precedes the Verb it is connected to.

---

19. Transformation Drill: Transform the sentences from negatives to dímgáai questions.

Ex: 1.	T: Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh tùhng taaitáai heui yàuhséui.	T: He didn't go swimming with his wife yesterday.
	S: Kéuih kàhmyaht dímgáai móuh tùhng taaitáai heui yàuhséui a?	S: Why didn't he go swimming with his wife yesterday?
2.	T: Kéuih kàhmyaht m̀htùhng taaitáai heui yàuhséui.	T: He wouldn't go swimming with his wife yesterday.
	S: Kéuih kàhmyaht dímgáai m̀htùhng taaitáai heui yàuhséui a?	S: Why wouldn't he go swimming with his wife yesterday?

1. Kéuih m̀htái dihnsih.	1. Kéuih dímgáai m̀htái dihnsih a?
2. Kéuih m̀hje chín béi kéuih sailóu.	2. Kéuih dímgáai m̀hje chín béi kéuih sailóu a?
3. Kéuih gājē m̀htùhng nàahnpàhngyáuh dá bō.	3. Kéuih gājē dímgáai m̀htùhng nàahmpàhngyáuh dá bō a?
4. Kéuih m̀hdaai go jái heui tái yīsāng.	4. Kéuih dímgáai m̀hdaai go jái heui tái yīsāng a?
5. Kéuih m̀hgaau kéuih sé Jùngmàhn.	5. Kéuih dímgáai m̀hgaau kéuih sé Jùngmàhn a?
6. Kéuih móuh dá dihnwá béi ngóh.	6. Kéuih dímgáai móuh dá dihnwá béi ngóh a?
7. Kéuih móuh wah néih jì.	7. Kéuih dímgáai móuh wah néih jì a?
8. Kéuih móuh máaih gāsì.	8. Kéuih dímgáai móuh máaih gāsì a?
9. Kéuih m̀hchéng gūngyàhn.	9. Kéuih dímgáai m̀hchéng gūngyàhn a?
10. Kéuih móuh wuhn sāam.	10. Kéuih dímgáai móuh wuhn sāam a?

Comment: The m̀hV sentences depend on context to clarify whether the meaning is 'is not going to V' or 'wouldn't (i.e., refused to) V.'

20. Expansion Drill

Ex: A: Kéuih yìhchìhn múih nìhn dōu heui léuhng chi ga.	A: Formerly he went twice every year.
B: Kéuih yìhchìhn múih nìhn dōu heui léuhng chi ga, bātgwo gàmnìn kéuih yāt chi dōu meih heuigwo.	B: Formerly he went twice every year, but this year he hasn't gone even once.
1. Kéuih yìhchìhn múih yaht dōu làih sàam chi ga.	1. Kéuih yìhchìhn múih yaht dōu làih sàam chi ga, bātgwo gàmyaht kéuih yāt chi dōu meih làihgwo.
2. Ngóh yìhchìhn múih go yuht dōu heui sei chi ga.	2. Ngóh yìhchìhn múih go yuht dōu heui sei chi ga, bātgwo nī go yuht ngóh yāt chi dōu meih heuigwo.
3. Kéuih yìhchìhn múih go láihbaai dōu làih chāt chi ga.	3. Kéuih yìhchìhn múih go láihbaai dōu làih chāt chi ga, bātgwo nī go láihbaai kéuih yāt chi dōu meih làihgwo.
4. Kéuih yìhchìhn múih nìhn dōu heui ńgh chi ga.	4. Kéuih yìhchìhn múih nìhn dōu heui ńgh chi ga, bātgwo gàmnìn kéuih yāt chi dōu meih heuigwo.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

1) louh = road
2) gwo = pass by
3) sung gēi = see (someone) off on a plane
4) Hóu wah = 'You're welcome'
5) Sàtìhn = Shatin, a village in the New Territories of Hong Kong
6) fàandouheui = arrive back
7) hóu wáan ge deihfōng = fun places, amusing places
8) Nàh = used to attract attention. cf. English 'Listen',...

9) fùnggíng = scenery
10) louh = road
 a) sīk louh = know the road; know your way around
11) Māt m̀hsīk a? = What do you mean, not know?
12) piu = ticket

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE:

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:	B. And he replies:
1. How many hours a day do you study Cantonese?	1. Every day I study five or six hours.
2. How many planes to the U.S. are there a day?	2. There are four or five a day.
3. How long does it take to walk to the Star Ferry?	3. It takes about 20 minutes to walk. If you take a cab it's just five minutes.
4. It takes about 15 minutes to cross the harbor by ferry (ship).	4. Not so! It doesn't require 15 minutes to get across--it takes only 10 minutes.
5. It takes more than two hours by car.	5. It's faster by train--it takes just an hour and a half.
6. How long have you studied English?	6. More than two years.
7. How long has Mr. Chang been in Japan?	7. Over a week.
8. When will Mr. Lau be back?	8. He'll be back in an hour. Please call back later.
9. How long does it take by ship from Hong Kong to Japan?	9. It takes a little over five days by ship.
10. How come you didn't go with your wife and children on vacation in Taiwan? (go to Taiwan on excursion)	10. I've been very busy recently and so I couldn't go.
11. It's so slow to go by ship--Why are you going by ship? (speaker expected them to take a plane)	11. We're going by ship because I'm afraid of taking planes.
12. It's very nice to go by ship, why do you want to fly?	12. We have to reach Washington on the 15th, so we don't have time to go by ship.

13. What time does the bus leave?	13. At quarter after.
14. What time does the next train to the New Territories leave?	14. At 10:35.
15. Would you prefer to take the bus to the Peak, or the cable car?	15. Either one--But I think maybe the cable car.
16. What time does Miss Chang's plane leave?	16. I don't know, you'll have to ask her.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 20

1.	bāan	m:	flight, trip; voyage Measure
2.	bāsí	n:	bus
3.	chóh vehicle	CoV:	travel by vehicle, go by vehicle
4.	chóh fóchē	CoV+O:	go by train, take the train
5.	daap vehicle	CoV/v:	travel by vehicle; take vehicle; catch vehicle
6.	-dāk	Vsuf:	verb suf. 'can,' 'able to,' indicating physical ability
7.	dīksí	n:	taxi
8.	dímgáai?	QW:	why?
9.	dímjūng	m:	hour (length of time)
10.	fēigēi	n:	airplane
11.	fēigēi chèuhng	n:	airport
12.	fóchē	n:	train
13.	gàyàhn	n:	family members
14.	gogo láihbaai	Ph:	every week
15.	gogo yuht	Ph:	every month
16.	nìhnnìhn	Ph:	every year
17.	gónm̀hchit	Ph:	can't make it in time; [hurry-not-make it]
18.	hàahng louh	CoV+O:	go on foot
19.	hahyāt M	Ph:	the next M
20.	hah yāt bāan chē	Ph:	the next trip of the vehicle
21.	hòi	v:	start off, set out, (for vehicles)
22.	laahmchē	n:	cable car, Peak Tram
23.	léuihhàhng	VO:	excursion

24. múih	Sp:	every, each
25. pa	v:	frightened of, be afraid of
26. sàamsei	nu:	three or four - an approximate number
27. Sàandéng	PW:	the Peak
28. sahpgéi	nu:	a few more than 10
29. Sàngaai	PW:	the New Territories
30. sóyih	Cj:	therefore
31. syùhn	n:	ship, ferry
32. tùhng person yātchàih V	Ph:	V together with person
33. yahtyaht	Ph:	every day
34. yànwaih	Cj:	because
35. yànwaih..., sóyíh...	PCj:	because..., therefore...; since..., so...
36. yìhché	Cj:	furthermore
37. yiu	CoV:	cause, make (someone do something)
38. yiu length of time	v:	takes length of time
39. yùhnlòih	MA/n :	basically; basis, origin
40. Yùhnlòih haih gám ge.	Ph:	Oh, so that's why. So that's the reason!

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(It's February in Hong Kong, and a native of Hong Kong is talking about the weather with a native of Taiwan:)

Búndeihyàhn

dung	cold
Gāmyaht hóu dung bo!	Gosh it's cold today!

Tòihwāanyàhn

dunggwo kàhmyaht	colder than yesterday
dunggwo kàhmyaht hóu dò	much colder than yesterday
Haih a. Gāmyaht dunggwo kàhmyaht hóudò.	Sure is. Today is a lot colder than yesterday.

Búndeihyàhn

jeui-	superlative degree; -est, most
jeui dung	coldest
sìhsìh	always
sìhsìh dōu	always, every time
Yihyuht sìhsìh dōu haih jeui dung ge la.	February is always the coldest (month).

Tòihwāanyàhn

yihttīn	hot weather; summer
láahngtīn	cold weather; winter
yihttīn hóu, yīkwaahk láahngtīn hóu a?	is summer good, or winter good? (i.e., which is better?)
gokdāk	feel, consider
Gám, néih gokdāk yihttīn hóu, yīkwaahk láahngtīn hóu a?	Do you think summer is better, or winter is better?

Búndeihyàhn

béigaau	comparatively, in comparison
béigaau hóusí	in comparison better
Ngóh wah yihttīn béigaau hóusí [illegible].	I think summer is a bit better.

Yānwaih ngóh jī pa dung ge.	Because what I hate most is cold weather. [...I am a fear-cold-the-most-one]
tùhng _X_ yātyeuhng ge	the same as _X_
tīnhei	weather
Tòihwāan ge tīnhei haih m̀hhaih tùhng nīdouh yātyeuhng ga?	Is the weather in Taiwan the same as here?
Tòihwāanyàhn	
juhng Adj-dī	even more Adj, even Adj-er
juhng dungdī	even colder
Tòihwāan ge láahngtīn juhng dungdī tīm.	Taiwan's winter is even colder.
Búndeihyàhn	
dím a? or dímyéung?	how is it?
Gám, yihttīn dím a?	What's the summer like?
Tòihwāanyàhn	
tùhng nīdouh chāàhdō	about like this [with this approximately the same]
sāp	damp
móuh gam sāp	not so damp
móuh nīdouh gam sāp	not as damp as here
Tùhng nīdouh chāàhdō, daahnhaih móuh nīdouh gam sāp.	About the same as here, but not so damp as here.
Búndeihyàhn	
béi	in comparison
_1_ béi _2_ hóu	_1_, in comparison with _2_, is better. (or) _1_ is better than _2_.
Hēunggóng tīnhei béi Tòihwāan hóu	Hong Kong's weather is better than Taiwan's
Gám, ngóh wah Hēunggóng tīnhei béi Tòihwāan hóu--	In that case, I say Hong Kong's weather is better than Taiwan's--
Yānwaih ngóh m̀hpa sāp, jī pa dung.	Because I don't mind the damp, but I can't stand the cold.

Tòihwāanyàhn	
ngóh jauh wah ...	I then say ..., I in response say ...
Ngóh jauh wah Tòihwāan tīnhei béi Hèunggóng hóu laak.	Well I say Taiwan's weather is better than Hong Kong's.
Yànwaih ngóh m̀hpa dung ji pa sāp!	Because I'm not bothered by cold but I can't stand damp (weather)!

B. Recapitulation:

(It's February in Hong Kong and a native of Hong Kong is talking about the weather with a native of Taiwan:)

Búndeihyàhn	
Gāmyaht hóu dung bo.	Gosh it's cold today.
Tòihwāanyàhn	
Haih a. Gāmyaht dunggwo kàhmyaht hóudò.	Sure is. Today is a lot colder than yesterday.
Búndeihyàhn	
Yihyuht sìhsìh dōu haih ji dung ge lā.	February is always the coldest month.
Tòihwāanyàhn	
Gám, néih gokdāk yihttīn hóu, yīkwaahk láahngtīn hóu a?	Do you think summer is better, or winter is better?
Búndeihyàhn	
Ngóh wah yihttīn béigaau hóudī laak.	I think summer is a bit nicer.
Yānwaih ngóh ji pa dung ge.	Because what I hate most is cold weather.
Tòihwāan ge tīnhei haih m̀haih tùhng nīdouh yātyeuhng ga?	Is the weather in Taiwan the same as here?
Tòihwāanyàhn	
Tòihwāan ge láahngtīn juhng dungdī tìm.	Taiwan's winter is even colder.

Búndeihyàhn	
Gám, yihttīn dīm a?	What's the summer like?
Tòihwāayāhn	
Tùhng nīdouh chàm̀hdō, daahnhaih móuh nīdouh gam sāp.	About the same as here, but not so damp as here.
Búndeihyàhn	
Gám, ngóh wah Hèunggóng tīnhei béi Tòihwāan hóu--Yànwaih ngóh m̀hpa sāp, ji pa dung.	In that case, I say Hong Kong's weather is better than Taiwan's--Because I don't mind the damp, but I can't stand the cold.
Tòihwāanyàhn	
Ngóh jauh wah Tòihwāan tīnhei béi Hèunggóng hóu laak.	Well I say Taiwan's weather is better than Hong Kong's.
Yànwaih ngóh m̀hpa dung ji pa sāp!	Because I'm not bothered by cold but I can't stand the damp!

II. NOTES

A. Culture Notes.

-seui, '-years old' (for people). The Chinese count a child as being one year old at birth. At every Chinese New Year (lunar new year) thereafter, one more year is added, rather than adding a year on the anniversary of the date of birth. Since the system of counting age differs in English and Chinese, '-years old' is only an approximate rendering of the term -seui. A Chinese who is 17-seui may be 16, or he may be 15, by Western reckoning.

(See Drill 5)

B. Structure Notes.

1. Comparison forms in Cantonese.

a. Similarity of two substantives is expressed as:

1) A tùhng B chàmhdō (gam Adj.)	A is about like B.
A tùhng B yātyeuhng (gam Adj.)	A is like B.
	A is about as Adj. as B.
	A is as Adj. as B.

Ex: 1. Gàmyaht tùhng kàhmyaht yātyeuhng.	Today is the same as yesterday.
2. Gàmyaht tùhng kàhmyaht chàmhdō.	Today and yesterday are about the same.
3. Gàmyaht tùhng kàhmyaht yātyeuhnt gam yiht.	Today and yesterday are equally hot.
4. Yàuhséui tùhng dá bō chàmhdō gam yáuh cheuimeih.	Swimming and playing ball are about equally interesting.

(See BC and Drill 9)

2) Sp.-Nu.-M (-N) yātyeuhng gam Adj.	These 2 Ms are equally Adj.
Ex: Nī léuhng gihn (yúhlāu) yātyeuhng gam gwai.	These two (raincoats) are equally expensive.

(See Drill 9)

3) (A,B) léuhng-M dōu chàmhdō/yātyeuhng (gam Adj). A and B, these two things are the same (are equally Adj.).

Ex: Gàmyaht kàhmyaht, léuhng yaht dōu chàmhdō gam yiht.	Today and yesterday--the two are both about equally hot.

b. Dissimilarity of two substantives.

1) When two substantives (AB) are stated:

a) A Adj-gwo B.	A is more Adj. than B.
Ex: 1. Kéuih gòugwo ngóh.	He is taller than I.
2. Dá bō yáuh cheuimeihgwo dá páai.	Playing ball is more interesting than playing mahjong.

(See BC and Drill 4)

b) A béi B Adj. - A, in comparison to B, is more Adj.

Ex: Hèunggóng béi Tòihwāan sāp.	Hongkong is damper than Taiwan.

(See BC)

c) A móuh B gam Adj. = A is not as Adj. as B.

Ex: 1. Kéuih móuh ngóh gam gòu. — He's not as tall as I.

2. Daap syùhn móuh daap fēigēi gam faai. — Taking a ship isn't as fast as taking a plane.

(See BC and Drills 7, 11)

d) Dissimilarity by X amount is expressed:

1) A Adj-gwo B Nu-M (or indefinite amount) = A is more Adj than B by X amount.

Ex: 1. Kéuih gòugwo ngóh yāt chyun. — He is taller than I by one inch. He is an inch taller than I.

2. Kéuih gòugwo ngóh siusiu. — He is a little bit taller than I.

(See BC and Drill 6)

2) A béi B Adj Nu-M/indef amount phrase = A, in comparison to B, is Adj than B by X amount.

Ex: Kéuih béi ngóh gòu yāt chyun. — He is taller than I by one inch.

2) When one substantive is stated, and compared to another which is not stated, the substantive occupies subject position, and the comparison occupies predicate position.

a) Substantive Adj. — Substantive is Adj-er. (See Lesson 8, Note 2.e.2, p.184)

Ex: 1. Nī gihn leng. — This one is prettier.

2. Tòihwāan yiht. — Taiwan is hotter (than the other place under discussion).

b) Substantive Adj-dī. — Substantive is a little Adj-er.

Ex: Nī gihn lengdī. — This one is a little prettier.

c) Substantive béigaau Adj(-dī). — Substantive is comparatively (i.e. in comparison to the other substantive under discussion) Adj-er.
or:
Substantive is fairly Adj. (in comparison to other members of same category.)

Ex: Tòihwāan tīnhei béigaau yiht dī. — Taiwan's weather is relatively hot (in comparison to other places)
or
...hotter than the other places under discussion.

(See BC)

d) Substantive juhng Adj (dī)	Substantive is even Adj-er.
Ex: 1. Nī gihn juhng lengdī tim!	This one is even prettier!
2. Kéuih juhng gón.	He is even taller.

(See BC and Drill 12)

e) Substantive Adj Amount phrase	Substantive is Adj by X amount.
Ex: 1. Nī gihn leng hóudò.	This one is prettier by far. or: This one is much prettier.
2. Kéuih gòu sei chyun.	He is taller by 4 inches.

(See Drill 8)

f) Substantive móuh gam Adj.	Substantive is not as Adj.
Ex: Nī gihn móuh gam leng.	This one is not as pretty.

(See Drill 7)

2. Superlative: ji + Adj, or jeui + Adj. 'Adj.-est'

Superlative degree is expressed by ji or jeui immediately preceding the adjective concerned.

Ex: Yihyuht sìhsìh dōu haih ji dung ge la.	February is always the coldest.

(See BC and Drills 13, 14, 15)

3. Measurable adjectives: géi Adj a?, 'which number Adj?', 'how Adj?'.

a. Some but not all adjectives can follow the question word géi?, 'which number?' and fill the blank in the question sentence Géi ____ a?, 'Which number _____(tall, short, etc)', i.e., 'How _____(tall, short, etc.)?

Ex: Nī dī bou géi chèuhng a?	How long is this cloth? [This cloth which-number long?]

(See Drill 5)

The question pattern can be expanded by a Measure, and the answer requires a Measure, between géi and the adjective.

Ex: 1. Nī dī bou géi (máh) chèuhng a?	How (many yards) long is this cloth?
2. Nī dī bou sei máh chèuhng.	This cloth is four yards long.

We designate adjectives which can follow the question word géi? as 'measurable adjectives.'

b. Measurable adjectives can combine with number-measure expressions in the following ways:

1. Nu-M Adj

The number-measure expression can be the center of the predicate, with the adjective following as an adjunct to indicate in what respect the number-measure phrase applies.

Ex:

S	P	
Nī jèung tói	sei chek chèuhng.	This table is four feet in length.
Gó jèung	sei chek gòu.	That one is four feet in height.
Gó jèung	géi chek fut a?	That one is how many feet in width?

(See Drill 5)

2. Adj Nu-M

The adjective can be the subject, and the number-measure expression the predicate. In this case there is a pause between subject and predicate, and the Subject-Predicate sentence often is Comment in a larger Topic-Comment sentence.

Ex:

Topic	Comment		
	Subject	Predicate	
Nī jèung tói	chèuhng	48 chyun,	This table--it's length is 48 inches,
	fut	24 chyun,	width 24 inches,
	gòu	16 chyun,	height 16 inches.

3. Adj Nu-M

The adjective can be the center of the predicate in a sentence of implied or explicit comparison, with the number-measure expression following to indicate the amount of the difference in the comparison.

Ex:

S	P	
Nī jèung	fut yăt chek.	This one is wider by one foot, i.e., one foot wider than another one (here unspecified).
Nī jèung béi gó jèung	fut yăt chek.	This one, in comparison to that one, is wide by one foot, i.e., This one is one foot wider than that one.

(See Drill 6)

c. Measurable adjective sentence in SVO form with yáuh as equative verb.

The measurable adjective sentence in the positive degree (as opposed to the comparative degree in examples immediately above) can be expressed in SVO form with yáuh as equative verb and the measured adjective phrase (or the Nu-M phrase) as Object.

Ex: 1. Nī dī bou yáuh géi (chek) chèuhng a? — How (many feet) long is this cloth?

2. Nī dī bou yáuh sei chek chèuhng. — This cloth is 4 feet long. This cloth has 4 feet in length.

3. Nī jèung tói chèuhng yáuh sei chek. — This table, the length is four feet.

(See Drill 5)

4. daaih, 'big,' and sai, 'small' used in reference to years of age.

sai is used to mean 'young(er)' in comparing the ages of two people:

Ex: Kéuih saigwo ngóh (yāt seui). He is (a year) younger than I.

daaih is used to mean 'years of age,' in the question formula.

géi daaih a? 'How many years of age (is he)?,' 'How old (is he)?'

It is also used to mean 'old(er)' in comparing the ages of two people.

Ex: 1. Kéuiy géi daaih a? — How old is he?

2. Kéuih béi ngóh daaih. — He is older than I.

(See Drill 5)

5. Frequency words in Cantonese.

In Cantonese frequency words are adverbs which precede the verb concerned:

sìhsìh dōu = always
hóudō sìh dōu = very often, lots of times
yáuhsìh = sometimes
hóu síu = very rarely, seldom, i.e., not often

Ex: Kéuihdeih sìhsìh dōu sihk Jùngchoi. They always eat Chinese food.
" hóudō sìh dōu " " They eat Chinese food very often.
" yáuhsìh " " They sometimes eat Chinese food.
" hóu síu " " They seldom eat Chinese food.

(See BC and Drill 17)

III. DRILLS

1. Response Drill

Ex: T: Dung m̀hdung a?	T: Is it cold?
S: M̀hhaih géi dung.	S: It's not very cold.
+ 1. Lèuhng m̀hlèuhng a? Is it cool?	1. M̀hhaih géi lèuhng. It's not very cool.
2. Hóu m̀hhóu a?	2. M̀hhaih géi hóu.
+ 3. Yiht m̀hyiht a? Is it hot?	3. M̀hhaih géi yiht.
+ 4. Chúhng m̀hchúhng a? Is it heavy?	4. M̀hhaih géi chúhng. It's not very heavy.
+ 5. Lēk m̀hlēk a? Is he smart?	5. M̀hhaih géi lēk. Not very smart.
+ 6. Nàahn m̀hnàahn a? Is it difficult?	6. M̀hhaih géi nàahn. Not very difficult.
+ 7. Yih m̀hyih a? Is it easy?	7. M̀hhaih géi yih. It's not very easy.
+ 8. Gòu m̀hgòu a? Is he tall?	8. M̀hhaih géi gòu. Not very tall.
+ 9. Yáuh móuh cheuimeih a? Is it interesting? (yáuh cheuimeih = interesting)	9. M̀hhaih géi yáuh cheuimeih. Not very interesting.

---

2. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Haih sàn ge.	It is new.
S: Haih m̀hhaih sàn ga?	Is it new?
1. Haih gauh ge.	1. Haih m̀hhaih gauh ga?
2. Haih baahk sīk ge.	2. Haih m̀hhaih baahk sīk ga?
3. Haih hāak sīk ge.	3. Haih m̀hhaih hāak sīk ga?
4. Haih yātyeuhng ge.	4. Haih m̀hhaih yātyeuhng ga?
5. Haih sàn ge.	5. Haih m̀hhaih sàn ga?
6. Haih yiht ge.	6. Haih m̀hhaih yiht ga?
7. Haih dung ge.	7. Haih m̀hhaih dung ga?
8. Haih daaih ge.	8. Haih m̀hhaih daaih ga?
9. Haih sai ge.	9. Haih m̀hhaih sai ga?

3. Response Drill

Ex: T: Dī bējáu dung m̀hdung a? /nod/	T: Is the beer cold?
S: Hóu dung.	S: Very cold.
T: Dī gafē yiht m̀hyiht a? /shake/	T: Is the coffee hot?
S: M̀hhaih géi yiht.	S: Not very hot.

1. Kàhmyaht lèuhng m̀hlèuhng a? /shake/	1. M̀hhaih géi lèuhng.
2. Gàmyaht yiht m̀hyiht a? /nod/	2. Hóu yiht.
3. Gó jèung tói chúhng m̀hchúhng a? /nod/	3. Hóu chúhng.
4. Kéuih go jái lēk m̀hlēk a? /shake/	4. M̀hhaih géi lēk.
5. Hohk Gwóngdùngwá nàahn m̀hnàahn a? /nod/	5. Hóu nàahn.
6. Gó go bīu jéun m̀hjéun a? /shake/	6. M̀hhaih géi jéun.
7. Nī gàan ūk daaih m̀hdaaih a? /nod/	7. Hóu daaih.
8. Gó tou hei yáuh móuh cheui-meih a? /shake/	8. M̀hhaih géi yáuh cheuimeih.

---

4. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Gàmyaht dungdī. /kàhmyaht/	T: It's colder today.
S: Gàmyaht dunggwo kàhmyaht.	S: It's colder today than yesterday.

1. Nī gihn sēutsāam daaihdī. /gó gihn/	1. Nī gihn sēutsāam daaihgwo gó gihn.
2. Ngóh gàan séjihlàuh saidī. /néih gàan/	2. Ngóh gàan séjihlàuh saigwo néih gàan.
3. Kéuih gàan ūk lengdī. /ngóh gàan/	3. Kéuih gàan ūk lenggwo ngóh gàan.
4. Néih sīnsàang go dáfógēi gwaidī. /kéuih go/	4. Néih sīnsàang go dáfógēi gwaigwo kéuih go.
5. Wòhng Sàang go bīu jéundī. /ngóh go/	5. Wòhng Sàang go bīu jéungwo ngóh go.
6. Kàhmyaht yihtdī. /gàmyaht/	6. Kàhmyaht yihtgwo gàmyaht.

7. Nī ga fēigēi faaidī. /gó ga/	7. Nī ga fēigēi faaigwo gó ga.
8. Hohk Gwóngdūngwá yáuh cheuimeihdī. /hohk Yīngmàhn/	8. Hohk Gwóngdūngwá yáuh cheuimeihgwo hohk Yīngmàhn.
9. Hohk Gwóngdūngwá nàahndī. /Yīngmàhn/	9. Hohk Gwóngdūngwá nàahngwo hohk Yīngmàhn.
10. Kéuih gòudī. /kéuih bàhbā/	10. Kéuih gòugwo kéuih bàhbā.

---

5. Response Drill

Ex: T: Néih géi gòu a? * /ńgh chek gáu/ chek = foot, feet (long)	T: How tall are you? /five foot nine/
S: Ngóh ńgh chek gáu gòu.	S: I'm five foot nine. (or five-nine)
1. Nī jek gāi géi chúhng a? /sàam gàn/	1. Nī jek gāi sàam gàn chúhng.
2. Gó tìuh yú géi chúhng a? /(yāt) gàn géi/	2. Gó tìuh yú (yāt) gàn géi chúhng.
3. Nī dī bou géi chèuhng a? /sàam máh bun/	3. Nī dī bou sàam máh bun chèuhng. This cloth is three and a half yards long.
* 4. Néih go jái géi daaih a? (géi daaih = (in reference to age) how old?) How old?) How old is your son? /17 seui/ * (seui = years (of age))	4. Ngóh go jái sahpchāt seui. My son is 17 years old.
5. Kéuih go sailouh géi daaih a? /yahsei seui/	5. Kéuih go sailouh yahsei seui.
6. Néih pàhngyáuh géi daaih a? /sàamsahpsei seui/	6. Ngóh pàhngyáuh sàamsahpsei seui.
7. Néih taaitáai géi daaih a? /yahgáu seui/	7. Ngóh taaitáai yahgáu seui.
8. Nī jèung tói géi chèuhng a? /luhk chek/	8. Nī jèung tói luhk chek chèuhng. This table is six feet long.
9. Nī dī faaijí géi chèuhng a? * /sahp chyun/	9. Nī dī faaijí sahp chyun chèuhng.

(chyun = inch)	These chopsticks are 10 inches long.
How long are these chopsticks? /10 inches/	

a. Repeat, expanding with yáuh, thus:

T: Néih yáuh géi gòu a? /ńgh chek gáu/	How tall are you? /five foot nine/
S: Ngóh yáuh ńgh chek gáu gòu.	I am five foot nine inches tall.

---

6. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Nī jek gāi chúhng yāt gàn. /gó jek/	T: This chicken is one catty heavier.
S: Nī jek gāi chúhnggwo gó jek yāt gàn.	S: This chicken is one catty heavier than that one.

1. Hèunggóng tìnhei hóu sèsíu. /Wahsíhngdeuhn/	1. Hèunggóng tìnhei hóugwo Wahsíhngdeuhn sèsíu.
2. Ngóh go jái gòu yāt chyun. /néih go/ My son is one inch taller. /yours/	2. Ngóh go jái gòugwo néih go yāt chyun.
3. Nī júng yīnjái gwai yāt hòuhjí. /go júng/	3. Nī júng yīnjái gwaigwo gó júng yāt hòuhjí.
4. Yahtbun faaijí dyún sèsíu. /Jùnggwok ge/	4. Yahtbún faaijí dyungwo Jùnggwok sèsíu.
5. Gó jèung tói chèuhng sàam chek. /nī jèung/	5. Gó jèung tói chèuhnggwo nī jèung sàam chek.
6. Kéuih ge jáinéui lēk hóudò. /ngóh ge/	6. Kéuih ge jáinéui lēkgwo ngóh ge hóudò.
7. Nī jek díp daaih sèsíu. /gó jek/	7. Nī jek díp daaihgwo gó jek sèsíu.
8. Nī jèung tói dyún léuhngsàam chyun. /gó jèung/	8. Nī jèung tói dyúngwo gó jèung léuhngsàam chyun.
9. Gó jèung yí chúhng géi bohng. /nī jèung/	9. Gó jèung yí chúhnggwo nī jèung géi bohng.
10. Hèunggóng yiht sèsíu.	10. Hèunggóng yihtgwo Tòihwāan
11. Hèimohng tìngyaht lèuhng hóudò. /gàmyaht/	11. Hèimohng tìngyaht lèuhnggwo gàmyaht hóudò.
12. Nī go jūng daaih sèsíu. /gó go/	12. Nī go jūng daaihgwo gó go sèsíu.

13. Hòh Táai gàan ngūk daaih móuhgéidò. /ngóh gàan/	13. Hòh Táai gàan ngūk daaihgwo ngóh gàan móuhgéidò.
14. Kéuih daaih yāt seui. He is one year older. /ngóh/	14. Kéuih daaihgwo ngóh yāt seui. He is one year older than I.
+ 15. Hòh Táai sai yāt seui. /Hòh Sàang/ Mrs. Ho is one year younger.	15. Hòh Táai saigwo Hòh Sàang yāt seui. Mrs. Ho is one year younger than Mr. Ho.

---

7. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Nī dī yīnjái móuh gam hóusihk. /gó dī/	T: These cigarettes are not as good.
S: Nī dī yīnjái móuh go dī gam hóusihk.	S: These cigarettes are not as good as those.
1. Bāsī móuh gam faai. /dīksī/	1. Bāsī móuh dīksī gam faai.
2. Nī deui hàaih móuh gam hóutái. /gó deui/	2. Nī deui hàaih móuh gó deui gam hóutái.
3. Yihttīn móuh gam sāp. /láahngtīn/	3. Yihtīn móuh láahngtīn gam sāp.
4. Nī ga chē móuh gam leng. /néih ga/	4. Nī ga chē móuh néih ga gam leng.
5. Kéuih go jái móuh gam gòu. /ngóh go/	5. Kéuih go jái móuh ngóh go gam gòu.
6. Nī jek dīp móuh gam daaih. /gó jek/	6. Nī jek dīp móuh gó jek gam daaih.
7. Gàmyaht móuh gam yiht. /kàhmyaht/	7. Gàmyaht móuh kàhmyaht gam yiht.
8. Daap syùhn móuh gam gwai. /fēigēi/	8. Daap syùhn móuh fēigēi gam gwai.

---

8. Reduction Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih gòugwo ngóh yāt chyun.	T: He is one inch taller than I.
S: Kéuih gòu yāt chyun.	S: He is one inch taller.
1. Néih chúhnggwo kéuih ńgh bohng. You weigh 5 pounds more than he does.	1. Néih chúhng ńgh bohng. You weigh five pounds more.

2. Gàmyaht dunggwo kàhmyaht hóudò.	2. Gàmyaht dung hóudò.
3. Nī jèung chèuhnggwo gó jèung léuhng chek.	3. Nī jèung chèuhng léuhng chek.
4. Nī gihn gwaigwo gó gihn sàam mān.	4. Nī gihn gwai sàam mān.
5. Ngóh tìuh pèhnggwo néih tìuh luhk mān.	5. Ngóh tìuh pèhng luhk mān.
6. Kéuih bá dyúngwo néih bá bun chyun.	6. Kéuih bá dyún bun chyun.
7. Yahtbún láahngtìn dunggwo Hèunggóng hóudò.	7. Yahtbún láahngtìn dung hóudò.
8. Kéuih go jái lēkgwo ngóh go hóudò.	8. Kéuih go jái lēk hóudò.

---

9. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Nī go bīu tùhng gó go yātyeuhng. /gwai/	T: This watch is the same as that one.
S: Nī go bīu tùhng gó go yātyeuhng gam gwai.	S: This watch is as expensive as that one. or This one and that one are both equally expensive.
1. Gàmyaht tùhng kàhmyaht yātyeuhng. /yiht/	1. Gàmyaht tùhng kàhmyaht yātyeuhng gam yiht.
2. Sàamyuht tùhng Seiyuht yātyeuhng. /sāp/	2. Sàamyuht tùhng Seiyuht yātyeuhng gam sāp.
3. Ngóh bàhbā tùhng màhmā yātyeuhng. /daaih/	3. Ngóh bàhbā tùhng màhmā yātyeuhng gam daaih.
4. Gwóngdùng choi tùhng Seuhnghói choi yātyeuhng. /hóu sihk/	4. Gwóngdùng choi tùhng Seuhnghói choi yātyeuhng gam hóu sihk.
5. Kéuih tùhng ngóh yātyeuhng. /gòu/	5. Kéuih tūhng ngóh yātyeuhng gam gòu.
6. Duhk syù tùhng jouh sih yātyeuhng. /yáuh cheuimeih/	6. Duhk syù tùhng jouh sih yātyeuhng gam yáuh cheuimeih.
7. Cháau mìhn tùhng tòng mìhn yātyeuhng. /pèhng/	7. Cháau mìhn tùhng tòng mìhn yātyeuhng gam pèhng.
8. Nī go jūng tùhng gó go yātyeuhng. /jéun/	8. Nī go jūng tùhng gó go yātyeuhng gam jéun.

---

10. Response Drill

Ex: T: Jùngchoi tùhng Sāichāan yātyeuhng gam gwai.	T: Chinese food and Western food are equally expensive.
S: Jùngchoi gwai m̀hgwaigwo Sāichāan a?	S: Is Chinese food more expensive than Western food?
1. Cháang tùhng pìhnggwó yātyeuhng gam pèhng.	1. Cháang pèhng m̀hpèhnggwo pìhnggwó a?
2. Nī deui tùhng gó deui yātyeuhng gam daaih.	2. Nī deui daaih m̀hdaaihgwo gó deui a?
3. Ngóh jyuh ge deihfōng tùhng Tòihwāan yātyeuhng gam yiht.	3. Néih jyuh ge deihfōng yiht m̀hyihtgwo Tòihwāan a?
4. Dī bējáu tùhng heiséui yātyeuhng gam dung.	4. Dī bējáu dung m̀hdunggwo heiséui a?
5. Yahtbún tìnhei tùhng Tòihwāan ge yātyeuhng gam hóu.	5. Yahtbún tìnhei hóu m̀hhóugwo Tòihwāan ge a?
6. Ngóh gàan ūk tùhng Hòh Táai ge yātyeuhng gam sai.	6. Ngóh gàan ūk sai m̀hsaigwo Hòh Táai ge a?
7. Gwóngdùngwá tùhng Gwokyúh + yātyeuhng gam nàahnhohk. (difficult to learn)	7. Gwóngdùngwá nàahn m̀hnàahnhohkgwo Gwokyúh a? Is Cantonese more difficult to learn than Mandarin?
8. Tòihwāan tìnhei tùhng Yahtbún ge yātyeuhng gam sāp.	8. Tòihwāan tìnhei sāp m̀hsāpgwo Yahtbún ge a?

a. Repeat, students responding with haih m̀hhaih question, thus:

T: Jùngchoi tùhng Sāichāan yātyeuhng gam gwai.	Chinese food and Western food are both equally expensive.
S: Jùngchoi tùhng Sāichāan haih m̀hhaih yātyeuhng gam gwai a?	Are Chinese food and Western food equally expensive?

11. Transformation Drill: Transform the sentences from Negative to choice-type question.

Ex: T: Nīdī móuh gódī gam daaih.	T: This isn't as big as that.
S: Nīdī yáuh móuh gódī gam daaih a?	S: Is this as big as that?

1. Tòihwāan móuh nīdouh gam yiht.	1. Tòihwāan yáuh móuh nīdouh gam yiht a?
2. Nī deui móuh gó deui gam fut.	2. Nī deui yáuh móuh gó deui gam fut a?
3. Nī gihn móuh gó gihn gam jaak.	3. Nī gihn yáuh móuh gó gihn gam jaak a?
4. Hèunggóng tīnhei móuh Yīnggwok gam dung.	4. Hèunggóng tīnhei yáuh móuh Yīnggwok gam dung a?
5. Yātyuht móuh yihyuht gam dung.	5. Yātyuht yáuh móuh Yihyuht gam dung a?
6. Hèunggóng ge yihttīn móuh Yīnggwok gam lèuhng.	6. Hèunggóng ge yihttīn yáuh móuh Yīnggwok gam lèuhng a?

---

12. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Méihgwok tīnhei hóu dung. /Yīnggwok/	T: In America the weather is very cold. /England/
S1: Yīnggwok tīnhei juhng dungdī tīm.	S1: In England the weather is even colder.
S2: Haih a, Yīnggwok tīnhei dunggwo Méihgwok.	S2: Yes, the weather in England is colder than America.

1. Hèunggóng yihttīn hóu yiht. /Wàhsihngdeuhn/	1. A: Wàhsihngdeuhn yihttīn juhng yihtdī tīm. B: Haih a, Wàhsihngdeuhn yihttīn yihtgwo Hèunggóng.
2. Yahtbún hàaih hóu pèhng. /Daaihluhk/	2. A: Daaihluhk hàaih juhng pèhngdī tīm. B: Haih a, Daaihluhk hàaih pèhnggwo Yahtbún hàaih.
3. Gwokyúh hóu nàahnhohk. /Seuhnghóiwá/	3. A: Seuhnghóiwá juhng nàahnhohkdī tīm. B: Haih a, Seuhnghóiwá nàahnhohkgwo Gwokyúh.
4. Tòihwāan hóu sai. /Hèunggóng/	4. A: Hèunggóng juhng saidī tīm. B: Haih a, Hèunggóng saigwo Tòihwāan.
5. Gàmyaht tīnhei hóu sāp. /kàhmyaht/	5. A: Kàhmyaht juhng sāpdī tīm.

	B: Haih a, kàhmyaht sāpgwo gàmyaht.
6. Hèunggong Chātyuht hóu yiht. /Baatyuht/	6. A: Baatyuht juhng yihtdī tīm. B: Haih a, Baatyuht yihtgwo Chātyuht.

---

13. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh séung oi léuhng jek gāi. /ji leng/	T: I want two chickens. /the prettiest/
S: Ngóh séung oi léuhng jek ji leng ge gāi.	S: I want the two of the best chickens.
1. Ngóh séung oi tou gāsī. /ji leng/	1. Ngóh séung oi tou ji leng ge gāsī.
2. Ngóh séung oi jèung yí. /ji leng/	2. Ngóh séung oi jèung ji leng ge yí.
3. Ngóh séung oi sàam jek būi. /ji hóu/	3. Ngóh séung oi sàam jek ji hóu ge būi.
4. Ngóh séung oi go dáfógēi. + /jeui sai/ (most, -est)	4. Ngóh séung oi go jeui sai go dáfógēi. I want one of your smallest lighters.
5. Ngóh séung oi géi go wún. /jeui leng/	5. Ngóh séung oi géi go jeui leng ge wún.
6. Ngóh séung oi deui faaijí. /jeui chèuhng/	6. Ngóh séung oi deui jeui chèuhng ge faaijí.
7. Ngóh séung oi luhk jek dīp. /jeui daaih/	7. Ngóh séung oi luhk jek jeui daaih ge dīp.
8. Ngóh séung oi jèung tói. /jeui pèhng/	8. Ngóh séung oi jèung jeui pèhng ge tói.

Comment: jeui, 'most', '-est,' is interchangeable with ji.

---

14. Response Drill

Ex: T: Ji daaih géidō chín a? /$3.00/	T: How much is (or are) the biggest? (i.e., the biggest one(s))
S: Ji daaih sàam mān.	S: The biggest is (or are) three dollars.
1. Ji sai géidō chín a? /$5.50/	1. Ji sai ńgh go bun.

2. Ji gwai géidō chīn a? /$10/	2. Ji gwai sahp mān.
3. Ji gòu géidō chīn a? /$21/	3. Ji gòu yahyāt mān.
4. Ji daaih géidō chīn a? /$36/	4. Ji daaih sa'ahluhk mān.
5. Ji leng géidō chīn a? /$25/	5. Ji leng yahńgh mān.
6. Ji hóu géidō chīn a? /$33/	6. Ji hóu sa'ahsàam mān.
7. Ji pèhng géidō chīn a? /$2/	7. Ji pèhng léuhng mān.
8. Ji chèuhng géidō chīn a? /$220/	8. Ji chèuhng yih baak yihsahp mān.

Comment: In a different context, #7 above can mean 'What's the cheapest (you'll sell it for)?', with the answer being 'The cheapest (I'll sell it for) is $2.00.'

Repeat, with ge, thus:

T: Jeui daaih ge géidō chīn a? /$3.00/	How much is the biggest one (or ones)? /$3.00/
S: Jeui daaih ge sàam mān.	The biggest one (or ones) is (or are) $3.00.

The meaning is no different from that without -ge.

---

15. Transformation Drill

Ex: 1. T: Ngóh séung oi géi go lengdī ge.	T: I want a few nice ones. or of the nicer ones.
S: Béi géi go lengdī ge ngóh lā.	S: Give me a few nice ones. or of the nicer ones.
2. T: Ngóh séung oi géi gihn jeui leng ge.	T: I want a few of the nicest ones.
S: Béi géi gihn jeui leng ge ngóh lā.	S: Give me a few of the nicest ones.

1. Ngóh séung oi jèung hóudī ge.	1. Béi jèung hóudī ge ngóh lā.
2. Ngóh séung oi léuhng gàn lengdī ge.	2. Béi léuhng gàn lengdī ge ngóh lā.
3. Ngóh séung oi luhk jek daaihdī ge.	3. Béi luhk jek daaihdī ge ngóh lā.
4. Ngóh séung oi géi go jeui leng ge.	4. Béi géi go jeui leng ge ngóh lā.
5. Ngóh séung oi ga jeui pèhng ge.	5. Béi ga jeui pèhng ge ngóh lā.
6. Ngóh séung oi sàam gihn jeui sai ge.	6. Béi sàam gihn jeui sai ge ngóh lā.

7. Ngóh séung oi bùi dungdī ge.	7. Béi bùi dungdī ge ngóh lā.
8. Ngóh séung oi wún jeui yiht ge.	8. Béi wún jeui yiht ge ngóh lā.

Comment: Note that the comparative -dī is used in the example sentence above, and in the problem sentences that follow. In the idiomatic English equivalents the comparative is not required. This use of the comparative parallels that in the following sentence, which you have encountered before:

Ngóh go bīu faaidī. [my watch faster (than it should be.)]	My watch is fast.

---

16. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Kàhmyaht m̀hdung.	T: It was not cold yesterday.
S: Kàhmyaht dung m̀hdung a?	S: Was it cold yesterday?
+ 1. Nī tou gāsī m̀hhóutái. This set of furniture is ugly. (hóutái = nice-looking, pretty) (not said in reference to people)	1. Nī tou gāsī hóu m̀hhóutái a? Is this set of furniture nice-looking?
2. Gàmyaht m̀hdung.	2. Gàmyaht dung m̀hdung a?
3. Ngóh jèung tói m̀hhaih hóu gwai jē.	3. Néih jèung tói gwai m̀hgwai a?
4. Gó gàan ūk m̀hhaih hóu daaih jē.	4. Gó gàan ūk daaih m̀hdaaih a?
5. Kéuih ge sànséui m̀hhaih géi gòu.	5. Kéuih ge sànséui gòu m̀hgòu a?
6. Hèunggóng ūkjōu m̀hpèhng ga.	6. Hèunggóng ūkjōu pèhng m̀hpèhng a?
7. Ngóh go gùngyàhn (ge) yàhngùng m̀hhaih hóu gwai.	7. Néih go gùngyàhn (ge) yàhngūng gwai m̀hgwai a?
8. Kéuih go jái m̀hhaih géi lēk.	8. Kéuih go jái lēk m̀hlēk a?

---

17. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh yahtyaht dōu chēut gāai sihk faahn ge. /sihsih dōu/	T: I eat out everyday. /always/
S: Ngóh sihsih dōu chēut gaai sihk faahn ge.	S: I always eat out.
1. Ngóh sihsih dōu chēut gāai sihk faahn ge. + /hóudòsih dōu/ (very often)	1. Ngóh hóudò sih dōu chēut gāai sihk faahn ge. I eat out a lot. [I eat out every often.]
2. Ngóh hóudò sih dōu chēut gāai sihk faahn ge. + /yáuhsih/ (sometimes)	2. Ngóh yáuhsih chēut gāai sihk faahn ge. Sometimes I eat out.
3. Ngóh yáuhsih chēut gāai sihk faahn ge. + /hóusíu/ (rarely, seldom)	3. Ngóh hóusíu chēut gāai sihk faahn ge. I don't eat out much. [I seldom eat out.]
4. Ngóh hóusíu chēut gāai sihk faahn ge. /yahtyaht dōu/	4. Ngóh yahtyaht dōu chēut gāai sihk faahn ge.
5. Ngóh yahtyaht dōu tái dihnsih ge. /hóusíu/	5. Ngóh hóusíu tái dihnsih ge.
6. Ngóh hóusíu tái dihnsih ge. /yáuhsih/	6. Ngóh yáuhsih tái dihnsih ge.
7. Ngóh yáuhsih tái dihnsih ge. /hóudò sih dōu/	7. Ngóh hóudò sih dōu tái dihnsih ge.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

1) hói tāan = seaside
2) Chín Séui Wāan = Repulse Bay [Shallow Water Bay]
3) Chínséui Wāan = Repulse Bay
4) Chínséui Wāan = Repulse Bay [Shallow Water Bay] a beach on the South shore of Hong Kong island.
5) Chekchyúh = Stanley, a village and beach on the south-eastern tip of Hong Kong island.
6) taai = too
7) fòngbihn = convenient

8) Lóuh Léih = 'Old Lee'--Lóuh + surname is used as form of address to a man by good friends.

9) māt = exclamation of surprise, Compare English 'Why' in 'Why he's a full 20 years older than she!'

10) sèhng yihsahp seui = a full 20 years

11) Lóuhdauh = father, equivalent to 'The Old Man'

12) yáuh chín = rich, wealthy

13) Wàh...háai! = exclamation of awe and astonishment.

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:	B. And he replies:
1. My it's hot today!	1. Yes, it's hotter then yesterday.
2. Hong Kong is hotter than the U.S.	2. In August Hong Kong and Washington are both equally hot.
3. I think Washington is a bit hotter.	3. I like hot weather, I don't like cold weather.
4. How old is your father?	4. He's 55 years old. He's three years older than my mother.
5. My elder brother is 6 feet tall, but I'm just 5 foot 10.	5. How tall is your father?
6. Her son isn't as smart at Mrs. Lee's.	6. Is her daughter smart?
7. Is that new table you bought very heavy?	7. Not as heavy as our old one.
8. We often go out to have tea on Sundays.	8. My busband has to work on Sundays, so we rarely go out on Sunday.
9. Which do you think is easier--Mandarin or Cantonese?	9. I think Mandarin is easier than Cantonese.
10. How much does the biggest one cost?	10. The biggest is $20.00
11. Please give me a dozen of your nicest oranges.	11. I'm sorry, we're all sold out.
12. This shirt is $1.00 cheaper.	12. OK, give me the cheaper one.

13. Is Cantonese hard to learn?	13. It's comparatively hard, but it's very interesting.
14. These trousers are an inch longer than these.	14. Give me the shorter ones.
15. These trousers aren't as wide as those.	15. These are even narrower.
16. Are these cigarettes the long kind?	16. No, those are the short kind. Do you want the long kind?

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 21

1. béi	bf:	in comparison
2. béigaau	adv:	in comparison, comparatively
3. chàmhdō	Ph:	more or less, approximately
4. chek	m:	foot (measurement)
5. chúhng	adj:	heavy
6. chyun	m:	inch
7. daaih	adj:	in ref. to age: years of age 'old' in How old are you, I am older than he.
8. X dím?	QW:	How about X?, What's X like?
9. dung	adj:	cold
10. géi daaih?	Ph:	how old (as in 'How old are you?')
11. géi chúhng?	Ph:	how heavy?
12. gokdāk	v:	feel, consider, realize
13. gòu	adj:	tall
14.-gwo, in Adj-gwo	bf:	[exceed,surpass] used to form the comparative: more Adj than, Adj-er than
15. hóudòsìh	advPh:	very often
16. hóusíu	advPh:	rarely, seldom
17. hóutái	adj:	nice-looking, pretty
18. jeui	bf:	most..., exceedingly...
19. ji	bf:	(superlative) most..., exceedingly...
20. juhng	adv:	even
21. juhng...Adj-dī	Ph:	even more Adj.
22. láahngtīn	TW:	winter
23. lēk	adj:	smart, brilliant
24. lèuhng	adj:	cool

25. nàahn	adj:	difficult
26. nàahnhohk	adj:	difficult to learn
27. sai	adj:	younger in age; used in comparison sentences to indicate 'younger than'
28. sāp	adj:	wet
29. seui	m:	years of age
30. sìhsìh	adv:	always, at all times
31. tìnhei	n:	weather
32. Tòihwāanyàhn	n:	Taiwanese person
33. tùhng.X.yātyeuhng	Ph:	the same as.X.
34. yáuh cheuimeih	adj:	interesting
35. yáuhsìh	adv:	sometimes
36. yìh	adj:	easy
37. yiht	adj:	hot
38. yihttīn	TW:	summer

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Miss Jones, a young foreigner employed as secretary in Hong Kong, is talking to her friend, Miss Lee, a young Cantonese employed in the same office:)

Jùnggwokyàhn	
góngdāk géi hóu	speak quite well
Néih ge Gwóngdùngwá yìhgā góngdāk géi hóu bo.	Say! Your Cantonese is pretty good now.
Ngoihgwokyàhn	
gwojéung	'You praise me too much.' [over-speak], overdo it
màhmádéi	Middling, indifferent, so-so, just scrapes by
Gwojéung laak; màhmádái jē.	You overdo it--it just barely scrapes by.
leuhnjeuhn	clumsy, awkward, stupid
Ngóh góngdāk hóu leuhnjeuhn ga.	I speak very stupidly.
Jùnggwokyàhn	
kìnggái	have a chat
tùhng néih kìnggái	chat with you
ngāamngāam (āamāam)	just, only a moment ago
héisáu	begin [lift-hand]
ngāamngāam héisáu	just begun
jih	written word, written figure, Chinese character
sé jih	to write [words]
héisáu hohk sé jih	begin learning to write
Ngóh daihyātchi tùhng néih kìnggái, néih ngāamngāam héisáu hohk sé jih, haih m̀hhaih nē?	The first time I talked with you, you had just begun to learn Chinese characters, isn't that right?
Ngoihgwokyàhn	
sailóu	younger brother
Haih. Ngóh tùhng ngóh sailóu léuhng go yātchàih hohk.	That's right. My younger brother and I are studying

	together.
Jùnggwokyàhn	
Hohkdāk dím a?	How are you doing?
Ngoihgwokyàhn	
yáih	terrible, awful
Sédāk hóu yáih.	My writing is awful.
ngóh sailóu sédāk m̀hcho	my younger brother writes pretty well
ngóh sédāk móuh kéuih gam leng	I don't write as well as he
Ngóh sailóu sédāk m̀hcho, daahnhaih ngóh sédāk móuh kéuih gam leng.	My younger brother writes pretty well, but I don't write as well as he.
Jùnggwokyàhn	
(seeing some Chinese characters written on a piece of scratch paper on the desk:)	
Nī dī jih haih m̀hhaih néih sé ga?	These characters, are they ones that you wrote?
Ngoihgwokyàhn	
Móuh cho.	That's right.
Jùnggwokyàhn	
Sédāk m̀hcho ā.	They're written quite well.
Hohkdāk géi faai bo.	You learn fast!
Ngoihgwokyàhn	
Sīnsàang hóu jē.	It's just that the teacher is good.
A! Ngóh tèngginwah néih jyú Jùngchoi jyúdāk hóu hóusihk.	Oh--I hear that you cook Chinese food very well.
gàn néih hohk	learn from you [follow you learn]
Ngóh hóu séung gàn néih hohkháh.	I'd like very much to learn from you.
Jùnggwokyàhn	
Néih gwojéung jē, ngóh m̀hdāk ge.	You praise me too much, I'm no good.

Ngoihgwokyàhn	
taai	too, excessively
hím	humble
Néih taai hím laak.	You're too modest.

B. Recapitulation:

Jùnggwokyàhn	
Néih ge Gwóngdùngwá yìhgā góngdāk géi hóu bo.	Say! Your Cantonese is pretty good now.
Ngoihgwokyàhn	
Gwojéung laak; màhmádéi jē. Ngóh góngdāk hóu leuhnjeuhn ga.	You overdo it--it barely scrapes by. I speak very stupidly.
Jùnggwokyàhn	
Ngóh daihyātchi tùhng néih kíng-gái, néih ngāamngāam héisáu hohk sé jih, haih m̀hhaih nē?	The first time I talked with you, you had just begun to learn Chinese characters, isn't that right?
Ngoihgwokyàhn	
Haih. Ngóh tùhng ngóh sailóu léuhng go yātchàih hohk.	That's right. My younger brother and I are studying together.
Jùnggwokyàhn	
Hohkdāk dím a?	How are you doing?
Ngoihgwokyàhn	
Sédāk hóu yáih.	My writing is awful.
Ngóh sailóu sédāk m̀hcho, daahn-haih ngóh sédāk móuh kéuih gam leng.	My younger brother writes pretty well, but I don't write as well as he.
Jùnggwokyàhn	
Nī dī jih haih m̀hhaih néih sé ga?	These characters, are they ones that you wrote?
Ngoihgwokyàhn	
Móuh cho.	That's right.
Jùnggwokyàhn	
Sédāk m̀hcho ā.	They're written quite well.
Hohkdāk géi faai bo.	You learn fast!

Ngoihgwokyàhn

Sīnsàang hóu jē.	**It's just that the teacher is good.**
A! Ngóh tèngginwah néih jyú Jùngchoi jyúdāk hóu hóusihk.	**Oh--I hear that the Chinese food you cook is delicious.**
Ngóh hóu séung gàn néih hohkháh.	**I'd like very much to study with you.**

Jùnggwokyàhn

Néih gwojéung jē, ngóh m̀hdāk ge.	**You praise me too much, I'm no good.**

Ngoihgwokyàhn

Néih taai hīm laak!	**You're too modest!**

II. NOTES

A. Culture Notes

Siblings.

Brothers and sisters in Cantonese are specified according to their age in relation to oneself.

Ex:	1. agō	elder brother
	2. gājē	elder sister
	3. sailóu	younger brother
	4. saimúi	younger sister, (also: múi, amūi)

There is no word for 'brother' referring to one person, or 'sister' referring to one person, though there is a collective noun for 'brothers': hìngdaih, 'elder and younger brothers,' and one for 'sisters': jímuih, 'elder and younger sisters'.

Ex:	1. Néih yáuh móuh hìngdaih a?	Do you have any brothers? [elder and younger brothers]
	2. Néih yáuh móuh jímuih a?	Do you have any sisters? [elder and younger sisters]
	3. Néih ūkkéi yáuh géidō hìngdaih jímuih a?	How many brothers and sisters are there in your family? [at your house]

Within the family children call their elder siblings by their rank in the family and their younger siblings by their given names.

Ex: You are the third born of five sons. You call your elder two brothers and your younger two as follows:

#1 Daaihgō	#4 by given name.	Ex:	A Mìhn
#2 Yihgō	#5 by given name.	Ex:	A Màhn
#3 (you)			

B. Structure Notes

1. Manner **patterns in Cantonese (how something is done)**

The manner in which an action is carried out (fast, slow, well, badly, etc.) is expressed by two patterns: 1) V-dāk hòu Adj. =Verb in such and such a way; and 2) hóu Adj V. =Verb in such and such a way. The former is very common, the latter used with only a few adjectives.

V -dāk hóu Adj.

Ex: Kéuih hàahngdāk hóu faai.	He walks very fast. The way he walks is very fast.

hóu Adj + V.

Kéuih hóu kàhnlihk duhk syù.	He studies very hard.

a. Verbdāk hóu Adjective = Verb in such and such a way

1) V-dāk hóu Adj is a pattern expressing the way the action of the verb is/was done, or the way the action turns/turned out.

Ex: 1. Kéuih hàahngdāk hóu faai.	He walks fast. The way he walks is fast.
2. Kéuih jouhdāk taai daaih laak.	She made it too big. She made it in such a way that it was too big.

2) The affirmative, negative, and question forms operate on the adjective portion of the phrase.

Ex: sédāk hóu chìngchó = writes clearly; written clearly

a	V-dāk hóu Adj.	Kéuih sédāk hóu chìngchó. Nī dī jih sédāk hóu chìngchó.	He writes clearly. These words are written very clearly.
n	V-dāk m̀hhaih géi Adjective	Ngóh sédāk m̀hchìngchó.	I don't write clearly.
q	V-dāk Adj. m̀h Adj?	Néih sédāk chìng m̀hchìngchó?	Do you write clearly?

(See BC and Drills 2-14)

3) dím?, 'how?' can substitute in the adjective position in this pattern.

Ex: V-dāk dím a? How is it/was it V-ed?, How does subject V?

1. Kéuih hàahngdāk dím a?	How does he walk? What is the manner in which he walks?
2. Dī béng jíngdāk dím a?	How did the cookies turn out? How did the cookie-making go?

(See Drill 3)

4) Subject patterns in V-dāk hóu Adj sentences

a) Loose relationship of Subject and Predicate.

In keeping with the loose relationship of subject and predicate in Chinese sentences, (see Note 6, Lesson 3), the Subject of a V-dāk hóu Adj sentence can be the performer of verb, or the thing performed upon, without any change in the verb form.

Example:

Subject	Predicate	
1. Kéuih	jouhdāk hóu ngāamjeuk.	She made it in such a way that it fits very well.
2. Gihn sāam	jouhdāk hóu ngāamjeuk.	The dress is made in such a way that it fits very well.

In English the two types of subject (performer and performed upon) require the active and passive voice of the verb respectively, but in Chinese note that the same verb form is used whether the subject is the performer of the action (Kéuih above), or the object performed upon (Gihn sāam above).

b) Subject types for Verb-dāk hóu Adjective sentences

In addition to performer and performed-upon discussed above, a third subject type is the SVO subject. Examples of the three types are:

Subject	Predicate	
1. Kéuih	jyúdāk hóu hóusihk.	She made it in such a way that it is very tasty.
2. Dī choi		The food has been cooked so it is very tasty.
3. Kéuih jyú Jùngchoi		He cooks Chinese food in such a way that it is very tasty.

(See Drill 8)

5) Contracted form with SVO subject

Some SVO, Vdāk hóu Adjective types permit omission of the V-dāk portion, leaving the SVO subject to precede the predicate Adjective portion directly.

Compare:

1. Kéuih jā chē jādāk hóu faai.	He drives fast.
2. Kéuih jā chē hóu faai.	He drives fast.

(See Drill 11)

b. hóu Adj. + Verb = Verb in such and such a way

1) hóu Adj + V expresses how, in what manner, a V is or was done. Note that the Verb does not use -dāk. Only a few adjectives use this pattern. One of them, for example, is kàhnlihk, 'industrious.'

Kéuih hóu kàhnlihk duhk syù.	He studies very industriously. or, He is very industrious in his studies.

(See Drill 15)

2) The hóu Adj V pattern can be rephrased with the V transposed to the center of an SVO subject, and the hóu Adj by itself forming the predicate.

Compare:

Subject	Predicate	
1. Kéuih	hóu kàhnlihk duhk syù.	He is very industrious in his studies.
2. Kéuih duhk syù	hóu kàhnlihk.	(The way) he studies is very industrious.

2. Verbal comparison forms: $\underline{A}\begin{Bmatrix}\underline{\text{Vs}}\\ \underline{\text{Ved}}\end{Bmatrix}\begin{Bmatrix}\text{more}\\ \text{not as}\\ \text{equally}\end{Bmatrix}$ Adj in relation to B

a. V more Adj than

1) A V-dāk Adj-gwo B.	A Vs/Ved more Adj than B does/did.

(See BC and Drill 12)

2) A V-dāk béi B Adj. (See Drill 12.a)	A Vs/Ved more Adj than B does/did.

b. V not as Adj as

1) _A_ V-dāk móuh _B_ gam Adj.	_A_ Vs/Ved not as Adj as _B_ does/did.

(See BC and Drill 13)

2) _A_ móuh _B_ V-dāk gam Adj.	_A_ Vs/Ved not as Adj as _B_

(See Drill 13 Comment)

c. V equally Adj

_A_ V-dāk tùhng _B_ yātyeuhng gam Adj.	_A_ and _B_ V equally Adj.

(See Drill 14)

3. héisáu, 'begin.'

Another common word for 'begin' is hòichī, used interchangeably with héisáu.

4. taai, 'excessively,' 'too'

taai + Adj, 'excessively Adj.,' 'too Adj.'

taai + Adj is different in emphasis from Adj-dī, though both can be translated into English as 'too Adj.' The import of taai X is 'excessively X,' 'much too X,' whereas the import of X-dī is 'a bit on the X side,' a little X-er than the ideal.'

Ex: Néih taai hìm laak.	You're too modest! (excessively modest, much too modest)
Tìuh kwàhn chèuhngdī.	The skirt is too long. (a bit longer than it should be)

(Students who have previously studied Mandarin should guard against using taai in Cantonese everywhere where tài would be appropriate in Mandarin. Oftimes where Mandarin would have tài, Cantonese has Adj-dī. The Adj-dī form in Cantonese corresponds to the Adj + (yì)dyǎn form in Mandarin, but is more widespread in use.)

III. DRILLS

1. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh bàhbā ge Yīngmàhn hóu jéun. /màhmā/	T: My father's English is very good. [accurate in pronunciation] /mother/
S: Ngóh màhmā ge Yīngmàhn hóu jéun.	S: My mother's English is very good.
1. Ngóh saimúi ge Yīngmàhn jéun. /gājē/	1. Ngóh gājē ge Yīngmàhn hóu jéun. My elder sister's English is very good.
2. Ngóh gājē ge Yīngmàhn hóu jéun. /agō/	2. Ngóh agō ge Yīngmàhn hóu jéun. My elder brother's English is very good.
+ 3. Ngóh agō ge Yīngmàhn hóu jéun. /sailóu/	3. Ngóh sailóu ge Yīngmàhn hóu jéun. My younger brother's English is very good.
+ 4. Ngóh sailóu ge Yīngmàhn hóu jéun. /go múi/	4. Ngóh go múi ge Yīngmàhn hóu jéun. My younger sister's English is very good.
5. Ngóh go múi ge Yīngmán hóu jéun. /gùngyàhn/	5. Ngóh gùngyàhn ge Yīngmán hóu jéun.

Comment: múi and saimúi both mean 'younger sister' and are interchangeable. However, as noun head in a possessive NP, saimúi can follow the possessive pronoun directly, and múi requires either the Measure go (or dī), or the subordinating ge between possessive pronoun and noun head.

Ex: Ngóh (go) saimúi	(preferred without go)
ngóh go múi	(go or ge required)

---

2. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh gājē sédāk hóu chīngchó.	T: My elder sister writes very clearly.
S: Ngóh gājē sédāk m̀hhaih géi chīngchó.	S: My elder sister doesn't write clearly, or writes unclearly.
1. Ngóh sailóu hohkdāk hóu lēk. **My younger brother is clever in his studies.**	1. Ngóh sailóu hohkdāk m̀hhaih géi lēk.

2. Ngóh sailóu sédāk hóu leng.	2. Ngóh sailóu sédāk m̀hhaih géi leng.
+ 3. Ngóh agō góngdāk hóu làuhleih. My elder brother speaks fluently.	3. Ngóh agō góngdāk m̀hhaih géi làuhleih.
4. Ngóh agō hàahngdāk hóu faai.	4. Ngóh agō hàahngdāk m̀hhaih géi faai.
5. Ngóh saimúi ge béng jíngdāk géi hóusihk.	5. Ngóh saimúi ge béng jíngdāk m̀hhaih géi hóusihk.
6. Ngóh go múi ge Gwóngdùngwá góngdāk géi hóu.	6. Ngóh go múi ge Gwóngdùngwá góngdāk m̀hhaih géi hóu.
+ 7. Kéuih ga chē hòidāk hóu faai. His car is running very fast.	7. Kéuih ga chē hòidāk m̀hhaih géi faai. His car doesn't drive very fast.
+++ 8. Chisó lauhdāk hóu gányiu. The toilet is leaking quite seriously. chisó = toilet lauh- = to leak gányiu = serious, important	8. Chisó lauhdāk m̀hhaih géi gányiu. The toilet isn't leaking very badly.

---

3. Response Drill

Ex: T: Agō sédāk dím a? /hóu yáih bo/	T: How's elder brother's writing?
S: Agō sédāk hóu yáih bo.	S: Elder brother's writing is awful.
+ 1. Séuihàuh lauhdāk dím a? /hóu gányiu bo/ How's the leak in the water-pipes?	1. Séuihàuh lauhdāk hóu gányiu bo.
2. Ngóh saimúi hohkdāk dím a? /m̀hcho ā/	2. Néih saimúi hohkdāk m̀hcho ā.
3. Chisó lauhdāk dím a? /m̀hhaih hóu gányiu jē/	3. Chisó lauhdāk m̀hhaih hóu gányiu.
4. Kéuih sailóu góngdāk dím a? /hóu lāuhleih bo/	4. Kéuih sailóu góngdāk hóu làuhleih bo.
5. Agō jouhdāk dím a? /màhmádéi jē/	5. Agō jouhdāk màhmádéi jē.

6. Gājē jàdāk dím a? /hóu leuhnjeuhn ga/	6. Gājē jàdāk hóu leuhnjeuhn ga.
7. Kéuih yàuhdāk dím a? /hóu lēk ga/ How does he swim? or How's his swimming?	7. Kéuih yàuhdāk hóu lēk ga. He swims very well. or He's clever at swimming.
8. Kéuih góngdāk dím a? + /hóu saisèng ga/ How does he speak? /very softly/ saisèng = small-sound; in a small voice	8. Kéuih góngdāk hóu saisèng ga. He speaks very softly. or He speaks in a low (i.e., not loud) voice.
9. Kéuih sédāk dím a? /béigaau chìngchó/	9. Kéuih sédāk béigaau chìngchó.

---

4. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih góngdāk hóu làuhleih. /Yìngmàhn/	T: He speaks fluently.
S: Kéuih góng Yìngmàhn góngdāk hóu làuhleih.	S: He speaks English fluently.

1. Kéuih hàahngdāk hóu maahn. /louh/	1. Kéuih hàahng louh hàahngdāk hóu maahn.
2. Kéuih táidāk hóu faai. /syù/	2. Kéuih tái syù táidāk hóu faai.
3. Kéuih yuhngdāk hóudò. /chín/	3. Kéuih yuhng chín yuhngdāk hóudò.
4. Kéuih góngdāk hóu chìngchò. /Gwokyúh/	4. Kéuih góng Gwokyúh góngdāk hóu chìngchó.
5. Kéuih dádāk m̀hcho. /páai/	5. Kéuih dá páai dádāk m̀hcho.
6. Kéuih hohkdāk hóu lēk. /yàuhséui/	6. Kéuih hohk yàuhséui hohkdāk hóu lēk.
7. Kéuih jeukdāk hóu leng. /sāam/	7. Kéuih jeuk sāam jeukdāk hóu leng.

---

5. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih jíngdāk hóu hóusihk. /béng/	T: She bakes well. [She bakes tasty.] /cakes/
S: Kéuih ge béng jíngdāk hóu hóusihk.	S: Her cakes are very tasty. [Her cakes baked very tasty.]
1. Kéuih sédāk hóu chìngchó. /jih/ She writes clearly.	1. Kéuih ge jih sédāk hóu chìngchó. Her handwriting is quite clear.
2. Kéuih góngdāk hóu làuhleih. /Gwóngdùngwá/	2. Kéuih ge Gwóngdùngwá góngdāk hóu làuhleih.
3. Kéuih dádāk m̀hcho. /bō/	3. Kéuih ge bō dádāk m̀hcho.
4. Kéuih góngdāk hóu jéun. /Yìngmàhn/	4. Kéuih ge Yìngmàhn góngdāk hóu jéun.
5. Kéuih maaihdāk hóu pèhng. /yéh/	5. Kéuih ge yéh maaihdāk hóu pèhng.
6. Kéuih jouhdāk hóu ngāamjeuk. /sāam/	6. Kéuih ge sāam jouhdāk hóu ngāamjeuk.
7. Kéuih jyúdāk hóu hóu. /yéh/	7. Kéuih ge yéh jyúdāk hóu hóu.
8. Kéuih góngdāk béigaau hóu. /Yìngmán/	8. Kéuih ge Yìngmán góngdāk béigaau hóu.

---

6. Expansion Drill:

Ex: T: Ngóh gājē ge béng jíngdāk hóu hóu. /múi/	T: My elder sister makes good cakes. [My elder sister's cakes are made very well.]
S: Ngóh gājē ge béng jíngdāk hóu hóu, ngóh go múi dōu jíngdāk hóu hóu.	S: My elder sister makes good cakes, and so does my younger sister.
1. Ngóh agō ge bō dádāk m̀hcho. /sailóu/ My elder brother plays ball well.	1. Ngóh agō ge bō dádāk m̀hcho, ngóh go sailóu dōu dádāk m̀hcho.
2. Ngóh gājē jùngyi dá páai. /saimúi/	2. Ngóh gājē jùngyi dá páai, ngóh saimúi dōu jùngyi dá.
3. Ngóh màhmā séung heui Yahtbún. /néui/	3. Ngóh màhmā séung heui Yahtbún, ngóh go néui dōu séung heui.
4. Ngóh bàhbā jùngyi tái dihnsih. /jái/	4. Ngóh bàhbā jùngyi tái dihnsih, ngóh go jái dōu

	jùngyi tái.
5. Ngóh gājē séung hohk yàuhséui. /múi/	5. Ngóh gājē séung hohk yàuhséui, ngóh go múi dōu séung hohk.

---

7. Transformation Drill

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih ge béng jíngdāk hóu hóusihk. /negative/	T: Her cookes are very well made. or Her cookies are very good.
S: Kéuih ge béng jíngdāk m̀hhaih géi hóusihk.	S: Her cookies aren't very well made. or Her cookies aren't very tasty.
2. T: Kéuih ge béng jíngdāk hóu hóusihk. /question/	T: Her cookies are very good.
S: Kéuih ge béng jíngdāk hóu m̀hhóusihk a?	S: Are her cookies good?

1. Kéuih ge Gwóngdùngwá góngdāk hóu hóu. /negative/	1. Kéuih ge Gwóngdùngwá góngdāk m̀hhaih géi hóu.
2. Kéuih ga chē hàahngdāk hóu faai. /question/	2. Kéuih ga chē hàahngdāk faai m̀hfaai a?
3. Kéuih ge jih sédāk hóu leng. /negative/	3. Kéuih ge jih sédāk m̀hhaih géi leng.
4. Kéuih dī gafē jíngdāk hóu hóuyám. /question/	4. Kéuih dī gafē jíngdāk hóu m̀hhóuyám a?
5. Nī ga bāsí hòidāk hóu faai. /negative/	5. Nī ga bāsí hòidāk m̀hhaih géi faai.
6. Go chisó lauhdāk hóu gányiu. /question/	6. Go chisó lauhdāk gán m̀hgányiu a?

---

8. Transformation Drill: Transform the cue sentences into question sentences.

Ex: T: Kéuih sé jih sédāk m̀hchìngchó.	T: Her words are not very clearly written.
S: Kéuih sé jih sédāk chìng m̀hchìngchó a?	S: Are her words clearly written?
+ 1. Kéuih góng yéh góngdāk hóu saiseng. (góng yéh = say-things, i.e., to talk)	1. Kéuih góng yéh góngdāk sai m̀hsaisèng a?
2. Kéuih yàuhséui yàuhdāk hóu lēk.	2. Kéuih yàuhséui yàuhdāk lēk m̀hlēk a?
3. Kéuih góng Gwóngdùngwá góngdāk hóu leuhnjeuhn.	3. Kéuih góng Gwóngdùngwá góngdāk leuhn m̀hleuhnjeuhn a?
4. Kéuih jíng chāan jíngdāk m̀hhóusihk.	4. Kéuih jíng chāan jíngdāk hóu m̀hhóusihk a?
5. Kéuih hàahng louh hàahngdāk hóu maahn.	5. Kéuih hàahng louh hàahngdāk maahn m̀hmaahn a?

. Alteration Drill: Change from an NP subject to an SVO subject.

Ex: T: Kéuih ge jih sédāk hóu hóu.	T: His handwriting is very nice.
S: Kéuih sé jih sédāk hóu hóu.	S: He writes a nice hand.
1. Kéuih ge Gwóngdùngwá góngdāk géi hóu.	1. Kéuih góng Gwóngdùngwá góngdāk géi hóu.
2. Kéuih ge páai dádāk hóu faai.	2. Kéuih dá páai dádāk hóu faai.
3. Kéuih ge béng jíngdāk hóu hóusihk.	3. Kéuih jíng béng jíngdāk hóu hóusihk.
4. Kéuih ge jih sédāk m̀hcho.	4. Kéuih sé jih sédāk m̀hcho.
5. Kéuih ge wá góngdāk m̀hlàuhleih.	5. Kéuih góng wá góngdāk m̀hlàuhleih.
6. Kéuih ge wá góngdāk m̀hchìngchó.	6. Kéuih góng wá góngdāk m̀hchìngchó.

---

10. Alteration Drill:

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih jíng chāan jíngdāk hóu hóu.	T: She cooks meals well.
+ S: Kéuih hóu wúih jíng chāan. (wúih = can, is able to, capable of... hóu wúih = does a good job of ...)	S: She's a terrific cook. [very able cook meal]
2. T: Kéuih ge chāan jíngdāk hóu hóu.	T: His meals are well prepared.
S: Kéuih hóu wúih jíng chāan.	S: He's a terrific cook.

1. Kéuih máaih yéh máaihdāk hóu hóu.	1. Kéuih hóu wúih máaih yéh. She really knows how to buy things. (for example, she gets a good price, or she selects the good and leaves the bad, etc.)
2. Kéuih yàuhséui yàuhdāk hóu hóu.	2. Kéuih hóu wúih yàuhséui.
3. Kéuih ge jih sédāk hóu hóu.	3. Kéuih hóu wúih sé jih.
4. Kéuih ge sāam jouhdāk hóu hóu.	4. Kéuih hóu wúih jouh sāam.
5. Kéuih ge béng jíngdāk hóu hóu.	5. Kéuih hóu wúih jíng béng.
6. Kéuih dá bō dádāk hóu hóu.	6. Kéuih hóu wúih dá bō.
7. Kéuih ge páai dádāk hóu hóu.	7. Kéuih hóu wúih dá páai.
8. Kéuih paak chē paakdāk hóu hóu.	8. Kéuih hóu wúih paak chē.

a. Repeat 1 - 4 as negative.

b. Repeat 5 - 8 as question.

---

11. Reduction Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih jà chē jàdāk hóu faai.	T: He drives very fast. [He (regarding) driving a car, drives very fast.]
S: Kéuih jà chē hóu faai.	S: He drives very fast.
1. Gājē duhk syù duhkdāk hóu lēk.	1. Gājē duhk syù hóu lēk.
2. Gājē góng yéh góngdāk hóu làuhleih.	2. Gājē góng yéh hóu làuhleih.
3. Gājē sihk faahn sihkdāk hóu faai.	3. Gājē sihk faahn hóu faai.
4. Gājē gaau syù gaaudāk hóu chìngchó.	4. Gājē gaau syù hóu chìngchó.
5. Gājē hàahng louh hàahngdāk hóu maahn.	5. Gājē hàahng louh hóu maahn.
6. Gājē jyú yéh jyúdāk hóu hóusihk.	6. Gājē jyú yéh hóu hóusihk.
7. Kéuih jyú Jùngchoi jyúdāk hóu hóusihk.	7. Kéuih jyú Jùngchoi hóu hóusihk.

Comment: The form without Vdāk is suitable in some cases, but not all. We give it to you here for recognition, but advise you not to make up a sentence on this pattern unless you have heard someone say it.

---

12. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih sé jih sédāk hóu chìngchó.	T: He writes very clearly. or His handwriting is very clear.
S: Kéuih sé jih sédāk chìngchó gwo ngóh.	S: His handwriting is clearer than mine. or He writes clearer than I.
1. Agō góng wá góngdāk hóu làuhleih.	1. Agō góng wá góngdāk làuhleih gwo ngóh.
2. Ngóh gājē dá páai dádāk hóu lēk.	2. Ngóh gājē dá páai dádāk lēk gwo ngóh.
3. Màhmā máaih yéh máaihdāk hóu pèhng.	3. Màhmā máaih yéh máaihdāk pèhng gwo ngóh.
4. Gājē jà chē jàdāk hóu maahn.	4. Gājē jà chē jàdāk maahn gwo ngóh.
5. Ngóh sailóu yàuhséui yàuhdāk hóu faai.	5. Ngóh sailóu yàuhséui yàuhdāk faai gwo ngóh.

6. Ngóh go múi héisàn héidāk hóu jóu.	6. Ngóh go múi héisàn héidāk jóu gwo ngóh.
7. Ngóh sīnsàang yám bējáu yámdāk hóudò. He drinks a lot of beer. or He is capable of drinking a lot of beer. He can drink a lot of beer.	7. Ngóh sīnsàang yám bējáu yámdāk dò gwo ngóh.

a. Repeat with teacher cueing as before, students responding with the following type of comparison:

T: Kéuih séjih sédāk hóu chìngchó.	He writes very clearly.
S: Kéuih séjih béi ngóh chìngchó.	He writes more clearly than I.

Comment: With the béi verbal comparison, the following variations are also possible:

1. Kéuih sé jih sédāk béi ngóh chìngchó.	He writes more clear than I.
2. Kéuih sédāk béi ngóh chìngchó.	He writes more clearly than I.

13. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih góng yéh góngdāk m̀hlàuhleih.	T: He doesn't speak fluently.
S: Kéuih góng yéh góngdāk móuh ngóh gam làuhleih.	S: He doesn't speak as fluently as I.

1. Kéuih saimúi dá páai dádāk m̀hlēk.	1. Kéuih saimúi dá páai dá dāk móuh ngóh gam lēk.
2. Ngóh sailóu sé jih sédāk m̀hleng.	2. Ngóh sailóu sé jih sédāk móuh ngóh gam leng.
3. Kéuih gājē duhk syù duhkdāk m̀hchìngchó.	3. Kéuih gājē duhk syù duhkdāk móuh ngóh gam chìngchó.
4. Kéuih agō góng yéh góngdāk m̀hhóu. His choice of words isn't good.	4. Kéuih agō góng yéh góngdāk móuh ngóh gam hóu.

Comment: An alternate form of the above pattern is:

A móuh B V-dāk gam Adj.	A doesn't/didn't V as Adj as B.

14. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih ge béng jíngdāk hóu hóusihk.	T: Her cookies are very good.
S: Ngóh ge béng jíngdāk tùhng kéuih ge yātyeuhng gam hóusihk.	S: My cookies are as good as hers. or My cookies are as well made as hers.
1. Kéuih ga chē hàahngdāk hóu faai.	1. Ngóh ga chē hàahngdāk tùhng kéuih ga yātyeuhng gam faai.
2. Kéuih ge Gwóngdùngwá góngdāk hóu hóu.	2. Ngóh ge Gwóngdùngwá góngdāk tùhng kéuih yātyeuhng gam hóu.
3. Kéuih go bīu hàahngdāk hóu jéun. My watch runs accurately; keeps good time. + hàahng = runs (of watches)	3. Ngóh go bīu hàahngdāk tùhng kéuih g yātyeuhng gam jéun.
4. Kéuih ge jih sédāk hóu leng.	4. Ngóh ge jih sédāk tùhng kéuih yātyeuhng gam leng.
5. Kéuih ge Yīngmàhn góngdāk hóu làuhleih.	5. Ngóh ge Yīngmàhn góngdāk tùhng kéuih yātyeuhng gam làuhleih.
6. Kéuih ge Gwokyúh hohkdāk hóu lēk.	6. Ngóh ge Gwokyúh hohkdāk tùhng kéuih yātyeuhng gam lēk.

---

15. Transformation Drill

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih dá páai dádāk hóu hóu. /question/	T: He plays mahjong very well. /question/
S: Kéuih dá páai dádāk hóu m̀hhóu a?	S: Does he play mahjong well?
2. T: Kéuih ge páai dádāk hóu hóu. /negative/	T: His mahjong game is quite good. /negative/
S: Kéuih ge páai dádāk m̀hhaih géi hóu.	S: His mahjong game isn't very good.
3. T: Kéuih dá páai dádāk m̀hhaih	T: He doesn't play mahjong at high speed. /affirmative/

géi faai. /affirmative/	
S: Kéuih dá páai dádāk hóu faai.	S: He plays mahjong at high speed.
1. Kéuih m̀hhaih géi wúih góng Gwokyúh. /affirmative/	1. Kéuih hóu wúih góng Gwokyúh.
2. Kéuih ge jih sédāk hóu leng. /negative/	2. Kéuih ge jih sédāk m̀hhaih géi leng.
3. Kéuih yàuhséui yàuhdāk hóu faai. /question/	3. Kéuih yàuhséui yàuhdāk faai m̀hfaai a?
4. Kéuih máaih yéh máaihdāk hóu pèhng. /question/	4. Kéuih máaih yéh máaihdāk pèhng m̀hpèhng a?
5. Kéuih ge wá góngdāk m̀hhaih géi chìngchó. /affirmative/	5. Kéuih ge wá góngdāk hóu chìngchó.
6. Kéuih góng yéh góngdāk hóu daaihsèng. /negative/	6. Kéuih góng yéh góngdāk m̀hhaih géi daaihsèng.

---

16. Conversation Drill

Ex: A: Néih tùhng bīngo kìnggái a?	A: Who are you chatting with?
B: Tùhng ngóh go múi.	B: With my younger sister.
A: Néihdeih kìng mēyéh a?	A: What are you chatting about?
B: Ngóhdeih kìngháh heui bīndouh hohk Yìngmàhn jē.	B: We're talking about where we went to study English, that's all. (or Where we are going for studying English)
1. A. ....?	1. A. Néih tùhng bīngo kìnggái a?
B. ....sailóu.	B. Tùhng ngóh sailóu.
A. ....?	A. Néihdeih kìng mēyéh a?
B. ....kìngháh heui bīndouh yàuhséui......	B. Ngóhdeih kìngháh heui bīndouh yàuhséui jē.
2. A. ....?	2. A. Néih tùhng bīngo kìnggái a?
B. ....saimúi.	B. Tùhng ngóh saimúi.
A. ....?	A. Néihdeih kìng mēyéh a?
B. ......heui bīndouh léuihhàhng......	B. Ngóhdeih kìngháh heui bīndouh léuihhàhng jē.

3. A. ....?	3. A. Néih tùhng bīngo kínggái a?
B. ....gājē.	B. Tùhng ngóh gājē.
A. ....?	A. Néihdeih kíng mēyéh a?
B. ......heui bīndouh tái hei....	B. Ngóhdeih kíngháh heui bīndouh tái hei jē.
4. A. ....?	4. A. Néih tùhng bīngo kínggái a?
B. ....agō.	B. Tùhng ngóh agō.
A. ....?	A. Néihdeih kíng mēyéh a?
B. ......gàmyaht ge tínhei....	B. Ngóhdeih kíngháh gàmyaht ge tínhei jē.
5. A. ....?	5. A. Néih tùhng bīngo kínggái a?
B. ....màhmā.	B. Tùhng ngóh màhmā.
A. ....?	A. Néihdeih kíng mēyéh a?
B. ....heui bīndouh dá páai....	B. Ngóhdeih kíngháh heui bīndouh dá páai jē.
6. A. ....?	6. A. Néih tùhng bīngo kínggái a?
B. ....bàhbā.	B. Tùhng ngóh bàhbā.
A. ....?	A. Néihdeih kíng mēyéh a?
B. ......heui bīndouh làuhhohk...	B. Ngóhdeih kíngháh heui bīndouh làuhhohk jē.

---

17. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Néih géisíh héisáu hohk jyú faahn ga? /sahp seui góján, jauh/	T: When did you start learning to cook? /as early as when I was 10/
S: Ngóh sahp seui góján jauh héisáu hohk jyú faahn ge laak.	S: When I was 10, I started to learn to cook.
2. T: Néih géisíh héisáu hohk jyú faahn ga? /gitjófan, sínjí/	T: When did you start learning to cook? /not until I got married/
S: Ngóh gitjófan sínjí héisáu hohk jyú faahn ga ja.	S: When I got married, I finally started learning to cook.

1. Néih géisìh héisáu hohk yàuhséui ga? /duhk daaihhohk góján, sīnjī/	1. Ngóh duhk daaihhohk góján, sīnjī héisáu hohk yàuhséui ga ja.
2. Néih gājē géisìh héisáu hohk ja chē ga? /daaihhohk bātjó yihp, jauh/	2. Ngóh gājē daaihhohk bātjó yihp jauh héisáu hohk jà chē ge laak.
3. Kéuih saimúi géisìh héisáu jouh sih ga? /sahp chāt seui góján, jauh/	3. Kéuih saimúi sahp chāt seui góján, jauh héisáu jouh sih ge laak.
4. Kéuih agō géisìh héisáu maaih syù ga? /léuhng go yuht + jīchìhn, sīnjī/ (....jīchìhn = ago)	4. Kéuih agō léuhng go yuht jīchìhn sīnjī héisáu maaih syù ga ja.
5. Néih go jái géisìh héisáu hohk hàahng louh ga? /sahp go yuht, jauh/	5. Ngóh go jái sahp go yuht jauh héisáu hohk hàahng louh ge laak.
6. Hèunggóng géisìh héisáu yáuh Jùngmàhn Daaihhohk ga? + /géi nìhn chìhn, sīnjī.../ (-chìhn = ago)	6. Hèunggóng géi nìhn chìhn sīnjī héisáu yáuh Jùngmàhn Daaihhohk ga ja. It was only several years ago that H.K. began to have Chinese University.

---

18. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh saimúi hohk sé jih. + /kàhnlihk/	T: My younger sister is learning to write. /industrious/
S: Ngóh saimúi hóu kàhnlihk hohk sé jih.	S: My younger sister works hard at learning to write. [My younger sister industriously learns to write.]
+ 1. Ngóh sailóu duhk syù. /láahn/ My younger brother is studying. /lazy, idle/	1. Ngóh sailóu hóu láahn duhk syù. My younger brother is lazy in his studying.
2. Ngóh gājē sé jih. /láahn/	2. Ngóh gājē hóu láahn sé jih.
3. Ngóh go múi hohk Yīngmàhn. /kàhnlihk/	3. Ngóh go múi hóu kàhnlihk hohk Yīngmàhn.
4. Ngóh bàhbā jouh sih. /kàhnlihk/	4. Ngóh bàhbā hóu kàhnlihk jouh sih.
+ 5. Ngóh agō jà chē. /síusām/ [careful]	5. Ngóh agō hóu síusām jà chē. My elder brother is driving carefully.

6. Ngóh saimúi yàuhséui. /síusām/	6. Ngóh saimúi hóu síusām yàuhséui.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

1) síuhohk = elementary school

2) sihk ngaanjau = sihk ngaan = 'eat lunch'

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE:

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:	B. And he replies:
1. My younger brother speaks Cantonese better than I.	1. You're too modest--you speak very well.
2. These characters are not written very clearly.	2. Who was it that wrote them?
3. Does your elder sister speak Cantonese fluently?	3. She speaks more fluently than I do.
4. I hear you cook Chinese food very well.	4. You praise me too much--I'm no good!
5. Her handwriting is terrible.	5. She's just begun to learn to write Chinese characters.
6. Is your watch running on time?	6. Running right on time--it's now 4:15.
7. The water is dripping [leaking] pretty badly.	7. Can you fix it?
8. She speaks in a very small voice.	8. Ask her to speak a little louder.
9. He drives a car too fast.	9. He doesn't drive as fast as my younger brother.
10. Two years ago he began to study writing Chinese characters.	10. He writes pretty well now [not bad].
11. Who are you chatting with? What are you talking about?	11. With my friend. We're talking about studying Cantonese, that's all.
12. My elder brother is very industrious in his studies.	12. Is your younger brother also industrious in his studies?
13. When did you begin studying Cantonese?	13. It was just three months ago that I began.

14. Does your younger sister swim well?	14. Not bad, but she swims not as well as my elder sister.
15. The way I swim is terrible!	15. Not so! You swim pretty well.
16. He plays mahjong very fast.	16. Yes--. I don't play as fast as he.
17. My father drives a car carefully.	17. Yoes your mother drive carefully?
18. That child is quite smart but he is lazy in his studies.	18. His elder brother is also in his studies.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 22

1. āamāam or ngāamngāam	adv:	just, only a moment ago
2. chisó	n:	toilet
3. chìhn	bf:	ago
4. -dāk...	Vsuf:	grammatical word coming between verb and following verbal complement which tells how verb is done, or what result of verb is.
5. gàn	CV:	from as in: learn from someone
6. gányiu	adj:	important, serious
7. góng yéh	VO:	say things, i.e. to talk
8. Gwojéung la.	Ph:	'You praise me too much.' [response to compliment]
9. hàahng	v:	run (of watches)
10. héisáu	AuxV/V:	begin
11. hìm	adj:	modest
12. hòi (chē)	V(O):	drive (a car)
13. hóu wúih _V_	Ph:	does a good job of _V_-ing, is good at _V_-ing
14. ...jìchìhn	Ph:	...ago (when used after numbered time expression, as in '3 years ago')
15. jih	n:	written word, written figure, Chinese character
16. kàhnlihk	adj:	industrious
17. kìnggái	v:	have a chat, talk casually
18. láahn	adj:	lazy, idle
19. lauh	v:	leak
20. làuhleih	adj:	fluent in speech, fluently
21. leuhnjeuhn	adj:	clumsy, awkward, stupid

22. màhmádéi	Ph:	middling, sloppy, indifferent, so-so, just scrapes by
23. múi	n:	younger sister
24. ngāamngāam	adv:	just, only a moment ago
25. sailóu	TA/N:	younger brother
26. saisèng	adj:	quiet-voiced, soft (opposite of loud) in regard to speech [small-sound]
27. sé jih	VO:	to write [write words]
28. séuihàuh	n:	water faucet, water pipes
29. síusām	adj:	careful
30. taai	adv:	too, excessively
31. yáih	adj:	terrible, awful

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(A tourist in a hotel in Hong Kong has rung for the roomboy:)

sihjái	roomboy

Sihjái

fànfu	instructions
Sīnsàang yáuh mēyéh fànfu a?	Yes sir--you called? [what instructions does the gentleman have?]

Yàuhhaak

yàuhhaak	tourist
sái	wash
Ngóh yáuh dī sāam yiu sái ge.	I have some clothes to be washed.

Sihjái

Hóu--béi ngóh jauh dāk laak.	Fine--give them to me and they'll be done.

Yàuhhaak

hauhyaht	the day after tomorrow
jīujóu	morning
Ngóh hauhyaht jīujóu yiu jáu laak.	I'm leaving the day after tomorrow in the morning.
sáidākchit	able to get (it) washed in time
Sái m̀hsáidākchit nē?	Will you be able to get them washed in time?

Sihjái

Dāk gé.	Yes indeed.
hahjau	afternoon
nīngfàan	carry back
nīngfàanlàih	bring back
hahjau nīngfàanlàih	bring (it) back in the afternoon
Tìngyaht hahjáu yātdihng nīngfàanlàih béi néih.	We'll bring it back to you tomorrow afternoon without fail.

Yàuhhaak	
Gám, m̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh nīngchēutheui lā.	In that case, please take them [away for me].
(The tourist points out a spot on one of the garments:)	
yan	spot
Nīdouh yáuh go yan--	There's a spot here--
gònjehng	clean
sáidāk gònjehng	able to be washed clean
m̀hjī...?	I wonder...?
M̀hjī sái m̀hsáidāk gònjehng nē?	I wonder whether you can get it clean?
Sihjái	
hóu chíh	it seems, probably, it looks like ...
Mmmm...Hóu chíh m̀hdāk bo.	Mmm...It looks like it can't be done--
Siháh lā!	But we'll give it a try.
Yàuhhaak	
A--juhng yáuh!	Oh--there's something else!
tong	iron, press
tong chèuhng fu	press trousers
M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh tongjó nītiuh chèuhng fu lā.	Please get these trousers pressed for me.
Sihjái	
Hóu aak.	Yes sir.
dāan	list
séfàan	write and return
Dáng ngóh séfàan jèung dāan béi néih lā.	I'll write you a list.
Juhng yáuh mēyéh fànfu a?	Anything else, sir? [In addition what instructions do you have?]
Yàuhhaak	
fan or fangaau	sleep
Ngóh yìhgā fan la.	I'm going to sleep now.
séng	wake up

giuséng	wake (someone) up, be waked up [call-wake]
tìngyaht jìujóu	tomorrow morning
tīngjìu	tomorrow morning
tīngjàu giuséng ngóh	wake me up in the morning
M̀hgòi néih tīngjíu chāt dím bun giuséng ngóh lā.	Please wake me up tomorrow morning at 7:30
jóu	early
Ngóh yiu jóudī chēut gāai.	I want to go out a little early. (i.e., earlier than customarily)

B. Recapitulation:

Sihjái	
Sīnsàang yáuh mēyéh fànfu a?	Yes air--you called? [what instructions does the gentleman have?]
Yàuhhaak	
Ngóh yáuh dī sāam yiu sái ge.	I have some clothes to be washed.
Sihjái	
Hóu--béi ngóh jauh dāk laak.	Fine--give them to me and they'll be taken care of.
Yàuhhaak	
Ngóh hauhyaht jìujóu yiu jáu laak.	I'm leaving day after tomorrow in the morning.
Sái m̀hsáidākchit nē?	Will you be able to get them washed in time?
Sihjái	
Dāk gé.	Yes indeed.
Tìngyaht hahjau yātdihng nìngfàanlàih béi néih.	We'll bring it back to you tomorrow afternoon without fail.

Yàuhhaak	
Gám, m̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh nìngchēutheui lā.	In that case, please take them [away for me].
Nīdouh yáuh go yan--M̀hjī sái m̀hsáidāk gònjehng nē?	There's a spot here--I wonder whether you can get it clean?
Sihjái	
Mmmm...Hóu chíh m̀hdāk bo.	Mmm... It looks like it can't be done.
Siháh [illegible]	But we'll give it a try.
Yàuhhaak	
A--juhng yáuh!	Oh--there's something else!
M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh tongjó nītíuh chèuhng fu lā.	Please get these trousers pressed for me.
Sihjái	
Hóu aak.	Yes, sir.
Dáng ngóh séfàan jèung dāan béi néih lā.	I'll write you a list.
Juhng yáuh mēyéh fànfu a?	Anything else, sir? [In addition what instructions do you have?]
Yàuhhaak	
Ngóh yìhgā fan la.	I'm going to bed now.
M̀hgòi néih tìngjìu chāt dím bun giuséng ngóh lā.	Please wake me up tomorrow morning at 7:30
Ngóh yiu jóudī chēut gāai.	I want to go out a little early.

II. NOTES

A. Culture Notes.

1. fànfu, (N/V) 'instructions, orders (given by a superior to a subordinate);' 'to order, instruct (someone to do something)'

The term fànfu is most frequently encountered said by a subordinate to a superior, particularly in the fixed phrase: 'Yáuh mēyéh fànfu?', 'What instructions (or orders) do you have?' From a superior to a subordinate it is not used in direct address, being considered too peremptory. In direct address, instructions are phrased in courtesy forms.

Ex: 1. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh cheunghòi jeung baak mān jí.	Would you please change a hundred dollar bill for me.
2. Kéuih fànfu ngóh tùhng kéuih cheunghòi jèung baak mān jí.	He instructed me to change a hundred dollar bill for him.

2. hahjau, 'afternoon.' Another word for afternoon is hahńgh. (ng)aanjau is also used by some people to mean 'afternoon,' but other people mean 'around noontime' when they say ngaanjau. (sihk ngaanjau, sihk ngaan is 'eat noonday meal,' 'eat lunch'). Twelve o'clock noon is expressed as ngaanjau sahpyih dím, and twelve midnight as bun yeh sahpyih dím.

B. Structure Notes.

1. V-dak-$\left\{\begin{matrix}\underline{\text{Adj.}}\\ \underline{\text{V.suf}}\end{matrix}\right\}$ = 'can V so that $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{Adj}\\ \text{V.suf}\end{matrix}\right\}$ occurs,' 'can $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{V-Adj}\\ \text{V-Vsuf}\end{matrix}\right\}$'

The above represents how the dāk, 'can' construction is used with two-part verb constructions of performance+achievement.

You remember from Lesson 20 encountering the dāk 'can' pattern with the single verb: V-dāk, 'can V.' For example:

1. Kéuih nīpáai m̀hheuidāk.	He can't get away these few days.
2. Ga chè hàahngdāk ga-- Néih meih hòi sósih ja!	The car can run-- you simply haven't turned on the ignition!

(See Drill 15)

With a two-part verb dāk comes between the two parts, the first part being the performance, the second part the outcome which can or cannot be achieved.

Examples:

1. Performance verb + achievement suffix, with dāk becomes V-dak-Vsuf

Ex: jínghóu = [work on + successful outcome] , i.e., fix, fix so that it is OK

jíngdākhóu= can be repaired

	Forms	Examples	English Equivalents
p	V-dāk-hóu	Fong sām laak- néih ga chē hóyíh jíngdākhóu.	Don't worry-- your car can be fixed.
n	m̀hV-dāk-hóu or V-m̀hhóu	Ga chē taai gauh-- m̀hjíngdākhóu. or ...jíngm̀hhóu.	The car is too old-- it can't be fixed.
q	Vm̀hV-dāk-hóu	Ga chē gam gauh-- juhng jíngm̀hjíngdākhou a?	The car is so old-- can it still be repaired?

(See Drill 17)

2. Performance verb + achievement Adj, with dāk becomes V-dāk-Adj.

sái gònjehng = wash (so that it becomes) clean

sáidāk gònjehng = can be washed clean, can be cleaned

	Forms	Examples	English Equivalents
p	V-dāk Adj.	Ngóh nám nī dī yéh sáidāk gònjehng.	I think this stuff can be cleaned. [washed clean]
n	m̀hV-dāk Adj. or V-m̀hAdj.	Ngóh nám nī dī yéh m̀hsáidāk gònjehng. or ...sáim̀h gònjehng	I don't think this stuff can be cleaned.
q	Vm̀hV-dāk Adj	Néih nám nī dī yéh sáim̀hsáidāk gònjehng a?	Do you think this stuff can be cleaned?

Note that there are two alternate forms of the negative of the V-dāk-achievement pattern. m̀h either precedes the whole V-dāk-achievement phrase, or it supplants dāk in the phrase:

m̀h + Verb-dāk-{Adj / -Suffix} ⟶ m̀hV-dāk-Adj/Suf
V-m̀h -Adj/Suf

2. Use of V-dāk (can V) construction in VO phrases.

In a Verb-Object phrase V-dāk is rendered as V-dāk O, can VO,' 'able to VO.'

Ex: paak chē = park a car

paakdāk chē = can park a car

a	Hauhbihn paakdāk chē.	You can park a car in the back. (i.e., there's space for parking there)
n	Chìhnbihn m̀hpaakdāk chē.	You can't park a car in front. (i.e., there's no space)
q	Chìhnbihn paak m̀hpaakdāk chē a?	Can you park a car in front? (i.e., is there space?)

(See Drill 16)

3. -jó, as verb suffix in imperative sentence: V-jó, 'get V done'

a. In an imperative sentence -jó conveys the meaning 'get the action accomplished.'

Ex: M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh saijó dī sāam.	Please wash the clothes for me. (or) Please have the clothes washed for me.

(See BC and Drills 6, 14)

b. Inasmuch as Cantonese doesn't differentiate active and passive voice, a Verb-jó imperative sentence may mean 'do it yourself,' or it may mean 'have someone else do it.' cf. example sentence above.

c. A Verb-jó imperative sentence requires an object. For this type of sentence a pronoun object is permitted.

Ex: Nīdouh yáuh yāt jèung baak mān jí; m̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh cheungjó kéuih lā.	Here's a hundred dollar bill--please change it for me.

(See BC and Drills 6, 14)

4. ngaan (var:aan), 'late (in the daytime)' and yeh, 'late (in the evening)' and jóu, 'early'

a. When bound to -dī, the implication is 'earlier (or later) than usual or expected'

Ex: Ngóhdeih gàmmáahn jóudī sihk faahn lā. — We'd like dinner a little early tonight. (Said by housewife to her cook)

b. jóu, ngaan and yeh may occupy the position of Time When words before the Verb or they may follow the verb, in which case -dāk is suffixed to the verb, making the phrase into the form of the V-dāk hóu Adjective phrase of manner. (The pre-verb position is favored for sentences of non-past reference.)

Ex: 1. Ngóhdeih kàhmmáahn hóu yeh sihk faahn. — We ate very late last night.

2. Ngóhdeih kàhmmáahn sihkdāk hóu yeh. — We ate very late last night.

3. Ngóhdeih gàmmáahn hóu jóu sihk faahn. — We're going to eat very early this evening.

c. ngaan and yeh do not mean 'late' in the sense 'unpunctual,' 'not on time.' The word for 'unpunctual' is chìh.

(See Drill 9.4)

5. Reference charts for morning, noon and night.

a. Sections of the day.

morning:	jìujóu, or jìutàuhjóu
noon:	(ng)aanjau
afternoon:	hahjau
night:	yehmáahn, or máahntàuhhaak

b. Sections of the day for yesterday, today, and tomorrow.

	Yesterday	Today	Tomorrow
	kàhmyaht chàhmyaht	gàmyaht	tìngyaht
morning:	kàhmyaht jìu	gàmjìu	tìngjìu
noon:	kàhmyaht (ng)aanjau	gàmyaht (ng)aanjau	tìngyaht (ng)aanjau
afternoon:	kàhmyaht hahjau	gàmyaht hahjau	tìngyaht hahjau
night:	kàhmmáahn	gàmmáahn	tìngmáahn

6. jīujìu, 'every morning' and máahnmáahn, 'every evening'

The boundwords jìu, 'morning' and máahn, 'evening' pattern like duplicated Measures to mean 'each and every __.' Thus, jīujìu is 'every morning,' and máahnmáahn, 'every evening.'

Ex: Ngóh jīujìu tái jóubou, máahnmáahn tái máahnbou.	**I read the morning paper every morning and the evening paper every evening.**

(See Drill 13)

7. yáuh 'have,' in pivotal construction with personal subject: S yáuh SVO

In the pivotal construction the object of the first verb is the subject of the second one. We have encountered this pattern before (in Lesson 10) with a PW as subject of the whole sentence: PW yáuh SVO. Example: Gódouh yáuh go yàhn dá dihnwá, Over there is a man talking on the phone.

In this lesson we have an example of a pivotal construction with a personal noun/pronoun as subject of the sentence.

Ex: 1. Ngóh yáuh dī sāam yiu sái ge.	**I have clothes needing washing.**
2. Ngóh yáuh go pàhngyáuh sīk góng Gwóngdùngwá.	**I have a friend who can speak Cantonese.**

(See BC)

III. DRILLS

1. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first two sentences after the teacher, then substitute as directed:

1. Kéuih yahtyaht sái sāam. She washes clothes everyday.	1. Kéuih yahtyaht sái sāam.
2. Kéuih yahtyaht jìujóu sái sāam. She washes clothes in the morning everyday.	2. Kéuih yahtyaht jìujóu sái sāam.
+ 3. /ngaanjau/ (or aanjau) (morning; around noon)	3. Kéuih yahtyaht ngaanjau sái sāam.
4. /hahjau/ (afternoon)	4. Kéuih yahtyaht hahjau sái sāam.
+ 5. /yehmáahn/ (night)	5. Kéuih yahtyaht yehmáahn sái sāam.

---

2. Substitution Drill:

1. Kéuih kàhmyaht fàanheui. He went back yesterday.	1. Kéuih kàhmyaht fàanheui.
+ 2. /kàhmyaht jìu/ (yesterday morning)	2. Kéuih kàhmyaht jìu fàanheui.
+ 3. /kàhmyaht ngaanjau/ (yesterday noon)	3. Kéuih kàhmyaht ngaanjau fàanheui.
+ 4. /kàhmyaht hahjau/ (yesterday afternoon)	4. Kéuih kàhmyaht hahjau fàanheui.
+ 5. /kàhmmáahn/ (last night)	5. Kéuih kàhmmáahn fàanheui.
+ 6. /chìhnyaht/ (the day before yesterday)	6. Kéuih chìhnyaht fàanheui.

Comment: 1) kàhmyaht uses its contracted form kàhm- with -máahn but not with jìu.

kàhmmáahn	yesterday evening
kàhmyaht jìu	yesterday morning

2) ngaanjau and hahjau don't have contracted forms.

---

3. Substitution Drill

1. Ngóh gàmyaht yiu hohk yātgo jùngtàuh Yìngmán. I'm going to study English for an hour today.	1. Ngóh gàmyaht yiu hohk yātgo jùngtàuh Yìngmán.
* 2. /gàmjìu/ (this morning)	2. Ngóh gàmjìu yiu hohk yātgo jùngtàuh Yìngmán.
* 3. /gàmyaht ngaanjau/ (this morning; today around noon)	3. Ngóh gàmyaht ngaanjau yiu hohk yātgo jùngtàuh Yìngmán.
* 4. /gàmyaht hahjau/ (this afternoon)	4. Ngóh gàmyaht hahjau yiu hohk yātgo jùngtàuh Yìngmán.
* 5. /gàmmáahn/ (this evening; tonight)	5. Ngóh gàmmáahn yiu hohk yātgo jùngtàuh Yìngmán.

---

4. Substitution Drill

1. Tìngyaht jíng m̀hjíngdākhóu a? Can it be fixed by tomorrow?	1. Tìngyaht jíng m̀hjíngdākhóu a?
2. /tìngjìu/ (tomorrow early morning)	2. Tìngjìu jíng m̀hjíngdākhóu a?
* 3. /tìngyaht ngaanjau/ (tomorrow morning around noon)	3. Tìngyaht ngaanjau jíng m̀hjíngdākhóu a?
* 4. /tìngyaht hahjau/ (tomorrow afternoon)	4. Tìngyaht hahjau jíng m̀hjíngdākhóu a?
* 5. /tìngmáahn/ (tomorrow night)	5. Tìngmáahn jíng m̀hjíngdākhóu a?
6. /hauhyaht/ (day after tomorrow)	6. Hauhyaht jíng m̀hjíngdākhóu a?

---

5. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Jek būi.	T: A cup.
S: M̀hgòi néih nìng dò jek būi làih.	S: Please bring another cup.
1. jī bējáu.	1. M̀hgòi néih nìng dò jī bējáu làih.
2. go wúnjái.	2. M̀hgòi néih nìng dò go wúnjái làih.

3. géi jek séui būi.	3. M̀hgòi néih nìng dò géi jek séui būi làih.
+ 4. géi go sāamgá. several clothes hangers.	4. M̀hgòi néih nìng dò géi go sāamgá làih.
5. jek gāng.	5. M̀hgòi néih nìng dò jek gāng làih.
++ 6. gauh fàangáan. a bar of soap.	6. M̀hgòi néih nìng dò gauh fàangáan làih.
7. deui faaijí.	7. M̀hgòi néih nìng dò deui faaijí làih.
8. sàam jek būi.	8. M̀hgòi néih nìng dò sàam jek būi làih.
+ 9. tìuh mòuhgān. (towel)	9. M̀hgòi néih nìng dò tìuh mòuhgān làih.
+ 10. dī chijí. (toilet paper)	10. M̀hgòi néih nìng dò dī chijí làih.

---

6. Expansion Drill

+ Ex: T: Gihn sēutsāam hóu laahttaat.	T: The shirt is very dirty.
S: Gihn sēutsāam hóu laahttaat, m̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh sáijó kéuih lā.	S: The shirt is very dirty, please wash it for me. (or please get it washed for me)
1. dī chēunglím	1. Dī chēunglím hóu laahttaat, m̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh sáijó kéuih lā.
2. go wúnjái	2. Go wúnjái hóu laahttaat, m̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh sáijó kéuih lā.
3. tìuh mòuhgān (towel)	3. Tìuh mòuhgān hóu laahttaat, m̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh sáijó kéuih lā. The towel is very dirty, please wash it for me.
4. gihn lāangsāam	4. Gihn lāangsāam hóu laahttaat, m̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh sáijó kéuih lā.
5. tìuh kwàhn (skirt)	5. Tìuh kwàhn hóu laahttaat, m̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh sáijó kéuih lā. The skirt is very dirty, Please wash it for me.

+ 6. /hóu chàauh/tong/ (wrinkled)	6. Tìuh kwàhn hóu chàauh, m̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh tongjó kéuih lā. The skirt is wrinkled, would you please press it for me.
7. gihn sēutsāam	7. Gihn sēutsāam hóu chàauh, m̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh tongjó kéuih lā.
8. tìuh fu	8. Tìuh fu hóu chàauh, m̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh tongjó kéuih lā.

---

7. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: /tìngjìu/

S: 'Tìngjìu' jìkhaih tìngyaht jìujóu.	S: 'Tìngjìu'--that's 'tomorrow morning'.
1. /gàmjìu/	1. 'Gàmjìu' jìkhaih gàmyaht jìujóu.
2. /gàmmáahn/	2. 'Gàmmáahn' jìkhaih gàmyaht yehmáahn.
3. /tìngjìu/	3. 'Tìngjìu' jìkhaih tìngyaht jìujóu.
4. /tìngmáahn/	4. 'Tìngmáahn' jìkhaih tìngyaht yehmáahn.
5. /kàhmmáahn/	5. 'Kàhmmáahn' jìkhaih kàhmyaht yehmáahn.
+ 6. /chìhnjìu/ (the day before yesterday morning)	6. 'Chìhnjìu' jìkhaih chìhnyaht jìujóu.
+ 7. /chìhnmáahn/ (the night before last)	7. 'Chìhnmáahn' jìkhaih chìhnyaht yehmáahn.
8. /hauhjìu/	8. 'Hauhjìu' jìkhaih hauhyaht jìujóu.
+ 9. /hauhmáahn/ (two nights from now)	9. 'Hauhmáahn jìkhaih hauhyaht yehmáahn.

---

8. **Expansion Drill**

Ex: T: Néih gàmyaht hahjau géidím dākhàahn a? /sàam dím/	T: When will you be free this afternoon?
S: Ngóh gàmyaht hahjau sàam dím dākhaahn.	S: I am free at 3 p.m.
1. Néih bàhbā jìujóu géi dím fàan gùng a? /gáu dím/	1. Ngóh bàhbā jìujóu gáu dím fàan gùng.
2. Néih sailóu jìujóu géidím fàan hohk a? /baat dím bun/	2. Ngóh sailóu jìujóu baat dím bun fàan hohk.
3. Néih gājē hahjau géidím chēut gāai a? /léuhng dím géi/	3. Ngóh gājē hahjau léuhng dím géi chēut gāai.
4. Néih agō yehmáahn géidím fàan ūkkéi a? /sahp dím lèhng/	4. Ngóh agō yehmáahn sahp dím lèhng fàan ūkkéi.
5. Néih màhmā kàhmyaht jìu géidím héi sàn a? /baat dím dóu/	5. Ngóh màhmā kàhmyaht jìu baat dím dóu héi sàn.
6. Néih go néui hauhmáahn géidím dākhàahn a? /baatgáu dím dóu/	6. Ngóh go néui hauhmáahn baatgáu dím dóu dākhàahn.

---

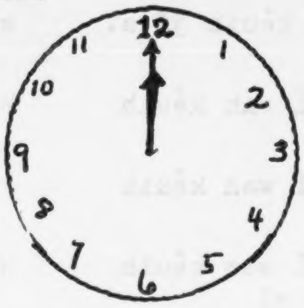
9. **Expansion Drill**

1. jóu	1. early
jóudī	earlier, a bit early
jóudī wah	say earlier
jóudī wah kéuih jì	tell her earlier
dímgáai m̀hjóudī wah kéuih jì a?	why didn't (you) tell her earlier?
Néih dímgáai m̀hjóudī wah kéuih jì a?	Why didn't you tell her earlier?
Néih dímgáai m̀hjóudī wah kéuih jì néih m̀hheui a?	Why didn't you tell her earlier you weren't going?
Néih dímgáai m̀hjóudī wah kéuih jì néih m̀hheuidāk a?	Why didn't you tell her earlier you couldn't go?
Néih dímgáai m̀hjóudī wah kéuih jì néih m̀hheuidāk kéuih douh a?	Why didn't you tell her earlier you couldn't go to her house?
Néih dímgáai m̀hjóudī wah kéuih jì néih m̀hheuidāk kéuih	Why didn't you tell her earlier that you wouldn't

douh dá páai a?	be able to go to her house to play mahjong?
+ 2. yeh	2. late (in the evening)
gam yeh	so late
dímgáai gam yeh a?	why so late?
néih dímgáai gam yeh a?	why are you so late?
néih dímgáai gam yeh tái syù a?	why are you reading so late?
Néih dímgáai gam yeh juhng tái syù a?	How come you're still reading so late?
+ 3. ngaan, (aan)	3. late (in the day)
ngaandī	later
ngaandī heui	go later
ngaandī ji heui	(wait) until later to go
ngaandī ji heui wán kéuih	(wait) until later to go see him
néih ngaandī ji heui wán kéuih dōu m̀hgányiu.	it won't matter if you (wait) until later to go see him.
Ngóh wah néih ngaandī ji heui wán kéuih dōu m̀hgányiu (ge).	I think it won't matter if you (wait till) later to go to see him.
+ 4. chìh	4. late (for an appointment), not on time, tardy
chìh dou	late in arriving
Deuihm̀hjyuh ngóh chìh dou.	Sorry I'm late.

---

10. Response Drill: For the purposes of this drill pretend that it is now 12 o'clock noon.



Ex: 1. T: Néih sáijó sāam meih a? /gàmjìu/	T: Have you washed the clothes yet? /this morning/
S: Sáijó la. Ngóh gàmjìu yíhgìng sáijó la.	S: Yes. I have already washed them this morning.

2. T: Kéuih tongjó tìuh kwàhn meih a? /hahjau/	T: Has she ironed the skirt yet?
S: Juhng meih. Kéuih hahjau ji tong.	S: Not yet, she will iron it in the afternoon.
1. Néih gājē heuijó Tòihbāk meih a? /tìngjìu/	1. Juhng meih. Kéuih tìngjìu ji heui.
2. Néih agō máaihjó boují meih a? /gàmjìu/	2. Máaihjó la. Kéuih gàmjìu yíhgìng máaihjó la.
3. Néih sailóu fàanjó hohk meih a? /hahjau/	3. Juhng meih. Kéuih hahjau ji fàan.
4. Néih saimúi heuijó jouh sàn sāam meih a? /tìngyaht hahjau/	4. Juhng meih. Kéuih tìngyaht hahjau ji heui.
5. Néih néuihpàhngyáuh làihjó meih a? /kàhmyaht jìu/	5. Làihjó la. Kéuih kàhmyaht jìu yíhgìng làihjó la.
6. Néih dī sailóugō máaihjó syù meih a? /kàhmyaht jìu/	6. Máaihjó la. Kéuihdeih kàhmyaht jìu yíhgìng máaihjó la.
7. Néih màhmā jouhjó chēunglím meih a? /tìngmáahn/	7. Juhng meih. Kéuih tìngmáahn ji jouh.
8. Léih Táai fàanjó ūkkéi meih a? /kàhmmáahn/	8. Fàanjó la. Kéuih kàhmmáahn yíhgìng fàanjó la.
9. Néih gùngyàhn nìngjó jèung tói làih meih a? /kàhmmáahn/	9. Nìngjó la. Kéuih kàhmmáahn yíhgìng nìngjó làih la.
+ 10. Néih heuijó ngàhnhòhng meih a? /yātján/ (in a little while)	10. Juhng meih. Ngóh yātján ji heui.
11. Néih dájó dihnwá béi kéuih meih a? /ngāamngāam/ Did you phone him (as I knew you were planning to)?	11. Dájó la. Ngóh ngāamngāam dájó béi kéuih la. Yes, I've just now phoned him.

11. Response Drill: It is now 12 noon. (ngaanjau sahpyih dím)

Ex: 1. T: Ga chē jínghóu meih a? /kàhmyaht jīu/	T: Is the car repaired yet? /yesterday morning/
S: Jínghóu la. Kàhmyaht jīu yíhgīng jínghóujó la.	S: Yes, it was finished yesterday morning.
2. T: Gihn sāam dāk meih a? /hahjau/	T: Is the dress ready yet? /afternoon/
S: Juhng meih dāk bo. Hahjau sīn lā.	S: Still not ready yet. It'll be ready this afternoon.

1. Néih go dihnwá jínghóu meih a? /kàhmmáahn/	1. Jínghóu la. Kàhmmáahn yíhgīng jínghóujó la.
2. Wahjó kéuih jī meih a? /hahjau/	2. Juhng meih wah kéuih jī bo. Hanjau sīn lā.
3. Nīngjó chēutheui meih a? /kàhmyaht jīu/	3. Nīngjó la. Kàhmyaht jīu yíhgīng nīngjó la.
4. Deui hàaih dāk meih a? /tīngyaht hahjau/	4. Juhng meih dāk bo. Tīngyaht hahjau sīn lā.
5. Di chēunglīm dāk meih a? /kàhmyaht jīu/	5. Dāk la. Kàhmyaht jīu yíhgīng dākjó laak.
6. Gihn lāangsāam sáihóu meih a? /tīngmáahn/ Is the sweater ready yet? (said to clerk at dry cleaning establishment)	6. Juhng meih sáihóu bo. Tīngmáahn sīn lā.
+ 7. Jèung tói jíngfàan meih a? /kàhmmáahn/ (fix back to original shape) Have you repaired the table yet? [fix back (to original condition)]	7. Jíngfàan laak. Kàhmmáahn yíhgīng jíngfàan laak.
8. Máaihjó wúndihp meih a? /tīngyaht hahjau/	8. Juhng meih máaih bo. Tīngyaht hahjau sīn lā.

9. Sihkdāk faahn meih a? /yātján/ Is dinner ready? or Are you ready to eat? [able to eat yet? or Eating--is it able to be done yet?]	9. Juhng meih sihkdāk bo. Yātján sīn lā.
10. Heuidāk meih a? /gàmmáahn/ Are you ready to go yet? Can you go yet?	10. Juhng meih heuidāk bo. Gàmmáahn sīn lā.

---

12. Substitution Drill

Ex: 1. T: Ngóhdeih gàmmáahn luhk dím jauh sihk faahn laak. /jóudī/	T: Tonight we'll eat at six o'clock.
S: Ngóhdeih gàmmáahn jóudī sihk faahn.	S: We'll have dinner earlier (than usual) tonight.
2. T: Ngóhdeih gàmmáahn gáu dím bun ji sihk faahn. /yehdī/	T: Tonight we won't eat until 9 o'clock. /later/
S: Ngóhdeih gàmmáahn yehdī sihk faahn.	S: We'll have dinner later (than usual) tonight.

1. Ngóh tīngjīu gáu dím bun ji sihk jóuchāan. /ngaandī/	1. Ngóh tīngjīu ngaandī sihk jóuchāan.
2. Ngóh hahjau sàam dím jauh yám chàh laak. /jóudī/	2. Ngóh hahjau jóudī yám chàh.
3. Ngóh gàmmáahn sahp dím ji chēut gāai. /yehdī/	3. Ngóh gàmmáahn yehdī chēut gāai.
4. Kéuih kàhmyaht jīu luhk dím jauh héi sàn laak. /hóu jóu/	4. Kéuih kàhmyaht jīu hóu jóu héi sàn.
5. Agō kàhmmáahn léuhng dím ji fan gaau. /hóu yeh/	5. Agō kàhmmáahn hóu yeh fan gaau.

---

13. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh láihbaai hái ūkkéi sihk faahn. /hóusíu/	T: I eat at home on Sunday. /very seldom/
S: Ngóh láihbaai hóusíu hái ūkkéi sihk faahn.	S: I don't eat at home much on Sunday.
1. Ngóhdeih láihbaai m̀hhái ūkkéi sihk faahn. /yáuhsìh/	1. Ngóhdeih láihbaai yáuhsìh m̀hhái ūkkéi sihk faahn.
2. Ngóhdeih múih go láihbaai sihk léuhng sàam chi Jùngchoi. /jisíu/	2. Ngóhdeih múih go láihbaai jisíu sihk léuhng sàam chi Jùng choi.
3. Ngóh múih nìhn heui fēigēichèuhng yātchi. /jidò/	3. Ngóh múih nìhn jidò heui fēigēichèuhng yātchi.
4. Kéuih heui wán pàhngyáuh chóh. /hóusíu/	4. Kéuih hóusíu heui wán pàhngyáuh chóh.
5. Ngóh m̀hgeidāk néih ge dihnwá géidō houh. /hóudòsìh/	5. Ngóh hóudòsìh m̀hgeidāk néih ge dihnwá géidō houh.
6. Kéuih gónm̀hchit sihk jóuchāan. + /jīujīu/ (every morning)	6. Kéuih jīujīu dōu gónm̀hchit sihk jóuchāan.
7. Kéuih hóu yeh ji fan. + /máahn máahn/ (every evening)	7. Kéuih máahnmáahn dōu hóu yeh ji fan.

---

14. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh yiu wuhn jèung sahp mān jí.	T: I want to change a ten dollar bill.
S: M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh wuhnjó jèung sahp mān jí lā.	S: Would you please change a ten dollar bill for me?
1. Ngóh yiu tong tìuh kwàhn.	1. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh tongjó tìuh kwàhn lā.
2. Ngóh yiu sái dī sāam.	2. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh sáijó dī sāam lā.
3. Ngóh yiu jouh gihn sēutsāam. /jouhhóu/	3. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh jouhhóu gihn sēutsāam lā.
4. Ngóh yiu sái go chisó.	4. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh sáijó go chisó lā.
5. Ngóh yiu jouh dī chēunglím.	5. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh jouhjó dī chēunglím lā.

6. Ngóh yiu bùn jèung tói chēutheui.	6. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh bùnjó jèung tói chēutheui lā.
+ 7. Ngóh yiu gwa tìuh kwàhn. /gwahóu/ (hang up)	7. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh gwahóu tìuh kwàhn lā. Please hang the skirt up for me.

---

15. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Ga chē gam gauh, hàahng m̀hhàahngdāk a? /nod/	T: That car is so old--can it run?
S: Hàahngdāk gé.	S: Sure it can!
2. T: Ngóhdeih tìngyaht chéng haak, néih làih m̀hlàihdāk a? /shake/	T: We're having company for dinner tomorrow. Can you come?
S: M̀hlàihdāk bo.	S: I'm sorry I can't.

1. Néih ūkkéi chìhnbihn paak m̀hpaakdāk chē a? /nod/	1. Paakdāk gé.
2. Kàhmmáahn gam dung, néih fan m̀hfandāk a? /shake/	2. M̀hfandāk bo.
3. Kéuihdeih tìngmáahn chéng haak, néih heui m̀hheuidāk a? /nod/	3. Heuidāk gé.
4. Gódī tòng gam yiht, néih yám m̀hyámdāk a? /nod/	4. Yámdāk gé.
5. Gihn sēutsāam gam sai, néih jeuk m̀hjeukdāk a? /shake/	5. M̀hjeukdāk bo.
6. Néih yāt go jūngtàuh duhk m̀hduhkdāk yāt baak yihp a? /shake/	6. M̀hduhkdāk bo.

---

16. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh yáuh gam dò chín, yātdihng máaihdāk hóudò yéh. /móuh géidò/	T: I have so much money, I can buy a lot. /not much/
S: Ngóh móuh géidò chín, m̀hmáaihdāk hóudò yéh.	S: I don't have much money, I can't buy much.
1. Gógàan jáudím gam daaih, yāt-dihng jyuhdāk géi baak yàhn. /gam sai/ The hotel is so large it can accommodate several hundred people.	1. Gógàan jáudim gam sai, m̀hjyuhdāk géi baak yàhn.
2. Nī go fēigēichèuhng gam daaih, yātdihng tìhngdāk hóudò (ga) fēigēi. /gam sai/	2. Nī go fēigēi chèuhng gam sai, m̀htìhngdāk géidò fēigēi.
3. Néih ga chē gam daaih, yāt-dihng chóhdāk baat go yàhn. /gam sai/	3. Néih ga chē gam sai, m̀h-chóhdāk baat go yàhn.
4. Ngòh tìngyaht móuh yéh jouh, yātdihng heuidāk wán Hòh Síujé chóh. /m̀hdākhàahn/	4. Ngóh tìngyaht m̀hdākhàahn, m̀hheuidāk wán Hòh Síujé chóh.
5. Gàmyaht gam yiht, yātdihng heuidāk yàuhséui. /gam dung/	5. Gàmyaht gam dung, m̀hheuidāk yàuhséui.
6. Kéuih yáuh duhk syù, yātdihng bātdāk yihp. /móuh duhk syù/	6. Kéuih móuh duhk syù, m̀hbāt-dāk yihp.

---

17. Response Drill: Answer in the negative.

Ex: T: Yauh gam dò yéh, sihk m̀hsihkdāk-saai a?	T: There's *so much stuff, can you* eat it all?
S: Gam dò yéh, m̀hsihkdāk saai bo.	S: There's so much stuff, I can't eat it all.
1. Yáuh gam dò yéh, **jouh m̀hjouhdāk** saai a?	1. Yáuh gam dò yéh, m̀hjouhdāk saai bo.
2. Yáuh gam dò sāam, **sái m̀hsáidāk** saai a?	2. Yáu gam dò sāam, m̀hsáidāk saai bo.
3. Ga chē gam gauh, **jing m̀hjíngdāk** hóu a?	3. Ga chē gam gauh, m̀hjíngdāk hóu bo.
4. Gihn sāam gam laahttaat, sái m̀hsáidāk gònjehng a?	4. Gihn sāam gam laahttaat, m̀hsáidāk gònjehng bo.

5. Tìuh kwàhn gam chàauh, tong ǹhtongdāk fàan a?	5. Tìuh kwàhn gam chàauh, ǹhtongdāk fàan bo.
6. Go yan gam daaih, sái ǹhsáidāk dōu a?	6. Go yan gam daaih, ǹhsáidāk dōu bo.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

1) sái sāambouh - laundry department
2) fan ngaandī - sleep late, i.e., get up later (than usual)
3) chùnglèuhng - take a bath, take a shower
4) chùnglèuhngfóng - bathroom
5) māt - here: dīmgáai?
6. jihgéi - yourself
7) Gám dím dāk ga? - That way, how (is it) OK? i.e., How could that be? How could you allow such?
8) yeuhngyeuhng - everything
9) Luhk jé - The family's name for the servant. The luhk part is taken from one of the 3 characters in her name (maybe Luhk Siuyīng or Chàhn Ngáh-luhk) and the jé part means 'elder sister'.
10) gón - in a hurry; gón ǹhgónjyuh? - Are you in a hurry?
11) Sihkdāk faahn meih? - Can we eat yet?
12) ǹhhaih - otherwise, if not,...

V. *SAY IT IN CANTONESE*

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:	B. And he replies:
1. This shirt is very dirty--would you get it washed for me?	1. All right. (I'll) bring it back tomorrow--OK?
2. This skirt is very wrinkled--would you press it for me?	2. I'm very busy right now--I'll press it this afternoon, would that be all right?
3. There's a spot here on my tie--do you think it can be washed clean?	3. Probably it can't be washed clean.

4. What time do you want dinner tonight?	4. Tonight we're going to go to the movies, so we'd like to eat a bit early.
5. It was very late last night before I went to bed.	5. I went to bed late too.
6. Please excuse my late arrival--I got up late this morning.	6. That's all right. I've just arrived.
7. I get up every morning at 7:30.	7. I get up every morning at 6:30.
8. Every evening after dinner I study Cantonese.	8. You're very industrious!
9. Did he arrive the day before yesterday?	9. No, he arrived yesterday morning.
10. Have you hung up the clothes?	10. Not yet--in just a minute!
11. Is there any toilet paper in the john?	11. There is, I just brought some in.
12. Can you get it fixed by tomorrow?	12. Can't get it fixed by tomorrow--it'll be day after tomorrow.
13. Do you study in the morning or at night?	13. I study in the morning and at night too.
14. Does the gentleman have any further instructions? (said by bellboy to hotel guest)	14. Would you please bring another towel and a bar of soap.
15. We go to bed quite early every night.	15. We go to bed comparatively late.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 23

1. [illegible]	adj:	wrinkled
2. chìh	adj:	late (for an appointment)
3. chijí	n:	toilet paper
4. chìhnjìu	TW:	day before yesterday in the morning
5. chìhnmáahnhāk	TW:	night before last
6. chìhnyaht	TW:	day before yesterday
7. dāan	n:	list
8. fānfu	n/v:	instructions
9. fāangáan	n:	soap
10. fan(gaau)	V(O):	go to bed, sleep

11. gàmjīu	TW:	this morning
12. gàmmáahn	TW:	tonight
13. gàmyaht hahjau	TW:	this afternoon
14. gàmyaht ngaanjau	TW:	this morning; today around noon
15. gauh	m:	bar; M. for soap
16. giuséng	v:	wake (someone) up [call-wake]
17. gōnjehng	adj:	clean
18. gwa	v:	hang (something) up
19. *gwahóu	v:	hang (something) up
20. hahjau	TW:	afternoon
21. hauhmáahn	TW:	day after tomorrow night
22. hauhyaht	TW:	the day after tomorrow
23. hóu chíh	Ph:	it seems, it looks like, probably, very likely...
24. jíngfàan	v:	fix back to original shape
25. jīujīu	AdvPh:	every morning
26. jīujóu		morning
27. jóu	adj:	early
28. kàhmmáahn	TW:	last night
29. kàhmyaht hahjau	TW:	yesterday afternoon
30. kàhmyaht jīu	TW:	yesterday morning
31. kàhmyaht ngaanjau	TW:	yesterday noon
32. laahttaat	adj:	dirty
33. máahn	BF:	night
34. máahnmáahn	adv:	every evening
35. mòuhgàn	n:	towel(s)
36. (ng)aan	adj:	late (in the day)
37. (ng)aanjau	TW:	around noon; morning
38. sāamgá	n:	coat hanger
39. sái	v:	wash
40. sáidākchit	VPh:	able to get it washed in time
41. séfàan	v:	write and return
42. séng	v:	wake up
43. sihjái	n:	roomboy (in hotel)
44. tīngjīu	TW:	tomorrow morning

45. tìngmáahn	TW:	tomorrow night
46. tìngyaht hahjau	TW:	tomorrow afternoon
47. tìngyaht ngaanjau	TW:	tomorrow morning around noon
48. tong	v:	iron, press
49. yan	n:	spot
50. yātján	advP:	in a little while, in just a little while
51. yàuhhaak	n:	tourist
52. yeh	adj:	late (in the evening)
53. yehmáahn	TW:	at night

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(At home one hot summer afternoon Mrs. Brown, realizing she is thirsty, says:)

Bàau Táai

Yám bùi chàh ji dāk.	I'll have a cup of tea--that'll do it. (i.e., the tea will take care of the thirst)
chùng chàh	make tea, steep tea
wùh	pot, container, Measure
chùng wùh chàh	make a pot of tea
A Sei, m̀hgòi néih chùng wùh chàh béi ngóh lā.	A Sei, would you please make me a pot of tea?

(A Sei brings the tea into the living room:)

A Sei

Taaitáai	here: 'ma'am,' 'Missy,' 'Madam.' (term used by servant in foreign household to address mistress of the house)
Hái bīndouh yám a?, Taaitáai?	Where would you like to drink it ma'am?

Bàau Táai

kèhláu	veranda, terrace
Kèhláu lèuhngdī, chēutheui kèhláu lā.	It's cooler on the veranda--I'll go out to the veranda.

A Sei

wúih	like to, going to (strong possibility)
lohkyúh	to rain [fall-rain]
Hóu chíh wúih lohkyúh bo.	It looks like it's going to rain.

Bàau Táai

haaktēng	living room

Gám, jauh hái haaktēng nīdouh lā.	Well, here in the living room then.

A Sei

jài	put, place
Jài hái nī jèung tói, hóu m̀hhóu a?	I'll put it on this table, is that all right?

Bàau Táai

Hóu lā.	Fine.
A! Jànhaih lohkyúh tìm bo!	Oh-oh, it is raining!
chēung	window
sàan	close, shut
sàan chēung	close windows
Sàanjó dī chēung lā.	Please close the windows.
M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh heui sàanjó dī chēung sin lā.	Please go close the windows for me first.
faaidī	right away, hurry and ...
M̀hgòi néih faaidī tùhng ngóh heui sàanjó dī chēung sin lā.	Please hurry and close the windows for me.

(The servant and housewife both go around closing windows, then return to the living room. A Sei feels the teapot and notes that it is cold:)

A Sei

dungjó	has become cold
Dī chàh dungjó laak.	The tea's gotten cold.
chùng wùh yiht chàh	make a pot of hot tea
chùng wùh yiht go	make a hot one [make pot hot one]
chùnggwo	make another [steep-change]
chùnggwo wùh yiht go	make another hot one (i.e., as replacement)
Dáng ngóh tùhng néih chùnggwo wùh yiht go lā.	Let me make you another hot one.

Bàau Táai

M̀hgòi.	Thanks.
hóusáng a!	be careful!

dóusé	spill
Hóuséng a, ǹhhóu dóusé a!	Be careful! Don't spill it!

A Sei

Baihlaak! or Baihlok!	exclamation of surprise
Baihlaak! Jànhaih dóusé tím!	Blast! I did spill it!

Bàau Táai

faai	piece, Measure
faai bou	a cloth, a piece of material
maat	wipe, polish; wet-mop
Faaidī nīng faai bou làih maat lā.	Hurry and get a cloth to wipe it up.
dit	drop
laahn	break
ditlaahn	break by dropping
hóuchói	luckily, 'Thank goodness'
Hóuchói...jē	It's lucky that ...
Hóuchói móuh ditlaahn jek būi jē.	It's lucky that you didn't break the cup.

B. Recapitulation:

(At home one hot summer afternoon Mrs. Brown, realizing she is thirsty, says:)

Bàau Táai

Yám būi chàh ji dāk.	I'll have a cup of tea--that'll do it. (i.e., the tea will take care of the thirst)
A Sei, ǹhgòi néih chūng wùh chàh béi ngóh lā.	A Sei, would you make me a pot of tea please?

(A Sei brings the tea into the living room:)

A Sei

Hái bīndouh yám a?, Taaitáai?	Where would you like to drink it, ma'am?

Bàau Táai

Kèhlàuh lèuhngdī, chēutheui kèhlàuh lā.	It's cooler on the veranda--I'll go out to the veranda.

A Sei	
Hóu chíh wúih lohkyúh bo.	It looks like it's going to rain.
Bàau Táai	
Gám, jauh hái haaktēng nīdouh lā.	Well, here in the living room then.
A Sei	
Jài hái nī jèung tói, hóu m̀hhóu a?	I'll put it on this table, is that all right?
Bàau Táai	
Hóu lā.	Fine.
A! Jànhaih lohkyúh tìm bo!	Oh-oh, it is raining!
M̀hgòi néih faaidī tùhng ngóh heui sàanjó dī chēung sìn lā.	Please hurry and go close the windows for me.

(The servant and housewife both go around closing windows, then return to the living room. A Sei feels the teapot and notes that it is cold:)

A Sei	
Dī chàh dungjó laak.	The tea's gotten cold.
Dáng ngóh tùhng néih chùnggwo wùh yiht ge lā.	Let me make you another hot one.
Bàau Táai	
M̀hgòi.	Thanks.
Hóusēng a, m̀hhóu dóusé a!	Be careful! Don't spill it!
A Sei	
Baihlaak! Jànhaih dóusé tìm!	Blast! I did spill it!
Bàau Táai	
Faaidī nìng faai bou làih maat lā.	Hurry and get a cloth to wipe it up.
Hóuchói móuh ditlaahn jek būi jē.	At least it's lucky you didn't break the cup.

II. NOTES

1. wúih, 'likely to,' '(probably) will'

wúih is an auxiliary verb, in a full sentence having a verb as its object. It is used in prediction sentences, indicating strong probability: 'likely to,' 'probably will.' 'could be that___.'

Ex: wúih lohk yúh = likely to rain

1. Gàmyaht wúih lohkyúh ga. It's going to rain today.
   or: It's likely to rain today.
2. Gàmyaht m̀hwùih lohkyúh ge. It's not going to rain today.
3. Gàmyaht wúih m̀hwúih lohkyúh a? Is it going to rain today?

(See BC and Drill 6)

The underlying meaning of wuih is 'able to,' 'capable of,' in the sense of 'in one's power to _V_,' 'possible for one to _V_.' This connotation emerges when wúih is used to detail past or present capability:

Ex: 1. A: Nī dī cháang hái Wèihòhng máaihjó sei hòuhjí go. — These oranges (I) bought at Wellcome Company for 40 apiece.

B: Hái Jùngwàahn Gàaisíh máaih, waahkjé wúih pèhngdī. — Buying at Central Market, probably would be cheaper.

2. A: Nī dī cháang yìhgā sei hòuhjí go. — These oranges are now 40 apiece.

B: Séuhnggo láihbaai wúih pèhngdī. — Last week (one was) able to (get them) cheaper.

(Students who have previously studied Mandarin will recognize the Cantonese wúih as cognate to Mandarin hwèi, 'can;' 'know how to.' Note that Mandarin would use hwèi in the sentence patterns detailed above, but that the Mandarin meaning of hwèi as 'know how to' is represented in Cantonese by sīk, 'know how to.')

2. jài, 'put,' 'place,' is a verb which requires a following place phrase object or verb suffix:

Ex: 1. jài + place phrase:

a. Jài hái nīdouh. — Put it here.
b. Jài hái tói douh. — Put it on the table.
c. Jài hái kehlau. — Put it on the verandah.

2. jài + suffix

a. Jàidài lā.	Put it down.
b. Jàimàaih dī sāam lā.	Put the clothes away.

(See BC and Drills 1.7, 1.8, 9)

3. faaidī in pre-verb and post-verb position.

In pre-verb position faaidī means either, 1) 'hurry up and Verb,' or 2) 'Verb faster'

Ex: Faaidī sihk a. = 1. Hurry up and eat. (We have to catch a train, hurry up and start eating.)

or:

2. Eat faster. (Stop dawdling.)

(See BC)

When faaidī follows the verb, there is only one interpretation, 'Verb faster.'

Ex: Sihk faaidī! = Eat faster!

4. Sentence suffix la for friendly advice.

la is suffixed to imperative sentences, giving the connotation of low-keyed friendly advice. (Remember we use imperative to mean a sentence which directs an addressee to act, and is not limited to sentences giving commands.) Imperative suffix la in mid-pitch intonation is similar to imperative suffix lā with high-pitched intonation. Mid-pitched la suggests low-keyed advice, in contrast to high-pitched lā, which suggests polite urging.

(See Drill 15)

5. Hóuchoi . . . jē. 'At least it's lucky that.....'

The jē of Hóuchoi...jē indicates: 'it's not much (to be thankful for), but it's something.'

(See BC and Drill 14)

6. Adjective-jó, 'has gotten Adjective,' 'got Adjective.'

Compare:

1. Dī tòng m̀hhóuyám ge, dung gé.	The soup doesn't taste good-- it's cold.
2. Dī tòng dungjó, m̀hhóuyám ge.	The soup has gotten cold-- it doesn't taste good.

Adjective-jó views the condition described by the adjective as the end result of a process. The adjective without -jó is descriptive of a static state.

Ex: dungjó = has gotten cold, got cold
sāpjó = got wet
gauhjó = has gotten old (things, not people)
chàauhjó = got wrinkled

(See BC and Drill 11)

English too has ways of expressing the condition described by an adjective in terms of a static state, or the end result of a process.

Compare: 1. It is cold.
It has turned cold.

2. It is damp.
It has gotten damp.

7. -gwo-, 'another (as replacement for the original, in exchange for the original)'

gwo, attached to a verb preceding and a Measure following, has the meaning 'another,' 'other,' in the sense of a replacement (or replacements) for the original Measure.

gwo, 'another, others' in the sense of a replacement, contrasts with dò, 'another,' 'others' in the sense of an additional one (or ones).

Ex: V gwo M = V a replacement M
V dò M = V an additional M

Compare:

1. Dī chàh dungjó-- chùng gwo wùh làih lā.	The tea's gotten cold-- please make a replacement potful and bring it.
2. Dī chàh yámsaai laak-- chùng dò wùh làih lā.	The tea's all drunk up. Please make an additional potful and bring it.

(See BC and Drill 13)

8. làih, 'for the purpose of,' 'in order to,' 'to'

làih connects two verb phrases: $V(O)_1$ làih $V(O)_2$, with the meaning:

$$'V(O)_1 \left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{in order to}\\ \text{for the purpose of}\\ \text{to}\\ \text{so that one can}\end{array}\right\} V(O)_2'$$

Ex:

1. Nìng faai bou làih maat.	Bring a cloth to wipe (it up).
2. Néih máaih béng làih jouh mēyéh a?	What did you buy cookies for?
3. Ngóh máaih dī béng làih sihk.	I bought cookies to eat.
4. Kéuih máaih hóudò choi làih chéng haak.	She bought a lot of food to have a dinner party.

(See Drill 10)

9. Performance-achievement verb compounds

Ex:

1. ditlaahn	drop-break	= break
2. chóhlaahn (jeung yí)	sit-break (the chair)	= break
3. chóhlaahn (tìuh fu)	sit-break (the trousers)	= tear, rip
4. dálaahn	hit-break	= break
5. dousé	come to the brim-overflow	= spill

a. The first verb of a performance-achievement verb compound tells what action is performed, the second one tells what the result is:

Ex:

dálaahn	hit and break
chóhlaahn	sit and break
ditlaahn	drop and break

b. In sentences of past reference, the performance-achievement compound verbs pattern like single verbs.

Forms: affirmative: VV-jó
negative : móuh VV
choice ques: yáuh móuh VV?

Ex: dálaahn = hit and break

a	Kéuih dálaahnjó jek būi.	She broke the cup.
n	Kéuih móuh dálaahn jek būi.	She didn't break the cup.
q	Yáuh móuh dálaahn jek būi a?	Did she break the cup?

c. The dāk, 'can,' pattern with performance-achievement compounds. This pattern is like, indeed it is the same as, the V-dāk-Adj = 'can V with Adj results' construction studied in Lesson 23.

Ex: dádāklaahn = [hit-can-break], i.e., able to break by hitting; can be broken by hitting; breakable

a	V-dāk-Adj	Nī jek būi dádāklaahn.	This glass is breakable. [hit-can-break]
n	mhV-dāk-Adj or V-mh-Adj	Nī jek būi mhdádāklaahn. or Nī jek būi dámhlaahn.	This glass is unbreakable.
q	VmhV-dāk-Adj	Nī jek būi dá mhdádāklaahn a?	Is this glass breakable?

d. In sentences of customary action, not referring to a specific event.

For customary action the performance-achievement compound tends to be phrased in the affirmative, with frequency expressions such as hóu síu, 'very seldom' suggesting the negative, and with the question formed by haih mhhaih preceding the affirmative.

Ex:	1. Kéuih sìhsìh dōu dálaahn yéh ge.	She always breaks things.
	2. Kéuih hóu síu dálaahn yéh ge.	She very seldom breaks things.
	3. Kéuih haihmhhaih sìhsìh dōu dálaahn yéh ge?	Does she break things all the time?

e. jíng, 'fix,' 'do,' 'make,' may be the first verb of a performance-achievement verb compound, substituting for a verb of specific means.

Ex: 1. chóhlaahn = [sit-break], i.e., 'tear (cloth by sitting on it),' 'break (a chair by sitting in it),' etc.

jínglaahn = [make-break], i.e., 'break' (without saying how)

2. chóhjāumāng = [sit-wrinkled], i.e. 'get (something) wrinkled by sitting on it'

jíngjāumāng = [make-wrinkled], i.e., 'get something wrinkled' (without saying how)

III. DRILLS

1. Expansion Drill

+ 1. a. faahntēng	dining room
b. hái faahntēng	in the dining room
c. hái faahntēng sihk faahn	is eating in the dining room
d. m̀hhái faahntēng sihk faahn	isn't eating in the dining room
e. hái m̀hhái faahntēng sihk faahn a?	is (he) eating in the dining room?
+ 2. a. chyùhfóng	kitchen
b. hái chyùhfóng	in the kitchen
c. hái chyùhfóng gódouh	there in the kitchen
d. hái chyùhfóng gódouh jyú faahn	is in the kitchen there cooking dinner.
+ 3. a. seuihfóng	bedroom
b. go seuihfóng	a bedroom
c. géi(dō) go seuihfóng a?	how many bedrooms?
d. yáuh géi(dō) go seuihfóng a?	has how many bedrooms?
e. Néih ngūkkéi yáuh géi(dō) go seuihfóng a?	How many bedrooms does your house have?
+ 4. a. syùfóng	[book-room] study
b. hái syùfóng	in the study
c. hái syùfóng tái boují	in the study reading the newspaper
d. Kéuih hái syùfóng tái boují	He is in the study reading the paper.
e. Kéuih hái syùfóng táiháh boují a, duhkháh syù a, séháh jih a, gám lā.	In his study he reads the newspaper, studies, writes, that sort of things.
+ 5. a. lauhdài	leave (something) behind
b. lauhdài hái bāsí	left on the bus
c. lauhdài hái bāsí tīm	left it on the bus
d. Bá jē lauhdài hái bāsí tīm.	The umbrella (I) left on the bus!
e. Aiyah! Bá jē lauhdài hái bāsí tīm!	Aiyah! The umbrella (I) left on the bus!
6. a. lohkyúh	to rain [fall-rain]

	b.	hóu síu lohk yúh	seldom rains
	c.	Sahp yuht hóu síu lohk yúh	seldom rains in October
	d.	Hái Hèunggóng Sahp yuht hóu síu lohk yúh.	It seldom rains in October in Hong Kong.
	e.	Tèngginwah hái Hèunggóng Sahp yuht hóusíu lohkyúh haih m̀hhaih a?	I hear that in Hong Kong it seldom rains in October--is that right?
+ 7.	a.	tokpún	tray
	b.	go tokpún	a/the tray
	c.	go tokpún hái bīndouh a?	Where is the tray?
	d.	go tokpún jài hái bīndouh a?	Where (should I) put the tray? or Where has the tray been put?
	e.	go tokpún jàijó hái bīndouh a?	Where has the tray been put?
	f.	Go tokpún jàijó hái bīndouh—ngóh tái m̀hdóu ge.	Where has the tray been put-I don't see it. (or Where did you put the tray?)
+ 8.	a.	syùtói	desk
	b.	hái syùtói	on the desk
	c.	hái syùtói gódouh	on the desk there
	d.	jàijó hái syùtói gódouh	has been put there on the desk
	e.	Tokpún jàijó hái syùtói gódouh.	The tray (I) put on the desk there. (or--in another context--this could be a command: Put the tray on the desk there.)
9.	a.	chùng chàh chēutlàih	make tea and bring it out
	b.	chùng wùh chàh chēutlàih	make a pot of tea and bring it out
	c.	gùngyàhn chùng wùh chàh cheutlàih.	the servant made a pot of tea and brought it out.
	d.	giu gùngyàhn chùng wùh chàh cheutlàih.	tell the servant to make a pot of tea and bring it out.
	e.	yahpheui giu gùngyàhn chùng wùh chàh chēutlàih.	go in to tell the servant to make a pot of tea and bring it out.
	f.	ngóh yahpheui giu gùngyàhn chùng wùh chàh chēutlàih.	I went in to tell the servant to make a pot of tea and bring it out.

g. Dáng ngóh yahpheui giu gùngyàhn chùng wùh chàh chēutlàih.	I'll go in and tell the servant to make a pot of tea and bring it out.

2. Substitution Drill

1. Kèhláu hái bīndouh a? Where is the veranda?	1. Kèhláu hái bīndouh a?
2. /haaktēng/	2. Haaktēng hái bīndouh a?
3. /chisó/	3. Chisó hái bīndouh a?
4. /faahntēng/	4. Faahntēng hái bīndouh a? Where is the dining room?
5. /seuihfóng/	5. Seuihfóng hái bīndouh a? Where is the bedroom?
6. /haaktēng/	6. Haaktēng hái bīndouh a?
7. /syùfóng/	7. Syùfóng hái bīndouh a? Where is the study?
8. /chyùhfóng/	8. Chyùhfóng hái bīndouh a? Where is the kitchen?
+ 9. /chùnglèuhngfóng/ (bathroom; i.e. room for bathing)	9. Chùnglèuhngfóng hái bīndouh a?
+ 10. /Néih gàan fóng/ (your room)	10. Néih gàan fóng hái bīndouh a?

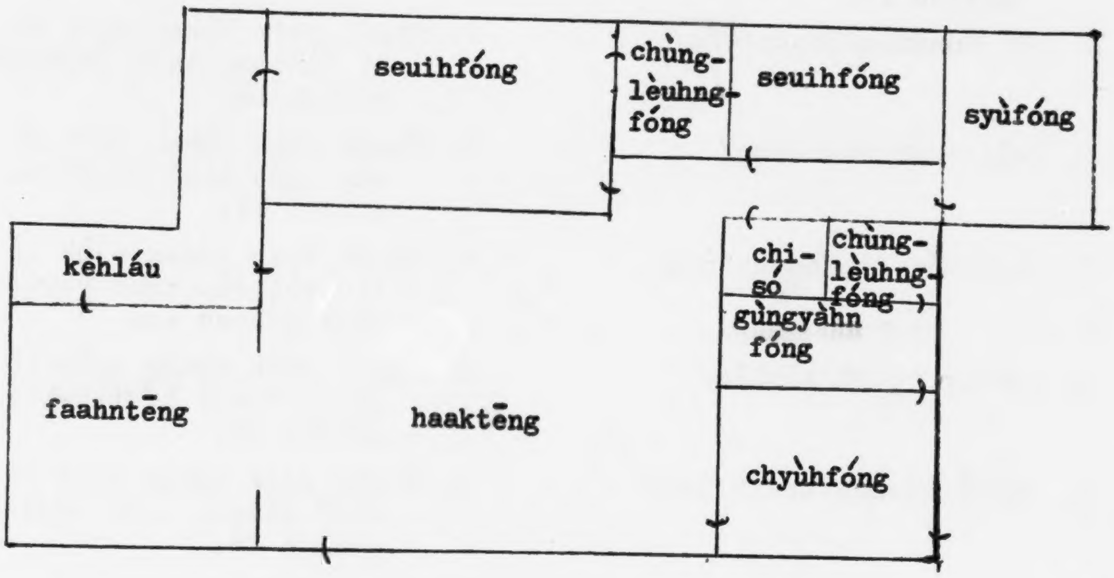
3. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Bún syù hái syùfóng.	T: The book is in the study.
S: Jài bún syù hái syùfóng lā.	S: Please put the book in the study.
1. Jek chàhbūi hái ngóh nīdouh.	1. Jài jek chàhbūi hái ngóh nīdouh lā.
2. Wùh chàh hái haaktēng yahpbihn.	2. Jài wuh chàh hái haaktēng yahpbihn lā.
3. Jèung tói hái kèhláu chēutbihn.	3. Jài jèung tói hái kèhláu cheutbihn lā.
4. Deui hàaih hái jèung yí hauhbihn. The shoes are behind the chair.	4. Jài deui hàaih hái jèung yí hauhbihn lā. Please put the shoes behind the chair.

5. Jèung boují hái chisó yahpbihn.	5. Jài jèung boují hái chisó yahpbihn lā.
6. Go tokpún hái tói douh.	6. Jài go tokpún hái tói douh lā.
+ 7. Dī sàam hái chòhng gódouh. (bed)	7. Jài dī sàam hái chòhng gódouh lā. Put the clothes there on the bed, would you.

---

4. Expansion Drill



Ex: T: Nìng chēutheui kèhláu lā. /dī chàh/	T: Take (it) out on the veranda.
S: Nìng dī chàh chēutheui kèhláu lā.	S: Take the tea out on the veranda.
1. Nìng chēutheui haaktēng lā. /dī būi-díp/	1. Nìng dī būi-díp chēutheui haaktēng lā.
2. Nìng chēutheui kèhláu lā. /jèung yí/	2. Nìng jèung yí chēutheui kèhláu lā.
3. Nìng chēutheui chyùhfóng lā. /go tokpún/	3. Nìng go tokpún chēutheui chyùhfóng lā.
4. Nìng chēutlàih kèhláu lā. /jèung boují/	4. Nìng jèung boují chēutlàih kèhláu lā.
5. Nìng séuhngheui làuhseuhng lā. /go sāamgá/	5. Nìng go sāamgá séuhngheui làuhseuhng lā.

6. Nìng lohkheui làuhhah lā. /dī chijí/	6. Nìng dī chijí lohkheui làuhhah lā.
7. Nìng lohklàih mùhnháu lā. /dī syù/	7. Nìng dī syù lohklàih mùhnháu lā.

5. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh ló gauh fàangáan heui chyùhfóng gódouh lā.	1. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh ló gauh fàangáan heui chyùhfóng gódouh lā.
2. /dī wúndihp/faahntēng/	2. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh ló dī wúndihp heui faahntēng gódouh lā.
3. /wùh chàh/haaktēng/	3. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh ló wùh chàh heui haaktēng gódouh lā.
4. /tou būi-díp/chyùhfóng/	4. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh ló tou būi-díp heui chyùhfóng gódouh lā.
5. /jèung boují/kèhláu/	5. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh ló jèung boují heui kèhláu gódouh lā.
6. /nīdī sāamgá/seuihfóng/	6. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh ló nīdī sāamgá heui seuihfóng gódouh lā.

6. Response Drill

Ex: 1.	T: Néih wah tìngyaht wúih m̀hwúih yiht a? /nod/	T: Do you think it's likely to be hot tomorrow?
	S: Ngóh wah tìngyaht yātdihng wúih yiht ge.	S: I think it certainly will.
2.	T: Néih tìngjìu wúih m̀hwúih heui ngàhnhòhng a? /shake/	T: Are you likely to go to the bank tomorrow morning?
	S: Ngóh tìngjìu m̀hwúih heui ngàhnhòhng.	S: It's very unlikely that I'll go to the bank tomorrow morning.

1. Néih wah nīpáai wúih m̀hwúih dung a? /shake/ Do you think it will be cold these few days?	1. Ngóh wah nīpáai m̀hwúih dung. I don't think it will be cold these few days.
2. Néih hahjau wúih m̀hwúih heui taam kéuih a? /nod/	2. Ngóh hahjau yātdihng wúih heui ge.
3. Néih nīgo láihbaai wúih m̀hwúih chéng sihk faahn a? /wah m̀hdihng/	3. Wah m̀hdihng bo. Ngóh nī go láihbaai waahkjé wúih chéng, waahkjé m̀h chéng.
4. Kéuih tīngyaht hahjau wúih m̀hwúih dá màhjéuk a? /wah m̀hdihng/	4. Wah m̀hdihng bo. Kéuih tīngyaht hahjau waahkjé wúih dá, waahkjé m̀hdá .
5. Néih gàmyaht hahjau wúih m̀hwúih sái sāam a? /shake/	5. Ngóh gàmyaht hahjau m̀hwúih sái sāam.
6. Néih gàmmáahn wúih m̀hwúih tái dihnsih a? /nod/	6. Ngóh gàmmáahn yātdihng wúih tái dihnsih ge.

---

7. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: tong kwàhn	T: press a skirt
S: M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh tongjó tìuh kwàhn lā.	S: Please press this skirt for me.
1. sái deui maht	1. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh sáijó deui maht lā.
2. hòi go chēung	2. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh hòi jó go chēung lā.
+ 3. hòi douh mùhn hòi = open douh = M. for doors mùhn = door	3. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh hòijó douh mùhn lā. Please open the door for me.
4. sái jek būi	4. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh sáijó jek būi lā.
5. maat jèung tói	5. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh maatjó jèung tói lā.
6. chùng wùh chàh	6. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh chùngjó wùh chàh lā.
7. gwa tìuh fu	7. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh gwa jó tìuh fu lā.

8. sàan go chēung	8. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh sàanjó go chēung lā.
+ 9. sàan douh mùhn	9. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh sàanjó douh mùhn lā.

8. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Nīdouh yáuh jèung yāt baak mān jī. /cheung/	T: Here is a $100 bill.
S: Nīdouh yáuh jèung yāt baak mān jī, m̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh cheungjó kéuih lā.	S: Here is a $100 bill, please change it for me.
1. Nīdouh yáuh tìuh kwàhn. /tong/	1. Nīdouh yáuh tìuh kwàhn, m̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh tongjó kéuih lā.
2. Nīdouh yáuh gihn sāam. /sái/	2. Nīdouh yáuh gihn sāam, m̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh sáijó kéuih lā.
3. Nīdouh dóusé séui. /maat/	3. Nīdouh dóusé séui, m̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh maatjó kéuih lā.
4. Nīdouh yáuh dī yú. /jyú/	4. Nīdouh yáuh dī yú, m̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh jyújó kéuih lā.

9. Alteration Drill: Change ning...heui to jài...hái

Ex: T: Néih ningjó dī chín heui bīndouh a?	T: Where did you take the money?
S: Néih jàijó dī chín hái bīndouh a?	S: Where did you put the money?
1. Néih ningjó tìuh mòuhgān heui bīndouh a?	1. Néih jàijó tìuh mòuhgān hái bīndouh a?
2. Néih ningjó gauh fàangáan heui bīndouh a?	2. Néih jàijó gauh fàangáan hái bīndouh a?
3. Néih ningjó dī gāng heui bīndouh a?	3. Néih jàijó dī gāng hái bīndouh a?

+ 4. Néih nīngjó jèung jóu bou heui bīndouh a? (morning paper)	4. Néih jàijó jèung jóu bou hái bīndouh a?
5. Néih nīngjó wùh chàh heui bīndouh a?	5. Néih jàijó wùh chàh hái bīndouh a?

---

10. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Heui chāansāt máaih dī béng làih sihk.	T: I'm going to the restaurant to buy some cookies to eat.
S: Dáng ngóh heui chāansāt máaih dī béng + làih sihk ji dāk. (làih = for the purpose of, in order to, to)	S: I'll go to the restaurant to buy some cookies to eat, that'll do it. (dissatisfied, but thinking of a solution to the problem.)

1. Heui syùfóng ló bún syù làih tái.	1. Dáng ngóh heui syùfóng ló bún syù làih tái ji dāk.
2. Heui kèhláu ló jèung yī làih chóh.	2. Dáng ngóh heui kèhláu ló jèung yī làih chóh ji dāk.
3. Heui chyùhfóng ló bùi dung séui làih yám.	3. Dáng ngóh heui chyùhfóng ló bùi dung séui làih yám ji dāk.
4. Heui chisó ló faai bou làih maat.	4. Dáng ngóh heui chisó ló faai bou làih maat ji dāk.
5. Heui seuihfóng ló tīuh kwàhn làih tong.	5. Dáng ngóh heui seuihfóng ló tīuh kwàhn làih tong ji dāk.
6. Heui seuihfóng ló go sàamgá làih gwa.	6. Dáng ngóh heui seuihfóng ló go sàamgá làih gwa ji dāk.

Comment: làih as used above joins two VP, to form the construction: VP_1 in order to VP_2. That this is not a heuilàih use of làih is demonstrated in the following sentence:

Béi jèung boují làih táiháh.	Give (me) the paper to read.

---

11. Response Drill

+ Ex: T: Jouhmāt néih m̀hyám gó bui gāfē a? /dung/	T: How come you're not drinking that cup of coffee?
S: Būi gāfē dungjó laak.	S: (Because) it has gotten cold already.
1. Jouhmāt néih m̀hdaai gó go bīu a? /laahn/ + daai bīu = wear a watch Why don't you wear that watch?	1. Go bīu laahnjó la. (Because) it's broken.
2. Jouhmāt néih m̀hjeuk gó deui hàaih a? /sāp/	2. Gó deui sāpjó la.
3. Jouhmāt néih m̀hmáaih gó bá jē a? /laahttaat/	3. Bá jē laahttaatjó la.
4. Jouhmāt néih m̀hjeuk gó gihn sēutsāam a? /chàauh/	4. Gihn sēutsāam chàauhjó la.
5. Jouhmāt néih m̀hyuhng gó tìuh mòuhgān a? /laahttaat/	5. Tìuh mòuhgān laahttaatjó la.

---

12. Response Drill

Ex: T: Dímgáai gam m̀hsíusām + ga, gàmchi dóuséjó mēyéh a? /chàh/ (this time)	T: Why are you so careless, what did you spill this time?
S: Deuihm̀hjyuh, ngóh dóuséjó dī chàh.	S: I am sorry, I spilled some tea.
1. Dímgáai gam m̀hsíusām ga, gàm- chi dálaahnjó mēyéh a? /jek būi/	1. Deuihm̀hjyuh, ngóh dálaahnjó jek būi.
2. Dímgáai gam m̀hsíusām ga, gàm- chi dálaahnjó mēyéh a? /jek wún/ What did you break this time?	2. Deuihm̀hjyuh, ngóh dálaahnjó jek wún.
3. Dímgáai gam m̀hsíusām ga, gàm- chi lauhdàijó mēyéh a? /jí bāt/ What did you leave behind this time?	3. Deuihm̀hjyuh, ngóh lauhdàijó jí bāt.
4. Dímgáai gam m̀hsíusām ga, gàm- chi dóuséjó mēyéh a? /dī tòng/	4. Deuihm̀hjyuh, ngóh dóuséjó dī tòng.

5. Dímgáai gam m̀hsíusām ga, gàmchi jínglaahttaatjó mēyéh a? /tìuh kwàhn/ What did you get dirty this time?	5. Deuihm̀hjyuh, ngóh jínglaahttaatjó tìuh kwàhn.
6. Dímgáai gam m̀hsíusām ga, gàmchi jíngchàauhjó mēyéh a? /tìuh fu/ What did you get wrinkled this time?	6. Deuihm̀hjyuh, ngóh jíngchàauhjó tìuh fu.
7. Dímgáai gam m̀hsíusām ga, gàmchi jínglaahnjó mēyéh a? /jèung chòhng/	7. Deuihm̀hjyuh, ngóh jínglaahnjó jèung chòhng.

---

13. Transformation Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then transform according to the English instructions.

1. Kéuih nīngjó tìuh kwàhn chēutheui tong. He has taken (or he took) the skirt to be ironed. (or to iron)	1. Kéuih nīngjó tìuh kwàhn chēutheui tong.
2. /he didn't/	2. Kéuih móuh nīng tìuh kwàhn chēutheui tong.
3. /has he...yet?/	3. Kéuih nīngjó tìuh kwàhn chēutheui tong meih a?
4. /not yet/	4. Kéuih meih nīng tìuh kwàhn chēutheui tong.
5. /is he going to?/	5. Kéuih nīng m̀hnīng tìuh kwàhn chēutheui tong a?
6. /he has, hasn't he?/	6. Kéuih nīngjó tìuh kwàhn chēutheui tong àh.

---

14. Response Drill

Ex: T: Aiya! Lohkyúh tìm bo! /yúhlāu/	T: Oh-oh, it's raining!
S: Hóuchói ngóh daaijó yúhlāu jē.	S: At least it's lucky I brought my raincoat.
1. Aiya! Dungjó tìm bo! /lāangsāam/ Oh-oh, it's gotten cold.	1. Hóuchói ngóh daaijó lāangsāam jē.

2. Aiya! M̀hfàandāk ūkkéi sihk ngaan tīm bo! /ngaan jau/	2. Hóuchói ngóh daaijó ngaan (jau) jē.
3. Aiya! Ngàhnhòhng sàanjó mùhn tīm bo! /chín/	3. Hóuchói ngóh daaijó chín jē.
4. Aiya! Yiu béi yih baak mān tīm bo. /chín/	4. Hóuchói ngóh daaijó jē.
5. Aiya! Lohkyúh tīm bo! /jē/	5. Hóuchói ngóh daaijó jē jē.
6. Aiya! Kéuih móuh chín jáau tīm bo! /sáanjí/	6. Hóuchói ngóh daaijó sáanjí jē.
7. Aiya! Nīdouh móuh syù tái tīm bo! /boují/	7. Hóuchói ngóh daaijó boují jē.

Comment: jē, 'merely,' 'not much,' here forms a set with hóuchói 'fortunately,' 'luckily' to suggest: though something else would have been still better, from this minor aspect it's a good thing.

---

15. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Nī tíuh kwàhn taai dyún laak. /wuhn/chèuhngdī/	T: This skirt is too short. /exchange/longer/
S: Nī tíuh kwàhn taai dyún laak--wuhngwo tíuh chèuhngdī ge lā.	S: This skirt is too short--please change it for another longer one.
1. Nī wùh chàh taai dung laak. /chùng/yiht/ This pot of tea is too cold.	1. Nī wùh chàh taai dung laak--chùnggwo wùh yihtdī ge lā. This pot of tea is too cold--make another hot one.
2. Nī gihn sēutsāam taai laahttaat laak. /jeuk/gònjehng/	2. Nī gihn sēutsāam taai laahttaat laak--jeukgwo gihn gònjehngdī ge lā.
3. Nī bún syù taai nàahn laak. /ló/yihdī/	3. Nī bún syù taai nàahn laak--lógwo bún yihdī ge lā.
4. Nī go tokpún taai sai laak. /nīng daaihdī/	4. Nī go tokpún taai sai laak--nīnggwo jèung daaihdī ge lā.
5. Nī tou gāsī taai yáih laak. /máaih/leng/	5. Nī tou gāsī taai yáih laak--máaihgwo tou lengdī ge lā.

Comment: The sentence suffix lā, raised intonation for polite suggestion may also be rendered la with mid intonation, giving a connotation of friendly advice.

16. Response Drill

Ex: T: Hóusēng a, m̀hhóu dóusé dī chàh a!	T: Be careful, don't spill the tea.
S: Ngóh hóu síusām ge la, m̀hwúih dóusé gé.	S: I'm being very careful, I won't spill it.
1. Hóusēng a, m̀hhóu dálaahn dī būi a!	1. Ngóh hóu síusām ge la, m̀hwúih dálaahn gé.
2. Hóusēng a, m̀hhóu jínglaahn dī díp a! Be careful not to break the dishes.	2. Ngóh hóu síusām ge la, m̀hwúih jínglaahn gé.
3. Hóusēng a, m̀hhóu sélaahn jí bāt a!	3. Ngóh hóu síusām ge la, m̀hwúih sélaahn gé.
4. Hóusēng a, m̀hhòu jínglaahttaat gihn lāangsāam a!	4. Ngóh hóu síusām ge la, m̀hwúih jínglaahttaat gé.
5. Hóusēng a, m̀hhóu dóusé dī tòng a!	5. Ngóh hóu síusām ge la, m̀hwúih dóusé gé.
6. Hóusēng a, m̀hhóu dálaahn go bīu a!	6. Ngóh hóu síusām ge la, m̀hwúih dálaahn gé.
7. Hóusēng a, m̀hhóu chóhchàauh tíuh kwàhn a! Be careful, don't get the skirt wrinkled.	7. Ngóh hóu síusām ge la, m̀hwúih chóhchàauh gé.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

1) gwolàih nībihn = come over here
2) fòngbihn = convenient
3) māt + sentence = How come ...?
4) A Yèh = Grandfather (on father's side)
5) hái douh = here: and have it here
6) ngóh gàan fóng = my room
7) m̀hhaih = if not, otherwise
8) sínji = only
9) góndākchit = there's enough time or You can make it or If you hurry you'll make it.

10) deihhá = floor

11) geidāk = remember

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE:

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:	B. And he replies:
1. Do you think it'll rain today?	1. It's not likely to rain.
2. Do you suppose it's going to be cold today?	2. It's likely to be colder today than yesterday.
3. My cigarettes have vanished!	3. They're there on the table.
4. Please put the teapot on the tray.	4. Where'd you put the tray?
5. I left my book on the bus!	5. Call the bus company and ask if they found it.
6. Take care! Don't spill the beer!	6. Wah! (or Aiya!) I spilled it! Quick, bring a cloth to wipe it up!
7. It looks like rain.	7. I'll go close the windows.
8. I left the newspaper on the veranda.	8. I'll go get it for you.
9. Where shall I put the clothes? (says the laundress)	9. Put them on the bed.
10. Could you please tell me what time it is now?	10. I'm sorry, I didn't wear a watch today.
11. There aren't any towels in the bathroom.	11. A Sei, would you please take some towels into the bathroom.
12. Your shirt is dirty.	12. I'll change into a clean one.
13. How come you're not drinking your tea?	13. Because it's already cold.
14. This skirt is too long.	14. Well then, wear a shorter one.
15. Aiya! The weather has gotten cold!	15. Fortunately I brought a sweater.
16. Where's Younger Brother?	16. He's in the living room reading the paper.
17. What did you break this time?	17. Just a water glass, that's all.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 24

1. Baihlaak!	ex:	exclamation of annoyance
2. Baihlok!	ex:	var. of Baihlaak!
3. chēung	n:	window
4. chòhng	n:	bed
5. chùng	v:	infuse
6. chùng chàh	vo:	make tea
7. chùnglèuhngfóng	n:	bathroom; ie. room for bathing
8. chyùhfóng	n:	kitchen
9. daai bīu	vo:	wear a watch
10. dit	v:	drop
11. ditlaahn	v:	break by dropping [drop-break]
12. douh	m:	M. for doors
13. dóusé	v:	spill
14. faahntēng	n:	dining room
15. faai	n/m:	piece, M. for dishcloth
16. faaidī	adv:	hurry and...; ...right away
17. fóng	n:	room
18. gàmchi	TW:	this time
19. _V_ gwo _M_	Ph:	_V_ another _M_, another as replacement for original one
20. haaktēng	n:	living room
21. hòi mùhn	vo:	open the door(s)
22. hóuchói	Ph:	luckily, 'Thank goodness'
23. Hóuchoi...jē	Ph:	Fortunately..., at least
24. Hóusēng!	Ph:	'Be careful'
25. jài	v:	put, place
26. ...ji dāk.	Ph:	...that'll do it. only then will the requirements be satisfied.
27. jóu bou	n:	morning paper
28. kèhláu	n:	veranda, terrace
29. laahn	v/adj:	break, broken
30. làih	v:	to, in order to, for the purpose of
31. lauhdài	v:	leave/left (something) behind
32. lohkyúh	vo:	to rain

33. maat	v:	wipe, polish; also, to wet-mop
34. mùhn	n:	door
35. sàan	v:	close, shut
36. sàan mùhn	vo:	close the door(s)
37. seuihfóng	n:	bedroom
38. syùfóng	n:	study
39. syùtói	n:	desk
40. Taaitáai	ta:	here: 'ma'am,' 'Missy.' term used by servant in foreign household to address mistress of the house.
41. tokpún	n:	tray
42. wùh	n/m:	pot; container Measure
43. wúih	auxV:	likely to, going to (indicates strong possibility)

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Mrs. Wong is reading late, when her son comes into the living room:)

Màhmā	
yíhwàih	think, have the impression (sometimes this proves to be 'mistakenly had the impression')
Ngóh júhng yíhwàih néih fanjó tìm.	And I thought you had already gone to bed.
Māt + sentence	How come?+ sentence
Māt juhng m̀hfan a?	How come you still haven't gone to bed?
Jái	
ngáahnfan	sleepy
sèuiyìhn	although
sèuiyìhn..., daahnhaih...	although ..., still ...
fanjeuhk	get to sleep, fall asleep
fanm̀hjeuhk	can't get to sleep
Sèuiyìnn ngáahnfan, daahnhaih fanm̀hjeuhk.	Although I was sleepy, I still couldn't get to sleep.
Màhmā	
tóuhngoh	hungry
Tóuh m̀htóuhngoh a?	Are you hungry?
Séung m̀hséung sihk dī yéh nē?	Would you like something to eat?
Jái	
ngohngódéi	a bit hungry
Ngóh gokdāk ngohngódéi.	I do feel a bit hungry.
Màhmā	
Néih jùngyi sihk mēyéh a?	What would you like to eat?
Jái	
mēyéh	anything, everything; whatever

Mēyéh dōu dāk.	Anything is OK.
syutgwaih	refrigerator
Táiháh syutgwaih yáuh mātyéh sìn.	I'll see what's in the refrigerator first.

(He looks in the refrigerator, and takes out an orange:)

laahnjó	spoiled, rotten (of perishables)
Yí!--nī go cháang laahnjó laak.	Whew!--this orange is rotten.

Màhmā

dám	throw out, discard
Gám, dámjó kéuih lā.	Well then, throw it out.
hùhng	red
hùhng pìhnggwó	red apples
sóng	crisp
tìhm	sweet
Dī hùhng pìhnggwó yauh sóng yauh tìhm--sihk go lā!	The red apples are crisp and sweet--eat one!

Jái

Hóu aak.	OK.
guih	tired
Ngóh hóu guih a--ngóh heui fan la.	I'm tired--I'm going to bed.

Màhmā

Haih lòh.	That's right.
hóu + verb phrase + la	'It would be a good idea to ...' a form used in making a suggestion
hóu heui fan la	It's a good idea to go to bed.
yùhgwó m̀hhaih *or* m̀hhaih	if not, otherwise
jìngsàhn	energy, health
Hóu heui fan la--yùhgwó m̀hhaih, tìngyaht néih jauh m̀hgau jìngsàhn ge la.	You'd better go to bed--otherwise you won't have enough energy tomorrow.

Jái	
Tìngjìu m̀hsái gam jóu giu ngóh.	You don't have to call me so early tomorrow.
Màhmā	
Gám, géidím giu néih a?	Well, what time shall I call you?
Jái	
géidím	anytime, whenever
Néih géidím héisàn, jauh géidím giu ngóh lā.	Call me when you get up. [Whenever you get up, call me at that time.]
chìh	unpunctual, late (for an appointment)
chìh dou	arrive late
Daahnhaih m̀hhóu taai ngaan--ngóh m̀hséung chìh dou.	But not too late--I don't want to get to work late.

B. Recapitulation:

(Mrs. Wong is reading late, when her son comes into the living room:)

Màhmā	
Ngóh juhng yíhwàih néih fanjó tìm.	I thought you had already gone to bed.
Māt juhng m̀hfan a?	How come you still haven't gone to bed?
Jái	
Sèuiyìhn ngáanfan, daahnhaih fanm̀hjeuhk.	I was sleepy, but I couldn't get to sleep.
Màhmā	
Tóuh m̀htóuhngoh a?	Are you hungry?
Séung m̀hséung sihk dī yéh nē?	Would you like something to eat?
Jái	
Ngóh gokdāk ngohngódéi.	I do feel a bit hungry.
Màhmā	
Néih jùngyi sihk mēyéh a?	What would you like to eat?

Jái	
Mēyéh dōu dāk.	Anything is OK.
Táiháh syutgwaih yáuh mēyéh sin.	I'll see what's in the refrigerator first.
Yí!--nī go cháang laahnjó laak.	Whew--this orange is rotten.
Màhmā	
Gám, dámjó kéuih lā.	Well then, throw it out.
Dī hùhng pìhnggwó yauh sóng yauh tìhm--sihk go lā.	The red apples are crisp and sweet--have one!
Jái	
Hóu aak.	OK.
Ngóh hóu guih a--ngóh heui fan la.	I'm tired--I'm going to bed.
Màhmā	
Haih lòh.	That's right.
Hóu heui fan la--yùhgwó m̀hhaih, tìngyaht néih jauh m̀hgau jìngsàhn ge la.	It's a good idea to go to bed--otherwise you won't have enough energy tomorrow.
Jái	
Tìngjìu m̀hsái gam jóu giu ngóh.	You don't have to call me so early tomorrow.
Màhmā	
Gám, géidím giu néih a?	What time shall I call you?
Jái	
Néih géidím héisàn, jauh géidím giu ngóh lā.	Call me whenever you get up.
Daahnhaih m̀hhóu taai ngaan--ngóh m̀hséung chìh dou.	But not too late--I don't want to get to work late.

II. NOTES

1. **yíhwàih** 1) '(mistakenly) thought'
2) 'to be under the impression that...', i.e., think (without being entirely certain)

Ex: 1) 'mistakenly thought'

A: M̀hhóu nìng tìuh kwàhn chēutheui-- ngóh yiu jeuk ga.	Don't take that skirt away-- I want to wear it.
B: Deuim̀hjyuh-- ngóh yíhwàih tìuh kwàhn yiu sái ge.	Excuse me-- I thought the skirt was to be washed. [mistakenly thought the skirt was wished-to-be-washed thing]

(See BC and Drill 10)

Ex: 2) 'think (without being entirely certain)'
'to be under the impression that...'

Ngóh yíhwàih kéuih làihbaailuhk m̀hfàan gùng.	I think he doesn't work on Saturdays.

2. Sèuiyìhn...., daahnhaih... 'Although..., still...;' 'though..., still...;' 'Although....., nevertheless....'

This is another set of paired conjunctions joining two clauses in a two-clause sentence. The order is irreversible. Use of both sèuiyìhn and daahnhaih in the sentence is preferred.

Ex: Sèuiyìhn ngáanfan, daahnhaih fanm̀hjeuhk.	Though I was sleepy, I still couldn't get to sleep.

(See BC and Drill 12)

3. Duplication of adjectives

a. A duplicated adjective with the suffix -déi, is an adjective pattern meaning 'a little bit Adjective,' 'fairly Adjective.'

Ex: 1. chèuhng	long
chèuhngchéungdéi	fairly long
2. hùhng	red
hùhnghúngdéi	having some red color (i.e., having red in it, but not red all over)
3. laaht	peppery
laahtláatdéi	a bit peppery

b. With the exception of adjectives in high level and high falling tones, the second syllable in the duplicated adjective pattern is in the high rising tone. The second syllable of an adjective of high level or high falling tone retains its ordinary tone shape in the duplicated pattern.

Ex: hl:	sāpsāpdéi	a bit damp
hf:	syūnsyùndéi	a bit sour
hr:	fúfúdéi	a bit bitter
ml:	dungdúngdéi	a bit cold
lf:	hùhnghúngdéi	having some red color
lr:	chúhngchúngdéi	somewhat heavy
ll:	ngohngódéi	a little hungry

(See BC and Drill 2)

4. Sentence suffix lòh = making a bid for sympathy

Frankly this is just a guess, but it seems that the speaker uses sentence suffix lòh to make a bid for the addressee's sympathy.

Ex: 1.	A: Bīngo dálaahn ga?	Who broke it?
	B: Kéuih lòh.	He did. (Don't look at me that way.)
2.	A: Néih séung fan làh?	You're going to bed, are you?
	B: Haih lòh. Ngóh hóu ngáahnfan laak.	That's right-- I'm very sleep. (poor me)

(See BC)

5. Hóu V la. = 'it would be a good idea to V,' 'perhaps you ought to V,' 'hadn't you better V ?'

a. Hóu V is an imperative form: 'you'd better V.' The sentence suffix la connoting friendly advice makes the tone of the imperative helpful rather than threatening.

Ex: Hōu heui fan la-- yùhgwó m̀hhaih, tìngyaht néih jauh m̀hgau jìngsàhn ge laak.	You'd better go to bed-- otherwise you won't have enough energy tomorrow.

(See BC and Drill 4)

b. The sentence suffix of the imperative Hóu V can be the raised intonation lā, polite but more urgent than la.

(See Drill 3)

c. Hóu V 'you ought to V' is the opposite of M̀hhóu V, 'don't V.'

Ex: 1. Hóu yám dī gāfē la-- yùhgwó m̀hhaih, jà chē gójan jauh wúih fanjeuhk ge la.	You ought to drink some coffee, otherwise you might fall asleep driving.
2. M̀hhóu yám gāfē-- yùhgwó m̀hhaih, jauh fanm̀hjeuhk ge la.	You'd better not drink any coffee, otherwise you might not be able to get to sleep.

6. jìngsàhn, 1) (N) 'energy'
2) (Adj) 'feel well'

jìngsàhn is both a noun and an adjective, and patterns differently in the two forms.

Ex: 1. Kéuih yāt dī jìngsàhn dōu móuh.	He doesn't have one little bit of energy.
2. Kéuih m̀hjìngsàhn.	He isn't feeling well.

7. yùhgwó m̀hhaih 'otherwise,' 'if not'

yùhgwó m̀hhaih reduces also to simply m̀hhaih, with no change in meaning. The two are used interchangeably.

Ex: Hóu heui fan la-- (yùhgwó) m̀hhaih, tìngyaht néih jauh m̀hgau jìngsahn ge la.	You'd better get on to bed-- if not, you won't have enough energy tomorrow.

(See BC and Drill 4)

8. Question-words used as Non-questions.

a. Question-words in Cantonese also serve as non-question substantives whose meanings derive from their basic question-word meanings:

Examples	As QW:	As Non-Question:
1. mēyéh	what?	anything, whatever, what, that thing
2. bīngo	who?	anyone, whoever, who, that person
3. bīndouh	where?	anywhere, wherever, where, at that place
4. géisìh	when?	anytime, whenever, when, at that time
5. bīn-M	which?	any one, whichever, which, that one
6. dím	how?	any way, however
7. géi(dō)**	how many? how much?	any amount, however much/many, whatever amount
8. géi-	which number	any one, whichever

**géidō as question word has high level tone on -dō; as a non-question, it has high falling tone.

Ex:	Yiu géidō chìn a?	How much money do you want?
	Géidō dōu dāk.	Any amount will do.
	Séung béi géidò, juah géido lā.	Give whatever amount you wish.

b. What we are calling 'non-question QWs,' some other writers identify as 'Question-words used as Indefinites.'

c. There are three patterns in which the QWs are used as non-question QWs:

1. QW Subject + dōu Predicate = anyone, anything, anytime, etc.

This pattern has a non-question QW as subject in a single-clause sentence, followed by dōu introducing the predicate.

Ex.	1. Mēyéh dōu hóu.	Anything is fine. or: Everything is fine.
	2. Géisìh dōu dāk.	Any time is fine.
	3. Bīngo dōu jùngyi.	[Whosoever all like.], i.e., (He) likes everybody.
	4. Bīngo dōu m̀hjùngyi.	[Whosoever all not like.], i.e., (He) doesn't like anyone.

(See BC and Drill 5)

In regard to the QW subjects in the sentences just above, remember that in Cantonese the grammatical subject is what is being talked about, not necessarily the doer of the verb. Note that in sentences #3 and #4 above the English translation requires a different arrangement of subject and predicate.

A QW Subject + dōu Predicate sentence can be in Topic:Comment form.

Ex:

Topic	Comment	
	Subject	Predicate
Kéuih	bīngo	dōu jùngyi.

[(In regard to) him, whoever, always likes.] i.e., He likes everybody.

2. QW, jauh QW = whoever, whenever, however much, etc.

In this pattern the QW is in both clauses of a double-clause sentence.

Ex: 1. Néih jùngyi mēyéh, jauh máaih mēyéh la. [You like what, then buy what.] i.e., Buy whatever you like.

2. Néih géidím héisàn, jauh géidím giu ngóh lā. [You what time get up, then what call me.] i.e., Call me whenever you get up.

(See BC and Drills 6, 7, 8, 9)

The jauh in the second clause follows the QW of that clause if the QW is the subject of the second clause.

Ex: QW, QW jauh...

Ngóh jídou bīngo, bīngo jauh góng. [I point to who, who then speaks.] i.e., Whoever I point to should respond.

(See Classroom Phrases, Lesson 3)

3. Negative Verb + non-question QW = not anything, anyone, anywhere, etc.

This pattern has the non-question QW as part of the predicate, following a negative verb.

Ex: 1. Ngóh móuh heui bīndouh. I didn't go anywhere. or: I didn't go anywhere in particular--no place special.

2. A: Jouh mēyéh a? Wha'cha doing?
B: Móuh mēyeh. Nothing special. [Not (doing) anything.]

3. A: Máaih bīn gihn a? Which one are you going to buy? (said to friend you are shopping with)
B: Ǹhmáaih bīn gihn. I'm not going to buy any.

III. DRILLS

1. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Dī tòng taai yiht laak.	T: The soup is too hot.
+ S: Dī tòng yiht gwotàuh laak. Adj + gwotàuh = excessively Adj	S: The soup is much too hot.
1. Dī cháang taai gwai laak.	1. Dī cháang gwai gwotàuh laak.
2. Dī bou taai yáih laak.	2. Dī bou yáih gwotàuh laak.
3. Dī tói taai gòu laak.	3. Dī tói gòu gwotàuh laak.
+ 4. Dī pìhnggwó taai syùn laak. The apples are too sour.	4. Dī pìhnggwó syùn gwotàuh laak.
+ 5. Dī ngàuhyuhk taai sàang laak. The beef is too raw. sàang = underdone (of cooked things); green (of fruits)	5. Dī ngàuhyuhk sàang gwotàuh laak.
+ 6. Dī yú taai hàahm laak. The fish is too salty.	6. Dī yú hàahm gwotàuh laak.
+ 7. Dī hā taai suhk laak. The prawns are overcooked. [done, cooked] suhk = done (of cooked things); ripe (of fruits)	7. Dī hā suhk gwotàuh laak.
+ 8. Dī gafē taai fú laak. The coffee is too strong [bitter].	8. Dī gafē fú gwotàuh laak.
9. Gihn sēutsāam taai hùhng laak.	9. Gihn sēutsāam hùhng gwotàuh laak.
+ 10. Tìuh kwàhn taai làahm laak. The skirt is too blue.	10. Tìuh kwàhn làahm gwotàuh laak.
+ 11. Dī chēunglím taai luhk laak. The curtains are too green.	11. Dī chēunglím luhk gwotàuh laak.
+ 12. Dī jí taai wòhng laak. The papers are too yellow.	12. Dī jí wòhng gwotàuh laak.
+ 13. Dī choi taai laaht laak. The food is too peppery.	13. Dī choi laaht gwotàuh laak.
+ 14. Dī pìhnggwó taai suhk laak. [ripe] The apples are over-ripe.	14. Dī pìhnggwó suhk gwotàuh laak.

Comment: gwotàuh has a variant pronunciation, gwótàuh.

---

2. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh séung máaih gàan daaih ngūk.	T: I want to buy a big house.
S: Ngóh séung máaih gàan daaihdáaidéi ge ngūk.	S: I want to buy a fairly big house.
1. Ngóh séung máaih tìuh hùhng kwàhn. I want to buy a red skirt.	1. Ngóh séung máaih tìuh hùhnghúngdéi ge kwàhn. I want to buy a skirt that has some red in it.
2. Ngóh séung sihk faai hàahm béng. I want to eat a salty cake.	2. Ngóh séung sihk faai hàahmháamdéi ge béng. I want to eat a cake that is a bit salty.
3. Ngóh séung yám bùi yiht chàh.	3. Ngóh séung yám bùi yihtyítdéi ge chàh. I want to drink a cup of tea that is hot (but not too hot).
4. Ngóh séung máaih go sai syutgwaih.	4. Ngóh séung máaih go saisáidéi ge syutgwaih.
5. Ngóh jùngyi sihk dī syùn yéh.	5. Ngóh jùngyi sihk dī syūnsyúndéi ge yéh.
6. Ngóh jùngyi yám dī dung yéh.	6. Ngóh jùngyi yám dī dungdúngdéi ge yéh.
7. Ngóh séung máaih dī pèhng bou.	7. Ngóh séung máaih dī pèhngpéngdéi ge bou.
8. Ngóh jùngyi sihk dī laaht yéh.	8. Ngóh jùngyi sihk dī laahtláatdéi ge yéh.

---

3. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Néih hóu fan lā.	1. Néih hóu fan lā.
2. /heui/	2. Néih hóu heui lā.
3. /héi sàn/	3. Néih hóu héi sàn lā.
4. /sihk jóuchāan/	4. Néih hóu sihk jóuchāan lā.

5. /fàan gùng/	5. Néih hóu fàan gùng lā.
6. /tái yīsāng/	6. Néih hóu tái yīsāng lā.
7. /wuhn sāam/	7. Néih hóu wuhn sāam lā.

---

4. Alteration Drill

Ex:	T: Néih hóu faaidī heui ngàhnhòhng ló chín la, (yùhgwó) m̀hhaih, néih jauh m̀hgau chín yuhng ge la.	T: You'd better hurry and go to the bank to get money. If not, you won't have enough money to use.
	S: Yùhgwó néih m̀hfaaidī heui ngàhnhòhng ló chín, néih jauh m̀hgau chín yuhng ge la.	S: If you don't hurry and go to the bank to get money, you won't have enough money to use.

1. Néih hóu faaidī heui fan la, m̀hhaih, tìngyaht néih jauh m̀hgau jìngsàhn ge la.	1. Yùhgwó néih m̀hheui fan, néih tìngyaht jauh m̀hgau jìngsàhn ge la.
2. Néih hóu faaidī dá dihnwá béi kéuih la, m̀hhaih, kéuih jauh chēutjó gaai ge la.	2. Yùhgwó néih m̀hfaaidī dá dihnwá béi kéuih, kéuih jauh chēutjó gaai ge la.
3. Néih hóu faaidī heui máaih la, m̀hhaih, jauh maaihsaai ge la.	3. Yùhgwó néih m̀hfaaidī heui máaih, jauh maaihsaai ge la.
4. Néih hóu faaidī jouh la, m̀hhaih jauh gónm̀hchit ge la.	4. Yùhgwó néih m̀hfaaidī jouh, néih jauh gónm̀hchit ge la.
5. Néih hóu faaidī yám lá, m̀hhaih jauh dung ge la.	5. Yùhgwó néih m̀hfaaidī yám, jauh dung ge la.
6. Néih hóu faaidī nìngheui sái la, m̀hhaih jauh m̀hgóndākchit ge la.	6. Yùhgwó néih m̀hfaaidī nìngheui sái, néih jauh m̀hgóndākchit ge la.
7. Néih hóu fàan ngūkkéi la, m̀hhaih néih taaitáai jauh wán néih ge la.	7. Yùhgwó néih m̀hfàan ngūkkéi, néih taaitáai jauh wán néih ge la.

---

5. Response Drill

	Ex: T: Néih jùngyi sihk mēyéh a?	T: What do you want to eat?
	S: Mēyéh dōu dāk.	S: Anything is OK.
+	1. Néih wán bīngo tèng dihnwá a? Who do you want to speak to (on the telephone.)	1. Bīngo dōu dāk. Anyone will do.
+	2. Néih séung heui bīndouh a? Where do you want to go?	2. Bīndouh dōu dāk. Anywhere will do.
+	3. Ngóh géisīh heui néihdouh a? When shall I come to see you?	3. Géisīh dōu dāk. Any time is fine.
+	4. Néih oi bīn gihn a? Which one do you want?	4. Bīn gihn dōu dāk. Any one will do.
+	5. Néih séung máaih géidō a? How many do you want to buy?	5. Géidō dōu dāk. Any number--it doesn't matter.
	6. Tìhng hái bīn bihn a? Which side should I stop on?	6. Bīn bihn dōu dāk. Either side is OK.
+	7. Néih yiu dím jouh a? How do you want to do it?	7. Dím dōu dāk. Any way is fine.

---

6. Alteration Drill

	Ex: T: Ngóh yáuh chīn góján, jauh máaih lā.	T: When I have money, I('ll) buy it.
	S: Ngóh géisī yáuh chīn, jauh géisī máaih lā.	S: Whenever I have money, I buy. or When I have the money, I'll buy.
	1. Ngóh héi sàn góján, jauh giuséng néih lā.	1. Ngóh géisī héi sàn, jauh géisīh giuséng néih lā.
	2. Ngóh dākhàahn góján, jauh wán néih chóh lā.	2. Ngóh géisī dākhàahn, jauh géisī wán néih chóh lā.
	3. Ngóh tóuhngoh góján, jauh sihk lā.	3. Ngóh géisī tóuh ngoh, jauh géisī sihk lā.
	4. Ngóh héisàn góján, jauh dá dihnwá béi néih lā.	4. Ngóh géisī héisàn, jauh géisī dá dihnwá béi néih lā.
+	5. Ngóh génghot góján, jauh yám lā. When I am thirsty, I('ll) drink.	5. Ngóh géisī génghot, jauh géisī yám lā.

Comment: Here the final lā represents la for change, plus raised intonation for liveliness.

---

7. Stimulus-Response Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh pa jouhm̀hsaai bo.	T: I'm afraid I won't get them all done.
S: Jouhdāk géidò, jauh géidò lā.	S: Do as many as you can, then.
1. Ngóh pa maaihm̀hsaai bo.	1. Maaihdāk géidò, jauh géidò lā.
2. Ngóh pa sihkm̀hsaai bo.	2. Sihkdāk géidò, jauh géidò lā.
3. Ngóh pa sém̀hsaai bo.	3. Sédāk géidò, jauh géidò lā.
4. Ngóh pa nìngm̀hsaai bo.	4. Nìngdāk géidò, jauh géidò lā.
5. Ngóh pa bùnm̀hsaai bo.	5. Bùndāk géidò, jauh géidò lā.

---

8. Response Drill

Ex: T: Néih jùngyi sihk mēyéh a?	T: What would you like to eat?
S: Néih jùngyi sihk mēyéh, jauh mēyéh lā.	S: Eat what(ever) you like.
1. Néih jùngyi heui bīndouh a?	1. Néih jùngyi heui bīndouh, jauh bīndouh lā. Go where you want to go.
2. Néih jùngyi tái bīn bún a?	2. Néih jùngyi tái bīn bún, jauh bīn bún lā.
3. Néih jùngyi yám mēyéh a?	3. Néih jùngyi yám mēyéh, jauh mēyéh lā.
4. Néih jùngyi taam bīngo a?	4. Néih jùngyi taam bīngo, jauh bīngo lā.
5. Néih jùngyi paak bīndouh a?	5. Néih jùngyi paak bīndouh, jauh bīndouh lā.
6. Néih jùngyi jeuk bīn gihn a?	6. Néih jùngyi jeuk bīn gihn, jauh bīn gihn lā.

9. Response Drill

Ex: T: Néih géidím sihk faahn a? /jínghóu/	T: When do you eat dinner?
S: Géidím jínghóu, jauh géidím sihk lā.	S: When its ready, then I eat. or I'll eat whenever it's ready.
1. Néih oi bīn gihn a? /hóu/	1. Bīn gihn hóu, jauh oi bīn gihn lā.
2. Néih máaih bīn jek a? /daaih/	2. Bīn jek daaih, jauh máaih bīn jek lā.
3. Néih láihbaaigéi heui ngàhnhòhng a? /dākhàahn/	3. Láihbaaigéi dākhàahn, jauh láihbaaigéi heui lā.
4. Néih daap mēyéh chē jáu a? /làih sín/	4. Mēyéh chē làih sín, jauh daap mēyéh lā.
5. Néih heui bīndoun sihk aan a? /pèhng/	5. Bīndouh pèhng, jauh heui bīndouh lā.
6. Néih séung tái bīn bún syù a? /yih/	6. Bīn bún yih, jauh tái bīn bún lā.

---

10. Stimulus-Response Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih meih héi sàn bo.	T: She hasn't gotten up yet. (very definite)
S: Ngóh juhng yíhwàih kéuih héijó sàn tím.	S: And I thought she had already gotten up!
1. Ngóh meih giuséng kéuih bo.	1. Ngóh juhng yíhwàih néih giuséngjó kéuih tím.
2. Kéuih meih fan bo.	2. Ngóh juhng yíhwàih kéuih fanjó tím.
+ 3. Nīdouh gáu dím meih hòi mùhn bo. The store isn't open at 9 o'clock. (time + hòi mùhn = opening time at a store)	3. Ngóh juhng yíhwàih nīdouh gáu dím hòijó mùhn tím.
+ 4. Gūngsī sahp dím meih sàan mùhn ga. The store won't have closed by ten o'clock. (time + sàan mùhn = closing time at a store) [at 10 o'clock not yet closed]	4. Ngóh juhng yíhwàih gūngsī sahp dím sàanjó mùhn tím. And I thought they would be closed by ten!

5. Néih ga chē meih jìnghóu bo.	5. Ngóh juhng yíhwàih néih ga chē jìnghóujó tìm.
6. Ngóh meih maat gònjehng chisó bo.	6. Ngóh juhng yíhwàih néih maat gònjehngjó chisó tìm.

Comment: tìm adds to the sentences above the connotation that the situation expressed in the sentence is different from what the speaker expected. It may be a disappointment, as in the example sentence, or it may be a pleasant surprise, as in sentence #4, but in any event it is contrary to the speaker's preconception of the matter.

11. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Faaidī yámjó kéuih lā! Hurry up and drink it!	1. Faaidī yámjó kéuih lā!
2. /dám/	2. Faaidī dámjó kéuih lā!
3. /nìng/	3. Faaidī nìngjó kéuih lā!
4. /máaih/	4. Faaidī máaihjó kéuih lā!
5. /wuhn/	5. Faaidī wuhnjó kéuih lā!
6. /maat/	6. Faaidī maatjó kéuih lā!

12. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh haih Méihgwokyàhn. Ngóh jùngyi sihk Jùngchoi.	T: I am an American. I like to eat Chinese food.
S: Sèuiyìhn ngóh haih Méihgwokyàhn, daahnhaih ngóh jùngyi sihk Jùngchoi.	S: Although I am an American, still I like to eat Chinese food.
1. Hèunggóng tìnhei hóu yiht. Ngóh m̀hjùngyi yàuhséui.	1. Sèuiyìhn Hèunggóng tìnhei hóu yiht, daahnhaih ngóh m̀hjùngyi yàuhséui.
2. Dī yéh hóu gwai. Kéuih máaihjó hóudò.	2. Sèuiyìhn dī yéh hóu gwai, daahnhaih kéuih máaihjó hóudò.
3. Kéuih m̀hjùngyi tái hei. Kéuih hóu jùngyi tái dihnsih.	3. Sèuiyìhn kéuih m̀hjùngyi tái hei, daahnhaih kéuih hóu

	jùngyi tái dihnsih.
4. Kéuih sīk góng Gwóngdùngwá. Kéuih hóu pa góng.	4. Sèuiyìhn kéuih sīk góng Gwóngdùngwá, daahnhaih kéuih hóu pa góng.
5. Kéuih hóu kàhnlihk duhk syù. Kéuih m̀hbātdāk yihp.	5. Sèuiyìhn kéuih hóu kàhnlihk duhk syù, daahnhaih kéuih m̀hbātdāk yihp.
6. Kéuih yíhgìng gitjó fàn. Kéuih juhng yáuh hóudò néuih-pàhngyáuh.	6. Sèuiyìhn kéuih yíhgìng gitjó fàn, daahnhaih kéuih juhng yáuh hóudò néuih-pàhngyáuh.

---

13. Expansion Drill

Ex: 1. T: Dī pìhnggwó jànhaih hóusihk laak. /sóng/tìhm/	T: The apples are really good. /crisp/sweet/
S: Dī pìhnggwó yauh sóng yauh tìhm, jànhaih hóusihk laak.	S: The apples are crisp and sweet --really good.
2. T: Dī tòng m̀hhóuyám ge. /fú/hàahm/	T: The soup tastes awful. /bitter/salty/
S: Dī tòng yauh fú yauh hàahm m̀hhóuyám ge.	S: The soup is bitter and salty --it tastes awful.

1. Dī choi m̀hhóusihk ge. /syùn/laaht/	1. Dī choi yauh syùn yauh laaht, m̀hhóusihk ge.
2. Dī ngàuhyuhk m̀hhóusihk ge. /sàang/hàahm/	2. Dī ngàuhyuhk yauh sàang yauh hàahm, m̀hhóusihk ge.
3. Dī pìhnggwó jànhaih hóusihk laak. /suhk/tìhm/	3. Dī pìhnggwó yauh suhk yauh tìhm, jànhaih hóusihk laak.
4. Dī yī m̀hhóuchóh ge. /gòu/daaih/	4. Dī yī yauh gòu yauh daaih, m̀hhóuchóh ge.
5. Dī heiséui jànhaih hóuyám laak. /dung/tìhm/	5. Dī heiséui yauh dung yauh tìhm, jànhaih hóuyám laak.
6. Dī gafē m̀hhóuyám ge. /dung/fú/	6. Dī gafē yauh dung yauh fú, m̀hhóuyám ge.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

1) Seichyùn = Szechwan, -ese
2) Jouh māt a? = here: Why do you ask?
3) Móuh = Nothing special
4) chichi = every time
5) syùnlaaht tòng = pungent pepper soup
6) tòhngchou yú = sweet and sour fish

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:	B. And he replies:
1. It's hotter than blazes today! (i.e., excessively hot.)	1. That's what I say too.
2. This orange is rotten!	2. Well then, throw it out!
3. His younger brother hasn't gotten married yet.	3. And I thought he had already gotten married!
4. (to a clerk in a store) What time do you close?	4. We close at 5:30.
5. This soup is bitter and salty both--not at all tasty.	5. Well don't eat it then.
6. You'd better get to the bank and get some money, otherwise you won't have any money to pay the servants.	6. You're right. Tomorrow's the 1st.
7. How come you're up so early?	7. I have to go to work a little early today.
8. Which do you like better, Cantonese food or Shanghai food?	8. Although I'm from Shanghai, I like Cantonese food better.
9. Are you thirsty?	9. I do feel a bit thirsty, I think I'll what there is in the refrigerator to drink.
10. Would you wake me up tomorrow whatever time you get up?	10. Sure--is 7:00 OK?
11. What time would you like to have dinner?	11. Whatever time you get it done will be OK.

12. Which tie should I wear?	12. Any one is fine.
13. Is there a place to park cars around here?	13. Yes, park anywhere you can find a place.
14. Hurry and change clothes, otherwise we'll be late.	14. I don't have time to change clothes, let's go now!
15. Do you like the yellow dress or the blue one?	15. They're both nice--buy the one you like.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 25

1. bīn-	nonQW:	any (one place, etc.) whatever (one place, etc.)
2. bīndouh	nonQW:	anywhere, wherever
3. bīngo	nonQW:	anyone; whoever
4. dám	v:	throw out, discard
5. dím	nonQW:	any manner, whatever manner, however
6. fanjeuhk	v:	get to sleep, fall asleep
7. fanm̀hjeuhk	v:	can't get to sleep
8. fú	adj:	strong [bitter]
9. géi-	nonQW:	any (number)
10. géidím	nonQW:	whatever hour, any hour, any time
11. géidò	nonQW:	any moment; however many
12. géisí	nonQW:	any time, whenever
13. génghot	adj:	thirsty
14. guih	adj:	tired
15. ....-gwotàuh	bf:	too..., excessively...
16. hàahm	adj:	salty
17. TW hòi mùhn	Ph:	open the doors (of a store) at X time. expresses opening time of a store.
18. hóu + Verb phrase + la	Ph:	It would be a good idea to...' a form used in making a suggestion
19. hùhng	adj:	red
20. jīngsàhn	n/adj:	energy
21. làahm	adj:	blue
22. laahnjó	adj:	spoiled, rotten (of perishables)
23. laaht	adj:	peppery
24. lòh	ss:	sen. suf. signifying a bid for sympathy

25. luhk	adj:	green
26. Māt + sentence	sen:	How come + sentence?
27. mēyéh	nonQW:	anything; everything; whatever
28. m̀hhaih	cj:	otherwise, if not
29. ngáahnfan	adj:	sleepy
30. ngohngódéi	adjP:	a bit hungry
31. sàang	adj:	raw, underdone (of cooked tip); green (of fruit)
32. sèuiyìhn	Cj:	although
33. sèuiyìhn...daahnhaih	PCj:	although,..still...
34. sóng	adj:	crisp
35. suhk	adj:	ripe (of fruits); done (of cooked
36. syùn	adj:	sour
37. syutgwaih	n:	refrigerator
38. tìhm	adj:	sweet
39. tóuhngoh	adj:	hungry
40. wòhng	adj:	yellow
41. yìhwàih	v:	think, have the impression (sometimes this proves to be 'mistakenly had the impression')
42. yùhgwó m̀hhaih	Cj:	otherwise; if not
43. TW sàan mùhn	Ph:	close the doors (of a store) at X time. expresses closing time of a store.

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(At the Wong's house. The Wong daughter answers the doorbell:)

Wòhng síujé

Mēyéh sih a?	Yes? [What business?]

Jyúfáan

jyúfáan *or* jyúfaahn	cook, person who works as cook in a private home (usually a woman)
chéng jyúfáan	hire a cook
boujī wah nīdouh chéng jyúfáan	the newspaper said they were hiring a cook here
Ngóh táidóu boujī wah nīdouh chéng jyúfáan--haih m̀hhaih a?	I read in the paper that they were hiring a cook here--is that right?

Wòhng Síujé

Haih a--Yahplàih lā.	Yes. Please come in.
-gán	verb suffix, indicating action in progress
dágán dihnwá	talking on the telephone
Ngóh màhmā dágán dihnwá.	My mother is talking on the phone.
Néih chóhháh sīn lā.	First have a seat.
-yùhn	verb suffix, 'finish'
góngyùhn	finish talking
dáng kéuih góngyùhn	when she finishes talking...
Dáng kéuih góngyùhn ngóh wah kéuih jī néih làihjó lā.	When she gets through, I'll tell her you've come.

Jyúfáan

Hóu, m̀hgòi.	Fine, thank you.

(Mrs. Wong finishes her call and comes to interview the cook:)

Wòhng Táai

seun	letter
gaaisiuh seun	letter of introduction,

	letter of recommendation
sànfánjing	ID card
Néih yáuh móuh daai gaaisiuhseun tùhng sànfánjing làih a?	Did you bring your letters of recommendation and your ID card?
Jyúfáan	
Yáuh. Nàh, m̀hgòi néih táiháh lā.	Yes. Here--please take a look.
Wòhng Táai	
gūngfù	work
nīdouh dī gūngfù	the work here
fàn	divide, divide up
gám *or* gámyéung	in such a way; this way, that way
gám fàn	divide in this way
Ngóhdeih nīdouh ge gūngfù haih gám fàn ge:	Our work here is divided up this way:
dáléih	take care of, do
jyúsihk	cooking
Jyúfáan jihnghaih dáléih jyúsihk.	The cook just takes care of the cooking.
ngoih	outside
jì	'of,' grammatical word joining modifying structure on its left to head structure on its right.
chyùhfóng jì ngoih	outside of the kitchen
chyùhfóng jì ngoih ge sih	the work outside the kitchen
fuhjaak	take responsibility (for), is responsible (for)
gùngyàhn fuhjaak	the servant is responsible
Chyùhfóng jìngoih ge sih yáuh daihdī gùngyàhn fuhjaak.	There's another servant responsible for the work outside of the kitchen.
daaihyàhn	adults

hahmbahlaahng	altogether
hahmbahlaahng léuhng go daaihyàhn, léuhng go sailóugō.	altogether two adults and two children
Ngóhdeih nīdouh hahmbahlaahng léuhng go daaihyàhn, léuhng go sailóugō.	Altogether there are two adults and two children here.
tùngsèuhng	ordinarily, usually
yāt go yān	by myself, himself, etc. alone
ji	to, until
láihbaaiyāt ji láihbaaiñgh	Monday to Friday
Tùngsèuhng láihbaaiyāt ji láihbaaiñgh jihnghaih dāk ngóh yāt go yān hái ūkkéi sihk ngaan ge jē.	Ordinarily from Monday to Friday there's only myself alone who eats lunch at home.
sèhng	entire
sèhng go láihbaai	all week, the whole week
sèhng go láihbaai dōu m̀hfàandākláih sihk	aren't able to come back to eat all week.
tùhngmàaih	and, together with
Ngóh sīnsàang tùhngmàaih dī sailóugō chàm̀hdō sèhng go láihbaai dōu m̀hfàandāklàih sihk ge.	My husband and the children aren't able to come home for lunch for practically the whole week.
gūng	work
gám ge gūng	that/this kind of work, such work
Gám ge gūng ngāam m̀hngāam néih nē?	Does such work suit you?
	Jyúfáan
Móuh sówaih	'Whatever you say.' 'Any way is OK with me.' 'No complaints.'
Dāk--móuh sówaih gé.	It's all right--no complaints.

Wòhng Táai	
Gám, néih yiu géidō chín yàhngùng nē?	How much do you want for wages?
Jyúfáan	
Sei baak lā.	Four hundred.
Wòhng Táai	
Hóu lā.	Agreed.
séuhng gūng	start work (usually means for day, but here means for the first time.)
Néih géisí hóyíh làih séuhng gūng nē?	When can you come start work?
Jyúfáan	
Hah go yuht yāt houh, hóu ma?	The first of next month, all right?
Wòhng Táai	
Hóu lā. Ngóh dáng néih lā.	Fine. I'll expect you.

B. Recapitulation:

(At the Wong's house. The Wong daughter answers the doorbell:)

Wòhng Síujé	
Mēyéh sih a?	Yes? [What business?]
Jyúfáan	
Ngóh táidóu boují wah nīdouh chéng jyúfáan--haih m̀hhaih a?	I read in the paper that they were hiring a cook here--is that right?
Wòhng Síujé	
Haih a--Yahplàih lā.	Yes--please come in.
Ngóh màhmā dágán dihnwá.	My mother is on the phone.
Néih chóhháh sin lā.	Have a seat first.
Dáng kéuih góngyùhn ngóh wah kéuih jī néih làihjó lā.	When she gets through, I'll tell her you've come.
Jyúfáan	
Hóu, m̀hgòi.	Fine, thank you.

(Mrs. Wong finishes her call and comes to interview the cook:)

Wòhng Táai	
Néih yáuh móuh daai gaaisiuhseun tùhng sānfánjing làih a?	Did you bring your letters recommendation and your ID card?
Jyúfáan	
Yáuh. Nàh, m̀hgòi néih táiháh lā.	Yes. Here--please take a look.
Wòhng Táai	
Ngóhdeih nīdouh ge gùngfù haih gám fàn ge:	Our work here is divided up this way:
Chyùhfóng jī ngoih ge sih yáuh daihdī gùngyahn fuhjaak.	There's another servant responsible for the work outside of the kitchen.
Ngóhdeih nīdouh hahmbahlaahng léuhng go daaihyàhn, léuhng go sailóugō.	Altogether there are two adults and two children here.
Tùngsèuhng láihbaaiyāt ji láihbaaińgh jihnghaih dāk ngóh yāt go yān hái ūkkéi sihk ngaan ge jē.	Ordinarily from Monday to Friday there's only myself alone who eats lunch at home.
Ngóh sīnsàang tùhngmàaih dī sailóugō chàm̀hdō sèhng go láihbaai dōu m̀hfàandāklàih sihk ge.	My husband and the children aren't able to come back for practically the whole week.
Gám ge gùng ngāam m̀hngāam néih nē?	Does such work suit you?
Jyúfáan	
Dāk--móuh sówaih gé.	It's all right--whatever you say.
Wòhng Táai	
Gám, néih yiu géidō chín yàhngùng nē?	How much wages do you want?
Jyúfáan	
Sei baak lā.	Four hundred.
Wòhng Táai	
Hóu lā.	Agreed.

Néih géisí hóyíh làih séuhng gùng nē?	When can you come start work?
Jyúfáan	
Hah go yuht yāt houh, hóu ma?	The first of next month, all right?
Wòhng Táai	
Hóu lā. Ngóh dáng néih lā.	Fine. I'll expect you.

II. NOTES

1. -gán Verb suffix calling attention to action in progress.

a. When one wishes to call attention to the fact that an action spoken about is going on at the time of speaking (or at the time spoken about), -gán is suffixed to the verb.

Ex: 1. Child (on phone): Màhmā dímgáai juhng m̀hlàih jip ngóh a?	How come Mother still hasn't come to get me?
Amah: Fong sām lā! Kéuih làihgán ge laak.	Don't worry! She's on the way now.
2. A: Néih yámgán mēyéh a?	What are you drinking?
B: Ngóh a? Ngóh yámgán gāfē.	Me? I'm drinking coffee.
A: Kéuih dōu haih yám gāfē àh.	That's what he's drinking too, I suppose.
B: M̀hhaih. Kéuih yám chàh.	No. Tea is what he's drinking.

(See BC and Drills 9,10,14)

b. Note the position of -gán in directional verb compounds:

Compare:

heui	heuigán
làih	làihgán
lohklàih	lohkgánlàih
fàanheui	fàangánheui
nìngfáanláih	nìnggánfàanlàih
hàahng séuhng heui	hàahnggán séuhng heui

2. -yùhn Verb suffix indicating finishing an action.

Ex: A. Ngóhdeih kàhmyaht duhk daaih yihsahpńg fo.	We read lesson 25 yesterday.
B. Duhkyùhn meih a?	Did you finish it?

(See BC and Drill 10)

3. gám 'such' (var: gámyéung)

a. gám, with the basic meaning 'such,' 'that kind,' has several uses. It may be an independent unit, or a modifier. As a modifier, it can modify both verbs and nouns.

1) As an independent unit: gám = such things, this (or that) kind of thing; in such a way.

Ex:	1. Ngóh máaihjó dī būi a, díp a, chēunglím bou a, gam jē.	I bought some glasses, and some plates, and some curtain material-- that kind of stuff, that's all.

(See Lesson 19 BC)

2. Kéuih Yìngmán góngdāk tùhng Yìnggwok yàhn yātyeuhng gám.	He speaks English just like an Englishman. [(Regarding) him, English speaks with Englishman same thus.]
3. Gám dōu wah tìhm àh!	(Done in such a way, and you still say it's sweet! (i.e., I put such a small amount of sugar in-- you still say it's too sweet?) gám = do/done in such a way

(See Drill 2)

2) As a verb modifier: gám Verb = Verb in such a way, Verb this (or that) way, Verb like this (or that)

Ex:	Gám sé m̀hdāk ga.	It won't do to write that way.
	M̀hhóu gám jouh.	Don't do it that way.
	Ngóhdeih hahmbahlahng dōu haih gám góng.	Everybody says it that way.

(See BC and Drill 1)

3) As modifier of a noun: gám ge Noun = this (or that) kind of Noun, such a Noun, a thus-done Noun

Ex:	Gám ge tòng néih jùng m̀hjungyi yám a?	Do you like soup done this way? [Thus-done soup, you like to drink?]
	Gám ge gùng ngāam m̀hngāam néih a?	Does such work suit you?

(See BC)

(Gám N, 'such an N' also occurs. See, for example, Lesson 27, Drill 4:

Hóu chíh haih bējáu gám meih.	It seems to be beer-- such a smell. i.e., It smells like beer.)

b. gám, 'such' and gam, 'so' compared:

gám joins with Nouns and Verbs, and gam joins with adjectives.

Ex: 1. gám

Gám jouh.	Do it that way.
Gám ge yéh.	That kind of stuff.

2. gam

Wàh! Gam leng!	Wow-- so pretty!
Aiya, gam laahttaat.	Oh my-- so dirty!

4. ...jì ngoih, 'outside' in the sense 'aside from,' 'with the exception of.'

Chyùhfóng jì ngoih douhdouh dou yiu maat.	[Kitchen's outside place-place all want mop] i.e., Except for the kitchen, every place needs mopping (giving instructions).

yíh ngoih is interchangeable with jì ngoih.

(See BC)

5. Some Verb-Object phrases serve as basis of a compound noun formula:

VO-ge, 'one who does VO as an occupation.'

Ex: tèng dihnwá ge = telephone operator [one who listens to the telephone]
maaih syù ge = bookseller [one who sells books]
jà chē ge = chauffeur [one who drives a car]

(See Drill 6)

English has a similar pattern for occupations, except in English the word order in the compound noun is: Object-Verb-er.

Ex: bookseller
math teacher
ball player
taxi driver

The only English expression on the Chinese VO-ge pattern that comes to mind is 'do-gooder.' Can you think of any others?

6. Móuh sówàih ge. 'Whatever you say,' 'No complaints,' 'It doesn't make any difference,' 'I don't have any preferences.'

There is some overlap in the use of Móuh sówàih ge and Sihdaahn lā.

With Sihdaahn lā you are asked to make a selection between two or more choices: Which do you want, A or B? Answering Sihdaahn lā you indicate that either/any of the choices suggested is OK by you.

Ex:	Q: Néih jùngyi sihk hā yìkwaahk sihk yú a?	Would you like to have shrimp or fish?
	A: Sihdaahn lā.	Either one is fine.

With Móuh sówaìh ge there are three possibilities:

1) One specific thing has been suggested, and in saying Móuh sówàih ge you agree to it: Is _X_ OK? Ans: No complaints-- whatever you say.

Ex:	Q: Gám ge gùng ngāam m̀hngāam neih a?	Does such work suit you?
	A: Dāk-- móuh sówàih gé.	Agreed-- no complaints.
	(See BC)	

2) You are given a choice between two or more suggestions, and in saying Móuh sówàih ge you indicate that any of the suggestions is OK by you. In this use, Móuh sówàih ge is interchangeable with Sihdaahn lā.

Ex:	Q: Néih jùngyi sihk hā yìkwaahk sihk yú a?	Do you want to eat shrimp, or fish?
	A: Móuh sówàih ge.	I don't have any preference-- either is OK.

3) No specific suggestion has been made, but you are asked what you would like. In answering Móuh sówàih ge you indicate that you have no special preferences, that anything/any way/any place, etc., is OK by you.

Ex:	A: Néih wah dím, jauh dím lā.	However you want it done, we'll do it that way.
	B: Ngóh móuh sówàih ga.	I don't have any preferences -- any way is fine.

III. DRILLS

1. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Gám jouh, dāk m̀hdāk a?	T: Is it OK to do it that (or this) way? [Do in such a way, OK or not?]
S: Gám jouh, hóu ma?	S: Is it OK to do it that (or this) way?

1. Gám góng dāk m̀hdāk a? Is it OK to say it that way?	1. Gám góng, hóu ma?
2. Gám sé, dāk m̀hdāk a? Is it OK to write it like this?	2. Gám sé, hóu ma?
+ 3. Gám dá, dāk m̀hdāk a? Is it OK to hit this way? (in ref. to typing: Is it OK + to type this way?) dá jih = to type	3. Gám dá, hóu ma?
4. Gám jíng, dāk m̀hdāk a?	4. Gám jíng, hóu ma?
5. Gám yuhng, dāk m̀hdāk a?	5. Gám yuhng, hóu ma?
6. Gám sái, dāk m̀hdāk a?	6. Gám sái, hóu ma?
7. Gám tong, dāk m̀hdāk a?	7. Gám tong, hóu ma?
8. Gám maat, dāk m̀hdāk a?	8. Gám maat, hóu ma?

---

2. Substitution Drill:

1. Gám dōu wah tìhm àh! Do it that way and you still say it's sweet! (for example: I put such a tiny bit of sugar in it, and you still say it's sweet!)	1. Gám dōu wah tìhm àh!
2. /syùn/	2. Gám dōu wah syùn àh!
3. /laaht/	3. Gám dōu wah laaht àh!
4. /laahttaat/	4. Gám dōu wah laahttaat àh!
5. /chàauh/	5. Gám dōu wah chàauh àh!
6. /chùhng/	6. Gám dōu wah chùhng àh!
7. /gònjehng/	7. Gám dōu wah gònjehng àh!
8. /leng/	8. Gám dōu wah leng àh!
9. /sàang/	9. Gám dōu wah sàang àh!

Comment: In the above sentences gám substitutes for a VP: gám jouh 'do it thus', 'did it thus,' and is the subject of the sentence. It is separated from the predicate by a slight pause. As a verb gám is used in the affirmative only.

3. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Bīngo fuhjaak jyú chāan a? Who is responsible for cooking?	1. Bīngo fuhjaak jyú chāan a?
2. /máaih yéh/	2. Bīngo fuhjaak máaih yéh a?
3. /jyúsihk/	3. Bīngo fuhjaak jyúsihk a?
4. /sái sāam/	4. Bīngo fuhjaak sái sāam a?
5. /jà chē/	5. Bīngo fuhjaak jà chē a?
6. /dá jih/	6. Bīngo fuhjaak dá jih a? Who is responsible for typing?
7. /chyùhfóng jīngoih ge sih/	7. Bīngo fuhjaak chyùhfóng jīngoih ge sih a?

4. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: laahnjó become broken	S1: Yùhgwó laahnjó, ngóh yātdihng fuhjaak. If it breaks, I will definitely take the responsibility. S2: Yùhgwó laahnjó, ngóh m̀hfuhjaak ga! If it breaks, I won't be (refuse to be) responsible. (or I won't take the responsibility.) S3: Yùhgwó laahnjó, néih fuh m̀hfuhjaak ga? If it breaks, will you take the responsibility?
1. chàauhjó	1. S1: Yùhgwó chàauhjó, ngóh yātdihng fuhjaak. S2: Yùhgwó chàauhjó, ngóh m̀hfuhjaak ga!

	S3: Yùhgwó chàauhjó, néih fuh m̀hfuhjaak ga?
2. laahnjó	2. S1: Yùhgwó laahnjó, ngóh yātdihng fuhjaak.
	S2: Yùhgwó laahnjó, ngóh m̀hfuhjaak ga!
	S3: Yùhgwó laahnjó, néih fuh m̀hfuhjaak ga?
3. laahttaatjó	3. S1: Yùhgwó laahttaatjó, ngóh yātdihng fuhjaak.
	S2: Yùhgwó laahttaatjó, ngóh m̀hfuhjaak ga!
	S3: Yùhgwó laahttaatjó, néih fuh m̀hfuhjaak ga?
+ 4. waaihjó (waaihjó = out of order, broken down, doesn't work)	4. S1: Yùhgwó waaihjó, ngóh yātdihng fuhjaak. If it gets out of order, I will take the responsibility.
	S2: Yùhgwó waaihjó, ngóh m̀hfuhjaak ga!
	S3: Yùhgwó waaihjó, néih fuh m̀hfuhjaak ga?
5. jīnglaahnjó	5. S1: Yùhgwó jīnglaahnjó, ngóh yātdihng fuhjaak.
	S2: Yùhgwó jīnglaahnjó, ngóh m̀hfuhjaak ga!
	S3: Yùhgwó jīnglaahnjó, néih fuh m̀hfuhjaak ga?

---

5. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Aiya! Ga chē waaihjó tīm! /go dihnwá/	T: Oh-oh, the car has broken down. (or is out of order, or doesn't work.) /phone/
S: Aiya! Go dihnwá waaihjó tīm!	S: Oh-oh, the phone is out of order.
+ 1. Aiya! Go dihnwá waaihjó tīm! /ga dihnsih(gēi)/ (TV Set)	1. Aiya! Ga dihnsih(gēi) waaihjó tīm!

2. Aiya! Ga dihnsih(gēi) waaihjó tīm! /go bīu/	2. Aiya! Go bīu waaihjó tīm!
3. Aiya! Go bīu waaihjó tīm! /go syutgwaih/	3. Aiya! Go syutgwaih waaihjó tīm!
4. Aiya! Go syutgwaih waaihjó tīm! /ga chē/	4. Aiya! Ga chē waaihjó tīm!
+ 5. Aiya! Ga chē waaihjó tīm! /ga láahnghei(gēi)/ (air conditioner)	5. Aiya! Go láahnghei(gēi) waaihjó tīm! The air conditioner is out of order.
+ 6. Aiya! Go láahnghei(gēi) waaihjó tīm! /go sāuyāmgèi/ (radio)	6. Aiya! Go sāuyāmgèi waaihjó tīm! The radio is out of order.
+ 7. Aiya! Go sāuyāmgèi waaihjó tīm! /go dájihgēi/ (typewriter)	7. Aiya! Go dájihgēi waaihjó tīm! The typewriter is out of order.
8. Aiya! Go dájihgēi waaihjó tīm! /go dihnwá/	8. Aiya! Go dihnwá waaihjó tīm!

Comment: For láahngheigēi, 'air conditioner,' and dihnsihgēi, 'TV set,' some speakers omit -gēi, others don't. [gēi = machine]

Both ga and go are used as Measures for sāuyāmgèi, dihnsihgēi, and láahngheigēi.

---

6. Response Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih jouh mēyéh ga? /gaau Gwóngdúngwá/	T: What does he do? (he is a do-what one?) /teach Cantonese/
S: Kéuih gaau Gwóngdúngwá ge.	S: He's a Cantonese teacher. [teach-Cantonese one]
1. Kéuih jouh mēyéh ga? /gaau syù/	1. Kéuih gaau syù ge. He's a teacher.
2. Kéuih jouh mēyéh ga? /maaih boují/	2. Kéuih maaih boují ge. He's a newspaper hawker.
3. Kéuih jouh mēyéh ga? /jíng chē/	3. Kéuih jíng chē ge. He's a car mechanic.
4. Kéuih jouh mēyéh ga? /jà chē/	4. Kéuih jà chē ge. He's a chauffeur.
5. Kéuih jouh mēyéh ga? /dá jih/	5. Kéuih dá jih ge. She's a typist.

---

7. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Néih sèhng yaht heuijó bīndouh làih a? Where were you all day?	2. Néih sèhng yaht heuijó bīndouh làih a?
2. /hahjau/	2. Néih sèhng go hahjau heuijó bīndouh làih a?
3. /máahn/	3. Néih sèhng máahn heuijó bīndouh làih a?
4. /jīu/	4. Néih sèhng jīu heuijó bīndouh làih a?
5. /nìhn/	5. Néih sèhng nìhn heuijó bīndouh làih a?
6. /láihbaai/	6. Néih sèhng go láihbaai heuijó bīndouh làih a?

Comment: Heui...làih = the làih part indicates that the person has returned from having been away. Compare:

1. Kéuih sèhng nìhn heuijó bīndouh a?	Where has he gone off to all year? (still away)
2. Kéuih sèhng nìhn heuijó bīndouh làih a?	Where did he go off to all year? (has returned)

---

8. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Dīmgaai sèhng gihn sāam dōu laahttaatsaai ga? *How come* the [entire] dress is dirty all over?	1. Dīmgáai sèhng gihn sāam dōu laahttaatsaai ga?
2. /faai bou/	2. Dīmgáai sèhng faai bou dōu laahttaatsaai ga?
3. /tìuh kwàhn/	3. Dīmgáai sèhng tìuh kwàhn dōu laahttaatsaai ga?
+ 4. /fùng seun/ (M for letter)	4. Dīmgáai sèhng fùng seun dōu laahttaatsaai ga? How come the whole letter is dirty all over?
+ 5. /jèung jóubou/ (M. for newspapers)	5. Dīmgáai sèhng jèung jóubou dōu laahttaatsaai ga?

6. /tìuh mòuhgān/	6. Dīmgáai sèhng tìuh mòuhgān dōu laahttaatsaai ga?

---

9. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Chàhn Táai yìhgā tái syù.	T: Mrs. Chan is reading now.
S: Dángján sìn lā, Chàhn yìhgā táigán syù.	S: Please wait a bit, Mrs. Chan is reading now.
1. Dī sailóugō yìhgā yám chàh.	1. Dángján sìn lā, dī sailóugō yìhgā yámgán chàh.
2. Kéuih go néui yìhgā sihk faahn.	2. Dángján sìn lā, kéuih go néui yìhgā sihkgán faahn.
3. Chàhn Síujé yìhgā wán sànfánjing.	3. Dángján sìn lā, Chàhn Síujé yìhgā wángán sànfánjing.
4. Hòh Sàang yìhgā tái dihnsih.	4. Dángján sìn lā, Hòh Sàang yìhgā táigán dihnsih.
5. Kéuih bàhbā yìhgā dá dihnwá.	5. Dángján sìn lā, kéuih bàhbā yìhgā dágán dihnwá.
6. Kéuih màhmā yìhgā jíng jóuchāan.	6. Dángján sìn lā, kéuih màhmā yìhgā jínggán jóuchāan.

---

10. Response Drill

Ex: T: Néih màhmā dáyùhn dihnwá meih a? /shake/	T: Has your mother finished telephoning yet?
S: Meih, juhng dágán.	S: No, she's still on the phone.
T: Néih màhmā dáyùhn dihnwá meih a? /nod/	T: Has your mother finished telephoning yet?
S: Dáyùhn laak.	S: Yes, she's finished.
1. Néih bàhbā sihkyùhn ngaanjau meih a? /shake/	1. Meih, juhng sihkgán.
2. Néih màhmā tèngyùhn sāuyāmgèi meih a? /nod/	2. Tèngyùhn laak.
3. Néih go néui duhkyùhn daaihhohk meih a? /shake/	3. Meih, juhng duhkgán.

4. Néih tùhng kéuih kìngyùhn gái meih a? /nod/	4. Kìngyùhn laak.
5. Néih gājē táiyùhn dihnsih meih a? /shake/	5. Méih, juhng táigán.

---

11. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih tèng sāuyāmgèi. /dá páai/	T: He is listening to the radio. /play mahjong/
S: Kéuih tènggán sāuyāmgèi, m̀hdākhàahn dá páai.	S: He's listening to the radio, and doesn't have (free) time to play mahjong.
1. Kéuih sé jih. /tái dihnsih/	1. Kéuih ségán jih, m̀hdākhàahn tái dihnsih.
2. Kéuih jouh gūngfù. /kìnggái/	2. Kéuih jouhgán gūngfù, m̀hdākhàahn kìnggái.
3. Kéuih duhk syù. /dá bō/	3. Kéuih duhkgán syù, m̀hdākhàahn dá bō.
4. Kéuih jyú faahn. /heui ló chìn/	4. Kéuih jyúgán faahn, m̀hdākhaahn heui ló chìn.
5. Kéuih tong sāam. /tái hei/	5. Kéuih tonggán sāam, m̀hdākhàahn tái hei.

---

12. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóhdeih dōu sihkháh Sàichāan gé. /yáuhsìh/	T: We eat Western food too. [i.e., at times, instead of Chinese food.]
S: Ngóhdeih yáuhsìh dōu sihkháh Sàichāan gé.	S: We sometimes eat Western food too.
+ 1. Ngóhdeih dōu sihkháh Jùng choi gé. /gáum̀hgáu/ from time to time	1. Ngóhdeih gáum̀hgáu dōu sihkháh Jùng choi gé. From time to time we eat Chinese food.
2. Ngóhdeih dōu heuiháh léuihhàhng gé. /yáuhsìh/ We go on outings too.	2. Ngóhdeih yáuhsìh dōu heuiháh léuihhàhng gé.
3. Ngóhdeih dōu dáháh páai gé. /hóudòsìh/	3. Ngóhdeih hóudòsìh dōu dáháh páai gé.

4. Ngóhdeih dōu yámháh bējáu gé. /tùngsèuhng/	4. Ngóhdeih tùngsèuhng dōu yámháh bējáu gé.
5. Ngóhdeih dōu chéngháh haak gé. /gáum̀hgáu/	5. Ngóhdeih gáum̀hgáu dōu chéngháh haak gé.

---

13. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Ngóh agō hóu pa yāt go yān sihk faahn. My elder brother doesn't like to eat alone.	1. Ngóh agō hóu pa yāt go yān sihk faahn.
2. /gājē/heui Sàandéng/	2. Ngóh gājē hóu pa yāt go yān heui Sàandéng.
3. /sailóu/gwo hói/	3. Ngóh sailóu hóu pa yāt go yān gwo hói.
4. /gùngyàhn/chēut gāai/	4. Ngóh gùngyàhn hóu pa yāt go yān chēut gāai.
5. /màhmā/hàahng gūngsī/	5. Ngóh màhmā hóu pa yāt go yān hàahng gūngsī.
6. /ngóh chānchīk/tái hei/	6. Ngóh chānchīk hóu pa yāt go yān tái hei.

---

14. Conversation Drill

Ex: A: Néih tùhng bīngo kīnggán gái a?	A: Who are you talking to? [with]
B: Tùhng ngóh gùngyàhn.	B: To [with] the servant.
A: Néihdeih kīnggán mātyéh a?	A: What are you talking about?
B: Ngóhdeih kīnggán chéng haak.	B: We're talking about having a dinner party.
1. A. ....?	1. A. Néih tùhng bīngo kīnggán gái a?
B. ....chyùhjí.	B. Tùhng ngóh chyùhjí.
A. ....?	A. Néihdeih kīnggán mātyéh a?
B. ......kīnggán jyú chāan.	B. Ngóhdeih kīnggán jyú chāan.

---

2. A. ....?	2. A. Néih tùhng bīngo kīnggán gái a?
B. ....dájáap.	B. Tùhng ngóh dájáap.
A. ....?	A. Néihdeih kīnggán mātyéh a?
B. ....máaih yéh.	B. Ngóhdeih kīnggán máaih yéh.
3. A. ....?	3. A. Néih tùhng bīngo kīnggán gái a?
B. ....bàhbā.	B. Tùhng ngóh bàhbā.
A. ....?	A. Néihdeih kīnggán mēyéh a?
B. ....tái hei.	B. Ngóhdeih kīnggán tái hei.
4. A. ....?	4. A. Néih tùhng bīngo kīnggán gái a?
B. ....agō.	B. Tùhng ngóh agō.
A. ....?	A. Néihdeih kīnggán mēyéh a?
B. ....wán néuihpàhngyáuh.	B. Ngóhdeih kīnggán wán néuihpàhngyáuh.
5. A. ....?	5. A. Néih tùhng bīngo kīnggán gái a?
B. ....gājē.	B. Tùhng ngóh gājē.
A. ....?	A. Néihdeih kīnggán mēyéh a?
B. ....jouh sāam.	B. Ngóhdeih kīnggán jouh sāam.
6. A. ....?	6. A. Néih tùhng bīngo kīnggán gái a?
B. ....sailóu.	B. Tùhng ngóh sailóu.
A. ....?	A. Néihdeih kīnggán mēyéh a?
B. ....dá bō.	B. Ngóhdeih kīnggán dá bō.
7. A. ....?	7. A. Néih tùhng bīngo kīnggán gái a?
B. ....màhmā.	B. Tùhng ngóh màhmā.
A. ....?	A. Néihdeih kīnggán mēyéh a?
B. ....dá páai.	B. Ngóhdeih kīnggán dá páai.
8. A. ....?	8. A. Néih tùhng bīngo kīnggán gái a?
B. ....saimúi.	B. Tùhng ngóh saimúi.
A. ....?	A. Néihdeih kīnggán mēyéh a?
B. ....léuihhàhng.	B. Ngóhdeih kīnggán léuihhàhng.

---

15. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih láihbaaiyāt ji láihbaaińgh yiu fàangùng. /yāt dím ji ńgh dím/	T: He works from Monday to Friday. /1 to 5/
S: Kéuih yāt dím ji ńgh dím yiu fàangùng.	S: He works from one o'clock to five o'clock.
1. Ngóh gàmyaht ji tìngyaht dōu m̀hdākhàahn. /láihbaaisàam ji láihbaailuhk/	1. Ngóh láihbaaisàam ji láihbaailuhk dōu m̀hdākhàahn.
2. Jèung Sàang gauhnín ji gàmnín dōu meih fàangwo làih. /kàhmyaht ji gàmyaht/	2. Jèung Sàang kàhmyaht ji gàmyaht dōu meih fàangwo làih.
3. Kéuih gàmjìu ji yìhgā juhng meih sihkgwo faahn. /chìhnyaht ji yìhgā/	3. Kéuih chìhnyaht ji yìhgā juhng meih sihk faahn.
4. Làuh Síujé yihyuht ji sàamyuht yiu heui Yìnggwok. /yātyuht ji ńghyuht/	4. Làuh Síujé yātyuht ji ńghyuht yiu heui Yìnggwok.
5. Ngóh léuhng dím ji sei dím yiu duhk syù. /sāam dím ji ńgh dím/	5. Ngóh sàam dím ji ńgh dím yiu duhk syù.
6. Ngóh chìhnyaht ji gàmyaht m̀hsái fàangùng. /gàmyaht ji hauhyaht/	6. Ngóh gàmyaht ji hauhyaht m̀hsái fàangùng.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

1) chau = to take care (of children)

chaujái = baby amah

2) wai = Hi! Hey! Say!

3) wóh = sentence suffix, 'That's what she said'

4) néuihjái = young girl

5) jouh gùngfo = do homework, lessons

6) jihgéi = ourselves, myself, himself, etc.
here: ourselves alone

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:	B. And he replies:
1. How come Mr. Chan hasn't come yet?	1. He's on his way now.
2. I've come to see Mr. Wong.	2. He's on the phone right now, would you have a seat first please?
3. (on the phone:) Mother, I'm at school, can you come get me?	3. I'm fixing dinner--you take the bus home.
4. (at the head of the stairs looking down:) Who is that person coming up?	4. It's the radio repairman.
5. This book is really interesting!	5. When you're through, would you lend it to me?
6. We'd better go, otherwise we'll be late.	6. Let me just finish writing this letter of recommendation, then I'll go.
7. Did we finish lesson 25 yesterday?	7. Yes, we finished lesson 25 and started lesson 26.
8. When you finish fixing the radio, would you have a look at the TV set?	8. I've already fixed the radio, where's the TV?
9. Is it OK to do it this way?	9. That way's not right--don't use chopsticks.
10. Everybody says it that way.	10. Is it OK to say it this way?
11. Who is responsible for fixing the typewriter?	11. There's a company (gūngsī) responsible.
12. If you break it, will you be responsible?	12. Yes.
13. Where were you all day? I phoned you 3 or 4 times.	13. I went to fetch my ID card.
14. Did you get it (the ID card)?	14. No, I didn't--they said to come back next Tuesday.

15. How many people altogether are there in your school?	15. More than 1500.
16. What are you chatting about?	16. We're talking about taking a trip.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 26

1. daaihyàhn	n:	adult
2. dá	v:	hit
3. dá jih	vo:	type on the typewriter [hit-words]
4. dájihgēi	n:	typewriter
5. dá	v:	take care of
6. dihnsihgēi	n:	TV set
7. dōu	adv:	still
8. fàn	v:	divide, divide up
9. fuhjaak	v:	take responsibility for, is responsible for
10. fùng	m:	M. for letter
11. gaaisiuhseun	n:	letter of recommendation, letter of introduction
12. gám	n/v:	in such a way; this/that way; as V, a reduced form of gam jouh; 'do it this/that way'
13. -gán	vs:	verb suf. highlighting action in progress
14. gùng	n:	work
15. gùngfù	n:	work
16. gáum̀hgáu	adv:	from time to time
17. hahmbahlaahng	Ph:	altogether
18. jèung	m:	M. for newspaper
19. TW ji TW	prep:	TW to TW; TW until TW
20. jì	bf:	'of' grammatical word joining modifying structure preceding it to head structure following it
21. .....jìngoih	Ph:	aside from...., outside (of) .....
22. jyúfáan	n:	a person who works as cook in private home (usually a woman)
23. jyúfaahn	n:	same as jyúfáan (QV)
24. jyúsihk	v:	cooking (VV compound which occupies noun position in sentence; cannot be preceded directly by m̀h.)

25. láahnghei (gēi)	n:	air conditioner
26. Móuh sówàih ge.	Ph:	'Whatever you say.' 'Any way is OK with me.' 'No complaints.'
27. ngoih	bf:	outside
28. sànfánjing	n:	ID card
29. sāuyāmgèi	n:	radio
30. sèhng	sp:	entire, whole
31. seun	n:	letter
32. séuhng gùng	vo:	start work
33. tùhngmàaih	Cj:	and, with
34. tùngsèuhng	adv:	ordinarily, usually
35. waaihjó	adjP:	out of order, broken down
36. yāt go yān	np:	alone; by one's self
37. -yùhn	vs:	verb suf. = finish

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(An American who works at the American Consulate in Hong Kong talks to a Cantonese friend at a party:)

Búndeihyàhn

ngoihgwokyàhn	foreigners
daaihdōu	mostly, for the most part
ngoihgwokyàhn daaihdōu dōu hohk Gwokyúh	foreigners mostly all study Mandarin
hohk Jūngmán ge ngoihgwokyàhn	foreigners who study Chinese
Tēnggóngwah hohk Jūngmán ge ngoihgwokyàhn daaihdōu dōu hohk Gwokyúh--	I hear that foreigners who study Chinese mostly all study Mandarin--
jān	true
Haih mhaih jān ge?	Is that true?

Méihgwokyàhn

Haih jān ge.	Yes, that's right.
Daahnhaih hái Hēunggóng jauh yáuh hóudō Méihgwokyàhn hohk Gwóngdūngwá la.	But in Hong Kong a lot of Americans study Cantonese.

Búndeihyàhn

líhngsihgwún	consulate
hái líhngsihgwún jouh sih	work at the consulate
hái líhngsihgwún jouh sih gó dī Méihgwokyàhn	the Americans who work at the consulate
Gám, hái líhngsihgwún jouh sih gó dī Méihgwokyàhn haih mhaih gogo dōu hohk Gwóngdūngwá ge nē?	Do the Americans who work at the consulate all study Cantonese?

Méihgwokyàhn

yáuhdī	some, some of them
yáuhdī..., yáuhdī	some..., others ...
Mhaih ge--	No--
Yáuhdī hohk Gwóngdūngwá, yáuhdī hohk Gwokyúh, yáuhdī léuhng yeuhng dōu mhohk.	Some study Cantonese, some study Mandarin, others don't study either one.

Búndeihyàhn

deui...làih góng	speaking for....; speaking about....
deui ngoihgwokyàhn làih góng	speaking for foreigners; for foreigners; to foreigners
nī léuhng yeuhng wá, bīn yeuhng nàahndī a?	These two languages--which one is harder?
Deui ngoihgwokyàhn làih góng, nī léuhng yeuhng wá, bīn yeuhng nàahndī a?	For foreigners which of the two languages is more difficult?

Méihgwokyàhn

Ngóh ǹjī bo.	Gee, I don't know.
Yānwaih ngóh jihnghaih hohkgwo Gwóngdùngwá ja.	Because I've only studied Cantonese.
ǹtùhng	not alike, different, difference
Gwóngdùngwá tùhng Gwokyúh yáuh mēyéh ǹtùhng a?	Cantonese and Mandarin--how do they differ?

Búndeihyàhn

kéihsaht	actually
chíh	similar, resemble
Kéihsaht Gwóngdùngwá tùhng Gwokyúh yáuh hóudò hóu chíh ge.	Actually Cantonese and Mandarin have many similarities.

Méihgwokyàhn

fānbiht	difference
móuh fānbiht	there's no difference
Néih jīkhaih wah Gwóngdùngwá tùhng Gwokyúh móuh mēyéh daaih fānbiht lo bo?	You're saying that there are no big differences between Cantonese and Mandarin? (He doesn't believe it)

Búndeihyàhn

Gám yauh ǹhaih.	No, I'm not saying that either. [that way--also-not]
geui	sentence

sàamléuhng geui	two or three sentences, (i.e., a few sentences)
Bātgwo sàamléuhng geui hóu nàahn góngdākyùhn gé.	However it is difficult to explain [tell and be able to finish] in just a few sentences.

B. **Recapitulation:**

(An American who works at the American Consulate in Hong Kong talks to a Cantonese friend at a party:)

Búndeihyàhn	
Tèngginwah hohk Jùngmán ge ngoihgwokyàhn dòsou dōu hohk Gwokyúh--	I hear that foreigners who study Chinese for the most part study Mandarin--
Haih àhhaih jàn ga?	Is that true?
Méihgwokyàhn	
Haih jàn ga.	Yes, that's right.
Daahnhaih hái Hèunggóng jauh yáuh hóudò Méihgwokyàhn dōu hohk Gwóngdùngwá la.	But in Hong Kong a lot of Americans study Cantonese.
Búndeihyàhn	
Gám, hái lihngsihgwún jouh sih gó dī Méihgwokyàhn haih àhhaih gogo dōu hohk Gwóngdùngwá ge nē?	Do the Americans who work at the consulate all study Cantonese?
Méihgwokyàhn	
Àhhaih gé--	No--
Yáuhdī hohk Gwóngdùngwá, yáuhdī hohk Gwokyúh, yáuhdī léuhng yeuhng dōu àhhohk.	Some study Cantonese, some study Mandarin, others don't study either one.
Búndeihyàhn	
Deui ngoihgwokyàhn làih góng, nī léuhng yeuhng wá, bīn yeuhng nàahndī a?	Which of the two languages is more difficult for foreigners?

Méihgwokyàhn	
Ngóh m̀hjī bo, yànwaih ngóh jihnghaih hohkgwo Gwóngdùngwá ja.	Gee, I don't know, because I've only studied Cantonese.
Gwóngdùngwá tùhng Gwokyúh yáuh mēyéh m̀htùhng a?	Cantonese and Mandarin--how do they differ?
Búndeihyàhn	
Kèihsaht Gwóngdùngwá tùhng Gwokyúh yáuh hóudò hóu chíh ge.	Actually Cantonese and Mandarin have many similarities.
Méihgwokyàhn	
Néih jīkhaih wah, Gwóngdùngwá tùhng Gwokyúh móuh mēyéh daaih fànbiht lo bo?!	You're saying that Cantonese and Mandarin don't have any big differences? (He doesn't believe it.)
Búndeihyàhn	
Gám yauh m̀hhaih.	No, I'm not saying that either. [that way--also not]
Bātgwo sàamléuhng geui hóu nàahn góngdākyùhn gé.	However it is difficult to explain in just a few sentences.

II. NOTES

1. chíh 'similar to,' 'resembles'

In the spoken language chíh, 'is similar to,' 'resembles' does not stand alone in the affirmative, but is preceded by hóu: hóu chíh, [very similar], i.e., 'similar.' The negative and question forms pattern regularly.

Ex:	1. Kéuih hóu chíh Màhma.	She resembles her mother.
	2. Kéuih m̀hchíh Màhmā.	She doesn't resemble her mother.
	3. Kéuih chíh m̀hchíh Màhmā a?	Does she resemble her mother?

(See Drill 1)

2. yáuhdī, 'some'

a. yáuhdī may be either modifier or head.

Ex: 1. Yáuhdī noihgwokyàhn sīk góng Gwóngdùngwá.	Some foreigners can speak Cantonese.
2. Yáuhdī sīk góng, daahnhaih m̀hsīk sé.	Some can speak, but can't write.

b. yáuhdī..., yáuhdī... = some..., some...; some..., others...

In paired clauses yáuhdī...,yauhdī... form a set meaning: 'some (do this), some (do that);' 'some (do this), others (do that)'

Ex: Yáuhdī yámgán heiséui, yáuhdī yámgán bējáu.	Some are drinking soft drinks and others are drinking beer.

(See BC and Drill 5)

c. yáuhdī is used only in subject position, not in object position.

In object position where English would have 'some' as modifier to a noun object, Cantonese uses dī + N to represent 'some N.' But where English has 'some' as the pronoun object of the verb, Cantonese, in keeping with its characteristic absence of pronoun object (See Lesson 3, p. 67), does not have an object to the verb.

Ex: 1. Yáuhdī béng hóu hóusihk, yáuhdī m̀hhaih géi hóusihk.	Some cookies are quite good, some aren't so good.
2. Sihháh dī béng lā!	Try some cookies!
3. Sihháh lā!	Try some!

d. Comparison with yáuhsìh, 'sometimes'

yáuhdī is a nominal expression, and yáuhsìh a verbal one.

Ex: 1. Gó dī yàhn yáuhdī heui yám chàh, yáuhdī hái ūkkéi.	(Of) those people, some went out to tea, and others stayed at home.
2. Gó dī yàhn yáuhsìh heui yám chàh, yáuhsìh hái ūkkéi.	Those people sometimes go out to tea and sometimes stay home.

(See Drill 5)

3. Duplicated Measures for individual nouns = 'every N,' 'all Ns,' 'Ns all V'

In Lessons 20 and 23 you learned duplicated Measures in relation to Timewords-- for example, nìhnnìhn, 'every year,' jìujìu, 'every morning,' gogo láihbaai, 'every week.'

In this lesson you encounter the duplicated individual Measure used to mean 'every,' 'all' in relation to its individual noun. In duplicated form the Measure occurs in a set with a following dōu: M-M dōu V = 'every M Vs,' 'all Ms V'

Ex: gogo dōu V = 'every M Vs,' 'all Ms V'
Méihgwokyàhn gogo dōu V = Americans, all V
Gogo Méihgwokyàhn dōu ... = Every American Vs
Hái līhngsihgwún jouh sih gódī Méihgwokyàhn haih mhhaih gogo dōu hohk Gwóngdùngwá ge nē? — Those Americans who work at the Consulate-- do they all study Cantonese?

(See BC and Drill 10)

The duplicated Measure can either precede or follow the noun it is measure to, and in a follow sentence can occur without its noun referent. When it precedes its noun referent, it modifies the noun, which is subject of the sentence; when it follows its noun referent, the sentence is in Topic;Comment form, with the noun as Topic and the duplicated Measure serving as subject of the Comment sentence. (See examples above)

The noun yàhn, 'person,' is used as a Measure in duplicated form to mean 'everybody.'

Ex: yàhnyàhn = everybody
Yàhnyàhn dōu jùngyi sihk faahn. Everybody likes to eat.

4. dòsou, 'most,' ' the majority;' 'mostly,' 'for the most part,' 'the majority of the time'

a. dòsou may modify an otherwise unmodified noun, in which case its sentence position is before the noun:

Ex: Dòsou sailouhgō dōu jùngyi yám heiséui. — Most children like to drink soft drinks.

b. Elsewhere, dòsou follows the subject and comes just before the verb.

Ex: 1. Kéuih dòsou góng Gwóngdùngwá.	He speaks Cantonese most of the time.
2. Ngóhdeih dòsou haih gám góng.	We for the most part express it that way.
3. Gó dī yàhn dòsou góng Gwóngdùngwá.	Those people speak Cantonese most of the time or: Those people-- most of them speak Cantonese.

(See BC and Drill 10)

5. kèihsaht, 'in actuality,' 'really,' 'but really...'

Kèihsaht leads off a response sentence, indicating disagreement with the statement or assumption of the stimulus sentence.

Ex: Kéuih wah kéuih sīk sé jih. Kèihsaht yāt go jih dōu m̀hsīk sé.	He said he could write Chinese, but actually he couldn't write a word.

(See BC)

6. lo bo, sen. suf.

The sentence suffix lo bo gives to the sentence to which it attaches the connotation of good-natured protest that addressee is wrong in doing or saying whatever it is he is doing/saying.

Ex: A: Gwóngdùngwá tùhng Gwokyúh yáuh hóudò hóu chíh ge.	Cantonese and Mandarin have many similarities.
B: Néih jīkhaih wah, Gwóngdùngwá tùhng Gwokyúh móuh mēyéh daaih fànbiht lo bo?!	You're saying that Cantonese and Mandarin don't have any big differences?! (The English here would be more apt to be: 'You're not saying...' to indicate protesting disbelief.)

(See BC)

7. m̀htùhng, 'not alike,' not used in the affirmative.

The verb tùhng, 'to be alike, similar to' is used in the negative and question forms, but not in the affirmative.

Ex:

q	Ni gihn tùhng gó gihn tùhng mhtùhng a?	Are this one and that one alike?
n	Nī gihn tùhng gó gihn m̀htùhng.	This one and that one are not alike.
a	Nī gihn tùhng gó gihn yātyeuhng.	This one and that one are alike.

(See BC and Drills 6,7,8)

III. DRILLS

1. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Néih wah kéuih chíh m̀hchíh màhmā a? + (chíh X = resemble X) Do you think he looks like Mother?	1. Néih wah kéuih chíh m̀hchíh màhmā a?
+ 2. /Sàiyàhn/ (Westerner, European, Caucasian)	2. Néih wah kéuih chíh m̀hchíh Sàiyàhn a? Do you think he looks like a European?
+ 3. /Dākgwokyàhn/ (a German, Germans)	3. Néih wah kéuih chíh m̀hchíh Dākgwokyàhn a?
+ 4. /Faatgwokyàhn/ (Frenchman)	4. Néih wah kéuih chíh m̀hchíh Faatgwokyàhn a?
5. /néih sīnsàang/	5. Néih wah kéuih chíh m̀hchíh néih sīnsàang a?
6. /kéuih bàhbā/	6. Néih wah kéuih chíh m̀hchíh kéuih bàhbā a?

Comment: Sàiyàhn [West-person], refers to Caucasians, and is translated as 'European' in Hong Kong, though it includes non-European Caucasians as well.

a. Repeat, with responses, according to teacher's nod or shake, thus:

T: Néih wah kéuih chíh m̀hchíh kéuih màhmā a? /nod/

S: Hóu chíh kéuih màhmā.

T: Néih wah kéuih chíh m̀hchíh kéuih màhmā a? /shake/

S: Dōu m̀hchíh kéuih màhmā.

---

2. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih haih dá bō ge.	T: He's a ball player.
S: Kéuih dōu m̀hchíh haih dá bō gé.	S: He doesn't look like a ball player.
1. Kéuih haih maaih ngūk ge. He's a real estate agent.	1. Kéuih dōu m̀hchíh haih maaih ngūk gé.
2. Kéuih haih duhk syū ge. He's a student.	2. Kéuih dōu m̀hchíh haih duhk syū gé.

3. Kéuih haih jouh yīsāng ge. He's a doctor. [work as a doctor, be a doctor]	3. Kéuih dōu m̀hchíh haih jouh yīsāng gé.
4. Kéuih haih jyú faahn ge. She's a cook.	4. Kéuih dōu m̀hchíh haih jyú faahn gé.

Comment: The sentence suffix gé said with light stress and rising intonation indicates doubt.

---

3. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

1. Kéuih ge Yīngmàhn góngdāk tùhng Méihgwokyàhn yāt-yeuhng gám. He speaks English just like an American.	1. Kéuih ge Yīngmàhn góngdāk tùhng Méihgwokyàhn yāt-yeuhng gám.
2. /Yīngmán/Yīnggwokyàhn/	2. Kéuih ge Yīngmán góngdāk tùhng Yīnggwokyàhn yāt-yeuhng gám.
+ 3. /Faatmán/Faatgwokyàhn/ (French language)(Frenchman) (also: Faatmàhn)	3. Kéuih ge Faatmán góngdāk tùhng Faatgwokyàhn yāt-yeuhng gám.
4. /Yahtmán/Yahtbúnyàhn/	4. Kéuih ge Yahtmàhn góngdāk tùhng Yahtbúnyàhn yāt-yeuhng gám.
+ 5. /Dākmán/Dākgwokyàhn/ (German language)(German person) (also: Dākmàhn)	5. Kéuih ge Dākmàhn góngdāk tùhng Dākgwokyàhn yāt-yeuhng gám. He speaks German just like a German.
+ 6. /búndeihwá/búndeihyàhn/ (the local language)	6. Kéuih ge búndeihwá góngdāk tùhng búndeihyàhn yāt-yeuhng gám.

---

4. Response Drill

Ex: T: Hmm...néih tēngdóu mēyéh sēng a? /dihnwá/ (+)	T: What sound (or what noise) do you hear?
S: Hóu chíh haih dihnwá gám sēng bo.	S: It sounds like a telephone. [It seems to be a telephone that kind of sound.]
1. Hmm...néih tēngdóu mēyéh	1. Hóu chíh haih dá páai gám

sèng a? /dá páai/	sèng bo.
2. Hmm...néih tèngdóu mēyéh sèng a? /kìnggái/	2. Hóu chíh haih kìnggái gám sèng bo.
3. Hmm...néih tèngdóu mēyéh sèng a? /fóchē/	3. Hóu chíh haih fóchē gám sèng bo.
4. Hmm...néih tèngdóu mēyéh sèng a? /laahmchē/	4. Hóu chíh haih laahmchē gám sèng bo.
5. Hmm...néih tèngdóu mēyéh sèng a? /sāuyāmgèi/	5. Hóu chíh haih sāuyāmgèi gám sèng bo.
++ 6. Hmm...néih màhndóu mēyéh meih a? /bējáu/ What smell do you smell? màhn = to smell meih = a smell	6. Hóu chíh haih bējáu gám meih bo. It smells like beer.
7. Hmm...néih màhndóu mēyéh meih a? /jīng béng/ What's that smell?	7. Hóu chíh jīng béng gám meih bo. Smells like a cake being baked.

5. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Yáuhdī yàhn jùngyi dá páai, yáuhdī jùngyi yàuhséui.	T: Some people like to play mahjong, others like to swim.
S: Ngóh yáuhsìh jùngyi dá páai, yáuhsìh jùngyi yàuhséui.	S: I sometimes like to play mahjong and sometimes like to go swimming.
1. Yáuhdī yàhn tái hei, yáuhdī tái dihnsih.	1. Ngóh yáuhsìh tái hei, yáuhsìh tái dihnsih.
2. Yáuhdī yàhn hohk Gwóngdùngwá, yáuhdī hohk Gwokyúh.	2. Ngóh yáuhsìh hohk Gwóngdùngwá, yáuhsìh hohk Gwokyúh.
3. Yáuhdī yàhn sihk Jùngchoi, yáuhdī sihk Sāichāan.	3. Ngóh yáuhsìh sihk Jùngchoi, yáuhsìh sihk Sāichāan.
4. Yáuhdī yàhn daap syùhn, yáuhdī chóh fēigēi.	4. Ngóh yáuhsìh daap syùhn, yáuhsìh chóh fēigēi.
5. Yáuhdī yàhn daap bāsí, yáuhdī chóh dīksí.	5. Ngóh yáuhsìh daap bāsí, yáuhsìh chóh dīksí.
6. Yáuhdī yàhn góng Faatmán, yáuhdī góng Dākmán.	6. Ngóh yáuhsìh góng Faatmán yáuhsìh góng Dākmán.

6. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Nī jēung tùhng gó jēung yātyeuhng ge jē.	T: This one and that one are just alike.
S: Nī jēung mtùhng gó jēung ge.	S: This one is not like that one.
1. Nī faai tùhng gó faai yātyeuhng ge jē.	1. Nī faai mtùhng gó faai ge.
2. Nī bāt tùhng gó bāt yātyeuhng ge jē.	2. Nī bāt mtùhng gó bāt ge.
3. Nī tou tùhng gó tou yātyeuhng ge jē.	3. Nī tou mtùhng gó tou ge.
4. Nī jī tùhng gó jī yātyeuhng ge jē.	4. Nī jī mtùhng gó jī ge.
5. Nī jek tùhng gó jek yātyeuhng ge jē.	5. Nī jek mtùhng gó jek ge.
6. Nī jēung tùhng gó jēung yātyeuhng ge jē.	6. Nī jēung mtùhng gó jēung ge.

Comment: tùhng can be the verb of the predicate in the negative and question forms, but not in the affirmative.

	Subject	Predicate	
n	Nīgo	mtùhng gógo.	This one is not like that one.
q	Nīgo	tùhng mtùhng gógo a?	Is this one like that one?
a	Nīgo tùhng gógo	yātyeuhng.	This one is like that one.

---

7. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Nī bún tùhng mtùhng gó bún a?	T: Is this book like that one?
S: Nī bún tùhng gó bún yáuh mēyéh fānbiht a?	S: Is there any difference between this book and that one?
1. Nī deui tùhng mtùhng gó deui a?	1. Nī deui tùhng gó deui yáuh mēyéh fānbiht a?
2. Nī tìuh tùhng mtùhng gó tìuh a?	2. Nī tìuh tùhng gó tìuh yáuh mēyéh fānbiht a?
3. Nī bá tùhng mtùhng gó bá a?	3. Nī bá tùhng gó bá yáuh mēyéh fānbiht a?

4. Nī bāau tùhng m̀htùhng gó bāau a?	4. Nī bāau tùhng gó bāau yáuh mòuh fànbiht a?
5. Nī gàan tùhng m̀htùhng gó gàan a?	5. Nī gàan tùhng gó gàan yáuh mòuh fànbiht a?
6. Nī júng tùhng m̀htùhng gó júng a?	6. Nī júng tùhng gó júng yáuh mòuh fànbiht a?

---

8. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Chàhlàuh tùhng chāansāt yáuh mēyéh m̀htùhng a?	T: What's the difference [what things are not alike] between a Cantonese teahouse and a restaurant serving Western food?
S: Chàhlàuh tùhng chāansāt yáuh mēyéh fànbiht a?	S: What's the difference (*or* what are the differences) between a Cantonese teahouse and a restaurant serving Western food?
1. Gwóngdúng choi tùhng Seuhnghói choi yáuh mēyéh m̀htùhng a?	1. Gwóngdúng choi tùhng Seuhnghói choi yáuh mēyéh fànbiht a?
2. Jùngchoi tùhng Sāichāan yáuh mēyéh m̀htùhng a?	2. Jùngchoi tùhng Sāichāan yáuh mēyéh fànbiht a?
3. Jáugā tùhng jáudim yáuh mēyéh m̀htùhng a?	3. Jáugā tùhng jáudim yáuh mēyéh fànbiht a?
4. Chàhlàuh tùhng jáugā yáuh mēyéh m̀htùhng a?	4. Chàhlàuh tùhng jáugā yáuh mēyéh fànbiht a?
5. Ngūk tùhng ngūkkéi yáuh mēyéh m̀htùhng a?	5. Ngūk tùhng ngūkkéi yáuh mēyéh fànbiht a?

---

9. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Nī dī sāam dòsou haih làahm ge. /jeuk/	T: Most of these dresses are blue. [blue ones].
S: Ngóh dòsou jeuk làahm sāam.	S: I wear blue dresses most of the time. *or* I mostly wear blue dresses.
1. Nī dī pìhnggwó dòsou haih hùhng ge. /sihk/	1. Ngóh dòsou sihk hùhng pìhnggwó.

2. Nī dī béng dòsou haih tìhm ge. /sihk/	2. Ngóh dòsou sihk tìhm béng.
3. Nī dī mòuhgān dòsou haih daaih ge. /yuhng/	3. Ngóh dòsou yuhng daaih mòuhgān.
4. Nī dī bējáu dòsou haih dung ge. /yám/	4. Ngóh dósou yám dung bējáu.
5. Nī dī hàaih dòsou haih lòihlóu ge. /jeuk/	5. Ngóh dósou jeuk lòihlóu hàaih.
6. Nī dī fu dòsou haih gauh ge. /jeuk/	6. Ngóh dósou jeuk gauh fu.

---

10. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Gogo sailóugō dōu jùngyi yám heiséui.	T: All children like to drink soft drinks.
S: Sailóugō dòsou dōu jùngyi yám heiséui.	S: Most children like to drink soft drinks.

1. Gogo sailóugō dōu jùngyi sihk béng.	1. Sailóugō dòsou dōu jùngyi sihk béng.
2. Gàangàan jáugā dōu yáuh Gwóngdùng choi sihk.	2. Jáugā dòsou dōu yáuh Gwóngdùng choi sihk.
3. Gogo ngoihgwokyàhn dōu jùngyi yám jáu.	3. Ngoihgwokyàhn dòsou dōu jùngyi yám jáu.
+ 4. Gogo néuihyán dōu jùngyi jeuk leng sāam. ([female-person] woman, women) Every woman likes to wear pretty clothes.	4. Néuihyán dòsou dōu jùngyi jeuk leng sāam. Most women like to wear pretty clothes.
+ 5. Gogo nàahmyán dōu jouh sih. ([male-person] man, men) Every man works.	5. Nàahmyán dòsou dōu jouh sih. Most men work.

Comment: Note the use of reduplicated Noun Measures gogo, gàangàan to mean 'every,' 'each' Noun. This corresponds to the reduplicated time expression measures nìhnnìhn, gogo láihbaai, etc, previously studied, meaning 'every, each time expression.' Note also the tendency to form a set with dōu.

---

11. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Deui ngóh làih góng, yāt chīn mān taai dò laak.	T: Speaking for myself, one thousand dollars is too much. or For me, one thousand dollars is too much.
S: Deui ngóh làih góng, yāt chīn mān dò gwotàuh laak.	S: For me, one thousand dollars is much too much.
1. Deui ngóh làih góng, nī bún syù taai nàahn laak.	1. Deui ngóh làih góng, nī bún syù nàahn gwotàuh laak.
2. Deui ngóh làih góng, nī dī faaijí taai dyún laak.	2. Deui ngóh làih góng, nī dī faaijí dyún gwotàuh laak.
3. Deui ngóh làih góng, gó gàan ngūk taai sai laak.	3. Deui ngóh làih góng, gó gàan ngūk sai gwotàuh laak.
4. Deui ngóh làih góng, go sāuyāmgèi hòidāk taai daaih sèng laak. + hòi sāuyāmgèi = turn on the radio For me, the radio is turned on too loud.	4. Deui ngóh làih góng, go sāuyāmgèi hòidāk daaih sèng gwotàuh laak.
5. Deui ngóh làih góng, go láahnghei hòidāk taai dung laak. For me, the air conditioner is turned on too cold.	5. Deui ngóh làih góng, go láahnghei hòidāk dung gwotàuh laak.
6. Deui ngóh làih góng, sàam gihn taai síu laak. + For me, three is too few.	6. Deui ngóh làih góng, sàam gihn síu gwotàuh laak.

---

12. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh daap fóchē. Fóchē léuhng dím hòi.	T: I'm going to take the train. The train leaves at two o'clock.
S: Ngóh daap léuhng dím hòi ge fóchē.	S: I'm taking the train that leaves at 2 o'clock.
1. Ngóh m̀hjùngyi néuihyán. Néuihyán jùngyi góng yéh.	1. Ngóh m̀hjùngyi jùngyi góng yéh ge néuihyán. I don't like talkative women.
2. Nàahmyán jùngyi néuihyán. Néuihyán sīk jyúsihk.	2. Nàahmyán jùngyi sīk jyúsihk ge néuihyán.

3. Ngóh m̀hmáaih yéh. Máaih yéh yiu béi hóu dò chín.	3. Ngóh m̀hmáaih yiu béi hóu dò chín ge yéh.
4. Ngóh m̀hchéng dájáap. Dájáap m̀hjùngyi jouh yéh.	4. Ngóh m̀hchéng m̀hjùngyi jouh yéh ge dájáap. I'm not going to hire an amah who doesn't like to work.
5. Kéuih hóusíu máaih lāangsāam. Lāangsāam hóu gwai.	5. Kéuih hóusíu máaih hóu gwai ge lāangsāam.

---

13. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Gó go Yìnggwokyàhn haih ngóh pàhngyáuh. Kéuih jeuk làahm sēutsāam.	T: That Englishman is my friend. He is wearing a blue shirt.
S: Jeuk làahm sēutsāam gó go Yìnggwokyàhn haih ngóh pàhngyáuh.	S: That Englishman (who is) wearing the blue shirt is my friend.
1. Gó go sailóugō haih kéuih ge jái. Kéuih yàuhgán séui. That child is his son. He is swimming.	1. Yàuhgán séui gó go sailóugō haih kéuih ge jái. That child (who is) swimming is his son.
2. Gó go yàhn haih ngóh màhmā. Kéuih dágán dihnwá.	2. Dágán dihnwá gó go yàhn haih ngóh màhmā.
3. Gó go ngoihgwokyàhn gaau ngóh Yìngmàhn. Kéuih yámgán chàh.	3. Yámgán chàh gó go ngoihgwokyàhn gaau ngóh Yìngmàhn.
4. Gó go néuihyán haih ngóh dájáap. Kéuih saigán sāam.	4. Saigán sāam gó go néuihyán haih ngóh dájáap.
+ 5. Gó go sailouhnéui haih ngóh ge néui. Kéuih jeuk hùhng kwàhn. That little girl is my daughter.	5. Jeuk hùhng kwàhn gó go sailouhnéui haih ngóh ge néui.
6. Gó go Faatgwokyàhn haih kéuih néuihpàhngyáuh. Kéuih hái daaihhohk gaau Faatmàhn.	6. Hái daaihhohk gaau Faatmàhn gó go Faatgwokyàhn haih kéuih néuihpàhngyáuh.

14. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Nī léuhng júng chē, bīn júng hóudī a? /Dākgwok/Faatgwok/	T: Which of these two kinds of cars is better? or Of these two kinds of cars which is better? /Germany/ France/
S: Dākgwok chē tùhng Faatgwok chē, bīn júng hóudī a?	S: Which is better--German cars or French cars? [Between German cars and French cars, which is better?]
1. Nī léuhng ga sāuyāmgèi, bīn ga hóudī a? /daaih gó ga/ sai gó ga/	1. Daaih gó ga sāuyāmgèi tùhng sai gó ga, bīn ga hóudī a?
2. Nī léuhng jèung tói, bīn jèung lengdī a? /chèuhngdī gó jèung/dyúndī gó jèung/	2. Chèuhngdī gó jèung tói tùhng dyúndī gó jèung, bīn jèung lengdī a?
3. Nī léuhng bún syù, bīn bún pèhngdī a? /hauh gó bún/ + bohk gó bún/ + the thick one the thin one háuh = thick bohk = thin	3. Hauh gó bún syù tùhng bohk gó bún, bīn bún pèhngdī a? Which is cheaper--the thick book or the thin one?
4. Nī léuhng jì bējáu, bīn jì hóuyámdī a? /Hèunggóng/ Ngoihgwok/	4. Hèunggóng bējáu tùhng Ngoihgwok bējáu, bīn jì hóuyámdī a?
5. Nī léuhng go gùngyàhn, bīn go kàhnlihkdī a? /daaihdī gó go/saidī gó go/ /the older one/the younger one/	5. Daaihdī gó go gùngyàhn tùhng sáidī gó go, bīn go kàhnlihkdī a?

15. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Gwóngdùngwá tùhng Gwokyúh dōu gam nàahn ge laak.	T: Cantonese and Mandarin are both equally difficult.
S: Gwóngdùngwá tùhng Gwokyúh, Gwóngdùngwá nàahndī.	S: Between Cantonese and Mandarin, Cantonese is a bit more difficult. or Cantonese is a bit more difficult than Mandarin.

1. Faatmán tùhng Dākmán dōu gam yih ge laak.	1. Faatmán tùhng Dākmán, Faatmán yihdī.
2. Ngóh go tùhng néih go dōu gam leuhnjeuhn ge laak.	2. Ngóh go tùhng néih go, ngóh go leuhnjeuhndī.
3. Nī tou tùhng gó tou dōu gam gauh ge laak.	3. Nī tou tùhng gó tou, nī tou gauhdī.
4. Nī faai tùhng gó faai dōu gam háuh.	4. Nī faai tùhng gó faai, nī faai háuhdī.
5. Nī gihn tùhng gó gihn dōu gam bohk.	5. Nī gihn tùhng gó gihn, nī gihn bohkdī.
6. Jùngchoi tùhng Sāichāan dōu gam hóusihk.	6. Jùngchoi tùhng Sāichāan, Jùngchoi hóusihkdī.

16. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Nī jèung tùhng gó jèung yātyeuhng gam gòu. /chèuhngdī/	T: This one is as high as that one.
S: Nī jèung tùhng gó jèung yātyeuhng gam gòu, bātgwo nī jèung chèuhngdī jē.	S: This one is as high as that one, but this one is a little longer.
1. Nī bún tùhng gó bún yātyeuhng gam daaih. /gwaidī/	1. Nī bún tùhng gó bún yātyeuhng gam daaih, bātgwo nī bún gwaidī jē.
2. Chóh bāsí tùhng chóh fóchē yātyeuhng gam dò chín. /noihdī/	2. Chóh bāsí tùhng chóh fóchē yātyeuhng gam dò chín, bātgwo chóh bāsí noihdī jē.
3. Nī gàan tùhng gó gàan yātyeuhng gam dò chín jòu. /dò go chisó/	3. Nī gàan tùhng gó gàan yātyeuhng gam dò chín jòu, bātgwo nī gàan dò go chisó jē.
4. Tái dihnsih tùhng tái hei yātyeuhng gam hóu. /guihdī/	4. Tái dihnsih tùhng tái hei yātyeuhng gam hóu, bātgwo tái dihnsih guihdī jē.
5. Syutgwaih tùhng láahngheigèi yātyeuhng gam gányiu. /yuhng dōdī/	5. Syutgwaih tùhng láahngheigèi yātyeuhng gam gányiu, bātgwo syutgwaih yuhng dōdī jē.
6. Daap fēigēi tùhng daap syùhn yātyeuhng gam gwai. /faaidī/	6. Daap fēigēi tùhng daap syùhn yātyeuhng gam gwai, bātgwo daap fēigēi faaidī jē.

7. Néuihyán tùhng nàahmyán yātyeuhng gam hóu. /kìnggái dōdī/	7. Néuihyán tùhng nàahmyán yātyeuhng gam hóu, bātgwo néuihyán kìnggái dōdī jē.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

1) chà m̀hdāk ǵei dò = chàm̀hdò = about the same; just a little bit less good, [lacking not very much]
2) M̀hgindāk ā! = Not necessarily!
3) Fáanjing = anyway, besides,...
4) Néih go yàhn jànhaih ā = You really are something!
5) sàangjó = gave birth (to)
6) hōisām = happy
7) jihgéi ge = one's own, your own, etc.
8) M̀hsái gam mēyéh ga? = No need to make such a big thing of it?
9) séungfaat = idea, concept
10) A Jèung = Mrs. Jèung's husband
11) hóu chíh = similar to; __A__ similar to __B__.
(A Jēung is similar to Wòhng Táai and the others that way in not liking girls.)

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE:

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:	B. And he replies:
1. Which is more expensive--Chinese food or Western food?	1. Perhaps Western food is more expensive; however among Chinese food some is cheap and some expensive.
2. Does your child speak English or Cantonese?	2. He speaks Cantonese mostly, but he can speak a little English too.
3. Someone told me that some Americans don't speak English--is that true?	3. Yes, it's true. Do all Chinese people know how to speak Chinese?
4. Miss Chan looks like her younger brother.	4. Do you know her mother? She also looks like her mother.

5. You speak Cantonese just like a Cantonese.	5. You praise me too much--I speak very awkwardly.
6. He's a teacher.	6. He doesn't look like a teacher.
7. (sniff-sniff:) What's that smell?	7. Smells like beer.
8. How many languages can he speak altogether?	8. He speaks four altogether--French, German, English, and Cantonese.
9. Are there two typewriters alike?	9. No, this one isn't like that one.
10. This radio is like that one, right?	10. Yes, they're just alike.
11. This cloth is too thin--do you have any heavier?	11. Yes, go downstairs.
12. I hear you speak Cantonese very well.	12. Actually I just speak a few sentences.
13. How do you like soup?	13. It's too peppery for me.
14. What's the difference between jáugā and chàhlàuh?	14. Actually the difference is quite small.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 27

1.	bohk		thin (in thickness, as of cloth)
2.	búndeihwá		local language
3.	chíh	v:	is similar to; resembles
4.	Dākgwokyàhn [go]	n:	German
5.	Dākmàhn (also: -mán)	n:	German (language)
6.	deui_X_làih góng	Ph:	speaking for _X_, from the point of view of_X_
7.	dòsou	att/adv:	mostly, for the most part; the majority
8.	Faatgwokyàhn [go]	n:	Frenchman
9.	Faatmàhn (also: -mán)	n:	French (language)
10.	fànbiht	n:	difference
11.	háuh	adj:	thick
12.	hòi sāuyāmgēi	VO:	turn on the radio
13.	jàn ge	Ph:	true; the truth
14.	kèihsaht	Ph:	in actuality, in truth, 'but actually' leads off a response sentence which disagrees with the statement or assumption of the stimulus sentence

15. líhngsihgwún	n:	consulate
16. lo bo!	ss:	with connotation of good-natured protest that addressee is wrong in doing or saying whatever it is he is doing/saying
17. m̀htùhng	v:	not alike, used in negative and question forms, but not in affirmative
18. màhn	v:	to smell
19. meih	n:	smell
20. nàahmyán [go]	n:	man
21. néuihyán [go]	n:	woman
22. sailouhnéui [go]	n:	little girl
23. Sàiyàhn [go]	n:	Westerner, European, Caucasian
24. sèng	n:	sound
25. síu	adj:	few
26. yáuhdī	Ph:	some, a few
27. yáuhdī..., yáuhdī...	Ph:	some..., others...

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(The amah answers a ring at the door-bell to find the postman at the door:)

Gùngyàhn	
Jouh māt a?	What is it?
Yàuhchàai	
yàuhchàai	postman
gwahouh seun	registered letter
sàu	receive, collect, take in
sàu seun	receive letters
Sàu gwahouh seun a.	Registered letter. [Receive a registered letter.]
Gùngyàhn	
sihtáu	employer, boss
Dím syun a?	'How can we handle this?' *or* 'What's to be done?'
Ngóh sihtáu m̀hhái douh bo, dím syun a?	My boss isn't home--what'll I do?
sáujuhk	procedure(s)
yiu mēyéh sáujuhk?	What procedure(s) is (are) necessary?
Ngóh m̀hjī yiu mēyéh sáujuhk ga.	I don't know what the procedure is.
Yàuhchàai	
M̀hgányiu gé.	That's all right.
chīm méng	sign one's name
chīm go méng hái nīdouh	sign your name here
yiu néih chīm go méng hái nīdouh	require you to sign your name here
jīyiu...,jauh	just have to...; as long as you
jīyiu néih chīm go méng, jauh...	you just have to sign your name, and ...
Jīyiu néih chīm go méng hái nīdouh, jauh dāk ge laak.	You just have to sign your name here, and you can have it.

Gùngyàhn	
m̀hsīk jih	to be illiterate
Ngóh m̀hsīk jih ga, dím chím a?	I can't read or write--how can I sign?
Yàuhchàai	
juhng yáuh móuh bīngo sīk jih ge hái douh a?	is there anyone else here who can read and write?
chèuihjó...(jíngoih)	aside from, apart from, besides
chèuihjó néih jingoih	apart from you, besides you
Gám, chèuihjó néih jíngoih, juhng yáuh móuh bīngo sīk jih ge hái douh a?	Well, aside from you, is there anyone else here who can read and write?
Gùngyàhn	
Móuh lòh.	No. (childishly feeling sorry for herself)
Yàuhchàai	
tòuhjēung	chop, seal
Gám, néih yáuh móuh tòuhjēung a?	In that case, do you have a chop?
Gùngyàhn	
só	to lock
sómàaih	lock up, lock tight, lock away
ngóh go tòuhjēung sómàaihjó	my chop has been locked up
ngóh go tòuhjēung béijó sihtáu	my chop was given to the boss
Ngóh go tòuhjēung béijó sihtáu tùhng ngóh sómàaih.	My chop I gave to the boss to lock up for me.
sósìh	key
Ngóh yauh móuh sósìh gé.	And I don't have the key.
gwaih	cupboard; dresser
gwaihtúng	drawer
jínglaahn go gwaihtúng	break the drawer
jèung	take

jèung go gwaihtúng jínglaahn	take the drawer and break it; i.e., break the drawer
chèuihfèi	unless; would have to; only if
Chèuihfèi jèung go gwaihtúng jínglaahn lā...	Unless I took the drawer and broke it... (thinking it over)

Yàuhchàai

màhfàahn	trouble
Syun laak.	Never mind! or Forget it!
Gám a, gam màhfàahn.	Oh, such trouble!
Syun la, syun laak.	Never mind!
bātyùh...bá la(ak)	it would be preferable to...
yàuhjinggúk	post office
bātyùh heui yàuhjinggúk ló bá laak	it would be better to go to the post office to get it
jihgéi	oneself, himself, myself, etc.
sihtáu jihgéi	the boss himself
giu néih sihtáu jihgéi heui ló	tell your boss to go get it himself
giu néih sihtáu jihgéi heui yàuhjinggúk ló	tell your boss to go to the post office himself to get it
Bātyùh giu néih sihtáu jihgéi heui yàuhjinggúk ló bá laak.	You'd better tell your boss to go to the post office himself to get it.

Gùngyàhn

Hóu la.	All right.
yāt Verb^{1}, jauh Verb^{2} la.	as soon as..., then ...
yāt fàanlàih, jauh heui la	as soon as he returns, he'll go
jīkhāak	immediately
Kéuih yāt fàanlàih, ngóh jauh giu kéuih jīkhāak heui lā.	As soon as he comes back, I'll tell him to go right away.

Yàuhchàai	
Haih gám wah la.	That's the way! [Be (it) the way (you) say]
Gùngyàhn	
M̀hgòisaai.	Thanks a lot.

B. Recapitulation:

(The amah answers a ring at the doorbell to find the postman at the door:)

Gùngyàhn	
Jouh māt a?	What is it?
Yàuhchàai	
Sàu gwahouh seun a.	Registered letter. [Take a registered letter.]
Gùngyàhn	
Ngóh sihtáu m̀hhái douh bo, dím syun a? Ngóh m̀hjī yiu mēyéh sáujuhk ga.	My boss isn't home--what'll I do? I don't know what procedures are required.
Yàuhchàai	
Jíyiu néih chīm go méng hái nīdouh, jauh dāk ge laak.	You just have to sign your name here, and you can have it.
Gùngyàhn	
Ngóh m̀hsīk jih ga, dím chīm a?	I can't read and write--how can I sign?
Yàuhchàai	
Gám, chèuihjó néih jīngoih, juhng yáuh móuh bīngo sīk jih ge hái douh a?	Well, aside from you, is there anyone else here who can read and write?
Gùngyàhn	
Móuh lòh.	No.
Yàuhchàai	
Gám, néih yáuh móuh tòuhjēung a?	In that case, do you have a chop?

Gùngyàhn	
Ngóh go tòuhjēung béijó sihtáu tùhng ngóh sómàaih.	My chop I gave to the boss to lock up for me.
Ngóh yauh móuh sósìh gé.	And I don't have the key.
Chèuihfèi jèung go gwaihtúng jínglaahn lā...	Unless I broke the drawer... (thinking it over)
Yàuhchàai	
Gám a, gam màhfàahn.	Oh, such trouble!
Syun la, syun laak.	Never mind!
Bātyùh giu néih sihtáu jihgéi heui yàuhjinggúk ló bá laak.	You'd better tell your boss to go to the post office himself to get it.
Gùngyàhn	
Hóu la.	All right.
Kéuih yāt fàanlàih, ngóh jauh giu kéuih jīkhāak heui la.	As soon as he comes back, I'll tell him to go right away.
Yàuhchàai	
Haih gám wah la.	That's the way.
Gùngyàhn	
M̀hgòisaai.	Thank you.

II. NOTES

A. Culture Notes

tòuhjēung, 'seal,' 'chop'

A tòuhjēung is a seal (usually referred to as a 'chop') cut from stone or wood, bearing the name of the owner. Documents may be validated by stamping with one's chop rather than by signature.

B. Structure Notes

1. jíyiu..., jauh..., = 'If only..., then...'; 'You just have to..., and'; 'As long as..., then...'

Ex:		
Ex:	1. Jíyiu yáuh sei go yàhn, jauh hóyíh dá máh jéuk laak.	You have to have 4 people to play mahjong.
	2. Jíyiu haih gònjehng ge, jauh géi gauh dōu móuh sówaih gé.	As long as it's clean, it doesn't matter how old it is.

(See BC)

2. chèuihjó...(jì ngoih)... = 'aside from...,' 'with the exception of...,' 'in addition to...'

a. Chèuihjó...(jì ngoih), juhng... = 'aside from..., also....,' 'in addition to..., also!..'

Ex:		
Ex:	Chèuihjó Méihgwok (jì ngoih), ngóh juhng heuigwo Yahtbún tìm.	Aside from America, I have also been to Japan. or: In addition to America, I have also been to Japan.

(See Drill 10)

b. Chèuihjó...(jì ngoih), jauh mēyéh (or bīndouh, etc.) dōu m̀h Verb = 'Aside from..., no thing/place/one/etc. else,' or 'With the exception of..., no thing/place/one/etc. else.'

Ex:		
Ex:	Chèuihjó Méihgwok, jauh bīndouh dōu meih heuigwo laak.	Aside from America, I haven't gone anywhere.

(See Drill 11)

The second clause may substitute a duplicated Measure expression (Ex: M-M dōu) in place of the QW used as a non-question.

Ex: Chèuihjó Méihgwok, ngóh douhdouh dōu meih heuigwo.	I haven't been anywhere except America.

c. Chèuihjó...(jì ngoih), M-M dōu... = 'aside from..., everything (or everyplace, etc.) else.'

Ex: Chèuihjó ngàuhyuhk (jì ngoih), ngóh yeuhngyeuhng dou jungyi.	Aside from beef, I like everything else.

(See Drill 12)

The second clause may substitute a QW used as a non-question in place of the duplicated Measure.

Ex: Chèuihjó ngàuhyuhk, ngóh mēyéh dōu jùngyi.	Aside from beef, I like everything else.

3. chèuihfèi, 'unless,' only if'

a. In single clause sentences.

In a single clause sentence chèuihfèi is restricted to use in follow sentences, as an afterthought. It introduces a necessary condition.

Ex: 1. Ngóh meih jáu jìchìhn, yiu dá dihnwá béi néih. Chèuihfèi gónm̀hchit.	I'll give you a call before I leave-- unless I don't have time. (...in which case I won't call...)
	Here the necessary condition to not calling is not having time.
2. Ngóh móuh sósìh gé... Chèuihfèi ngóh jínglaahn go gwaihtúng lā...	I don't have a key...(thinking that therefore I can't get into the drawer)... Unless I broke the drawer ...(then could get in)
	The necessary condition for getting into the drawer is breaking it open.

(See BC)

b. In double clause sentences.

In double clause sentences, chèuihfèi pairs with ji, jauh, or yùhgwó m̀hhaih, with chèuihfèi introducing the first clause, and the paired conjunction operating in the second clause. The chèuihfèi clause establishes the necessary condition, and the second states the consequences.

1. Chèuihfèi.....,ji............	Must be...,in order that... Only if..., then... Unless...., then...
2. Chèuihfèi.....,jauh..........	
3. Chèuihfèi.....,yùhgwo m̀hhaih.....	Must..., otherwise,...

Ex: 1. Chèuihfèi kéuih heui, ngóh ji heui.	He'll have to go before I go. i.e., Only if he goes will I go.
2. Chèuihfèi kéuih m̀hheui, ngóh jauh heui.	Only if he doesn't go, will I go. or: I'll go unless he doesn't.
3. Chèuihfèi kéuih m̀hheui, ngóh jauh m̀hheui lak.	If he doesn't go, I won't go.
4. Chèuihfèi kéuih heui; yuhgwo mhhaih, ngóh mhheui.	He'll have to go; otherwise, I won't go.

(See Drills 5-9)

4. bātyùh.X.bá laak (or lā) = 'it would be better to...'

Bātyuh...bá laak suggests alternate plan X as being preferable to the plan already proposed.

Ex: A: Ngóhdeih máaih nīdī hóu m̀hhóu a?	Let's buy these, what do you say?
B: Nīdī taai gwai, bātyùh máaih pèhngdī ge bá lā.	These are too expensive-- it would be better to buy cheaper ones instead.

(See BC and Drill 2)

5. yāt..., jauh... = as soon as..., (then)...

These two form a set of paired conjunctions joining two clauses in a sentence.

Ex: Ngóh yāt yáuh chín, (ngóh) jauh chéng néih sihk faahn laak.	As soon as I have some money, I'll invite you out to dinner.

(See BC and Drill 3)

6. *jèung*, 'take'

jèung N, V. = take *N* and *V* it.

This pattern rearranges a basic VO structure into two verbal phrases, with the object of the basic VO structure brought forward in the sentence to become the object of *jèung*, thus:

VO becomes *jèung O, V...*

Ex: V O		jèung O V
dálaahn go gwaihtúng	⟶	jeung go gwaihtúng dálaahn
break the drawer	⟶	take the drawer and break it

(See BC)

This pattern only occurs if the basic verb is a two-part verb or has a post verbal complement.

(The *jèung O, V-complement* pattern in Cantonese is the equivalent of the *bǎ O, V-complement* pattern in Mandarin, but the *bǎ* construction is more common in Mandarin than is the *jèung* construction in Cantonese.)

III. DRILLS

1. Expansion Drill

+	1. a. dihnbou	1. a. telegram(s), cablegram(s)
	b. fùng dihnbou	b. telegram, cablegram
+	c. dá fùng dihnbou	c. send a telegram
	d. dá fùng dihnbou béi màhmā	d. send a telegram to Mother
	e. heui dá fùng dihnbou béi màhmā.	e. go to send a telegram to Mother
+	f. heui dihnbouguhk dá fùng dihnbou béi màhmā++	f. go to the telegraph office to send a telegram to Mother
	g. séung heui dihnbouguhk dá fùng dihnbou béi màhmā	g. plan to go to the telegraph office to send a telegram to Mother
	h. Ngóh séung heui dihnbouguhk dá fùng dihnbou béi màhmā.	h. I want to go to the telegraph office to send a telegram to Mother.

Comment: A common alternate pronunciation of dihnbouguhk is dihnbougúk.

	2. a. seun	2. a. letter(s)
+	b. gei seun	b. mail letters, send letters
	c. heui gei seun	c. go to mail letters
	d. heui yàuhjinggúk gei seun	d. go to the post office to mail letters
	e. heui jógán yàuhjinggúk gei seun	e. go to the nearby post office to mail a letter
	f. yiu heui jógán yàuhjinggúk gei seun	f. have to go to the nearby post office to mail some letters
	g. Ngóh yiu heui jógán yàuhjinggúk gei seun.	g. I have to go to the nearby post office to mail letters.
+	3. a. wùih seun	3. a. answer a letter, reply by letter
	b. wùih seun béi kéuih	b. answer his letter, reply to him by letter
	c. meih dākhàahn wùih seun béi kéuih tìm	c. haven't had time to answer his letter

d. juhng meih dākhàahn wùih seun béi kéuih tīm	d. still haven't had time to answer his letter
e. ngóh juhng meih dākhàahn wùih seun béi kéuih tīm	e. I still haven't had time to answer his letter.
f. Léuhng go láihbaai laak, ngóh juhng meih dākhàahn wùih seun béi kéuih tīm.	f. It's been 2 weeks, and I still haven't had time to answer his letter.
g. Yíhgīng léuhng go láihbaai laak, ngóh juhng meih dākhàahn wùih seun béi kéuih tīm.	g. It's already been two weeks, and I still haven't had time to answer his letter.
4. a. chèuhng tòuh	4. a. 'long distance'
+ b. chèuhng tòuh dihnwá	b. long distance phone call
c. dá chèuhng tòuh dihnwá	c. make a long distance phone call
d. dá chèuhng tòuh dihnwá wah kéuih jī	d. make a long distance call and tell him.
e. dá chèuhng tòuh dihnwá wah kéuih jī ji dāk laak	e. ought to make a long distance phone call and tell him
f. yiu dá chèuhng tòuh dihnwá wah kéuih jī ji dāk laak	f. ought to make a long distance phone call and tell him
g. yiu jīkhāak dá chèuhng tòuh dihnwá wah kéuih jī ji dāk laak.	g. ought to make a long distance phone call immediately and tell him.
h. Néih yiu jīkhāak dá chèuhng tòuh dihnwá wah kéuih jī ji dāk laak.	h. You ought to make a long distance phone call immediately and tell him.

---

2. Response Drill:

Ex: T: Ngóh jihgéi heui ló./sihtáu/	T: I'll go get it myself. /boss/
S: Bātyùh sihtáu heui bá lā.	S: It would be better for the boss to go instead.
1. Ngóh séung jòu ga láahngheigēi. /máaih/	1. Bātyùh máaih ga bá lā.
2. Ngóh séung máaih gihn sēutsāam. /léuhng gihn/	2. Bātyùh máaih léuhng gihn bá lā.

3. Ngóh séung sé seun béi kéuih. /dá dihnbou/	3. Bātyùh dá dihnbou bá lā.
4. Ngóh séung wuhn yāt baak mān Méihgām. /baak ńgh/	4. Bātyùh wuhn baak ńgh mān bá lā.
5. Ngóh séung ngaandī fan gaau. /yìhgā/	5. Bātyùh yìhgā heui fan bá lā.
6. Ngóh séung tīngjīu heui tái yīsāng. /gàmyaht/	6. Bātyùh gàmyaht heui bá lā.

---

3. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Kéuih yāt dākhàahn, jauh heui tái hei. The moment he gets some leisure time, he goes to see a movie. or As soon as he has some leisure time, he'll go to see a movie. or As soon as he had some leisure time, he went to see a movie.	1. Kéuih yāt dākhàahn, jauh heui tái hei.
2. /yáuh chín/jài heui ngàhnhòhng/	2. Kéuih yāt yáuh chín, jauh jài heui ngàhnhòhng.
+ 3. /sàudóu seun/wùih/ (receive a letter)	3. Kéuih yāt sàudóu seun, jauh wùih.
4. /yáuh sìhgaan/tái syù/	4. Kéuih yāt yáuh sìhgaan, jauh tái syù.
5. /gau chín/jouh sàn sāam/	5. Kéuih yāt gau chín, jauh jouh sàn sāam.
+ 6. /m̀hjīngsàhn/tái yīsāng/ (not feel well; i.e. feel sick)	6. Kéuih yāt m̀hjīngsàhn, jauh tái yīsāng. The moment he felt sick, he saw a doctor.
7. /tóuhngoh/sihk yéh/	7. Kéuih yāt tóuhngoh, jauh sihk yéh.
8. /génghot/yiu yám bējáu/	8. Kéuih yāt génghot, jauh yiu yám bējáu.

---

4. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh sái gònjehng go chyùhfóng lā.	T: Please clean the kitchen.
S: M̀hgòi néih jīkhāak tùhng ngóh sái gònjehng go chyùhfóng lā.	S: Please clean the kitchen right away.
1. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh tongháh tìuh kwàhn lā.	1. M̀hgòi néih jīkhāak tùhng ngóh tongháh tìuh kwàhn lā.
+ 2. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh sàanjó go sāuyāmgèi lā. (sàan sāuyāmgèi = turn off the radio) Please turn off the radio.	2. M̀hgòi néih jīkhāak tùhng ngóh sàanjó go sāuyāmgèi lā.
3. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh heui máaih dī béng fàanlàih lā. Please go out for me and buy some cookies and bring them back.	3. M̀hgòi néih jīkhāak tùhng ngóh heui máaih dī béng fàanlàih lā.
4. M̀hgòi néih heui wánháh kéuih lā.	4. M̀hgòi néih jīkhāak heui wánháh kéuih lā.
5. M̀hgòi néih yahpheui táiháh kéuih jouh mēyéh lā.	5. M̀hgòi néih jīkhāak yahpheui táiháh kéuih jouh mēyéh lā.

---

5. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Hóu tìhm ji sihk.	T: Only if it's sweet will I eat it. or I won't eat it unless it's sweet.
S: Chèuihfèi hóu tìhm, ji sihk.	S: Only if it's sweet will I eat it. or It has to be very sweet before I eat it.
1. Hóu ngáahnfan ji fan.	1. Chèuihfèi hóu ngáahnfan, ji fan.
2. Hóu gònjehng ji yiu.	2. Chèuihfèi hóu gònjehng, ji yiu.
3. Hóu génghot ji yám séui.	3. Chèuihfèi hóu génghot, ji yám séui.

4. Hóu dung ji jeuk lāangsāam.	4. Chèuihfèi hóu dung, ji jeuk lāangsāam.
+ 5. Hóu yiht ji hòi láahnghei. It has to be very hot before I turn on the air conditioner.	5. Chèuihfèi hóu yiht, ji hòi láahnghei.
6. Hóu guih ji fan.	6. Chèuihfèi hóu guih, ji fan.
7. Hóu daaih sèng ji tèngdākdóu.	7. Chèuihfèi hóu daaih sèng, ji tèngdākdóu.

---

6. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: M̀hfànfu dōu m̀hjouh.	T: If you don't tell him, he won't do it.
S: Chèuihfèi fànfu, ji jouh.	S: Only if you order him will he do it. (i.e. unless you tell him, he won't do it.)
1. M̀hmahn, dōu m̀hgóng.	1. Chèuihfèi mahn, ji góng.
2. M̀hchéng, dōu m̀hlàih.	2. Chèuihfèi chéng, ji làih.
3. M̀hgiu, dōu m̀hhéisàn.	3. Chèuihfèi giu, ji héisàn.
4. M̀hdá, dōu m̀hpa. If you don't spank him, he won't take you seriously.	4. Chèuihfèi dá, ji pa.
5. M̀hgóng, dōu m̀hjīdou. If he hadn't told me, I wouldn't know.	5. Chèuihfèi góng, ji jīdou.
6. M̀hhohk, dōu m̀hsīk.	6. Chèuihfèi hohk, ji sīk.

---

7. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Yùhgwó hóu pèhng, ngóh jauh máaih gé.	T: If it's very cheap, I'll buy it.
S: Chèuihfèi hóu pèhng--m̀hhaih, jauh m̀h-máaih.	S: It has to be cheap, otherwise I won't buy it. *or* Unless it's cheap, I won't buy it.
1. Yùhgwó hóu leng, ngóh jauh jùngyi gé.	1. Chèuihfèi hóu leng--m̀hhaih, jauh m̀hjùngyi.
2. Yùhgwó hóu yih, ngóh jauh hohk gé.	2. Chèuihfèi hóu yih--m̀hhaih, jauh m̀hhohk.

3. Yùhgwó hóu kàhnlihk, ngóh jauh chéng gé.	3. Chèuihfèi hóu kàhnlihk--m̀hhaih, jauh m̀hchéng.
4. Yùhgwó hóu chàauh, ngóh jauh tong gé.	4. Chèuihfèi hóu chàauh--m̀hhaih, jauh m̀htong.
5. Yùhgwó hóu yeh, ngóh jauh chóh dīksí gé.	5. Chèuihfèi hóu yeh--m̀hhaih, jauh m̀hchóh dīksí.
6. Yùhgwó hóu meih, ngóh jauh sihk gé.	6. Chèuihfèi hóu meih--m̀hhaih, jauh m̀hsihk.

---

8. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: M̀hpèhng, dōu m̀hmáaih. T: If it's not cheap, I won't buy it.

S: Chèuihfèi hóu pèhng ji máaih. S: Only if it's cheap will I buy it. or It has to be cheap, before I buy it.

1. M̀hleng, dōu m̀hjeuk.	1. Chèuihfèi hóu leng ji jeuk.
2. M̀hhóu, dōu m̀hmáaih.	2. Chèuihfèi hóu hóu ji máaih.
3. M̀htóuhngoh, dōu m̀hsihk.	3. Chèuihfèi hóu tóuhngoh ji sihk.
4. M̀hgònjehng, dōu m̀hoi.	4. Chèuihfèi hóu gònjehng ji oi.
5. M̀hlaahttaat, dōu m̀hwuhn.	5. Chèuihfèi hóu laahttaat ji wuhn.
6. M̀htìhm, dōu m̀hsihk.	6. Chèuihfèi hóu tìhm ji sihk.

---

9. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

1. Chèuihfèi kéuih jáu sìn lā. He would have to (or will have to) leave first. (i.e. Unless he leaves, I'm not going to leave. or He'll have to go first, before I move an inch.)	1. Chèuihfèi kéuih jáu sìn lā.
2. /sihk/	2. Chèuihfèi kéuih sihk sìn lā.

3. /wán/	3. Chèuihfèi kéuih wán sìn lā. She'll have to start looking for it first (before I'll help her).
4. /mahn/	4. Chèuihfèi kéuih mahn sìn lā.
5. /fànfu/	5. Chèuihfèi kéuih fànfu sìn lā.
6. /héisáu/	6. Chèuihfèi kéuih héisáu sìn lā.
7. /chìhdou/	7. Chèuihfèi kéuih chìhdou sìn lā. He would have to be late for work first (before I have an excuse to fire him.)

a. Do the above exercise again, the teacher giving the right hand column sentences, and the students in turn expanding the sentences with a related clause, for example:

T: Chèuihfèi kéuih chéng sìn lā.

S: Chèuihfèi kéuih chéng sìn lā, ngóh jī chéng kéuih. I'll only invite him if he invites me first.

---

10. Response Drill

Ex: T: Chèuihjó Méihgwok, néih juhng heuigwo bīndouh a? /Yahtbún/	T: In addition to (or aside from) America, where else have you been? /Japan/
S: Chèuihjó Méihgwok, ngóh juhng heuigwo Yahtbún tìm.	S: In addition to (or aside from) America, I've also been to Japan.
1. Chèuihjó Wòhng Sàang, néih juhng sīk bīngo a? /Wòhng Táai/	1. Chèuihjó Wòhng Sàang, ngóh juhng sīk Wòhng Táai tìm.
2. Chèuihjó jyú faahn, néih juhng sīk jouh mēyéh a? /tong sāam/	2. Chèuihjó jyú faahn, ngóh juhng sīk tong sāam tìm.
3. Chèuihjó Gwóngdùngwá, néih juhng sīk góng mēyéh wá a? /Gwokyúh/	3. Chèuihjó Gwóngdùngwá, ngóh juhng sīk góng Gwokyúh tìm.
4. Chèuihjó hùhng sīk, néih juhng jùngyi mēyéh sīk a? /luhk/	4. Chèuihjó hùhng sīk, ngóh juhng jùngyi luhk sīk tìm.

+ 5. Chèuihjó tìhmsyùn yú, néih juhng séung yiu dī mēyéh a? + /syùnlaaht tòng/ (tìhmsyùn yú = sweet and sour fish) (syùnlaaht tòng = vinegar-pepper soup) What else do you want besides sweet and sour fish?	5. Chèuihjó tìhmsyùn yú, ngóh juhng séung yiu go syùnlaaht tòng tìm.

---

11. Response Drill

Ex: T: Chèuihjó Méihgwok, néih juhng heuigwo bīndouh a?	T: In addition to America, where else have you been?
S: Chèuihjó Méihgwok, ngóh jauh bīndouh dōu meih heuigwo laak.	S: Except for America, I haven't been anywhere. or I haven't been anywhere except America.
1. Chèuihjó cháau faahn, néih juhng sihkjó mēyéh a?	1. Chèuihjó cháau faahn, ngóh jauh mēyéh dōu móuh sihk.
2. Chèuihjó chēunglím, néih juhng máaihjó mēyéh a?	2. Chèuihjó chēunglím, ngóh jauh mēyéh dōu móuh máaih laak.
3. Chèuihjó jì bāt, néih juhng wándóu mēyéh a?	3. Chèuihjó jì bāt, ngóh jauh mēyéh dōu wán m̀hdóu laak.
4. Chèuihjó tái syù, néih juhng jouhjó mēyéh a?	4. Chèuihjó tái syù, ngóh jauh mēyéh dōu móuh jouh laak.
5. Chèuihjó heui kéuih douh, + néih juhng yiu heui bīnsyu a? (bīnsyu = where?)	5. Chèuihjó heui kéuih douh, ngóh jauh bīnsyu dōu m̀hheui laak.
6. Chèuihjó jyú chāan jìngoih, néih juhng sīk jouh mēyéh a?	6. Chèuihjó jyú chāan jìngoih, ngóh jauh mēyéh dōu m̀hsīk jouh ge laak.

Comment: bīnsyu and bīndouh are used interchangeably. In Hong Kong bīndouh is heard more frequently than bīnsyu.

---

12. Substitution Drill:

1. Chèuihjó yàuhséui jìngoih, + ngóh yeuhngyeuhng dōu jùngyi. Aside from swimming, I like everything. or With the exception of swimming, I like everything.	1. Chèuihjó yàuhséui jìngoih, ngóh yeuhngyeuhng dōu jùngyi.
2. /laaht yéh/	2. Chèuihjó laaht yéh jìngoih, ngóh yeuhngyeuhng dōu jùngyi.
3. /tái syù/	3. Chèuihjó tái syù jìngoih, ngóh yeuhngyeuhng dōu jùngyi.
4. /dá jih/	4. Chèuihjó dá jih jìngoih, ngóh yeuhngyeuhng dōu jùngyi.
5. /jyú faahn/	5. Chèuihjó jyú faahn jìngoih, ngóh yeuhngyeuhng dōu jùngyi.
6. /Yahtbún choi/	6. Chèuihjó Yahtbún choi jìngoih, ngóh yeuhngyeuhng dōu jùngyi.
7. /léuihhàhng/	7. Chèuihjó léuihhàhng jìngoih, ngóh yeuhngyeuhng dōu jùngyi.

---

13. Expansion Drill

a. wùih seun	a. answer a letter
b. wùih seun béi ngóh	b. answer my letter
c. meih wùih seun béi ngóh	c. hasn't answered my letter
d. juhng meih wùih seun béi ngóh	d. still hasn't answered my letter.
e. kéuih juhng meih wùih seun béi ngóh	e. She still hasn't answered my letter.
f. daahnhaih kéuih juhng meih wùih seun béi ngóh	f. but she still hasn't answered my letter.
g. ngóh séjó fùng seun béi kéuih, daahnhaih kéuih juhng meih wùih seun béi ngóh	g. I wrote a letter to her, but she still hasn't replied.
h. Ngóh yāt go láihbaai chìhn séjó fùng seun béi kéuih, daahnhaih kéuih juhng	h. I wrote her a letter a week ago, but she still hasn't replied.

meih wùih seun béi ngóh.

---

14. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

1. Ngóh yāt go láihbaai (jì) chìhn séjó fùng seun béi kéuih, daahnhaih kéuih juhng meih wùih seun béi ngóh. I wrote him a letter a week ago, but he still hasn't answered.	1. Ngóh yāt go láihbaai (jì) chìhn séjó fùng seun béi kéuih, daahnhaih kéuih juhng meih wùih seun béi ngóh.
2. /bun go yuht/	2. Ngóh bun go yuht jìchìhn séjó fùng seun béi kéuih, daahnhaih kéuih juhng meih wùih seun béi ngóh.
3. /sei houh/	3. Ngóh sei houh jìchìhn séjó fùng seun béi kéuih, daahnhaih kéuih juhng meih wùih seun béi ngóh. I wrote him a letter before the 4th of the month, but he still hasn't answered.
4. /léuhng go láihbaai/	4. Ngóh léuhng go láihbaai jìchìhn séjó fùng seun béi kéuih, daahnhaih kéuih juhng meih wùih seun béi ngóh.
5. /léuhng go géi láihbaai/	5. Ngóh léuhng go géi láihbaai jìchìhn séjó fùng seun béi kéuih, daahnhaih kéuih juhng meih wùih seun béi ngóh.
6. /léuhng go lèhng láihbaai/ (a little more than two weeks)	6. Ngóh léuhng go lèhng láihbaai jìchìhn séjó fùng seun béi kéuih, daahnhaih kéuih juhng meih wùih seun béi ngóh. I wrote him a letter more than two weeks ago, but he still hasn't answered.
7. /go géi láihbaai/	7. Ngóh go géi láihbaai jìchìhn séjó fùng seun béi kéuih, daahnhaih kéuih juhng meih wùih seun béi ngóh.

I wrote him a letter more than a week ago, but he still hasn't answered.

---

15. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh béijó dī chín kéuih. Kéuih tùhng ngóh jàijó heui ngàhnhòhng.	T: I gave him the money. He put it into the bank for me.
S: Ngóh béijó dī chín kéuih tùhng ngóh jàiheui ngàhnhòhng.	S: The money I gave (him), he put in the bank for me.
1. Kéuih béijó bún syù ngóh. Ngóh tùhng kéuih sómàaih hái gwaihtúng.	1. Kéuih béijó bún syù ngóh tùhng kéuih sómàaih hái gwaihtúng.
2. Ngóh béijó tìuh sósìh kéuih. Kéuih tùhng ngóh nìngjó heui béi màhmā.	2. Ngóh béijó tìuh sósìh kéuih tùhng ngóh nìngheui béi màhmā.
3. Ngóh béijó fùng gwahouhseun gājē. Gājē tùhng ngóh nìngjóheui gei.	3. Ngóh béijó fùng gwahouhseun gājē tùhng ngóh nìngheui gei.
4. Ngóh béijó go tòuhjēung sihtáu. Sihtáu tùhng ngóh jàimàaih hái gwaihtúng. (jàimàaih = put in and close up)	4. Ngóh béijó go tòuhjēung sihtáu tùhng ngóh jàimàaih hái gwaihtúng.
5. Màhmā béijó gàan ūk ngóh. Ngóh tùhng kéuih jòujó béi yàhn.	5. Màhmā béijó gàan ūk ngóh tùhng kéuih jòu béi yàhn.
6. Ngóh chānchīk béijó ga gauh chē ngóh. Ngóh tùhng kéuih nìngjó heui maaih.	6. Ngóh chānchīk béijó ga gauh chē ngóh tùhng kéuih nìngheui maaih.

---

16. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Yáuh chín, jauh mēyéh dōu máaihdóu.	T: When you have money, you can buy anything.
S: Jīyiu yáuh chín, jauh mēyéh dōu máaihdākdóu.	S: As long as you have money, you can buy anything.
1. Yáuh sìhgaan, jauh bīndouh dōu	1. Jīyiu yáuh sìhgaan, jauh

heuidāk.	bīndouh dōu heuidāk.
2. Yáuh wùih seun, jauh géisí dōu heuidāk. When you get a response, you can go any time.	2. Jíyiu yáuh wùih seun, jauh géisí dōu heuidāk.
3. Gau yàhn, jauh géi chéuhng dōu nīngdāk. When there are enough people, you can move it no matter how heavy it is.	3. Jíyiu gau yàhn, jauh géi chúhng dōu nīngdāk.
4. Yáuhdāk sihk, jauh mēyéh dōu dāk.	4. Jíyiu yáuhdāk sihk, jauh mēyéh dōu dāk.
5. Yáuhdāk jyuh, jauh géichín yàhngùng dōu dāk.	5. Jíyiu yáuhdāk jyuh, jauh géichín yàhngùng dōu dāk.

---

17. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Néih sàudóu Léih Táai fùng seun meih a? Have you received Mrs. Lee's letter yet?	1. Néih sàudóu Léih Táai fùng seun meih a?
2. /sàu m̀hsàudóu/	2. Néih sàu m̀hsàudóu Léih Táai fùng seun a?
3. /juhng meih sàudóu ...mē?/	3. Néih juhng meih sàudóu Léih Táai fùng seun mē?
4. /géisí/	4. Néih géisí sàudóu Léih Táai fùng seun a?
5. /yáuh móuh/	5. Néih yáuh móuh sàudóu Léih Táai fùng seun a?

---

18. Expansion Drill:

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih mēyéh yuhk dōu sihk ge. /ngàuhyuhk/+/	T: I eat all meats. /beef/
S: Chèuihjó ngàuhyuhk, kéuih mēyéh yuhk dōu sihk ge.	S: With the exception of beef, he eats all meats. or He eats all kinds of meat except beef.
2. T: Kéuih mēyéh yuhk dōu sihk ge. /ngàuhyuhk/-/	T: He eats all meats. /beef/

S: Chèuihjó ngàuhyuhk, kéuih mēyéh yuhk dōu m̀hsihk ge.	S: With the exception of beef, he doesn't eat any meat. or He doesn't eat any meat except beef.
1. Kéuih mēyéh wá dōu sīk góng. /Gwóngdùngwá/-/	1. Chèuihjó Gwóngdùngwá, kéuih mēyéh wá dōu m̀hsīk góng.
2. Kéuih mēyéh choi dōu jùngyi. /Yahtbún choi/+/	2. Chèuihjó Yahtbún choi, kéuih mēyéh choi dōu jùngyi.
3. Kéuih mēyéh Jùnggwok choi dōu sihk. /yúhjyū/+/	3. Chèuihjó yúhjyū, kéuih mēyéh Jùnggwok choi dōu sihk.
4. Kéuih mēyéh dōu yiu máaih. /syutgwaih/-/	4. Chèuihjó syutgwaih, kéuih mēyéh dōu m̀hsái máaih.
5. Kéuih mēyéh sīk dōu jùngyi. /hùhng sīk/+/	5. Chèuihjó hùhng sīk, kéuih mēyéh dōu jùngyi.
6. Kéuih mēyéh jáu dōu jùngyi yám. /bējáu/-/ He likes all kinds of liquor.	6. Chèuihjó bējáu, kéuih mēyéh jáu dōu m̀hjùngyi yám.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

1) fo = goods

2) lái? = làih + rising intonation for surprise and doubt.

3) nīkheui = nìngheui

4) m̀chīh bo = Not likely!

5) Jàn màhfàahn = What a nuisance!

6) A Jyù = servant's name

7) Siu Nāai = term of address used by servant in the family addressing the housewife. The term basically means 'wife of a son of the head of the family' but it is not now restricted to that meaning.

8) louh = road

9) hòi wuhháu = open an account

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:	B. And he replies:
1. Could you please tell me how to get to the cablegraph office?	1. It's just beyond the Mandarin Hotel--do you know where the Mandarin is?
2. I got a cablegram from my younger sister yesterday.	2. What did she say?
3. Oh-oh, I broke the teapot--what'll I do?	3. You'd better buy another one.
4. I'll go get it myself.	4. It'd be better for the boss to go.
5. I think I'll go to bed a little later.	5. You'd better go now, otherwise you'll be tired in the morning.
6. Have you gotten a letter from your girl friend recently?	6. Yes, I got one the day before yesterday, but I haven't had time to answer it yet.
7. It's already been two weeks--she certainly must have received my letter.	7. Unless she's off on a trip.
8. Mr. Brown asked us for dinner, but I don't want to go.	8. Unless you go, I'm not going.
9. Hey, I can't find the key!	9. It doesn't matter, the door isn't locked.
10. Please tell Mrs. Cheung to call me as soon as she gets in.	10. All right--does she know your phone number?
11. I have to go to the office as soon as I finish breakfast.	11. Do you drive down, or take the bus?
12. What kinds of alcoholic beverages do you like?	12. I don't like anything but beer.
13. I like all alcoholic beverages except beer.	13. You and I are not a bit alike!
14. What procedures are required for getting an ID card?	14. I don't know. If you're an American, you'd better go to the American Consulate and ask.
15. I'm illiterate--how can I sign my name?!	15. So long as you use a chop, it's OK.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 28

1. bātyùh .X. bá laak (or ...bá lā)	PhF:	it would be preferable to do X
2. bīnsyu?	QW:	where?
3. chèuihfèi	MA/Cj:	unless...; only if
4. chèuihjó...(jì ngoih)	PhF:	aside from...; other than...
5. chèuhng tòuh dihnwá	n:	long distance phone call
6. chìm méng	VO:	sign one's name
7. dá chèuhng touh dihnwá	VO:	make a long distance phone call
8. dá dihnbou	VO:	send a telegram
9. dihnbou	n:	telegram, cablegram
10. dihnbougúk or dihnbouguhk	n:	telegram office
11. Dím syun a?	Ph:	'How can we handle this?' or 'What'll I do?' or 'What's to be done?'
12. fùng	m:	for letter, telegram
13. gei	v:	to mail, send by mail
14. gei seun	VO:	mail a letter, send a letter
15. gwahouh	VO:	to register
16. gwahouhseun	n:	registered letter
17. gwaihtúng	n:	drawer
18. Haih gám wah lā.	Ph:	That's the way! [Be (it) as (you) say.]
19. hòi láahnghei	VO:	turn on the air conditioner
20. jèung	CV:	take
21. jihgéi	NAdjunct:	oneself, myself, himself, etc.
22. jīkhaak	adv:	immediately, right away
23. jíyiu..., jauh...	PCj:	just have to..., then...; as long as you..., then...
24. lòh	ss:	sen. suf. signifying a bid for sympathy
25. -màaih	VSuf:	together; tight
26. màhfàahn	adj/n:	trouble
27. m̀hjìngsàhn	adj:	not feel well
28. m̀hsīk jih	Ph:	illiterate
29. sàan sāuyāmgèi	VO:	turn off the radio

30. sàu	v:	receive, collect, take in
31. sàu seun	VO:	receive a letter
32. sáujuhk	n:	procedure(s)
33. sihtáu	n:	employer, boss
34. só	v:	lock
35. sómàaih	V:	lock up, lock tight
36. sósìh	n:	key
37. Syun la(ak)!	Ph:	Never mind! or Forget it!
38. syùnlaaht tòng	Np:	vinegar-pepper soup
39. tìhmsyùn yú	Np:	sweet and sour fish
40. tòujēung	n:	chop, seal
41. wùih seun	VO:	answer a letter
42. yāt $\underline{V^1}$, jauh $\underline{V^2}$ la.	PCj:	as soon as..., then...
43. yàuhchàai	n:	postman
44. yàuhjinggúk	n:	post office
45. yàuhjingguhk	n:	post office
46. yeuhngyeuhng	mm:	everything, every kind of thing

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Mr. Ho arrives late for his appointment with Mr. Cheung:)

Hòh Sàang

yiu (Person Verb)	make (someone do something,) cause (someone to do something)
Jèung Sàang, yiu néih dángjó gam noih, jànhaih m̀hhóu yisi laak.	Mr. Cheung, I feel terrible about making you wait for so long.

Jèung Sàang

M̀hgányiu.	That's all right.
faatsàng	happen
ngóh pa faatsàngjó mēyéh sih	I was afraid something had happened
Daahnhaih ngóh jī néih hóusíu chíhdou ge, ngóh pa faatsàngjó mēyéh sih jē.	But I knew you are very seldom late, and I was afraid something had happened.

Hòh Sàang

Haih a.	That's right.
johng	bump into
-chàn	injure, damage, hurt
johngchàn	bump into and injure
béi	by (introducing the agent of an action)
ngóh néuihpàhngyáuh béi chè johngchàn	my girl was injured by a car
yīyún	hospital
Ngóh néuihpàhngyáuh béi chè johngchàn, yahpjó yīyún a.	My girl was hit by a car and went to the hospital.

Jèung Sàang

Haih àh! Géisí a?	Really! When?

Hòh Sàang

fonggùng	leave work, get, off from work

tàuhsīn	just a while ago
Tàuhsīn ngóhdeih fonggùng góján ja.	Just a while ago as we were leaving work.
Jèung Sàang	
amáh	eh?! sent. suf., checking an assumption
ngàihhím	danger, dangerous
Móuh ngàihhím amáh?	No danger, eh? (i.e., It wasn't serious, was it?)
Hòh Sàang	
Móuh!	'Nothing special' a response making little of the topic discussed.
chōchō	at first, at the beginning
chōchō yíhwàih hóu ngàihhím	at first thought it quite serious
Móuh! Chōchō ngóh juhng yíhwàih hóu ngàihhím tìm.	At first I thought it was quite serious.
sāumēi	in the end, finally
fù yeuhk	treat with medicine
Sāumēi fùjó yeuhk, yīsāng jauh wah fàandāk ngūkkéi laak.	In the end, after getting treated with medicine, the doctor said she could go home.
Jèung Sàang	
Johngchàn bīndouh a?	Where (on the body) was she hit?
Hòh Sàang	
geuk	foot, leg
tyúhn gwāt	break bone
Johngchàn jek geuk, hóuchói móuh tyúhndou gwāt ja.	Her leg was hurt; luckily at least the bone wasn't broken.
Jèung Sàang	
Hái bīndouh johngchàn ga?	Where (in the city) was she hit?
Hòh Sàang	
yúhn	far
lèih ___X___	(distance) from ___X___

lèih ngóhdeih séjihlàuh móuhgéiyúhn	not far from our office
Lèih ngóhdeih séjihlàuh móuhgéiyúhn ja.	At a place not far from our office.

Jèung Sàang

gahnjyuh	near
Gahnjyuh Jùnggwok Ngàhnhòhng gódouh àh?	Near the Bank of China?

Hòh Sàang

jīgāan	between
hái 1 tùhng 2 jīgāan	between 1 and 2
Eh (nodding his head). Jauh hái Jùnggwok Ngàhnhòhng tùhng Séuhnghói Ngàhnhòhng jīgāan lòh.	Un-huh (nodding his head). Between the Bank of China and the Shanghai Bank.

Jèung Sàang

syun	is considered, can be considered as ..., counted as.
Móuh sih dōu syun hóuchói laak.	That there was no happening really can be considered lucky (i.e., She can consider herself lucky it wasn't serious.)

Hòh Sàang

Ngóh dōu haih gám wah laak.	I think so too.

B. Recapitulation:

(Mr. Ho arrives late for his appointment with Mr. Cheung:)

Hòh Sàang

Jèung Sàang, yiu néih dángjó gam noih, jànhaih m̀hhóu yisi laak.	Mr. Cheung, I feel terrible about making you wait for so long.

Jèung Sàang

M̀hgányiu.	That's all right.
Daahnhaih ngóh jī néih hóusíu chìhdou ge, ngóh pa faatsāngjó	But I knew you are very seldom late, and I was afraid some-

mēyéh sih jē.	thing had happened.
Hòh Sàang	
Haih a.	That's right.
Ngóh néuihpàhngyáuh béi chē johngchàn, yahpjó yīyún a.	My girl was hit by a car and went to the hospital.
Jèung Sàang	
Haih àh! Géisìh a?	Really! When?
Hòh Sàang	
Tàuhsìn ngóhdeih fonggūng góján ja.	Just a while ago as we were leaving work.
Jèung Sàang	
Móuh ngàihhím amáh?	It wasn't serious, was it?
Hòh Sàang	
Móuh! Chōchō ngóh juhng yíhwàih hóu ngàihhím tìm.	At first I thought it was quite serious.
Sāumēi fùjó yeuhk, yīsāng jauh wah fàandāk ūkkéi laak.	In the end, after getting treated with medicine, the doctor said she could go home.
Jèung Sàang	
Johngchàn bīndouh a?	Where (on the body) did she get hurt?
Hòh Sàang	
Johngchàn jek geuk--hóuchói móuh tyúhndou gwāt ja.	She got hurt in the leg--fortunately the bone wasn't broken.
Jèung Sàang	
Hái bīndouh johngchàn ga?	Where (in the city) was she hurt?
Hòh Sàang	
Lèih ngóhdeih séjihlàuh móuhgéiyúhn ja.	At a place not far from our office.
Jèung Sàang	
Gahnjyuh Jùnggwok Ngàhnhòhng gódouh àh?	Near the Bank of China?
Hòh Sàang	
Eh (nodding his head). Jauh hái	Un-huh (nodding his head).

Jùnggwok Ngàhnhòhng tùhng Seuhnghói Ngàhnhòhng jīgāan lòh.	Between the Bank of China and the Shanghai Bank.
Jèung Sàang	
Móuh sih dōu syun hóuchói laak.	It can really be considered lucky that it wasn't serious.
Hòh Sàang	
Ngóh dōu haih gám wah laak.	I think so too.

II. NOTES

1. S béi agent V sentence.

The agent of a painful action may be expressed in a co-verb phrase: béi + agent, 'by agent,' 'suffer agent' (to V). In such sentences the subject of the sentence is that thing or person receiving the harmful action.

S béi agent V

Ex: Go sáilóugō béi chè johngchàn. The child was struck and injured by a car. [The child suffered a car to bump into and injure him]

a. Similarities to English passive construction.

1) As with the English passive, the subject of the béi X sentence is the receiver rather than the doer of the action.

2) The béi X phrase is similar to the 'by X' phrase in English identifying the doer of the action.

b. Dissimilarity to English passive construction.

In English there is a compulsory difference in verb form dependent on whether the subject of the sentence is the doer or receiver of the action of the verb (He hits/He is hit). In Cantonese the form of the verb is the same whether the subject is the doer or the receiver of the action. Compare:

S	(béi X) V	(O)	S \ V
Ga chè	johngchàn	go sailóugō.	The car \ struck the child.
Go sailóugō	béi chè johngchàn.		The child \ was struck by the car.

(See BC and Drill 3)

2. yiu(person verb)= 'make(someone do something)' 'cause(someone to do something)'

Example:

1. Yiu néih jíng m̀hhóu yisì bo.	I feel bad about making you fix it. (said by guest to hostess who has fixed tea herself in the absence of the cook)
2. Kéuih m̀hwúih yiu ngóh heui ge.	He can't make me go.
3. Kéuih móuh yiu ngóh heui.	He didn't make me go.
4. Nī dī yún haih m̀hhaih yīsāng yiu neih sihk ga?	Is the doctor making you take these pills?

(See BC and Drill 10)

3. amáh (var: āma), sentence siffix.

amáh (or āma) has two different uses.

(1) as an interrogative sentence suffix checking on an assumption: amáh?

Example:

1. Móuh ngàihhím amáh?	(It) wasn't serious, was it?
2. Néih m̀hhaih dáng ngóh āma?	You're not waiting for me, are you?
3. Néih luhk dím ji fong gùng āma?	It's six o'clock that you get off work, isn't it?
4. Néih juhng meih yáuh dihnwá āma?	You still don't have a phone yet, do you?

The āma? question suffix reflects a question in the mind of the speaker as to whether the idea he has about the situation is right.

Compare:

Néih luhk dím ji fong gùng àh.	You get off at six, don't you. (is sure that he does-- the question is merely rhetorical)
Néih luhk dím ji fong gùng āma?	You get off at six, don't you? (thinks that he does, but checking to make sure)

(See BC)

(2) as a non-interrogative, adds the connotation 'it's obvious that that's why/where/what/who' in a response sentence: amáh.

Ex: A. Kéuih dímgáai gàmyaht m̀h̀faan gung a?	How come she's not at work today?
B. Kéuih yáuh béhng āma.	Because she's sick. (implying nicely, not impatiently, that it's obvious she'd have to be sick not to be at work)

(See Drill 15)

4. hái bīndouh johngchàn a? = where (on the map) did you get hurt?
johngchàn bīndouh a? = where (on the body) did you get hurt?

In English 'Where did you get hurt?' could elicit the answer: 'On my elbow' or 'In the back yard,' but in Chinese the geographic place an action occurred is expressed in a hái phrase preceding the other verb, and the place on the body is expressed as the object of a VO construction.

Ex: Ngóh hái yàuhjinggúk deuimihn johngchàn.	I got hit opposite the post office.
Ngóh johngchàn go tàuh.	I got hit on the head.

5. hái X tùhng Y jīgāan = between X and Y
yàuh X dou Y jīgāan = between X and Y

These two phrases pattern with the two different types of Placeword sentences: (1) the S hái PW sentence, and (2) the PW Subject yáuh M-N sentence.

a. hái X tùhng Y jīgāan operates in the predicate in the S hái Placeword pattern.

Ex:

S		P	
Sp-M-N or Proper name	Subj	hái	PW

Jùnggwok Ngàhnhòhng hái Máhtàuh tùhng Méihgwok Jáudim jīgāan.
The Bank of China is between the Pier and the American Hotel.

(See BC and Drill 11)

b. yáuh X tùhng Y jīgāan operates as the subject in the Placeword S yáuh M-N pattern.

Ex:

S	P
PW-Subject	yáuh M - N
Yauh máhtàuh dou Méihgwok Jáudim jīgāan	yáuh gàan ngàhnhòhng.
	Between the Pier and the American Hotel there's a bank.

(See Drill 12)

The PW-Sub yáuh M-N sentence type permits hái X tùhng Y jīgāan in Subject position as the PW-Subject.

Ex: Hái X tùhng Y jīgāan yáuh gaan ngàhnhòhng.	Between X and Y there's a bank.

But the S hái PW sentence type doesn't permit the yàuh X dou Y jīgāan pattern.

6. lèih Placeword = (distance) from Placeword

a. Distance away from a place is expressed:

X lèih Placeword (yáuh) adj of distance/distance measure

Ex: 1. Jáudim lèih nīdouh (yáuh) hóu yúhn ga.	The hotel is far away from here.
2. Jáudim lèih nīdouh (yáuh) saam māi gamseuhngha.	The hotel is about 3 miles from here.

(See BC and Drill 4)

b. lèih occupies the position of a co-verb in the sentence, but as the negative and question forms of the sentence attach to the distance portion and not to the lèih portion, we classify lèih as a preposition and not a co-verb.

Ex: 1. Jáudim lèih nīdouh m̀hhaih géi yúhn jē.	The hotel is not far from here.
2. Jáudim lèih nīdouh yúhn m̀hyúhn a?	Is the hotel far from here?

(See Drill 6)

c. Note that yáuh as an equating verb can be used as the verb of the predicate, or the center of the predicate can be an adjective or a nu-m compound of distance.

(See examples under a. above)

7. káhn and gahn(jyuh), 'near'

a. káhn, 'near'

káhn is an adjective which is used in the predicate. It does not take an object.

Ex: Kéuih ngūkkéi lèih nīdouh hóu káhn jē.	[His house from here very near merely.]
	His house is quite near here.

(See Drill 4)

b. gahn(jyuh), 'near'

gahn(jyuh) is a verb which takes an object. It patterns as a V in a VO construction.

Ex: Kéuih ngūkkéi gahnjyuh yàuhjinggúk.	His house is near the post office.
Kéuih ngūkkéi gahn m̀hgahn yàuhjinggúk a?	Is his house near the post office?
M̀hgahn--gahnjyuh fēigēichèuhng.	Not near-- it's near the airport.

(See BC and Drill 5)

III. DRILLS

1. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

1. Kéuih m̀hdākhàahn, sóyíh m̀hheuidāk. He was busy, so he couldn't go.	1. Kéuih m̀hdākhàahn, sóyíh m̀hheuidāk.
+ 2. /m̀hsyùfuhk/ (not feel well, not feel comfortable.)	2. Kéuih m̀hsyùfuhk, sóyíh m̀hheuidāk. He didn't feel well, so he didn't go.
+ 3. /faatsíu/ (have a fever)	3. Kéuih faatsíu, sóyíh m̀hheuidāk. He had a fever, so he couldn't go.
+ 4. /sēungfùng/ (have a cold, catch cold)	4. Kéuih sēungfùng, sóyíh m̀hheuidāk. He has a cold, so he can't go.
+ 5. /tàuhtung/ (have a headache)	5. Kéuih tàuhtung, sóyíh m̀hheuidāk. She had a headache, so she couldn't go.
+ 6. /yáuh behng/ (be sick)	6. Kéuih yáuh behng, sóyíh m̀hheuidāk. He's sick, so he can't go.
+ 7. /behngjó/ (got sick, get sick)	7. Kéuih behngjó, sóyíh m̀hheuidāk. He's gotten sick, so he can't go.
+ 8. /ditchàn/ (fall and hurt yourself, be dropped and get hurt)	8. Kéuih ditchàn, sóyíh m̀hheuidāk. She fell and hurt her herself, so she can't go.

---

2. Alteration/Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih ditchàn go sailóugō.	T: She dropped the child and hurt him.
S: Hóu sēng a, m̀hhóu ditchàn go sailóugō!	S: Be careful, don't drop the child and hurt him!
1. Kéuih jíngwaaihjó go láahnghei-	1. Hóu sēng a, m̀hhóu jíngwaaih

gēi. He broke the air conditioner.	go láahngheigēi. Be careful, don't break the air conditioner!
2. Kéuih chēchàn go néuihyán. He ran over a woman (with his car) and injured her.	2. Hóu sēng a, m̀hhóu chēchàn go néuihyán!
+ 3. Ga chē johngchàn go néuijái. His car bumped into a girl and injured her.	3. Hóu sēng a, m̀hhóu johngchàn go néuijai!
4. Kéuih dálaahnjó jek būi.	4. Hóu sēng a, m̀hhóu dálaahn jek būi!
5. Kéuih jínglaahttaatjó gihn chèuhngsāam.	5. Hóu sēng a, m̀hhóu jínglaahttaat gihn chèuhngsāam!
+ 6. Kéuih tong wòhngjó tìuh baahk fu. She scorched the white pants. [iron-yellowed]	6. Hóu sēng a, m̀hhóu tong wòhng tìuh baahk fu!
7. Kéuih johngwaaihjó go dihnsih.	7. Hóu sēng a, m̀hhóu johngwaaih go dihnsih!

---

3. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Go bīu jínglaahnjó.	T: The watch has been broken.
S: Go bīu béi yàhn jínglaahnjó.	S: Somebody broke the watch. [The watch was broken by someone.]

1. Jèk gāng dálaahnjó.	1. Jèk gāng béi yàhn dálaahnjó.
2. Go tòuhjēung jínglaahnjó.	2. Go tòuhjēung béi yàhn jínglaahnjó.
3. Fùng gwahouhseun jíngsāpjó.	3. Fùng gwahouhseun béi yàhn jíngsāpjó.
4. Tìuh sósìh jíngwaaihjó.	4. Tìuh sósìh béi yàhn jíngwaaihjó.
5. Go gwaihtúng jínglaahnjó.	5. Go gwaihtúng béi yàhn jínglaahnjó.
6. Fùng dihnbou jíngchàauhjó. The cablegram got wrinkled.	6. Fùng dihnbou béi yàhn jíng chàauhjó.
7. Go dihnwá ditwaaihjó. The telephone dropped and got out of order.	7. Go dihnwá béi yàhn ditwaaihjó.
+ 8. Jèun yeuhkséui dálaahnjó. The bottle of [liquid] medicine broke.	8. Jèun yeuhkséui béi yàhn dálaahnjó.

(jèun = bottle having a stopper; [M]	
(yeuhkséui = liquid medicine	
+ 9. Jèun yeuhkyún dóuséjó. The bottle of pills spilled. (yeuhkyún = medicine in pill form)	9. Jèun yeuhkyún béi yàhn dóuséjó.

---

4. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Méihgwok Lǐhngsihgwún lèih nīdouh hóu káhn jē. /móuh géi yúhn jē/ +	T: The American Consulate is quite near here. /not far/
S: Méihgwok Lǐhngsihgwún lèih nīdouh móuh géi yúhn jē.	S: The American Consulate is not far from here.
1. Méihgwok Lǐhngsihgwún lèih nīdouh móuh géi yúhn jē. /hóu yúhn ga/	1. Méihgwok Lǐhngsihgwún lèih nīdouh hóu yúhn ga.
2. Méihgwok Lǐhngsihgwún lèih nīdouh hóu yúhn ga. /hóu káhn jē/	2. Méihgwok Lǐhngsihgwún lèih nīdouh hóu káhn jē.
3. Méihgwok Lǐhngsihgwún lèih nīdouh hóu káhn jē. /dōu géi yúhn ga/	3. Méihgwok Lǐhngsihgwún lèih nīdouh dōu géi yúhn ga.
4. Méihgwok Lǐhngsihgwún lèih nīdouh dōu géi yúhn ga. /m̀hhaih géi yúhn jē/	4. Méihgwok Lǐhngsihgwún lèih nīdouh m̀hhaih géi yúhn jē.
5. Méihgwok Lǐhngsihgwún lèih nīdouh m̀hhaih géi yúhn jē. /dōu m̀hsyun hóu káhn ga/	5. Méihgwok Lǐhngsihgwún lèih nīdouh dōu m̀hsyun hóu káhn ga.
6. Méihgwok Lǐhngsihgwún lèih nīdouh dōu m̀hsyun hóu káhn ga. /dōu m̀hsyundāk yúhn gé/	6. Méihgwok Lǐhngsihgwún lèih nīdouh dōu m̀hsyundāk yúhn gé.

Comment: Káhn is an adjective. It doesn't take an object:
Gàan ngàhnhòhng hóu káhn jē.= The bank is quite near.

---

5. Response Drill

Ex: T: Néih gàan séjihlàuh gahn m̀hgahn Jùnggwok Ngàhnhòhng a? /yàuhjinggúk/	T: Is your office near the Bank of China?
S: M̀hgahn--gahnjyuh yàuhjinggúk.	S: No--it's near the post office.
1. Gó gàan jáugā gahn m̀hgahn Méihgwok Líhngsihgwún a? /Faatgwok Líhngsihgwún/	1. M̀hgahn--gahnjyuh Faatgwok Líhngsihgwún.
2. Kéuih gàan ūk gahn m̀hgahn Gáulùhng yīyún a? /fēigēichèuhng/	2. M̀hgahn--gahnjyuh fēigēichèuhng.
3. Gó gàan chāansāt gahn m̀hgahn Jùnggwok Daaihhohk a? /Hèunggóng Daaihhohk/	3. M̀hgahn--gahnjyuh Hèunggóng Daaihhohk.
4. Gàan jáudim gahn m̀hgahn fēigēichèuhng a? /ngàhnhòhng/	4. M̀hgahn--gahnjyuh ngàhnhòhng.
5. Sàam houh bāsí jaahm gahn m̀hgahn ngàhnhòhng a? /gūngsī/	5. M̀hgahn--gahnjyuh gūngsī.
6. Dihnbougúk gahn m̀hgahn Wíhng Ōn Gūngsī a? /yàuhjinggúk/	6. M̀hgahn--gahnjyuh yàuhjinggúk.
7. Yahtbún Líhngsihgwún gahn m̀hgahn néih ūkkéi a? /Wòhng Sàang ūkkéi/	7. M̀hgahn--gahnjyuh Wòhng Sàang ūkkéi.

Comment: gahn(jyuh) is a transitive verb which takes an object (VO):

Kéuih ngūkkéi gahnjyuh ngàhnhòhng.	His home is near the bank.

---

6. Substitution Drill

Ex: 1. T: Màhnwàh Jáudim lèih nīdouh yáuh géi yúhn a? /yúhn m̀hyúhn/	T: How far is Mandarin Hotel from here? /is (it) far?/
S: Màhnwàh Jáudim lèih nīdouh yúhn m̀hyúhn a?	S: Is the Mandarin Hotel far from here?
2. T: Màhnwàh Jáudim lèih nīdouh yúhn m̀hyúhn a? /dihnbougúk/	T: Is the Mandarin Hotel far from here?

S: Màhnwàh Jáudim lèih dihnbougúk yúhn m̀hyúhn a?	S: Is the Mandarin Hotel far from the telegraph office?
1. Méihgwok Jáudim lèih dihnbougúk yúhn m̀hyúhn a? /yáuh géidō go gàaiháu/	1. Méihgwok Jáudim lèih dihnbougúk yáuh géidō go gàaiháu a?
2. Méihgwok Jáudim lèih dihnbougúk yáuh géidō go gàaiháu a? /yáuh géidō go chē jaahm/	2. Méihgwok Jáudim lèih dihnbougúk yáuh géidō go chē jaahm a?
3. Méihgwok Jáudim lèih dihnbougúk yáuh géidō go chē jaahm a? /yàuhjinggúk/	3. Méihgwok Jáudim lèih yàuhjinggúk yáuh géidō go chē jaahm a?
4. Méihgwok Jáudim lèih yàuhjinggúk yáuh géidō go chē jaahm a? /Hòuhwàh Heiyún/	4. Méihgwok Jáudim lèih Hòuhwàh Heiyún yáuh géidō go chē jaahm a?
5. Hòuhwàh Heiyún lèih nīdouh yáuh géidō go chē jaahm a? /yáuh géi yúhn/	5. Hòuhwàh Heiyún lèih nīdouh yáuh géi yúhn a?
6. Hòuhwàh Heiyún lèih nīdouh yáuh géi yúhn a? /yúhn m̀hyúhn/	6. Hòuhwàh Heiyún lèih nīdouh yúhn m̀hyúhn a?
7. Hòuhwàh Heiyún lèih nīdouh yúhn m̀hyúhn a? /káhn m̀hkáhn/	7. Hòuhwàh Heiyún lèih nīdouh káhn m̀hkáhn a?

---

7. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Léuhng mān taai gwai.	T: Two dollars is too expensive.
S: Léuhng mān syun m̀hsyun gwai a?	S: Is two dollars considered expensive?
1. Chāt chek taai gòu.	1. Chāt chek syun m̀hsyun gòu a?
2. Gwóngdùngwá taai nàahnhohk.	2. Gwóngdùngwá syun m̀hsyun nàahnhohk a?
3. Gáulùhng yīyún hóu daaih.	3. Gáulùhng yīyún syun m̀hsyun daaih a?
4. Hèunggóng ūkjòu hóu gwai.	4. Hèunggóng ūkjòu syun m̀hsyun gwai a?
+ 5. Kéuih ge behng hóu gányiu. His illness is serious.	5. Kéuih ge behng syun m̀hsyun gányiu a?
6. Kéuih jyúfáan hóu kàhnlihk. Her cook is very hard-working.	6. Kéuih jyúfáan syun m̀hsyun kàhnlihk a?
7. Kéuih ge jáinéui hóu lēk.	7. Kéuih ge jáinéui syun m̀hsyun lēk a?

a. Teacher asks questions and cues students to give affirmative or negative responses, thus:

Neg: X m̀hsyun Adj.
Aff: X béigaau Adj. dī.
or X hóu Adj.

---

8. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh chōchō dásyun bùn ngūk gé.	T: At first I planned to move [house].
S: Ngóh chōchō dásyun bùn ngūk gé, sāumēi ji kyutdihng m̀hbùn ge jē.	S: At first I planned to move, but finally I decided not to.
1. Ngóh chōchō dásyun heui Tòihwàan gé.	1. Ngóh chōchō dásyun heui Tòihwàan gé, sāumēi ji kyutdihng m̀hheui ge jē.
2. Ngóh chōchō dásyun heui léuihhàhng gé.	2. Ngóh chōchō dásyun heui léuihhàhng gé, sāumēi ji kyutdihng m̀hheui ge jē.
3. Ngóh chōchō dásyun yahp yīyún gé.	3. Ngóh chōchō dásyun yahp yīyún gé, sāumēi ji kyutdihng m̀hyahp ge jē.
4. Ngóh chōchō dásyun wùih seun gé.	4. Ngóh chōchō dásyun wùih seun gé, sāumēi ji kyutdihng m̀hwùih ge jē.
5. Ngóh chōchō dásyun sómàaih mùhn gé.	5. Ngóh chōchō dásyun sómàaih mùhn gé, sāumēi ji kyutdihng m̀hsó ge jē.
6. Ngóh chōchō dásyun sihk yeuhk gé.	6. Ngóh chōchō dásyun sihk yeuhk gé, sāumēi ji kyutdihng m̀hsihk ge jē.

---

9. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute the cues in object position.

1. Néih tàuhtung yáuh móuh fàan hohk a? Having a headache, did you go to school?	1. Néih tàuhtung yáuh móuh fàan hohk a?
2. /tái yīsāng/	2. Néih tàuhtung yáuh móuh tái yīsāng a?

3. /sihk yeuhk/	3. Néih tàuhtung yáuh móuh sihk yeuhk a?
4. /fàan gùng/	4. Néih tàuhtung yáuh móuh fàan gùng a?
5. /faat sìu/	5. Néih tàuhtung yáuh móuh faat sìu a?

---

10. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute the cues in subject position.

1. Yiu néih dángjó gam noih, jànhaih m̀hhóu yisi laak. I feel terrible to have made you wait so long.	1. Yiu néih dángjó gam noih, jànhaih m̀hhóu yisi laak.
2. /yuhng gamdò chín/	2. Yiu néih yuhng gamdò chín, jànhaih m̀hhóu yisi laak.
3. /hàahng gam yúhn/	3. Yiu néih hàahng gam yúhn, jànhaih m̀hhóu yisi laak.
4. /wán gam noih/	4. Yiu néih wán gam noih, jànhaih m̀hhóu yisi laak.
5. /gam jóu héisàn/	5. Yiu néih gam jóu héisàn, jànhaih m̀hhóu yisi laak.
6. /gam chìh fàan ūkkéi/	6. Yiu néih gam chìh fàan ūkkéi, jànhaih m̀hhóu yisi laak.

---

11. Response Drill

Ex: T: Gó gàan gūngsī gahnjyuh bīndouh ga? /ngàhnhòhng/heiyún/	T: What place is the department store near? /bank/movie theatre/
S: Hái ngàhnhòhng tùhng heiyún jīgāan jē.	S: It's between the bank and the movie theatre.
1. Gó gàan yàuhjinggúk gahnjyuh bīndouh ga? /gàaisíh/máhtàuh/	1. Hái gàaisíh tùhng máhtàuh jīgāan jē.
2. Gó gàan ngūk gahnjyuh bīndouh ga? /líhngsihgwún/chāansāt/	2. Hái líhngsihgwún tùhng chāansāt jīgāan jē.
3. Gó gàan jáudim gahnjyuh bīndouh ga? /fēigeichèuhng/jáugā/	3. Hái fēigeichèuhng tùhng jáugā jīgāan jē.

4. Méihgwok Jáudim gahnjyuh bīndouh ga? /Méihgwok Lìhngsihgwún/Jùnggwok Ngàhnhòhng/	4. Hái Méihgwok Lìhngsihgwún tùhng Jùnggwok Ngàhnhòhng jīgāan jē.
5. Màhnwàh Jáudim gahnjyuh bīndouh ga? /Tīnsing Máhtàuh/Seuhnghói Ngàhnhòhng/	5. Hái Tīnsing Máhtàuh tùhng Seuhnghói Ngàhnhòhng jīgāan jē.

---

12. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute the cues in object position.

+ 1. Yàuh máhtàuh dou heiyún jīgāan, yáuh móuh bāsí jaahm a? From the ferry [pier] to the movie house is there a bus stop between? (yàuh X dou X jīgāan = between X and X)	1. Yàuh máhtàuh dou heiyún jīgāan, yáuh móuh bāsí jaahm a?
2. /gàaisíh/	2. Yàuh máhtàuh dou heiyún jīgāan yáuh móuh gàaisíh a?
3. /jáugā/	3. Yàuh máhtàuh dou heiyún jīgāan yáuh móuh jáugā a?
4. /ngàhnhòhng/	4. Yàuh máhtàuh dou heiyún jīgāan yáuh móuh ngàhnhòhng a?
5. /yīyún/	5. Yàuh máhtàuh dou heiyún jīgāan yáuh móuh yīyún a?
6. /chē jaahm/	6. Yàuh máhtàuh dou heiyún jīgāan yáuh móuh chē jaahm a?

---

13. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Néih wán ngóh jouh māt a?	T: What are you looking for me about? (i.e., You're looking for me--here I am--what is it that you want?)
S: Tàuhsìn néih wán ngóh jouh māt a?	S: What were you looking for me about a little while ago?
1. Haih m̀hhaih néih wán ngóh làih a? Were you looking for me?	1. Tàuhsìn haih m̀hhaih néih wán ngóh làih a?

2. Bīngo dá dihnwá làih a? Who phoned? or Who's on the phone? [dálàih = call in]	2. Tàuhsīn bīngo dá dihnwá làih a?
+ 3. Néih wah tàuhtung, yìhgā hóufàan meih a? (return to good health, get well) You said you had a headache, are you back to normal now?	3. Tàuhsīn néih wah tàuhtung, yìhgā hóufàan meih a?
4. Néih wah faatsīu, yìhgā hóufàan meih a?	4. Tàuhsīn néih wah faatsīu, yìhgā hóufàan meih a?
5. Néih wah behngjó, yìhgā hóufàan meih a?	5. Tàuhsīn néih wah behngjó, yìhgā hóufàan meih a?
6. Néih wah yáuh behng, yìhgā hóufàan meih a?	6. Tàuhsīn néih wah yáuh behng, yìhgā hóufàan meih a?

---

14. Conversation Drill

Ex: 1.	A: Heui Hòuhwàh Heiyún yúhn m̀hyúhn a? /shake/	A: Is the Hoover Theatre far?
	B: M̀hyúhn-- hóu kahn jē.	B: Not far--it's quite near.
	A: Gahn(jyuh) bīndouh a? /Hòuhwàh Jáugā/	A: What's it near? /Hoover Restaurant/
	B: Gahnjyuh Hòuhwàh Jáugā jē.	B: It's near the Hoover Restaurant.
2.	A: Heui Méihgwok Jáudim yúhn m̀hyúhn a? /nod/	A: Is the Hilton Hotel far?
	B: Hóu yúhn ga!	B: Quite far.
	A: Gahn(jyuh) bīndouh a? /Méihgwok Lìhngsihgwún/	A: What's it near? /American Consulate/
	B: Gahnjyuh Méihgwok Lìhngsihgwún.	B: It's near the American Consulate.

1. A. ......yàuhjinggúk.....? /shake/	1. A. Heui yàuhjinggúk yúhn m̀hyúhn a?

B.	B. M̀hyúhn, hóu káhn jē.
A. ....?	A. Gahn(jyuh) bīndouh a?
B. .....Tīnsīng Máhtàuh......	B. Gahnjyuh Tīnsīng Máhtàuh jē.
2. A. ....Gáulùhng Yīyún....? /nod/	2. A. Heui Gáulùhng Yīyún yúhnm̀hyúhn a?
B.	B. Hóu yúhn ga!
A. ....?	A. Gahn(jyuh) bīndouh a?
B. .....fēigēichèuhng......	B. Gahnjyuh fēigēichèuhng.
3. A. ....Hèunggóng Daaihhohk....? /shake/	3. A. Heui Hèunggóng Daaihhohk yúhn m̀hyúhn a?
B.	B. M̀hyúhn, hóu káhn jē.
A. ....?	A. Gahn(jyuh) bīndouh a?
B. .....sàam houh bāsí jaahm....	B. Gahnjyuh sàam houh bāsí jaahm jē.
4. A. ....dihnbougúk....? /shake/	4. A. Heui dihnbougúk yúhn m̀hyúhn a?
B.	B. M̀hyúhn, hóu káhn jē.
A. ....?	A. Gahn(jyuh) bīndouh a?
B. ......yàuhjinggúk......	B. Gahnjyuh yàuhjinggúk jē.
5. A. .....Wíhng Ōn Gūngsī......? /shake/	5. A. Heui Wíhng Ōn Gūngsī yúhn m̀hyúhn a?
B.	B. M̀hyúhn, hóu káhn jē.
A. ....?	A. Gahn(jyuh) bīndouh a?
B. ......Wíhng Ōn Ngàhnhòhng....	B. Gahnjyuh Wíhng Ōn Ngàhnhòhng jē.
6. A. .....Màhnwàh Jáudim ......? /shake/	6. A. Heui Màhnwàh Jáudim yúhn m̀hyúhn a?
B.	B. M̀hyúhn, hóu káhn jē.
A. ....?	A. Gahn(jyuh) bīndouh a?
B. ......Tīnsīng Máhtàuh	B. Gahnjyuh Tīnsīng Máhtàuh jē.

15. Question and Answer Drill

Ex:	T: Yànwaih sēungfùng, kéuih m̀hlàihdāk.	T: She has a cold, so she can't come.
	S1: Dímgáai kéuih m̀hlàih a?	S1: Why isn't she coming?
+	S2: Kéuih sēungfùng ā ma. (or: a máh)	S2: It's because she has a cold, that's why.

ā ma or a máh =
'that's why' in a response sentence which gives explanation of why something occurred ā ma adds the connotation (cheerfully without impatience) that the whole thing is pretty obvious.

1. Yàhwaih lohkyúh, kéuih m̀hheui yàuhséui laak.	1. A. Dímgáai kéuih m̀hheui yàuhséui a?
	B. Lohkyúh ā ma.
2. Yànwaih yáuh behng, kéuih m̀hfàandāk gùng.	2. A. Dímgáai kéuih m̀hfàan gùng a?
	B. Kéuih yáuh behng ā ma.
3. Yànwaih móuh chín, kéuih m̀htáidāk yīsāng.	3. A. Dímgáai kéuih m̀htái yīsāng a?
	B. Kéuih móuh chín ā ma.
4. Yànwaih m̀hsīk chìm méng, kéuih yiu yuhng tòuhjēung.	4. A. Dímgáai kéuih yuhng tòuhjēung a?
	B. Kéuih m̀hsīk chìm méng ā ma.
5. Gwai gwotàuh sóyíh m̀hséung máaih.	5. A. Dímgáai m̀hséung máaih a?
	B. Gwai gwotàuh ā ma.
6. Ga chē waaihjó, sóyíh yiu hàahng louh.	6. A. Dímgáai yiu hàahng louh a?
	B. Ga chē waaihjó ā ma.
7. Ǹhgau sìhgaan, sóyíh yiu chóh dīksí.	7. A. Dímgáai yiu chóh dīksí a?
	B. Ǹhgau sìhgaan ā ma.

16. Expansion-Translation Drill

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih behngjó géi yaht. /already well/	T: He's been sick for a few days. /already well/
S: Kéuih behngjó géi yaht, yíhgìng hóufàansaai laak.	S: He has been sick for a few days, but he's OK now.
2. T: Kéuih behngjó géi yaht. /not yet/	T: He's been sick for a few days. /not yet/
S: Kéuih behngjó géi yaht, juhng meih hóufàan.	S: He's been sick for a few days and is still sick.
3. T: Kéuih behngjó géi yaht. /well yet?/	T: He's been sick for a few days. /well yet?/
S: Kéuih behngjó géi yaht, yìhgā houfàan meih a?	S: He's been sick a few days--is he well yet?

1. Néih tàuhtungjó sèhng go láihbaai. /already well/	1. Néih tàuhtungjó sèhng go láihbaai, yíhgìng hóufàansaai laak.
2. Ngóh faatsìujó léuhng sàam yaht. /not yet/	2. Ngóh faatsìujó léuhng sàam yaht, juhng meih hóufàan.
3. Kéuih m̀hsyùfuhkjó géi yaht. /well yet?/	3. Kéuih m̀hsyùfuhkjó géi yaht, yìhgā hóufàan meih a?
4. Kéuih taaitáai sēungfùngjó sèhng go láihbaai. /well yet?/	4. Kéuih taaitáai sēungfùngjó sèhng go láihbaai, yìhgā hóufàan meih a?
5. Kéuih go jái behngjó sèhng bun go yuht. /not yet/	5. Kéuih go jái behngjó sèhng bun go yuht, juhng meih hóufàan.
6. Kéuih sihtáu m̀hjìngsàhnjó sèhng yaht. /already well/	6. Kéuih sihtáu m̀hjìngsàhnjó sèhng yaht, yíhgìng hóufàansaai laak.
7. Ngóh agō sihkjó sèhng go láihbaai yeuhk. /not yet/	7. Ngóh agō sihkjó sèhng go láihbaai yeuhk, juhng meih hóufàan.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

1) chìhn géi yaht = a few days ago
2) tàuh = head
3) johngmàaih = hit
4) tung = hurt
5) yeuhk = medicine
    hòi dī yeuhk = write a prescription
6) nāp = pill, M for pill, grain of rice, grain of sand, etc.
7) Hóu wah.= 'You're welcome'
8) Taaijí Douh = Prince Road
9) Wòdálóuh Douh = Waterloo Road
10) jī ma = that's all
11) Yáuh sàm.= It's kind of you to inquire
12) dahn = steam (a method of cooking)
13) tái dōu m̀htái néih = won't even come see you
14) Yáuh sàm.= It's kind of you to inquire.
15) daih yaht = the next day
16) m̀hhaih jauh làihjó nīdouh lō! = Wasn't it that I came here! i.e., Didn't I just wind up here! (exasperated)
17) douh = degree (of temperature)
18) chēut yún = get out of the hospital
19) Síu yisi jē.= It's just a little something. Polite response to thanks for a gift.
20) wánmàaih = get together with

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:	B. And he replies:
1. Is the American Consulate far from here?	1. It's very near. (pointing:) There! it's there.
2. Where is the telegraph office?	2. I'm not sure (m̀hchìngchó)--maybe it's near the post office.

3. Where is the post office?	3. It's in the Central District, midway between the Bank of China and the Central Market.
4. Is there a restaurant between here and the Star Ferry pier?	4. Yes, plenty of them. What kind of food do you want to eat?
5. Why didn't Miss Chan come today?	5. Because she has a cold.
6. What's the matter? Do you have a headache?	6. I think I have a fever.
7. He didn't come to work today because he wasn't feeling well.	7. O, so that's why--I thought he had gone on a trip.
8. I hear one of the students has been sick for several days.	8. Yes, there was one who was sick for a few days, but he's already well.
9. I'm feeling very well.	9. What? Didn't you tell me just a little while ago that you were very headache-y?
10. When you have a headache, do to take a pill? (sihk)	10. Sometimes I do and sometimes not.
11. When Miss Ma first studied Cantonese she spoke very haltingly.	11. Yes, but at the end she spoke very fluently.
12. Did you hear that Mr. Cheung was hit by a car?	12. Is that so? Did he go into the hospital?
13. This watch sells for US$50.--would that be considered expensive?	13. $50 perhaps wouldn't be considered expensive.
14. I hear you're planning to move.	14. At first we planned to move, but finally we decided not to.
15. Would you please say that last sentence again.	15. I said "Speak louder."

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 29

1. āma? (or amáh?)	ss:	'isn't that right?' sen. quest. suf. with the force of checking an assumption
2. āma. (or amáh.)	ss:	that (obvious reason) is why.
3. behng	n:	illness

4.	behngjó	VP:	got sick
5.	béi	CoV:	introduces the agent of an action, 'by ____'
6.	-chàn	VSuf:	verb suf. injure, hurt, damage
7.	chōchō	MA:	at first, in the beginning
8.	dītchàn	v:	fall and hurt yourself; be dropped and get hurt
9.	faatsāng	v:	happen
10.	faatsìu	VO:	have a fever
11.	fonggùng	VO:	leave work, get off from work
12.	fù yeuhk	VO:	treat with medicine
13.	gahn(jyuh)_PW_	v:	near (followed by a placeword)
14.	geuk	n:	leg, foot
15.	gwāt	n:	bone
16.	hái _X_ tùhng _Y_ jīgāan	PhF:	between _X_ and _Y_
17.	hóufàan	v:	get well, return to good health
18.	jèun [gò]	N/M:	bottle
19.	jīgāan	BF:	between
20.	johng	v:	bump into
21.	johngchàn	v:	injure by bumping [bump-injure]
22.	káhm	adj:	near
23.	lèih _X_	Prep:	(distance) from _X_
24.	m̀hsyùfuhk	adj:	not feel well; i.e., feel sick
25.	Móuh!	Ph:	'Nothing special.' A response making light of topic discussed.
26.	néuihjái	n:	girl, young woman
27.	ngàihhím	Aj:	dangerous; danger
28.	sāumēi	MA:	finally, in the end
29.	sēungfùng	VO:	have a cold, catch a cold
30.	syun	v:	is considered; can be considered...; counted as....
31.	tàuhsīn	MA:	just a while ago
32.	tàuhtung	v/n:	have a headache
33.	tong wòhngjó	VP:	scorched [iron-yellowed]
34.	tyúhn	v:	break (of bones and sticklike objects)
35.	yáuh behng	VO:	be sick
36.	yàuh _X_ dou _Y_ jīgāan	PhF:	between _X_ and _Y_

37. yeuhk	n:	medicine
38. yeuhkséui	n:	[liquid] medicine
39. yeuhkyún	n:	pills
40. yīyún	n:	hospital
41. yiu	v:	make, cause (someone to do something)
42. yúhn	adj:	far

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Younger brother and elder sister
discuss an approaching typhoon)

Sailóu	
fùng	wind
yuht làih yuht Adj	getting more and more Adj
yuht làih yuht daaih	getting bigger and bigger
Wah, dī fùng yuht làih yuht daaih tìm!	Wow--the wind is getting stronger all the time!
Dím chēut gāai a?	How can I go out?
Gājē	
fùngkàuh	typhoon signal
sàam houh fùngkàuh	typhoon signal #3
gwa sàam houh fùngkàuh	hang up the #3 typhoon signal
Yíhgìng gwajó sàam houh fùngkàuh ge lo bo--	They've already put up the Number 3 typhoon signal, for heaven's sake--(protesting good naturedly that her younger brother shouldn't go out under such circumstances.
Néih juhng séung chēut gāai àh!	You still plan to go out?
-yíhseuhng	above ... more than ... (follows a number expression)
ńgh houh yíhseuhng	above the number five (signal). higher than the number 5 (signal)
jyun fùngkàuh	change the typhoon signal
Yùhgwó yāt jyun ńgh houh yíhseuhng, waahkjé jauh móuh chē móuh syùhn ge laak.	If it once goes higher than Number 5, then maybe there won't be any buses or ferries.
Sailóu	
Haih a.	That's right.
ginmihn	meet
hái máhtàuh ginmihn	meet at the ferry [pier]

yeuk	make an appointment
yeukhóu	agree on the time and/or place for an appointment
ji	between
léuhng dím yātgogwāt ji léuhng dím bun	between 2:15 and 2:30
Daahnhaih ngóh tùhng Jèung Síujé yeukhóu léuhngdím yāt go gwāt ji léuhng dím bun hái máhtàuh ginmihn.	But I made an appointment to meet Miss Cheung at the ferry between 2:15 and 2:30
Gājē	
Yihgā géi dím a?	What time is it now?
Sailóu	
jāangdī	almost, lacks a little (precedes number phrase)
Jāangdī léuhng dím la.	It's almost 2 o'clock.
Gājē	
gói	change, alter
daihyaht	another day, another time
gói daihyaht	change it to another day
Néih dímgáai m̀hdá dihnwá béi kéuih, giu kéuih gói daihyaht nē?	Why don't you phone her and tell her to change it to another day?
Sailóu	
hósīk	unfortunately; it is unfortunate (+ sentence)
Hósīk kéuih ngūkkéi móuh dihnwá--	Unfortunately her house doesn't have a phone--
tūngji	communicate with
móuh baahnfaat	'There's no way;' 'Can't do anything about it'
Móuh baahnfaat tùngji kéuih.	There's no way to communicate with her.
Gājē	
dáfùng	have a typhoon [hit-wind]

yìhgā dágán fùng	there's a typhoon going on now
gú	guess, conjecture, hazard a guess
ngóh gú kéuih m̀hchēutlàih	I bet she won't come out
daaihkói or daaihkoi	probably
Yìhgā dágán fùng, ngóh gú Jèung Sīujé daaihkói dōu m̀hchēutlàih ge laak.	There's a typhoon going on now and I bet Miss Cheung probably won't even come out.

(The phone rings:)

Sailóu

A, daaihkói haih kéuih dálàih laak.	Oh, that's probably her calling now.

Gājē

Gám juhng hóu la--néih jauh m̀hsái chēutheui lā.	That's good--then you won't have to go out.
yīk	benefit, profit
yáuh yīk	beneficial, good for you, profitable
deui, deuiyù	towards
Gám ge tìnhei chēutheui deui néih móuh yīk ga.	Going out in such weather isn't good for you.

B. Recapitulation:

(Younger brother and elder sister
discuss an approaching typhoon)

Sailóu

Wah, dī fùng yuht làih yuht daaih tìm!	Wow--the wind is getting stronger all the time!
Dīm chēut gāai a?	How can I go out?

Gājē

Yìhgíng gwajó sàam houh fùngkàuh ge lo bo--	They've already put up the Number 3 typhoon signal--(as if to suggest that her younger brother shouldn't go out)

Néih juhng séung chēut gāai àh?	You still plan to go out?
Yùhgwó yāt jyun ńgh houh yíhseuhng, waahkjé jauh móuh chè móuh syùhn ge laak.	If it once goes higher than Number 5, then maybe there won't be any buses or ferries.
Sailóu	
Haih a.	That's right.
Daahnhaih ngóh tùhng Jèung Síujé yeukhóu léuhng dím yāt go gwāt ji léuhng dím bun hái máhtàuh ginmihn.	But I made an appointment to meet Miss Cheung at the ferry between 2:15 and 2:30.
Gājē	
Yìhgā géi dím a?	What time is it now?
Sailóu	
Jāangdī léuhng dím la.	It's almost 2 o'clock.
Gājē	
Néih dímgáai m̀hdá dihnwá béi kéuih, giu kéuih gói daihyaht nē?	Why don't you phone her and tell her to change it to another day?
Sailóu	
Hósīk kéuih ūkkéi móuh dihnwá--	Unfortunately her house doesn't have a phone.
Móuh baahnfaat tūngjī kéuih.	There's no way to communicate with her.
Gājē	
Yìhgā dágán fùng, ngóh gú Jèung Síujé daaihkói dōu m̀hchēutlàih ge laak.	Since there's a typhoon going on now, I bet Miss Cheung probably won't even go out.
(The phone rings:)	
Sailóu	
A, daaihkói haih kéuih dálàih laak.	Oh, that's probably her calling now.
Gājē	
Gám juhng hóu lā--néih jauh m̀hsái chēutheui la.	That's good--then you won't have to go out.

Gám ge tīnhei chēutheui deui néih móuh yīk ga.	**Going out in such weather isn't good for you.**

II. NOTES

1. yuht.....yuht..... = more and more

There are several patterns formed with the double yuht:

a. yuht làih yuht Adjective = 'getting more and more Adjective'

Ex: 1. Dī fùng yuht làih yuht daaih tìm!	The wind is getting bigger and bigger! (i.e., stronger and stronger)
2. Kéuih yuht làih yuht lēk.	He's getting smarter all the time.
3. Kéuih sé jih yuht làih yuht lēk.	His writing is better and better all the time.

(See BC and Drill 1)

b. yuht Verb yuht Adjective = the more (or the longer) he Verbs, the more Adjective it becomes.

Ex: Kéuih yuht góng yuht làuhleih.	The more (or the longer) he talks the more fluent he gets.

(See Drill 2)

c. yuht Adjective^1 yuht Adjective^2 = the more (or the longer) Adjective^1 the more Adjective^2.

Ex: Yuht faai yuht hóu.	The sooner (or the quicker) the better.

2. yeuk, 'request an appointment,' 'make an appointment'

yeuk is a performance verb, basically meaning 'to request an appointment.'

Ex: Ngóh séung yeuk go sihgaan.	I want to make an appointment [ask for a time]. (said in making doctor's appointment)

yeuk enters into performance-achievement compounds with -hóu, 'satisfactory,' forming yeukhóu, 'ask for and get, i.e., set, an appointment.'

Ex: Ngóh tùhng kéuih yeukhóu hái máhtàuh ginmihn.	I arranged with her to meet at the pier.

(See BC)

3. deui + Obj Adj = towards / about / for / with 'Obj is Adj'; i.e., 'is Adj towards / about / for / with Obj.'

deui + Obj is a prepositional phrase which comes before the adjective it forms a larger phrase with. In English equivalent sentences, the prepositional phrase follows the adjective: 'good for Obj,' 'harmful to Obj,' 'satisfied with Obj,' 'clear about Obj, etc.'

	S	P	
Ex:	S	deui + Obj	Adj.
	Yàuhséui	deui néih	hóu yáuh yīk ga.

S	P
S	is Adj prep + Obj
Swimming	is good for you.

(See BC and Drill 7)

The deui Obj pattern is a device for placing the object of the adjective before the adjective in the sentence. With some adjectives the object can either follow the adjective directly or precede it in a deui phrase. An example is:

S	P		
S	(deui + Obj	Adj	(Obj)

1. Kéuih m̀hchìngchó nī gihn sih bo.

or

2. Kéuih deui nī gihn sih m̀hchìngchó bo.

He's not clear about this matter.

With other adjectives the deui device is compulsory-- there is no other way to phrase the sentence. Examples are:

1. Gàmyaht chēutheui deui néih móuhyīk ga.	Going out today is not good for you.
2. Néih deui kéuih m̀hhóu ge.	You're not nice to him.

The deui + Object phrase occupies the same pre-verbal sentence position as the Co-verb + Obj phrase, but deui as a preposition differs from co-verbs in not taking a negative prefix.

Compare a negative co-verb sentence with a negative deui sentence:

Kéuih m̀htùhng ngóh heui.	He's not going with me.
Kéuih deui ngóh m̀hhóu ga.	He's not nice to me.

4. lìhn: as preposition = 'including ___;' 'and ___;' 'even ___'
lìhn: as Verb = 'to include'

lìhn is a word that belongs to more than one grammatical category. It is primarily a preposition, but also is used as a verb.

a. lìhn as a preposition

1) lìhn(màaih) = 'including'

lìhn(màaih) + Obj, preceding the body of a sentence = 'including Obj.'

Ex: Lìhn(màaih) kéuih, ngóhdeih yáuh sahp go yàhn.	Including her, there are 10 of us.

(See Drill 4.4.b)

2) lìhn(màaih) = 'and'

In another pattern, lìhn(màaih) joins two nouns in subject position with the meaning 'and.'

Ex: Dī syù lìhn bāt hahmbahlaahng yiu yahgéi mān.	The books and pencils together cost twenty-some dollars.

(See Drill 4.4)

3) lìhn = 'even'

lìhn can be translated as 'even' in negative sentences of the pattern:

$$\text{Lìhn } \underline{\text{ X }} \text{ (Subj) dōu} \left\{\begin{matrix}\text{m̀h}\\ \text{móuh}\\ \text{meih}\end{matrix}\right\} \text{V} = \text{'even } \underline{\text{ X }} \text{ (Subj)} \left\{\begin{matrix}\text{won't}\\ \text{can't}\\ \text{etc.}\end{matrix}\right\} \text{do.}$$

This pattern is a rearrangement of the SVO order of a negative sentence for emphasis:

$$\text{S} \left\{\begin{matrix}\text{m̀h}\\ \text{móuh}\\ \text{meih}\end{matrix}\right\} \text{VO} \longrightarrow \text{Lìhn O, (S) dou} \left\{\begin{matrix}\text{m̀h}\\ \text{móuh}\\ \text{meih}\end{matrix}\right\} \text{V.}$$

Examples below give first the normal SVO sentence, then the rearranged sentence order of the lìhn X dōu m̀hV pattern:

1. Ngóh móuh chín tái yīsāng.	I don't have any money to see a doctor.
Lìhn tái yīsāng ngóh dōu móuh chín.	[Even see doctor I don't have money.] i.e., I don't even have money to see the doctor. (I'm that hard up)

(See Drill 11)

2. Ngóh m̀hsīk góng yāt geui Yìngmahn.	I can't speak one sentence of English.
Lìhn yāt geui Yìngmàhn ngóh dōu m̀hsīk gong.	I can't speak even one sentence of English.

(See Drill 11)

b. lìhn as a verb.

lìhn = 'include'

Ex: a. Lìhnm̀hlìhn(màaih) tīpsí a?	Does that include the tip?
b. Lìhnmàaih ge la. or Lìhn a.	Yes, it does.
c. M̀hlìhn.	No, it doesn't.

5. ge lo bo = sen.suf ge/ga 'that's the way it is' + sen.suf lo bo for good-natured protest.

Ex: 1. Yīhgìng gwajó sàam houh fùngkauh ge lo bo!	They've already raised the #3 typhoon signal. (response to addressee's announcement that he's going out into the typhoon. Implication is: They've already put up the signal, that's a fact; and you shouldn't do as you intend)
2. Ngóh sihkjó yeuhk ge lo bo.	I took my medicine-- (implies nicely: quit bugging me about it)
3. Sahp dím ge lo bo!	Ten o'clock! (you told me you were going out at ten-- you'd better get going instead of sitting there)

(See BC and Drill 12)

6. ...jē, ..dōu... 'Even though...., still....'
'Since only....., still....'

This is a double clause pattern, with the first clause a subordinate clause of concession and the second the principal clause. The jē indicates that the concession is thought to be a small one.

Ex: Néih gói léuhng dím bun jē, ngóh dōu haihgónm̀hchit ge bo.	Since you're only changing it to 2:30, I still can't make it. or If you only changed it to 2:30, I still couldn't make it.

(See Drill 14)

III. DRILLS

1. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih hóu láahn.	T: He's lazy.
S: Kéuih yuht làih yuht láahn.	S: He's getting lazier and lazier all the time. i.e., He's getting increasingly lazy.
1. Kéuih hóu kàhnlihk. He's very hard-working.	1. Kéuih yuht làih yuht kàhnlihk. He works harder and harder everyday.
2. Tīnhei hóu yiht.	2. Tīnhei yuht làih yuht yiht.
3. Ūkjòu hóu gwai.	3. Ūkjòu yuht làih yuht gwai.
4. Kéuih ge Gwóngdùngwá hóu lēk.	4. Kéuih ge Gwóngdùngwá yuht làih yuht lēk.
5. Kéuih hóu yáuhchín.	5. Kéuih yuht làih yuht yáuhchín.
6. Kéuih hóu pa.	6. Kéuih yuht làih yuht pa.

2. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Yuht góng yuht faai. /làuhleih/	T: The more he talks the faster it gets. /fluent/
S: Yuht góng yuht làuhleih.	S: The more he talks, the more fluent it gets.
1. Yuht chóh yuht dung. /guih/	1. Yuht chóh yuht guih.
2. Yuht sihk yuht hóu meih. /tóuhngoh/ The more you eat the better it tastes.	2. Yuht sihk yuht tóuhngoh.
3. Yuht hohk yuht maahn. /leuhnjeuhn/	3. Yuht hohk yuht leuhnjeuhn.
4. Yuht góng yuht daaihsèng. /làuhleih/	4. Yuht góng yuht làuhleih.
5. Yuht yám yuht génghot. /hóu meih/	5. Yuht yám yuht hóu meih.
6. Yuht tái yuht m̀hchīngchó. /ngáahnfan/ The longer I read the fuzzier it seems.	6. Yuht tái yuht ngáahnfan. The longer I read the sleepier I get.

3. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

1. Ngóh gú kéuih yātdihng m̀hlàih. I guess he's not coming.	1. Ngóh gú kéuih yātdihng m̀hlàih.
2. /yìhwàih/	2. Ngóh yìhwàih kéuih yātdihng m̀hlàih.
3. /wah/	3. Ngóh wah kéuih yātdihng m̀hlàih.
4. /gokdāk/	4. Ngóh gokdāk kéuih yātdihng m̀hlàih.
5. /pa/	5. Ngóh pa kéuih yātdihng m̀hlàih
6. /tèngginwah/	6. Ngóh tèngginwah kéuih yātdihng m̀hlàih.

---

4. Expansion Drill

1. a. gáu dím ji ńgh dím.	1. a. 9 o'clock to 5 o'clock.
b. jìujóu gáu dím ji hahjau ńgh dím.	b. 9 in the morning to 5 in the afternoon.
c. Múih yaht jíujóu gáu dím ji hahjau ńgb dím.	c. Everyday from 9 in the morning to 5 in the afternoon.
d. Múih yaht jìujóu gáu dím ji hahjau ńgh dím dōu hái séjihlàuh.	d. (I'm) at the office everyday from 9 in the morning to 5 in the afternoon.
+ 2. a. fai.	2. a. fee, fare, expenses.
+ b. hohk fai.	b. school fees, tuition.
c. béi hohk fai.	c. pay tuition.
d. m̀hsái béi hohk fai.	d. don't need to pay tuition.
e. sái m̀hsái béi hohk fai a?	e. do you have to pay tuition?
f. Hohk Gwóngdùngwá, sái m̀hsái béi hohk fai a?	f. Do you have to pay tuition to study Cantonese?
g. Hái Méihgwok Lìhngsihgwún hohk Gwóngdùngwá, sái m̀hsái béi hohk fai a?	g. Do you have to pay tuition to study Cantonese at the American Consulate?
+ 3. a. Búnlòih heui Tòihwāan.	3. a. Originally, (we) were going to Taiwan.

b. Búnlòih dásyun heui Tòihwāan	b. Originally, (we) planned to go to Taiwan.
c. Ngóhdeih búnlòih dásyun heui Tòihwāan.	c. We originally planned to go to Taiwan.
d. Ngóhdeih chōchō búnlòih dásyun heui Tòihwāan.	d. We originally, in the beginning, planned to go to Taiwan.
e. Ngóhdeih chōchō búnlòih dásyun heui Tòihwāan, daahnhaih yìhgā m̀hheuidāk.	e. We orginally, in the beginning, planned to go to Taiwan, but now we can't go.

Comment: búnlòih 'originally,' carries the implication that the outcome was different from original intention: 'originally planned _X_, however _Y_ instead.

+ 4. a. lìhn(màaih) dihnfai. lìhn(màaih) = including dihnfai = electricity fee	5. a. including the electricity payment.
b. lìhn(màaih) dihnfai yiu béi géi chín a?	b. how much is it including electricity?
+ c. séuifai lìhn(màaih) dihnfai yiu béi géi chín a? (séuifai = water fee)	c. how much do you have to pay for water and electricity?
d. séuifai lìhn(màaih) dihnfai hahmbahlaahng yiu béi géi chín a?	d. how much do you have to pay altogether, for water and electricity?
e. Múih go yuht séuifai lìhn(màaih) dihnfai hahmbahlaahng yiu béi géi chín a?	e. How much a month do you pay for water and electricity together?
5. a. yāt hòuhjí dōu móuh.	5. a. don't have a single dime.
b. lìhn yāt hòuhjí dōu móuh.	b. don't even have a single dime.
c. ngóh lìhn yāt hòuhjí dōu móuh.	c. I don't even have a single dime.
d. Ngóh jànhaih lìhn yāt hòuhjí dōu móuh.	d. I really don't even have a single dime.
e. Néih m̀hjī àh? Ngóh jànhaih lìhn yāt hòuhjí dōu móuh ga.	e. Don't you know? I really don't have even a single dime.
+ 6. a. dāng	6. a. light, lamp
+ b. dihndāng	b. electric light

+ c. jáan dihndāng (jáan = M for lamp)	c. a lamp, a light
d. gó jáan dihndāng.	d. that lamp, light.
e. syùfóng gó jáan dihndāng.	e. the lamp in the study.
f. sàanjó syùfóng gó jáan dihndāng lā.	f. please turn off the lamp (or light) in the study.
g. Hóu sàanjó syùfóng gó jáan (dihn) dāng lā.	g. You'd better turn off the lamp (or light) in the study. (said as a suggestion, not as a threat)

5. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Néih m̀hhaih wah, yiu chēut gāai gé?	T: Didn't you say you had to go out? (you see that he's still here.)
+ S: Néih yauh wah yiu chēut gāai?	S: Didn't you say you had to go out? (i.e., you said...but it's not so--what's up?)
1. Néih m̀hhaih wah, sēungfùng gé?	1. Néih yauh wah sēungfùng?
2. Néih m̀hhaih wah, gàmyaht hahjau m̀hsái ngóh làih gé?	2. Néih yauh wah gàmyaht hahjau m̀hsái ngóh làih?
3. Néih m̀hhaih wah, yíhgīng jyunjó baat houh fùngkàuh gé?	3. Néih yauh wah yíhgīng jyunjó baat houh fùngkàauh?
4. Néih m̀hhaih wah, gói tīngyaht gé?	4. Néih yauh wah gói tīngyaht?
5. Néih m̀hhaih wah, yeukm̀hdóu kéuih gé?	5. Néih yauh wah yeukm̀hdóu kéuih?
6. Néih m̀hhaih wah, móuh tūngjī kéuih gé?	6. Néih yauh wah móuh tūngjī kéuih?
7. Néih m̀hhaih wah, yáuh baahnfaat gé?	7. Néih yauh wah yáuh baahnfaat?
8. Néih m̀hhaih wah, dihndāng waaihjó gé?	8. Néih yauh wah dihndāng waaihjó?
9. Néih m̀hhaih wah, jàangdī chāt dím gé?	9. Néih yauh wah jàangdī chāt dím?

6. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih deui nī gihn sih, m̀hchìngchó bo.	T: She's not very clear about this.
S: Kéuih deui nī gihn sih chìng m̀hchìngchó a?	S: Is she clear about this? (i.e., does she understand how it works?)
1. Néih deui kéuih m̀hhóu. You're not nice to him.	1. Néih deui kéuih hóu m̀hhóu a?
2. Kéuih deui nī gihn sih, yātdī dōu m̀hfuhjaak.	2. Kéuih deui nī gihn sih fuh m̀hfuhjaak a?
3. Kéuih deui dá jih yātdī cheuimeih dōu móuh. (She doesn't have the slightest interest in typing.) deui X yáuh cheuimeih = be interested in X.	3. Kéuih deui dá jih yáuh móuh cheuimeih a?
4. Yàuhséui deui néih hóu yáuh yīk ga.	4. Yàuhséui deui ngóh yáuh móuh yīk a?
5. Yámjáu deui néih móuh yīk ga.	5. Yámjáu deui ngóh yáuh móuh yīk a?
6. Tái syù deui néih ge behng m̀hhóu ga.	6. Tái syù deui ngóh ge behng hóu m̀hhóu a?
7. Kéuih deui nī gihn sih hóu chìngchó.	7. Kéuih deui nī gih sih chìng m̀hchìngchó a?

---

7. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih m̀hjùngyi dá jih ge.	T: She doesn't like to type.
S: Kéuih deui dá jih, yātdī dōu m̀hjùngyi.	S: About typing--she doesn't like it a bit.
1. Kéuih m̀hpa dá fùng ge.	1. Kéuih deui dá fùng, yātdī dōu m̀hpa.
2. Kéuih m̀hpa màhmā ge.	2. Kéuih deui màhmā, yātdī dōu m̀hpa.
3. Kéuih m̀hjī nī gihn sih ge.	3. Kéuih deui nī gihn sih, yātdī dōu m̀hjī.
4. Kéuih m̀hfuhjaak jáinéui ge hohk fai ge.	4. Kéuih deui jáinéui ge hohk fai, yātdī dōu m̀hfuhjaak.
5. Kéuih m̀hdáleih sailóugō ge.	5. Kéuih deui sailóugō, yātdī dōu m̀hdáleih.

6. Kéuih m̀hsīk dá páai ge.	6. Kéuih deui dá páai, yātdī dōu m̀hsīk.

---

8. Response Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih múih go yuht yiu béi sei sahp mān séui fai. /$50/	T: His water bill is $40 a month.
+ S: M̀hjī, yiu béi ńgh-sahp mān ga.	S: Not just ($40)--it's $50.
1. Kéuih múih go yuht yiu béi baat sahp mān hohk fai. /$100/	1. M̀hjī, yiu béi yāt baak mān ga.
2. Kéuih múih yaht yiu béi ńgh go bun ngàhnchín chē fai. /$7.50/	2. M̀hjī, yiu béi chāt go bun ngàhnchín ga.
3. Kéuih múih yaht yiu béi sei hòuhjī syùhn fai. /$50¢/	3. M̀hjī, yiu béi ńgh hòuhjī ga.
4. Kéuih múih go yuht yiu béi baak ńgh mān dihn fai. /$170/	4. M̀hjī, yiu béi baak chāt mān ga.
5. Kéuih múih sàam go yuht yiu béi baat shap mān séui fai. /more than $100/	5. M̀hjī, yiu béi baak géi mān ga.
6. Kéuih múih go yuht yiu béi baak géi mān yeuhk fai. /$210/	6. M̀hjī, yiu béi yih baak yāt mān ga.

---

9. Expansion Drill: X ji Y dōu

Ex: T: Móuh sówaih gé. /sahp mān/yih sahp mān/	T: It doesn't make any difference. /$10/$20/
S: Sahp mān ji yih sahp mān dōu móuh sówaih gé.	S: Anything between $10 and $20 is OK.
1. Ngóh m̀hdākhàahn bo. /chāt dím/sahp dím/	1. Chāt dím ji sahp dím ngóh dōu m̀hdākhàahn gé.
2. Ngóh hái Jùngmàhn daaihhohk gaau syù. /1958 nìhn/1966/	2. Yāt gau ńgh baat nìhn ji yāt gau luhk luhk ngóh dōu hái Jùngmàhn daaihhohk gaau syù gé.

3. Ngóh móuh chéng gùngyàhn. /gauhnìn/yìhgā/	3. Gauhnìn ji yìhgā ngóh dōu móuh chéng gùngyàhn gé.
4. Ngóh móuh sihk faahn. /kàhmmáahn/gàmjìu/	4. Kàhmmáhn ji gàmjìu ngóh dōu móuh sihk faahn.
5. Ngóh meih gingwo kéuih. /chāt yuht/sahp yuht/ I haven't seen him.	5. Chāt yuht ji sahp yuht ngóh dōu meih gingwo kéuih gé. I didn't see him from July to October.

---

10. Expansion Drill: Expand with V-dākchit, 'time enough to V__,' or m̀hV-dākchit, 'not enough time to V__,' according to the pattern set by the example sentences.

Ex: 1.	T: Yìhgā m̀hhaih hóu yeh jē. /máaih/	T: It's not very late now. /buy/
	S: Yìhgā m̀hhaih hóu yeh jē, máaih-dākchit gé.	S: It's not very late now--there's time to buy it.
2.	T: Yìhgā gam yeh laak. /máaih/	T: It's so late now--. /buy/
	S: Yìhgā gam yeh laak, m̀hmáaih-dākchit ge laak.	S: It's so late now--there's not time to buy it.

1. Yìhgā gam ngaan laak. /gón/	1. Yìhgā gam ngaan laak, m̀hgóndākchit ge la.
2. Yìhgā hóu jóu. /jìng/	2. Yìhgā hóu jóu, jìngdākchit gé.
3. Yìhgā gam chìh. /jouh/	3. Yìhgā gam chìh, m̀hjouhdākchit ge la.
4. Yìhgā gam yeh laak. /dá/	4. Yìhgā gam yeh laak, m̀hdádāk-chit ge la.
5. Yìhgā m̀hhaih hóu yeh jē. /sái/	5. Yìhgā m̀hhaih hóu yeh jē, sáidākchit gé.
6. Yìhgā hóu ngaan laak. /heui/	6. Yìhgā hóu ngaan laak, m̀hheuidākchit ge la.
7. Yìhgā m̀hhaih hóu chìh jē. /dá/	7. Yìhgā m̀hhaih hóu chìh jē, dádākchit gé.

---

11. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih dāk yāt go gùngyàhn.	T: She has only one servant.
S: Kéuih lìhn yāt go gùngyàhn dōu móuh.	S: Not even one servant does she have. or She doesn't even have one servant.
1. Kéuih dāk yāt gihn sàn sāam.	1. Kéuih lìhn yāt gihn sàn sāam dōu móuh.
2. Kéuih dāk yāt go pàhngyáuh.	2. Kéuih lìhn yāt go pàhngyáuh dōu móuh.
3. Kéuih dāk yāt gauh fàangáan.	3. Kéuih lìhn yāt gauh fàangáan dōu móuh.
4. Kéuih dāk yāt hòuhjí.	4. Kéuih lìhn yāt hòuhjí dōu móuh.
5. Kéuih dāk yāt jek būi.	5. Kéuih lìhn yāt jek būi dōu móuh.

---

12. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh dámjó laak.	T: I tossed it out.
S: Ngóh yíhgìng dámjó ge lo bo.	S: I already tossed it out. (protesting, but friendly)
1. Jyunjó chāthouh fùngkàuh laak.	1. Yíhgìng jyunjó chāthouh fùngkàuh ge lo bo.
2. Ngóh jáau fàan chín béi kéuih laak.	2. Ngóh yíhgìng jáau fàan chín béi kéuih ge lo bo.
3. Kéuih sihkjó yeuhk laak.	3. Kéuih yíhgìng sihkjó yeuhk ge lo bo.
4. Ngóh tùngjījó kéuih laak.	4. Ngóh yíhgìng tùngjījó kéuih ge lo bo.
5. Ngóh fànfujó kéuih laak.	5. Ngóh yíhgìng fànfujó kéuih ge lo bo.
6. Ngóh wùihjó seun béi kéuih laak.	6. Ngóh yíhgìng wùihjó seun béi kéuih ge lo bo.

---

13. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Bāsī maahn gwotàuh. /dīksī/	T: The bus is much too slow. /taxi/
S: Bāsī maahn gwotàuh, bātyùh chóh dīksī bá laak.	S: The bus is much too slow--we'd better take a taxi.
1. Háuh ge yiht gwotàuh. /bohk ge/	1. Hauh ge yiht gwotàuh, bātyùh jeuk bohk ge bá laak.
2. Yàuhséui dung gwotàuh. /tái hei/	2. Yàuhséui dung gwotàuh, bātyùh tái hei bá laak.
3. Tòihwāan yúhn gwotàuh. /Gwóngjàu/	3. Tòihwāan yúhn gwotàuh, bātyùh heui Gwóngjàu bá laak.
4. Syùn laaht tòng laaht gwotàuh. /yiu yú tòng/ order fish soup	4. Syùn laaht tòng laaht gwotàuh, bātyùh yiu yú tòng bá laak.
5. Heiséui dung gwotàuh. /gafē/	5. Heiséui dung gwotàuh, bātyùh yám gafē bá laak.
6. Nàahmgūngyàhn (ge yàhngùng) gwai gwotàuh. /chéng néuihgùngyàhn/	6. Nàahmgūngyàhn (ge yàhngùng) gwai gwotàuh, bātyùh chéng néuihgūngyàhn bá laak.

14. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Néih dáng ngóh jē,...	T: Even though you would wait for me,...
S: Néih dáng ngóh jē, ngóh dōu haih gónm̀hchit ge bo.	S: Even though you would wait for me, I still can't make it. (wouldn't have time to do it.)
1. Néih gói léuhng dím bun jē,... Even if you would change it to 2:30...	1. Néih gói léuhng dím bun jē, ngóh dōu haih gónm̀hchit ge bo.
2. Néih tīngyaht ji yiu jē,... Even though you don't need it until tomorrow...	2. Néih tīngyaht ji yiu jē, ngóh dōu haih gónm̀hchit ge bo.
3. Néih gó bāan fēigēi ńgh dím bun ji hòi jē,...	3. Néih gó bāan fēigēi ńgh dím bun ji hòi jē, ngóh dōu haih gónm̀hchit ge bo.
4. Kéuihdeih gàmmáahn ji làih jē,...	4. Kéuihdeih gàmmáahn ji làih jē, ngóh dōu haih gónm̀hchit ge bo.

5. Kéuih kàhmyaht tùngjī ngóh jē,...	5. Kéuih kàhmyaht tùngjī ngóh jē, ngóh dōu haih gónm̀hchit ge bo.

---

15. Expansion Drill: Expand with sèuiyìhn...., daahnhaih....

Ex: T: Néih wah móuh ngàihhím jē, ngóh dōu haih pa ge.	T: (Although) you say there's no danger, I'm (still) afraid.
S: Sèuiyìhn néih wah móuh ngàihhím jē, daahnhaih ngóh dōu haih pa ge.	S: Although you say there's no danger, I'm still afraid.
1. Dihnsih waaihjó jē, néih hóyíh tèng sāuyāmgèi ā.	1. Sèuiyìhn dihnsih waaihjó jē, daahnhaih néih hóyíh tèng sāuyāmgèi ā.
2. Yiu béi yāt chīn mān jē, ngóh dōu gau chín gé. Even though I had to spend $1000, I still have some money.	2. Sèuiyìhn yiu béi yāt chīn mān jē, daahnhaih ngóh dōu gau chín gé.
3. Kéuih gokdāk m̀hsyùfuhk, kéuih juhng fàan gùng.	3. Sèuiyìhn kéuih gokdāk m̀hsyùfuhk, daahnhaih kéuih juhng fàan gùng.
4. Jyunjó chāt houh fùngkàuh, ngóh juhng yiu fàan gùng.	4. Sèuiyìhn jyunjó chāt houh fùngkàuh, daahnhaih ngóh juhng yiu fàan gùng.
5. Kéuih yìhgìng gitjó fān, kéuih juhng yáuh hóudò néuihpàhngyáuh.	5. Sèuiyìhn kéuih yìhgìng gitjó fān, daahnhaih kéuih juhng yáuh hóudò néuihpàhngyáuh.
6. Ngóh hóu tóuhngoh, ngóh m̀hséung sihk yéh.	6. Sèuiyìhn ngóh hóu tóuhngoh, daahnhaih ngóh m̀hséung sihk yéh.

---

16. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Ngóh nīpáai m̀hhái ngūkkéi.	1. Ngóh nīpáai m̀hhái ngūkkéi.
2. /tàuhsīn/	2. Ngóh tàuhsīn m̀hhái ngūkkéi.
3. /ngāamngāam/	3. Ngóh ngāamngāam m̀hhái ngūkkéi.
4. /hóu dò sīh dōu/	4. Ngóh hóu dò sīh dōu m̀hhái ngūkkéi.

5. /sìhsìh dōu/	5. Ngóh sìhsìh dōu m̀hhái ngūkkéi.
6. /yáuhsìh/	6. Ngóh yáuhsìh m̀hhái ngūkkéi.
7. /hóu síu/	7. Ngóh hóu síu m̀hhái ngūkkéi.
+ 8. /góján(sìh)/ (at that time)	8. Ngóh góján(sìh) m̀hhái ngūkkéi.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

1) gēichèuhng = fēigēichèuhng = airport
2) gēi = fēigēi
3) chèuhng = M for wind
4) hòhnghùng gūngsī = airline company
5) (ng)ūkjyú = landlord, landlady
6) woh = that's what he said.
7) sàam fóng = 3 bedrooms
8) léuhng tēng = 2 sitting places--i.e., living room and dining room. (Léuhng tēng = haaktēng + faahntēng)
9) dihndāngdáam = light bulb
10) ji ma = that's all
11) séuidihnfai = water and electricity fees
12) M̀hwúih sàu gwai = I wouldn't take too much from you [wouldn't-take-expensive]
13) fòngbihn = convenient
14) bīujéun = standard , i.e., here: speaks like a Cantonese person
15) sàangyi = commercial business
16) paai = send
17) yáuh hingcheui = to be interested in
18) dāan sàngyi = some business [dāan 'list,' M for sàangyi]
19) jām = discuss
20) Dūng Nàahm A = Southeast Asia
21) Yuhtnàahm = Vietnam
22) Máhlòiha = Malaya
23) geiwúih = opportunity

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE:

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:	B. And he replies:
1. That child is getting lazier and lazier.	1. That's what I say too.
2. The more you speak Cantonese the more fluent you become.	2. The more I talk the worse it is.
3. Didn't you say you were going to bed? How come you're still up?	3. I went to bed but I couldn't get to sleep.
4. Where are you meeting Miss Ma?	4. At the library.
5. His illness is getting more and more dangerous.	5. Unfortunately he doesn't have the money to see a doctor.
6. How much tuition do you pay for Cantonese Lessons?	6. We don't have to pay tuition.
7. I hear Mrs. Cheung made an appointment to go to Mrs. Chan's to play mahjong.	7. She originally planned to go to Mrs. Chan's, but in the end she went to Mrs. Lau's for dinner.
8. Does the rent include water and electricity?	8. It includes the water but not electricity.
9. His wife is over 30.	9. Not just (over 30) -- she's over 40!
10. Miss Wong doesn't have a phone-- how will I get in touch with her?	10. There's nothing you can do.
11. I don't know anything about playing mahjong.	11. I'll teach you, OK?
12. Even if you taught me, I'd still be stupid.	12. You're too modest.
13. There's a typhoon coming.	13. Is that so? Have they put up the typhoon signal?
14. Let's meet at the Hong Kong University library after you get off from work.	14. I have a terrible headache today and I'm not going to go to work.
15. Is Mr. Lau responsible for this matter?	15. No, he isn't.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 30

1.	búnlòih	MA:	originally
2.	daaihkói or daaihkoi	MA:	probably
3.	dá fùng	VO:	have a typhoon [hit-wind]
4.	daihyaht	Ph:	another day, another time (reduced from daih yih yaht)
5.	deui, deuiyù	prep:	towards, for, in regard to
6.	deui...yáuh cheuimeih	Ph:	be interested in
7.	dihndāng	n:	electric light, electric lamp
8.	dihnfai	n:	electricity expense
9.	fai	n:	fees, expenses
10.	fùng	n:	wind
11.	fùngkàuh	n:	typhoon signal
12.	ge lo bo!	ss:	ge/ga 'that's the way it is'+ ss. lobo for good natured protest
13.	ginmihn	VO:	meet [see-face]
14.	gói	v:	change, alter
15.	gú	v:	guess, conjecture, bet, hazard a guess
16.	hósīk	MA:	unfortunately
17.	jáan	M:	M for light or lamp
18.	jāangdī	adv:	almost, lacks a little
19.	A ji B	Prep:	between A and B, from A to B
20.	lìhn (màaih)	cv:	including
21.	lìhn...dōu m̀h V	PhF:	not even, even
22.	m̀hjí	Ph:	more than; not just...
23.	Móuh baahnfaat.	Ph:	'There's no way;' 'can't do anything about it;' 'it can't be helped'
24.	Néih m̀hhaih wah...?	Ph:	Didn't you say...?
25.	Néih yauh wah...?	Ph:	You said...(but it's not so; what's up?)
26.	séuifai	n:	water expenses
27.	tùngjì	v:	communicate (with)
28.	Wah!	Ex:	Exclamation of awe
29.	yáuh yīk	VO:	benefit
30.	yeuk	v:	make an appointment
31.	yeukhóu	v:	agree on the time and/or place for an appointment

32. _X_ yíhseuhng		above _X_, more than _X_ (follows _nu -M_ expression)
33. yīk	n:	benefit, profit
34. yuht làih yuht.$\overset{Adj}{...}$.	Ph:	getting more and more .$\overset{Adj}{...}$.
35. yuht...yuht....	Ph:	the more....the more....

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

Lesson Sixteen

1. Two friends discuss what they did last Saturday:

A: Néih seuhng go láihbaai luhk heui bīndouh wáan a?

B: Tùhng ngóh taaitáai heui yàuhséui. Néih nē?

A: Láihbaai luhk ngóh dōu séung heui yàuhséui gé, daahnhaih ngóh néuihpàhngyáuh wah m̀hheui. Sóyíh ngóhdeih heuijó dá móhng kàuh.

B: Hái bīndouh dá a?

A: Hái Bóuwàhn Douh kàuhchèuhng. Néih hái gódouh dágwo meih a?

B: Meih. Ngóh meih hái gódouh dágwo. Hái bīndouh ngóh dōu m̀hjì.

A: Néih tìngyaht séung m̀hséung heui a? Ngóh daai néih heui ā.

B: Tìngyaht ngóh m̀kdākhàahn. Daihyaht sīn lā.

1) wáan = amuse oneself, general verb for leisure time activity
2) sóyíh = therefore
3) dá móhng kàuh = play tennis
4) Bóuwàhn Douh = Bowen Road
5) kàuh chèuhng = tennis court
6) daih yaht = daih (yih) yaht = another day

2. Discussing a trip to the Philippines:

A: Néih kàhmyaht heuijó bīndouh a? Ngóh dá dihnwá séung wán néih heui sihk ngaan. Néih beisyù wah néih heuijó Máhneihlāai, heui gódouh yáuh mēyéh sih a?

B: O. Gūngsī yáuh dī sih yiu ngóh heui Fēileuhtbàn. Hái gó bihn máaihjó léuhng baak gihn Fēileuhtbān sēutsāam.

A: Néih hái góbihn yáuh móuh heui wán Wòhng Bóu-jūng a?

B: Móuh. Ngóh hóu séung heui wán kéuih a, daahnhaih dōu m̀hdākhàahn. Hái gódouh ngóh jihnghaih máaihjó dī yéh béi ngóh taaitáai tùhng sailóugō ja.

A: Máaihjó dī mēyéh béi kéuihdeih a? Yauh haih máaih géi gihn Fēileuhtbān sēutsāam a?

B: M̀hhaih, ngóh tùhng ngóh taaitáai máaihjó go sáudói, géi leng gé. Kéuih hóu jùngyi a. Yauh máaihjó go bō béi go jái--máaihjó go gūngjái béi go néui.

A. O, gám jauh hóu lā. Wei! Dáng jahn yātchàih sihk ngaan ā? Ngóh tèngginwah Daaih Douh Jùng yáuh gàan chāansāt géi hóu ge bo.

B: Hóu a. Géidím a? Hái bīndouh dáng a?

A: Sahpyih dím daahp sàam lā, hóu ma? Jauh hái néih gūngsī làuhhah ginmihn lā.

B: Haih gám wah lā. Sahpyih dím daahp sàam ngóh hái gódouh dáng néih.

1) beisyù = secretary
2) Máhneihlāai = Manila
3) Fēileuhtbān = Philippines
4) gūngjái = doll
5) Wei = Hey!; Say!; exclamation used to attract someone's attention
6) yātchàih = together
7) gihmihn = meet
8) Haih gám wah lā. = We'll do it the way you say.

3. Two women friends meet on the street downtown:

Hòh Táai : Jóusàhn Léih Táai, néih nīpáai heui bīndouh làih a?

Léih Táai: Móuh heui bīndouh ā. Ngóh nīpáai dōu hái ūkkéi jouh sāam--hóu m̀hdākhàahn.

Hòh Táai : Haih laak. Néih dī jáinéui yìhgā dím a?

Léih Táai: Géi hóu. Kéuihdeih Kàhmyaht heuijó Gáulùhng ngóh màhmā douh. A! Hòh Táai, néih tìngyaht dāk m̀hdākhàahn heui Chàhn Táai gódouh dá màhjeuk a?

1) Móuh heui bīndouh = Haven't gone anywhere

Hòh Táai : O! Dá màhjeuk àh. Dākhàahn, néih dá dihnwá làih giu ngóh lā.

Láih Táai: Hóu aak, sái m̀hsái ngóh jà chē làih jip néih a?

Hòh Táai : M̀hsái. Ngóh jīdou dím heui Chàhn Táai douh ge laak. Chàhn Táai ūkkéi hái Wíhng Ōn Gūngsī hàahng gwo dī, Wíhng Ōn Ngàhnhòhng gaakleih ā ma. Haih bo, kéuih gódouh jógán hó m̀hhóyíh paak chē ga?

Léih Táai: Hóyíh. Néih sīnsàang tìngyaht dāk m̀hdākhàahn a?

Hòh Táai : Dākhàahn, yauh mēyéh sih nē?

Léih Táai: Ngóh sīnsàang séung chéng kéuih heui yám chàh.

Hòh Táai : Hóu, ngóh wah béi kéuih jī, giu kéuih hái séjihlàuh dáng néih sīnsàang lā. Hmm, ngóh yìhgā yiu heui Jùngwàahn Gàaisíh máaih sung la.

Léih Táai: Hóu. Joigin.

Hòh Táai : Joigin.

1) ā ma = sen. suf. of response sentence, indicating in a nice way: 'This is pretty obvious'

2) haih bo = here: by the way,...

3) máaih sung = buy groceries

Lesson Seventeen

1. An American and Cantonese in Hong Kong talk about travel in America:

A: Tèngginwah néih hahgo láihbaai heui Méihgwok, haih m̀hhaih a?

B: Móuh cho, ngóh dásyun yahluhk houh heui, jīkhaih láihbaaisei.

A: Haih mē? Néih yáuh móuh heuigwo Méihgwok a?

B: Yáuh, yāt-gáu-luhk-ńgh nìhn heuilàih.

A: Hái Méihgwok heuigwo bīndī deihfòng a?

B: Ngóh heuigwo Sàamfàahnsíh tùhng Wàhsihngdeuhn.

A: Néih yáuh móuh chānchīk hái gó léuhng dāat deihfòng a?

B: Yáuh, gó léuhng dāat deihfòng, ngóh dōu yáuh chānchīk hái douh.

A: Doujó Wàhsihngdeuhn, jigányiu làih ngóh douh chóh a.

B: Hóu aak.

2. Telephone conversation about traveling:

A: Wéi, m̀hgòi néih giu Wòhng Sàang tèng dihnwá.

B: Hóu, m̀hgòi dáng jahn.

C: Wái, bīn wái a?

A: Ngóh sing Chàhn.

C: Ah! Chàhn Sàang, yáuh mātyéh sih a?

A: Móuh, ngóh séung mahnháh néih, jī m̀hjī Léih Gwōng-lùhng Sīnsàang géisìh fàanheui Méihgwok jē?

C: O! Kéuih hah go láihbaaiyih fàanheui, jīkhaih nī go yuht sahp baat houh.

A: Gám, néih jī m̀hjī kéuih fàanheui Méihgwok bīndouh a?

C: Ngóh m̀hchīngchó bo, tèngginwah kéuih fàanheui Wàhsihngdeuhn.

A: Haih mē! Wòhng Sàang, néih dásyun géisìh tùhng Wòhng Táai heui Sàamfàahnsìh taam kéuih màhmā a?

C: Ngóhdeih dásyun hahgo yuht heui.

A: Gám, néihdeih daai m̀hdaai dī jáinéui heui a?

C: Ngóhdeih hahchi ji daai kéuihdeih heui.

A: Haih lé. Néih dī jáinéui haih m̀hhaih dōu hái Méihgwok chēutsai ga?

C: Haih, kéuihdeih dōu haih hái gódouh chēutsai ge.

A: Ngóh heuigwo Méihgwok hóu dò chi, daahnhaih Sàamfàahnsìh tùhng Wàhsihngdeuhn ngóh juhng meih heuigwo. Néihdeih fàandouheui jigányiu béi go deihjí ngóh a?

C: Hóu aak. Ngóh yìhgā góng béi néih tèng sīn lā.

A: Hóu, dáng ngóh ló jī bāt làih sīn.

1) Móuh = Nothing special

2) ji = (not until) then

3) go deihjí = here: your address

3. Talking about a trip to Singapore:

A: Lóuh Wóng, hóu noih móuh gin. Heui bīndouh làih a?

B: O. Ngóh heuijó Sīnggabō, ngāamngāam seuhng go láihbaai ji fàanlàih.

A: Haih mē? Néih géisí heui ga?

B: Ngóh seuhng go yuht yihsahp houh heui ge.

A: Néih yáuh móuh daai néih taaitáai tùhngmàaih dī sailóugō heui a?

B: Jihnghaih tùhng ngóh taaitáai heui. Dī sailóugō heuijó Tòihwāan jyuh hái ngóh taaitáai ngūkkéi, kéuihdeih kàhmyaht ngāamngāam ji fàanlàih.

1) Lóuh Wóng = 'Old Wong'--Lóuh + surname is used as form of address to a man by good friends. (The tone of the surname changes from low falling tone to high rising tone.)

2) Sīnggabō = Singapore

3) ngāamngāam = just

4) ji = (only) then, (not until) then

5) tùhngmàaih = tùhng

6) Tòihwāan = Taiwan

A: Néih yíhchìhn heuigwo Sīnggabō meih a?

B: O, heuigwo la. Ngóh hái gódouh chēutsai gé, bātgwo ngóh taaitáai yíhchìhn meih heuigwo. Néih nē?

A: Ngóh gauhnín daih yāt chi heui. Yìhgā hái gódouh ngóh yáuh dī sàangyi. Chēutnín sàamyuht ngóh waahkjé joi heui.

B: Néih taaitáai heui m̀hheui a?

A: Wàh m̀hdihng a. Seuhng chi ngóh móuh daai kéuih heui, béi kéuih jīdou ngóh hái góbihn yáuh go néuihpàhngyáuh. Ha. Ha. Ha.

B: Ha. Ha....

1) yíhchìhn = previously

2) sàangyi = (commercial) business

Lesson Eighteen

1. Street scene: two women gossip about recent events:

Wòhng Táai: Jèung Táai, heui bīndouh a?

Jèung Táai: Ngóh heui ngàhnhòhng ló chín. Néih nē?

Wòhng Táai: Ngóh heui fāangùng. Tèngginwah néih hahgo láihbaailuhk yiu bùn ūk, haih m̀hhaih a?

Jèung Táai: Haih. Ngóh séung bùn heui Gáulùhng jyuh.

Wòhng Táai: Néih hái Hèunggóng jyuhjó móuh géinói jē. Jouh mātyéh yiu bùn a?

Jèung Táai: Móuh, ngóh dī jáinéui hái Daaihluhk chēutjó làih, m̀hgau deihfòng jyuh.

Wòhng Táai: O. Néih dī jáinéui hái Gwóngjàu chēutjó làih mē?

Jèung Táai: Haih aak. Kéuihdeih yíhgìng daaihhohk bāt yihp laak. Yìhgā chēutlàih Hèunggóng jyuh, dásyun heui Méihgwok làuhhohk.Néih dī jáinéui yáuh móuh dásyun chēutheui a?

Wòhng Táai: Yáuh. Daahnhaih ngóh jidō béi go jái heui jē. Néih dī jáinéui heui dou Méihgwok haih m̀hhaih hái chānchīk douh jyuh a?

Jèung Táai: Hái, ngóh hèimohng kéuihdeih heui Wàhsihngdeuhn. Gám, jauh hóyíh jyuh hái chānchīk ūkkéi laak.

Wòhng Táai: Ngóh yíhchìhn dōu yáuh chānchīk hái Sàamfàahnsíh, yìhgā bùnjó heui Tòihwāan hái Tòihbāk jyuh. Tèngginwah gódouh hóuhóu jyuh jē, néih séung m̀hséung bùn fàanheui a?

Jèung Táai: Ngóh juhng meih kyutdihng. Yùhgwó yáuh chín, jauh bùn fàanheui.

Wòhng Táai: Ngóh làihjó Hèunggóng jīhauh jauh m̀hséung bùn la. Jisíu juhng yiu dáng yāt nìhn yíhhauh joi dásyun laak.

1) Jouh mātyéh = How come?

2) Móuh = 'Nothing special' A response making light of topic discussed.

Jèung Táai: Yìhgā sahpyāt dím daahp sahp laak, ngóh yiu fàan ūkkéi sihk ngaanjau la, joigin.

Wòhng Táai: Joigin.

1) sihk ngaanjau = sihk ngaan = eat lunch

a) ngaanjau = 'noon'

2. Talking about schooldays:

A: Gàmyaht géidō houh a?

B: Gàmyaht sahpsàam houh.

A: Yī--Gàmyaht yáuh go tùhnghohk gitfàn bo. Ngóh yiu chēutheui máaih dī yéh sung béi kéuih.

B: Bīndouh ge tùhnghohk a?

A: Kéuih tùhng ngóh haih jùnghohk ge tùhnghohk. Ngóhdeih yātchàih bātyihp ge.

B: Néih haih bīnnìhn bātyihp ga?

A: Yāt-gáu-luhk-sàam nìhn. Gójahnsìh ngóhdeih hái Oumún jyuh.

B: Ngóh yìhchìhn m̀hjīdou néih hái Oumún jyuhgwo. Hái gódouh jyuhjó géi nói a?

A: Sahp géi nìhn la. Ngóh hái gódouh chēutsai gé. Jùnghohk bātyihp jīhauh, ji làih Hèunggóng duhk daaihhohk. Néih heuigwo Oumún meih a?

B: Ngóh yìhchìhn heuigwo yāt chi.

A: Yìhhauh yùhgwó yáuh sìhgaan ngóh fàanheui gójahn, tùhng néih heui wáan a.

B: Hóu aak.

1) tùhnghohk = schoolmate

2) jùnghohk = high school, middle school

3) yātchàih = together

4) gójahnsìh = at that time

5) sahpgéi = more than ten [ten-several]

6) ji = (not until) then, (only) then

7) wáan = play, amuse oneself, entertain, enjoy leisure time

Lesson Nineteen

1. A Hong Kong resident tells a new American resident about H.K. money exchange.

Hongkongite: Jèung Sàang, kyutdihngjó géisí heui máaih yéh meih a?

American : Ngóh dásyun gàmyaht heui gé. Daahnhaih ngóh kàhmyaht m̀hgeidāk heui ngàhnhòhng wuhn Góngjí. Gàmyaht waahkjé

m̀hheuidāk laak.

Hongkongite: Oh, nīdouh dī daaih gūngsī dōu yuhng Méihgām waahkjé Yìngbóng gé. M̀hsái yātdihng béi Góngjí ga.

American : Haih mē? Gám, yāt mān Méihgām jīkhaih géi chín Góngjí a?

Hongkongite: Yāt go ngàhnchín Méihgām jisíu hóyíh wuhn luhk mān, jìdò luhk go lìhng ńgh gamseuhnghá lā.

American : Hmm...Yùhgwó ngóh gàmyaht heui máaih yéh, néih dāk m̀hdākhàahn tùhng ngóh yātchàih heui a?

Hongkongite: Dāk! Néih séung géidím heui a?

American : Yātján ngóh chéng néih heui sihk ngaanjau sín, yìhnhauh ji heui lā.

Hongkongite: Hóu aak. Dòjeh sín la.

1) m̀hheuidāk = can't go
   a) -dāk = 'can', 'able to', verb suffix (explain in Lesson 20)
2) yāt go ngàhnchín = one dollar ($1.00) (See L-21, Ex. 8)
3) sihk ngaanjau = eat lunch

2. A telephone inquiry:

A: Wái.

B: Sàam Hìng Gūngsī àh. M̀hgòi chéng Wòhng Sing-Gwòng Sīnsàang tèng dihnwá.

A: Yìhgā juhng meih séuhng bāan. M̀hgòi néih bun go jùngtàuh joi dá làih lā.

B: Hóu, m̀hgòi.

(After half hour he calls again)

C: Wái, Sàam Hìng Gūngsī.

B: M̀hgòi chéng Wòhng Sing-Gwòng Sīnsàang tèng dihnwá.

C: Wòhng Sàang heuijó Yahtbún bo. Bīn wái wán kéuih a?

B: O. Ngóh sing Jèung. Kéuih géisìh fàanlàih a?

C: Wah m̀hdihng ga.

B: Hahgo yuht kéuih daaihkoi fàanlàih meih a?

C: Hahgo yuht yātdihng fàanlàih ge la. Yáuh mēyéh sih a?

B: Néih haih m̀hhaih kéuih ge beisyù a?

C: Haih a.

1) séuhng bāan = start work
2) daaihkoi = probably
3) beisyù = secretary

B: Wòhng Sàang léuhng go láihbaai jíchìhn tùhng ngóh góng wah yiu máaih ngóh ga chè. M̀hjí kéuih yìhgā juhng séung m̀hséung máaih nē?

C: Kéuih móuh tùhng ngóh gónggwo bo. Bātgwo kéuih seuhng go láihbaai hóuchíh yíhgíng máaihjó ga laak. M̀hjí kéuih juhng yiu m̀hyiu máaih nē?

B: O. Gám àh, dáng kéuih fàan làih ngóh joi dá dihnwá béi kéuih la. M̀hgòisaai.

C: Hóu wah.

1) hóu chíh = it seems

2) Hóu wah.= Equivalent to 'You're welcome', 'Not at all', Response to being thanked for a service.

3. Talking with a friend on the telephone:

A: Wéi.

B: Wéi. Chàhn Waih-jùng ah? Néih sihkjó máahn faahn meih? Heui m̀hheui tái hei a?

A: Wòhng Jit-Mìhng a mah? Tái hei àh, m̀hdāk bo. Ngóh juhng yáuh hóudò gùngfo yiu jouh.

B: Ngóh táidóu boují wah Hòuh Wàh Heiyún chēut hei m̀hcho bo. Néih yìhgā joi jouh léuhng go jùngtàuh gùngfo juhng góndākchit ga. Ngóh sīn heui máaih fēi. Gáudímjùng hái heiyún mùhnháu dáng néih lā?

A: M̀hdāk. Ngóhdeih juhng meih sihk faahn. Sihkyùhn faahn, duhkyùhn syù jauh gónm̀hchit tái hei ge la.

B: Gám ah. Hah chi sīn la! Haih laak--Ngóh go dáfógēi ngāamngāam máaihjó yāt go láihbaai, kàhmyaht jauh m̀hginjó. M̀hjí yáuh móuh lauhdài hái néih ūkkéi nē? Néih yáuh móuh táidóu a?

A: Ngóh móuh táidóu bo, dáng ngóh mahnháh màhmā. Mà, yáuh móuh táidóu Wòhng Jit-Mìhng go dáfógēi a? Kéuih wah kàhmyaht hónàhng lauhdài hái nīdouh.

1) a mah? = 'isn't that right?' (being pretty sure it is) cf. French 'n'est ce pas

2) gùngfo = lessons, homework

3) góndākchit = can make it in time; there will be time to do it

4) fēi = ticket

5) -yùhn = finish a) sihkyùhn = finish eating

b) duhkyùhn = finish studying

6) gónm̀hchit = can't make it in time

7) ngāamngāam = just

8) lauhdài = leave behind

9) hónàhng =probably

C: Haih a. Hái néih gàan fóng jèung tói douh a máh.

A: Wái, Lóuh Wòng--hái douh a. Ngóh tingyaht ningfàan béi néih ā?

B: Hóu, m̀hgòisaai. Gám, néih m̀hheui tái hei lā ma?

A: M̀hheui la.

C: Waih-Jùng, hòi faahn la. M̀hhóu góng gám dò la.

A: Lóuh Wóng, haih gám sin la, tingyaht gin la.

B: Hóu, tingyaht gin. M̀hhóu m̀hgeidāk ningfàan go dáfógēi béi ngóh bo.

A: Dāk la. Tingyaht gin lā.

1) fóng = room

2) a máh = sen. suf. for obviousness (see also L16,CL3 ā ma)

3) Lóuh Wóng = 'Old Wong' term of address used as form of address to a man by good friends.

4) hòi faahn = 'Dinner is ready'

5) Haih gám sin la = 'That's all for now'

4. Talking about renting a house and buying furniture:

Wòhng Táai: Tèngginwah néih yiu wán ūk. Wándóu meih a?

Hòh Siujé : Haih a! Kàhmyaht sinji wándóu. Hái Nèihdēun Douh.

Wòhng Táai: Géi láu a?

Hòh Siujé : Sàam láu. Ngóh tùhng néih heui táiháh ā?

(They arrive at the house)

Wòhng Táai: A! Nī gāan ūk hóu m̀hcho bo! Yāt go yuht géi chin jòu a?

Hòh Siujé : Yāt chin mān, néih wah gwai m̀hgwai dī a?

Wòhng Táai: Haih gamseuhnghá lā. Gám, néih dásyun géisih bùn làih a?

Hòh Siujé : Yihgā juhng meih jidou. Nī gāan ūk mēyéh dōu móuh, dáng ngóh máaihjó dī gāsī, yihnhauh ji bùndak ga.

Wòhng Táai: Ngāam laak, ngóh yáuh go chānchīk haih maaih gāsī gé, néih séung m̀hséung heui gódouh táiháh nē?

Hòh Siujé : Hóu aak! Yùhgwó néih yihgā dākhàahn, jauh tùhng ngóh yātchàih heui lā!

Wòhng Táai: Ngóh heui jà ga chē làih, néih jauh hái nīdouh dáng ngóh lā!

Hòh Siujé : Jànhaih m̀hgòisaai la.

Wòhng Táai: M̀hsái haakhei.

(They drive to the store)

Wòhng Táai: A! dou laak. Ngóhdeih hái nīdouh paak chē sìn, yìhnhauh hàahng gwo heui la.

1) mēyéh dōu móuh = doesn't have anything

Hòh Síujé : Nī tou baahk sīk ge géi leng bo! Bātgwo luhk baak mān jauh gwaidī la! A, luhk baak mān jīkhaih chābātdō yāt baak mān Méihgām ge la. Haih m̀hhaih a?

Wòhng Táai: Haih ge la. Néih jùngyi, jauh máaihjó kéuih lā.

Hòh Síujé : (to the clerk) Hóu lā! Gám, tìngyaht sungheui béi ngóh, yìhnhauh béi chín dāk m̀hdāk a?

Sih Táu : Dāk. Ǹhgòi néih sé go deihjí béi ngóh lā.

Wòhng Táai: Ngóhdeih hóyìh jáu laak.

Sīnsàang : Joigin, maahn máan hàahng a.

Wòhng Táai: Joigin.

Hòh Síujé : Joigin.

1) chābātdō = chàm̀hdō
2) Máaihjó kéuih lā.= Buy it. (imperative--see L24,N __)
3) Maahn máan hàahng = 'Walk slowly' -- a polite goodby form, said to person leaving by person remaining.

Lesson Twenty

1. Going to the airport:

A: Chéngmahn néih, yàuh nīdouh dím heui fēigēi chèuhng a?

B: Aiya, hóu deuim̀hjyuh laak, ngóh m̀hchīngchó bo. Yànwaih ngóh hái Hèunggóng gó bihn jyuh gé, ngóh m̀hhaih géi sīk Gáulùhng nī bihn dī louh ga.

A: Gám a, néih jī m̀hjī nī tìuh louh yáuh móuh bāsí gwo ge nē?

B: Mm..., nījógán dōu tái m̀hdóu yáuh chèjaahm, waahkjé móuh laak.

A: Haih gám, dáng ngóh wándóu bāsí daap góján, ngóh pàhngyáuh chóh gó bāan fēigēi dōu yìhgìng hòijó la.

B: Yùhnlòih néih haih heui sung gēi ga? Gám, néih chóh dīksí heui la.

A: Gám, ngóh hàahng gwo sèsíu heui giu dīksí lā. Ǹhgòisaai bo.

B: Hóu wah.

1) louh = road
2) gwo = pass by
3) sung gēi = see (someone) off on a plane
4) Hóu wah = 'You're welcome'

2. At the train station:

A: Yí, yìhgā sìnji daahp sàam jē, dímgáai bāan fóchē yìhgìng hòijó ge la? Ngóh go bīu móuh cho ā? A, Sīnsàang, chéngmahn daahp bun hòi gó bāan fóchē doujó meih a?

B: Sahp dím bun gó bāan chè m̀hhaih yahtyaht dōu hòi ga. Jihnghaih láihbaailuhk tùhng láihbaaiyaht ji yáuh ge ja.

A: Haih bo. Ngóh dōu m̀hgeidāk tìm. Chéngmahn heui Sàtìhn yiu daap géi houh bāsí a?

B: Ngóh dōu m̀hhaih géi chingchó bo, néih heui bāsí jaahm góbihn mahnháh lā.

A: Hóu, m̀hgòi.

(A goes to bus stop)

A: Chéngmahn heui Sàtìhn yiu daap géi houh bāsí a?

C: Sahp gáu houh a lā.

A: Hah yāt bāan bāsí daahp géi hòi a?

C: Daahp bun jauh hòi ge la.

A: Hóu, m̀hgòi. O--Heui Sàtìhn ge chē géi nói hòi yāt bāan ga?

C: Bun go jùngtàuh yāt bāan.

A: Ǹhgòisaai.

1) Sàtìhn = Shatin, a village in the New Territories of Hong Kong

3. Two overseas Chinese students in Taiwan discuss going to Hong Kong:

Jèung Sàang: Máh Síujé, néih géisìh heui Hèunggóng a?

Máh Síujé : Nī go láihbaaiyaht, jīkhaih sahp houh.

Jèung Sàang: Gám, néih dásyun hái Hèunggóng jyuh géi nói a?

Máh Síujé : Yāt go láihbaai gamseuhnghá lā.

Jèung Sàang: Ngóh dōu yiu fàanheui Hèunggóng taam ngóh bàhbā tùhng màhmā. Ngóh múih nìhn dōu fàanheui yāt chi ga.

Máh Síujé : O, néih géisí jáu a?

Jèung Sàang: Ngóh hah go láihbaaiyih jáu, fàandouheui Hèunggóng ngóh dá dihnwá wán néih ā.

Máh Síujé : Hóu aak, néih yiu daai ngóh heui dī hóu wáan ge deihfōng hàahngháh ji dāk ge bo.

Jèung Sàang: Dāk la. Nàh, ngóh wándou néih jìhauh, sìn daai néih heui chóh laahmchè, séuhngheui Sàandéng táiháh Hèunggóng ge fùnggíng. Yìhnhauh tùhng néih heui hàahngháh gūngsī a, máaihháh yéh a. Gám, hóu m̀hhóu a?

Máh Síujé : Hóu, bātgwo ngóh juhng séung gwo hói hàahngháh, néih sīk m̀hsīk louh a?

1) fàandouheui = arrive back

2) hóu wáan ge deihfōng = fun places, amusing places

3) Nàh = used to attract attention. cf. English 'Listen',...

4) fùnggíng = scenery

5) louh = road

a) sīk louh = know the road; know your way around

Jèung Sàang: Māt m̀hsīk a? Ngóh jyuh hái Gáulùhng gé.

Máh Síujé : Gám, jauh ngāamsaai laak. Ngóh hóu séung heui Sàngaai hàahngháh tīm bo.

Jèung Sàang: Dāk, yùhgwó gau sìhgaan, ngóh jauh daai néih chóh fóchē heui Sàngaai lā.

Máh Síujé : Gám, m̀hgòisaai sīn bo. A, yìhgā ngóh yiu heui ló fēigēi piu, joigin laak. Fàandouheui Hèunggóng jigányiu làih wán ngóh a.

Jèung Sàang: Dāk ga la. Joigin.

1) Māt m̀hsīk a? = What do you mean, not know?

2) piu = ticket

Lesson Twenty-one

1. Two women discuss taking their children swimming:

Léih Táai : Chàhn Táai, jóusàhn, gàmyaht gam dākhàahn a?

Chàhn Táai: Haih a. Gàmyaht m̀hsái fàangùng, daai dī sailóugō chēut làih hàahngháh.

Léih Táai : Eh...gàmyaht géi yiht bo. Néih ngāamngāam hái Tòihwāan fàanlàih. Tòihwāan yáuh móuh nīdouh gam yiht a?

Chàhn Táai: Dōu haih yātyeuhng gam yiht. Gàmyaht gam yiht, ngóh hóu séung heui hóitaan yàuhséui.

Léih Táai : Haih a! Gam yiht heui yàuhséui jeui hóu ge laak. Ngóh gàmyaht dōu dākhàahn sahp dím jūng ngóh jà ga chè tùhng dī sailóugō làih jip néihdeih yātchàih heui ā? Hóu m̀hhóu a?

Chàhn Táai: M̀h, heui bīndouh nē?

Léih Táai : Heui Chín Séui Wāan lā, hóu m̀hhóu a?

Chàhn Táai: Hóu aak. A, néih dī sailóugō gìhgā géi daaih la. Ngóh géi nìhn meih gingwo kéuihdeih laak.

Léih Táai : O! Ngóh go jái chāt seui, go néui dōu ńgh seui la. Kéuihdeih dōu hóu jùngyi yàuhséui gé.

Chàhn Táai: A! Ngóh dōu yiu máaih dī yéh daaiheui ji dāk gá. Deuimihn yáuh jīu maaih. Dáng ngóh heui máaih dī la.

Léih Táai : Hóu aak. Dī sailóugō ji jùngyi sihk jīu ge laak. Gám, ngóh yìhgā fàanheui sīn, sahp dím làih jip néihdeih lā.

Chàhn Táai: Hóu, joigin.

Léih Táai : Joigon.

1) hói tāan = seaside

2) Chín Séui Wāan = Repulse Bay [Shallow Water Bay]

2. Two friends discuss where to go swimming:

A: Gàmyaht hóu yiht la.

B: Haih a. Gàmyaht yihtgwo kàhmyaht hóudò.

A: Heui m̀hheui Chínséui Wāan yàuhséui a?

B: M̀hdāk a. Ngóh yiu fàangùng. Tīngyaht láihbaailuhk, m̀hsái fàangùng. Tīngyaht heui ā.

A: Tīngyaht ngóh m̀hdākhàahn. Láihbaai ā.

B: Hóu lā. Daahnhaih ngóh wah Chínséui Wāan móuh Chekchyúh gam hóu bo.

A: Ngóh wah léuhng douh dōu yātyeuhng gam hóu. Daap bāsí heui Chekchyúh taai noih, sóyíh dōu haih heui Chínséui Wāan fòngbihn dī.

B: Hóu lā. Hóu lā. Gám, láihbaaiyaht ngóhdeih heui Chínséui Wāan lā.

1) Chínséui Wāan = Repulse Bay [Shallow Water Bay] a beach on the South Shore of Hong Kong island.

2) Chekchyúh = Stanley, a village and beach on the southeastern tip of Hong Kong island.

3) taai = too

4) fòngbihn = convenient

3. Two friends talk about the marriage of a 3rd friend:

A: Néih jī m̀hjī a, Lóuh Léih gitjófàn la bo.

B: Haih mē! Tùhng bīngo a?

A: Sing Wòhng ge--gàmnín sahpgáu seui ja.

B: Mēyéh wá? Māt Lóuh Léih daaih kéuih sèhng yihsahp seui ah!

A: Haih a. Haih kéuih hohksāang làih gé. Hái hohkhaauh haih jeui leng jeui lēk ga.

B: O, Ngóh juhng yíhwàih néih wah kéuih Lóuhdauh hái Hèunggóng haih jeui yáuh chín ge tīm.

A: Aaa--M̀hhaih--bātgwo kéuihdeih dou hóu yáuh chín ga.

B: Wàh háai. Wai, kéuih Lóuhdauh juhng yáuh móuh daihyih go néui ga? Ha. Ha....

1) Lóuh Léih = 'Old Lee'--Lóuh + surname is used as form of address to a man by good friends.

2) māt = exclamation of surprise, Compare English 'Why' in 'Why he's a full 20 years older than she!'

3) sèhng yihsahp seui = a full 20 years

4) Lóuhdauh = father, equivalent to 'The Old Man'

5) yáuh chín = rich, wealthy

6) Wàh...háai! = exclamation of awe and astonishment.

Lesson Twenty-two

1. Mr. Cheung compliments his foreign friend Mr. Lee on his Cantonese:

Jèung Sàang: Léih Sàang, néih dī Gwóngdùngwá góngdāk mhcho bo. Hohkjó géi noih la?

Léih Sàang : Néih gwojéung jē. Ngóh tùhng ngóh taaitáai ngāamngāam hohkjó sàam go yuht. Yìhgā góngdāk juhng hóu leuhnjeuhn ga.

Jèung Sàang: O! Néih taaitáai dōu hohk Gwóngdùngwá àh!

Léih Sàang : Haih a. Ngóhdeih léuhng go yātchàih hohk ge, bātgwo ngóh taaitáai hóu kàhnlihk, sóyíh kéuih hohkdāk hóu faai. Yìhgā góngdāk béi ngóh làuhleih.

Jèung Sàang: Néih jànhaih taai hìm la. Néih góngdāk géi hóu ā.

2. Two friends at the swimming pool:

Jèung Sàang: Néih yàuhdāk gam lēk, haih mhhaih sìnsìh dōu làih yàuhséui ga?

Chàhn Sàang: Mhhaih sìhsìh dōu yàuh, ngóh bīndouh yáuh gam dò sìhgaan a? Bātgwo ngóh duhk síuhohk góján jauh hóu jùngyi yàuhséui ge la. Néih yàuhdāk dōu mhcho ā!

Jèung Sàang: Ngóh mhdāk gé.

Chàhn Sàang: Wàh! Yíhgìng sahpyih dím làh, ngóhdeih séuhngheui sihk ngaanjau sìn, hóu ma?

Jèung Sàang: Hóu a!

1) síuhohk = elementary school
2) sihk ngaanjau = sihk ngaan = 'eat lunch'

3. Mr. Lee is driving his car with Mr. Wong as passenger:

Wòhng: Néih jà chē jàdāk mhcho bo.

Léih : Néih gwojéung jē. Ngóh dōu hóu síu jà ge.

Wòhng: Néih agō haih mhhaih nīpáai héisáu hohk chè a?

Léih : Haih. Kéuih tùhng ngóh gājē yātchàih hohk.

Wòhng: Hohkdāk dím a?

Léih : Màhmádéi lā.

Wòhng: Néih yáuh móuh gaauháh kéuihdeih a?

Léih : Móuh. Ngóh jihnghaih sīk jà, mhsīk gaau ga.

4. Miss Chan and Miss Ma talk about their younger sisters' progress in school:

Chàhn Siu-yīng: Néih saimúi duhk syù meih a?

Máh Ngáh-gwān : Gàmnín ngāamngāam héisáu duhk.

Chàhn Siu-yīng: Duhkdāk lēk mhlēk a?

Máh Ngáh-gwān : Dōu géi lēk, daahnhaih hóu láahn.

Chàhn Siu-yīng: Gám, kéuih dī jih sédāk leng m̀hleng a?

Máh Ngáh-gwān : Màhmádéi lā. Móuh néih saimúi sédāk gam hóu.

Chàhn Siu-yīng: Néih gwojéung jē. Kéuih yáuhsíh sédāk hóu hóu,
yáuhsíh dōu sédāk hóu yáih ga.

Máh Ngáh-gwān : Ngóh saimúi yauh haih gám ge.

Lesson Twenty-three

1. Hotel, hotel guest and room boy

R: Sinsàang yáuh mēyéh fànfu a?

G: M̀hgòi nìng dò géi go sàamgá làih ā. Ngóh yáuh dò géi gihn sàam yiu gwa.

R: O, yiu géi dò go a?

G: Sei go gau laak.

R: Hóu, jauh ló làih.

(He returns with the clothes hangers)

R: Dī sàamgá hái douh. Juhng yáuh mēyéh fànfu a?

G: Haih la. Chisó móuh chijí, yauh móuh móuhgān tìm.

R: Chijí ngóh yātjahn nìng làih lā. Móuhgān yiu dá dihnwá béi sáisāambouh giu keuihdeih sunglàih. Bātgwo ngóh gàmjìu tèng kéuihdeih wah daaih mòuhgān yíhgìng yùhng saai. Yiu ngaan dī ji yáuh.

G: Yìhgā yíhgìng hahjau laak. Yātdihng yáuh ge la.

1) sáisāambouh = laundry department

2. Husband and wife:

Husband: Tìngjìu m̀hsái jíng jóuchāan béi ngóh sihk laak.

Wife : Dímgáai a?

Husband: Yànwaih gàmjìu sihkjó jóuchāan ji fàan gūng, gónm̀hchit daap bāsí.

Wife : Gám, ngóh hóyíh tìngjìu jóudī héisàn jíng béi néih sihk ga.

Husband: M̀hsái la. Néih fan-ngaandī lā.

Wife : M̀hgányiu. Néih séung géi dím sihk a?

Husband: Jóu gwo gàmjìu bun go jùngtàuh jauh dāk laak.

Wife : Hóu lā. A, hóu yeh ge la, néih fan meih a?

Husband: Ngóh juhng meih chùnglèuhng. Néih fan sìn lā.

1) fan ngaandī = sleep late, i.e., get up later (than usual)

2) chùnglèuhng = take a bath, take a shower

Wife : Chūnglèuhngfóng móuh móuhgān ga, néih nìng tìuh yahpheui ji hóu ná.

Husband: Dāk la. Yáuh móuh fàangáan a?

Wife : Yáuh.

1) chūnglèuhngfóng = bathroom

3. Two women discuss servant problems:

Léih Táai : Yí, Chàhn Táai, māt yiu néih jihgéi làih tong sāam a? Go gùngyàhn nē?

Chàhn Táai: Aih, m̀hhóu góng la. A Sei chìhnyaht ji wah ngóh ji, kéuih yiu fàan Daaihluhk taam gāje̅, kàhmyaht heuijó la.

Léih Táai : Gàm dím dāk ga? Néih dímgáai m̀hgiu kéuih dáng néih wándóu yàhn ji heui ā?

Chàhn Táai: Ngóh dōu haih gám wah ge laak. Daahnhaih kéuih yātdihng yiu kàhmyaht jauh heui, Juhng wah jeui jóu yiu hahgo yuht ji fàandāklàih tìm bo.

Léih Táai : Aiya, néih jihgéi yāt go yān dím jouhdāk gam dò yéh ga?

Chàhn Táai: Yāt go yuht jē, m̀hgányiu gé.

Léih Táai : Néih jànhaih lēk ga laak. Yeuhng yeuhng dōu dāk.

Chàhn Táai: M̀hhaih gé, yiu jouh jauh jouh ge jē...Chóhháh yám būi chàh sin lā.

Léih Táai : M̀hsái haakhei la. Ngóh jauh jáu ge laak.

1) māt = here: dímgáai?

2) jihgéi = yourself

3) Gám dím dāk ga? = That way, how (is it) OK? i.e., How could that be? How could you allow such...

4) yeuhng yeuhng = everything

4. Elder brother, younger sister and servant:

Elder brother : Luhk jé, ngóh gihn sēutsāam hóu laahttaat. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh sáijó kéuih lā.

Luhk jé : O, néih gón m̀hgónjyuh yiu ga?

Elder brother : Yiu a, ngóh tìngjìu jauh yiu jeuk fàan hohk ge la.

Younger sister: A, Luhk jé, ngóh yáuh tìuh kwàhn dōu yiu sái. M̀hgòi néih yātchàih ló heui ā.

1) Luhk jé = The family's name for the servant. The Luhk part is taken from one of the 3 characters in her name (maybe Luhk Siuyīng or Chàhn Ngáh-luhk) and the jé part means 'elder sister'.

2) gón = in a hurry; gón m̀hgónjyuh? = Are you in a hurry?

Luhk jé : Hóu, juhng yáuh dī mēyéh yiu sái waahkjé yiu tong ga?

Elder brother : Mmm. Haih laak. Nīdouh juhng yáuh tīuh fu, ngóh kàhmyaht jīngchàauhjó. Néih dākhàahn góján, m̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh tongháh kéuih lā.

Younger sister: Luhk jé a, luhk dím bun la. Ngóh tùhng Agō chāt dím bun yiu heui tái dá bō. Sihkdāk faahn meih a?

Luhk jé : Dāk ge la. Taaitáai heuijó Hòh Táai ngūkkéi dá páai, ngāamngāam dá dihnwá fàanlàih wah m̀hsái dáng kéuih sihk faahn. Néihdeih sihk sīn lā.

Younger sister: Gám, Agō faai dī lā! M̀hhaih jauh gónm̀hchit ge la.

Elder brother : Hóu, jauh làih.

1) sihkdāk faahn meih? = Can we eat yet?

2) m̀hhaih = otherwise, if not,...

Lesson Twenty-four

1. Prospective tenant and landlady:

Prospective tenant: Néihdeih nīdouh haih m̀hhaih yáuh deihfòng jòu a?

Landlady : Haih a. Chéng yahplàih táiháh lā. Chéng gwolàih nībihn lā.

Prospective tenant: Hóu, m̀hgòi.

Landlady : Nī gàan syùfóng tùhng gó gàan seuihfóng dōu haih jòu ge. Néih táiháh ngāam m̀hngāam?

Prospective tenant: Mm, gàan syùfóng dōu géi daaih, go seuihfóng yahpbihn juhng yáuh chisó. Géi hóu a. Néih yiu géi chīn go yuht nē?

Landlady : Sei baak mān jē. Daahnhaih yiu sīn béi léuhng go yuht jòu bo.

Prospective tenant: M̀hgányiu. Ngóh séung táiháh go chyùhfóng--hái bīndouh a?

Landlady : Chéng yahpheui lā...Ngóhdeih chyùhfóng hóu gōnjehng ga.

Prospective tenant: Mmm, m̀hcho a, néihdeih yáuh dihnwá ga?

Landlady : Yáuh. Néih dōu hóyíh yuhng gé.

Prospective tenant: Gám, dōu géi fòngbihn. Ngóh gàmmáahn daai ngóh sīnsàang làih táiháh sīn lā.

1) gwolàih nībihn = come over here

2) fòngbihn = convenient

2. Mother and daugher discuss broken teapot:

Mother : Síu Mìhng, māt jèung tóigam dò séui yan ga? Dóuséjó mēyéh a?

1) māt + sentence = How come...?

Síu Mìhng: Dóuséjó dī chàh lòh. Juhng dálaahnjó go chāhwá tìm bo.

Mother : Bīngo gam m̀hsíusām nē? Dá laahnjó bīn go chàhwá a?

Síu Mìhng: Haih A Yèh dálaahn ga. Hóuchói haih gauh gó go ja.

Mother : Gám, dōu yiu máaihfàan dò yāt go hái douh ji dāk gá. Yùhgwó m̀hmáaihfàan go sàn ge jauh m̀hgau yuhng ge laak.

Síu Mìhng: Máaih go dám̀hlaahn ge lā.

1) A Yèh = Grandfather (on father's side)

2) hái douh = here: and have it nere

3. Talk between a young lady and a household servant:

Síujé: A Sei, m̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh chùng wùh yiht chàh làih lā. Ngóh hái kèhláu nīdouh a.

A Sei: Hóu a. Síuj;e, juhng yáuh mēyéh fanfu nē?

Síujé: A, juhng yáuh. M̀hgòi néih séuhngheui ngóh gàan fóng ló tìuh baak kwàhn heui tong ā. Ngóh léuhng dím bun yiu chēut gāai. Faaidī bo! M̀hhaih jauh gónm̀hchit ge la.

A Sei: Dāk laak. Yìhgā sinji léuhng dím. Yātdihng góndākchit béi néih gé. Aiya! Bīngo dousé dī ngàuhnáaih hái deihhá a? Gam laahttaat!

Síujé: Ngóh dōu m̀hjí a. Faai dī yahpheui ló faai bou làih maatjó kéuih lā.

A Sei: Síujé, hóuchíh wúih lohk yúh bo. Dángján chēut gāai géidāk daai jē a.

Síujé: Hóu. Haih laak--dángjahn Chàhn Táai dá dihnwá làih, néih wah kéuih ji, ngóh gàmmáahn m̀hdākhàahn heui kéuih ngūkkéi, yànwaih ngóh yáuh dī gányiu sih yiu jouh.

A Sei: Jídou laak.

Síujé: Aiya! Yíhgíng léuhng dím yāt go gwāt laak, ngóh yiu wuhn sāam la. Tìuh kwàhn tonghóu meih a?

A Sei: Tonghóu laak. Nàh, tongdāk leng m̀hleng a?

Síujé: M̀hcho! Ngóh yiu faaidī wuhn ji dāk laak. M̀hgòi néih tùhng ngóh nìng nīdī syù chēutheui jài hái ga chē douh sín. Go sáudói dōu yātchàih ló heui lā.

A Sei: Dāk la.

1) ngóh gàan fóng = my room

2) m̀hhaih = if not, otherwise

3) sīnji = only

4) góndākchit = there's enough time or You can make it or If you hurry you'll make it.

5) deihhá = floor

6) geidāk = remember

Sīujé: Dángjahn lohk yúh, jigányiu geidāk sàan chēung a.

Lesson Twenty-five

1. Talking about how to keep awake:

A: Dīmgáai gàmjiu gam móuh jingsàhn a?

B: Kàhmmáahn yihtgwotàuh, fanm̀hjeuhk, sóyih gàmjiu hóu ngáahnfan.

A: Gám, wán dī dungdúngdéi ge yéh yámháh lā. Ngóh sihsih ngáahnfan
dōu jùngyi yám dung ge yéh ga.

B: Yáuh mēyéh dung yéh hóu yám a?

A: Yám bùi dung bējáu lā.

B: M̀hdāk! Yámjó juhng ngáahnfan tim!

A: Heiséui lā.

B: Ngóh ji pa yám heiséui ge laak, yámjó gokdāk hóu génghot gé.

A: Dung gafē yātdihng ngāam néih laak.

B: Hm, hóu, ngóh géi jùngyi gafē ge. Néih dōu yám bùi lā.

A: Hóu aak!

B: Gám, dáng ngóh dá dihnwá giu làuhhah sung séuhnglàih sin.

2. Two friends discuss Szechwanese food:

A: Néih haih m̀hhaih sihsih dōu chēutheui sihk Seichyùn choi ga?

B: Haih a. Jouh māt a?

A: Móuh, nī léuhng yaht ngóh yiu chéng haak. Séung sihāh Seichyùn
choi jē. Yáuh mēyéh hóu sihk ge, gaaisiuhháh lā.

B: Aiya! Ngóh m̀hsīk dī choi méng ge bo.

A: Gám, néih dím giu choi a?

B: Ngóh sihsih dōu haih tùhng pàhngyáuh yātchàih heui gé. Chichi
dōuhaih kéuih giu mēyéh ngóh jauh sihk mēyéh ge ja.

A: Gám, néih yāt yeuhng dōu m̀hgeidāk mē?

B: Ngóh jihnghaih geidāk yáuh go tòng syūnsyūndéi, laahtláatdéi,
giujouh syūnlaaht tòng, yáuh yeuhng yú tihmtīmdéi, syūnsyūndéi,
hóuhóusihk ge, giujouh tòhngchou yú. Daihyihdī choi ngóh jauh
sīk sihk m̀hsīk góng laak.

1) Seichyùn = Szechwan
2) Jouh māt a? = here: Why do you ask?
3) Móuh = Nothing special
4) chichi = every time
5) syùnlaaht tòng = pungent pepper soup
6) tòhngchou yú = sweet and sour fish

A: Gám, néih tùhng ngóh mahnhah néih gó go pàhngyáuh ā.

B: Dāk, ngóh tīngyaht fàanlàih wah néih jī lā.

Lesson Twenty-six

1. Mrs. Wong and Mrs. Lee discuss Mrs. Lee's new job:

Wòhng Táai: Tèngginwah yáuh gàan ngàhnhòhng béi hóu gòu sànséui chéng néih bo! Haih m̀hhaih a?

Léih Táai : Haih a. Méihgwok Ngàhnhòhng chéng ngóh fuhjaak yāt go bouhfahn. Hah go yuht yāt houh héisáu séuhng gùng ge la.

Wòhng Táai: Gám, néih heuijó fàangùng, bīngo tùhng néih chau dī sailóugō a?

Léih Táai : Sóyíh ngóh yiu wán yàhn làih tùhng ngóh chau kéuihdeih. Néih hó m̀hhóyíh gaaisiuh go béi ngóh ā?

Wòhng Táai: Ngóh yiu mahnhah ngóh go gùngyàhn sīnji dāk. Néih dásyun béi géi chín yàhngùng a?

Léih Táai : Yùhgwó wándóu go yàhn yauh gònjehng yauh kàhnlihk ge, jauh dōdī chín dōu móuh sówàih gé.

Wòhng Táai: Yìhgā chéng gùngyàhn, jisíu dōu yiu sàam baak lèhng mān ge la.

Léih Táai : Haih a. Juhng m̀hhaih gam yih chéngdākdóu tīm bo.

Wòhng Táai: Ngóh tùhng néih mahn dò géi go yàhn lā.

Léih Táai : Gám, m̀hgòi néih sīn bo!

Wòhng Táai: M̀hsái haakhei.

1) chau = to take care (of children)

a) chaujái = baby amah

2. Mrs. Cheung calls the air conditioner repair company:

A: Hèunggóng Láahnghei Gūngsī a?

B: Haih a, mēyéh sih nē?

A: Ngóh ūkkéi go láahnghei gēi waaihjó. Ngóh chìhnyaht yíhgīng dágwo dihnwá giu néih gūngsī wán yàhn làih tùhng ngóh jíng ge la. Dímgáai gàm yaht juhng meih làih ga?

B: Yáuh gám ge sih mē? Chéng mahn néih haih bīndouh ga?

A: Ngóh nīdouh haih Daaih Douh Jūng yih yāt baat houh, yih láu sing Wòhng ge.

B: Gám, néih go láahngheigēi waaihjó mēyéh a?

A: Go láahnghei gēi hòijó hóu noih dōu m̀hdāk láahng lòh.

B: Hóu lā, ngóh yātján giu yàhn heui lā.

A: Faaidī lā, nīpáai gam yiht, móuh láahnghei hóu nàahn fandāk jeuhk ga.

B: Dāk la, gàmyaht yātdihng tùhng néih jíngfàanhóu kéuih la.

A: Haih le bo. M̀hgòi néih.

3. Two young men run into each other on the street and decide to go swimming:

A: Wai. Lóuh Jēung, heui yàuh séui le.

B: Hóu aak. Wán Hòh Síujé yātchàih heui a.

A: Bīngo Hòh Síujé a?

B: Hái gūngsī dá jih gógo lē.

A: O--Gám, néih yìhgā dá dihnwá béi kéuih. Ngóh sīn heui máaih yéh. Yùhgwó m̀hhaih jauh gónm̀hchit léuhng dím gó bāan chē ge la.

(Later:)

A: Ei, dím a? Hòh Síujé géisìh chēut làih a?

B: Hā. Kéuih hái ūkkéi dágán páai. Kéuih wah m̀hheui dāk wóh.

A: Mēyéh wá? M̀hheui àh. Ngóh dī yéh hahmbahlaahng dōu máaihsaai la bo.

B: Wai, juhng yáuh bīngo néuihjái ūkkéi yáuh dihnwá ga?

A: Léih Síu-lihng lā.

B: M̀hdāk ge. Yìhgā kéuih yātdihng jouhgán gùngfo. Kéuih màhmā m̀hwúih béi kéuih chēut làih ge.

A: A, Máh Gwai-fōng hàahnggán gwo làih. Ngóhdeih heui mahnháh kéuih lā.

B: Máh Siuje, dāk m̀hdākhàahn a? Ngóhdeih chéng néih heui yàuhséui ā?

M: A. Jànhaih deuihm̀hjyuh laak. Ngóh pàhngyáuh hái Tīnsīng Máhtàuh dánggán ngóh. Gàmyaht m̀hheuidāk la. Daih yaht sīn lā. Joigin.

A&B: Joigin.

A: Gám, ngóhdeih jihgéi heui la. Ha--Ha--.

1) wai = Hi! Hey! Say!

2) wóh = sentence suffix, 'That's what she said'

3) néuihjái = young girl

4) jouhgán gùngfo = do homework, lessons

5) jihgéi = ourselves, myself, himself, etc.
here: ourselves alone

Lesson Twenty-seven

1. Two friends discuss buying Japanese goods:

A: Dímgáai néih gam jùngyi máaih Yahtbún yéh ga?

B: Yànwaih Yahtbún yéh jouhdāk tùhng lòihlóu ge chà m̀hdāk géidò, daahnhaih jauh pèhng hóu dò la.

1) chà m̀hdāk géi dò = chàm̀hdò = about the same; just a little bit less good, [lacking not very much]

A: Sèuiyìhn haih jíngdāk leng jē, daahnhaih m̀htùhng gé. Yahtbún yéh, yuhng móuhgéinoih jauh laahn ge la.

B: M̀hgindāk ā! Kèihsaht yáuhsìh dī Yahtbún yéh juhng hóu tìm. Fáanjing yáuh dī yéh yuhng móuh géi noih jauh yiu wuhn sàn ge laak. Maaih lòihlóu ge yuhngdou gauh dōu meih laahn, dámjó kéuih yauh m̀hhóu, m̀hdám yauh m̀hhóutái, hóu nàahn gé.

A: Néih góngdāk dōu géi ngāam, daahnhaih deui ngóh làih góng, ngóh jauh máaih búndeih yéh dōu m̀hmáaih Yahtbún ge laak.

B: Hā, néih go yàhn jànhaih ā!

1) M̀hgindāk ā! = Not necessarily!

2) Fáanjing = anyway, besides,...

3) Néih go yàhn jànhaih ā = You really are something!

2. Talking about the importance of male children:

Jèung Táai: Wòhng Táai chìhnyaht sàangjó go néui bo. Néih jí m̀hjí a?

Léih Síujé: Haih mē? Néih yìhgā góng ngóh jí jí ja. Gám, kéuih yātdihng hóu hōisām ge lā?

Jèung Táai: Hóuchíh wah m̀hhaih bo. Kéuihdeih gódouh dī yàhn hóu hèimohng sàang go jái ga, yìhgā sàangjó go néui, sóyíh kéuihdeih m̀hhaih géi jùngyi lòh.

Léih Síujé: Kèihsaht jáinéui yáuh māt fanbiht a? Dōuhaih jihgéi ge sailóugō jē.

Jèung Táai: Léih Síujé, néih meih gitfàn jauh m̀hjí ge laak. Deuiyù Jùnggwokyàhn làih góng, dòsou dōu yìhwàih móuh jái haih hóu daaih gihn sih ga.

Léih Síujé: Ngóh dōu jídou. Daahnhaih Wòhng Táai nī go bātgwo haih daih yāt go sailóugō jē. M̀hsái gam mēyéh ga?

Jèung Táai: Móuh cho. Bātgwo yùhgwó daih yāt go jauh haih jái jauh hóu hóudò la ma.

Léih Síujé: Māt néih dōu yáuh gám ge séungfaat ge mē?

Jèung Táai: Ngóh jihgéi jauh móuh sówaih. Daahnhaih A Jēung jauh hóu chíh Wòhng Táai kéuihdeih gám m̀hjùngyi néui ga.

1) sàangjó = gave birth (to)

2) hōisām = happy

3) jihgéi ge = one's own, your own, etc.

4) M̀hsái gam mēyéh ga? = No need to make such a big thing of it?

5) séungfaat = idea, concept

6) A Jùng = Mrs. Jèung's husband

7) hóu chíh = similar to A___ similar to B___.
(A Jēung is similar to Wòhng Táai and the others that way in not liking girls.)

Léih Sīujé: Haih mē? Gám, néihdeih yáuh géidò go jáinéui a?

Jèung Táai: Ngóhdeih juhng meih yáuh sailóugō.

Léih Sīujé: Gám, néih daih yāt go jigányiu sàang go jái ji dāk bo!

Jèung Táai: Ha-ha. Jeui hóu haih gám lā.

Lesson Twenty-eight

1. Delivering goods to the wrong address:

Jèung Táai: Mātyéh sih a?

Fógei : Sung fo làih a.

Jèung Táai: Bīndouh ga?

Fógei : Wihngōn Gūngsī ge.

Jèung Táai: Wihngōn Gūngsī sung yéh lái? Ngóh móuh heui máaihgwo yéh bo. Mmm, chèuihfèi ngóh sīnsàang máaih ge lā.

Fógei : Bīngo máaih dōu hóu la. Haih sé néihdeih nīdouh sàu ge, m̀hgòi néih chím méng sàujó kéuih la.

Jèung Táai: Yáuh móuh sé haih mēyéh làih ga?

Fógei : M̀hjī bo. Ngóh m̀hsīk Yìngmán ga, néih jihgéi nīkheui tái háh la.

Jèung Táai: Yāt tou būidíp? Yāt dā mòuhgān? M̀hchíh bo. Ngóhdeih m̀hwúih máaih nīdī gám ge yéh gá.

Fógei : Gám, néih sàu m̀hsàu ga? Béijó chín geulòh bo.

Jèung Táai: Yùhgwó m̀hhaih ngóhdeih máaih gé, béijó chín dōu m̀hhaih ngóhdeih sàu gá. Bātyùh néih dáng ngóh dá go dihnwá béi ngóh sīnsàang mahnháh haih m̀hhaih kéuih máaih gé?

Fógei : Hóu la, hóu la, m̀hgòi néih faaidī la. Ngóh juhng yiu heui hóu dò deihfòng ga.

Jèung Táai: M̀hgòi dáng yātjahn ā.

Fógei : Jàn màhfàahn!

1) fo = goods

2) lái? = làih + rising intonation for surprise and doubt.

3) nīkheui = ningheui

4) m̀hchíh bo = Not likely!

5) Jàn màhfàahn = What a nuisance!

2. Servant talks to housewife about opening a bank account:

A Jyù : Siu-Nāai a, néih géisìh heui ngàhnhòhng tùhngmàaih ngóh heui, dāk m̀hdāk a?

1) A Jyù = servant's name

2) Siu Nāai = term of address used by servant in the

family addressing the housewife. The term basically means 'wife of a son of the head of the family but it is not now restricted to that meaning.

Siu-Nāai: Heui ngàhnhòhng néih dōu m̀hsīk louh mē?

A Jyù : Louh jauh sīk gé, bātgwo ngóh m̀hjī jài chín yahpheui yiu mēyéh sáujuhk jē.

Siu Nāai: Néih séung jài chín heui ngàhnhòhng àh? Hóu yih jē. Jíyiu néih daai jihgéi jèung sànfánjing heui hòi wuhháu, chīm go méng jauh dāk ge laak.

A Jyù : Aiya--Siu Nāai, néih dōu m̀hhaih m̀hjī ngóh m̀hsīk jih ge lā. ngóh méng dōu m̀hsīk chīm ga!

Siu Nāai: Gám, yuhng tòuhjēung dōu dāk ge jē.

A Jyù : Tòuhjēung dōu dāk àh? Gám, ngóh yáuh a.

Siu Nāai: Néih séung géisìh heui a?

A Jyù : Móuh sówaih gé. Dākhàahn ji heui dōu m̀hchìh ga.

Siu Nāai: Bātyùh hahjau sihkyùhn faahn ji heui lā. Ngàhnhòhng sàam dím ji sàan mùhn ga.

A Jyù : Hóu aak. Gám, ngóh heui jyú faahn sín la bo.

1) louh = road

2) hòi wuhháu = open an account

Lesson Twenty-nine

1. A visit to the doctor:

Léih Sīujé : Chàhn Yīsāng.

Chàhn Yīsāng: Ā, Léih Sīujé, māt sih a?

Léih Sīujé : Ngóh chìhn géi yaht hái chyùhfóng ditchàn, go tàuh johngmàaih go syutgwaih douh, hóuchói móuh māt sih. Daahnhaih nī léuhng yaht ngóh gokdāk hóu tàuhtung, sóyìh ngóh làih táiháh jē.

Chàhn Yīsāng: Mmm, néih yíhchìhn yáuh móuh gámyéung tunggwo ga?

Léih Sīujé : Meih sigwo ga. Gám, ngóh sīnji pa a.

Chàhn Yīsāng: Nīpáai fandākhóu ma?

Léih Sīujé : Fandāk m̀hhaih géi hóu lòh. Hóu yeh dōu fānm̀hjeuhk, juhng sèhng máahn séng tīm.

1) chìhn géi yaht = a few days ago

2) tàuh = head

3) johngmàaih = hit

4) tung = hurt

Chàhn Yīsāng: Fandāk m̀hhóu dōu wúih tàuhtung ga. Gwoheui go bihn, ngóh tùhng néih táiháh lā.

Léih Síujé : Hóu.

(The doctor finishes examining the patient:)

Léih Síujé : Dím a, yīsāng?

Chàhn Yīsāng: Móuh māt sih ge, m̀hgau fan ge jē. Ngôh hòi dī yeuhk béi néih lā. Nàh, múih máahn sihk yāt nāp ji fan, néih jauh wúih hóu hóu fan ge laak, yùhgwó gwo léuhng sàam yaht juhng meih hóu, jauh joi làih tái lā.

Léih Síujé : Hóu, m̀hgòisaai la, Chàhn Yīsāng.

Chàhn Yīsāng: Hóu wah.

1) yeuhk = medicine
hòi dī yeuhk = write a prescription

2) nāp = pill, M for pill, grain of rice, grain of sand, etc.

3) Hóu wah = 'You're welcome'

2. Young lady goes to the hospital to visit her injured friend:

A: Sīnsàang, chéng mahn Gáulùhng Yīyún hái bīndouh a?

B: Gáulùhng Yīyún àh. Né, jauh hái Taaijí Douh tùhng Wòdálóuh Douh jīgāan.

A: Yàuh nīdouh heui káhn m̀hkáhn a?

B: O--Lèih nīdouh móuh géi yúhn jē. Né, gahnjyuh daihyih go chē jaahm gódouh jauh haih laak.

A: M̀hgòisaai.

(She arrives at her friend's room in the hospital:)

A: A, Síu-fòng, móuh mēyéh sih lā ma?

C: Móuh, béi chē johngchàn jī ma. Hóu hóudò la. Yáuh sàm.

A: Johngchàn bīndouh a?

C: Né, johngchàn jek geuk lòh.

A: Aiyàh. Hái bīndouh johngchàn a?

C: Jauh hái ngóh gūngsī gaaklèih.

A: Hahchi chēut gāai síusàm dī la.

C: Jídou la.

1) Taaijí Douh = Prince Road
2) Wòdálóuh Douh = Waterloo Road
3) jī ma = that's all
4) Yáuh sàm = It's kind of you to inquire

A: Nàh. Ngóh daaijó dī gāitòng làih. Yìhgā juhng yihtyītdéi. Yámjó kéuih sīn la.

C: O, m̀hgòi. Mmm. Dī gāitòng hóu leng a.

A: Haih a, ngóh dahnjó sèhng yaht ga la.

C: Ha. Gám, ngóh hahchi yiu béi chē johng dò géi chi ji dāk.

A: Hē, hahchi ngóh tái dōu m̀htái néih a. Hóu laak, ngóh yìhgā yiu fāangīng laak. Tīngyaht ji làih taam néih la.

C: Hóu, m̀hgòisaai. Tīngyaht geidāk joi daai gāitòng làih béi ngóh yám a?

A: Hóu la. Hóu la. Joigin.

1) dahn = steam (a method of cooking)

2) tái dōu m̀htái néih = won't even come see you

3. Miss Lee visits a fellow worker, Mr. Lau, in the hospital:

A: Làuh Sàang, dím a?

B: O--Léih Síujé. Hóu dī la. Yáuh sàm. Néih dím jī ngóh jyuh hái yīyún ga?

A: Haih Lóuh Jēung góng béi ngóh tèng ge. Daahnhaih kéuih wah dōu m̀hjī néih haih mēyéh behng. Mēyéh sih a?

B: Eh. Chōchō jihnghaih yáuh dī sēungfūng tùhngmàaih m̀hsyūfuhk. Ngóh yáuh móuh heui tái yīsāang. Daih yaht jauh faat sīu la. Sāumēi--m̀hhaih jauh làih jó nīdouh lō!

A: Géi dō douh yiht a?

B: Kàhmyaht juhng haih sa'ahgáu douh a.

A: Aiyah. Māt gam gányiu a. Yīsāng dím wah a?

B: Gàmyaht hóu hóudò la. Tàuhsīn yīsāng joi béijó dī yeuhkséui tùhng yeuhkyún ngóh sihk. Kéuih wah gwo léuhng yaht jauh hóyíh chēut yún.

A: O, Gám, jauh hóu la. Nàh. Nīdī cháang ngóh tùhng néih jàihóu kéuih ā.

B: Néih juhng gam haakhei. Jànhaih dòjehsaai.

A: Síu yisi jē. Ngóh dōu yiu jáu la. Dáng néih chēutjó yún, ngóhdeih

1) Yáuh sàm = It's kind of you to inquire.

2) daih yaht = the next day

3) m̀hhaih jauh làihjó nīdouh lō! = Wasn't it that I came here! i.e., Didn't I just wind up here! (exasperated)

4) douh = degree (of temperature)

5) chēut yún = get out of the hospital

6) Síu yisi jē. = It's just a little something. Polite response to thanks for a gift.

wánmàaih Lóuh Jēung yātchàih heui yám chàh lā.

B: Hóu aak--joigin.

A: Joigin.

1) wánmàaih = get together with

Lesson Thirty

1. An overdue plane:

Sailóu: Fùng dihnbou haih m̀hhaih saimúi dáfàanlàih ga?

Agō : Haih a. Kéuih wah gàmmáahn hái Yahtbún gēichèuhng jáudím jyuh. Yànwaih gódouh dágán fùng, fèigēi m̀hhòi. Ji faai dōu yiu tīngyaht ji fàandāklàih.

Sailóu: Gám, ngóhdeih m̀hjī géisìh heui jip gēi ge lo bo.

Agō : Lìhn kéuih jihgéi dōu m̀hjī géisìh ji yáuh fèigēi hòi, ngóhdeih yauh dím jī ā?

Sailóu: Gám, néih gú kéuih wúih m̀hwúih joi dá dihnbou fàanlàih a?

Agō : Daaihkoi wúih gé. Chèuihfèi gónm̀hchit lā.

Sailóu: Ai, ngóh jànhaih pa Yahtbún nī chèuhng fùng wúih yuht dá yuht daaih tīm bo.

Agō : Dōu m̀hgányiu gé. Jidò hái Yahtbún jyuh dò géi yaht jē. Yauh m̀hsái béi jáudím chín gé.

Sailóu: Māt jyuh gèichèuhng jáudím m̀hsái béi chín ge mē?

Agō : Haih a, hòhnghùng gūngsī fuhjaak ge ma.

Sailóu: Haih àh? Hósīk dáfùng m̀hchēutdākheui hàahng gāai m̀hhaih géi hóu ge bo.

1) gēichèuhng = fēigēichèuhng = airport

2) gēi = fēigēi

3) chèuhng = M for wind

4) hòhnghùng gūngsī = airline company

2. Renting a house:

A: Chàhn Táai, néih m̀hhaih wah gàmyaht heui tái ūk gé? Dímgáai juhng m̀hheui a?

B: Haih a. Ngóh búnlòih tùhng ūkjyú yeukhóu gàmjīu sahp dím ginmihn gé, daahnhaih ngāamngāam kéuih giu yàhn tùngjī ngóh wah hahjau jī dākhàahn woh. Sóyíh hahjau jī heui lā.

(That afternoon:)

Landlord: O, Chàhn Taaitáai. Chéng yahplàih ā.

1) ūkjyú = landlord, landlady

2) woh = that's what he said.

Chàhn : M̀hgòi.

Landlord: Nīdouh yáuh sàam fóng léuhng tēng, chyùhfóng hái hauhbihn. Chisó tùhng chùngléuhngfóng hái nīdouh. Kèhláu hái chìhnbihn. Deihfòng m̀hcho ga.

Chàhn : Mmm. Yí, jáan dihndāng waaihjó gé.

Landlord: Móuh. Móuh dihndāngdáam ji ma. Móuh waaihdou gé.

Chàhn : Yāt go yuht géi chín jōu a?

Landlord: Luhk baak mān jē. Hóu pèhng ga la.

Chàhn : Lìhn m̀hlìhnmàaih séuidihnfai a?

Landlord: Lìhnmàaih séuifai, daahnhaih m̀hlìhn dihnfai. Chàhn Táai gokdāk dím a?

Chàhn : Deihfòng dōu géi hóu, bātgwo ūkjōu gwai dī la.

Landlord: Ah, Chàhn Táai, Wòhng Sàang gaaisiuh làih ge. M̀hwúih sàu gwai ge la, nīdouh yauh yáuh dihnwá. Hóu fòngbihn ga.

Chàhn : Pèhngdī m̀hdāk àh?

Landlord: Móuh baahnfaat la, yíhgìng haih jeui pèhng ge la.

Chàhn : Gám, ngóh fàanheui mahnháh ngóh sīnsàang sin lā. M̀hgòisaai.

Landlord: M̀hsái haakhei.

1) sàam fóng = 3 bedrooms
2) léuhng tēng = 2 sitting places--i.e., living room and dining room. (Léuhng tēng = haaktēng + faahntēng)
3) dihndāngdáam = light bulb
4) ji ma = that's all
5) séuidihnfai = water and electricity fees
6) M̀hwúih sàu gwai = I wouldn't take too much from you [wouldn't-take-expensive]
7) fòngbihn = convenient

3. Mr. Brown tells his friend Mr. Cheung about his Cantonese course and his plans for an upcoming trip:

A: Jèung Sàang. Hóu noih móuh gin bo. Géi hóu ma?

B: Yí. Māt Bāau Sàang néih sīk góng Gwóngdùngwá ga?

A: Haih a. Ngāamngāam hohk gé.

B: Haih mē. Góngdāk gam bīujéun gé. Haih laak--Bāau Sàang, néih dímgáai wúih heui hohk Gwóngdùngwá ga?

A: Óh. Yìhgā ngóhdeih gūngsī hóudò sàangyi yiu góng Gwóngdùngwá ji

1) bīujéun = standard, i.e., here: speaks like a Cantonese person
2) sàangyi = commercial business

dāk. Sóyìh gūngsī paai ngóh heui hohk.

B: Hohkjó géi noih a?

A: Luhk go yuht.

B: Gám, néih gokdāk hohk Gwóngdùngwá nàahn m̀hnàahn a?

A: M̀hwúih ā. Ngóh deui Gwóngdùngwá hóu yáuh hingcheui. Bātgwo héisáu hohk góján, ngóh lìhn yāt yih saam jàangdī dōu góng m̀hchēutlàih. Daaihkoi hohkjó léuhng go yuht, jauh hóu hóu dò la.

B: Hā. Bāau Sàang yìhgā tèng néih góng dī Gwóngdùngwá yuht làih yuht làuhlèih.

A: Hah. Néih gwojéung jē.

B: Haih laak--hah go láihbaai néih dāk m̀hdākhàahn a? Yáuh dāan sàangyi ngóh séung yeuk néih chēutlàih jàmháh.

A: O. M̀hdāk bo. Ngóh gūngsī yiu paai ngóh heui Dūng Nàahm A táiháh gó bihn ge sàangyi. Hauhyaht jauh yiu jáu laak.

B: Ō. Gam faai àh. Heui dī mēyéh deihfòng a?

A: Yuhtnàahm Sīnggabō, Máhlòiha dōu yiu heui--Búnlòih seuhng go yuht jauh yiu heui ge la, daahnhaih ngóh ngāamngāam hohkgán Gwóngdùngwá. Sóyìh yìhgā ji heui.

B: Gám, jauh ngāamsaai la. Hái gó bihn néih jauh yáuh hóudò gèiwúih góng Gwóngdùngwá ga.

A: Haih a. Nī go gèiwúih hóu m̀hcho ga. M̀hn--Néih dāan sàangyi ngóh wán Lóuh Láu yeuk go sìhgaan tùhng néih jàm ā.

B: Hóu aak. M̀hgòisaai bo. Hauh yaht ngóh yáuh dī sih, daaihkoi m̀hheuidāk sung néih fēigēi.

A: M̀hsái haakhei.

1) paai = send
2) yáuh hingcheui = to be interested in
3) dāan sàangyi = some business [dāan = 'list,' M for sàangyi]
4) jām = discuss
5) Dūng Nàahm A = Southeast Asia
6) Yuhtnàahm = VietNam
7) Máhlòiha = Malaya
8) gēiwúih = opportunity

GRAMMATICAL INDEX

Numbers to the left of the period refer to lesson numbers, and those to the right, to page numbers.

a, suffix to members of series in parallel construction, 19.72

addresses, larger units precede smaller, 17.27

Adj, measurable, 21.128-30

amáh?(var:āma), interrogative sen. suf. checking on an assumption: 'isn't it?', 29.313

amáh, sen.suf. for obviousness, 29.313, 327

Aux. verbs, wúih, 'likely to,' 24.199

bātyùh... bá laak, 'it would be better to....', 28.290

béi, 'by', 29.312

béi, 'compared to', in comparison pattern, 21.126-127

béigaau, comparatively, in comparison pattern, 21.127

búnlòih, 'originally', 30.343

chèuihfèi, 'unless,' 'only if', 28.289-90

chèuihjó....(jì ngoih), ..., 'with the exception of...', 28.1-2, 28.288-89

chíh, 'is similar to, resembles,' 27.265

comparison patterns, adjectives, 21.126-28; verbs, 22.152-153

daaih, 'big', used in reference to years of age, 21.130

daih - M , contraction of daihyih M, 16.9

daihyih M , another (additional) M, 16.9

-dāk, Vsuf. 'can', 20.97; with performance-achievement Verb: V-dāk-achievement, 'can perform-achieve', 23.174-76; in VO phrase: V-dāk-O, 'can VO', 23.176

-dāk-, in manner patterns, 22.150; manner pattern used in adjectival time phrases with jóu, ngaan, yeh: V-dāk-jóu = eat/ate early, 23.177

dates, 17.27-29; larger units precede smaller, 17.27; days of the week, 17.27; Question-word formulas for dates, 17.29; géi yuht? and bīn yuht?, 'what month?', 17.31; chart for sections of the day, 23.177

deui, 'towards, about, for, with', 'in regard to', in deui Obj Adj phrase, 30.338

dim?, 'how', in manner patterns, 22.151

dímjūng, hour, as post-verb time spent word, 20.101

dòsou, 'most'; 'mostly', as noun modifier, 27.267; as adverb, 27.268

duplicated adjectives, Adj-adj-déi,' a little bit Adj.', 25.223

duplicated M for TW, 'Each and every', 20.99-100

duplicated Measures for indiv. Nouns, 'every N', 27.267; 27.275

faaidī, 'quickly', in pre-verb and post-verb position, 24.200

frequency words, 21.130

gám, 'such', as independent unit, 'such things,' 'in such a way', 26.246; 'this way', as modifier of Verb this way, 26.246; as modifier of noun, 'this kind of N', 26.246; substituting for VP gám jouh, 'do/did it thus', 26.249-50; compared with gam, 'so', 26.247

gahn(jyuh), near, 29.316; compared with káhn, near, 29.316

V-gán, 'V is going on', V.suf, calling attention to action in progress, 26.245; position in directional verb compounds, 26.245

ge lo bo, sen.suf ge/ga, 'that's the way it is,' + sen.suf. lo bo for good-natured protest, 30.340

gé, as. ge + rising intonation connotes impatience, 19.88

géi?, which number (i.e., how much/many?) and compared with géi, 'several', 18.53; before measurable adjectives, 21.128

gójahn, When...., subordinate conjunction, 18.47; as TW, 18.48

Góngjí, 'Hong Kong money', grammatically a Noun, 19.86

-gwo, in comparison pattern: Adj-gwo, 'more Adj than', 21.126-27; in comp. pattern for Verbs Vdāk Adjgwo ngóh, 22.152

gwo, another(as replacement), in V-gwo(nu.) M pattern, 24.201

hái, from, interchangeable with yàuh, 'from', 17.38

hái bīndouh V - ge, 19.72-73; not basically a past reference form, 19.73

-hauh, var of: jìhauh), after #M of time, 20.18

-hóu, V.suf. indicating satisfactory conclusion of performance, 19.74

Hóu choi...jē, 'At least it's lucky..., 24.200; 24.214

Hóu V (O) (la), an imperative form: 'do V,' 'hadn't you better V?', 25.224-25

jài, 'put, place', 24.199-200

...jē, ...dōu..., 'Even though...., still....', 30.340

jeui-, jeui Adj = superlative degree, 21.128

jèung, 'take', in jèung O, V-complement pattern, 28.291; compared with Mandarin bǎ construction, 28.291

jīgāan, 'between', 29.314-15

ji (var:sìnji) '(only) then', 19.72

ji-, ji Adj = superlative degree, 21.128

jìchìhn, before..., subordinate conjunction, 18.47; as part of TW phrase: Nu-M jìchìhn, 18.48

jìhauh, after..., subordinate conjunction, 18.47; as part of TW phrase: Nu.M. jihauh, 18.48

...jì ngoih, 'outside of,' 'aside from...', 26.3; 26.247

jìyiu..., jauh..., 'just have to..., then....', 28.288

jìngsàhn, energy; feel well, belongs to two word classes: N and Adj., 25.225

jìng, 'fix,' 'make', as first element in performance-achievement verb compound, 24.203

jiujiu, every morning, 23.178

-jó, verb suf. in time spent sentences of past reference, 18.49; Vsuf in imperative sentence, 'V-jó = 'get V done', 23.176

jo, as adj suffix, end result of a process, 24.201

juhng, in comparison pattern, 21.128

káhn, 'near', 29.316; compared with gahn(jyuh), near, 29.316

kèihsaht, 'But actually....',27.268

lā, sen.suf. for uncertainty; la for change + raised intonation for uncertainty , 17.29

la, ss in time spent sentence of past reference, indicating 'up to now',18.49-50

la, sen.suf. in imperative sen, indicating friendly advice, 24.200

làih, 'for the purpose of' 24.202; 24.211

làih, VP suffix, contradicting stimulus sentence assertion of action performed, 16.8

làih, sen.suf. in past reference sentences: Movement Verb Phrase + làih = return from having been away,16.8; 26.253

láihbaai, 'week', as 'Sunday', 17.28

lèih, 'distance from', 29.315

lìhn(màaih), 'including', 'and', 'even'; 'to include', 30.339-40

lo bo, sen.suf. connotes good-natured protest 27.268

lòh, ss: making a bid for sympathy, 25.224

m̀hhaih, as variant of yùhgwó m̀hhaih, 'otherwise' (QV), 25.225

m̀htùhng, 'not alike', not used as Main Verb in affirmative, 27.269

máahnmáahn, 'every evening', 23.178

Mandarin-Cantonese compared: Verbal modifier to Sp-M-N, 20.103; taai, 'excessively,' 20.103; wúih, 'likely to,' 24.199.

Manner patterns, 22.150-53

Measures, voyage measures, 20.100

meih, 'not yet', in sentences of future reference, 19.71

meih...jìchìhn, interchangeable with jìchìhn clause without meih, 18.48

Méihgām, 'American money', grammatically a Noun, 19.86

Móuh sówàih ge, 'Whatever you say.', 26.247-48

Moveable Adverbs, 18.48

múih, 'every', 'each', 20.99

(ng)aan, 'late (in the daytime)', 23.177

noun modification, SV modifier to SP-M-N in direct modification, 20.103

noun types, the VO-ge construction, 'one who VOs for an occupation', 26.247

number-measure expressions, with fractions, partials, and approximate numbers, 20.97-98

numbers, fractions, 20.97-98; serial numbers as approximate numbers, 20.98-99; approximate numbers: sahpgéi baakgéi, etc., 20.99

Paired Conjunctions, chèuihfèi..., jauh.... 'Must..., in order that...', 'unless..., then....' 23.3; chèuihfèi..., ji... 'Must ..., in order that...', 'unless ..., then...', 23.3; chèuihfèi ..., yùhgwó m̀hhaih...., 'must..., otherwise..., 23.3; chèuihjó..., juhng...., 28.288; chèuihjó..., jauh..., 28.288-89; jíyiu..., jauh..., 28.288; sèuiyìhn..., daahnhaih..., 25.223; yànwaih, sóyíh, 20.97; yāt..., jauh..., 'as soon as..., then...', 28.290-91

'Passive', construction in Cantonese, 29.312

Possesive modification. saimúi w/without ge/M, múi with ge/M, 22.154

Pronouns, pronoun object required in imperative V-jó, 23.176

Question-words used as non-questions 25.225-27

Questions negatively phrased, responses to, 16.9; ordinary denial, 16.17; spirited denial, 16.17.

sai, 'small', used in reference to years of age, 21.130

sahpgéi, as approximate number, 20.99

Sentence suffixes. (see individual entries) amáh?, 29.313; amáh, 29.313; ge lo bo, 30.340; gé, 19.88; la, 17.29; la, 'up to now', 18.49-50; la, 'friendly advice', 24.200; làih, 'contradictory', 16.8; làih, 'return', 16.8; 26.253; lo bo, 27.268; lòh, 25.224; tìm, 25.234

Sentence type, past reference with TW focus: TW V-ge, 17.35

Sentence type, Time-spent sentences: past reference with V-jó or V-gwo, 18.49-50; sentence position relative to other post verbal expressions, 18.50-51

Sentence type, time-since sentences 18.51

sèuiyìhn..., daahnhaih... 'although ..., still...', 25.223

séung, 'think of', past reference verb forms, 16.11

séung, 'wish to', past reference verb forms, 16.10

sìnji (var:ji), '(only) then', 19.72

sóyìh, see yànwaih, sóyìh.

specifiers, múih, 20.99

superlative degree, 21.128

taai, 'excessively', 'too', 22.153

tìm, sen.suf., indicates speaker taken by surprise, 25.234

Timewords, 17.29

tùhng, 'to be alike, similar', not used as V in affirmative, 27.269

Verb suffixes, role in Cantonese, 16.6-7; role in Cantonese and English compared, 16.7

Verb suffixes, (see individual entries) -dāk, -gán, -jó, -yùhn

Verbs, Class 1 verbs: partial distinction between past and non-past forms, 16.4

Verbs, Class 2 verbs: no distinction between past and non-past forms, 16.5

Verbs, Past reference: uninflected verb to express general activity, 16.6

Verbs, role of verb suffixes in Cantonese, 16.6

Verbs, verb forms for talking about the past affirmative forms, 19.69

Verb forms for talking about the past negative forms: mouh V and meih V, 19.70

Verbs, verb forms for talking about the past, choice questions yáuh móuh V?, and V-jó, etc. meih, 19.70

Verbs, V-ge pattern, not necessarily a past reference form, 19.86

Verbs, mhV, as 'not willing to V' 20.101-02

Verbs, absence of active-passive distinction: 22.151; 23.176; 29.312

Verbs, performance-achievement verb compounds: 24.202-03; in sentences of past reference, 24.202; in sentences of customary action, 24.203; with dāk, 'can' = V-dākAdj, 24.203

VO-ge, 'one who does VO as occupation', 26.247

wúih, 'likely to', 24.199; in sentences of past probability, 24.199; compared with Mandarin hwèi, 24.199

yànwaih..., sóyíh..., 'Because..., therefore, 20.97

yàhnyàhn, 'everybody', 27.267

yāt, ommisssion before Measure in a múih phrase, 20.99

yāt..., jauh..., 'as soon as..., then ...', 28.290-91

yáuh 'have', in pivotal construction with personal subject: S yáuh SVO, 23.178; as equating verb in Timespent sentence, 20.102-03; equating verb in measurable adjective sentence, 21.130; 'to have'; 'there is', as equating verb in a lèih, 'distance from' sentence, 29.316

yáuhdī, 'some', 27.266

yáuhdī..., yáuhdī.... 'some..., others....', 27.266

yeh, 'late (in the evening)', 23.177

yeuk, 'request, make, an appointment', 30.337

yíhchìhn, 'previously,' 18.48

yíhhauh, 'afterwards' 18.48

yíh ngoih, same as jì ngoih, (QV), 26.247

yíhwàih, 'to be under the impression', 25.223

yìngbohng, (var:-bóng), 'English pound (sterling)', grammatically a Measure, 19.86

yiu, 'require,' as 'cause or make (someone do something)', 20.102; 20.105; 29.313

yùhgwó m̀hhaih, 'otherwise; if not' 25.225

-yùhn, Vsuf indicating finishing an action, 26.245

yuht...yuht... 'more and more....', 30.337

CUMULATIVE VOCABULARY LIST

LESSONS 16-30

Entries are arranged in alphabetical order by syllable, with h indicating lower register disregarded alphabetically. When words having the same syllable but different tones are listed, the sequence of tone listing is: high level, mid level, low level, high falling, low falling, high rising, low rising. Numbers in the right hand column refer to the lesson in which the item first appears, thus:

18 = Lesson 18 Basic Conversation

18.1 = Lesson 18, Drill 1

29N = Lesson 29, Notes

Items which appear for the first time in the Notes are listed again when appearing for the first time in the main body of the text. Measures for the nouns follow the noun entries in brackets. In this volume ng is listed separately from n as an initial consonant.

A

a	呀	suf. to members of series in parallel construction	19
āma? (or amáh?)	呀嗎	ss. isn't that right? interrogative sen. suf., checking an assumption	29
āma (or amáh)	呀嗎	ss. for obviousness. in response sentence explaining why/where/when/what/who, āma adds the connotation (cheerfully, without impatience) that the whole thing is pretty obvious.	29.15
āam	啱	fitting, suitable, that's fine! splendid! (var. pro: ngāam)	19
āamāam	啱啱	just, only a moment ago (var. pro: ngāamngāam)	22
aan	晏	late (in the day) (var. pro: ngaan)	23.9
aanjau	晏晝	around noon; morning (var. pro: ngaanjau)	23.1
aanjau sahpyih dím	晏晝十二點	12 noon (var.pro: ngaanjau-)	23N2

B

bāsí[ga]	巴士	bus	20.1
bāan	班	flight, trip. voyage Measure	20
baatyuht	八月	August	17N
Baihlaak!	弊嘞	exclamation of annoyance (var: Baihlok!)	24

bātyihp	畢業	to graduate	18
bātyùh X bá laak(or lā)	不如...罷啦	it would be preferable to do X	28
béi	被	introduces the agent of an action, 'by ____'	29
X béi Y	比	X in comparison to Y; X compared to Y	21
béifàan	畀返	give back	18.10
béigaau	比較	in comparison, comparatively	21
behng	病	illness	29.7
behngjó	病咗	got sick	29.1
bīn-	邊	any (one, place, etc.); whatever (one, place, etc.)	25.5
bīndouh	邊度	anywhere; wherever	25.5
bīngo	邊個	anyone; whoever	25.5
bīn nìhn?	邊年	which year?	17.3
bīn nìhn, bīn yuht, bīn yaht?	邊年邊月 邊日	what date?	17.3
bīnsyu?	邊處	where?	28.11
bīn yaht?	邊日	what day?	17.3
bīn yuht?	邊月	what month?	17.3
bō [go]	波	ball	16.4
bohk	薄	thin (in thickness, as of cloth)	27.14
boují [jèung]	報紙	newspaper	19.2
būi-dīp [tou]	杯碟	tea set	19.16
bun yeh sahpyih dím	半夜十二點	twelve midnight	23N2
bùn	搬	move	18.11
bùn (ng)ūk	搬屋	move house	18.11
búnlòih	本來	originally	30.4
búndeihwá	本地話	local language	27.3

CH

chàm̀hdō	差唔多	more or less, approximately	21
chàauh	皺	wrinkled	23.6
chānchīk	親戚	relative(s)	17
-chàn	親	injure, hurt, damage	29
chātjuht	七月	July	17N
chek	尺	foot (measurement)	21.5

chéng	請	invite, request	19
chéngdóu	請到	invite and have the invitation accepted; re servants, to hire them; re dinner guests, to have them accept your invitation	19
chéng gùngyàhn	請工人	hire servants	19
chéng haak	請客	have a dinner party	16.8
chéng sihk faahn, chéng yàhn sihk faahn	請食飯 請人食飯	invite someone for dinner	16.8
cheuimeih	趣味	see: yáuh cheuimeih	21.1
deui _X_ yáuh cheuimeih	對…有趣味	be interested in _X_	30.6
chèuihfèi	除非	unless; only if	28
chèuihjó...(ji ngóih)	除咗	aside from...; other than...; in addition to	28
chēung [go]	窗	window	24
chēunglím [tòhng; faai] [tóu] set; [go]	窗簾	curtain	19
chèuhng tòuh dihnwá [go]	長途電話	long distance phone call	28.1
chēut		M. for movie, a film	16
chēutnìn	出年	next year	17
chēutsai	出世	to be born	17
chijí [jèung] [gyún] [daahp]	厠紙	toilet paper roll stack	23.5
chisó [go]	厠所	toilet	22.2
chìh	遲	late (for an appointment), tardy	23.9
chìh	似	is similar to; resembles	27; 27.1
chìm méng [go]	簽名	sign one's name	28
-chìhn	前	.....ago (following a Nu-M of time)	22.17
chìhnjiu	前朝	day before yesterday in the morning	23.7
chìhnmáahn	前晚	night before last	23.7
chìhnyaht	前日	day before yesterday	23.2
chōchō	初初	at first, in the beginning	29
chóh + vehicle	坐	travel by (vehicle), go by (vehicle)	20.1
chòhng [jèung]	床	bed	24.3
chùng chàh	冲茶	make tea	24
chùnglèuhngfóng	冲涼房	bathroom; i.e., room for bathing	24.2
chúhng	重	heavy	21.1

chyùhfóng [go]	廚房	kitchen	24.1
chyun	寸	inch	21.5

D

dá	打	hit; to type (follow form of dá jih, [hit-words], i.e. to type	26.1
dá bō	打波	play ball	16.4
dá chèuhng tòuh dihnwá	打長途電話	make a long distance call	28.1
dá dihnbou	打電報	send a telegram	28.1
dáfógèi [go]	打火機	(cigarette) lighter	16
dá fùng	打風	have a typhoon [hit-wind]	30
dá jih	打字	to type (on the typewriter) [hit-words]	26.1
dájihgēi [go][ga]	打字機	typewriter	26.5
dáléih	打理	take care of, attend to	26
dá màhjéuk	打麻雀	play mahjong	16.3
dá páai	打牌	play mahjong	16
dásyun	打算	plan on, plan to	17
daai	帶	wear, as of watches, hats, things on top	24.11
daaih	大	in ref. to age: older (in comparison sentences); how old? (in QWsen)	21.5
daaihhohk [gàan]	大學	university	18
daaihkoi or daaihkói	大概	probably	30
daaihluhk	大陸	continent; term used to refer to mainland China	18.1
daaihyàhn [go]	大人	adults	26
dāan [jèung]	單	list	23
daap	搭	travel by (vehicle), take (vehicle); catch (vehicle)	20
daat	撻	Measure for a place	17
daihdī	第的	others, reduced form of daihyih dī, 'other ones,' 'others'	16N
daihyaht	第日	another day, another time (reduced form from daihyih yaht)	30
daihyih (+M)	第二	another..., other, others (boundword, bound to following Measure)	16
daihyih dī	第二的	others, other Ns [daihyih + M]	16

-dāk	得	'can,' 'able to' verb suf. indicating physical ability; heuidāk = can go; hàahngdāk = is able to walk	20
V-dāk-hóu Adj	得好	dāk in this pattern is a grammatical word coming between verb and following verbal complement which tells the manner in which the verb is done or what the result of the verb is	22
Dākgwokyàhn [go]	德國人	German person	27.1
dākhàahn	得閑	free, at leisure, not busy	16
Dākmàhn (also: -mán)	德文	German (language)	27.3
dám		throw out, discard	25
deihfōng [daat] or deihfòng	地方	place	17
deihjí [go]	地址	address	17
deui, deuiyù Obj	對,對於	towards, for, in regard to Obj	30
deui X làih góng	對…嚟講	speaking for X, from the point of view of X, in regard to X	27
deui X yáuh cheuimeih	對…有趣味	be interested in X	30.6
dīksí [ga]	的士	taxi	20.3
dím	點	any manner, whatever manner, however	25.5
X dím?	….點	how about X ?, what's X like?	21
dímgáai?	點解	why?	20
dímjūng	點鐘	hour	20.6
Dím syun a?	點算呀	'How can we handle this?' or 'What'll I do?' or 'What's to be done?'	28
dihnbou [fùng]	電報	telegram, cablegram	28.1
dihnbougúk or dihnbouguhk [gaàn]	電報局	telegram office	28.1
dihndāng [jáan or jī]	電燈	electric light, electric lamp	30.4
dihnfai	電費	electricity expenses	30.4
dihnsih [ga]	電視	television	16.6
dihnsihgēi [ga]	電視機	TV set	26.5
díp [jek] [go]	碟	plate	19
dit	跌	drop	24
dītchàn	跌親	fall and hurt yourself; be dropped and get hurt	29.1
ditlaahn	跌爛	drop and break	24

dòsou	多數	mostly, for the most part; the majority	27
dōu	都	still	26.2
douh	道	M for doors	24.7
nu.m.-dóu	度	approximately nu.m (suf. to nu.m. expression)	18
dóusé	倒瀉	spill	24
duhk daaihhohk	讀大學	study at a university, attend a university	18
duhk syù	讀書	to study, to go to school	18
dung	凍	cold	21

F

faai	塊	piece; M for dishcloth	24
faaidī	快的	hurry and..., ...right away	24
faahntēng [go]	飯廳	dining room	24.1
fàangáan [gauh]	番梘	soap	23.5
fàanheui	返去	go back, return (there)	17
faatsāng	發生	happen	29
faatsìu	發燒	have a fever	29.1
Faatgwokyàhn [go]	法國人	Frenchman	27.1
Faatmàhn (also: -mán)	法文	French (language)	27.3
fai	費	fees, expense	30.4
fan	瞓	sleep	23
fan(gaau)	瞓	go to bed, sleep	23
fanm̀hjeuhk	瞓唔着	can't get to sleep	25
fanjeuhk	瞓着	get to sleep, fall asleep	25
fàn	分	divide, divide up	26
fànbiht	分別	difference	27
fànfu	吩咐	instructions	23
fēigēi [ga]	飛機	airplane	20
fēigēi chèuhng [go]	飛機場	airport	20.1
fóchē [ga]	火車	train	20.1
fonggùng	放工	leave work, get off from work	29
Fong sām lāi!	放心啦	Don't worry!	26[illegible]
fóng [gàan]	房	room	24.2

fuhjaak	負責	take responsibility for, is responsible for	26
fù yeuhk	敷葯	treat with medicine	29
fú	苦	strong [bitter]	25.1
fùng	封	M. for telegram M. for letters, telegrams	28.1 26.8
fùng	風	wind	30
fùngkàuh	風球	typhoon signal	30
		G	
gājē	家姊	elder sister	18
gāsì [tou] [dī]	傢俬	furniture	19
gàyàhn [dī]	家人	members of the immediate family	20
gaaisiuhseun [fùng]	介紹信	letter of recommendation	26
gàmchi	今次	this time	24.12
gàmjìu	今朝	this morning	23.3
gàmmáahn	今晚	to-night	23.3
gàmnín	今年	this year	17.3
gàmyaht	今日	today	16
gàmyaht hahjau	今日下晝	this afternoon	23.3
gàmyaht (ng)aanjau	今日晏晝	this morning; today around noon	23.3
gám	噉	in such a way; this way, that way; as V, reduced form of gám jouh, 'do/did it this way,' restricted to use in affirmative only	26
...gám	…. 噉	that kind of thing, such things	19
gahn(jyuh)	近	near (followed by a placeword object)	29
gàn	跟	from(as in to learn from someone, i.e., learn following someone as model)	22
-gán	緊	Vsuf calling attention to fact that performance is in process	26
gányiu	緊要	important, serious	22.2
gauh	嚿	M. for soap	23.5
gauhnín	舊年	last year	17.3
gáuṁhgáu	久唔久	from time to time	26.12
gáuyuht	九月	September	17N
géi-	幾	any (number)	25.5
gei	寄	to mail	28.1

géidím	幾點	whatever hour, any hour, any time	25
gei seun	寄信	mail a letter, send a letter	28.1
géi(do)houh?	幾號	what day of the month?	17.3
géi nói?	幾耐	how long (time)?	18
géisí... (or -sìh)	幾時	whenever; anytime	25
géiyuht?	幾月	what month?	17.3
génghot	頸渴	thirsty	25.6
geuk [jek]	脚	leg, foot	29
gin	見	meet, see	17
ginmihn	見面	to meet	30
gitfàn	結婚	get married	18.8
giuséng	叫醒	wake someone up	23
gogo láihbaai	個個禮拜	every week	20.2
gogo yuht	個個月	every month	20.2
góján(sìh)	嗰陣(時)	at that time	30.16
VP góján(or gójahn)	嗰陣	When VP, At the time that VP	18
gói	改	change, alter	30
gokdāk	覺得	feel, consider, realize	21
gònjehng	乾淨	clean	23
gónm̀hchit	趕唔切	can't make it in time, not have time [hurry-not make it]	20
góngjí	港紙	Hong Kong money	19.13
góng yéh	講嘢	[say-things], i.e. to talk	22.8
gòu	高	tall	21.1
gú	估	guess, conjecture, bet, hazard a guess	30
guih	癐	tired	25
gùng	工	work	26
gùngfù	工夫	work	26
gwa	掛	hang up	23.14
gwaihtúng [go]	櫃桶	drawer	28
gwāt [gauh]	骨	bone	29
gwahouh	掛號	to register	28
gwahouhseun [fùng]	掛號信	registered letter	28
gwahóu	掛好	hang up	23.14
-gwo	過	used to form the comparative: Adj-er than, more Adj than	21

V-gwo M	過	do another M (as replacement for the original one)	24
gwo hói	過海	cross the harbour [cross the sea]. in Hong Kong, the expression used to refer to crossing the harbour from the Hong Kong side to the Kowloon side, and vice versa.	16
Gwojéung la	過獎嘞	'You praise me too much! said in response to a compliment	22
Adj-gwotàuh	過頭	too Adj, excessively Adj.	25.1
Gwóngjàu	廣州	Canton, city of Canton	18

H

hahchi	下次	next time	17
hahgo láihbaai	下個禮拜	next week	17
hahgo yuht	下個月	next month	17.1
hahjau	下晝	afternoon	23
hahyāt M	下一	the next M	20.1
haaktēng [go]	客廳	living room	24
hàahm	鹹	salty	25.1
hàahng	行	runs (of watches)	22.14
hàahng gūngsī	行公司	windowshop	16
hàahng louh	行路	go on foot [walk-road]	20.1
Haih gám wah lā.	係噉話啦	That's the way! [Be (it) as (you) say.]	28
hái	喺	from	17.14
hái X tùhng Y jīgāan	喺…同…之間	between X and Y	29
hahmbahlaahng	唅嘣呤	altogether	26
hauhmáahn	後晚	day after tomorrow night	23.7
hauhyaht	後日	the day after tomorrow	23
háuh	厚	thick	27.14
hei [cheut]	戲	movie	16
heiyún [gàan]	戲院	movie theatre	16
hèimohng	希望	to hope	18
héisàn	起身	get up (from bed) [raise-body]	19.2
héisáu	起首	begin	22
hìm	謙	modest	22

hìngdaih	兄弟	elder and younger brothers	22N
hósīk	可惜	unfortunately,it is unfortunate (+ sen)	30
hohkfai	學費	tuition	30.4
hòi	開	start off, set out, (for vehicles)	20
hòi (chē)	開	drive (a car)	22.2
hòichí	開始	begin	22N
hòi láahnghei	開冷氣	turn on the air conditioner	28.5
hòi mùhn	開門	open the door(s)	24.7
TW hòi mùhn		'open at _X_ time' (expresses the opening time of a store)	25.10
hòi sāuyāmgēi	開收音機	turn on the radio	27.11
hói	海	sea	16
-houh	號	day of the month [number]	17.3
yāt houh	一號	the first	
yih houh	二號	the 2d	
sàam houh, etc.	三號	the 3d	
Hòuh Wàh Heiyún	豪華戲院	Hoover Theatre	16
-hóu	好	bring to satisfactory conclusion	19
hóu + Verb phrase + la	好	'It would be a good idea to ...' a form used in making a suggestion	25
hóu chíh	好似	it seems, it looks like, probably, very likely	23
hóuchói	好彩	luckily, 'Thank goodness'	24
Hóu choi _X_ jē.	好彩...啫	It's lucky that _X_, at least.	24
hóudòsìh (dōu)	好多時	very often	21.17
hóufàan	好返	get well, return to good health	29.13
Hóu noih móuh gin.	好耐冇見	'Long time no see'.	17
Hóusēng.	好	'Be careful.' 'Mind (you don't...)'	24
hóusíu	好少	rarely, seldom	21.17
hóutái	好睇	nice-looking, pretty (not said in reference to people)	21.16
hóu wúih _V_	好會	does a good job of _V_-ing, is good at _V_-ing	22.10
hùhng	紅	red	25

J

jà faaijí	揸筷子	use chopsticks [clasp-chopsticks]	17.14
jáan	盞	M. for light or lamp	30.4
jāangdī	掙的	almost, lacks a little	30

jài	擠	put, place	24
jàn je	真嘅	true; the truth	27
jeui Adj	最	used to form the superlative: most Adj, Adj-est	21.13
jèun [go]	樽	bottle	29.3
jèung	張	M for table, newspaper	19.12;26.8
jèung	張	take	28
jīgāan	之間	between	29
ji Adj	至	used to form the superlative: Adj-est most Adj	21
TW ji TW	至	TW to TW, TW until TW; between TW and TW	26;30
ji	至	finally, (not until) then, (only) then; (variant of sinji)	19
...ji dāk	....至得	...that'll do it. ..., only then will the requirements be satisfied	24
jidò	至多	at most, the most	18.7
jigányiu jigán(yiu)	至緊要	be sure to, by all means do	17
jisíu	至少	at least, the least	18
jih [go]	字	written word, written figure word used for Chinese ideographs	22
jihgéi	自己	oneself, myself, himself, etc.	28
...jì...	....之....	'of' grammatical word joining modifying structure preceding it to head structure following it.	26
_____jìchìhn	之前	before_____ (combines with preceding VP or nu.m. length-of-time expression)	18
nu.+time M jìchìhn	之前	_____ago, _____previously, _____before	22.17
_____jìhauh	之後	after_____ (combines with preceding VP or nu.m. length-of-time expression) 'after (thus and so)'	18
...jì ngoih	之内	aside from..., outside (of)....	26
jīmuih	姊妹	elder and younger sisters	22N
jiyiu..., jauh...	祇要...,就...	just have to..., then...; as long as you...,	28
jīkhaak	即刻	immediately, right away	28
jīkhaih	即係	that is, in other words, that is to say	17
jihnghaih V	淨係	just, merely, only V	16
jìngsàhn	精神	energy	25

jíng	整	make, fix	19
jíng chāan	整餐	make, cook (Western) meals	19.1
jíng chē	整車	repair cars	19.15
jínghóu	整好	fix satisfactorily	19
jíngfàan	整返	fix back to original shape	23.11
jìujìu	朝朝	every morning	23.13
jìujóu	朝早	morning	23
-jó	咗	verb suf. in time spent phrase indicating past reference	18
Jouh māt?	做乜	How come?	24.11
johng	撞	bump into	29
johngchàn	撞親	injure by bumping	29
jòu or jōu	租	rent	19
jóu	早	early	23
jóu bou [jèung]	早報	morning paper	24.9
jūngtàuh	鐘頭	hour	18.2
juhng	重	even	21
juhng Adj dī	重....的	even more Adj, even Adj-er	21
jyú	煮	to cook	19.1
jyú faahn	煮飯	cook Chinese style food	19.1
jyúfáan [go] or jyúfaahn	煮飯	a person who works as a cook in a private home (usually a woman)	26
jyúsihk	煮食	cooking	26

K

kàhmmáahn	尋晚	last night	23.2
kàhmyaht	尋日	yesterday	16
kàhmyaht hahjau	尋日下晝	yesterday afternoon	23.2
kàhmyaht jìu	尋日朝	yesterday morning	23.2
kàhmyaht (ng)aanjau	尋日晏晝	yesterday noon	23.2
kàhnlihk	勤力	industrious	22.18
káhn	近	near	29.4
kèhláu [go]	騎樓	veranda, terrace	24
kèihsaht	其實	in actuality, in truth, 'but actually' (leads off a response sentence which disagrees with the statement or assumption of the stimulus sentence)	27

kìnggái	傾偈	have a chat, talk casually	22
kyutdihng	决定	decide	18

L

laahmchē [ga]	纜車	cable car. in HK: the Peak Tram	20.1
làahm	藍	blue	25.1
laahn	爛	broken	24
laahnjó	爛咗	has become spoiled, rotten (of perishables)	25
láahn	懶	lazy, idle	22.18
láahnghei(gēi)[go,ga]	冷氣	air conditioner	26.5
láahngtīn	冷天	winter	21
laaht	辣	peppery	25.1
laahttaat	辣撻	dirty	23.6
làih	嚟	to, in order to, for the purpose of	24.10
-làih	嚟	VPsuf in response sen adding connotation of 'that's what happened, not the thing you thought'	16
-làih	嚟	VPsuf in sen. of past reference suffixed to heui phrases, indicates that person has returned from where he went	16
Làih (PW) chóh ā! lā!	嚟(PW)坐啦	Come visit (place)!	17
láihbaai [go]	禮拜	week	17
láihbaai	禮拜	Sunday [lit: week]	17.2
láihbaai géi?	禮拜幾	what day of the week?	17.3
láihbaailuhk	禮拜六	Saturday	17.2
láihbaaińgh	禮拜五	Friday	17.2
láihbaáisàam	禮拜三	Wednesday	17.2
láihbaaisei	禮拜四	Thursday	17
láihbaaiyaht	禮拜日	Sunday	17.2
láihbaaiyāt	禮拜一	Monday	17.2
láihbaaiyih	禮拜二	Tuesday	17.2
lauh	漏	leak	22.2
lauhdài	留低	leave/left (something) behind	24.1
làuhhohk	留學	study abroad	18
làuhleih	流俐	fluent in speech, fluently	22.2
lèih X	離	distance from X	29

lēk	叻	smart, brilliant	21.1
léuihhàhng	旅行	excursion	20.1
leuhnjeuhn	掄盡	clumsy, awkward, stupid	22
lèuhn	輪	one journey, referring to bus, train, trams	20.1
lèuhng	凉	cool	21.1
lìhn	連	to include	30N
lìhn...dōu	連…都	not even	30.4
lìhn(màaih)	連(埋)	including	30.4
líhngsihgwún	領事舘	consulate	27
lobo!	囉嗡	sen.suf. with connotation of good-natured protest that addressee is wrong in doing or saying whatever it is he is doing/saying.	27
lòh	囉	sen.suf. signifying a bid for sympathy	25
lohkyúh	落雨	to rain [down-rain]	24
louh	路	road	20.1
luhk	綠	green	25.1
luhkyuht	六月	June	17N

M

m̀hdākhàahn	唔得閒	busy	16
m̀hhaih	唔係	otherwise, if not	25.4
m̀hjí	唔止	more than, not just	30.8
m̀hjīngsàhn	唔精神	not feel well, not have energy	28.3
m̀hsīk jih	唔識字	illiterate	28
m̀hsyùfuhk	唔舒服	not feel well, i.e., feel sick	29.1
m̀htùhng	唔同	not alike; used as _V_ in negative and question forms, but not in affirmative	27; 27.6
màhfàahn	麻煩	trouble	28
màhjéuk	麻雀	mahjong; [fu] set; [tòih] table; [jek] tile; [hyūn] games	16.3
màhmádéi	麻麻地	middling, sloppy, indifferent, so-so, just scrapes by	22
-màaih	埋	together, tight; sómàaih-locked up	28
maahn	萬	ten thousand	19.1
máahnfaahn	晚飯	supper	19.2

máahnmáahn	晚晚	every evening	23.18
maat	抹	wipe, polish; wet-mop	24
màhn	聞	to smell	27.4
Māt + sentence	乜	How come? + sen.	25
mēyéh	乜嘢	anything; everything; whatever	25
meih	味	smell, odor, fragrance	27.4
meih VP jichìhn	未....之前	before____(combines with enclosed verb phrase to express 'before (thus and so)')	18
méihgām	美金	American money [American-gold]	19.13
mòuhgān [tìuh]	毛巾	towels	23.5
Móuh!	冇	'Nothing special.' 'Nothing much. A response making light of the topic under discussion.	29
Móuh baahnfaat.	冇辦法	'There's nothing(you/we) can do.' 'It can't be helped.'	30
móuhgéinoih	冇幾耐	a short period [not long]	18.3
Móuh sówàih ge.	冇所謂嘅	'Any way is OK with me.' ' o complaints.'	26
múi [go]	妹	younger sister	22.1
múih	每	every, each	20
mùhn [douh]	門	door	24.7

N

nàahmyán [go]	男人	man	27.10
nàahn	難	difficult	21.1
nàahnhohk	難學	difficult to learn	21.10
Néih m̀hhaih wah....?	你唔係話	Didn't you say....?	30.4
Néih yauh wah....?	你又話	You said....(but it's not so; what's up)?	30.5
néuihjái [go]	女仔	girl, young woman	29.2
néuihyán [go]	女人	woman	27.10
nī go láihbaai	呢個禮拜	this week	17.3
nī go yuht	呢個月	this month	17.3
nīpáai	呢	lately, recently; these few days	16.1
nìhn	年	year	17
nìhnnìhn	年年	every year	20.2
noih	耐	long (time)	17

NG

ńghyuht	五月	May	17N
(ng)āam	啱	fitting, suitable (var. of āam)	19
(Ng)āam la(ak)!	啱嘞	That's fine!, Splendid!(var:Āam la(ak))	19
(ng)āam(ng)āam	啱啱	just, only a moment ago (var. of āamāam)	22
(ng)aan	晏	late (in the day) (var: aan)	23.9
(ng)aanjau	晏晝	around noon, morning (var: aanjau)	23.1
(ng)aanjau sahpyihdím	晏晝十二點	twelve noon	23N2
ngáahnfan	眼瞓	sleepy	25
ngàihhím	危險	dangerous, danger	29
ngohngódéi	餓餓地	a bit hungry	25
ngoih	外	outside	26
(ng)ūkjòu, (ng)ūkjōu	屋租	house rent (var ūkjòu, ūkjōu)	19.1

O

Oumún	澳門	Macau	18.11

P

pa	怕	frightened of, be afraid of	20

S

sāamgá [go]	衫架	coat hanger	23.5
Sàamfàahnsíh	三藩市	San Francisco	17
sàamsei	三四	three or four	20
Sàamyuht	三月	March	17N
sàan	閂	close, shut	24
Sàandéng	山頂	the Peak	20.1
sàan mùhn	閂門	close the door(s)	24.7
TW sàan mùhn	閂門	'close the doors (of a store) at X time,' expresses closing time of a store	25.10
sàan sāuyāmgèi	閂收音機	turn off the radio	28.4
sàang	生	raw, underdone (of cooked things); green (of fruits)	25.1
sai	細	younger in age; used in comparison sentences to indicate 'younger than'	21.6

sailouhnéui [go]	細佬女	little girl	27.13
sailóu [go]	細佬	younger brother	22.1
sailóugō [go]	細佬哥	child	16.5
saisèng	細聲	quiet voiced, in a small voice, soft (opposite of loud) in speech. [small-sound]	22.3
Sàiyàhn [go]	西人	Westerner, European, Caucasian	27.1
sái	洗	wash	23
sáidākchit	洗得切	able to get it washed in time	23
sàn làih ge yàhn	新嚟嘅人	newcomer, new arrival	19
sànfánjing [jèung]	身份証	I.D. card	26
Sàngaai	新界	the New Territories	20.1
sànséui	薪水	salary (of white collar workers)	19.1
sāp	濕	wet, damp	21
sahpgéi	十幾	a few more than 10 [ten-several]	20
Sahpyātyuht	十一月	November	17N
Sahpyihyuht	十二月	December	17N
Sahpyuht	十月	October	17N
sāumēi	收尾	finally, in the end	29
sāuyāmgèi [go, ga]	收音機	radio	26.5
sàu	收	receive, collect, take in	28
sàu seun	收信	receive a letter	28.3
sáujuhk	手續	procedure(s)	28
sé jih	寫字	write [write-words]	19.15
séfàan	寫返	write and return	23
Seiyuht	四月	April	17N
sèng	聲	sound, noise	27.4
sèhng	成	entire, whole; fully	26
séng	醒	wake up, awaken	23
seui	歲	years of age	21.5
seuihfóng [go]	睡房	bedroom	24.1
sèuiyìhn	雖然	although	25
sèuiyìhn...daahnhaih	雖然....但係	although..., still,,,; though..., still...	25
séuifai	水費	water payment, fees, expenses	30.4
séuihàuh [go] [tìuh]	水喉	water faucet [go]; water pipes [tìuh]	22.3

seun [fùng]	信	letter	26
sēungfùng	傷風	have a cold, catch a cold	29.1
seuhng go láihbaai	上個禮拜	last week	17.3
seuhng go yuht	上個月	last month	17.3
séuhng gung	上工	start work	26
sihjái [go]	侍仔	roomboy	23
sihtáu [go]	事頭	employer, boss	28
sìhgaan [dī]	時間	time	16
sìhsìh	時時	always, at all times	21
(sìn)ji	(先)至	(not until) then, (only) then, finally	19
sīngkèih [go]	星期	week	17N
síu	少	few	27.11
síusām	小心	careful	22.18
só	鎖	to lock	28
sómàaih	鎖埋	lock up, lock tight	28
sósìh [tìuh] [chàu] [chyun]	鎖鍉	key bunch held together(spoken form) (use for written form) link of keys	28
sóyìh	所以	therefore	20
sóng	鬆	crisp	25
suhk	熟	done (of cooked things), ripe (of fruit)	25.1
syùfóng [go]	書房	study, den [book-room]	24.1
syùtói [jèung]	書枱	desk	24.1
syun	算	is considered, can be considered as..., counted as ...,	29
Syun la(ak)!	算嘞	Never mind! or Forget it!	28
syùn	酸	sour	25.1
syùnlaaht tòng [go][wún]	酸辣湯	vinegar-pepper soup	28.10
syùhn [jek] [ga]	船	ship, ferry	20
syutgwaih [go]	雪櫃	refrigerator	25

T

taai	太	too, excessively	22
Taaitáai	太太	'Ma'am,' 'Missy.' (term used by servant in foreign household to address mistress of the house)	24

tái dihnsih	睇電視	watch television	16.6
tái hei	睇戲	see a movie	16
tàuhsīn	頭先	just a while ago	29
tàuhtung	頭痛	have a headache; headache	29.1
tèngginwah	聽見話	hear tell, I hear...	17
tìhm	甜	sweet	25
tìnhei	天氣	weather	21
tìngjìu	聽朝	tomorrow morning	23
tìngmáahn	聽晚	tomorrow night	23.4
tìngyaht	聽日	tomorrow	16
tìngyaht hahjau	聽日下晝	tomorrow afternoon	23.4
tìngyaht (ng)aanjau	聽日晏晝	tomorrow morning around noon	23.4
tói [jèung]	枱	table	19.12
Tòihbāk	台北	Taipei	18
Tòihwāan or Tòihwàan	台湾	Taiwan	18
Tòihwāanyàhn [go]	台湾人	Taiwanese person	21
tokpún [go]	托盤	tray	24.1
tong	熨	to iron, press	23
tong wòhngjó	熨黃咗	scorched [iron-yellowed]	29.2
tou	套	set, M for set of furniture, set of dishes, etc.	19
tòuhjēung [go]	圖章	chop, seal	28
tóuhngoh	肚餓	hungry	25
tùngjì	通知	communicate with	30
tùngsèuhng	通常	ordinarily, usually	26
tùhng per. yātchàih V	同....一齊	V together with person	20
tùhng X yātyeuhng	同....一樣	the same as X	21
tùhngmàaih	同埋	and, with	26
tyúhn	斷	to break (of bones and stick-like objects)	29
tìhmsyùn yú [tìuh] [dihp]	甜酸魚	sweet and sour fish	28.10

U

ūkjòu, ūkjōu	屋租	see: ngūkjòu	19.1

W

Wah!	嘩	Exclamation of awe	30
Wah m̀hdihng.	話唔定	Can't say for sure; uncertain	17
Wàhsihngdeuhn	華盛頓	Washington	17
waaihjó	壞咗	out of order, broken down	26.4
wán yéh jouh	搵嘢做	look for a job	18
wándóu	搵到	find [search-succeed]	19
wòhng	黃	yellow	25.1
wùh	壺	pot, container Measure	24
wùih seun	回信	answer a letter	28.1
wúih	會	likely to, going to (indicates strong possibility)	24
wún-dihp [tou]	碗碟	a set of china	19.16

Y

yáih	吟	terrible, awful	22
yan [go]	印	spot	23
yànwaih	因為	because	20
yànwaih..., sóyíh...	因為…所以…	because ..., therefore...; since..., so...	20
yàhngùng	人工	wages (of servants, day laborers)	19.1
yāt $\underline{V^1}$, jauh $\underline{V^2}$	一…	as soon as V^1, then V^2.	28
yāt go yān	一個人	alone, by oneself	26
yātchàih	一齊	together	19
yātdihng	一定	certainly, definitely	19
yātján	一陣	in a little while, in just a little while	23.10
Yātyuht	一月	January	17N
yaht	日	day	17.3
yahtyaht	日日	every day	20.2
yàuh $\underline{X}$ dou $\underline{Y}$ jīgāan	由X到Y之間	between $\underline{X}$ and $\underline{Y}$	29.12
yàuhchàai [go]	郵差	postman	28
yàuhjinggúk (or -guhk) [gàan]	郵政局	post office	28
yàuhhaak [dī]	遊客	tourist	23
yàuhséui	游水	swim; swimming	16.3

yáuh behng	有病	be sick, have an illness	29.1
yáuh cheuimeih	有趣味	interesting	21.1
yáuhdī	有的	some, a few	27
yáuhdī..., yáuhdī...	有的...有的...	some..., others...	27
yáuhsìh	有時	sometimes	21.17
yáuh yīk	有益	beneficial	30
yeh	亱	late (in the evening)	23.9
yehmáahn	亱晚	at night	23.1
yeuk	約	make an appointment	30
yeukhóu	約好	agree on the time and/or place for an appointment [request-successful]	30
yeuhk	葯	medicine	29
yeuhkséui [jèun] [dihk]	葯水	(liquid) medicine [bottle][drop] drop	29.3
yeuhkyún [lāp] [jèun]	葯丸	medicine in pill form [M for pill][bottle]	29.3
yeuhngyeuhng	樣樣	everything, every kind of thing	28.12
yīyún [gàan]	医院	hospital	29
yih	易	easy	21.1
yihyuht	二月	February	17
yìhché	而且	furthermore	20
yí [jèung]	椅	chair	19.16
yíhchìhn	以前	previously, formerly, before	18
yíhgìng	已經	already	19
yíhhauh	以後	afterwards	18.14
yíh ngoih	以内	outside of, aside from, with the exception of	26N
_X_ yíhseuhng	X 以上	above ..., more than... (follows number expression)	30
yíhwàih	以為	think, have the impression (sometimes this proves to be mistakenly had the impression)	25
yīk	益	benefit, profit	30
yìng bóng	英鎊	British pounds sterling [English pound]	19.13
yiht	熱	hot	21.1
yihttīn	熱天	summer	21
yiu length of time	要	takes length of time	20

yiu	要	cause, make (someone do something) make, cause (someone to do something)	20.1.4; 29
yùhgwó	如果	if, on condition that	18
yùhgwó m̀hhaih	如果唔係	otherwise, if not	25
-yùhn	完	verb suf.: finish	26
yùhnlòih	原來	basically, originally; basis, origin	20
Yùhnlòih haih gám ge.	原來係噉嘅	Oh, that's why. So that's the reason!	20
yúhn	遠	far	29
yuht [go]	月	month	17.1
yuht...yuht...,	愈...愈...	the more...the more...	30
yuht làih yuht Adj	愈嚟愈	getting more and more Adj	30

☆ U. S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE : 1970 O - 396-398 (154)

FSI Language Publications Available from
Superintendent of Documents
Washington, D.C. 20402

BASIC COURSES

Amharic	(Units 1-50)	$2.25
Amharic	(Units 51-60)	$2.50
Cambodian	(Units 1-45)	$2.00
Cambodian	(Units 46-90)	
Cantonese	(Units 1-30)	
Chinyanja	(Units 1-63)	$1.75
French (set)	(Units 1-12 (Units 13-14	$4.00
Fula	(Units 1-40)	$2.75
German	(Units 1-12)	$2.00
German	(Units 13-24)	$1.75
Greek	(Vol. I)	$1.75
Greek	(Vol. II)	$1.00
Greek	(Vol. III)	$2.00
Hebrew	(Units 1-40)	$5.00
Hungarian	(Units 1-12)	$2.00
Hungarian	(Units 13-24)	$1.75
Kirundi	(Units 1-30)	$2.75
Kituba	(Units 1-35)	$2.25
Korean	(Vol. I)	$3.00
Korean	(Vol. II)	$4.75
Lao	(Vol I)	
Lingala	(Units 1-24)	$2.75
Luganda	(Lessons 1-94)	$2.25
More	(Units 1-48)	$1.75
Serbo-Croatian	(Units 1-25)	$3.50
Serbo-Croatian	(Units 26-50)	$4.00
Shona	(Units 1-49)	$2.50
Spanish (set)	(Units 1-15 (Units 16-30	$12.25
Spanish	(Units 31-45)	$3.25
Spanish	(Units 46-55)	$4.00
Swahili	(Units 1-150)	$3.00

Thai	(Units 1-20)	
Thai	(Units 21-40)	
Turkish	(Units 1-30)	$3.75
Turkish	(Units 31-50)	$2.25
Twi	(Units 1-20)	$1.25
Vietnamese	(Vol. I)	$2.75
Vietnamese	(Vol. II)	$1.50
Yoruba	(Units 1-49)	$2.75

Finnish Graded Reader	$4.50
French Supplemental Exercises	$3.25
Hindi - An Active Introduction	
Hungarian Reader	$3.75
Indonesian Newspaper Reader	$1.75
Luganda Pretraining Program	
Modern Written Arabic	$4.00
Spanish Programmatic Course (Instructor's Manual-Vol. I)	$0.75
Spanish Programmatic Course (Student Workbook-Vol. I)	$2.25
Spanish Programmatic Course (Instructor's Manual-Vol. II)	
Spanish Programmatic Course (Student Workbook-Vol. II)	
Swahili General Conversation	$0.75
Swahili Geography	$0.65
Thai - Reference Grammar	$1.25
Turkish Graded Reader	
Vietnamese Familiarization Course	$1.75
Yoruba Intermediate Texts	$1.25

Supplies of all publications listed are limited, and prices are subject to change without advance notice. Rules require remittance in advance of shipment. Check or money order should be made payable to the Superintendent of Documents. Postage stamps and foreign money are not acceptable.

Tapes for the above courses are available from the National Audiovisual Center, National Archives and Record Service, GSA, National Archives Building, Room G-5, Washington, D.C. 20408.